

Free Component Library (FCL):
Reference guide.

Reference guide for FCL units.
Document version 3.2.4
December 2023

Michaël Van Canneyt

Contents

0.1	Overview	94
1	Reference for unit 'AdvancedSingleInstance'	95
1.1	Used units	95
1.2	Overview	95
1.3	Constants, types and variables	95
1.3.1	Types	95
1.4	TAdvancedSingleInstance	96
1.4.1	Description	96
1.4.2	Method overview	96
1.4.3	Property overview	96
1.4.4	TAdvancedSingleInstance.Create	96
1.4.5	TAdvancedSingleInstance.Start	97
1.4.6	TAdvancedSingleInstance.Stop	97
1.4.7	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages	97
1.4.8	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostParams	97
1.4.9	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostCustomRequest	98
1.4.10	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientSendCustomRequest	98
1.4.11	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse	98
1.4.12	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPeekCustomResponse	99
1.4.13	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ID	99
1.4.14	TAdvancedSingleInstance.Global	99
1.4.15	TAdvancedSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedCustomRequest	99
2	Reference for unit 'ascii85'	100
2.1	Used units	100
2.2	Overview	100
2.3	Constants, types and variables	100
2.3.1	Types	100
2.4	TASCII85DecoderStream	101
2.4.1	Description	101
2.4.2	Method overview	101

2.4.3	Property overview	101
2.4.4	TASCII85DecoderStream.Create	101
2.4.5	TASCII85DecoderStream.Decode	102
2.4.6	TASCII85DecoderStream.Close	102
2.4.7	TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP	102
2.4.8	TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy	102
2.4.9	TASCII85DecoderStream.Read	103
2.4.10	TASCII85DecoderStream.Seek	103
2.4.11	TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary	103
2.5	TASCII85EncoderStream	103
2.5.1	Description	103
2.5.2	Method overview	104
2.5.3	Property overview	104
2.5.4	TASCII85EncoderStream.Create	104
2.5.5	TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy	104
2.5.6	TASCII85EncoderStream.Write	104
2.5.7	TASCII85EncoderStream.Width	105
2.5.8	TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary	105
2.6	TASCII85RingBuffer	105
2.6.1	Description	105
2.6.2	Method overview	105
2.6.3	Property overview	105
2.6.4	TASCII85RingBuffer.Write	106
2.6.5	TASCII85RingBuffer.Read	106
2.6.6	TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount	106
2.6.7	TASCII85RingBuffer.Size	106
3	Reference for unit 'AVL_Tree'	107
3.1	Used units	107
3.2	Overview	107
3.3	Constants, types and variables	107
3.3.1	Types	107
3.3.2	Variables	110
3.4	TAVLTree	111
3.4.1	Description	111
3.4.2	Method overview	112
3.4.3	Property overview	113
3.4.4	TAVLTree.Create	113
3.4.5	TAVLTree.CreateObjectCompare	113
3.4.6	TAVLTree.Destroy	113

3.4.7	TAVLTree.SetNodeManager	113
3.4.8	TAVLTree.NewNode	114
3.4.9	TAVLTree.DisposeNode	114
3.4.10	TAVLTree.Add	114
3.4.11	TAVLTree.AddAscendingSequence	115
3.4.12	TAVLTree.Delete	115
3.4.13	TAVLTree.Remove	115
3.4.14	TAVLTree.RemovePointer	116
3.4.15	TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost	116
3.4.16	TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost	116
3.4.17	TAVLTree.Clear	116
3.4.18	TAVLTree.FreeAndClear	117
3.4.19	TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete	117
3.4.20	TAVLTree.Equals	117
3.4.21	TAVLTree.IsEqual	117
3.4.22	TAVLTree.Assign	118
3.4.23	TAVLTree.Compare	118
3.4.24	TAVLTree.Find	118
3.4.25	TAVLTree.FindKey	118
3.4.26	TAVLTree.FindNearestKey	119
3.4.27	TAVLTree.FindSuccessor	119
3.4.28	TAVLTree.FindPrecessor	119
3.4.29	TAVLTree.FindLowest	120
3.4.30	TAVLTree.FindHighest	120
3.4.31	TAVLTree.FindNearest	120
3.4.32	TAVLTree.FindPointer	120
3.4.33	TAVLTree.FindLeftMost	121
3.4.34	TAVLTree.FindRightMost	121
3.4.35	TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey	121
3.4.36	TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey	121
3.4.37	TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey	122
3.4.38	TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey	122
3.4.39	TAVLTree.GetEnumerator	122
3.4.40	TAVLTree.GetEnumeratorHighToLow	122
3.4.41	TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck	123
3.4.42	TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream	123
3.4.43	TAVLTree.NodeToReportStr	123
3.4.44	TAVLTree.ReportAsString	123
3.4.45	TAVLTree.OnCompare	124
3.4.46	TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare	124

3.4.47	TAVLTree.NodeClass	124
3.4.48	TAVLTree.Root	124
3.4.49	TAVLTree.Count	125
3.5	TAVLTreeNode	125
3.5.1	Description	125
3.5.2	Method overview	125
3.5.3	TAVLTreeNode.Successor	125
3.5.4	TAVLTreeNode.Precessor	125
3.5.5	TAVLTreeNode.Clear	126
3.5.6	TAVLTreeNode.TreeDepth	126
3.5.7	TAVLTreeNode.ConsistencyCheck	126
3.5.8	TAVLTreeNode.GetCount	126
3.6	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator	126
3.6.1	Description	126
3.6.2	Method overview	127
3.6.3	Property overview	127
3.6.4	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Create	127
3.6.5	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.GetEnumerator	127
3.6.6	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext	127
3.6.7	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Current	127
3.6.8	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.LowToHigh	128
3.7	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager	128
3.7.1	Description	128
3.7.2	Method overview	128
3.7.3	Property overview	128
3.7.4	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode	128
3.7.5	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode	129
3.7.6	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Clear	129
3.7.7	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create	129
3.7.8	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy	129
3.7.9	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode	130
3.7.10	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio	130
3.7.11	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count	130
3.8	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager	130
3.8.1	Description	130
3.8.2	Method overview	131
3.8.3	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode	131
3.8.4	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode	131

4 Reference for unit 'base64'

132

4.1	Used units	132
4.2	Overview	132
4.3	Constants, types and variables	132
4.3.1	Types	132
4.4	Procedures and functions	133
4.4.1	DecodeStringBase64	133
4.4.2	EncodeStringBase64	133
4.5	EBase64DecodingException	133
4.5.1	Description	133
4.6	TBase64DecodingStream	133
4.6.1	Description	133
4.6.2	Method overview	134
4.6.3	Property overview	134
4.6.4	TBase64DecodingStream.Create	134
4.6.5	TBase64DecodingStream.Reset	134
4.6.6	TBase64DecodingStream.Read	134
4.6.7	TBase64DecodingStream.Seek	135
4.6.8	TBase64DecodingStream.EOF	135
4.6.9	TBase64DecodingStream.Mode	135
4.7	TBase64EncodingStream	136
4.7.1	Description	136
4.7.2	Method overview	136
4.7.3	TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy	136
4.7.4	TBase64EncodingStream.Flush	136
4.7.5	TBase64EncodingStream.Write	137
4.7.6	TBase64EncodingStream.Seek	137
5	Reference for unit 'BlowFish'	138
5.1	Used units	138
5.2	Overview	138
5.3	Constants, types and variables	138
5.3.1	Constants	138
5.3.2	Types	138
5.4	EBlowFishError	139
5.4.1	Description	139
5.5	TBlowFish	139
5.5.1	Description	139
5.5.2	Method overview	139
5.5.3	TBlowFish.Create	139
5.5.4	TBlowFish.Encrypt	140

5.5.5	TBlowFish.Decrypt	140
5.6	TBlowFishDeCryptStream	140
5.6.1	Description	140
5.6.2	Method overview	140
5.6.3	TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Create	140
5.6.4	TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Read	141
5.6.5	TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Seek	141
5.7	TBlowFishEncryptStream	141
5.7.1	Description	141
5.7.2	Method overview	142
5.7.3	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Destroy	142
5.7.4	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write	142
5.7.5	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Seek	142
5.7.6	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Flush	143
5.8	TBlowFishStream	143
5.8.1	Description	143
5.8.2	Method overview	143
5.8.3	Property overview	143
5.8.4	TBlowFishStream.Create	143
5.8.5	TBlowFishStream.Destroy	144
5.8.6	TBlowFishStream.BlowFish	144
6	Reference for unit 'BufDataset'	145
6.1	Used units	145
6.2	Overview	145
6.3	Constants, types and variables	145
6.3.1	Types	145
6.4	Procedures and functions	150
6.4.1	RegisterDatapacketReader	150
6.5	TApplyRecUpdateResult	150
6.6	TBlobBuffer	151
6.7	TBufBlobField	151
6.8	TBufBookmark	151
6.9	TBufRecLinkItem	151
6.10	TDBCompareRec	152
6.11	TRecUpdateBuffer	152
6.12	TArrayBufIndex	152
6.12.1	Description	152
6.12.2	Method overview	153
6.12.3	TArrayBufIndex.Create	153

6.12.4	TArrayBufIndex.ScrollBackward	153
6.12.5	TArrayBufIndex.ScrollForward	153
6.12.6	TArrayBufIndex.GetCurrent	153
6.12.7	TArrayBufIndex.ScrollFirst	154
6.12.8	TArrayBufIndex.ScrollLast	154
6.12.9	TArrayBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord	154
6.12.10	TArrayBufIndex.SetToLastRecord	154
6.12.11	TArrayBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord	154
6.12.12	TArrayBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord	154
6.12.13	TArrayBufIndex.CanScrollForward	155
6.12.14	TArrayBufIndex.DoScrollForward	155
6.12.15	TArrayBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	155
6.12.16	TArrayBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	155
6.12.17	TArrayBufIndex.GotoBookmark	155
6.12.18	TArrayBufIndex.InitialiseIndex	155
6.12.19	TArrayBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord	155
6.12.20	TArrayBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord	156
6.12.21	TArrayBufIndex.BeginUpdate	156
6.12.22	TArrayBufIndex.AddRecord	156
6.12.23	TArrayBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	156
6.12.24	TArrayBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex	156
6.12.25	TArrayBufIndex.EndUpdate	156
6.13	TBufBlobStream	157
6.13.1	Description	157
6.13.2	Method overview	157
6.13.3	TBufBlobStream.Create	157
6.13.4	TBufBlobStream.Destroy	157
6.14	TBufDataset	157
6.14.1	Description	157
6.14.2	Property overview	158
6.14.3	TBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount	158
6.14.4	TBufDataset.FieldDefs	158
6.14.5	TBufDataset.Active	159
6.14.6	TBufDataset.AutoCalcFields	159
6.14.7	TBufDataset.Filter	159
6.14.8	TBufDataset.Filtered	159
6.14.9	TBufDataset.ReadOnly	159
6.14.10	TBufDataset.AfterCancel	159
6.14.11	TBufDataset.AfterClose	160
6.14.12	TBufDataset.AfterDelete	160

6.14.13 TBufDataset.AfterEdit	160
6.14.14 TBufDataset.AfterInsert	160
6.14.15 TBufDataset.AfterOpen	160
6.14.16 TBufDataset.AfterPost	160
6.14.17 TBufDataset.AfterScroll	160
6.14.18 TBufDataset.BeforeCancel	161
6.14.19 TBufDataset.BeforeClose	161
6.14.20 TBufDataset.BeforeDelete	161
6.14.21 TBufDataset.BeforeEdit	161
6.14.22 TBufDataset.BeforeInsert	161
6.14.23 TBufDataset.BeforeOpen	161
6.14.24 TBufDataset.BeforePost	161
6.14.25 TBufDataset.BeforeScroll	162
6.14.26 TBufDataset.OnCalcFields	162
6.14.27 TBufDataset.OnDeleteError	162
6.14.28 TBufDataset.OnEditError	162
6.14.29 TBufDataset.OnFilterRecord	162
6.14.30 TBufDataset.OnNewRecord	162
6.14.31 TBufDataset.OnPostError	162
6.15 TBufIndex	163
6.15.1 Description	163
6.15.2 Method overview	164
6.15.3 Property overview	164
6.15.4 TBufIndex.Create	165
6.15.5 TBufIndex.ScrollBackward	165
6.15.6 TBufIndex.ScrollForward	165
6.15.7 TBufIndex.GetCurrent	165
6.15.8 TBufIndex.ScrollFirst	165
6.15.9 TBufIndex.ScrollLast	165
6.15.10 TBufIndex.GetRecord	166
6.15.11 TBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord	166
6.15.12 TBufIndex.SetToLastRecord	166
6.15.13 TBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord	166
6.15.14 TBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord	166
6.15.15 TBufIndex.CanScrollForward	166
6.15.16 TBufIndex.DoScrollForward	167
6.15.17 TBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	167
6.15.18 TBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	167
6.15.19 TBufIndex.GotoBookmark	167
6.15.20 TBufIndex.BookmarkValid	167

6.15.21 TBufIndex.CompareBookmarks	167
6.15.22 TBufIndex.SameBookmarks	168
6.15.23 TBufIndex.InitialiseIndex	168
6.15.24 TBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord	168
6.15.25 TBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord	168
6.15.26 TBufIndex.BeginUpdate	168
6.15.27 TBufIndex.AddRecord	169
6.15.28 TBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	169
6.15.29 TBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex	169
6.15.30 TBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord	169
6.15.31 TBufIndex.EndUpdate	169
6.15.32 TBufIndex.SpareRecord	170
6.15.33 TBufIndex.SpareBuffer	170
6.15.34 TBufIndex.CurrentRecord	170
6.15.35 TBufIndex.CurrentBuffer	170
6.15.36 TBufIndex.IsInitialized	170
6.15.37 TBufIndex.BookmarkSize	171
6.15.38 TBufIndex.RecNo	171
6.16 TCustomBufDataset	171
6.16.1 Description	171
6.16.2 Method overview	172
6.16.3 Property overview	173
6.16.4 TCustomBufDataset.Create	173
6.16.5 TCustomBufDataset.GetFieldData	174
6.16.6 TCustomBufDataset.SetFieldData	174
6.16.7 TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates	174
6.16.8 TCustomBufDataset.MergeChangeLog	175
6.16.9 TCustomBufDataset.RevertRecord	175
6.16.10 TCustomBufDataset.CancelUpdates	175
6.16.11 TCustomBufDataset.Destroy	175
6.16.12 TCustomBufDataset.Locate	176
6.16.13 TCustomBufDataset.Lookup	176
6.16.14 TCustomBufDataset.UpdateStatus	177
6.16.15 TCustomBufDataset.CreateBlobStream	178
6.16.16 TCustomBufDataset.AddIndex	178
6.16.17 TCustomBufDataset.ClearIndexes	179
6.16.18 TCustomBufDataset.SetDatasetPacket	179
6.16.19 TCustomBufDataset.GetDatasetPacket	179
6.16.20 TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromStream	180
6.16.21 TCustomBufDataset.SaveToStream	180

6.16.22	TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromFile	181
6.16.23	TCustomBufDataset.SaveToFile	181
6.16.24	TCustomBufDataset.CreateDataset	182
6.16.25	TCustomBufDataset.Clear	182
6.16.26	TCustomBufDataset.BookmarkValid	183
6.16.27	TCustomBufDataset.CompareBookmarks	183
6.16.28	TCustomBufDataset.CopyFromDataset	183
6.16.29	TCustomBufDataset.ChangeCount	184
6.16.30	TCustomBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount	184
6.16.31	TCustomBufDataset.ReadOnly	185
6.16.32	TCustomBufDataset.ManualMergeChangeLog	185
6.16.33	TCustomBufDataset.FileName	185
6.16.34	TCustomBufDataset.PacketRecords	186
6.16.35	TCustomBufDataset.OnUpdateError	186
6.16.36	TCustomBufDataset.IndexDefs	187
6.16.37	TCustomBufDataset.IndexName	187
6.16.38	TCustomBufDataset.IndexFieldNames	187
6.16.39	TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional	188
6.17	TDataPacketHandler	188
6.17.1	Method overview	188
6.17.2	TDataPacketHandler.Create	189
6.17.3	TDataPacketHandler.LoadFieldDefs	189
6.17.4	TDataPacketHandler.InitLoadRecords	189
6.17.5	TDataPacketHandler.GetCurrentRecord	189
6.17.6	TDataPacketHandler.GetRecordRowState	189
6.17.7	TDataPacketHandler.RestoreRecord	189
6.17.8	TDataPacketHandler.GotoNextRecord	189
6.17.9	TDataPacketHandler.StoreFieldDefs	189
6.17.10	TDataPacketHandler.StoreRecord	190
6.17.11	TDataPacketHandler.FinalizeStoreRecords	190
6.17.12	TDataPacketHandler.RecognizeStream	190
6.18	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex	190
6.18.1	Description	190
6.18.2	Method overview	191
6.18.3	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollBackward	191
6.18.4	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollForward	191
6.18.5	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GetCurrent	191
6.18.6	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollFirst	192
6.18.7	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollLast	192
6.18.8	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GetRecord	192

6.18.9	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord	192
6.18.10	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SetToLastRecord	192
6.18.11	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord	192
6.18.12	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord	193
6.18.13	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.CanScrollForward	193
6.18.14	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.DoScrollForward	193
6.18.15	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	193
6.18.16	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	193
6.18.17	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GotoBookmark	193
6.18.18	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.CompareBookmarks	194
6.18.19	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SameBookmarks	194
6.18.20	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InitialiseIndex	194
6.18.21	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord	194
6.18.22	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord	194
6.18.23	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.BeginUpdate	194
6.18.24	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.AddRecord	195
6.18.25	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	195
6.18.26	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex	195
6.18.27	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord	195
6.18.28	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.EndUpdate	195
6.19	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler	196
6.19.1	Method overview	196
6.19.2	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.Create	196
6.19.3	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.LoadFieldDefs	196
6.19.4	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.StoreFieldDefs	196
6.19.5	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.InitLoadRecords	196
6.19.6	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GetCurrentRecord	196
6.19.7	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GetRecordRowState	196
6.19.8	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.RestoreRecord	197
6.19.9	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GotoNextRecord	197
6.19.10	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.StoreRecord	197
6.19.11	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.FinalizeStoreRecords	197
6.19.12	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.RecognizeStream	197
6.20	TUniDirectionalBufIndex	197
6.20.1	Description	197
6.20.2	Method overview	198
6.20.3	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollBackward	198
6.20.4	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollForward	198
6.20.5	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.GetCurrent	198
6.20.6	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollFirst	198

6.20.7	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollLast	199
6.20.8	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord	199
6.20.9	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.SetToLastRecord	199
6.20.10	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord	199
6.20.11	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord	199
6.20.12	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.CanScrollForward	199
6.20.13	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.DoScrollForward	200
6.20.14	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	200
6.20.15	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	200
6.20.16	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.GotoBookmark	200
6.20.17	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.InitialiseIndex	200
6.20.18	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord	200
6.20.19	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord	200
6.20.20	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.BeginUpdate	201
6.20.21	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.AddRecord	201
6.20.22	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	201
6.20.23	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex	201
6.20.24	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord	201
6.20.25	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.EndUpdate	201
7	Reference for unit 'bufstream'	202
7.1	Used units	202
7.2	Overview	202
7.3	Constants, types and variables	202
7.3.1	Constants	202
7.4	TBufferedFileStream	203
7.4.1	Description	203
7.4.2	Method overview	203
7.4.3	TBufferedFileStream.Create	203
7.4.4	TBufferedFileStream.Destroy	204
7.4.5	TBufferedFileStream.Seek	204
7.4.6	TBufferedFileStream.Read	205
7.4.7	TBufferedFileStream.Write	205
7.4.8	TBufferedFileStream.Flush	206
7.4.9	TBufferedFileStream.InitializeCache	206
7.5	TBufStream	206
7.5.1	Description	206
7.5.2	Method overview	207
7.5.3	Property overview	207
7.5.4	TBufStream.Create	207

7.5.5	TBufStream.Destroy	207
7.5.6	TBufStream.Buffer	207
7.5.7	TBufStream.Capacity	208
7.5.8	TBufStream.BufferPos	208
7.5.9	TBufStream.BufferSize	208
7.6	TReadBufStream	208
7.6.1	Description	208
7.6.2	Method overview	209
7.6.3	TReadBufStream.Seek	209
7.6.4	TReadBufStream.Read	209
7.7	TWriteBufStream	209
7.7.1	Description	209
7.7.2	Method overview	209
7.7.3	TWriteBufStream.Destroy	210
7.7.4	TWriteBufStream.Seek	210
7.7.5	TWriteBufStream.Write	210
8	Reference for unit 'CacheCls'	211
8.1	Used units	211
8.2	Overview	211
8.3	Constants, types and variables	211
8.3.1	Resource strings	211
8.3.2	Types	211
8.4	TCacheSlot	212
8.5	ECacheError	212
8.5.1	Description	212
8.6	TCache	212
8.6.1	Description	212
8.6.2	Method overview	213
8.6.3	Property overview	213
8.6.4	TCache.Create	213
8.6.5	TCache.Destroy	213
8.6.6	TCache.Add	213
8.6.7	TCache.AddNew	214
8.6.8	TCache.FindSlot	214
8.6.9	TCache.IndexOf	214
8.6.10	TCache.Remove	215
8.6.11	TCache.Data	215
8.6.12	TCache.MRUSlot	215
8.6.13	TCache.LRUSlot	216

8.6.14	TCache.SlotCount	216
8.6.15	TCache.Slots	216
8.6.16	TCache.OnIsDataEqual	216
8.6.17	TCache.OnFreeSlot	217
9	Reference for unit 'Contrns'	218
9.1	Used units	218
9.2	Overview	218
9.3	Constants, types and variables	218
9.3.1	Constants	218
9.3.2	Types	219
9.4	Procedures and functions	222
9.4.1	RSHash	222
9.5	TBucket	223
9.6	TBucketItem	223
9.7	THashItem	223
9.8	EDuplicate	223
9.8.1	Description	223
9.9	EKeyNotFound	224
9.9.1	Description	224
9.10	TBucketList	224
9.10.1	Description	224
9.10.2	Method overview	224
9.10.3	TBucketList.Create	224
9.11	TClassList	224
9.11.1	Description	224
9.11.2	Method overview	225
9.11.3	Property overview	225
9.11.4	TClassList.Add	225
9.11.5	TClassList.Extract	225
9.11.6	TClassList.Remove	225
9.11.7	TClassList.IndexOf	226
9.11.8	TClassList.First	226
9.11.9	TClassList.Last	226
9.11.10	TClassList.Insert	226
9.11.11	TClassList.Items	227
9.12	TComponentList	227
9.12.1	Description	227
9.12.2	Method overview	227
9.12.3	Property overview	227

9.12.4	TComponentList.Destroy	228
9.12.5	TComponentList.Add	228
9.12.6	TComponentList.Extract	228
9.12.7	TComponentList.Remove	228
9.12.8	TComponentList.IndexOf	229
9.12.9	TComponentList.First	229
9.12.10	TComponentList.Last	229
9.12.11	TComponentList.Insert	230
9.12.12	TComponentList.Items	230
9.13	TCustomBucketList	230
9.13.1	Description	230
9.13.2	Method overview	231
9.13.3	Property overview	231
9.13.4	TCustomBucketList.Destroy	231
9.13.5	TCustomBucketList.Clear	231
9.13.6	TCustomBucketList.Add	231
9.13.7	TCustomBucketList.Assign	232
9.13.8	TCustomBucketList.Exists	232
9.13.9	TCustomBucketList.Find	232
9.13.10	TCustomBucketList.ForEach	232
9.13.11	TCustomBucketList.Remove	233
9.13.12	TCustomBucketList.Data	233
9.14	TFPCustomHashTable	233
9.14.1	Description	233
9.14.2	Method overview	234
9.14.3	Property overview	234
9.14.4	TFPCustomHashTable.Create	234
9.14.5	TFPCustomHashTable.CreateWith	234
9.14.6	TFPCustomHashTable.Destroy	235
9.14.7	TFPCustomHashTable.ChangeTableSize	235
9.14.8	TFPCustomHashTable.Clear	235
9.14.9	TFPCustomHashTable.Delete	235
9.14.10	TFPCustomHashTable.Find	236
9.14.11	TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty	236
9.14.12	TFPCustomHashTable.HashFunction	236
9.14.13	TFPCustomHashTable.Count	236
9.14.14	TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize	237
9.14.15	TFPCustomHashTable.HashTable	237
9.14.16	TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots	237
9.14.17	TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor	237

9.14.18	TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen	238
9.14.19	TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength	238
9.14.20	TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions	238
9.14.21	TFPCustomHashTable.Density	239
9.15	TFPDataHashTable	239
9.15.1	Description	239
9.15.2	Method overview	239
9.15.3	Property overview	239
9.15.4	TFPDataHashTable.Iterate	239
9.15.5	TFPDataHashTable.Add	240
9.15.6	TFPDataHashTable.Items	240
9.16	TFPHashList	240
9.16.1	Description	240
9.16.2	Method overview	241
9.16.3	Property overview	241
9.16.4	TFPHashList.Create	241
9.16.5	TFPHashList.Destroy	241
9.16.6	TFPHashList.Add	242
9.16.7	TFPHashList.Clear	242
9.16.8	TFPHashList.NameOfIndex	242
9.16.9	TFPHashList.HashOfIndex	242
9.16.10	TFPHashList.GetNextCollision	243
9.16.11	TFPHashList.Delete	243
9.16.12	TFPHashList.Error	243
9.16.13	TFPHashList.Expand	243
9.16.14	TFPHashList.Extract	243
9.16.15	TFPHashList.IndexOf	244
9.16.16	TFPHashList.Find	244
9.16.17	TFPHashList.FindIndexOf	244
9.16.18	TFPHashList.FindWithHash	244
9.16.19	TFPHashList.Rename	245
9.16.20	TFPHashList.Remove	245
9.16.21	TFPHashList.Pack	245
9.16.22	TFPHashList.ShowStatistics	245
9.16.23	TFPHashList.ForEachCall	246
9.16.24	TFPHashList.Capacity	246
9.16.25	TFPHashList.Count	246
9.16.26	TFPHashList.Items	246
9.16.27	TFPHashList.List	247
9.16.28	TFPHashList.Strs	247

9.17	TFPHashObject	247
9.17.1	Description	247
9.17.2	Method overview	247
9.17.3	Property overview	247
9.17.4	TFPHashObject.CreateNotOwned	248
9.17.5	TFPHashObject.Create	248
9.17.6	TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner	248
9.17.7	TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName	248
9.17.8	TFPHashObject.Rename	249
9.17.9	TFPHashObject.Name	249
9.17.10	TFPHashObject.Hash	249
9.18	TFPHashObjectList	250
9.18.1	Method overview	250
9.18.2	Property overview	250
9.18.3	TFPHashObjectList.Create	250
9.18.4	TFPHashObjectList.Destroy	250
9.18.5	TFPHashObjectList.Clear	251
9.18.6	TFPHashObjectList.Add	251
9.18.7	TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex	251
9.18.8	TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex	252
9.18.9	TFPHashObjectList.GetNextCollision	252
9.18.10	TFPHashObjectList.Delete	252
9.18.11	TFPHashObjectList.Expand	252
9.18.12	TFPHashObjectList.Extract	253
9.18.13	TFPHashObjectList.Remove	253
9.18.14	TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf	253
9.18.15	TFPHashObjectList.Find	253
9.18.16	TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf	254
9.18.17	TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash	254
9.18.18	TFPHashObjectList.Rename	254
9.18.19	TFPHashObjectList.FindInstanceOf	254
9.18.20	TFPHashObjectList.Pack	255
9.18.21	TFPHashObjectList.ShowStatistics	255
9.18.22	TFPHashObjectList.ForEachCall	255
9.18.23	TFPHashObjectList.Capacity	255
9.18.24	TFPHashObjectList.Count	256
9.18.25	TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects	256
9.18.26	TFPHashObjectList.Items	256
9.18.27	TFPHashObjectList.List	256
9.19	TFPObjectHashTable	257

9.19.1	Description	257
9.19.2	Method overview	257
9.19.3	Property overview	257
9.19.4	TFPObjectHashTable.Create	257
9.19.5	TFPObjectHashTable.CreateWith	257
9.19.6	TFPObjectHashTable.Iterate	258
9.19.7	TFPObjectHashTable.Add	258
9.19.8	TFPObjectHashTable.Items	258
9.19.9	TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects	258
9.20	TFPObjectList	259
9.20.1	Description	259
9.20.2	Method overview	259
9.20.3	Property overview	260
9.20.4	TFPObjectList.Create	260
9.20.5	TFPObjectList.Destroy	260
9.20.6	TFPObjectList.Clear	260
9.20.7	TFPObjectList.Add	260
9.20.8	TFPObjectList.Delete	261
9.20.9	TFPObjectList.Exchange	261
9.20.10	TFPObjectList.Expand	261
9.20.11	TFPObjectList.Extract	262
9.20.12	TFPObjectList.Remove	262
9.20.13	TFPObjectList.IndexOf	262
9.20.14	TFPObjectList.FindInstanceOf	262
9.20.15	TFPObjectList.Insert	263
9.20.16	TFPObjectList.First	263
9.20.17	TFPObjectList.Last	263
9.20.18	TFPObjectList.Move	264
9.20.19	TFPObjectList.Assign	264
9.20.20	TFPObjectList.Pack	264
9.20.21	TFPObjectList.Sort	264
9.20.22	TFPObjectList.ForEachCall	265
9.20.23	TFPObjectList.Capacity	265
9.20.24	TFPObjectList.Count	265
9.20.25	TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects	266
9.20.26	TFPObjectList.Items	266
9.20.27	TFPObjectList.List	266
9.21	TFPStringHashTable	266
9.21.1	Description	266
9.21.2	Method overview	267

9.21.3	Property overview	267
9.21.4	TFPStringHashTable.Iterate	267
9.21.5	TFPStringHashTable.Add	267
9.21.6	TFPStringHashTable.Items	267
9.22	THTCustomNode	268
9.22.1	Description	268
9.22.2	Method overview	268
9.22.3	Property overview	268
9.22.4	THTCustomNode.CreateWith	268
9.22.5	THTCustomNode.HasKey	268
9.22.6	THTCustomNode.Key	269
9.23	THTDataNode	269
9.23.1	Description	269
9.23.2	Property overview	269
9.23.3	THTDataNode.Data	269
9.24	THTObjectNode	269
9.24.1	Description	269
9.24.2	Property overview	270
9.24.3	THTObjectNode.Data	270
9.25	THTOwnedObjectNode	270
9.25.1	Description	270
9.25.2	Method overview	270
9.25.3	THTOwnedObjectNode.Destroy	270
9.26	THTStringNode	270
9.26.1	Description	270
9.26.2	Property overview	271
9.26.3	THTStringNode.Data	271
9.27	TObjectBucketList	271
9.27.1	Description	271
9.27.2	Method overview	271
9.27.3	Property overview	271
9.27.4	TObjectBucketList.Add	271
9.27.5	TObjectBucketList.Remove	272
9.27.6	TObjectBucketList.Data	272
9.28	TObjectList	272
9.28.1	Description	272
9.28.2	Method overview	272
9.28.3	Property overview	273
9.28.4	TObjectList.Create	273
9.28.5	TObjectList.Add	273

9.28.6	TObjectList.Extract	273
9.28.7	TObjectList.Remove	274
9.28.8	TObjectList.IndexOf	274
9.28.9	TObjectList.FindInstanceOf	274
9.28.10	TObjectList.Insert	275
9.28.11	TObjectList.First	275
9.28.12	TObjectList.Last	275
9.28.13	TObjectList.OwnsObjects	275
9.28.14	TObjectList.Items	276
9.29	TObjectQueue	276
9.29.1	Method overview	276
9.29.2	TObjectQueue.Push	276
9.29.3	TObjectQueue.Pop	276
9.29.4	TObjectQueue.Peek	277
9.30	TObjectStack	277
9.30.1	Description	277
9.30.2	Method overview	277
9.30.3	TObjectStack.Push	277
9.30.4	TObjectStack.Pop	277
9.30.5	TObjectStack.Peek	278
9.31	TOrderedList	278
9.31.1	Description	278
9.31.2	Method overview	278
9.31.3	TOrderedList.Create	278
9.31.4	TOrderedList.Destroy	279
9.31.5	TOrderedList.Count	279
9.31.6	TOrderedList.AtLeast	279
9.31.7	TOrderedList.Push	279
9.31.8	TOrderedList.Pop	280
9.31.9	TOrderedList.Peek	280
9.32	TQueue	280
9.32.1	Description	280
9.33	TStack	280
9.33.1	Description	280
10	Reference for unit 'csvdocument'	281
10.1	Used units	281
10.2	Overview	281
10.3	Constants, types and variables	281
10.3.1	Types	281

10.4	TCSVDocument	282
10.4.1	Description	282
10.4.2	Method overview	282
10.4.3	Property overview	282
10.4.4	TCSVDocument.Create	282
10.4.5	TCSVDocument.Destroy	283
10.4.6	TCSVDocument.LoadFromFile	283
10.4.7	TCSVDocument.LoadFromStream	283
10.4.8	TCSVDocument.SaveToFile	284
10.4.9	TCSVDocument.SaveToStream	284
10.4.10	TCSVDocument.AddRow	284
10.4.11	TCSVDocument.AddCell	284
10.4.12	TCSVDocument.InsertRow	285
10.4.13	TCSVDocument.InsertCell	285
10.4.14	TCSVDocument.RemoveRow	285
10.4.15	TCSVDocument.RemoveCell	285
10.4.16	TCSVDocument.HasRow	286
10.4.17	TCSVDocument.HasCell	286
10.4.18	TCSVDocument.IndexOfCol	286
10.4.19	TCSVDocument.IndexOfRow	286
10.4.20	TCSVDocument.Clear	287
10.4.21	TCSVDocument.CloneRow	287
10.4.22	TCSVDocument.ExchangeRows	287
10.4.23	TCSVDocument.UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings	287
10.4.24	TCSVDocument.RemoveTrailingEmptyCells	287
10.4.25	TCSVDocument.Cells	288
10.4.26	TCSVDocument.RowCount	288
10.4.27	TCSVDocument.ColCount	288
10.4.28	TCSVDocument.MaxColCount	288
10.4.29	TCSVDocument.CSVText	289
11	Reference for unit 'csvreadwrite'	290
11.1	Used units	290
11.2	Overview	290
11.3	Constants, types and variables	290
11.3.1	Types	290
11.4	Procedures and functions	291
11.4.1	ChangeLineEndings	291
11.5	TCSVBuilder	291
11.5.1	Description	291

11.5.2	Method overview	291
11.5.3	Property overview	292
11.5.4	TCSVBuilder.Create	292
11.5.5	TCSVBuilder.Destroy	292
11.5.6	TCSVBuilder.SetOutput	292
11.5.7	TCSVBuilder.ResetBuilder	292
11.5.8	TCSVBuilder.AppendCell	293
11.5.9	TCSVBuilder.AppendRow	293
11.5.10	TCSVBuilder.DefaultOutput	293
11.5.11	TCSVBuilder.DefaultOutputAsString	293
11.6	TCSVHandler	294
11.6.1	Description	294
11.6.2	Method overview	294
11.6.3	Property overview	294
11.6.4	TCSVHandler.Create	294
11.6.5	TCSVHandler.Assign	294
11.6.6	TCSVHandler.AssignCSVProperties	295
11.6.7	TCSVHandler.Delimiter	295
11.6.8	TCSVHandler.QuoteChar	295
11.6.9	TCSVHandler.LineEnding	295
11.6.10	TCSVHandler.IgnoreOuterWhitespace	296
11.6.11	TCSVHandler.QuoteOuterWhitespace	296
11.6.12	TCSVHandler.EqualColCountPerRow	296
11.7	TCSVParser	296
11.7.1	Description	296
11.7.2	Method overview	297
11.7.3	Property overview	297
11.7.4	TCSVParser.Create	297
11.7.5	TCSVParser.Destroy	297
11.7.6	TCSVParser.SetSource	298
11.7.7	TCSVParser.ResetParser	298
11.7.8	TCSVParser.ParseNextCell	298
11.7.9	TCSVParser.CurrentRow	298
11.7.10	TCSVParser.CurrentCol	299
11.7.11	TCSVParser.CurrentCellText	299
11.7.12	TCSVParser.MaxColCount	299
11.7.13	TCSVParser.FreeStream	300
11.7.14	TCSVParser.BOM	300
11.7.15	TCSVParser.DetectBOM	300

12 Reference for unit 'CustApp'	301
12.1 Used units	301
12.2 Overview	301
12.3 Constants, types and variables	301
12.3.1 Types	301
12.3.2 Variables	302
12.4 TCustomApplication	302
12.4.1 Description	302
12.4.2 Method overview	303
12.4.3 Property overview	303
12.4.4 TCustomApplication.Create	303
12.4.5 TCustomApplication.Destroy	304
12.4.6 TCustomApplication.HandleException	304
12.4.7 TCustomApplication.Initialize	304
12.4.8 TCustomApplication.Run	305
12.4.9 TCustomApplication.ShowException	305
12.4.10 TCustomApplication.Terminate	305
12.4.11 TCustomApplication.FindOptionIndex	306
12.4.12 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue	306
12.4.13 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues	307
12.4.14 TCustomApplication.HasOption	307
12.4.15 TCustomApplication.CheckOptions	307
12.4.16 TCustomApplication.GetNonOptions	308
12.4.17 TCustomApplication.GetEnvironmentList	309
12.4.18 TCustomApplication.Log	309
12.4.19 TCustomApplication.ExeName	309
12.4.20 TCustomApplication.HelpFile	310
12.4.21 TCustomApplication.Terminated	310
12.4.22 TCustomApplication.Title	310
12.4.23 TCustomApplication.OnException	310
12.4.24 TCustomApplication.ConsoleApplication	311
12.4.25 TCustomApplication.Location	311
12.4.26 TCustomApplication.Params	311
12.4.27 TCustomApplication.ParamCount	312
12.4.28 TCustomApplication.EnvironmentVariable	312
12.4.29 TCustomApplication.OptionChar	312
12.4.30 TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveOptions	312
12.4.31 TCustomApplication.StopOnException	313
12.4.32 TCustomApplication.ExceptionExitCode	313
12.4.33 TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter	313

12.4.34	TCustomApplication.SingleInstance	314
12.4.35	TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass	314
12.4.36	TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceEnabled	314
13	Reference for unit 'daemonapp'	315
13.1	Used units	315
13.2	Overview	315
13.3	Constants, types and variables	316
13.3.1	Resource strings	316
13.3.2	Types	317
13.3.3	Variables	325
13.4	Procedures and functions	325
13.4.1	Application	325
13.4.2	DaemonError	325
13.4.3	RegisterDaemonApplicationClass	326
13.4.4	RegisterDaemonClass	326
13.4.5	RegisterDaemonMapper	326
13.5	EDaemon	326
13.5.1	Description	326
13.6	TCustomDaemon	327
13.6.1	Description	327
13.6.2	Method overview	327
13.6.3	Property overview	327
13.6.4	TCustomDaemon.CheckControlMessages	327
13.6.5	TCustomDaemon.LogMessage	327
13.6.6	TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus	328
13.6.7	TCustomDaemon.Definition	328
13.6.8	TCustomDaemon.DaemonThread	328
13.6.9	TCustomDaemon.Controller	329
13.6.10	TCustomDaemon.Status	329
13.6.11	TCustomDaemon.Logger	329
13.7	TCustomDaemonApplication	329
13.7.1	Description	329
13.7.2	Method overview	330
13.7.3	Property overview	330
13.7.4	TCustomDaemonApplication.Create	330
13.7.5	TCustomDaemonApplication.Destroy	330
13.7.6	TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowException	330
13.7.7	TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon	331
13.7.8	TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons	331

13.7.9	TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons	331
13.7.10	TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons	331
13.7.11	TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons	332
13.7.12	TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowHelp	332
13.7.13	TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateForm	332
13.7.14	TCustomDaemonApplication.OnRun	332
13.7.15	TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog	333
13.7.16	TCustomDaemonApplication.GUIMainLoop	333
13.7.17	TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle	333
13.7.18	TCustomDaemonApplication.RunMode	333
13.7.19	TCustomDaemonApplication.AutoRegisterMessageFile	334
13.8	TCustomDaemonMapper	334
13.8.1	Description	334
13.8.2	Method overview	334
13.8.3	Property overview	334
13.8.4	TCustomDaemonMapper.Create	334
13.8.5	TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy	335
13.8.6	TCustomDaemonMapper.DaemonDefs	335
13.8.7	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnCreate	335
13.8.8	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnDestroy	336
13.8.9	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnRun	336
13.8.10	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnInstall	336
13.8.11	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnUnInstall	336
13.9	TDaemon	337
13.9.1	Description	337
13.9.2	Property overview	337
13.9.3	TDaemon.Definition	337
13.9.4	TDaemon.Status	337
13.9.5	TDaemon.OnStart	337
13.9.6	TDaemon.OnStop	338
13.9.7	TDaemon.OnPause	338
13.9.8	TDaemon.OnContinue	338
13.9.9	TDaemon.OnShutDown	339
13.9.10	TDaemon.OnExecute	339
13.9.11	TDaemon.BeforeInstall	339
13.9.12	TDaemon.AfterInstall	340
13.9.13	TDaemon.BeforeUnInstall	340
13.9.14	TDaemon.AfterUnInstall	340
13.9.15	TDaemon.OnControlCode	340
13.9.16	TDaemon.OnControlCodeEvent	341

13.10	TDaemonApplication	341
13.10.1	Description	341
13.11	TDaemonController	341
13.11.1	Description	341
13.11.2	Method overview	341
13.11.3	Property overview	341
13.11.4	TDaemonController.Create	342
13.11.5	TDaemonController.Destroy	342
13.11.6	TDaemonController.StartService	342
13.11.7	TDaemonController.Main	342
13.11.8	TDaemonController.Controller	343
13.11.9	TDaemonController.ReportStatus	343
13.11.10	TDaemonController.Daemon	343
13.11.11	TDaemonController.Params	343
13.11.12	TDaemonController.LastStatus	344
13.11.13	TDaemonController.CheckPoint	344
13.12	TDaemonDef	344
13.12.1	Description	344
13.12.2	Method overview	344
13.12.3	Property overview	345
13.12.4	TDaemonDef.Create	345
13.12.5	TDaemonDef.Destroy	345
13.12.6	TDaemonDef.DaemonClass	345
13.12.7	TDaemonDef.Instance	346
13.12.8	TDaemonDef.DaemonClassName	346
13.12.9	TDaemonDef.Name	346
13.12.10	TDaemonDef.Description	346
13.12.11	TDaemonDef.DisplayName	347
13.12.12	TDaemonDef.RunArguments	347
13.12.13	TDaemonDef.Options	347
13.12.14	TDaemonDef.Enabled	347
13.12.15	TDaemonDef.WinBindings	348
13.12.16	TDaemonDef.OnCreateInstance	348
13.12.17	TDaemonDef.LogStatusReport	348
13.13	TDaemonDefs	348
13.13.1	Description	348
13.13.2	Method overview	349
13.13.3	Property overview	349
13.13.4	TDaemonDefs.Create	349
13.13.5	TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef	349

13.13.6 TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef	349
13.13.7 TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName	350
13.13.8 TDaemonDefs.Daemons	350
13.14TDaemonMapper	350
13.14.1 Description	350
13.14.2 Method overview	350
13.14.3 TDaemonMapper.Create	351
13.14.4 TDaemonMapper.CreateNew	351
13.15TDaemonThread	351
13.15.1 Description	351
13.15.2 Method overview	351
13.15.3 Property overview	351
13.15.4 TDaemonThread.Create	352
13.15.5 TDaemonThread.Execute	352
13.15.6 TDaemonThread.CheckControlMessage	352
13.15.7 TDaemonThread.StopDaemon	352
13.15.8 TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon	353
13.15.9 TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon	353
13.15.10TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon	353
13.15.11TDaemonThread.InterrogateDaemon	353
13.15.12TDaemonThread.Daemon	354
13.16TDependencies	354
13.16.1 Description	354
13.16.2 Method overview	354
13.16.3 Property overview	354
13.16.4 TDependencies.Create	354
13.16.5 TDependencies.Items	354
13.17TDependency	355
13.17.1 Description	355
13.17.2 Method overview	355
13.17.3 Property overview	355
13.17.4 TDependency.Assign	355
13.17.5 TDependency.Name	355
13.17.6 TDependency.IsGroup	355
13.18TWinBindings	356
13.18.1 Description	356
13.18.2 Method overview	356
13.18.3 Property overview	356
13.18.4 TWinBindings.Create	356
13.18.5 TWinBindings.Destroy	356

13.18.6	TwInBindings.Assign	357
13.18.7	TwInBindings.ErrCode	357
13.18.8	TwInBindings.Win32ErrCode	357
13.18.9	TwInBindings.Dependencies	357
13.18.10	TwInBindings.GroupName	358
13.18.11	TwInBindings.Password	358
13.18.12	TwInBindings.UserName	358
13.18.13	TwInBindings.StartType	358
13.18.14	TwInBindings.WaitHint	359
13.18.15	TwInBindings.IDTag	359
13.18.16	TwInBindings.ServiceType	359
13.18.17	TwInBindings.ErrorSeverity	359
13.18.18	TwInBindings.AcceptedCodes	360
14	Reference for unit 'DB'	361
14.1	Used units	361
14.2	Overview	361
14.3	Constants, types and variables	361
14.3.1	Constants	361
14.3.2	Types	363
14.3.3	Variables	384
14.4	Procedures and functions	384
14.4.1	BuffersEqual	384
14.4.2	DatabaseError	384
14.4.3	DatabaseErrorFmt	385
14.4.4	DateTimeRecToDateTime	385
14.4.5	DateTimeToDateTimeRec	385
14.4.6	DisposeMem	385
14.4.7	enumerator(TDataSet):TDataSetEnumerator	386
14.4.8	ExtractFieldName	386
14.4.9	SkipComments	386
14.5	TLookupListRec	387
14.6	EDatabaseError	387
14.6.1	Description	387
14.7	EUpdateError	387
14.7.1	Description	387
14.7.2	Method overview	387
14.7.3	Property overview	387
14.7.4	EUpdateError.Create	387
14.7.5	EUpdateError.Destroy	388

14.7.6	EUpdateError.Context	388
14.7.7	EUpdateError.ErrorCode	388
14.7.8	EUpdateError.OriginalException	389
14.7.9	EUpdateError.PreviousError	389
14.8	IProviderSupport	389
14.8.1	Description	389
14.8.2	Method overview	390
14.8.3	IProviderSupport.PSEndTransaction	390
14.8.4	IProviderSupport.PSExecute	390
14.8.5	IProviderSupport.PSExecuteStatement	390
14.8.6	IProviderSupport.PSGetAttributes	391
14.8.7	IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandText	391
14.8.8	IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandType	391
14.8.9	IProviderSupport.PSGetDefaultOrder	392
14.8.10	IProviderSupport.PSGetIndexDefs	392
14.8.11	IProviderSupport.PSGetKeyFields	392
14.8.12	IProviderSupport.PSGetParams	392
14.8.13	IProviderSupport.PSGetQuoteChar	393
14.8.14	IProviderSupport.PSGetTableName	393
14.8.15	IProviderSupport.PSGetUpdateException	393
14.8.16	IProviderSupport.PSInTransaction	393
14.8.17	IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLBased	394
14.8.18	IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLSupported	394
14.8.19	IProviderSupport.PSReset	394
14.8.20	IProviderSupport.PSSetCommandText	394
14.8.21	IProviderSupport.PSSetParams	395
14.8.22	IProviderSupport.PSStartTransaction	395
14.8.23	IProviderSupport.PSUpdateRecord	395
14.9	TArrayField	395
14.9.1	Method overview	395
14.9.2	TArrayField.Create	395
14.10	TAutoIncField	396
14.10.1	Description	396
14.10.2	Method overview	396
14.10.3	TAutoIncField.Create	396
14.11	TBCDField	396
14.11.1	Description	396
14.11.2	Method overview	396
14.11.3	Property overview	397
14.11.4	TBCDField.Create	397

14.11.5 TBCDField.CheckRange	397
14.11.6 TBCDField.Value	397
14.11.7 TBCDField.Precision	398
14.11.8 TBCDField.Currency	398
14.11.9 TBCDField.MaxValue	398
14.11.10 TBCDField.MinValue	399
14.11.11 TBCDField.Size	399
14.12 TBinaryField	399
14.12.1 Description	399
14.12.2 Method overview	399
14.12.3 Property overview	399
14.12.4 TBinaryField.Create	400
14.12.5 TBinaryField.Size	400
14.13 TBlobField	400
14.13.1 Description	400
14.13.2 Method overview	400
14.13.3 Property overview	401
14.13.4 TBlobField.Create	401
14.13.5 TBlobField.Clear	401
14.13.6 TBlobField.IsBlob	401
14.13.7 TBlobField.LoadFromFile	401
14.13.8 TBlobField.LoadFromStream	402
14.13.9 TBlobField.SaveToFile	402
14.13.10 TBlobField.SaveToStream	402
14.13.11 TBlobField.SetFieldType	403
14.13.12 TBlobField.BlobSize	403
14.13.13 TBlobField.Modified	403
14.13.14 TBlobField.Value	403
14.13.15 TBlobField.Transliterate	404
14.13.16 TBlobField.BlobType	404
14.13.17 TBlobField.Size	404
14.14 TBooleanField	404
14.14.1 Description	404
14.14.2 Method overview	405
14.14.3 Property overview	405
14.14.4 TBooleanField.Create	405
14.14.5 TBooleanField.Value	405
14.14.6 TBooleanField.DisplayValues	405
14.15 TByteField	406
14.15.1 Description	406

14.15.2 Method overview	406
14.15.3 TByteField.Create	406
14.16TBytesField	406
14.16.1 Description	406
14.16.2 Method overview	406
14.16.3 TBytesField.Create	407
14.17TCheckConstraint	407
14.17.1 Description	407
14.17.2 Method overview	407
14.17.3 Property overview	407
14.17.4 TCheckConstraint.Assign	407
14.17.5 TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint	408
14.17.6 TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage	408
14.17.7 TCheckConstraint.FromDictionary	408
14.17.8 TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint	408
14.18TCheckConstraints	409
14.18.1 Description	409
14.18.2 Method overview	409
14.18.3 Property overview	409
14.18.4 TCheckConstraints.Create	409
14.18.5 TCheckConstraints.Add	409
14.18.6 TCheckConstraints.Items	409
14.19TCurrencyField	410
14.19.1 Description	410
14.19.2 Method overview	410
14.19.3 Property overview	410
14.19.4 TCurrencyField.Create	410
14.19.5 TCurrencyField.Currency	410
14.20TCustomConnection	411
14.20.1 Description	411
14.20.2 Method overview	411
14.20.3 Property overview	411
14.20.4 TCustomConnection.Close	411
14.20.5 TCustomConnection.Destroy	412
14.20.6 TCustomConnection.Open	412
14.20.7 TCustomConnection.DataSetCount	412
14.20.8 TCustomConnection.DataSets	413
14.20.9 TCustomConnection.Connected	413
14.20.10 TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt	413
14.20.11 TCustomConnection.AfterConnect	413

14.20.12	CustomConnection.AfterDisconnect	414
14.20.13	CustomConnection.BeforeConnect	414
14.20.14	CustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect	414
14.20.15	CustomConnection.OnLogin	414
14.20.16	CustomConnection.OnCloseError	415
14.21	TDatabase	415
14.21.1	Description	415
14.21.2	Method overview	415
14.21.3	Property overview	416
14.21.4	TDatabase.Create	416
14.21.5	TDatabase.Destroy	416
14.21.6	TDatabase.CloseDataSets	416
14.21.7	TDatabase.CloseTransactions	417
14.21.8	TDatabase.StartTransaction	417
14.21.9	TDatabase.EndTransaction	417
14.21.10	TDatabase.TransactionCount	417
14.21.11	ITDatabase.Transactions	418
14.21.12	TDatabase.Directory	418
14.21.13	TDatabase.IsSQLBased	418
14.21.14	TDatabase.Connected	418
14.21.15	TDatabase.DatabaseName	419
14.21.16	TDatabase.KeepConnection	419
14.21.17	TDatabase.Params	419
14.22	TDataLink	419
14.22.1	Description	419
14.22.2	Method overview	420
14.22.3	Property overview	420
14.22.4	TDataLink.Create	420
14.22.5	TDataLink.Destroy	420
14.22.6	TDataLink.Edit	421
14.22.7	TDataLink.UpdateRecord	421
14.22.8	TDataLink.ExecuteAction	421
14.22.9	TDataLink.UpdateAction	422
14.22.10	TDataLink.Active	422
14.22.11	ITDataLink.ActiveRecord	422
14.22.12	TDataLink.BOF	422
14.22.13	TDataLink.BufferCount	423
14.22.14	TDataLink.DataSet	423
14.22.15	TDataLink.DataSource	423
14.22.16	TDataLink.DataSourceFixed	423

14.22.17	TDataLink.Editing	424
14.22.18	TDataLink.Eof	424
14.22.19	TDataLink.ReadOnly	424
14.22.20	TDataLink.RecordCount	424
14.23	TDataSet	425
14.23.1	Description	425
14.23.2	Method overview	427
14.23.3	Property overview	429
14.23.4	TDataSet.Create	430
14.23.5	TDataSet.Destroy	430
14.23.6	TDataSet.ActiveBuffer	430
14.23.7	TDataSet.GetFieldData	430
14.23.8	TDataSet.SetFieldData	431
14.23.9	TDataSet.Append	431
14.23.10	TDataSet.AppendRecord	431
14.23.11	TDataSet.BookmarkValid	432
14.23.12	TDataSet.Cancel	432
14.23.13	TDataSet.CheckBrowseMode	432
14.23.14	TDataSet.ClearFields	432
14.23.15	TDataSet.Close	433
14.23.16	TDataSet.ControlsDisabled	433
14.23.17	TDataSet.CompareBookmarks	433
14.23.18	TDataSet.CreateBlobStream	434
14.23.19	TDataSet.CursorPosChanged	434
14.23.20	TDataSet.DataConvert	434
14.23.21	TDataSet.Delete	434
14.23.22	TDataSet.DisableControls	435
14.23.23	TDataSet.Edit	435
14.23.24	TDataSet.EnableControls	436
14.23.25	TDataSet.FieldByName	436
14.23.26	TDataSet.FindField	436
14.23.27	TDataSet.FindFirst	437
14.23.28	TDataSet.FindLast	437
14.23.29	TDataSet.FindNext	437
14.23.30	TDataSet.FindPrior	437
14.23.31	TDataSet.First	438
14.23.32	TDataSet.FreeBookmark	438
14.23.33	TDataSet.GetBookmark	438
14.23.34	TDataSet.GetCurrentRecord	439
14.23.35	TDataSet.GetFieldList	439

14.23.36	DataSet.GetFieldNames	439
14.23.37	DataSet.GotoBookmark	439
14.23.38	DataSet.Insert	440
14.23.39	DataSet.InsertRecord	440
14.23.40	DataSet.IsEmpty	440
14.23.41	DataSet.IsLinkedTo	440
14.23.42	DataSet.IsSequenced	441
14.23.43	DataSet.Last	441
14.23.44	DataSet.Locate	441
14.23.45	DataSet.Lookup	442
14.23.46	DataSet.MoveBy	442
14.23.47	DataSet.Next	442
14.23.48	DataSet.Open	443
14.23.49	DataSet.Post	443
14.23.50	DataSet.Prior	444
14.23.51	DataSet.Refresh	444
14.23.52	DataSet.Resync	444
14.23.53	DataSet.SetFields	444
14.23.54	DataSet.Translate	445
14.23.55	DataSet.UpdateCursorPos	445
14.23.56	DataSet.UpdateRecord	445
14.23.57	DataSet.UpdateStatus	446
14.23.58	DataSet.BlockReadSize	446
14.23.59	DataSet.BOF	446
14.23.60	DataSet.Bookmark	446
14.23.61	DataSet.CanModify	447
14.23.62	DataSet.DataSource	448
14.23.63	DataSet.DefaultFields	448
14.23.64	DataSet.EOF	448
14.23.65	DataSet.FieldCount	449
14.23.66	DataSet.FieldDefs	449
14.23.67	DataSet.Found	450
14.23.68	DataSet.Modified	450
14.23.69	DataSet.IsUniDirectional	450
14.23.70	DataSet.RecordCount	451
14.23.71	DataSet.RecNo	451
14.23.72	DataSet.RecordSize	451
14.23.73	DataSet.SparseArrays	452
14.23.74	DataSet.State	452
14.23.75	DataSet.Fields	452

14.23.76	TDataSet.FieldValues	453
14.23.77	TDataSet.Filter	453
14.23.78	TDataSet.Filtered	453
14.23.79	TDataSet.FilterOptions	454
14.23.80	TDataSet.Active	454
14.23.81	TDataSet.AutoCalcFields	454
14.23.82	TDataSet.BeforeOpen	455
14.23.83	TDataSet.AfterOpen	455
14.23.84	TDataSet.BeforeClose	455
14.23.85	TDataSet.AfterClose	455
14.23.86	TDataSet.BeforeInsert	456
14.23.87	TDataSet.AfterInsert	456
14.23.88	TDataSet.BeforeEdit	456
14.23.89	TDataSet.AfterEdit	457
14.23.90	TDataSet.BeforePost	457
14.23.91	TDataSet.AfterPost	457
14.23.92	TDataSet.BeforeCancel	458
14.23.93	TDataSet.AfterCancel	458
14.23.94	TDataSet.BeforeDelete	458
14.23.95	TDataSet.AfterDelete	459
14.23.96	TDataSet.BeforeScroll	459
14.23.97	TDataSet.AfterScroll	459
14.23.98	TDataSet.BeforeRefresh	460
14.23.99	TDataSet.AfterRefresh	460
14.23.100	TDataSet.OnCalcFields	460
14.23.101	TDataSet.OnDeleteError	461
14.23.102	TDataSet.OnEditError	461
14.23.103	TDataSet.OnFilterRecord	462
14.23.104	TDataSet.OnNewRecord	462
14.23.105	TDataSet.OnPostError	462
14.24	TDataSetEnumerator	463
14.24.1	Description	463
14.24.2	Method overview	463
14.24.3	Property overview	463
14.24.4	TDataSetEnumerator.Create	463
14.24.5	TDataSetEnumerator.MoveNext	463
14.24.6	TDataSetEnumerator.Current	464
14.25	TDataSource	464
14.25.1	Description	464
14.25.2	Method overview	464

14.25.3 Property overview	464
14.25.4 TDataSource.Create	465
14.25.5 TDataSource.Destroy	465
14.25.6 TDataSource.Edit	465
14.25.7 TDataSource.IsLinkedTo	465
14.25.8 TDataSource.State	466
14.25.9 TDataSource.AutoEdit	466
14.25.10 TDataSource.DataSet	466
14.25.11 TDataSource.Enabled	467
14.25.12 TDataSource.OnStateChange	467
14.25.13 TDataSource.OnDataChange	467
14.25.14 TDataSource.OnUpdateData	468
14.26 TDateField	468
14.26.1 Description	468
14.26.2 Method overview	468
14.26.3 TDateField.Create	468
14.27 TDateTimeField	468
14.27.1 Description	468
14.27.2 Method overview	469
14.27.3 Property overview	469
14.27.4 TDateTimeField.Create	469
14.27.5 TDateTimeField.Value	469
14.27.6 TDateTimeField.DisplayFormat	469
14.27.7 TDateTimeField.EditMask	470
14.28 TDBDataset	470
14.28.1 Description	470
14.28.2 Method overview	470
14.28.3 Property overview	470
14.28.4 TDBDataset.destroy	471
14.28.5 TDBDataset.DataBase	471
14.28.6 TDBDataset.Transaction	471
14.29 TDBTransaction	471
14.29.1 Description	471
14.29.2 Method overview	472
14.29.3 Property overview	472
14.29.4 TDBTransaction.Create	472
14.29.5 TDBTransaction.Destroy	472
14.29.6 TDBTransaction.CloseDataSets	472
14.29.7 TDBTransaction.DataBase	473
14.29.8 TDBTransaction.Active	473

14.30 TDefCollection	473
14.30.1 Description	473
14.30.2 Method overview	473
14.30.3 Property overview	473
14.30.4 TDefCollection.create	474
14.30.5 TDefCollection.Find	474
14.30.6 TDefCollection.GetItemNames	474
14.30.7 TDefCollection.IndexOf	474
14.30.8 TDefCollection.Dataset	475
14.30.9 TDefCollection.Updated	475
14.31 TDetailDataLink	475
14.31.1 Description	475
14.31.2 Property overview	475
14.31.3 TDetailDataLink.DetailDataSet	475
14.32 TExtendedField	476
14.32.1 Method overview	476
14.32.2 Property overview	476
14.32.3 TExtendedField.Create	476
14.32.4 TExtendedField.CheckRange	476
14.32.5 TExtendedField.Value	476
14.32.6 TExtendedField.Currency	476
14.32.7 TExtendedField.MaxValue	476
14.32.8 TExtendedField.MinValue	477
14.32.9 TExtendedField.Precision	477
14.33 TField	477
14.33.1 Description	477
14.33.2 Method overview	477
14.33.3 Property overview	479
14.33.4 TField.Create	480
14.33.5 TField.Destroy	480
14.33.6 TField.Assign	480
14.33.7 TField.AssignValue	480
14.33.8 TField.Clear	481
14.33.9 TField.FocusControl	481
14.33.10 TField.GetData	481
14.33.11 TField.IsBlob	482
14.33.12 TField.IsValidChar	482
14.33.13 TField.RefreshLookupList	482
14.33.14 TField.SetData	482
14.33.15 TField.SetFieldType	483

14.33.16	Field.Validate	483
14.33.17	Field.AsBCD	483
14.33.18	Field.AsBoolean	484
14.33.19	Field.AsBytes	484
14.33.20	Field.AsCurrency	484
14.33.21	Field.AsDateTime	485
14.33.22	Field.AsExtended	485
14.33.23	Field.AsFloat	485
14.33.24	Field.AsLongint	485
14.33.25	Field.AsLongWord	486
14.33.26	Field.AsLargeInt	486
14.33.27	Field.AsInteger	486
14.33.28	Field.AsSingle	487
14.33.29	Field.AsString	487
14.33.30	Field.AsAnsiString	487
14.33.31	Field.AsUnicodeString	488
14.33.32	Field.AsUTF8String	488
14.33.33	Field.AsWideString	488
14.33.34	Field.AsVariant	489
14.33.35	Field.AttributeSet	489
14.33.36	Field.Calculated	489
14.33.37	Field.CanModify	489
14.33.38	Field.CurValue	490
14.33.39	Field.DataSet	490
14.33.40	Field.DataSize	490
14.33.41	Field.DataType	490
14.33.42	Field.DisplayName	491
14.33.43	Field.DisplayText	491
14.33.44	Field.EditMask	491
14.33.45	Field.EditMaskPtr	492
14.33.46	Field.FieldNo	492
14.33.47	Field.IsIndexField	492
14.33.48	Field.IsNull	492
14.33.49	Field.NewValue	493
14.33.50	Field.Offset	493
14.33.51	Field.Size	493
14.33.52	Field.Text	493
14.33.53	Field.ValidChars	494
14.33.54	Field.Value	494
14.33.55	Field.OldValue	494

14.33.56	Field.LookupList	495
14.33.57	Field.FieldDef	495
14.33.58	Field.Alignment	495
14.33.59	Field.CustomConstraint	496
14.33.60	Field.ConstraintErrorMessage	496
14.33.61	Field.DefaultExpression	496
14.33.62	Field.DisplayLabel	497
14.33.63	Field.DisplayWidth	497
14.33.64	Field.FieldKind	497
14.33.65	Field.FieldName	497
14.33.66	Field.HasConstraints	498
14.33.67	Field.Index	498
14.33.68	Field.ImportedConstraint	498
14.33.69	Field.KeyFields	499
14.33.70	Field.LookupCache	499
14.33.71	Field.LookupDataSet	499
14.33.72	Field.LookupKeyFields	499
14.33.73	Field.LookupResultField	500
14.33.74	Field.Lookup	500
14.33.75	Field.Origin	500
14.33.76	Field.ParentField	500
14.33.77	Field.ProviderFlags	501
14.33.78	Field.ReadOnly	501
14.33.79	Field.Required	501
14.33.80	Field.Visible	502
14.33.81	Field.OnChange	502
14.33.82	Field.OnGetText	502
14.33.83	Field.OnSetText	502
14.33.84	Field.OnValidate	503
14.34	TFieldDef	503
14.34.1	Description	503
14.34.2	Method overview	503
14.34.3	Property overview	504
14.34.4	TFieldDef.Create	504
14.34.5	TFieldDef.Destroy	504
14.34.6	TFieldDef.AddChild	505
14.34.7	TFieldDef.Assign	505
14.34.8	TFieldDef.CreateField	505
14.34.9	TFieldDef.HasChildDefs	505
14.34.10	TFieldDef.FieldClass	505

14.34.1	FieldDef.FieldNo	506
14.34.2	FieldDef.CharSize	506
14.34.3	FieldDef.InternalCalcField	506
14.34.4	FieldDef.ParentDef	507
14.34.5	FieldDef.Required	507
14.34.6	FieldDef.Codepage	507
14.34.7	FieldDef.Attributes	507
14.34.8	FieldDef.DataType	508
14.34.9	FieldDef.ChildDefs	508
14.34.20	FieldDef.Precision	508
14.34.2	FieldDef.Size	508
14.35	TFieldDefs	509
14.35.1	Description	509
14.35.2	Method overview	509
14.35.3	Property overview	509
14.35.4	TFieldDefs.Create	509
14.35.5	TFieldDefs.Add	509
14.35.6	TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef	510
14.35.7	TFieldDefs.Assign	510
14.35.8	TFieldDefs.Find	510
14.35.9	TFieldDefs.Update	511
14.35.10	TFieldDefs.MakeNameUnique	511
14.35.1	FieldDefs.HiddenFields	511
14.35.12	TFieldDefs.Items	511
14.35.13	TFieldDefs.ParentDef	512
14.36	TFields	512
14.36.1	Description	512
14.36.2	Method overview	512
14.36.3	Property overview	512
14.36.4	TFields.Create	512
14.36.5	TFields.Destroy	513
14.36.6	TFields.Add	513
14.36.7	TFields.CheckFieldName	513
14.36.8	TFields.CheckFieldNames	513
14.36.9	TFields.Clear	514
14.36.10	TFields.FindField	514
14.36.1	Fields.FieldByName	514
14.36.12	TFields.FieldByNumber	514
14.36.13	TFields.GetEnumerator	515
14.36.14	TFields.GetFieldNames	515

14.36.15	TFields.IndexOf	515
14.36.16	TFields.Remove	515
14.36.17	TFields.Count	516
14.36.18	TFields.Dataset	516
14.36.19	TFields.Fields	516
14.37	TFieldsEnumerator	516
14.37.1	Description	516
14.37.2	Method overview	517
14.37.3	Property overview	517
14.37.4	TFieldsEnumerator.Create	517
14.37.5	TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext	517
14.37.6	TFieldsEnumerator.Current	518
14.38	TFloatField	518
14.38.1	Description	518
14.38.2	Method overview	518
14.38.3	Property overview	518
14.38.4	TFloatField.Create	518
14.38.5	TFloatField.CheckRange	519
14.38.6	TFloatField.Value	519
14.38.7	TFloatField.Currency	519
14.38.8	TFloatField.MaxValue	519
14.38.9	TFloatField.MinValue	520
14.38.10	TFloatField.Precision	520
14.39	TFMTBCDField	520
14.39.1	Description	520
14.39.2	Method overview	521
14.39.3	Property overview	521
14.39.4	TFMTBCDField.Create	521
14.39.5	TFMTBCDField.CheckRange	521
14.39.6	TFMTBCDField.Value	521
14.39.7	TFMTBCDField.Precision	522
14.39.8	TFMTBCDField.Currency	522
14.39.9	TFMTBCDField.MaxValue	522
14.39.10	TFMTBCDField.MinValue	522
14.39.11	TFMTBCDField.Size	523
14.40	TGraphicField	523
14.40.1	Description	523
14.40.2	Method overview	523
14.40.3	TGraphicField.Create	523
14.41	TGuidField	523

14.41.1 Description	523
14.41.2 Method overview	524
14.41.3 Property overview	524
14.41.4 TGuidIdField.Create	524
14.41.5 TGuidIdField.AsGuid	524
14.42TIndexDef	524
14.42.1 Description	524
14.42.2 Method overview	525
14.42.3 Property overview	525
14.42.4 TIndexDef.Create	525
14.42.5 TIndexDef.Expression	525
14.42.6 TIndexDef.Fields	525
14.42.7 TIndexDef.CaseInsFields	526
14.42.8 TIndexDef.DescFields	526
14.42.9 TIndexDef.Options	526
14.42.10TIndexDef.Source	527
14.43TIndexDefs	527
14.43.1 Description	527
14.43.2 Method overview	527
14.43.3 Property overview	527
14.43.4 TIndexDefs.Create	527
14.43.5 TIndexDefs.Add	528
14.43.6 TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef	528
14.43.7 TIndexDefs.Find	528
14.43.8 TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields	528
14.43.9 TIndexDefs.GetIndexForFields	529
14.43.10TIndexDefs.Update	529
14.43.11TIndexDefs.Items	529
14.44TIntegerField	529
14.44.1 Description	529
14.45TLargeintField	529
14.45.1 Description	529
14.45.2 Method overview	530
14.45.3 Property overview	530
14.45.4 TLargeintField.Create	530
14.45.5 TLargeintField.CheckRange	530
14.45.6 TLargeintField.Value	530
14.45.7 TLargeintField.MaxValue	531
14.45.8 TLargeintField.MinValue	531
14.46TLongintField	531

14.46.1 Description	531
14.46.2 Method overview	532
14.46.3 Property overview	532
14.46.4 TLongintField.Create	532
14.46.5 TLongintField.CheckRange	532
14.46.6 TLongintField.Value	532
14.46.7 TLongintField.MaxValue	533
14.46.8 TLongintField.MinValue	533
14.47TLongWordField	533
14.47.1 Description	533
14.47.2 Method overview	533
14.47.3 Property overview	533
14.47.4 TLongWordField.Create	534
14.47.5 TLongWordField.CheckRange	534
14.47.6 TLongWordField.Value	534
14.47.7 TLongWordField.MaxValue	534
14.47.8 TLongWordField.MinValue	535
14.48TLookupList	535
14.48.1 Description	535
14.48.2 Method overview	535
14.48.3 TLookupList.Create	535
14.48.4 TLookupList.Destroy	535
14.48.5 TLookupList.Add	536
14.48.6 TLookupList.Clear	536
14.48.7 TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue	536
14.48.8 TLookupList.ValueOfKey	536
14.48.9 TLookupList.ValuesToStrings	537
14.49TMasterDataLink	537
14.49.1 Description	537
14.49.2 Method overview	537
14.49.3 Property overview	537
14.49.4 TMasterDataLink.Create	537
14.49.5 TMasterDataLink.Destroy	538
14.49.6 TMasterDataLink.FieldNames	538
14.49.7 TMasterDataLink.Fields	538
14.49.8 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange	538
14.49.9 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable	539
14.50TMasterParamsDataLink	539
14.50.1 Description	539
14.50.2 Method overview	539

14.50.3 Property overview	539
14.50.4 TMasterParamsDataLink.Create	539
14.50.5 TMasterParamsDataLink.RefreshParamNames	540
14.50.6 TMasterParamsDataLink.CopyParamsFromMaster	540
14.50.7 TMasterParamsDataLink.Params	540
14.51 TMemoField	540
14.51.1 Description	540
14.51.2 Method overview	541
14.51.3 Property overview	541
14.51.4 TMemoField.Create	541
14.51.5 TMemoField.CodePage	541
14.51.6 TMemoField.Transliterate	541
14.52 TNamedItem	542
14.52.1 Description	542
14.52.2 Property overview	542
14.52.3 TNamedItem.DisplayName	542
14.52.4 TNamedItem.Name	542
14.53 TNumericField	542
14.53.1 Description	542
14.53.2 Method overview	543
14.53.3 Property overview	543
14.53.4 TNumericField.Create	543
14.53.5 TNumericField.Alignment	543
14.53.6 TNumericField.DisplayFormat	543
14.53.7 TNumericField.EditFormat	544
14.54 TObjectField	544
14.54.1 Property overview	544
14.54.2 TObjectField.FieldCount	544
14.54.3 TObjectField.Fields	544
14.54.4 TObjectField.FieldValues	544
14.54.5 TObjectField.UnNamed	545
14.54.6 TObjectField.ObjectType	545
14.55 TParam	545
14.55.1 Description	545
14.55.2 Method overview	545
14.55.3 Property overview	546
14.55.4 TParam.Create	546
14.55.5 TParam.Assign	547
14.55.6 TParam.AssignField	547
14.55.7 TParam.AssignToField	547

14.55.8 TParam.AssignFieldValue	547
14.55.9 TParam.AssignFromField	548
14.55.10 TParam.Clear	548
14.55.11 TParam.GetData	548
14.55.12 TParam.GetDataSize	548
14.55.13 TParam.LoadFromFile	549
14.55.14 TParam.LoadFromStream	549
14.55.15 TParam.SetBlobData	549
14.55.16 TParam.SetData	549
14.55.17 TParam.AsBCD	550
14.55.18 TParam.AsBlob	550
14.55.19 TParam.AsBoolean	550
14.55.20 TParam.AsByte	551
14.55.21 TParam.AsBytes	551
14.55.22 TParam.AsCurrency	551
14.55.23 TParam.AsDate	551
14.55.24 TParam.AsDateTime	552
14.55.25 TParam.AsFloat	552
14.55.26 TParam.AsInteger	552
14.55.27 TParam.AsLargeInt	552
14.55.28 TParam.AsLongWord	553
14.55.29 TParam.AsMemo	553
14.55.30 TParam.AsShortInt	553
14.55.31 TParam.AsSingle	553
14.55.32 TParam.AsSmallInt	553
14.55.33 TParam.AsString	554
14.55.34 TParam.AsAnsiString	554
14.55.35 TParam.AsUTF8String	554
14.55.36 TParam.AsUnicodeString	555
14.55.37 TParam.AsTime	555
14.55.38 TParam.AsWord	555
14.55.39 TParam.AsFmtBCD	555
14.55.40 TParam.Bound	556
14.55.41 TParam.Dataset	556
14.55.42 TParam.IsNull	556
14.55.43 TParam.NativeStr	556
14.55.44 TParam.Text	557
14.55.45 TParam.AsWideString	557
14.55.46 TParam.DataType	557
14.55.47 TParam.Name	557

14.55.48	TParam.NumericScale	558
14.55.49	TParam.ParamType	558
14.55.50	TParam.Precision	558
14.55.51	TParam.Size	559
14.55.52	TParam.Value	559
14.56	TParams	559
14.56.1	Description	559
14.56.2	Method overview	560
14.56.3	Property overview	560
14.56.4	TParams.Create	560
14.56.5	TParams.AddParam	560
14.56.6	TParams.AssignValues	561
14.56.7	TParams.CreateParam	561
14.56.8	TParams.FindParam	561
14.56.9	TParams.GetParamList	561
14.56.10	TParams.IsEqual	562
14.56.11	TParams.GetEnumerator	562
14.56.12	TParams.ParamByName	562
14.56.13	TParams.ParseSQL	562
14.56.14	TParams.RemoveParam	563
14.56.15	TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset	564
14.56.16	TParams.Dataset	564
14.56.17	TParams.Items	564
14.56.18	TParams.ParamValues	564
14.57	TParamsEnumerator	565
14.57.1	Description	565
14.57.2	Method overview	565
14.57.3	Property overview	565
14.57.4	TParamsEnumerator.Create	565
14.57.5	TParamsEnumerator.MoveNext	565
14.57.6	TParamsEnumerator.Current	566
14.58	TShortintField	566
14.58.1	Description	566
14.58.2	Method overview	566
14.58.3	TShortintField.Create	566
14.59	TSingleField	566
14.59.1	Method overview	566
14.59.2	Property overview	567
14.59.3	TSingleField.Create	567
14.59.4	TSingleField.CheckRange	567

14.59.5 TSingleField.Value	567
14.59.6 TSingleField.Currency	567
14.59.7 TSingleField.MaxValue	567
14.59.8 TSingleField.MinValue	567
14.59.9 TSingleField.Precision	568
14.60 TSmallintField	568
14.60.1 Description	568
14.60.2 Method overview	568
14.60.3 TSmallintField.Create	568
14.61 TStringField	568
14.61.1 Description	568
14.61.2 Method overview	569
14.61.3 Property overview	569
14.61.4 TStringField.Create	569
14.61.5 TStringField.SetFieldType	569
14.61.6 TStringField.CodePage	569
14.61.7 TStringField.FixedChar	570
14.61.8 TStringField.Transliterate	570
14.61.9 TStringField.Value	570
14.61.10 TStringField.EditMask	570
14.61.11 TStringField.Size	571
14.62 TTimeField	571
14.62.1 Description	571
14.62.2 Method overview	571
14.62.3 TTimeField.Create	571
14.63 TVarBytesField	572
14.63.1 Description	572
14.63.2 Method overview	572
14.63.3 TVarBytesField.Create	572
14.64 TVariantField	572
14.64.1 Description	572
14.64.2 Method overview	572
14.64.3 TVariantField.Create	573
14.65 TWideMemoField	573
14.65.1 Description	573
14.65.2 Method overview	573
14.65.3 Property overview	573
14.65.4 TWideMemoField.Create	573
14.65.5 TWideMemoField.Value	574
14.66 TWideStringField	574

14.66.1 Description	574
14.66.2 Method overview	574
14.66.3 Property overview	574
14.66.4 TWideStringField.Create	574
14.66.5 TWideStringField.SetFieldType	574
14.66.6 TWideStringField.Value	575
14.67 TWordField	575
14.67.1 Description	575
14.67.2 Method overview	575
14.67.3 TWordField.Create	575
15 Reference for unit 'dbugintf'	576
15.1 Used units	576
15.2 Overview	576
15.3 Writing a debug server.	576
15.4 Constants, types and variables	577
15.4.1 Resource strings	577
15.4.2 Types	577
15.4.3 Variables	577
15.5 Procedures and functions	578
15.5.1 FreeDebugClient	578
15.5.2 GetDebuggingEnabled	578
15.5.3 InitDebugClient	578
15.5.4 SendBoolean	579
15.5.5 SendDateTime	579
15.5.6 SendDebug	579
15.5.7 SendDebugEx	579
15.5.8 SendDebugFmt	580
15.5.9 SendDebugFmtEx	580
15.5.10 SendInteger	580
15.5.11 SendMethodEnter	581
15.5.12 SendMethodExit	581
15.5.13 SendPointer	581
15.5.14 SendSeparator	582
15.5.15 SetDebuggingEnabled	582
15.5.16 StartDebugServer	582
16 Reference for unit 'dbugmsg'	583
16.1 Used units	583
16.2 Overview	583
16.3 Constants, types and variables	583

16.3.1 Constants	583
16.3.2 Types	584
16.4 Procedures and functions	584
16.4.1 DebugMessageName	584
16.4.2 ReadDebugMessageFromStream	584
16.4.3 WriteDebugMessageToStream	584
16.5 TDebugMessage	585
17 Reference for unit 'eventlog'	586
17.1 Used units	586
17.2 Overview	586
17.3 Constants, types and variables	586
17.3.1 Resource strings	586
17.3.2 Types	587
17.4 ELogError	588
17.4.1 Description	588
17.5 TEventLog	588
17.5.1 Description	588
17.5.2 Method overview	588
17.5.3 Property overview	589
17.5.4 TEventLog.Destroy	589
17.5.5 TEventLog.EventTypeToString	589
17.5.6 TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile	589
17.5.7 TEventLog.UnRegisterMessageFile	590
17.5.8 TEventLog.Pause	591
17.5.9 TEventLog.Resume	591
17.5.10 TEventLog.Log	591
17.5.11 TEventLog.Warning	591
17.5.12 TEventLog.Error	592
17.5.13 TEventLog.Debug	592
17.5.14 TEventLog.Info	592
17.5.15 TEventLog.AppendContent	592
17.5.16 TEventLog.Identification	593
17.5.17 TEventLog.LogType	593
17.5.18 TEventLog.Active	593
17.5.19 TEventLog.RaiseExceptionOnError	594
17.5.20 TEventLog.DefaultEventType	594
17.5.21 TEventLog.FileName	594
17.5.22 TEventLog.TimeStampFormat	594
17.5.23 TEventLog.CustomLogType	595

17.5.24 TEventLog.EventIDOffset	595
17.5.25 TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory	595
17.5.26 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEventID	596
17.5.27 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEvent	596
17.5.28 TEventLog.OnLogMessage	596
17.5.29 TEventLog.Paused	596
18 Reference for unit 'ezcgi'	597
18.1 Used units	597
18.2 Overview	597
18.3 Constants, types and variables	597
18.3.1 Constants	597
18.4 ECGIException	597
18.4.1 Description	597
18.5 TEZcgi	598
18.5.1 Description	598
18.5.2 Method overview	598
18.5.3 Property overview	598
18.5.4 TEZcgi.Create	598
18.5.5 TEZcgi.Destroy	598
18.5.6 TEZcgi.Run	599
18.5.7 TEZcgi.WriteContent	599
18.5.8 TEZcgi.PutLine	599
18.5.9 TEZcgi.GetValue	600
18.5.10 TEZcgi.DoPost	600
18.5.11 TEZcgi.DoGet	600
18.5.12 TEZcgi.Values	600
18.5.13 TEZcgi.Names	601
18.5.14 TEZcgi.Variables	601
18.5.15 TEZcgi.VariableCount	602
18.5.16 TEZcgi.Name	602
18.5.17 TEZcgi.Email	602
19 Reference for unit 'fpjson'	603
19.1 Used units	603
19.2 Overview	603
19.3 Constants, types and variables	605
19.3.1 Constants	605
19.3.2 Types	606
19.4 Procedures and functions	623
19.4.1 CreateJSON	623

19.4.2	CreateJSONArray	624
19.4.3	CreateJSONObject	624
19.4.4	GetJSON	624
19.4.5	GetJSONInstanceType	625
19.4.6	GetJSONParserHandler	625
19.4.7	GetJSONStringParserHandler	625
19.4.8	JSONStringToString	625
19.4.9	JSONTypeName	626
19.4.10	SetJSONInstanceType	626
19.4.11	SetJSONParserHandler	626
19.4.12	SetJSONStringParserHandler	627
19.4.13	StringToJSONString	627
19.5	TJSONEnum	627
19.6	EJSON	627
19.6.1	Description	627
19.7	TBaseJSONEnumerator	628
19.7.1	Description	628
19.7.2	Method overview	628
19.7.3	Property overview	628
19.7.4	TBaseJSONEnumerator.GetCurrent	628
19.7.5	TBaseJSONEnumerator.MoveNext	628
19.7.6	TBaseJSONEnumerator.Current	628
19.8	TJSONArray	629
19.8.1	Description	629
19.8.2	Method overview	629
19.8.3	Property overview	629
19.8.4	TJSONArray.Create	630
19.8.5	TJSONArray.Destroy	630
19.8.6	TJSONArray.JSONType	630
19.8.7	TJSONArray.Clone	630
19.8.8	TJSONArray.Iterate	631
19.8.9	TJSONArray.IndexOf	631
19.8.10	TJSONArray.GetEnumerator	631
19.8.11	TJSONArray.Clear	631
19.8.12	TJSONArray.Add	632
19.8.13	TJSONArray.Delete	632
19.8.14	TJSONArray.Exchange	632
19.8.15	TJSONArray.Extract	633
19.8.16	TJSONArray.Insert	633
19.8.17	TJSONArray.Move	633

19.8.18	TJSONArray.Remove	634
19.8.19	TJSONArray.Sort	634
19.8.20	TJSONArray.Items	634
19.8.21	TJSONArray.Types	634
19.8.22	TJSONArray.Nulls	635
19.8.23	TJSONArray.Integers	635
19.8.24	TJSONArray.Int64s	635
19.8.25	TJSONArray.LargeInts	636
19.8.26	TJSONArray.QWords	636
19.8.27	TJSONArray.UnicodeStrings	636
19.8.28	TJSONArray.Strings	637
19.8.29	TJSONArray.Floats	637
19.8.30	TJSONArray.Booleans	638
19.8.31	TJSONArray.Arrays	638
19.8.32	TJSONArray.Objects	638
19.9	TJSONBoolean	639
19.9.1	Description	639
19.9.2	Method overview	639
19.9.3	TJSONBoolean.Create	639
19.9.4	TJSONBoolean.JSONType	639
19.9.5	TJSONBoolean.Clear	640
19.9.6	TJSONBoolean.Clone	640
19.10	TJSONData	640
19.10.1	Description	640
19.10.2	Method overview	641
19.10.3	Property overview	641
19.10.4	TJSONData.JSONType	641
19.10.5	TJSONData.Create	641
19.10.6	TJSONData.Clear	642
19.10.7	TJSONData.DumpJSON	642
19.10.8	TJSONData.GetEnumerator	642
19.10.9	TJSONData.FindPath	642
19.10.10	TJSONData.GetPath	644
19.10.11	TJSONData.Clone	645
19.10.12	TJSONData.FormatJSON	645
19.10.13	TJSONData.CompressedJSON	645
19.10.14	TJSONData.Count	646
19.10.15	TJSONData.Items	646
19.10.16	TJSONData.Value	646
19.10.17	TJSONData.AsString	646

19.10.18 TJSONData.AsUnicodeString	647
19.10.19 TJSONData.AsInt64	647
19.10.20 TJSONData.AsQWord	647
19.10.21 TJSONData.AsLargeInt	648
19.10.22 TJSONData.AsFloat	648
19.10.23 TJSONData.AsInteger	648
19.10.24 TJSONData.AsBoolean	649
19.10.25 TJSONData.IsNull	649
19.10.26 TJSONData.AsJSON	649
19.11 TJSONFloatNumber	650
19.11.1 Description	650
19.11.2 Method overview	650
19.11.3 TJSONFloatNumber.Create	650
19.11.4 TJSONFloatNumber.NumberType	650
19.11.5 TJSONFloatNumber.Clear	651
19.11.6 TJSONFloatNumber.Clone	651
19.12 TJSONInt64Number	651
19.12.1 Description	651
19.12.2 Method overview	651
19.12.3 TJSONInt64Number.Create	651
19.12.4 TJSONInt64Number.NumberType	652
19.12.5 TJSONInt64Number.Clear	652
19.12.6 TJSONInt64Number.Clone	652
19.13 TJSONIntegerNumber	652
19.13.1 Description	652
19.13.2 Method overview	652
19.13.3 TJSONIntegerNumber.Create	653
19.13.4 TJSONIntegerNumber.NumberType	653
19.13.5 TJSONIntegerNumber.Clear	653
19.13.6 TJSONIntegerNumber.Clone	653
19.14 TJSONNull	653
19.14.1 Description	653
19.14.2 Method overview	654
19.14.3 TJSONNull.JSONType	654
19.14.4 TJSONNull.Clear	654
19.14.5 TJSONNull.Clone	654
19.15 TJSONNumber	654
19.15.1 Description	654
19.15.2 Method overview	655
19.15.3 TJSONNumber.JSONType	655

19.15.4 TJSONNumber.NumberType	655
19.16 TJSONObject	655
19.16.1 Description	655
19.16.2 Method overview	656
19.16.3 Property overview	656
19.16.4 TJSONObject.Create	656
19.16.5 TJSONObject.Destroy	657
19.16.6 TJSONObject.JSONType	657
19.16.7 TJSONObject.Clone	657
19.16.8 TJSONObject.GetEnumerator	658
19.16.9 TJSONObject.Iterate	658
19.16.10 TJSONObject.IndexOf	658
19.16.11 TJSONObject.IndexOfName	658
19.16.12 TJSONObject.Find	659
19.16.13 TJSONObject.Get	659
19.16.14 TJSONObject.Clear	660
19.16.15 TJSONObject.Add	660
19.16.16 TJSONObject.Delete	660
19.16.17 TJSONObject.Remove	661
19.16.18 TJSONObject.Extract	661
19.16.19 TJSONObject.UnquotedMemberNames	661
19.16.20 TJSONObject.Names	662
19.16.21 TJSONObject.Elements	662
19.16.22 TJSONObject.Types	662
19.16.23 TJSONObject.Nulls	663
19.16.24 TJSONObject.Floats	663
19.16.25 TJSONObject.Integers	663
19.16.26 TJSONObject.Int64s	663
19.16.27 TJSONObject.QWords	664
19.16.28 TJSONObject.LargeInts	664
19.16.29 TJSONObject.UnicodeStrings	664
19.16.30 TJSONObject.Strings	665
19.16.31 TJSONObject.Booleans	665
19.16.32 TJSONObject.Arrays	665
19.16.33 TJSONObject.Objects	666
19.17 TJSONQWordNumber	666
19.17.1 Description	666
19.17.2 Method overview	666
19.17.3 TJSONQWordNumber.Create	666
19.17.4 TJSONQWordNumber.NumberType	666

19.17.5 TJSONQWordNumber.Clear	667
19.17.6 TJSONQWordNumber.Clone	667
19.18 TJSONString	667
19.18.1 Description	667
19.18.2 Method overview	667
19.18.3 TJSONString.Create	667
19.18.4 TJSONString.JSONType	668
19.18.5 TJSONString.Clear	668
19.18.6 TJSONString.Clone	668
20 Reference for unit 'fpmimeTypes'	669
20.1 Used units	669
20.2 Overview	669
20.3 Procedures and functions	669
20.3.1 MimeTypes	669
20.4 TFPMimeType	670
20.4.1 Description	670
20.4.2 Method overview	670
20.4.3 TFPMimeType.Create	670
20.4.4 TFPMimeType.Destroy	670
20.4.5 TFPMimeType.Clear	671
20.4.6 TFPMimeType.LoadKnownTypes	671
20.4.7 TFPMimeType.GetNextExtension	671
20.4.8 TFPMimeType.LoadFromStream	671
20.4.9 TFPMimeType.LoadFromFile	672
20.4.10 TFPMimeType.AddType	672
20.4.11 TFPMimeType.GetMimeExtensions	672
20.4.12 TFPMimeType.GetMimeType	672
20.4.13 TFPMimeType.GetKnownMimeTypes	673
20.4.14 TFPMimeType.GetKnownExtensions	673
20.5 TMimeType	673
20.5.1 Description	673
20.5.2 Method overview	673
20.5.3 Property overview	673
20.5.4 TMimeType.Create	674
20.5.5 TMimeType.MergeExtensions	674
20.5.6 TMimeType.MimeType	674
20.5.7 TMimeType.Extensions	674
21 Reference for unit 'fpTimer'	675
21.1 Used units	675

21.2	Overview	675
21.3	Constants, types and variables	675
21.3.1	Types	675
21.3.2	Variables	676
21.4	TFPCustomTimer	676
21.4.1	Description	676
21.4.2	Method overview	676
21.4.3	TFPCustomTimer.Create	676
21.4.4	TFPCustomTimer.Destroy	677
21.4.5	TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer	677
21.4.6	TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer	677
21.5	TFPTimer	677
21.5.1	Description	677
21.5.2	Property overview	678
21.5.3	TFPTimer.Enabled	678
21.5.4	TFPTimer.Interval	678
21.5.5	TFPTimer.UseTimerThread	678
21.5.6	TFPTimer.OnTimer	678
21.5.7	TFPTimer.OnStartTimer	679
21.5.8	TFPTimer.OnStopTimer	679
21.6	TFPTimerDriver	679
21.6.1	Description	679
21.6.2	Method overview	679
21.6.3	Property overview	679
21.6.4	TFPTimerDriver.Create	679
21.6.5	TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer	680
21.6.6	TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer	680
21.6.7	TFPTimerDriver.Timer	680
21.6.8	TFPTimerDriver.TimerStarted	680
22	Reference for unit 'gettext'	681
22.1	Used units	681
22.2	Overview	681
22.3	Constants, types and variables	681
22.3.1	Constants	681
22.3.2	Types	681
22.4	Procedures and functions	682
22.4.1	GetLanguageIDs	682
22.4.2	TranslateResourceStrings	682
22.4.3	TranslateUnitResourceStrings	683

22.5	TMOFileHeader	683
22.6	TMOStringInfo	683
22.7	EMOFileError	684
22.7.1	Description	684
22.8	TMOFile	684
22.8.1	Description	684
22.8.2	Method overview	684
22.8.3	TMOFile.Create	684
22.8.4	TMOFile.Destroy	684
22.8.5	TMOFile.Translate	685
23	Reference for unit 'IBConnection'	686
23.1	Used units	686
23.2	Constants, types and variables	686
23.2.1	Constants	686
23.2.2	Types	686
23.3	TDatabaseInfo	687
23.4	EIBDatabaseError	687
23.4.1	Description	687
23.4.2	Property overview	687
23.4.3	EIBDatabaseError.StatusVector	687
23.4.4	EIBDatabaseError.GDSErrorCode	687
23.5	TIBConnection	688
23.5.1	Description	688
23.5.2	Method overview	689
23.5.3	Property overview	689
23.5.4	TIBConnection.Create	689
23.5.5	TIBConnection.GetConnectionInfo	689
23.5.6	TIBConnection.CreateDB	690
23.5.7	TIBConnection.DropDB	690
23.5.8	TIBConnection.BlobSegmentSize	691
23.5.9	TIBConnection.ODSMajorVersion	691
23.5.10	TIBConnection.DatabaseName	691
23.5.11	TIBConnection.Dialect	692
23.5.12	TIBConnection.CheckTransactionParams	692
23.5.13	TIBConnection.KeepConnection	692
23.5.14	TIBConnection.LoginPrompt	692
23.5.15	TIBConnection.Params	693
23.5.16	TIBConnection.OnLogin	693
23.5.17	TIBConnection.Port	693

23.5.18	TIBConnection.UseConnectionCharSetIfNone	693
23.5.19	TIBConnection.WireCompression	694
23.6	TIBConnectionDef	694
23.6.1	Description	694
23.6.2	Method overview	694
23.6.3	TIBConnectionDef.TypeName	694
23.6.4	TIBConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	695
23.6.5	TIBConnectionDef.Description	695
23.6.6	TIBConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	695
23.6.7	TIBConnectionDef.LoadFunction	695
23.6.8	TIBConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	695
23.6.9	TIBConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	696
23.7	TIBCursor	696
23.7.1	Description	696
23.8	TIBTrans	696
23.8.1	Description	696
24	Reference for unit 'idea'	697
24.1	Used units	697
24.2	Overview	697
24.3	Constants, types and variables	697
24.3.1	Constants	697
24.3.2	Types	698
24.4	Procedures and functions	698
24.4.1	CipherIdea	698
24.4.2	DeKeyIdea	698
24.4.3	EnKeyIdea	699
24.5	EIDEAError	699
24.5.1	Description	699
24.6	TIDEADeCryptStream	699
24.6.1	Description	699
24.6.2	Method overview	699
24.6.3	TIDEADeCryptStream.Create	700
24.6.4	TIDEADeCryptStream.Read	700
24.6.5	TIDEADeCryptStream.Seek	700
24.7	TIDEAEncryptStream	701
24.7.1	Description	701
24.7.2	Method overview	701
24.7.3	TIDEAEncryptStream.Create	701
24.7.4	TIDEAEncryptStream.Destroy	701

24.7.5	TIDEAEncryptStream.Write	702
24.7.6	TIDEAEncryptStream.Seek	702
24.7.7	TIDEAEncryptStream.Flush	702
24.8	TIDEAStream	702
24.8.1	Description	702
24.8.2	Method overview	703
24.8.3	Property overview	703
24.8.4	TIDEAStream.Create	703
24.8.5	TIDEAStream.Key	703
25	Reference for unit 'inicol'	704
25.1	Used units	704
25.2	Overview	704
25.3	Constants, types and variables	704
25.3.1	Constants	704
25.4	EIniCol	705
25.4.1	Description	705
25.5	TIniCollection	705
25.5.1	Description	705
25.5.2	Method overview	705
25.5.3	Property overview	705
25.5.4	TIniCollection.Load	705
25.5.5	TIniCollection.Save	706
25.5.6	TIniCollection.SaveToIni	706
25.5.7	TIniCollection.SaveToFile	706
25.5.8	TIniCollection.LoadFromIni	707
25.5.9	TIniCollection.LoadFromFile	707
25.5.10	TIniCollection.Prefix	707
25.5.11	TIniCollection.SectionPrefix	708
25.5.12	TIniCollection.FileName	708
25.5.13	TIniCollection.GlobalSection	708
25.6	TIniCollectionItem	709
25.6.1	Description	709
25.6.2	Method overview	709
25.6.3	Property overview	709
25.6.4	TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni	709
25.6.5	TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni	709
25.6.6	TIniCollectionItem.SaveToFile	710
25.6.7	TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromFile	710
25.6.8	TIniCollectionItem.SectionName	710

25.7	TNamedIniCollection	711
25.7.1	Description	711
25.7.2	Method overview	711
25.7.3	Property overview	711
25.7.4	TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfUserData	711
25.7.5	TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfName	711
25.7.6	TNamedIniCollection.FindByName	712
25.7.7	TNamedIniCollection.FindByUserData	712
25.7.8	TNamedIniCollection.NamedItems	712
25.8	TNamedIniCollectionItem	712
25.8.1	Description	712
25.8.2	Property overview	712
25.8.3	TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData	713
25.8.4	TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name	713
26	Reference for unit 'IniFiles'	714
26.1	Used units	714
26.2	Overview	714
26.3	Constants, types and variables	714
26.3.1	Types	714
26.4	TCustomIniFile	716
26.4.1	Description	716
26.4.2	Method overview	716
26.4.3	Property overview	717
26.4.4	TCustomIniFile.Create	717
26.4.5	TCustomIniFile.Destroy	718
26.4.6	TCustomIniFile.SetBoolStringValue	718
26.4.7	TCustomIniFile.SectionExists	718
26.4.8	TCustomIniFile.ReadString	718
26.4.9	TCustomIniFile.WriteString	719
26.4.10	TCustomIniFile.ReadInteger	719
26.4.11	TCustomIniFile.WriteInteger	719
26.4.12	TCustomIniFile.ReadInt64	719
26.4.13	TCustomIniFile.WriteInt64	720
26.4.14	TCustomIniFile.ReadBool	720
26.4.15	TCustomIniFile.WriteBool	720
26.4.16	TCustomIniFile.ReadDate	721
26.4.17	TCustomIniFile.ReadDateTime	721
26.4.18	TCustomIniFile.ReadFloat	721
26.4.19	TCustomIniFile.ReadTime	721

26.4.20	TCustomIniFile.ReadBinaryStream	722
26.4.21	TCustomIniFile.WriteDate	722
26.4.22	TCustomIniFile.WriteDateTime	722
26.4.23	TCustomIniFile.WriteFloat	723
26.4.24	TCustomIniFile.WriteTime	723
26.4.25	TCustomIniFile.WriteBinaryStream	723
26.4.26	TCustomIniFile.ReadSection	723
26.4.27	TCustomIniFile.ReadSections	724
26.4.28	TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues	724
26.4.29	TCustomIniFile.EraseSection	724
26.4.30	TCustomIniFile.DeleteKey	725
26.4.31	TCustomIniFile.UpdateFile	725
26.4.32	TCustomIniFile.ValueExists	725
26.4.33	TCustomIniFile.Encoding	725
26.4.34	TCustomIniFile.FileName	726
26.4.35	TCustomIniFile.Options	726
26.4.36	TCustomIniFile.EscapeLineFeeds	726
26.4.37	TCustomIniFile.CaseSensitive	726
26.4.38	TCustomIniFile.StripQuotes	727
26.4.39	TCustomIniFile.FormatSettingsActive	727
26.4.40	TCustomIniFile.BoolTrueStrings	727
26.4.41	TCustomIniFile.BoolFalseStrings	728
26.4.42	TCustomIniFile.OwnsEncoding	728
26.5	THashedStringList	728
26.5.1	Description	728
26.5.2	Method overview	728
26.5.3	THashedStringList.Destroy	728
26.5.4	THashedStringList.IndexOf	729
26.5.5	THashedStringList.IndexOfName	729
26.6	TIniFile	729
26.6.1	Description	729
26.6.2	Method overview	729
26.6.3	Property overview	730
26.6.4	TIniFile.Create	730
26.6.5	TIniFile.Destroy	730
26.6.6	TIniFile.ReadString	730
26.6.7	TIniFile.WriteString	731
26.6.8	TIniFile.ReadSection	731
26.6.9	TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw	731
26.6.10	TIniFile.ReadSections	731

26.6.11	TIniFile.ReadSectionValues	732
26.6.12	TIniFile.EraseSection	732
26.6.13	TIniFile.DeleteKey	732
26.6.14	TIniFile.UpdateFile	732
26.6.15	TIniFile.Stream	733
26.6.16	TIniFile.CacheUpdates	733
26.6.17	TIniFile.WriteBOM	733
26.7	TIniFileKey	734
26.7.1	Description	734
26.7.2	Method overview	734
26.7.3	Property overview	734
26.7.4	TIniFileKey.Create	734
26.7.5	TIniFileKey.Ident	734
26.7.6	TIniFileKey.Value	734
26.8	TIniFileKeyList	735
26.8.1	Description	735
26.8.2	Method overview	735
26.8.3	Property overview	735
26.8.4	TIniFileKeyList.Destroy	735
26.8.5	TIniFileKeyList.Clear	735
26.8.6	TIniFileKeyList.Items	735
26.9	TIniFileSection	736
26.9.1	Description	736
26.9.2	Method overview	736
26.9.3	Property overview	736
26.9.4	TIniFileSection.Empty	736
26.9.5	TIniFileSection.Create	736
26.9.6	TIniFileSection.Destroy	737
26.9.7	TIniFileSection.Name	737
26.9.8	TIniFileSection.KeyList	737
26.10	TIniFileSectionList	737
26.10.1	Description	737
26.10.2	Method overview	737
26.10.3	Property overview	738
26.10.4	TIniFileSectionList.Destroy	738
26.10.5	TIniFileSectionList.Clear	738
26.10.6	TIniFileSectionList.Items	738
26.11	TMemIniFile	738
26.11.1	Description	738
26.11.2	Method overview	739

26.11.3 TMemIniFile.Create	739
26.11.4 TMemIniFile.Clear	739
26.11.5 TMemIniFile.GetStrings	739
26.11.6 TMemIniFile.Rename	740
26.11.7 TMemIniFile.SetStrings	740
26.12 TStringHash	740
26.12.1 Description	740
26.12.2 Method overview	740
26.12.3 Property overview	740
26.12.4 TStringHash.Create	741
26.12.5 TStringHash.Destroy	741
26.12.6 TStringHash.Add	741
26.12.7 TStringHash.Clear	741
26.12.8 TStringHash.Modify	742
26.12.9 TStringHash.Remove	742
26.12.10 TStringHash.ValueOf	742
26.12.11 TStringHash.AddReplacesExisting	742
27 Reference for unit 'iostream'	743
27.1 Used units	743
27.2 Overview	743
27.3 Constants, types and variables	743
27.3.1 Types	743
27.4 EIOStreamError	744
27.4.1 Description	744
27.5 TIOStream	744
27.5.1 Description	744
27.5.2 Method overview	744
27.5.3 TIOStream.Create	744
27.5.4 TIOStream.Read	744
27.5.5 TIOStream.Write	745
27.5.6 TIOStream.Seek	745
28 Reference for unit 'libtar'	746
28.1 Used units	746
28.2 Overview	746
28.3 Constants, types and variables	746
28.3.1 Constants	746
28.3.2 Types	747
28.4 Procedures and functions	749
28.4.1 ClearDirRec	749

28.4.2	ConvertFilename	749
28.4.3	FileTimeGMT	749
28.4.4	PermissionString	750
28.5	TTarArchive	750
28.5.1	Description	750
28.5.2	Method overview	750
28.5.3	TTarArchive.Create	750
28.5.4	TTarArchive.Destroy	750
28.5.5	TTarArchive.Reset	751
28.5.6	TTarArchive.FindNext	751
28.5.7	TTarArchive.ReadFile	751
28.5.8	TTarArchive.GetFilePos	752
28.5.9	TTarArchive.SetFilePos	752
28.6	TTarWriter	752
28.6.1	Description	752
28.6.2	Method overview	752
28.6.3	Property overview	753
28.6.4	TTarWriter.Create	753
28.6.5	TTarWriter.Destroy	753
28.6.6	TTarWriter.AddFile	753
28.6.7	TTarWriter.AddStream	754
28.6.8	TTarWriter.AddString	754
28.6.9	TTarWriter.AddDir	754
28.6.10	TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink	755
28.6.11	TTarWriter.AddLink	755
28.6.12	TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader	755
28.6.13	TTarWriter.Finalize	755
28.6.14	TTarWriter.Permissions	756
28.6.15	TTarWriter.UID	756
28.6.16	TTarWriter.GID	756
28.6.17	TTarWriter.UserName	756
28.6.18	TTarWriter.GroupName	757
28.6.19	TTarWriter.Mode	757
28.6.20	TTarWriter.Magic	757
29	Reference for unit 'MaskUtils'	758
29.1	Used units	758
29.2	Overview	758
29.3	Constants, types and variables	758
29.3.1	Types	758

29.4	Procedures and functions	760
29.4.1	FormatMaskInput	760
29.4.2	FormatMaskText	761
29.4.3	MaskDoFormatText	761
29.5	TMaskUtils	761
29.5.1	Description	761
29.5.2	Method overview	761
29.5.3	Property overview	761
29.5.4	TMaskUtils.ValidateInput	762
29.5.5	TMaskUtils.TryValidateInput	762
29.5.6	TMaskUtils.Mask	762
29.5.7	TMaskUtils.Value	762
29.5.8	TMaskUtils.InputMask	763
30	Reference for unit 'memds'	764
30.1	Used units	764
30.2	Overview	764
30.3	Constants, types and variables	764
30.3.1	Constants	764
30.4	MDSError	765
30.4.1	Description	765
30.5	TMemDataset	766
30.5.1	Description	766
30.5.2	Method overview	767
30.5.3	Property overview	768
30.5.4	TMemDataset.Create	768
30.5.5	TMemDataset.Destroy	768
30.5.6	TMemDataset.BookmarkValid	769
30.5.7	TMemDataset.CompareBookmarks	769
30.5.8	TMemDataset.CreateBlobStream	769
30.5.9	TMemDataset.Locate	770
30.5.10	TMemDataset.Lookup	770
30.5.11	TMemDataset.CreateTable	770
30.5.12	TMemDataset.DataSize	771
30.5.13	TMemDataset.Clear	771
30.5.14	TMemDataset.SaveToFile	771
30.5.15	TMemDataset.SaveToStream	772
30.5.16	TMemDataset.LoadFromStream	772
30.5.17	TMemDataset.LoadFromFile	772
30.5.18	TMemDataset.CopyFromDataset	773

30.5.19 TMemDataset.FileModified	774
30.5.20 TMemDataset.Filter	774
30.5.21 TMemDataset.FileName	774
30.5.22 TMemDataset.Filtered	775
30.5.23 TMemDataset.Active	775
30.5.24 TMemDataset.FieldDefs	775
30.5.25 TMemDataset.BeforeOpen	775
30.5.26 TMemDataset.AfterOpen	775
30.5.27 TMemDataset.BeforeClose	776
30.5.28 TMemDataset.AfterClose	776
30.5.29 TMemDataset.BeforeInsert	776
30.5.30 TMemDataset.AfterInsert	776
30.5.31 TMemDataset.BeforeEdit	776
30.5.32 TMemDataset.AfterEdit	776
30.5.33 TMemDataset.BeforePost	777
30.5.34 TMemDataset.AfterPost	777
30.5.35 TMemDataset.BeforeCancel	777
30.5.36 TMemDataset.AfterCancel	777
30.5.37 TMemDataset.BeforeDelete	777
30.5.38 TMemDataset.AfterDelete	777
30.5.39 TMemDataset.BeforeScroll	778
30.5.40 TMemDataset.AfterScroll	778
30.5.41 TMemDataset.OnDeleteError	778
30.5.42 TMemDataset.OnEditError	778
30.5.43 TMemDataset.OnNewRecord	778
30.5.44 TMemDataset.OnPostError	779
30.5.45 TMemDataset.OnFilterRecord	779
31 Reference for unit 'MSSQLConn'	780
31.1 Used units	780
31.2 Overview	780
31.3 Constants, types and variables	780
31.3.1 Variables	780
31.4 EMSSQLDatabaseError	780
31.4.1 Description	780
31.4.2 Property overview	781
31.4.3 EMSSQLDatabaseError.DBErrorCode	781
31.5 TMSSQLConnection	781
31.5.1 Description	781
31.5.2 Method overview	782

31.5.3	Property overview	782
31.5.4	TMSSQLConnection.Create	782
31.5.5	TMSSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo	782
31.5.6	TMSSQLConnection.CreateDB	782
31.5.7	TMSSQLConnection.DropDB	783
31.5.8	TMSSQLConnection.Password	783
31.5.9	TMSSQLConnection.Transaction	783
31.5.10	TMSSQLConnection.UserName	783
31.5.11	TMSSQLConnection.CharSet	784
31.5.12	TMSSQLConnection.HostName	784
31.5.13	TMSSQLConnection.Connected	784
31.5.14	TMSSQLConnection.Role	784
31.5.15	TMSSQLConnection.DatabaseName	785
31.5.16	TMSSQLConnection.KeepConnection	785
31.5.17	TMSSQLConnection.LoginPrompt	785
31.5.18	TMSSQLConnection.Params	785
31.5.19	TMSSQLConnection.OnLogin	786
31.6	TMSSQLConnectionDef	786
31.6.1	Description	786
31.6.2	Method overview	786
31.6.3	TMSSQLConnectionDef.TypeName	786
31.6.4	TMSSQLConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	786
31.6.5	TMSSQLConnectionDef.Description	787
31.6.6	TMSSQLConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	787
31.6.7	TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadFunction	787
31.6.8	TMSSQLConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	787
31.6.9	TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	787
31.7	TSybaseConnection	788
31.7.1	Description	788
31.7.2	Method overview	788
31.7.3	TSybaseConnection.Create	788
31.8	TSybaseConnectionDef	788
31.8.1	Description	788
31.8.2	Method overview	788
31.8.3	TSybaseConnectionDef.TypeName	788
31.8.4	TSybaseConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	789
31.8.5	TSybaseConnectionDef.Description	789
32	Reference for unit 'nullstream'	790
32.1	Used units	790

32.2	Overview	790
32.3	ENullStreamError	790
32.3.1	Description	790
32.4	TNullStream	790
32.4.1	Description	790
32.4.2	Method overview	791
32.4.3	TNullStream.Read	791
32.4.4	TNullStream.Write	791
32.4.5	TNullStream.Seek	791
32.4.6	TNullStream.Create	792
33	Reference for unit 'Pipes'	793
33.1	Used units	793
33.2	Overview	793
33.3	Constants, types and variables	793
33.3.1	Constants	793
33.4	Procedures and functions	793
33.4.1	CreatePipeHandles	793
33.4.2	CreatePipeStreams	794
33.5	EPipeCreation	794
33.5.1	Description	794
33.6	EPipeError	794
33.6.1	Description	794
33.7	EPipeSeek	794
33.7.1	Description	794
33.8	TInputPipeStream	795
33.8.1	Description	795
33.8.2	Method overview	795
33.8.3	Property overview	795
33.8.4	TInputPipeStream.Destroy	795
33.8.5	TInputPipeStream.Write	795
33.8.6	TInputPipeStream.Seek	796
33.8.7	TInputPipeStream.Read	796
33.8.8	TInputPipeStream.NumBytesAvailable	796
33.9	TOutputPipeStream	797
33.9.1	Description	797
33.9.2	Method overview	797
33.9.3	Property overview	797
33.9.4	TOutputPipeStream.Destroy	797
33.9.5	TOutputPipeStream.Seek	797

33.9.6	TOutputPipeStream.Read	797
33.9.7	TOutputPipeStream.DontClose	798
34	Reference for unit 'pooledmm'	799
34.1	Used units	799
34.2	Overview	799
34.3	Constants, types and variables	799
34.3.1	Types	799
34.4	TPooledMemManagerItem	799
34.5	TNonFreePooledMemManager	800
34.5.1	Description	800
34.5.2	Method overview	800
34.5.3	Property overview	800
34.5.4	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear	800
34.5.5	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create	800
34.5.6	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Destroy	801
34.5.7	TNonFreePooledMemManager.NewItem	801
34.5.8	TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems	801
34.5.9	TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize	801
34.6	TPooledMemManager	802
34.6.1	Description	802
34.6.2	Method overview	802
34.6.3	Property overview	802
34.6.4	TPooledMemManager.Clear	802
34.6.5	TPooledMemManager.Create	802
34.6.6	TPooledMemManager.Destroy	803
34.6.7	TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount	803
34.6.8	TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio	803
34.6.9	TPooledMemManager.Count	803
34.6.10	TPooledMemManager.FreeCount	804
34.6.11	TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount	804
34.6.12	TPooledMemManager.FreedCount	804
35	Reference for unit 'process'	805
35.1	Used units	805
35.2	Overview	805
35.3	Constants, types and variables	805
35.3.1	Types	805
35.3.2	Variables	817
35.4	Procedures and functions	817
35.4.1	CommandToList	817

35.4.2	DetectXTerm	817
35.4.3	RunCommand	818
35.4.4	RunCommandIndir	818
35.5	EProcess	819
35.5.1	Description	819
35.6	TProcess	819
35.6.1	Description	819
35.6.2	Method overview	819
35.6.3	Property overview	820
35.6.4	TProcess.Create	821
35.6.5	TProcess.Destroy	821
35.6.6	TProcess.Execute	821
35.6.7	TProcess.CloseInput	822
35.6.8	TProcess.CloseOutput	822
35.6.9	TProcess.CloseStderr	822
35.6.10	TProcess.Resume	822
35.6.11	TProcess.Suspend	823
35.6.12	TProcess.Terminate	823
35.6.13	TProcess.WaitOnExit	823
35.6.14	TProcess.ReadInputStream	824
35.6.15	TProcess.RunCommandLoop	824
35.6.16	TProcess.WindowRect	824
35.6.17	TProcess.Handle	825
35.6.18	TProcess.ProcessHandle	825
35.6.19	TProcess.ThreadHandle	825
35.6.20	TProcess.ProcessID	825
35.6.21	TProcess.ThreadID	826
35.6.22	TProcess.Input	826
35.6.23	TProcess.Output	826
35.6.24	TProcess.Stderr	827
35.6.25	TProcess.ExitStatus	827
35.6.26	TProcess.ExitCode	828
35.6.27	TProcess.InheritHandles	828
35.6.28	TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent	828
35.6.29	TProcess.RunCommandSleepTime	828
35.6.30	TProcess.OnForkEvent	829
35.6.31	TProcess.PipeBufferSize	829
35.6.32	TProcess.Active	829
35.6.33	TProcess.ApplicationName	829
35.6.34	TProcess.CommandLine	830

35.6.35 TProcess.Executable	830
35.6.36 TProcess.Parameters	831
35.6.37 TProcess.ConsoleTitle	831
35.6.38 TProcess.CurrentDirectory	832
35.6.39 TProcess.Desktop	832
35.6.40 TProcess.Environment	832
35.6.41 TProcess.Options	833
35.6.42 TProcess.Priority	833
35.6.43 TProcess.StartupOptions	834
35.6.44 TProcess.Running	834
35.6.45 TProcess.ShowWindow	835
35.6.46 TProcess.WindowColumns	835
35.6.47 TProcess.WindowHeight	835
35.6.48 TProcess.WindowLeft	836
35.6.49 TProcess.WindowRows	836
35.6.50 TProcess.WindowTop	836
35.6.51 TProcess.WindowWidth	837
35.6.52 TProcess.FillAttribute	837
35.6.53 TProcess.XTermProgram	837
36 Reference for unit 'RttiUtils'	838
36.1 Used units	838
36.2 Overview	838
36.3 Constants, types and variables	838
36.3.1 Constants	838
36.3.2 Types	838
36.3.3 Variables	839
36.4 Procedures and functions	840
36.4.1 CreateStoredItem	840
36.4.2 ParseStoredItem	840
36.4.3 UpdateStoredList	840
36.5 TPropInfoList	841
36.5.1 Description	841
36.5.2 Method overview	841
36.5.3 Property overview	841
36.5.4 TPropInfoList.Create	841
36.5.5 TPropInfoList.Destroy	841
36.5.6 TPropInfoList.Contains	842
36.5.7 TPropInfoList.Find	842
36.5.8 TPropInfoList.Delete	842

36.5.9	TPropInfoList.Intersect	842
36.5.10	TPropInfoList.Count	843
36.5.11	TPropInfoList.Items	843
36.6	TPropsStorage	843
36.6.1	Description	843
36.6.2	Method overview	843
36.6.3	Property overview	844
36.6.4	TPropsStorage.StoreAnyProperty	844
36.6.5	TPropsStorage.LoadAnyProperty	844
36.6.6	TPropsStorage.StoreProperties	844
36.6.7	TPropsStorage.LoadProperties	845
36.6.8	TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps	845
36.6.9	TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps	845
36.6.10	TPropsStorage.Options	846
36.6.11	TPropsStorage.AObject	846
36.6.12	TPropsStorage.Prefix	847
36.6.13	TPropsStorage.Section	847
36.6.14	TPropsStorage.OnReadString	847
36.6.15	TPropsStorage.OnWriteString	847
36.6.16	TPropsStorage.OnEraseSection	848
37	Reference for unit 'simpleipc'	849
37.1	Used units	849
37.2	Overview	849
37.3	Constants, types and variables	850
37.3.1	Resource strings	850
37.3.2	Constants	850
37.3.3	Types	850
37.3.4	Variables	852
37.4	TMsgHeader	853
37.5	EIPCErrors	853
37.5.1	Description	853
37.6	TIPCClientComm	853
37.6.1	Description	853
37.6.2	Method overview	853
37.6.3	Property overview	853
37.6.4	TIPCClientComm.Create	854
37.6.5	TIPCClientComm.Connect	854
37.6.6	TIPCClientComm.Disconnect	854
37.6.7	TIPCClientComm.ServerRunning	855

37.6.8	TIPCClientComm.SendMessage	855
37.6.9	TIPCClientComm.Owner	855
37.7	TIPCServerComm	855
37.7.1	Description	855
37.7.2	Method overview	856
37.7.3	Property overview	856
37.7.4	TIPCServerComm.Create	856
37.7.5	TIPCServerComm.StartServer	856
37.7.6	TIPCServerComm.StopServer	856
37.7.7	TIPCServerComm.PeekMessage	857
37.7.8	TIPCServerComm.ReadMessage	857
37.7.9	TIPCServerComm.Owner	857
37.7.10	TIPCServerComm.InstanceID	858
37.8	TIPCServerMsg	858
37.8.1	Description	858
37.8.2	Method overview	858
37.8.3	Property overview	858
37.8.4	TIPCServerMsg.Create	858
37.8.5	TIPCServerMsg.Destroy	859
37.8.6	TIPCServerMsg.Stream	859
37.8.7	TIPCServerMsg.MsgType	859
37.8.8	TIPCServerMsg.OwnsStream	859
37.8.9	TIPCServerMsg.StringMessage	860
37.9	TIPCServerMsgQueue	860
37.9.1	Description	860
37.9.2	Method overview	860
37.9.3	Property overview	860
37.9.4	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Create	860
37.9.5	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Destroy	861
37.9.6	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Clear	861
37.9.7	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Push	861
37.9.8	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Pop	861
37.9.9	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Count	862
37.9.10	TIPCServerMsgQueue.MaxCount	862
37.9.11	TIPCServerMsgQueue.MaxAction	862
37.10	TSimpleIPC	862
37.10.1	Description	862
37.10.2	Property overview	863
37.10.3	TSimpleIPC.Active	863
37.10.4	TSimpleIPC.ServerID	863

37.11 TSimpleIPCCClient	863
37.11.1 Description	863
37.11.2 Method overview	864
37.11.3 Property overview	864
37.11.4 TSimpleIPCCClient.Create	864
37.11.5 TSimpleIPCCClient.Destroy	864
37.11.6 TSimpleIPCCClient.Connect	864
37.11.7 TSimpleIPCCClient.Disconnect	865
37.11.8 TSimpleIPCCClient.ServerRunning	865
37.11.9 TSimpleIPCCClient.SendMessage	865
37.11.10 TSimpleIPCCClient.SendStringMessage	866
37.11.11 TSimpleIPCCClient.SendStringMessageFmt	866
37.11.12 TSimpleIPCCClient.ServerInstance	866
37.12 TSimpleIPCServer	866
37.12.1 Description	866
37.12.2 Method overview	867
37.12.3 Property overview	867
37.12.4 TSimpleIPCServer.Create	867
37.12.5 TSimpleIPCServer.Destroy	867
37.12.6 TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer	868
37.12.7 TSimpleIPCServer.StopServer	868
37.12.8 TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage	868
37.12.9 TSimpleIPCServer.ReadMessage	869
37.12.10 TSimpleIPCServer.GetMessageData	869
37.12.11 TSimpleIPCServer.StringMessage	869
37.12.12 TSimpleIPCServer.Message	870
37.12.13 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType	870
37.12.14 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData	870
37.12.15 TSimpleIPCServer.InstanceID	870
37.12.16 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadExecuting	871
37.12.17 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError	871
37.12.18 TSimpleIPCServer.Global	871
37.12.19 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessage	871
37.12.20 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageQueued	872
37.12.21 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageError	872
37.12.22 TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError	872
37.12.23 TSimpleIPCServer.MaxQueue	872
37.12.24 TSimpleIPCServer.MaxAction	873
37.12.25 TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded	873
37.12.26 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadTimeout	873

37.12.27	<code>TSimpleIPCServer.SynchronizeEvents</code>	874
38	Reference for unit 'singleinstance'	875
38.1	Used units	875
38.2	Overview	875
38.3	Constants, types and variables	875
38.3.1	Types	875
38.3.2	Variables	877
38.4	<code>ESingleInstance</code>	877
38.4.1	Description	877
38.5	<code>TBaseSingleInstance</code>	877
38.5.1	Description	877
38.5.2	Method overview	877
38.5.3	Property overview	878
38.5.4	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.Create</code>	878
38.5.5	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.Destroy</code>	878
38.5.6	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.Start</code>	878
38.5.7	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.Stop</code>	879
38.5.8	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages</code>	879
38.5.9	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.ClientPostParams</code>	879
38.5.10	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.TimeOutMessages</code>	879
38.5.11	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.TimeOutWaitForInstances</code>	880
38.5.12	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedParams</code>	880
38.5.13	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.StartResult</code>	880
38.5.14	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.IsServer</code>	880
38.5.15	<code>TBaseSingleInstance.IsClient</code>	881
39	Reference for unit 'SQLDB'	882
39.1	Used units	882
39.2	Overview	882
39.3	Using SQLDB to access databases.	883
39.4	Using the universal <code>TSQLConnector</code> type.	885
39.5	Retrieving Schema Information.	886
39.6	Automatic generation of update SQL statements.	886
39.7	Using parameters.	887
39.8	Constants, types and variables	888
39.8.1	Constants	888
39.8.2	Types	892
39.8.3	Variables	900
39.9	Procedures and functions	901
39.9.1	<code>GetConnectionDef</code>	901

39.9.2	GetConnectionList	901
39.9.3	RegisterConnection	901
39.9.4	UnRegisterConnection	902
39.10	TSQLStatementInfo	902
39.11	ESQLDatabaseError	902
39.11.1	Description	902
39.11.2	Method overview	902
39.11.3	ESQLDatabaseError.CreateFmt	902
39.12	TConnectionDef	903
39.12.1	Description	903
39.12.2	Method overview	903
39.12.3	TConnectionDef.TypeName	903
39.12.4	TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	904
39.12.5	TConnectionDef.Description	904
39.12.6	TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	904
39.12.7	TConnectionDef.LoadFunction	904
39.12.8	TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	905
39.12.9	TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	905
39.12.10	TConnectionDef.ApplyParams	905
39.13	TCustomSQLQuery	905
39.13.1	Description	905
39.13.2	Method overview	906
39.13.3	Property overview	906
39.13.4	TCustomSQLQuery.Create	906
39.13.5	TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy	906
39.13.6	TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare	907
39.13.7	TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare	907
39.13.8	TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL	907
39.13.9	TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo	908
39.13.10	TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected	908
39.13.11	TCustomSQLQuery.ParamByName	908
39.13.12	TCustomSQLQuery.MacroByName	909
39.13.13	TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates	909
39.13.14	TCustomSQLQuery.Post	909
39.13.15	TCustomSQLQuery.Delete	909
39.13.16	TCustomSQLQuery.Prepared	910
39.13.17	TCustomSQLQuery.SQLConnection	910
39.13.18	TCustomSQLQuery.SQLTransaction	910
39.14	TCustomSQLStatement	910
39.14.1	Description	910

39.14.2 Method overview	911
39.14.3 Property overview	911
39.14.4 TCustomSQLStatement.Create	911
39.14.5 TCustomSQLStatement.Destroy	911
39.14.6 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare	912
39.14.7 TCustomSQLStatement.Execute	912
39.14.8 TCustomSQLStatement.Unprepare	912
39.14.9 TCustomSQLStatement.ParamByName	913
39.14.10 TCustomSQLStatement.RowsAffected	913
39.14.11 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepared	913
39.15 TServerIndexDefs	913
39.15.1 Description	913
39.15.2 Method overview	913
39.15.3 TServerIndexDefs.Create	914
39.15.4 TServerIndexDefs.Update	914
39.16 TSQLConnection	914
39.16.1 Description	914
39.16.2 Method overview	914
39.16.3 Property overview	915
39.16.4 TSQLConnection.Create	915
39.16.5 TSQLConnection.Destroy	915
39.16.6 TSQLConnection.StartTransaction	916
39.16.7 TSQLConnection.EndTransaction	916
39.16.8 TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect	916
39.16.9 TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames	917
39.16.10 TSQLConnection.HasTable	917
39.16.11 TSQLConnection.GetTableNames	917
39.16.12 TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames	917
39.16.13 TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames	918
39.16.14 TSQLConnection.GetSchemaNames	918
39.16.15 TSQLConnection.GetSequenceNames	918
39.16.16 TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo	918
39.16.17 TSQLConnection.GetStatementInfo	919
39.16.18 TSQLConnection.CreateDB	919
39.16.19 TSQLConnection.DropDB	919
39.16.20 TSQLConnection.GetNextValue	919
39.16.21 TSQLConnection.ConnOptions	920
39.16.22 TSQLConnection.Handle	920
39.16.23 TSQLConnection.FieldNameQuoteChars	920
39.16.24 TSQLConnection.Password	921

39.16.25	TSQLConnection.Transaction	921
39.16.26	TSQLConnection.UserName	921
39.16.27	TSQLConnection.CharSet	922
39.16.28	TSQLConnection.HostName	922
39.16.29	TSQLConnection.OnLog	922
39.16.30	TSQLConnection.LogEvents	923
39.16.31	TSQLConnection.Options	923
39.16.32	TSQLConnection.Role	923
39.16.33	TSQLConnection.Connected	924
39.16.34	TSQLConnection.DatabaseName	924
39.16.35	TSQLConnection.KeepConnection	924
39.16.36	TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt	925
39.16.37	TSQLConnection.Params	925
39.16.38	TSQLConnection.OnLogin	925
39.17	TSQLConnector	925
39.17.1	Description	925
39.17.2	Property overview	926
39.17.3	TSQLConnector.ConnectorType	926
39.17.4	TSQLConnector.Port	926
39.18	TSQLCursor	926
39.18.1	Description	926
39.19	TSQLDBFieldDef	927
39.19.1	Description	927
39.19.2	Property overview	927
39.19.3	TSQLDBFieldDef.SQLDBData	927
39.20	TSQLDBFieldDefs	927
39.20.1	Description	927
39.21	TSQLDBParam	927
39.21.1	Description	927
39.21.2	Property overview	927
39.21.3	TSQLDBParam.FieldDef	928
39.21.4	TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData	928
39.22	TSQLDBParams	928
39.22.1	Description	928
39.23	TSQLHandle	928
39.23.1	Description	928
39.24	TSQLQuery	929
39.24.1	Description	929
39.24.2	Property overview	931
39.24.3	TSQLQuery.SchemaType	932

39.24.4 TSQLQuery.StatementType	932
39.24.5 TSQLQuery.MaxIndexesCount	932
39.24.6 TSQLQuery.FieldDefs	932
39.24.7 TSQLQuery.Active	933
39.24.8 TSQLQuery.AutoCalcFields	933
39.24.9 TSQLQuery.Filter	933
39.24.10 TSQLQuery.Filtered	933
39.24.11 TSQLQuery.AfterCancel	933
39.24.12 TSQLQuery.AfterClose	933
39.24.13 TSQLQuery.AfterDelete	933
39.24.14 TSQLQuery.AfterEdit	934
39.24.15 TSQLQuery.AfterInsert	934
39.24.16 TSQLQuery.AfterOpen	934
39.24.17 TSQLQuery.AfterPost	934
39.24.18 TSQLQuery.AfterRefresh	934
39.24.19 TSQLQuery.AfterScroll	934
39.24.20 TSQLQuery.BeforeCancel	934
39.24.21 TSQLQuery.BeforeClose	935
39.24.22 TSQLQuery.BeforeDelete	935
39.24.23 TSQLQuery.BeforeEdit	935
39.24.24 TSQLQuery.BeforeInsert	935
39.24.25 TSQLQuery.BeforeOpen	935
39.24.26 TSQLQuery.BeforePost	935
39.24.27 TSQLQuery.BeforeRefresh	935
39.24.28 TSQLQuery.BeforeScroll	936
39.24.29 TSQLQuery.OnCalcFields	936
39.24.30 TSQLQuery.OnDeleteError	936
39.24.31 TSQLQuery.OnEditError	936
39.24.32 TSQLQuery.OnFilterRecord	936
39.24.33 TSQLQuery.OnNewRecord	936
39.24.34 TSQLQuery.OnPostError	936
39.24.35 TSQLQuery.Database	937
39.24.36 TSQLQuery.Transaction	937
39.24.37 TSQLQuery.ReadOnly	937
39.24.38 TSQLQuery.SQL	937
39.24.39 TSQLQuery.InsertSQL	938
39.24.40 TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL	938
39.24.41 TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL	939
39.24.42 TSQLQuery.RefreshSQL	939
39.24.43 TSQLQuery.IndexDefs	939

39.24.44	TSQLQuery.Options	940
39.24.45	TSQLQuery.Params	940
39.24.46	TSQLQuery.ParamCheck	941
39.24.47	TSQLQuery.Macros	941
39.24.48	TSQLQuery.MacroCheck	941
39.24.49	TSQLQuery.MacroChar	941
39.24.50	TSQLQuery.ParseSQL	942
39.24.51	TSQLQuery.UpdateMode	942
39.24.52	TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey	942
39.24.53	TSQLQuery.DataSource	943
39.24.54	TSQLQuery.Sequence	943
39.24.55	TSQLQuery.ServerFilter	944
39.24.56	TSQLQuery.ServerFiltered	944
39.24.57	TSQLQuery.ServerIndexDefs	944
39.25	TSQLScript	945
39.25.1	Description	945
39.25.2	Method overview	945
39.25.3	Property overview	945
39.25.4	TSQLScript.Create	945
39.25.5	TSQLScript.Destroy	946
39.25.6	TSQLScript.Execute	946
39.25.7	TSQLScript.ExecuteScript	946
39.25.8	TSQLScript.Aborted	946
39.25.9	TSQLScript.Line	947
39.25.10	TSQLScript.DataBase	947
39.25.11	TSQLScript.Transaction	947
39.25.12	TSQLScript.OnDirective	947
39.25.13	TSQLScript.AutoCommit	948
39.25.14	TSQLScript.UseDollarString	948
39.25.15	TSQLScript.DollarStrings	948
39.25.16	TSQLScript.Directives	949
39.25.17	TSQLScript.Defines	949
39.25.18	TSQLScript.Script	949
39.25.19	TSQLScript.Terminator	950
39.25.20	TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL	950
39.25.21	TSQLScript.UseSetTerm	950
39.25.22	TSQLScript.UseCommit	951
39.25.23	TSQLScript.UseDefines	951
39.25.24	TSQLScript.OnException	952
39.26	TSQLSequence	952

39.26.1 Description	952
39.26.2 Method overview	952
39.26.3 Property overview	952
39.26.4 TSQLSequence.Create	952
39.26.5 TSQLSequence.Assign	953
39.26.6 TSQLSequence.Apply	953
39.26.7 TSQLSequence.GetNextValue	953
39.26.8 TSQLSequence.FieldName	953
39.26.9 TSQLSequence.SequenceName	954
39.26.10 TSQLSequence.IncrementBy	954
39.26.11 TSQLSequence.ApplyEvent	954
39.27 TSQLStatement	954
39.27.1 Description	954
39.27.2 Property overview	955
39.27.3 TSQLStatement.Database	955
39.27.4 TSQLStatement.DataSource	955
39.27.5 TSQLStatement.ParamCheck	955
39.27.6 TSQLStatement.Params	956
39.27.7 TSQLStatement.MacroCheck	956
39.27.8 TSQLStatement.Macros	956
39.27.9 TSQLStatement.ParseSQL	957
39.27.10 TSQLStatement.SQL	957
39.27.11 TSQLStatement.Transaction	957
39.28 TSQLTransaction	958
39.28.1 Description	958
39.28.2 Method overview	958
39.28.3 Property overview	958
39.28.4 TSQLTransaction.Create	958
39.28.5 TSQLTransaction.Destroy	958
39.28.6 TSQLTransaction.Commit	959
39.28.7 TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining	959
39.28.8 TSQLTransaction.Rollback	959
39.28.9 TSQLTransaction.RollbackRetaining	960
39.28.10 TSQLTransaction.StartTransaction	960
39.28.11 TSQLTransaction.EndTransaction	960
39.28.12 TSQLTransaction.Handle	961
39.28.13 TSQLTransaction.SQLConnection	961
39.28.14 TSQLTransaction.Action	961
39.28.15 TSQLTransaction.Database	961
39.28.16 TSQLTransaction.Params	962

39.28.1	TSQLTransaction.Options	962
40	Reference for unit 'SQLTypes'	963
40.1	Used units	963
40.2	Constants, types and variables	963
40.2.1	Types	963
40.3	TSqlObjectIdentifier	965
40.3.1	Description	965
40.3.2	Method overview	965
40.3.3	Property overview	965
40.3.4	TSqlObjectIdentifier.Create	965
40.3.5	TSqlObjectIdentifier.FullName	966
40.3.6	TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName	966
40.3.7	TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName	966
40.4	TSqlObjectIdentifierList	966
40.4.1	Method overview	966
40.4.2	Property overview	967
40.4.3	TSqlObjectIdentifierList.AddIdentifier	967
40.4.4	TSqlObjectIdentifierList.Identifiers	967
41	Reference for unit 'streamcoll'	968
41.1	Used units	968
41.2	Overview	968
41.3	Procedures and functions	968
41.3.1	ColReadBoolean	968
41.3.2	ColReadCurrency	969
41.3.3	ColReadDateTime	969
41.3.4	ColReadFloat	969
41.3.5	ColReadInteger	969
41.3.6	ColReadString	970
41.3.7	ColWriteBoolean	970
41.3.8	ColWriteCurrency	970
41.3.9	ColWriteDateTime	970
41.3.10	ColWriteFloat	971
41.3.11	ColWriteInteger	971
41.3.12	ColWriteString	971
41.4	EStreamColl	971
41.4.1	Description	971
41.5	TStreamCollection	971
41.5.1	Description	971
41.5.2	Method overview	972

41.5.3	Property overview	972
41.5.4	TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream	972
41.5.5	TStreamCollection.SaveToStream	972
41.5.6	TStreamCollection.Streaming	972
41.6	TStreamCollectionItem	973
41.6.1	Description	973
42	Reference for unit 'streamex'	974
42.1	Used units	974
42.2	Overview	974
42.3	Constants, types and variables	974
42.3.1	Constants	974
42.4	TBidirBinaryObjectReader	975
42.4.1	Description	975
42.4.2	Property overview	975
42.4.3	TBidirBinaryObjectReader.Position	975
42.5	TBidirBinaryObjectWriter	975
42.5.1	Description	975
42.5.2	Property overview	975
42.5.3	TBidirBinaryObjectWriter.Position	975
42.6	TDelphiReader	976
42.6.1	Description	976
42.6.2	Method overview	976
42.6.3	Property overview	976
42.6.4	TDelphiReader.GetDriver	976
42.6.5	TDelphiReader.ReadStr	976
42.6.6	TDelphiReader.Read	976
42.6.7	TDelphiReader.Position	977
42.7	TDelphiWriter	977
42.7.1	Description	977
42.7.2	Method overview	977
42.7.3	Property overview	977
42.7.4	TDelphiWriter.GetDriver	977
42.7.5	TDelphiWriter.FlushBuffer	978
42.7.6	TDelphiWriter.Write	978
42.7.7	TDelphiWriter.WriteStr	978
42.7.8	TDelphiWriter.WriteValue	978
42.7.9	TDelphiWriter.Position	978
42.8	TFileReader	979
42.8.1	Description	979

42.8.2	Method overview	979
42.8.3	TFileReader.Create	979
42.8.4	TFileReader.Destroy	979
42.8.5	TFileReader.Reset	980
42.8.6	TFileReader.Close	980
42.8.7	TFileReader.ReadLine	980
42.9	TStreamHelper	980
42.9.1	Description	980
42.9.2	Method overview	981
42.9.3	TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE	981
42.9.4	TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE	981
42.9.5	TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE	981
42.9.6	TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE	982
42.9.7	TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE	982
42.9.8	TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE	982
42.9.9	TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE	983
42.9.10	TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE	983
42.9.11	TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE	983
42.9.12	TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE	983
42.9.13	TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE	984
42.9.14	TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE	984
42.9.15	TStreamHelper.ReadSingle	984
42.9.16	TStreamHelper.ReadDouble	984
42.9.17	TStreamHelper.WriteSingle	985
42.9.18	TStreamHelper.WriteDouble	985
42.10	TStreamReader	985
42.10.1	Description	985
42.10.2	Method overview	985
42.10.3	Property overview	985
42.10.4	TStreamReader.Create	986
42.10.5	TStreamReader.Destroy	986
42.10.6	TStreamReader.Reset	986
42.10.7	TStreamReader.Close	986
42.10.8	TStreamReader.ReadLine	987
42.10.9	TStreamReader.BaseStream	987
42.10.10	TStreamReader.OwnsStream	987
42.11	TStreamWriter	988
42.11.1	Method overview	988
42.11.2	Property overview	988
42.11.3	TStreamWriter.Create	988

42.11.4 TStreamWriter.Destroy	988
42.11.5 TStreamWriter.Close	988
42.11.6 TStreamWriter.Flush	988
42.11.7 TStreamWriter.OwnStream	989
42.11.8 TStreamWriter.Write	989
42.11.9 TStreamWriter.WriteLine	989
42.11.10 TStreamWriter.AutoFlush	989
42.11.11 TStreamWriter.NewLine	990
42.11.12 TStreamWriter.Encoding	990
42.11.13 TStreamWriter.BaseStream	990
42.12 TStringReader	990
42.12.1 Description	990
42.12.2 Method overview	990
42.12.3 TStringReader.Create	990
42.12.4 TStringReader.Destroy	991
42.12.5 TStringReader.Reset	991
42.12.6 TStringReader.Close	991
42.12.7 TStringReader.ReadLine	991
42.13 TStringWriter	992
42.13.1 Method overview	992
42.13.2 TStringWriter.Create	992
42.13.3 TStringWriter.Destroy	992
42.13.4 TStringWriter.Close	992
42.13.5 TStringWriter.Flush	992
42.13.6 TStringWriter.Write	992
42.13.7 TStringWriter.WriteLine	993
42.13.8 TStringWriter.ToString	993
42.14 TTextReader	993
42.14.1 Description	993
42.14.2 Method overview	993
42.14.3 Property overview	994
42.14.4 TTextReader.Create	994
42.14.5 TTextReader.Reset	994
42.14.6 TTextReader.Close	994
42.14.7 TTextReader.ReadLine	994
42.14.8 TTextReader.Eof	995
42.15 TTextWriter	995
42.15.1 Method overview	995
42.15.2 TTextWriter.Close	995
42.15.3 TTextWriter.Flush	995

42.15.4 TTextWriter.Write	995
42.15.5 TTextWriter.WriteLine	996
42.16 TWindowedStream	996
42.16.1 Description	996
42.16.2 Method overview	996
42.16.3 TWindowedStream.Create	997
42.16.4 TWindowedStream.Destroy	997
42.16.5 TWindowedStream.Read	997
42.16.6 TWindowedStream.Write	997
42.16.7 TWindowedStream.Seek	998
43 Reference for unit 'StreamIO'	999
43.1 Used units	999
43.2 Overview	999
43.3 Procedures and functions	999
43.3.1 AssignStream	999
43.3.2 GetStream	1000
44 Reference for unit 'syncobjjs'	1001
44.1 Used units	1001
44.2 Overview	1001
44.3 Constants, types and variables	1001
44.3.1 Constants	1001
44.3.2 Types	1001
44.4 ELockException	1002
44.4.1 Description	1002
44.5 ELockRecursionException	1002
44.5.1 Description	1002
44.6 ESynObjectException	1003
44.6.1 Description	1003
44.7 TCriticalSection	1003
44.7.1 Description	1003
44.7.2 Method overview	1003
44.7.3 TCriticalSection.Acquire	1003
44.7.4 TCriticalSection.Release	1004
44.7.5 TCriticalSection.Enter	1004
44.7.6 TCriticalSection.TryEnter	1004
44.7.7 TCriticalSection.Leave	1004
44.7.8 TCriticalSection.Create	1005
44.7.9 TCriticalSection.Destroy	1005
44.8 TEventObject	1005

44.8.1	Description	1005
44.8.2	Method overview	1005
44.8.3	Property overview	1005
44.8.4	TEventObject.Create	1006
44.8.5	TEventObject.destroy	1006
44.8.6	TEventObject.ResetEvent	1006
44.8.7	TEventObject.SetEvent	1006
44.8.8	TEventObject.WaitFor	1007
44.8.9	TEventObject.ManualReset	1007
44.9	THandleObject	1007
44.9.1	Description	1007
44.9.2	Method overview	1007
44.9.3	Property overview	1007
44.9.4	THandleObject.destroy	1008
44.9.5	THandleObject.Handle	1008
44.9.6	THandleObject.LastError	1008
44.10	TSimpleEvent	1008
44.10.1	Description	1008
44.10.2	Method overview	1008
44.10.3	TSimpleEvent.Create	1009
44.11	TSynchroObject	1009
44.11.1	Description	1009
44.11.2	Method overview	1009
44.11.3	TSynchroObject.Acquire	1009
44.11.4	TSynchroObject.Release	1009
45	Reference for unit 'URIParser'	1010
45.1	Used units	1010
45.2	Overview	1010
45.3	Constants, types and variables	1010
45.3.1	Types	1010
45.4	Procedures and functions	1010
45.4.1	EncodeURI	1010
45.4.2	FilenameToURI	1011
45.4.3	IsAbsoluteURI	1011
45.4.4	ParseURI	1011
45.4.5	ResolveRelativeURI	1011
45.4.6	URIToFilename	1012
45.5	TURI	1012
46	Reference for unit 'Zipper'	1013

46.1	Used units	1013
46.2	Overview	1013
46.3	Constants, types and variables	1013
46.3.1	Constants	1013
46.3.2	Types	1017
46.4	Central_File_Header_Type	1018
46.5	CodeRec	1019
46.6	End_of_Central_Dir_Type	1019
46.7	Extensible_Data_Field_Header_Type	1019
46.8	Local_File_Header_Type	1020
46.9	Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_Locator_type	1020
46.10	Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_type	1020
46.11	Zip64_Extended_Info_Field_Type	1021
46.12	EZipError	1021
46.12.1	Description	1021
46.13	TCompressor	1021
46.13.1	Description	1021
46.13.2	Method overview	1021
46.13.3	Property overview	1021
46.13.4	TCompressor.Create	1022
46.13.5	TCompressor.Compress	1022
46.13.6	TCompressor.ZipID	1022
46.13.7	TCompressor.ZipVersionReqd	1022
46.13.8	TCompressor.ZipBitFlag	1022
46.13.9	TCompressor.Terminate	1022
46.13.10	TCompressor.BufferSize	1023
46.13.11	TCompressor.OnPercent	1023
46.13.12	TCompressor.OnProgress	1023
46.13.13	TCompressor.Crc32Val	1023
46.13.14	TCompressor.Terminated	1023
46.14	TDeCompressor	1024
46.14.1	Description	1024
46.14.2	Method overview	1024
46.14.3	Property overview	1024
46.14.4	TDeCompressor.Create	1024
46.14.5	TDeCompressor.DeCompress	1024
46.14.6	TDeCompressor.Terminate	1024
46.14.7	TDeCompressor.ZipID	1025
46.14.8	TDeCompressor.BufferSize	1025
46.14.9	TDeCompressor.OnPercent	1025

46.14.10 TDeCompressor.OnProgress	1025
46.14.11 TDeCompressor.OnProgressEx	1025
46.14.12 TDeCompressor.Crc32Val	1025
46.14.13 TDeCompressor.Terminated	1026
46.15 TDeflater	1026
46.15.1 Description	1026
46.15.2 Method overview	1026
46.15.3 Property overview	1026
46.15.4 TDeflater.Create	1026
46.15.5 TDeflater.Compress	1026
46.15.6 TDeflater.ZipID	1027
46.15.7 TDeflater.ZipVersionReqd	1027
46.15.8 TDeflater.ZipBitFlag	1027
46.15.9 TDeflater.CompressionLevel	1027
46.16 TFullZipFileEntries	1028
46.16.1 Description	1028
46.16.2 Property overview	1028
46.16.3 TFullZipFileEntries.FullEntries	1028
46.17 TFullZipFileEntry	1028
46.17.1 Description	1028
46.17.2 Property overview	1028
46.17.3 TFullZipFileEntry.BitFlags	1029
46.17.4 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressMethod	1029
46.17.5 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressedSize	1029
46.17.6 TFullZipFileEntry.CRC32	1029
46.18 TInflater	1029
46.18.1 Description	1029
46.18.2 Method overview	1030
46.18.3 TInflater.Create	1030
46.18.4 TInflater.DeCompress	1030
46.18.5 TInflater.ZipID	1030
46.19 TShrinker	1030
46.19.1 Description	1030
46.19.2 Method overview	1030
46.19.3 TShrinker.Create	1031
46.19.4 TShrinker.Destroy	1031
46.19.5 TShrinker.Compress	1031
46.19.6 TShrinker.ZipID	1031
46.19.7 TShrinker.ZipVersionReqd	1031
46.19.8 TShrinker.ZipBitFlag	1031

46.20	TUnZipper	1032
46.20.1	Description	1032
46.20.2	Method overview	1032
46.20.3	Property overview	1032
46.20.4	TUnZipper.Create	1033
46.20.5	TUnZipper.Destroy	1033
46.20.6	TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles	1033
46.20.7	TUnZipper.UnZipFile	1033
46.20.8	TUnZipper.UnZipFiles	1034
46.20.9	TUnZipper.Unzip	1034
46.20.10	TUnZipper.Clear	1034
46.20.11	TUnZipper.Examine	1035
46.20.12	TUnZipper.Terminate	1035
46.20.13	TUnZipper.BufferSize	1035
46.20.14	TUnZipper.OnOpenInputStream	1035
46.20.15	TUnZipper.OnCloseInputStream	1035
46.20.16	TUnZipper.OnCreateStream	1036
46.20.17	TUnZipper.OnDoneStream	1036
46.20.18	TUnZipper.OnPercent	1036
46.20.19	TUnZipper.OnProgress	1036
46.20.20	TUnZipper.OnProgressEx	1036
46.20.21	TUnZipper.OnStartFile	1037
46.20.22	TUnZipper.OnEndFile	1037
46.20.23	TUnZipper.FileName	1037
46.20.24	TUnZipper.OutputPath	1037
46.20.25	TUnZipper.FileComment	1037
46.20.26	TUnZipper.Files	1038
46.20.27	TUnZipper.Entries	1038
46.20.28	TUnZipper.UseUTF8	1038
46.20.29	TUnZipper.Flat	1039
46.20.30	TUnZipper.Terminated	1039
46.21	TZipFileEntries	1039
46.21.1	Description	1039
46.21.2	Method overview	1039
46.21.3	Property overview	1039
46.21.4	TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntry	1039
46.21.5	TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntries	1040
46.21.6	TZipFileEntries.Entries	1040
46.22	TZipFileEntry	1040
46.22.1	Description	1040

46.22.2 Method overview	1041
46.22.3 Property overview	1041
46.22.4 TZipFileEntry.Create	1041
46.22.5 TZipFileEntry.IsDirectory	1042
46.22.6 TZipFileEntry.IsLink	1042
46.22.7 TZipFileEntry.Assign	1042
46.22.8 TZipFileEntry.Stream	1042
46.22.9 TZipFileEntry.ArchiveFileName	1043
46.22.10 TZipFileEntry.UTF8ArchiveFileName	1043
46.22.11 TZipFileEntry.DiskFileName	1043
46.22.12 TZipFileEntry.UTF8DiskFileName	1043
46.22.13 TZipFileEntry.Size	1043
46.22.14 TZipFileEntry.DateTime	1044
46.22.15 TZipFileEntry.OS	1044
46.22.16 TZipFileEntry.Attributes	1044
46.22.17 TZipFileEntry.CompressionLevel	1044
46.23 TZipper	1044
46.23.1 Description	1044
46.23.2 Method overview	1045
46.23.3 Property overview	1045
46.23.4 TZipper.Create	1045
46.23.5 TZipper.Destroy	1045
46.23.6 TZipper.ZipAllFiles	1046
46.23.7 TZipper.SaveToFile	1046
46.23.8 TZipper.SaveToStream	1046
46.23.9 TZipper.ZipFile	1047
46.23.10 TZipper.ZipFiles	1047
46.23.11 TZipper.Zip	1047
46.23.12 TZipper.Clear	1048
46.23.13 TZipper.Terminate	1048
46.23.14 TZipper.BufferSize	1048
46.23.15 TZipper.OnPercent	1048
46.23.16 TZipper.OnProgress	1049
46.23.17 TZipper.OnStartFile	1049
46.23.18 TZipper.OnEndFile	1049
46.23.19 TZipper.FileName	1049
46.23.20 TZipper.FileComment	1049
46.23.21 TZipper.Files	1050
46.23.22 TZipper.InMemSize	1050
46.23.23 TZipper.Entries	1050

46.23.24	Zipper.Terminated	1050
46.23.25	Zipper.UseLanguageEncoding	1051
47	Reference for unit 'ZStream'	1052
47.1	Used units	1052
47.2	Overview	1052
47.3	Constants, types and variables	1052
47.3.1	Types	1052
47.4	Ecompressionerror	1053
47.4.1	Description	1053
47.5	Edecompressionerror	1053
47.5.1	Description	1053
47.6	Egzfileerror	1053
47.6.1	Description	1053
47.7	Ezliberror	1053
47.7.1	Description	1053
47.8	Tcompressionstream	1053
47.8.1	Description	1053
47.8.2	Method overview	1054
47.8.3	Property overview	1054
47.8.4	Tcompressionstream.create	1054
47.8.5	Tcompressionstream.destroy	1054
47.8.6	Tcompressionstream.write	1054
47.8.7	Tcompressionstream.flush	1055
47.8.8	Tcompressionstream.get_compressionrate	1055
47.8.9	Tcompressionstream.OnProgress	1055
47.9	Tcustomzlibstream	1055
47.9.1	Description	1055
47.9.2	Method overview	1056
47.9.3	Tcustomzlibstream.create	1056
47.9.4	Tcustomzlibstream.destroy	1056
47.10	Tdecompressionstream	1056
47.10.1	Description	1056
47.10.2	Method overview	1056
47.10.3	Property overview	1057
47.10.4	Tdecompressionstream.create	1057
47.10.5	Tdecompressionstream.destroy	1057
47.10.6	Tdecompressionstream.read	1057
47.10.7	Tdecompressionstream.Seek	1058
47.10.8	Tdecompressionstream.get_compressionrate	1058

47.10.9 Tdecompressionstream.OnProgress	1058
47.11 TGZFileStream	1059
47.11.1 Description	1059
47.11.2 Method overview	1059
47.11.3 TGZFileStream.create	1059
47.11.4 TGZFileStream.read	1059
47.11.5 TGZFileStream.write	1060
47.11.6 TGZFileStream.seek	1060
47.11.7 TGZFileStream.destroy	1060
47.12 TGZipCompressionStream	1060
47.12.1 Method overview	1060
47.12.2 TGZipCompressionStream.Create	1060
47.12.3 TGZipCompressionStream.Destroy	1061
47.12.4 TGZipCompressionStream.Write	1061
47.13 TGZipDecompressionStream	1061
47.13.1 Method overview	1061
47.13.2 TGZipDecompressionStream.Create	1061
47.13.3 TGZipDecompressionStream.Destroy	1061
47.13.4 TGZipDecompressionStream.Read	1061
47.13.5 TGZipDecompressionStream.Seek	1061

About this guide

This document describes all constants, types, variables, functions and procedures as they are declared in the units that come standard with the FCL (Free Component Library).

Throughout this document, we will refer to functions, types and variables with `typewriter` font. Functions and procedures have their own subsections, and for each function or procedure we have the following topics:

Declaration The exact declaration of the function.

Description What does the procedure exactly do ?

Errors What errors can occur.

See Also Cross references to other related functions/commands.

0.1 Overview

The Free Component Library is a series of units that implement various classes and non-visual components for use with Free Pascal. They are building blocks for non-visual and visual programs, such as designed in Lazarus.

The `TDataset` descendents have been implemented in a way that makes them compatible to the Delphi implementation of these units. There are other units that have counterparts in Delphi, but most of them are unique to Free Pascal.

Chapter 1

Reference for unit 'AdvancedSingleInstance'

1.1 Used units

Table 1.1: Used units by unit 'AdvancedSingleInstance'

Name	Page
AdvancedIPC	??
Classes	??
singleinstance	875
System	??
sysutils	??

1.2 Overview

The `AdvancedSingleInstance` unit contains an implementation of the `TBaseSingleInstance` ([877](#)) class, based on functionality found in the `AdvancedIPC` (??) unit. The class is called `TAdvancedSingleInstance` ([96](#))

1.3 Constants, types and variables

1.3.1 Types

```
TSingleInstanceReceivedCustomMessage = procedure
  (Sender: TBaseSingleInstance;
   MsgID: Integer;
   MsgType: Integer
  ;
   MsgData: TStream
  )
  of object
```


`TSingleInstanceReceivedCustomMessage` is the signature of the `TAdvancedSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedCustomRequest` (99) event. It carries the information received when the server receives a custom message.

1.4 TAdvancedSingleInstance

1.4.1 Description

`TAdvancedSingleInstance` is a `TBaseSingleInstance` (95) descendent. It implements the required functionality using the IPC mechanism of the `advancedipc` (95) unit: it uses files to communicate. This ensures the mechanism works on all platforms.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance` (95), `advancedipc` (95)

1.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
99	<code>ClientPeekCustomResponse</code>	Check whether the server posted a response.
98	<code>ClientPostCustomRequest</code>	Send a custom message to the server.
97	<code>ClientPostParams</code>	Post client command-line parameters to the server.
98	<code>ClientSendCustomRequest</code>	<code>ClientSendCustomRequest</code> .
96	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TAdvancedSingleInstance</code> .
97	<code>ServerCheckMessages</code>	Check for incoming messages for the server.
98	<code>ServerPostCustomResponse</code>	Post a server response to the client.
97	<code>Start</code>	Start IPC communication and check the type of the application instance.
97	<code>Stop</code>	End IPC communication.

1.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
99	<code>Global</code>	rw	Is the instance global (for all users) or local (for the current user).
99	<code>ID</code>	rw	The ID of this instance.
99	<code>OnServerReceivedCustomRequest</code>	rw	Server event triggered when a custom request is received.

1.4.4 TAdvancedSingleInstance.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TAdvancedSingleInstance`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor, and then constructs the `ID` (95) property which identifies the application.

See also: `ID` (95)

1.4.5 TAdvancedSingleInstance.Start

Synopsis: Start IPC communication and check the type of the application instance.

Declaration: `function Start : TSingleInstanceStart; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Start` implements the abstract `TBaseSingleInstance.Start` (95) call. It initiates the IPC mechanism.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.Start` (95), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.Stop` (97)

1.4.6 TAdvancedSingleInstance.Stop

Synopsis: End IPC communication.

Declaration: `procedure Stop; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Start` implements the abstract `TBaseSingleInstance.Stop` (95) call. It terminates the IPC mechanism.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.Stop` (95), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.Start` (97)

1.4.7 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages

Synopsis: Check for incoming messages for the server.

Declaration: `procedure ServerCheckMessages; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerCheckMessages` implements `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages` (97) and checks if there are any messages in the message queue using the API of `advancedIPC` (95). If there are messages, it fires the `OnServerReceivedParams` (875) event.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages` (97), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.Start` (97), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.Stop` (97), `OnServerReceivedParams` (875)

1.4.8 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostParams

Synopsis: Post client command-line parameters to the server.

Declaration: `procedure ClientPostParams; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClientPostParams` implements `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostParams` (97). It sends the command-line parameters using `ClientPostCustomRequest` (98).

Errors: If this application instance is not a client instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (95) exception is raised.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostParams` (97), `ClientPostCustomRequest` (98)

1.4.9 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostCustomRequest

Synopsis: Send a custom message to the server.

Declaration: `function ClientPostCustomRequest(const aMsgType: Integer;
const aStream: TStream) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClientPostCustomRequest` sends the data in `aStream` to the server instance using message type `aMsgType`. It returns the message id.

Errors: If this application instance is not a client instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (95) exception is raised.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientSendCustomRequest` (98), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse` (98)

1.4.10 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientSendCustomRequest

Synopsis: `ClientSendCustomRequest`.

Declaration: `function ClientSendCustomRequest(const aMsgType: Integer;
const aStream: TStream) : Boolean
; Overload
function ClientSendCustomRequest(const aMsgType: Integer;
const aStream: TStream;
out outRequestID: Integer) : Boolean
; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClientSendCustomRequest` sends the data in `aStream` to the server instance using message type `aMsgType`. It returns `True` if the message was sent successfully. It returns the message id in `outRequestID`, if supplied.

Errors: If this application instance is not a client instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (95) exception is raised.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostCustomRequest` (98), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse` (98)

1.4.11 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse

Synopsis: Post a server response to the client.

Declaration: `procedure ServerPostCustomResponse(const aRequestID: Integer;
const aMsgType: Integer;
const aStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ServerPostCustomResponse` sends the data in `aStream` to the client instance using message type `aMsgType`, in response to client message `aRequestID`. The client can check for the response using `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPeekCustomResponse` (99)

Errors: If this application instance is not a server instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (95) exception is raised.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostCustomRequest` (98), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientSendCustomRequest` (98), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPeekCustomResponse` (99)

1.4.12 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPeekCustomResponse

Synopsis: Check whether the server posted a response.

Declaration: `function ClientPeekCustomResponse(const aStream: TStream;
out outMsgType: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClientPeekCustomResponse` checks if the server posted any responses. It returns `True` if there was a message, and returns the message type in `outMsgType`, the payload is read into the stream `aStream`. The message timeout `TimeoutMessages` (95) is observed: if no message arrived before the timeout expires the call will return `False`.

Errors: If this application instance is not a client instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (95) exception is raised. The `aStream` must be non-nil, or an access violation will occur.

See also: `TimeoutMessages` (95), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse` (98)

1.4.13 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ID

Synopsis: The ID of this instance.

Declaration: `Property ID : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ID` is the unique ID for this application instance.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.ID` (95)

1.4.14 TAdvancedSingleInstance.Global

Synopsis: Is the instance global (for all users) or local (for the current user).

Declaration: `Property Global : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Global` indicates whether the instance is global (for all users) or local (for the current user only). This must be set before `Start` (97) is called.

See also: `Start` (97)

1.4.15 TAdvancedSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedCustomRequest

Synopsis: Server event triggered when a custom request is received.

Declaration: `Property OnServerReceivedCustomRequest : TSingleInstanceReceivedCustomMessage`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnServerReceivedCustomRequest` is triggered when a custom request (i.e. not a command-line parameters request) is received by the server.

See also: `TSingleInstanceReceivedCustomMessage` (95)

Chapter 2

Reference for unit 'ascii85'

2.1 Used units

Table 2.1: Used units by unit 'ascii85'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

2.2 Overview

The `ascii85` provides an ASCII 85 or base 85 decoding algorithm. It is class and stream based: the `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([101](#)) stream can be used to decode any stream with ASCII85 encoded data.

Currently, no ASCII85 encoder stream is available.

It's usage and purpose is similar to the IDEA ([697](#)) or base64 ([132](#)) units.

2.3 Constants, types and variables

2.3.1 Types

```
TASCII85State = (ascInitial, ascOneEncodedChar, ascTwoEncodedChars,  
    ascThreeEncodedChars, ascFourEncodedChars,  
    ascNoEncodedChar, ascPrefix)
```

Table 2.2: Enumeration values for type TASCII85State

Value	Explanation
ascFourEncodedChars	Four encoded characters in buffer.
ascInitial	Initial state.
ascNoEncodedChar	No encoded characters in buffer.
ascOneEncodedChar	One encoded character in buffer.
ascPrefix	Prefix processing.
ascThreeEncodedChars	Three encoded characters in buffer.
ascTwoEncodedChars	Two encoded characters in buffer.

TASCII85State is for internal use, it contains the current state of the decoder.

2.4 TASCII85DecoderStream

2.4.1 Description

TASCII85DecoderStream is a read-only stream: it takes an input stream with ASCII 85 encoded data, and decodes the data as it is read. To this end, it overrides the TStream.Read (??) method.

The stream cannot be written to, trying to write to the stream will result in an exception.

2.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
102	Close	Close decoder.
102	ClosedP	Check if the state is correct.
101	Create	Create new ASCII 85 decoder stream.
102	Decode	Decode source byte.
102	Destroy	Clean up instance.
103	Read	Read data from stream.
103	Seek	Set stream position.

2.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
103	BExpectBoundary	rw	Expect character.

2.4.4 TASCII85DecoderStream.Create

Synopsis: Create new ASCII 85 decoder stream.

Declaration: constructor Create(aStream: TStream)

Visibility: published

Description: Create instantiates a new TASCII85DecoderStream instance, and sets aStream as the source stream.

See also: TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy ([102](#))

2.4.5 TASCII85DecoderStream.Decode

Synopsis: Decode source byte.

Declaration: `procedure Decode(aInput: Byte)`

Visibility: published

Description: `Decode` decodes a source byte, and transfers it to the buffer. It is an internal routine and should not be used directly.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` ([102](#))

2.4.6 TASCII85DecoderStream.Close

Synopsis: Close decoder.

Declaration: `procedure Close`

Visibility: published

Description: `Close` closes the decoder mechanism: it checks if all data was read and performs a check to see whether all input data was consumed.

Errors: If the input stream was invalid, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP` ([102](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream.Read` ([103](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy` ([102](#))

2.4.7 TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP

Synopsis: Check if the state is correct.

Declaration: `function ClosedP : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Description: `ClosedP` checks if the decoder state is one of `ascInitial`, `ascNoEncodedChar`, `ascPrefix`, and returns `True` if it is.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` ([102](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary` ([103](#))

2.4.8 TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the input stream using `Close` ([102](#)) and cleans up the `TASCII85DecoderStream` instance from memory.

Errors: In case the input stream was invalid, an exception may occur.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` ([102](#))

2.4.9 TASCII85DecoderStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read attempts to read `aCount` bytes from the stream and places them in `aBuffer`. It reads only as much data as is available. The actual number of read bytes is returned.

The read method reads as much data from the input stream as needed to get to `aCount` bytes, in general this will be `aCount*5/4` bytes.

2.4.10 TASCII85DecoderStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(aOffset: LongInt; aOrigin: Word) : LongInt; Override`
`function Seek(const aOffset: Int64; aOrigin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64`
`; Override; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Seek sets the stream position. It only allows to set the position to the current position of this file, and returns then the current position. All other arguments will result in an `EReadError` exception.

Errors: In case the arguments are different from `soCurrent` and 0, an `EReadError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Read` ([103](#))

2.4.11 TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary

Synopsis: Expect character.

Declaration: `Property BExpectBoundary : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BExpectBoundary` is `True` if a encoded data boundary is to be expected (">").

See also: `ClosedP` ([102](#))

2.5 TASCII85EncoderStream

2.5.1 Description

`TASCII85EncoderStream` is the counterpart to the `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([101](#)) decoder stream: what `TASCII85EncoderStream` encodes, can be decoded by `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([101](#)).

The encoder stream works using a destination stream: whatever data is written to the encoder stream is encoded and written to the destination stream. The stream must be passed on in the constructor.

Note that all encoded data is only written to the destination stream when the encoder stream is destroyed.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.create` ([104](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([101](#))

2.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
104	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TASCII85EncoderStream</code> .
104	Destroy	Flushed the data to the output stream and cleans up the encoder instance.
104	Write	Write data encoded to the destination stream.

2.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
105	Boundary	r	Is a boundary delineator written before and after the data.
105	Width	r	Width of the lines written to the data stream.

2.5.4 TASCII85EncoderStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TASCII85EncoderStream`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADest: TStream; AWidth: Integer; ABoundary: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TASCII85EncoderStream`. It stores `ADest` as the destination stream for the encoded data. The `Width` parameter indicates the width of the lines that are written by the encoder: after this amount of characters, a linefeed is put in the data stream. If `ABoundary` is `True` then a boundary delineator is written to the stream before and after the data.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream` ([103](#)), `Width` ([105](#)), `Boundary` ([105](#))

2.5.5 TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Flushed the data to the output stream and cleans up the encoder instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` writes the data remaining in the internal buffer to the destination stream (possibly followed by a boundary delineator) and then destroys the encoder instance.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.Write` ([104](#)), `TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary` ([105](#))

2.5.6 TASCII85EncoderStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data encoded to the destination stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` encodes the `aCount` bytes of data in `aBuffer` and writes the encoded data to the destination stream.

Not all data is written immediately to the destination stream. Only after the encoding stream is destroyed will the destination stream contain the full data.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy` ([104](#))

2.5.7 TASCII85EncoderStream.Width

Synopsis: Width of the lines written to the data stream.

Declaration: `Property Width : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Width` is the width of the lines of encoded data written to the stream. After `Width` lines, a line ending will be written to the stream. The value is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed afterwards.

See also: [Boundary \(105\)](#), [Create \(104\)](#)

2.5.8 TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary

Synopsis: Is a boundary delineator written before and after the data.

Declaration: `Property Boundary : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Boundary` indicates whether the stream will write a boundary delineator before and after the encoded data. It is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed.

See also: [Width \(105\)](#), [Create \(104\)](#)

2.6 TASCII85RingBuffer

2.6.1 Description

`TASCII85RingBuffer` is an internal buffer class: it maintains a memory buffer of 1Kb, for faster reading of the stream. It should not be necessary to instantiate an instance of this class, the `TASCII85DecoderStream (101)` decoder stream will create an instance of this class automatically.

See also: [TASCII85DecoderStream \(101\)](#)

2.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
106	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the internal buffer.
106	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the internal buffer.

2.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
106	<code>FillCount</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of bytes in buffer.
106	<code>Size</code>	<code>r</code>	Size of buffer.

2.6.4 TASCII85RingBuffer.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the internal buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Write(const aBuffer; aSize: Cardinal)`

Visibility: published

Description: `Write` writes `aSize` bytes from `aBuffer` to the internal memory buffer. Only as much bytes are written as will fit in the buffer.

See also: [TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount \(106\)](#), [TASCII85RingBuffer.Read \(106\)](#), [TASCII85RingBuffer.Size \(106\)](#)

2.6.5 TASCII85RingBuffer.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the internal buffer.

Declaration: `function Read(var aBuffer; aSize: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Description: `Read` will read `aSize` bytes from the internal buffer and writes them to `aBuffer`. If not enough bytes are available, only as much bytes as available will be written. The function returns the number of bytes transferred.

See also: [TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount \(106\)](#), [TASCII85RingBuffer.Write \(106\)](#), [TASCII85RingBuffer.Size \(106\)](#)

2.6.6 TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount

Synopsis: Number of bytes in buffer.

Declaration: `Property FillCount : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `FillCount` is the available amount of bytes in the buffer.

See also: [TASCII85RingBuffer.Write \(106\)](#), [TASCII85RingBuffer.Read \(106\)](#), [TASCII85RingBuffer.Size \(106\)](#)

2.6.7 TASCII85RingBuffer.Size

Synopsis: Size of buffer.

Declaration: `Property Size : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `Size` is the total size of the memory buffer. This is currently hardcoded to 1024Kb.

See also: [TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount \(106\)](#)

Chapter 3

Reference for unit 'AVL_Tree'

3.1 Used units

Table 3.1: Used units by unit 'AVL_Tree'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

3.2 Overview

The `avl_tree` unit implements a general-purpose AVL (balanced) tree class: the `TAVLTree` ([111](#)) class and it's associated data node class `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#)).

3.3 Constants, types and variables

3.3.1 Types

```
PAVLTreeNode = ^TAVLTreeNode
```

Pointer to `TAVLTreeNode`.

```
TAVLTreeClass = type class
protected
  FCount : SizeInt;
  FNodeClass
    : TAVLTreeNodeClass;
  fNodeMgr : TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager;
  fNodeMgrAutoFree
    : Boolean;
  FOnCompare : TListSortCompare;
  FOnObjectCompare :
    TObjectSortCompare;
```

```

FRoot : TAVLTreeNode;
procedure BalanceAfterInsert
(ANode: TAVLTreeNode);
procedure BalanceAfterDelete(ANode: TAVLTreeNode
);
procedure DeletingNode(aNode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual;
function
FindInsertPos(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode;
procedure Init; Virtual
;
procedure NodeAdded(aNode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual;
procedure
RotateLeft(aNode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual;
procedure RotateRight
(aNode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual;
procedure SwitchPositionWithSuccessor
(aNode: TAVLTreeNode;
                                aSuccessor
: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual;
procedure SetOnCompare(const AValue:
TListSortCompare);
procedure SetOnObjectCompare(const AValue: TObjectSortCompare
);
procedure SetCompares(const NewCompare: TListSortCompare;
const NewObjectCompare: TObjectSortCompare)
;
procedure SetNodeClass(const AValue: TAVLTreeNodeClass);
public
Create;
constructor CreateObjectCompare
(const OnCompareMethod: TObjectSortCompare);
destructor
Destroy; Override;
property OnCompare : TListSortCompare;
property
OnObjectCompare : TObjectSortCompare;
property NodeClass : TAVLTreeNodeClass
;
procedure SetNodeManager(NewMgr: TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager;
AutoFree: Boolean);
function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode
; Virtual;
procedure DisposeNode(ANode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual
;
Add;
function AddAscendingSequence(Data: Pointer; LastAdded
: TAVLTreeNode;
                                var Successor: TAVLTreeNode
) : TAVLTreeNode;
procedure Delete(ANode: TAVLTreeNode);
function
Remove(Data: Pointer) : Boolean;
function RemovePointer(Data: Pointer
) : Boolean;

```

```

procedure MoveDataLeftMost (var ANode: TAVLTreeNode
);
procedure MoveDataRightMost (var ANode: TAVLTreeNode);
procedure
Clear;
procedure FreeAndClear;
procedure FreeAndDelete (ANode
: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual;
function Equals (Obj: TObject) : Boolean
; Override;
function IsEqual (aTree: TAVLTree; CheckDataPointer
: Boolean) : Boolean;
procedure Assign (aTree: TAVLTree); Virtual
;
property Root : TAVLTreeNode;
property Count : SizeInt;
function
Compare (Data1: Pointer; Data2: Pointer) : Integer;
function Find
(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode;
function FindKey (Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode;
function FindNearestKey (Key:
Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare
)
: TAVLTreeNode;
function FindSuccessor
(ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode;
function FindPrecessor (ANode
: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode;
function FindLowest : TAVLTreeNode
;
function FindHighest : TAVLTreeNode;
function FindNearest (Data
: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode;
function FindPointer (Data: Pointer)
: TAVLTreeNode;
function FindLeftMost (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode
;
function FindRightMost (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode;
function
FindLeftMostKey (Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData
: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode;
function
FindRightMostKey (Key: Pointer;
const
OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode;
function FindLeftMostSameKey (ANode: TAVLTreeNode
) : TAVLTreeNode;

```

```

function FindRightMostSameKey (ANode: TAVLTreeNode
) : TAVLTreeNode;
function GetEnumerator : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator
;
function GetEnumeratorHighToLow : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator;
procedure
ConsistencyCheck; Virtual;
procedure WriteReportToStream(s: TStream
);
function NodeToReportStr(aNode: TAVLTreeNode) : string; Virtual
;
function ReportAsString : string;
end

```

TAVLTreeClass is the class of TAVLTree (111).

```

TAVLTreeNodeClass = type class
public
  Parent : TAVLTreeNode;
  Left
  : TAVLTreeNode;
  Right : TAVLTreeNode;
  Balance : Integer;
  Data
  : Pointer;
  function Successor : TAVLTreeNode;
  function Predecessor
  : TAVLTreeNode;
  procedure Clear;
  function TreeDepth : Integer
  ;
  procedure ConsistencyCheck(Tree: TAVLTree); Virtual;
  function
  GetCount : SizeInt;
end

```

TAVLTreeNodeClass is the class of TAVLTreeNode (125). It is the type of the TAVLTree.NodeClass (124) property and determines what class of nodes will be created by the tree.

```

TObjectSortCompare = function(Tree: TAVLTree; Data1: Pointer;
  Data2: Pointer) : Integer of object

```

TObjectSortCompare is the prototype for the TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare (124) property. When assigned, it is used to sort the elements in the tree. It provides more information than the standard TListSortCompare handler used in TAVLTree.OnCompare (124): it also passes the tree to the sort mechanism.

3.3.2 Variables

```

NodeMemManager : TAVLTreeNodeMemManager

```

NodeMemManager is the default node manager for a new instance of TAVLTree.

3.4 TAVLTree

3.4.1 Description

`TAVLTree` maintains a balanced AVL tree. The tree consists of `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#)) nodes, each of which has a `Data` pointer associated with it. The `TAVLTree` component offers methods to balance and search the tree.

By default, the list is searched with a simple pointer comparison algorithm, but a custom search mechanism can be specified in the `OnCompare` ([124](#)) property.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#))

3.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
114	Add	Add a new node to the tree.
115	AddAscendingSequence	
118	Assign	Assign another tree.
116	Clear	Clears the tree.
118	Compare	Compare 2 nodes.
123	ConsistencyCheck	Check the consistency of the tree.
113	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TAVLTree</code> .
113	CreateObjectCompare	Create an instance of the tree with extended compare method.
115	Delete	Delete a node from the tree.
113	Destroy	Destroy the <code>TAVLTree</code> instance.
114	DisposeNode	Dispose of a node outside of the tree.
117	Equals	Check if two trees are equal.
118	Find	Find a data item in the tree.
120	FindHighest	Find the highest (rightmost) node in the tree.
118	FindKey	Find a data item in the tree using alternate compare mechanism.
121	FindLeftMost	Find the node most left to a specified data node.
121	FindLeftMostKey	Find the node most left to a specified key node.
122	FindLeftMostSameKey	Find the node most left to a specified node with the same data.
120	FindLowest	Find the lowest (leftmost) node in the tree.
120	FindNearest	Find the node closest to the data in the tree.
119	FindNearestKey	Find nearest key for a data pointer.
120	FindPointer	Search for a data pointer.
119	FindPrecessor	
121	FindRightMost	Find the node most right to a specified node.
121	FindRightMostKey	Find the node most right to a specified key node.
122	FindRightMostSameKey	Find the node most right of a specified node with the same data.
119	FindSuccessor	Find successor to node.
117	FreeAndClear	Clears the tree and frees nodes.
117	FreeAndDelete	Delete a node from the tree and destroy it.
122	GetEnumerator	Get an enumerator for the tree.
122	GetEnumeratorHighToLow	Return an enumerator that enumerates the tree in reversed order.
117	IsEqual	Check whether 2 tree instances are equal.
116	MoveDataLeftMost	Move data to the nearest left element.
116	MoveDataRightMost	Move data to the nearest right element.
114	NewNode	Create a new tree node.
123	NodeToReportStr	Create a textual dump of the tree.
115	Remove	Remove a data item from the list.
116	RemovePointer	Remove a pointer item from the list.
123	ReportAsString	Return the tree report as a string.
113	SetNodeManager	Set the node instance manager to use.
123	WriteReportToStream	Write the contents of the tree consistency check to the stream.

3.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
125	Count	r	Number of nodes in the tree.
124	NodeClass	rw	Node class to create.
124	OnCompare	rw	Compare function used when comparing nodes.
124	OnObjectCompare	rw	Compare handler.
124	Root	r	Root node of the tree.

3.4.4 TAVLTree.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TAVLTree.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const OnCompareMethod: TListSortCompare)`
`constructor Create`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TAVLTree ([111](#)). An alternate `OnCompare` ([124](#)) can be provided: the default `OnCompare` method compares the 2 data pointers of a node.

See also: `OnCompare` ([124](#))

3.4.5 TAVLTree.CreateObjectCompare

Synopsis: Create an instance of the tree with extended compare method.

Declaration: `constructor CreateObjectCompare`
`(const OnCompareMethod: TObjectSortCompare)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateObjectCompare` is an alternative constructor that accepts a `TObjectSortCompare` ([110](#)) compare function instead of a regular `TListSortCompare` compare function. The compare function can still be set in the `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` ([124](#)) property.

See also: `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` ([124](#))

3.4.6 TAVLTree.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TAVLTree instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` clears the nodes (the node data is not freed) and then destroys the TAVLTree instance.

See also: `TAVLTree.Clear` ([116](#)), `TAVLTree.Create` ([113](#))

3.4.7 TAVLTree.SetNodeManager

Synopsis: Set the node instance manager to use.

Declaration: `procedure SetNodeManager(NewMgr: TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager;`
`AutoFree: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetNodeManager` sets the node manager instance used by the tree to `newmgr`. It should be called before any nodes are added to the tree. The `TAVLTree` instance will not destroy the `nodemanager`, thus the same instance of the tree node manager can be used to manager the nodes of multiple `TAVLTree` instances.

By default, a single instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` (128) is used to manage the nodes of all `TAVLTree` instances.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager` (130), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` (128)

3.4.8 TAVLTree.NewNode

Synopsis: Create a new tree node.

Declaration: `function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `NewNode` creates a new node, but does not insert it in the tree. It will use the node manager if that is set. If it is not set then the `TAVLTree.NodeClass` (124) class is used to create a new node.

See also: `TAVLTree.NodeClass` (124), `TAVLTree.Add` (114), `TAVLTree.DisposeNode` (114)

3.4.9 TAVLTree.DisposeNode

Synopsis: Dispose of a node outside of the tree.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeNode (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DisposeNode` disposes of a node outside of the tree. If the node manager is set, the node is returned to the manager, otherwise it is freed. Do not use this on a node that is still in the tree.

Errors: If use on a node in the tree, no error will happen, but the tree will no longer be correct and access violations may happen later on.

See also: `TAVLTree.NewNode` (114)

3.4.10 TAVLTree.Add

Synopsis: Add a new node to the tree.

Declaration: `procedure Add (ANode: TAVLTreeNode)
function Add (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new `Data` or `Node` to the tree. It inserts the node so that the tree is maximally balanced by rebalancing the tree after the insert. In case a `data` pointer is added to the tree, then the node that was created is returned.

See also: `TAVLTree.Delete` (115), `TAVLTree.Remove` (115)

3.4.11 TAVLTree.AddAscendingSequence

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function AddAscendingSequence(Data: Pointer; LastAdded: TAVLTreeNode;
var Successor: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddAscendingSequence` is an optimized version of `Add` (114) for quickly adding an ascending sequence of nodes. It adds `Data` between `LastAdded` and `Successor` as a state and skips searching for an insert position. For nodes with same value the order of the sequence is kept.

It can be used as follows:

```
LastNode:=nil; // TAVLTreeNode
Successor:=nil; // TAVLTreeNode
for i:=1 to 1000 do
  LastNode:=Tree.AddAscendingSequence(TItem.Create(i), LastNode, Successor);
```

If `LastAdded` is `Nil` a regular add is performed.

Errors: If the nodes are not in ascending order, the tree will not be consistent.

See also: `TAVLTree.Add` (114)

3.4.12 TAVLTree.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a node from the tree.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` removes the node from the tree. The node is not freed, but is passed to a `TAVLTreeNode-MemManager` (128) instance for future reuse. The data that the node represents is also not freed.

The tree is rebalanced after the node was deleted.

See also: `TAVLTree.Remove` (115), `TAVLTree.RemovePointer` (116), `TAVLTree.Clear` (116)

3.4.13 TAVLTree.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a data item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(Data: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` finds the node associated with `Data` using `find` (118) and, if found, deletes it from the tree. Only the first occurrence of `Data` will be removed.

See also: `TAVLTree.Delete` (115), `TAVLTree.RemovePointer` (116), `TAVLTree.Clear` (116), `TAVLTree.Find` (118)

3.4.14 TAVLTree.RemovePointer

Synopsis: Remove a pointer item from the list.

Declaration: `function RemovePointer(Data: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` uses `FindPointer` (120) to find the node associated with the pointer `Data` and, if found, deletes it from the tree. Only the first occurrence of `Data` will be removed.

See also: `TAVLTree.Remove` (115), `TAVLTree.Delete` (115), `TAVLTree.Clear` (116)

3.4.15 TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost

Synopsis: Move data to the nearest left element.

Declaration: `procedure MoveDataLeftMost(var ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveDataLeftMost` moves the data from the node `ANode` to the nearest left location relative to `ANode`. It returns the new node where the data is positioned. The data from the former left node will be switched to `ANode`.

This operation corresponds to switching the current with the previous element in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost` (116)

3.4.16 TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost

Synopsis: Move data to the nearest right element.

Declaration: `procedure MoveDataRightMost(var ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveDataRightMost` moves the data from the node `ANode` to the rightmost location relative to `ANode`. It returns the new node where the data is positioned. The data from the former rightmost node will be switched to `ANode`.

This operation corresponds to switching the current with the next element in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost` (116)

3.4.17 TAVLTree.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the tree.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` deletes all nodes from the tree. The nodes themselves are not freed, and the data pointer in the nodes is also not freed.

If the node's data must be freed as well, use `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` (117) instead.

See also: `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` (117), `TAVLTree.Delete` (115)

3.4.18 TAVLTree.FreeAndClear

Synopsis: Clears the tree and frees nodes.

Declaration: `procedure FreeAndClear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeAndClear` deletes all nodes from the tree. The data pointer in the nodes is assumed to be an object, and is freed prior to deleting the node from the tree.

See also: `TAVLTree.Clear` (116), `TAVLTree.Delete` (115), `TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete` (117)

3.4.19 TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete

Synopsis: Delete a node from the tree and destroy it.

Declaration: `procedure FreeAndDelete (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeAndDelete` deletes a node from the tree, and destroys the data pointer: The data pointer in the nodes is assumed to be an object, and is freed by calling its destructor.

See also: `TAVLTree.Clear` (116), `TAVLTree.Delete` (115), `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` (117)

3.4.20 TAVLTree.Equals

Synopsis: Check if two trees are equal.

Declaration: `function Equals (Obj: TObject) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Equals` checks, when passed an `TAVLTree`, whether the tree is equal (using `TAVLTree.IsEqual` (117), comparing keys only). If another type of object is passed, the inherited `IsEqual` is called.

Errors: None.

See also: `TAVLTree.IsEqual` (117)

3.4.21 TAVLTree.IsEqual

Synopsis: Check whether 2 tree instances are equal.

Declaration: `function IsEqual (aTree: TAVLTree; CheckDataPointer: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsEqual` checks the current tree with `aTree` and checks whether the two trees contain the same data in the same order and whether they use the same compare methods, and node class. If `CheckDataPointer` is `True`, only the data pointers are compared, not the keys.

Errors: None.

See also: `TAVLTree.Equals` (117)

3.4.22 TAVLTree.Assign

Synopsis: Assign another tree.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(aTree: TAVLTree); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` copies all data from `aTree` to the current tree if they are not equal. The current tree is cleared first. Note that the compare function(s) and class node are not copied, only the data.

Errors: If you pass nil, an exception is raised.

See also: `TAVLTree.IsEqual` (117)

3.4.23 TAVLTree.Compare

Synopsis: Compare 2 nodes.

Declaration: `function Compare(Data1: Pointer; Data2: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Compare` compares the keys from 2 data pointers. It uses the appropriate compare function `TAVLtree.OnCompare` (124) or `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` (124) to do so. The result is

- negative if the first key comes before the second
- 0 when the two keys are equal.
- positive if the second key comes before the first

See also: `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` (124), `TAVLtree.OnCompare` (124)

3.4.24 TAVLTree.Find

Synopsis: Find a data item in the tree.

Declaration: `function Find(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` uses the default `OnCompare` (124) comparing function to find the `Data` pointer in the tree. It returns the `TAVLTreeNode` instance that results in a successful compare with the `Data` pointer, or `Nil` if none is found.

The default `OnCompare` function compares the actual pointers, which means that by default `Find` will give the same result as `FindPointer` (120).

See also: `OnCompare` (124), `FindKey` (118)

3.4.25 TAVLTree.FindKey

Synopsis: Find a data item in the tree using alternate compare mechanism.

Declaration: `function FindKey(Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindKey` uses the specified `OnCompareKeyWithData` comparing function to find the `Key` pointer in the tree. It returns the `TAVLTreeNode` instance that matches the `Data` pointer, or `Nil` if none is found.

See also: `OnCompare` ([124](#)), `Find` ([118](#))

3.4.26 TAVLTree.FindNearestKey

Synopsis: Find nearest key for a data pointer.

Declaration:

```
function FindNearestKey(Key: Pointer;
                        const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
                        : TAVLTreeNode
```

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNearestKey` attempts to find the nearest possible key in the tree using the `OnCompareKeyWithData` function. It returns the closest possible key in the tree.

Errors: None.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindKey` ([118](#))

3.4.27 TAVLTree.FindSuccessor

Synopsis: Find successor to node.

Declaration:

```
function FindSuccessor(ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode
```

Visibility: public

Description: `FindSuccessor` returns the successor to `ANode`: this is the leftmost node in the right subtree, or the leftmost node above the node `ANode`. This can of course be `Nil`.

This method is used when a node must be inserted at the rightmost position.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindPrecessor` ([119](#)), `TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost` ([116](#))

3.4.28 TAVLTree.FindPrecessor

Synopsis:

Declaration:

```
function FindPrecessor(ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode
```

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPrecessor` returns the successor to `ANode`: this is the rightmost node in the left subtree, or the rightmost node above the node `ANode`. This can of course be `Nil`.

This method is used when a node must be inserted at the leftmost position.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindSuccessor` ([119](#)), `TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost` ([116](#))

3.4.29 TAVLTree.FindLowest

Synopsis: Find the lowest (leftmost) node in the tree.

Declaration: `function FindLowest : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindLowest` returns the leftmost node in the tree, i.e. the node which is reached when descending from the rootnode via the left (??) subtrees.

See also: `FindHighest` ([120](#))

3.4.30 TAVLTree.FindHighest

Synopsis: Find the highest (rightmost) node in the tree.

Declaration: `function FindHighest : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindHighest` returns the rightmost node in the tree, i.e. the node which is reached when descending from the rootnode via the Right (??) subtrees.

See also: `FindLowest` ([120](#))

3.4.31 TAVLTree.FindNearest

Synopsis: Find the node closest to the data in the tree.

Declaration: `function FindNearest(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindNearest` searches the node in the data tree that is closest to the specified `Data`. If `Data` appears in the tree, then its node is returned.

See also: `FindHighest` ([120](#)), `FindLowest` ([120](#)), `Find` ([118](#)), `FindKey` ([118](#))

3.4.32 TAVLTree.FindPointer

Synopsis: Search for a data pointer.

Declaration: `function FindPointer(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindPointer` searches for a node where the actual data pointer equals `Data`. This is a more fine search than `find` ([118](#)), where a custom compare function can be used.

The default `OnCompare` ([124](#)) compares the data pointers, so the default `Find` will return the same node as `FindPointer`

See also: `TAVLTree.Find` ([118](#)), `TAVLTree.FindKey` ([118](#))

3.4.33 TAVLTree.FindLeftMost

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified data node.

Declaration: `function FindLeftMost (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindLeftMost` finds the node most left from the `Data` node. It starts at the preceding node for `Data` and tries to move as far right in the tree as possible.

This operation corresponds to finding the previous item in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` ([121](#))

3.4.34 TAVLTree.FindRightMost

Synopsis: Find the node most right to a specified node.

Declaration: `function FindRightMost (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindRightMost` finds the node most right from the `Data` node. It starts at the succeeding node for `Data` and tries to move as far left in the tree as possible.

This operation corresponds to finding the next item in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` ([121](#))

3.4.35 TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified key node.

Declaration: `function FindLeftMostKey (Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindLeftMostKey` finds the node most left from the node associated with `Key`. It starts at the preceding node for `Key` and tries to move as far left in the tree as possible.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` ([121](#))

3.4.36 TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey

Synopsis: Find the node most right to a specified key node.

Declaration: `function FindRightMostKey (Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindRightMostKey` finds the node most left from the node associated with `Key`. It starts at the succeeding node for `Key` and tries to move as far right in the tree as possible.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` ([121](#))

3.4.37 TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified node with the same data.

Declaration: `function FindLeftMostSameKey (ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindLeftMostSameKey` finds the node most left from and with the same data as the specified node `ANode`.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey` ([122](#))

3.4.38 TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey

Synopsis: Find the node most right of a specified node with the same data.

Declaration: `function FindRightMostSameKey (ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindRightMostSameKey` finds the node most right from and with the same data as the specified node `ANode`.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` ([121](#)), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey` ([122](#))

3.4.39 TAVLTree.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Get an enumerator for the tree.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an instance of the standard tree node enumerator `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` ([126](#)).

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` ([126](#))

3.4.40 TAVLTree.GetEnumeratorHighToLow

Synopsis: Return an enumerator that enumerates the tree in reversed order.

Declaration: `function GetEnumeratorHighToLow : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumeratorHighToLow` returns an enumerator that traverses the tree in reversed order.

See also: `TAVLTree.GetEnumerator` ([122](#))

3.4.41 TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck

Synopsis: Check the consistency of the tree.

Declaration: `procedure ConsistencyCheck; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ConsistencyCheck` checks the correctness of the tree. It returns 0 if the tree is internally consistent, and a negative number if the tree contains an error somewhere.

- 1The Count property doesn't match the actual node count
- 2A left node does not point to the correct parent
- 3A left node is larger than parent node
- 4A right node does not point to the correct parent
- 5A right node is less than parent node
- 6The balance of a node is not calculated correctly

See also: `TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream` ([123](#))

3.4.42 TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream

Synopsis: Write the contents of the tree consistency check to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteReportToStream(s: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteReportToStream` writes a visual representation of the tree to the stream `S`. The total number of written bytes is returned in `StreamSize`. This method is only useful for debugging purposes.

See also: `TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck` ([123](#))

3.4.43 TAVLTree.NodeToReportStr

Synopsis: Create a textual dump of the tree.

Declaration: `function NodeToReportStr(aNode: TAVLTreeNode) : string; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NodeToReportStr` creates a textual representation of a node. It is called by `TAVLTree.ReportAsString` ([123](#)) for debugging purposes. It prints the data pointer as a hex value. Override this to create a human-readable representation of the data.

See also: `TAVLTree.ReportAsString` ([123](#))

3.4.44 TAVLTree.ReportAsString

Synopsis: Return the tree report as a string.

Declaration: `function ReportAsString : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReportAsString` calls `WriteReportToStream` ([123](#)) and returns the stream data as a string.

See also: `TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream` ([123](#))

3.4.45 TAVLTree.OnCompare

Synopsis: Compare function used when comparing nodes.

Declaration: Property OnCompare : TListSortCompare

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnCompare is the comparing function used when the data of 2 nodes must be compared. By default, the function simply compares the 2 data pointers. A different function can be specified on creation.

See also: TAVLTree.Create ([113](#))

3.4.46 TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare

Synopsis: Compare handler.

Declaration: Property OnObjectCompare : TObjectSortCompare

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnObjectCompare is used to compare nodes. It is only used if TAVLTree.OnCompare ([124](#)) is not set.

See also: TAVLTree.OnCompare ([124](#))

3.4.47 TAVLTree.NodeClass

Synopsis: Node class to create.

Declaration: Property NodeClass : TAVLTreeNodeClass

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: NodeClass is the class of nodes to create when adding new nodes: TAVLTree.NewNode ([114](#)) will use this class when creating a new node. This can be set to a descendent class of TAVLTreeNode ([125](#)), but not if there are already nodes in the tree.

See also: TAVLTreeNode ([125](#)), TAVLTree.NewNode ([114](#))

3.4.48 TAVLTree.Root

Synopsis: Root node of the tree.

Declaration: Property Root : TAVLTreeNode

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Root is the root node of the tree. It should not be set explicitly, only use the Add ([114](#)), Delete ([115](#)), Remove ([115](#)), RemovePointer ([116](#)), or Clear ([116](#)) methods to manipulate the items in the tree.

See also: TAVLTree.Add ([114](#)), TAVLTree.Delete ([115](#)), TAVLTree.Remove ([115](#)), TAVLTree.RemovePointer ([116](#)), TAVLTree.Clear ([116](#))

3.4.49 TAVLTree.Count

Synopsis: Number of nodes in the tree.

Declaration: `Property Count : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the number of nodes in the tree.

3.5 TAVLTreeNode

3.5.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNode` represents a single node in the AVL tree. It contains references to the other nodes in the tree, and provides a `Data (??)` pointer which can be used to store the data, associated with the node.

See also: `TAVLTree` ([111](#)), `TAVLTreeNode.Data (??)`

3.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
126	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the node's data.
126	<code>ConsistencyCheck</code>	Check consistency of the node and below nodes.
126	<code>GetCount</code>	Get the number of nodes.
125	<code>Precessor</code>	Preceding node in the tree.
125	<code>Successor</code>	Succeeding node in the tree.
126	<code>TreeDepth</code>	Level of the node in the tree below.

3.5.3 TAVLTreeNode.Successor

Synopsis: Succeeding node in the tree.

Declaration: `function Successor : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Successor` calculates and return the succeeding (right) node in the tree. For the last node, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode.Precessor` ([125](#))

3.5.4 TAVLTreeNode.Precessor

Synopsis: Preceding node in the tree.

Declaration: `function Precessor : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Precessor` calculates and return the preceding (left) node in the tree. For the first node, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode.Successor` ([125](#))

3.5.5 TAVLTreeNode.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the node's data.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears all pointers and references in the node. It does not free the memory pointed to by these references.

3.5.6 TAVLTreeNode.TreeDepth

Synopsis: Level of the node in the tree below.

Declaration: `function TreeDepth : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TreeDepth` is the height of the node: this is the largest height of the left or right nodes, plus 1. If no nodes appear below this node (`left` and `Right` are `Nil`), the depth is 1.

See also: `Balance` (??)

3.5.7 TAVLTreeNode.ConsistencyCheck

Synopsis: Check consistency of the node and below nodes.

Declaration: `procedure ConsistencyCheck (Tree: TAVLTree); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ConsistencyCheck` checks whether the node and nodes below are consistent, i.e. the nodes are still ordered correctly: left nodes are before right nodes.

Errors: If an inconsistency is detected, an exception is raised.

3.5.8 TAVLTreeNode.GetCount

Synopsis: Get the number of nodes.

Declaration: `function GetCount : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCount` returns 1 plus the number of subnodes, if any.

Errors: None.

3.6 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator

3.6.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` is a class which implements the enumerator interface for the TAVL-Tree (111). It enumerates all the nodes in the tree.

See also: `TAVLTree` (111)

3.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
127	Create	Create a new instance of TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.
127	GetEnumerator	Returns the enumerator.
127	MoveNext	Move to next node in the tree.

3.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
127	Current	r	Current node in the tree.
128	LowToHigh	r	Should the enumerator return nodes from low to high or high to low.

3.6.4 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Tree: TAVLTree; aLowToHigh: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` and saves the `Tree` argument for later use in the enumerator.

3.6.5 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Returns the enumerator.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns `Self`..

3.6.6 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move to next node in the tree.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` will return the lowest node in the tree to start with, and for all other calls returns the successor node of the current node with `TAVLTree.FindSuccessor` ([119](#)).

See also: `TAVLTree.FindSuccessor` ([119](#))

3.6.7 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current node in the tree.

Declaration: `Property Current : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` is the current node in the enumeration.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext` ([127](#))

3.6.8 `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.LowToHigh`

Synopsis: Should the enumerator return nodes from low to high or high to low.

Declaration: `Property LowToHigh : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `LowToHigh` determines whether the tree is walked from low to high or high to low. It's value is set in the constructor and cannot be changed while enumerating the tree nodes.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Create` ([127](#))

3.7 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`

3.7.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` is an internal object used by the `avl_tree` unit. Normally, no instance of this object should be created: An instance is created by the unit initialization code, and freed when the unit is finalized.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#)), `TAVLTree` ([111](#))

3.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
129	<code>Clear</code>	Frees all unused nodes.
129	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TAVLTreeNodeMemManager</code> .
129	<code>Destroy</code>	
128	<code>DisposeNode</code>	Return a node to the free list.
129	<code>NewNode</code>	Create a new <code>TAVLTreeNode</code> instance.

3.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
130	<code>Count</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of nodes in the list.
130	<code>MaximumFreeNodeRatio</code>	<code>rw</code>	Maximum amount of free nodes in the list.
130	<code>MinimumFreeNode</code>	<code>rw</code>	Minimum amount of free nodes to be kept.

3.7.4 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode`

Synopsis: Return a node to the free list.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeNode (ANode: TAVLTreeNode);` `Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DisposeNode` is used to put the node `ANode` in the list of free nodes, or optionally destroy it if the free list is full. After a call to `DisposeNode`, `ANode` must be considered invalid.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode` ([129](#))

3.7.5 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode`

Synopsis: Create a new `TAVLTreeNode` instance.

Declaration: `function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewNode` returns a new `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#)) instance. If there is a node in the free list, it is returned. If no more free nodes are present, a new node is created.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode` ([128](#))

3.7.6 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Clear`

Synopsis: Frees all unused nodes.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all unused nodes from the list and frees them.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` ([130](#)), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ([130](#))

3.7.7 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy` ([129](#))

3.7.8 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy`

Synopsis:

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `clear` to clean up the free node list and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create` ([129](#))

3.7.9 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode

Synopsis: Minimum amount of free nodes to be kept.

Declaration: `Property MinimumFreeNode : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MinimumFreeNode` is the minimum amount of nodes that must be kept in the free nodes list.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ([130](#))

3.7.10 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio

Synopsis: Maximum amount of free nodes in the list.

Declaration: `Property MaximumFreeNodeRatio : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaximumFreeNodeRatio` is the maximum amount of free nodes that should be kept in the list: if a node is disposed of, then the ratio of the free nodes versus the total amount of nodes is checked, and if it is less than the `MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ratio but larger than the minimum amount of free nodes, then the node is disposed of instead of added to the free list.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count` ([130](#)), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` ([130](#))

3.7.11 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count

Synopsis: Number of nodes in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the total number of nodes in the list, used or not.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` ([130](#)), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ([130](#))

3.8 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager

3.8.1 Description

`TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager` is an abstract class from which a descendent can be created that manages creating and disposing of tree nodes (instances of `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#))) for a `TAVLTree` ([111](#)) tree instance. No instance of this class should be created, it is a purely abstract class. The default descendant of this class used by an `TAVLTree` instance is `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` ([128](#)).

The `TAVLTree.SetNodeManager` ([113](#)) method can be used to set the node manager that a `TAVLTree` instance should use.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` ([128](#)), `TAVLTree.SetNodeManager` ([113](#)), `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#))

3.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
131	DisposeNode	Called when the AVL tree no longer needs node.
131	NewNode	Called when the AVL tree needs a new node.

3.8.3 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode

Synopsis: Called when the AVL tree no longer needs node.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeNode (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DisposeNode` is called by `TAVLTree` ([111](#)) when it no longer needs a `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#)) instance. The manager may decide to re-use the instance for later use instead of destroying it.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode` ([131](#)), `TAVLTree.Delete` ([115](#)), `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#))

3.8.4 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode

Synopsis: Called when the AVL tree needs a new node.

Declaration: `function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewNode` is called by `TAVLTree` ([111](#)) when it needs a new node in `TAVLTree.Add` ([114](#)). It must be implemented by descendants to return a new `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#)) instance.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode` ([131](#)), `TAVLTree.Add` ([114](#)), `TAVLTreeNode` ([125](#))

Chapter 4

Reference for unit 'base64'

4.1 Used units

Table 4.1: Used units by unit 'base64'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

4.2 Overview

`base64` implements base64 encoding (as used for instance in MIME encoding) based on streams. It implements 2 streams which encode or decode anything written or read from it. The source or the destination of the encoded data is another stream. 2 classes are implemented for this: `TBase64EncodingStream` ([136](#)) for encoding, and `TBase64DecodingStream` ([133](#)) for decoding.

The streams are designed as plug-in streams, which can be placed between other streams, to provide base64 encoding and decoding on-the-fly...

4.3 Constants, types and variables

4.3.1 Types

```
TBase64DecodingMode = (bdmStrict, bdMIME)
```

Table 4.2: Enumeration values for type `TBase64DecodingMode`

Value	Explanation
<code>bdMIME</code>	MIME encoding.
<code>bdmStrict</code>	Strict encoding.

`TBase64DecodingMode` determines the decoding algorithm used by `TBase64DecodingStream` (133). There are 2 modes:

bdmStrict Strict mode, which follows RFC3548 and rejects any characters outside of base64 alphabet. In this mode only up to two '=' characters are accepted at the end. It requires the input to have a Size being a multiple of 4, otherwise an `EBase64DecodingException` (133) exception is raised.

bdmMime MIME mode, which follows RFC2045 and ignores any characters outside of base64 alphabet. In this mode any '=' is seen as the end of string, it handles apparently truncated input streams gracefully.

4.4 Procedures and functions

4.4.1 DecodeStringBase64

Synopsis: Decodes a Base64 encoded string and returns the decoded data as a string.

Declaration: `function DecodeStringBase64(const s: string; strict: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeStringBase64` decodes the string `s` (containing Base 64 encoded data) returns the decoded data as a string. It uses a `TBase64DecodingStream` (133) to do this. The `Strict` parameter is passed on to the constructor as `bdmStrict` or `bdmMIME`

See also: `DecodeStringBase64` (133), `TBase64DecodingStream` (133)

4.4.2 EncodeStringBase64

Synopsis: Encode a string with Base64 encoding and return the result as a string.

Declaration: `function EncodeStringBase64(const s: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeStringBase64` encodes the string `s` using Base 64 encoding and returns the result. It uses a `TBase64EncodingStream` (136) to do this.

See also: `DecodeStringBase64` (133), `TBase64EncodingStream` (136)

4.5 EBase64DecodingException

4.5.1 Description

`EBase64DecodeException` is raised when the stream contains errors against the encoding format. Whether or not this exception is raised depends on the mode in which the stream is decoded.

4.6 TBase64DecodingStream

4.6.1 Description

`TBase64DecodingStream` can be used to read data from a stream (the source stream) that contains Base64 encoded data. The data is read and decoded on-the-fly.

The decoding stream is read-only, and provides a limited forward-seeking capability.

See also: [TBase64EncodingStream \(136\)](#)

4.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
134	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TBase64DecodingStream</code> class.
134	Read	Read and decrypt data from the source stream.
134	Reset	Reset the stream.
135	Seek	Set stream position.

4.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
135	EOF	r	
135	Mode	rw	Decoding mode.

4.6.4 TBase64DecodingStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TBase64DecodingStream` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ASource: TStream)`
`constructor Create (ASource: TStream; AMode: TBase64DecodingMode)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TBase64DecodingStream` class. It stores the source stream `ASource` for reading the data from.

The optional `AMode` parameter determines the mode in which the decoding will be done. If omitted, `b64MIME` is used.

See also: [TBase64EncodingStream \(136\)](#), [TBase64DecodingMode \(132\)](#)

4.6.5 TBase64DecodingStream.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: public

Description: `Reset` resets the data as if it was again on the start of the decoding stream.

Errors: None.

See also: [TBase64DecodingStream.EOF \(135\)](#), [TBase64DecodingStream.Read \(134\)](#)

4.6.6 TBase64DecodingStream.Read

Synopsis: Read and decrypt data from the source stream.

Declaration: `function Read (var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read reads encrypted data from the source stream and stores this data in `Buffer`. At most `Count` bytes will be stored in the buffer, but more bytes will be read from the source stream: the encoding algorithm multiplies the number of bytes.

The function returns the number of bytes stored in the buffer.

Errors: If an error occurs during the read from the source stream, an exception may occur.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream.Seek` ([135](#)), `TStream.Read` ([??](#))

4.6.7 TBase64DecodingStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the position of the stream. In the `TBase64DecodingStream` class, the seek operation is forward only, it does not support backward seeks. The forward seek is emulated by reading and discarding data till the desired position is reached.

For an explanation of the parameters, see `TStream.Seek` ([??](#))

Errors: In case of an unsupported operation, an `EStreamError` exception is raised.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream.Read` ([134](#)), `TBase64EncodingStream.Seek` ([137](#)), `TStream.Seek` ([??](#))

4.6.8 TBase64DecodingStream.EOF

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property EOF : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description:

4.6.9 TBase64DecodingStream.Mode

Synopsis: Decoding mode.

Declaration: `Property Mode : TBase64DecodingMode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Mode` is the mode in which the stream is read. It can be set when creating the stream or at any time afterwards.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream` ([133](#))

4.7 TBase64EncodingStream

4.7.1 Description

TBase64EncodingStream can be used to encode data using the base64 algorithm. At creation time, a destination stream is specified. Any data written to the TBase64EncodingStream instance will be base64 encoded, and subsequently written to the destination stream.

The TBase64EncodingStream stream is a write-only stream. Obviously it is also not seekable. It is meant to be included in a chain of streams.

By the nature of base64 encoding, when a buffer is written to the stream, the output stream does not yet contain all output: input must be a multiple of 3. In order to be sure that the output contains all encoded bytes, the Flush ([136](#)) method can be used. The destructor will automatically call Flush, so all data is written to the destination stream when the decodes is destroyed.

See also: TBase64DecodingStream ([133](#))

4.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
136	Destroy	Remove a TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory.
136	Flush	Flush the remaining bytes to the output stream.
137	Seek	Position the stream.
137	Write	Write data to the stream.

4.7.3 TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy flushes any remaining output and then removes the TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory by calling the inherited destructor.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the destination stream no longer exists or is closed.

4.7.4 TBase64EncodingStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flush the remaining bytes to the output stream.

Declaration: `function Flush : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Flush writes the remaining bytes from the internal encoding buffer to the output stream and pads the output with "=" signs. It returns True if padding was necessary, and False if not.

See also: TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy ([136](#))

4.7.5 TBase64EncodingStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` encodes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` using the Base64 mechanism, and then writes the encoded data to the destination stream. It returns the number of bytes from `Buffer` that were actually written. Note that this is not the number of bytes written to the destination stream: the base64 mechanism writes more bytes to the destination stream.

Errors: If there is an error writing to the destination stream, an error may occur.

See also: `TBase64EncodingStream.Seek` ([137](#)), `TStream.Write` (??)

4.7.6 TBase64EncodingStream.Seek

Synopsis: Position the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` always raises an `EStreamError` exception unless the arguments it received it don't change the current file pointer position. The encryption stream is not seekable.

Errors: An `EStreamError` error is raised.

See also: `TBase64EncodingStream.Write` ([137](#)), `TStream.Seek` (??)

Chapter 5

Reference for unit 'BlowFish'

5.1 Used units

Table 5.1: Used units by unit 'BlowFish'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

5.2 Overview

The BlowFish implements a class TBlowFish ([139](#)) to handle Blowfish encryption/decryption of memory buffers, and 2 TStream (??) descendents TBlowFishDeCryptStream ([140](#)) which decrypts any data that is read from it on the fly, as well as TBlowFishEnCryptStream ([141](#)) which encrypts the data that is written to it on the fly.

5.3 Constants, types and variables

5.3.1 Constants

`BFRounds = 16`

Number of rounds in Blowfish encryption.

5.3.2 Types

`PBlowFishKey = ^TBlowFishKey`

PBlowFishKey is a simple pointer to a TBlowFishKey ([139](#)) array.

`TBFBlock = Array[0..1] of LongInt`

TBFBlock is the basic data structure used by the encrypting/decrypting routines in TBlowFish (139), TBlowFishDeCryptStream (140) and TBlowFishEnCryptStream (141). It is the basic encryption/decryption block for all encrypting/decrypting: all encrypting/decrypting happens on a TBFBlock structure.

TBlowFishKey = Array[0..55] of Byte

TBlowFishKey is a data structure which keeps the encryption or decryption key for the TBlowFish (139), TBlowFishDeCryptStream (140) and TBlowFishEnCryptStream (141) classes. It should be filled with the encryption key and passed to the constructor of one of these classes.

5.4 EBlowFishError

5.4.1 Description

EBlowFishError is used by the TBlowFishStream (143), TBlowFishEncryptStream (141) and TBlowFishDecryptStream (140) classes to report errors.

See also: TBlowFishStream (143), TBlowFishEncryptStream (141), TBlowFishDecryptStream (140)

5.5 TBlowFish

5.5.1 Description

TBlowFish is a simple class that can be used to encrypt/decrypt a single TBFBlock (139) data block with the Encrypt (140) and Decrypt (140) calls. It is used internally by the TBlowFishEnCryptStream (141) and TBlowFishDeCryptStream (140) classes to encrypt or decrypt the actual data.

See also: TBlowFishEnCryptStream (141), TBlowFishDeCryptStream (140)

5.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
139	Create	Create a new instance of the TBlowFish class.
140	Decrypt	Decrypt a block.
140	Encrypt	Encrypt a block.

5.5.3 TBlowFish.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TBlowFish class.

Declaration: constructor Create(Key: TBlowFishKey; KeySize: Integer)

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TBlowFish class: it stores the key Key in the internal data structures so it can be used in later calls to Encrypt (140) and Decrypt (140).

See also: Encrypt (140), Decrypt (140)

5.5.4 TBlowFish.Encrypt

Synopsis: Encrypt a block.

Declaration: `procedure Encrypt (var Block: TBFBlock)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Encrypt` encrypts the data in `Block` (always 8 bytes) using the key (139) specified when the `TBlowFish` instance was created.

See also: `TBlowFishKey` (139), `Decrypt` (140), `Create` (139)

5.5.5 TBlowFish.Decrypt

Synopsis: Decrypt a block.

Declaration: `procedure Decrypt (var Block: TBFBlock)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Decrypt` decrypts the data in `Block` (always 8 bytes) using the key (139) specified when the `TBlowFish` instance was created. The data must have been encrypted with the same key and the `Encrypt` (140) call.

See also: `TBlowFishKey` (139), `Encrypt` (140), `Create` (139)

5.6 TBlowFishDeCryptStream

5.6.1 Description

The `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` provides On-the-fly Blowfish decryption: all data that is read from the source stream is decrypted before it is placed in the output buffer. The source stream must be specified when the `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` instance is created. The Decryption key must also be created when the stream instance is created, and must be the same key as the one used when encrypting the data.

This is a read-only stream: it is seekable only in a forward direction, and data can only be read from it, writing is not possible. For writing data so it is encrypted, the `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (141) stream must be used.

See also: `Create` (143), `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (141)

5.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
140	<code>Create</code>	Constructor for the class instance.
141	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream.
141	<code>Seek</code>	Set the stream position.

5.6.3 TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create (AKey: TBlowFishKey; AKeySize: Byte; Dest: TStream)`
`; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the overridden constructor for the class instance. It calls the inherited constructor on entry using the values in `AKey`, `AKeySize`, and `Dest` as arguments.

`Create` sets the value in an internal member to the current position in `Dest`. It acts as the relative origin for the `TStream` instance, and is used in the `Seek` method.

See also: `TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Read` (141), `TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Seek` (141), `TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write` (142)

5.6.4 TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads `Count` bytes from the source stream, decrypts them using the key provided when the `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` instance was created, and writes the decrypted data to `Buffer`.

See also: `Create` (143), `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (141)

5.6.5 TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` emulates a forward seek by reading and discarding data. The discarded data is lost. Since it is a forward seek, this means that only `soFromCurrent` can be specified for `Origin` with a positive (or zero) `Offset` value. All other values will result in an exception. The function returns the new position in the stream.

Errors: If any other combination of `Offset` and `Origin` than the allowed combination is specified, then an `EBlowFishError` (139) exception will be raised.

See also: `Read` (141), `EBlowFishError` (139)

5.7 TBlowFishEncryptStream

5.7.1 Description

The `TBlowFishEncryptStream` provides On-the-fly Blowfish encryption: all data that is written to it is encrypted and then written to a destination stream, which must be specified when the `TBlowFishEncryptStream` instance is created. The encryption key must also be created when the stream instance is created.

This is a write-only stream: it is not seekable, and data can only be written to it, reading is not possible. For reading encrypted data, the `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` (140) stream must be used.

See also: `Create` (143), `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` (140)

5.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
142	Destroy	Free the TBlowFishEncryptStream.
143	Flush	Flush the encryption buffer.
142	Seek	Set the position in the stream.
142	Write	Write data to the stream.

5.7.3 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TBlowFishEncryptStream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes the encryption buffer, and writes it to the destination stream. After that the inherited destructor is called to clean up the TBlowFishEncryptStream instance.

See also: `Flush` ([143](#)), `Create` ([143](#))

5.7.4 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` will encrypt and write `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the destination stream. The function returns the actual number of bytes written. The data is not encrypted in-place, but placed in a special buffer for encryption.

Data is always written 4 bytes at a time, since this is the amount of bytes required by the Blowfish algorithm. If no multiple of 4 was written to the destination stream, the `Flush` ([143](#)) mechanism can be used to write the remaining bytes.

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream.Flush` ([143](#))

5.7.5 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the position in the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` will raise an `EBlowFishError` exception: `TBlowFishEncryptStream` is a write-only stream, and cannot be positioned.

Errors: Calling this function always results in an `EBlowFishError` ([139](#)) exception.

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write` ([142](#))

5.7.6 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flush the encryption buffer.

```
Declaration: procedure Flush
```

Visibility: public

Description: `Flush` writes the remaining data in the encryption buffer to the destination stream.

For efficiency, data is always written 4 bytes at a time, since this is the amount of bytes required by the Blowfish algorithm. If no multiple of 4 was written to the destination stream, the `Flush` mechanism can be used to write the remaining bytes.

Flush is called automatically when the stream is destroyed, so there is no need to call it after all data was written and the stream is no longer needed.

See also: Write (142), TBFBBlock (139)

5.8 TBlowFishStream

5.8.1 Description

TBlowFishStream is an abstract class which is used as a parent class for TBlowFishEncryptStream (141) and TBlowFishDecryptStream (140). It simply provides a constructor and storage for a TBlowFish (139) instance and for the source or destination stream.

Do not create an instance of `TBlowFishStream` directly. Instead create one of the descendent classes `TBlowFishEncryptStream` or `TBlowFishDecryptStream`.

See also: [TBlowFishEncryptStream \(141\)](#), [TBlowFishDecryptStream \(140\)](#), [TBlowFish \(139\)](#)

5.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
143	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TBlowFishStream</code> class.
144	Destroy	Destroy the <code>TBlowFishStream</code> instance.

5.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
144	BlowFish	r	Blowfish instance used when encrypting/decrypting.

5.8.4 TBlowFishStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TBlowFishStream` class.

```
Declaration: constructor Create(AKey: TBlowFishKey; AKeySize: Byte; Dest: TStream)
              ; Virtual; Overload
              constructor Create(const KeyPhrase: string; Dest: TStream); Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of `TBlowFishStream`, and creates an internal instance of `TBlowFish` (139) using `AKey` and `AKeySize`. The `Dest` stream is stored so the descendent classes can refer to it.

Do not create an instance of `TBlowFishStream` directly. Instead create one of the descendent classes `TBlowFishEncryptStream` or `TBlowFishDecryptStream`.

The overloaded version with the `KeyPhrase` string argument is used for easy access: it computes the Blowfish key from the given string.

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream` ([141](#)), `TBlowFishDecryptStream` ([140](#)), `TBlowFish` ([139](#))

5.8.5 `TBlowFishStream.Destroy`

Synopsis: Destroy the `TBlowFishStream` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the internal `TBlowFish` ([139](#)) instance.

See also: `Create` ([143](#)), `TBlowFish` ([139](#))

5.8.6 `TBlowFishStream.BlowFish`

Synopsis: Blowfish instance used when encrypting/decrypting.

Declaration: `Property BlowFish : TBlowFish`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BlowFish` is the `TBlowFish` ([139](#)) instance which is created when the `TBlowFishStream` class is initialized. Normally it should not be used directly, it's intended for access by the descendent classes `TBlowFishEncryptStream` ([141](#)) and `TBlowFishDecryptStream` ([140](#)).

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream` ([141](#)), `TBlowFishDecryptStream` ([140](#)), `TBlowFish` ([139](#))

Chapter 6

Reference for unit 'BufDataset'

6.1 Used units

Table 6.1: Used units by unit 'BufDataset'

Name	Page
bufdataset_parser	??
Classes	??
DB	361
System	??
sysutils	??

6.2 Overview

Implements a database-aware buffered dataset.

Original Authors: Joost van der Sluis and members of the Free Pascal development team.

6.3 Constants, types and variables

6.3.1 Types

`PBlobBuffer = ^TBlobBuffer`

`PBlobBuffer` is a pointer to the `TBlobBuffer` type. `PBlobBuffer` is used to allocate and access the buffers for Blob fields (Memo or Graphic field types). `PBlobBuffer` is used in `TBufBlobField`, `TBufBlobStream`, and in `TBufDataset` methods which perform record buffer management.

`PBufBlobField = ^TBufBlobField`

Pointer to a `TBufBlobField` type.

`PBufBookmark = ^TBufBookmark`

Pointer to the `TBufBookmark` type.

PBufRecLinkItem = ^TBufRecLinkItem

Pointer to a TBufRecLinkItem type.

```
TCompareFunc = function(subValue: pointer; aValue: pointer;
    size: Integer; options: TLocateOptions) :
    Int64
```

TCompareFunc is an Int64 function type used to compare pointers using the specified locate option values. TCompareFunc is used in the implementation of the TDBCompareRec type.

TDataPacketFormat = (dfBinary, dfXML, dfXMLUTF8, dfAny, dfDefault)

Table 6.2: Enumeration values for type TDataPacketFormat

Value	Explanation
dfAny	Data packets can be in any supported format (detected by the packet reader).
dfBinary	Data packets are in binary format.
dfDefault	Use the default XML format. Same as using dfAny.
dfXML	Data packets are in XML format.
dfXMLUTF8	Data packets are in UTF-8-encoded XML format.

Indicates the format used for data packets in TBufDataset.

TDataPacketHandlerClass = type TDataPacketHandler

```
TDataPacketReader = type class(TObject)
    FDataSet : TCustomBufDataset
    ;
    FStream : TStream;
protected
    class function RowStateToByte(const
        ARowState: TRowState) : Byte;
    class function ByteToRowState(const
        AByte: Byte) : TRowState;
    procedure RestoreBlobField(AField: TField
        ; ASource: pointer;
                                ASize: Integer);
    property DataSet : TCustomBufDataset;
    property Stream : TStream
    ;
public
    constructor Create(ADataset: TCustomBufDataset; AStream
        : TStream)
        ; Virtual;
    procedure LoadFieldDefs
        (var AnAutoIncValue: Integer); Virtual
    ; Abstract;
    procedure InitLoadRecords; Virtual; Abstract;
```

```

function
GetCurrentRecord : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract;
function GetRecordRowState
(out AUpdOrder: Integer) : TRowState; Virtual
; Abstract;
procedure RestoreRecord; Virtual; Abstract
;
procedure GotoNextRecord; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure StoreFieldDefs
(AnAutoIncValue: Integer); Virtual; Abstract;
procedure StoreRecord
(ARowState: TRowState; AUpdOrder: Integer)
; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure FinalizeStoreRecords; Virtual
; Abstract;
class function RecognizeStream(AStream: TStream) :
Boolean; Virtual
; Abstract;
end

```

TDataPacketReader is a TObject descendant which implements a data packet reader for TBufDataset. TDataPacketReader is a concept borrowed from TClientDataset in Delphi. Data packets are used to access the values in its dataset. Data packets can contain field definitions or record data. Data packets can store their values in binary format or as an XML document.

TDataPacketReader provides properties and methods that allow access to the field definitions, field values, and row states for record buffers in its dataset. Methods are provided to load and save field definitions or record data using a stream. Methods are provided to recognize the storage format for the data packets in the stream.

Many of the methods in TDataPacketReader are declared as virtual or abstract. They are implemented in descendent classes that use a specific data packet format, such as TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader or TXMLDatapacketReader (in xmldatapacketreader.pp).

```
TDataPacketReaderClass = type class of TDataPacketHandler
```

Class type used to create data packet readers for TBufDataset.

```

TDBCompareStruct = Array of record
  CompareFunc : TCompareFunc;
  Off : PtrInt;
  NullBOff : PtrInt;
  FieldInd : LongInt;
  Size
  : Integer;
  Options : TLocateOptions;
  Desc : Boolean;
end

```

TDBCompareStruct is an array of TDBCompareRec type used to implement a structure to compare values for a group of fields in TBufDataset. TDBCompareStruct is used in the implementation of TBufIndex and its descendent classes.

```
TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader = type class(TDataPacketHandler)
```

```

private
  FpcBinaryIdent1 = 'BinBufDataset';
  FpcBinaryIdent2 = 'BinBufDataSet'
  ;
  StringFieldTypes = [ftString, ftFixedChar, ftWideString, ftFixedWideChar
  ];
  BlobFieldTypes = [ftBlob, ftMemo, ftGraphic, ftWideMemo];
  VarLenFieldTypes
  = StringFieldTypes + BlobFieldTypes + [ftBytes, ftVarBytes];
  FNullBitmapSize
  : Integer;
  FNullBitmap : TBytes;
protected
  FVersion : Byte;
public
  constructor Create(ADataset: TCustomBufDataset; AStream: TStream
  )
  ; Override;
  procedure LoadFieldDefs(var AnAutoIncValue
  : Integer); Override;
  procedure StoreFieldDefs(AnAutoIncValue:
  Integer); Override;
  procedure InitLoadRecords; Override;
  function
  GetCurrentRecord : Boolean; Override;
  function GetRecordRowState
  (out AUpdOrder: Integer) : TRowState
  ; Override;
  procedure RestoreRecord; Override;
  procedure GotoNextRecord
  ; Override;
  procedure StoreRecord(ARowState: TRowState; AUpdOrder
  : Integer)
  ; Override;
  procedure FinalizeStoreRecords
  ; Override;
  class function RecognizeStream(AStream: TStream) :
  Boolean; Override;
end

```

TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader is a TDatapacketReader descendant that implements a data packet reader using binary data packets. Binary data packets use the following layout:

Table 6.3:

Section	Name	Length	Description
Header	Identification	13 bytes	Contains the value 'B'
	Version	1 byte	Version number
	Field Definition Count	2 bytes	Column Layout for field
Field Definitions	Field Name Length	2 bytes	Section occurs the number of times
	Field Name	See above	Name of the field in the table
	Display Name Length	2 bytes	
	Display Name	See above	Caption for the field
	Data Type	2 bytes	
	Read-Only Attribute	1 byte	0=read/write, 1=read-only
Parameters	AutoInc Value	4 bytes	Integer value for the auto-increment
Row Header	Row Marker	1 byte	Contains the value \$F
	Row State	1 byte	0=original, 1=deleted
	Update Order	4 bytes	
	Null Bitmap	Variable length.	1 byte required for each field
Row Data	Optional Field Length	4 bytes	Variable-length fields
	Field Data	Bytes values for the field. See Optional Field Length.	Occurs the number of times

```

TRecordsUpdateBuffer = Array of record
  Processing : Boolean;
  UpdateKind
    : TUpdateKind;
  BookmarkData : TBufBookmark;
  NextBookmarkData
    : TBufBookmark;
  OldValuesBuffer : TRecordBuffer;
end

```

TRecordsUpdateBuffer is an array of TRecUpdateBuffer type used to implement an array of update buffers for records in TBufDataset.

```

TResolverErrorEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
  DataSet: TCustomBufDataset;
  E: EUpdateError;
  UpdateKind
    : TUpdateKind;
  var Response: TResolverResponse
)
  of object

```

TResolverErrorEvent is an object procedure which defines an event handler signalled when an error occurs while updating a record in TBufDataset. TResolverErrorEvent is the type used for the TCustomBufDataset.OnUpdateError property. Applications should create a routine which uses the signature for the type to handle the event notification. The routine should update the Response argument to indicate the action taken for the event notification.

```

TRowState = Set of TRowStateValue = (rsvOriginal, rsvDeleted, rsvInserted,
  rsvUpdated,
  rsvDetailUpdates)

```

`TRowState` is a set type used to store values from the `TRowStateValue` enumeration. `TRowState` is used to indicate the state for records loaded and saved using the data packet handler in `TBufDataset`.

```
TRowStateValue = (rsvOriginal, rsvDeleted, rsvInserted, rsvUpdated,
  rsvDetailUpdates)
```

Table 6.4: Enumeration values for type `TRowStateValue`

Value	Explanation
<code>rsvDeleted</code>	Buffer is for a record that will be deleted.
<code>rsvDetailUpdates</code>	Buffer is for updates to a detail (child) dataset.
<code>rsvInserted</code>	Buffer is for a record that will be inserted.
<code>rsvOriginal</code>	Buffer contains the original value(s).
<code>rsvUpdated</code>	Buffer is for a record that will be updated.

`TRowStateValue` is an enumeration type with values that indicate the state for field values in the row. Values in the enumeration indicate how fields in an update buffer differ from the fields in the original record data. Values from `TRowStateValue` are stored in the `TRowState` type, and used in data packet readers for `TBufDataset` (`TDataPacketReader`).

6.4 Procedures and functions

6.4.1 RegisterDatapacketReader

Synopsis: Registers a data packet reader using a specific format for `TBufDataset`.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDatapacketReader`
`(ADatapacketReaderClass: TDataPacketReaderClass;`
`AFormat: TDataPacketFormat)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `RegisterDatapacketReader` is a procedure which registers a class type needed to create data packet readers for a specific format. `ADatapacketReaderClass` is the class type used to create new instances of `TDataPacketReader`. `AFormat` is a `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration value that indicates the format supported for data packets in the reader class.

`RegisterDatapacketReader` accesses a unit variable used to store an array of registered data packet reader classes and their associated formats. `RegisterDatapacketReader` increments the size of the array variable, and stores the values in `ADatapacketReaderClass` and `AFormat` in the `TDatapacketReaderRegistration` type. It does not perform any checks for duplicate entries, so the procedure should be called exactly once for the class type and format combination.

`RegisterDatapacketReader` is normally used in the initialization section of a unit that implements a `TDataPacketReader` descendant for a specific storage format, such as: `xmldatapacketreader.pp`.

See also: `TDataPacketReader` ([147](#)), `TDataPacketFormat` ([146](#)), `TXMLDatapacketReader` ([361](#))

6.5 TApplyRecUpdateResult

```
TApplyRecUpdateResult = record
```

```

    HadError : Boolean;
    Response :
    TResolverResponse;
    Async : Boolean;
end

```

6.6 TBlobBuffer

```

TBlobBuffer = record
    FieldNo : Integer;
    OrgBufID : Integer;
    Buffer : pointer;
    Size : PtrInt;
end

```

TBlobBuffer is a record type used to represent a buffer allocated for a Blob field. Pointers to TBlobBuffer (PBlobBuffer) are used in the implementation of TBufBlobStream and TBufDataset.

6.7 TBufBlobField

```

TBufBlobField = record
    ConnBlobBuffer : = Array[0..11] of Byte
    ;
    BlobBuffer : PBlobBuffer;
end

```

Implements a Blob field for TBufDataset.

6.8 TBufBookmark

```

TBufBookmark = record
    BookmarkData : PBufRecLinkItem;
    BookmarkInt
    : Integer;
    BookmarkFlag : TBookmarkFlag;
end

```

TBufBookmark is a record type used to implement a Bookmark for TBufDataset.

6.9 TBufRecLinkItem

```

TBufRecLinkItem = record
    prior : PBufRecLinkItem;
    next : PBufRecLinkItem
    ;
end

```

Stores bookmarks to the previous and next records in a linked list.

6.10 TDBCompareRec

```
TDBCompareRec = record
  CompareFunc : TCompareFunc;
  Off : PtrInt
;
  NullBOff : PtrInt;
  FieldInd : LongInt;
  Size : Integer;
  Options
  : TLocateOptions;
  Desc : Boolean;
end
```

TDBCompareRec is a record type which implements a structure used to compare buffers for fields in TBufDataset. TDBCompareRec is used in the implementation of the TDBCompareStruct type.

6.11 TRecUpdateBuffer

```
TRecUpdateBuffer = record
  Processing : Boolean;
  UpdateKind : TUpdateKind
;
  BookmarkData : TBufBookmark;
  NextBookmarkData : TBufBookmark
;
  OldValuesBuffer : TRecordBuffer;
end
```

Implements a buffer used for record updates in TBufDataset.

6.12 TArrayBufIndex

6.12.1 Description

TArrayBufIndex is a TBufIndex descendant that implements an index using an array of record buffers. TArrayBufIndex uses an internal member with an array of pointers to the TRecordBuffer data type used for record buffers in the index. TArrayBufIndex provides support for Bookmarks in the dataset using TBufBookmark.

See also: TBufIndex ([163](#)), TRecordBuffer ([145](#)), TBufBookmark ([151](#))

6.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
156	AddRecord	
156	BeginUpdate	
155	CanScrollForward	
153	Create	
155	DoScrollForward	
156	EndUpdate	
153	GetCurrent	
155	GotoBookmark	
155	InitialiseIndex	
155	InitialiseSpareRecord	
156	InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	
156	ReleaseSpareRecord	
156	RemoveRecordFromIndex	
154	RestoreCurrentRecord	
153	ScrollBackward	
154	ScrollFirst	
153	ScrollForward	
154	ScrollLast	
154	SetToFirstRecord	
154	SetToLastRecord	
155	StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	
154	StoreCurrentRecord	
155	StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	

6.12.3 TArrayBufIndex.Create

Synopsis:

Declaration: `constructor Create(const ADataset: TCustomBufDataset);` Override

Visibility: public

6.12.4 TArrayBufIndex.ScrollBackward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollBackward : TGetResult;` Override

Visibility: public

6.12.5 TArrayBufIndex.ScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollForward : TGetResult;` Override

Visibility: public

6.12.6 TArrayBufIndex.GetCurrent

Synopsis:

Declaration: function GetCurrent : TGetResult; Override

Visibility: public

6.12.7 TArrayBuflIndex.ScrollFirst

Synopsis:

Declaration: function ScrollFirst : TGetResult; Override

Visibility: public

6.12.8 TArrayBuflIndex.ScrollLast

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure ScrollLast; Override

Visibility: public

6.12.9 TArrayBuflIndex.SetToFirstRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToFirstRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.12.10 TArrayBuflIndex.SetToLastRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToLastRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.12.11 TArrayBuflIndex.StoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure StoreCurrentRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.12.12 TArrayBuflIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure RestoreCurrentRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.12.13 TArrayBufIndex.CanScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function CanScrollForward : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.14 TArrayBufIndex.DoScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure DoScrollForward; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.15 TArrayBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.16 TArrayBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.17 TArrayBufIndex.GotoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark); Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.18 TArrayBufIndex.InitialiseIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseIndex; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.19 TArrayBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseSpareRecord(const ASpareRecord: TRecordBuffer)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.20 TArrayBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseSpareRecord; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.21 TArrayBufIndex.BeginUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.22 TArrayBufIndex.AddRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure AddRecord; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.23 TArrayBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord(const ARecord: TRecordBuffer)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.24 TArrayBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRecordFromIndex(const ABookmark: TBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.12.25 TArrayBufIndex.EndUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.13 TBufBlobStream

6.13.1 Description

TBufBlobStream is a TStream descendant which implements a Blob Stream for TBufDataset. TBufBlobStream has members which represent the Dataset and Field for the Blob, its Buffer, and modification flags. TBufBlobStream provides overridden methods used to perform Read, Write, and Seek operations using the buffer allocated for a Blob field.

TBufBlobStream instances are created in the TBufDataset.CreateBlobStream method.

See also: TCustomBufDataset.CreateBlobStream ([178](#))

6.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
157	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
157	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.

6.13.3 TBufBlobStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Field: TBlobField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode)`

Visibility: public

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

6.13.4 TBufBlobStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy is the destructor for the class instance.

6.14 TBufDataset

6.14.1 Description

TBufDataset is a TCustomBufDataset descendant that implements a database-aware buffered dataset. TBufDataset is an in-memory dataset that can be used as a local stand-alone dataset, or it can be used as a local buffer for updates applied to a remote dataset. TBufDataset implements many features similar to those in TClientDataset in Delphi. However, it is **not** meant to be code or function compatible with TClientDataset. It is designed to provide management of the buffers used to access record data, and is used as the ancestor for classes like TSQLQuery and TRESTBufDataset.

As a TDBDataset descendent, it offers access to many of the database features supported in the FCL DB package. As a TDataset descendent, it also offers access to familiar navigation and data handling methods in the ancestor class. TBufDataset has features that allow local storage and retrieval of field definitions and record data. In addition, facilities are provided that allow local indexing of record data

in the dataset. There is a comprehensive parser/expression evaluator available that allows complete support for Filters in the dataset.

TBufDataset sets the visibility for properties and methods defined in the ancestor class.

Additional information about using TBufDataset can be found on the Lazarus Wiki at: [How to write in-memory database applications in Lazarus/FPC \(TBufDataset\)](#).

See also: TCustomBufDataset ([171](#)), TDataset ([425](#)), TDBDataset ([470](#))

6.14.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
159	Active		
159	AfterCancel		
160	AfterClose		
160	AfterDelete		
160	AfterEdit		
160	AfterInsert		
160	AfterOpen		
160	AfterPost		
160	AfterScroll		
159	AutoCalcFields		
161	BeforeCancel		
161	BeforeClose		
161	BeforeDelete		
161	BeforeEdit		
161	BeforeInsert		
161	BeforeOpen		
161	BeforePost		
162	BeforeScroll		
158	FieldDefs		
159	Filter		
159	Filtered		
158	MaxIndexesCount		
162	OnCalcFields		
162	OnDeleteError		
162	OnEditError		
162	OnFilterRecord		
162	OnNewRecord		
162	OnPostError		
159	ReadOnly		

6.14.3 TBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount

Declaration: Property MaxIndexesCount :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.4 TBufDataset.FieldDefs

Declaration: Property FieldDefs :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.5 TBufDataset.Active

Declaration: Property Active :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.6 TBufDataset.AutoCalcFields

Declaration: Property AutoCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.7 TBufDataset.Filter

Declaration: Property Filter :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.8 TBufDataset.Filtered

Declaration: Property Filtered :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.9 TBufDataset.ReadOnly

Declaration: Property ReadOnly :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.10 TBufDataset.AfterCancel

Declaration: Property AfterCancel :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.11 TBufDataset.AfterClose

Declaration: `Property AfterClose :`

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.12 TBufDataset.AfterDelete

Declaration: `Property AfterDelete :`

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.13 TBufDataset.AfterEdit

Declaration: `Property AfterEdit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.14 TBufDataset.AfterInsert

Declaration: `Property AfterInsert :`

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.15 TBufDataset.AfterOpen

Declaration: `Property AfterOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.16 TBufDataset.AfterPost

Declaration: `Property AfterPost :`

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.17 TBufDataset.AfterScroll

Declaration: `Property AfterScroll :`

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.18 TBufDataset.BeforeCancel

Declaration: Property BeforeCancel :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.19 TBufDataset.BeforeClose

Declaration: Property BeforeClose :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.20 TBufDataset.BeforeDelete

Declaration: Property BeforeDelete :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.21 TBufDataset.BeforeEdit

Declaration: Property BeforeEdit :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.22 TBufDataset.BeforeInsert

Declaration: Property BeforeInsert :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.23 TBufDataset.BeforeOpen

Declaration: Property BeforeOpen :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.24 TBufDataset.BeforePost

Declaration: Property BeforePost :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.25 TBufDataset.BeforeScroll

Declaration: Property BeforeScroll :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.26 TBufDataset.OnCalcFields

Declaration: Property OnCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.27 TBufDataset.OnDeleteError

Declaration: Property OnDeleteError :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.28 TBufDataset.OnEditError

Declaration: Property OnEditError :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.29 TBufDataset.OnFilterRecord

Declaration: Property OnFilterRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.30 TBufDataset.OnNewRecord

Declaration: Property OnNewRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.14.31 TBufDataset.OnPostError

Declaration: Property OnPostError :

Visibility: published

Access:

6.15 TBufIndex

6.15.1 Description

TBufIndex is a TObject descendant which defines the interface used to implement indexes in TBufDataset. TBufIndex provides access to the Dataset with field values for the index, and methods to perform record navigation and index maintenance.

TBufIndex contains many virtual and abstract methods that should be implemented in a descendent class which provides a specific index implementation, such as: TDoubleLinkedBufIndex, TUniDirectionalBufIndex, and TArrayBufIndex.

TBufIndex is the type used for the TBufDataset.BufferIndex property.

See also: TDoubleLinkedBufIndex ([190](#)), TUniDirectionalBufIndex ([197](#)), TArrayBufIndex ([152](#))

6.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
169	AddRecord	Adds a record to the index.
168	BeginUpdate	
167	BookmarkValid	Indicates the specified Bookmark is valid.
166	CanScrollForward	Indicates if the index can be scrolled forward.
167	CompareBookmarks	Gets the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.
165	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
167	DoScrollForward	Implements actions need to scroll forward in the index.
169	EndUpdate	
165	GetCurrent	Gets the record buffer for the current record in the dataset.
166	GetRecord	Gets prior/next record relative to the specified bookmark.
167	GotoBookmark	Moves the index position to the specified Bookmark.
168	InitialiseIndex	Initializes the index.
168	InitialiseSpareRecord	Initializes values in the spare record for the index.
169	InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	Inserts a record before the current record in the index order.
169	OrderCurrentRecord	
168	ReleaseSpareRecord	Releases resources allocated to the spare record for the index.
169	RemoveRecordFromIndex	Remove the record at the specified bookmark from the index.
166	RestoreCurrentRecord	Restores the stored record buiffer to the current record.
168	SameBookmarks	Indicates if the specified Bookmarks are for the same record.
165	ScrollBackward	Moves to the prior record in the index.
165	ScrollFirst	Moves to the first record in the index.
165	ScrollForward	Moves to the next record in the index.
165	ScrollLast	Moves to the last record in the index.
166	SetToFirstRecord	Sets the index to the first record in the index order.
166	SetToLastRecord	Sets the index to the last record in the index order.
167	StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	
166	StoreCurrentRecord	Stores the record buffer for the current record.
167	StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	

6.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
171	BookmarkSize	r	Size (number of bytes) needed for Bookmarks in the index.
170	CurrentBuffer	r	Current record buffer in the index.
170	CurrentRecord	r	Current record in the index.
170	IsInitialized	r	Indicates if the index has been initialized.
171	RecNo	rw	Active record number in the index.
170	SpareBuffer	r	Spare record buffer for the index.
170	SpareRecord	r	Spare record for the index.

6.15.4 TBufIndex.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const ADataset: TCustomBufDataset); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is the constructor for the class instance. `Create` calls the inherited constructor, and stores the `ADataset` parameter to the internal member used for the `TCustomBufDataset` class instance.

6.15.5 TBufIndex.ScrollBackward

Synopsis: Moves to the prior record in the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollBackward : TGetResult; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ScrollBackward` is a `TGetResult` function used to scrolling to the previous record in the index order. `ScrollBackward` implements the behavior needed to support the `TDataset.MoveBy` method using the index order for the dataset.

`ScrollBackward` is an abstract virtual method method, and must be implemented in a descendent class. The return value is a `TGetResult` enumeration value that indicates the result for the scroll request.

See also: `TGetResult` ([374](#)), `TDataset.MoveBy` ([442](#))

6.15.6 TBufIndex.ScrollForward

Synopsis: Moves to the next record in the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollForward : TGetResult; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

6.15.7 TBufIndex.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Gets the record buffer for the current record in the dataset.

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TGetResult; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

6.15.8 TBufIndex.ScrollFirst

Synopsis: Moves to the first record in the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollFirst : TGetResult; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

6.15.9 TBufIndex.ScrollLast

Synopsis: Moves to the last record in the index.

Declaration: `procedure ScrollLast; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

6.15.10 TBufIndex.GetRecord

Synopsis: Gets prior/next record relative to the specified bookmark.

Declaration: `function GetRecord(ABookmark: PBufBookmark; GetMode: TGetMode)
: TGetResult; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetRecord` is used to get the prior/next record relative to the specified bookmark. `GetRecord` is a virtual method that should be overridden in a descendent class; the implementation in `TBufIndex` simply returns the value `grError` as the return value for the method.

Please note that `GetRecord` should **not** change the current record in the dataset on exit.

6.15.11 TBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord

Synopsis: Sets the index to the first record in the index order.

Declaration: `procedure SetToFirstRecord; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.12 TBufIndex.SetToLastRecord

Synopsis: Sets the index to the last record in the index order.

Declaration: `procedure SetToLastRecord; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.13 TBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Stores the record buffer for the current record.

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecord; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.14 TBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Restores the stored record buiffer to the current record.

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCurrentRecord; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.15 TBufIndex.CanScrollForward

Synopsis: Indicates if the index can be scrolled forward.

Declaration: `function CanScrollForward : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.16 TBufIndex.DoScrollForward

Synopsis: Implements actions need to scroll forward in the index.

Declaration: `procedure DoScrollForward; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.17 TBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.18 TBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.19 TBufIndex.GotoBookmark

Synopsis: Moves the index position to the specified Bookmark.

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark); Virtual
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.20 TBufIndex.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Indicates the specified Bookmark is valid.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark) : Boolean
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

6.15.21 TBufIndex.CompareBookmarks

Synopsis: Gets the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(const ABookmark1: PBufBookmark;
const ABookmark2: PBufBookmark) : Integer
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

6.15.22 TBufIndex.SameBookmarks

Synopsis: Indicates if the specified Bookmarks are for the same record.

Declaration: `function SameBookmarks(const ABookmark1: PBufBookmark;
const ABookmark2: PBufBookmark) : Boolean
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

6.15.23 TBufIndex.InitialiseIndex

Synopsis: Initializes the index.

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseIndex; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Initializes the index.

6.15.24 TBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord

Synopsis: Initializes values in the spare record for the index.

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseSpareRecord(const ASpareRecord: TRecordBuffer)
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Initializes values in the spare record for the index.

6.15.25 TBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord

Synopsis: Releases resources allocated to the spare record for the index.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseSpareRecord; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Releases resources allocated to the spare record for the index.

6.15.26 TBufIndex.BeginUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description:

6.15.27 TBufIndex.AddRecord

Synopsis: Adds a record to the index.

Declaration: `procedure AddRecord; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Adds a record to the end of the index as the new last record (spare record). AddRecord is used in the GetNextPacket method.

6.15.28 TBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Inserts a record before the current record in the index order.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord(const ARecord: TRecordBuffer)
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Inserts a record before the current record using the sort order for the active index.

6.15.29 TBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex

Synopsis: Remove the record at the specified bookmark from the index.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRecordFromIndex(const ABookmark: TBufBookmark); Virtual
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.15.30 TBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure OrderCurrentRecord; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description:

6.15.31 TBufIndex.EndUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description:

6.15.32 TBufIndex.SpareRecord

Synopsis: Spare record for the index.

Declaration: `Property SpareRecord : TRecordBuffer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Spare record for the index.

6.15.33 TBufIndex.SpareBuffer

Synopsis: Spare record buffer for the index.

Declaration: `Property SpareBuffer : TRecordBuffer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Spare record buffer for the index.

6.15.34 TBufIndex.CurrentRecord

Synopsis: Current record in the index.

Declaration: `Property CurrentRecord : TRecordBuffer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current record in the index.

6.15.35 TBufIndex.CurrentBuffer

Synopsis: Current record buffer in the index.

Declaration: `Property CurrentBuffer : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current record buffer in the index.

6.15.36 TBufIndex.IsInitialized

Synopsis: Indicates if the index has been initialized.

Declaration: `Property IsInitialized : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Indicates if the index has been initialized.

6.15.37 TBufIndex.BookmarkSize

Synopsis: Size (number of bytes) needed for Bookmarks in the index.

Declaration: `Property BookmarkSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Size (number of bytes) needed for Bookmarks in the index.

6.15.38 TBufIndex.RecNo

Synopsis: Active record number in the index.

Declaration: `Property RecNo : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Active record number in the index.

6.16 TCustomBufDataset

6.16.1 Description

`TCustomBufDataset` is a `TDBDataset` descendant that implements the ancestor class for a database-aware buffered dataset. `TCustomBufDataset` is an in-memory dataset that can be used as a local stand-alone dataset, or it can be used as a local buffer for updates applied to a remote dataset. `TCustomBufDataset` implements many features similar to those in `TClientDataset` in Delphi. However, it is **not** meant to be code or function compatible with `TClientDataset`. It is designed to provide management of the buffers used to access record data, and is used as the ancestor for classes like `TSQLQuery` and `TRESTBufDataset`.

As a `TDBDataset` descendant, it offers access to many of the database features supported in the FCL DB package. As a `TDataset` descendant, it also offers access to familiar navigation and data handling methods in the ancestor class. `TCustomBufDataset` has features that allow local storage and retrieval of field definitions and record data. In addition, facilities are provided that allow local indexing of record data in the dataset. There is a comprehensive parser/expression evaluator available that allows complete support for Filters in the dataset.

Do not create instances of `TCustomBufDataset`. Use the `TBufDataset` descendant instead.

Additional information about using `TBufDataset` can be found on the Lazarus Wiki at: [How to write in-memory database applications in Lazarus/FPC \(TBufDataset\)](#).

See also: `TBufDataset` ([157](#)), `TDBDataset` ([470](#)), `TDataset` ([425](#))

6.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
178	AddIndex	Adds an index definition to the dataset.
174	ApplyUpdates	Applies pending updates to the dataset.
183	BookmarkValid	Determines if the specified Bookmark is valid for the dataset.
175	CancelUpdates	Cancels pending updates in the dataset.
182	Clear	Clears the content in the dataset.
179	ClearIndexes	Clears index storage in the dataset.
183	CompareBookmarks	Gets the relative sort order for the specified Bookmarks.
183	CopyFromDataset	Loads field definitions and optional data from another dataset.
173	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
178	CreateBlobStream	Creates a Blob stream for the specified field with the given permissions.
182	CreateDataset	Creates the dataset using its field definitions or bound fields.
175	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
179	GetDatasetPacket	Builds a data packet representing the content in the buffered dataset.
174	GetFieldData	
181	LoadFromFile	Loads the dataset from the specified file using the given format.
180	LoadFromStream	Loads the dataset from the specified stream using the given data format.
176	Locate	Locates the first record with fields having the specified values.
176	Lookup	Gets values from the first record with fields that match the search condition.
175	MergeChangeLog	Frees update buffers and Blob update buffer allocated for the dataset.
175	RevertRecord	Reverts the current record to its original (un-edited) values.
181	SaveToFile	Saves the dataset to the specified file using the given data format.
180	SaveToStream	Saves the dataset to the specified stream using the given data format.
179	SetDatasetPacket	Retrieves and applies the data packet with the content for the dataset.
174	SetFieldData	
177	UpdateStatus	Gets the update status for the current record in the dataset.

6.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
184	ChangeCount	r	Number of pending changes for the dataset.
185	FileName	rw	File name on the local file system used to load or store the dataset.
187	IndexDefs	r	Index definitions for the dataset.
187	IndexFieldNames	rw	Field names included in the custom index.
187	IndexName	rw	Name of the selected index for the dataset.
185	ManualMergeChangeLog	rw	Indicates if the update change log can be manually merged.
184	MaxIndexesCount	rw	Maximum number of indexes available in the dataset.
186	OnUpdateError	rw	Event handler signalled when an error occurs while updating records.
186	PacketRecords	rw	Number of records allowed in a data packet handled by the packet reader.
185	ReadOnly	rw	Indicates if records can be added, deleted, or modified in the dataset.
188	UniDirectional	rw	Indicates if the dataset is for uni-directional navigation only.

6.16.4 TCustomBufDataset.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is an overridden constructor for the class instance. `Create` calls the inherited constructor using the value in `AOwner` as the owner of the class instance. `Create` sets the default value for internal members used in the implementation of the buffered dataset, including:

- Parser for data packets (`Nil`)
- Manual MergeChangeLog handling (**False**)
- Default AutoInc field value (**-1**)
- Update Buffer count (**0**)
- Blob Buffer count (**0**)
- Blob Update Buffer count (**0**)

`Creates` sets the value for public and published properties, including:

- MaxIndexesCount (**2**)
- PacketRecords (**10**)

`Create` allocates resources needed for the `BufIndexdefs` and `BufIndexes` properties.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount` ([184](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.PacketRecords` ([186](#))

6.16.5 TCustomBufDataset.GetFieldData

Synopsis:

```
Declaration: function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
                                NativeFormat: Boolean) : Boolean; Override
function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer) : Boolean
; Override
```

Visibility: public

Description:

6.16.6 TCustomBufDataset.SetFieldData

Synopsis:

```
Declaration: procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
                                NativeFormat: Boolean); Override
procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer); Override
```

Visibility: public

Description:

6.16.7 TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates

Synopsis: Applies pending updates to the dataset.

```
Declaration: procedure ApplyUpdates; Virtual; Overload
procedure ApplyUpdates(MaxErrors: Integer); Virtual; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `ApplyUpdates` is an overloaded procedure used to apply pending updates for the dataset.

`ApplyUpdates` calls `CheckBrowseMode` and gets a bookmark for the current record in the dataset. The bookmark is used to return the dataset its original record after updates are applied and the dataset has been refreshed.

`MaxErrors` is the threshold where errors encountered in the process cause it to be aborted. The value 0 (zero) indicates no errors are allowed during the apply updates process.

`ApplyUpdates` uses the internal update buffers allocated for the dataset to perform the actions required in the method. The `ApplyRecUpdate` method is called for each of the update buffers. An exception raised in `ApplyRecUpdate` is handled in the method. When the value in `MaxErrors` is exceeded, the process is aborted. Otherwise, the update buffer is skipped. If the `OnUpdateError` exception handler has been assigned, it is signalled using the required arguments and its `Response` value is captured in the method. If the process is to be aborted, an exception is raised to indicate the condition.

When an update buffer is successfully applied, resources allocated to its `OldValuesBuffer`, `Bookmark` data, and the update buffer itself are freed. If all pending updates are applied successfully, and `ManualMergeChangeLog` contains `False`, the `MergeChangeLog` method is called.

`ApplyUpdates` calls `Resync` to fresh the records displayed in the dataset prior to exiting from the method.

See also: `TDataset.CheckBrowseMode` ([432](#)), `TRecUpdateBuffer` ([152](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.OnUpdateError` ([186](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.ManualMergeChangeLog` ([185](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.MergeChangeLog` ([175](#)), `TDataset.Resync` ([444](#))

6.16.8 TCustomBufDataset.MergeChangeLog

Synopsis: Frees update buffers and Blob update buffer allocated for the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure MergeChangeLog`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MergeChangeLog` is a procedure used to free update buffers and Blob update buffer allocated for the dataset. `MergeChangeLog` is called from the `ApplyUpdates` method.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates` ([174](#))

6.16.9 TCustomBufDataset.RevertRecord

Synopsis: Reverts the current record to its original (un-edited) values.

Declaration: `procedure RevertRecord`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RevertRecord` is a procedure used to revert changes in the current record to their original (un-edited) values. `RevertRecord` calls the `CheckBrowseMode` method to ensure that the dataset is Active, and to perform event notifications for a change in dataset state.

`RevertRecord` checks for an update buffer in the current record, and when found calls the `CancelRecordUpdateBuffer` method and removes the update buffer. The `Resync` method is called to refresh the records in the dataset.

See also: `TDataset.CheckBrowseMode` ([432](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([454](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.Resync` ([171](#))

6.16.10 TCustomBufDataset.CancelUpdates

Synopsis: Cancels pending updates in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CancelUpdates; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CancelUpdates` is a procedure used to cancel pending updates to records in the dataset. `CancelUpdates` calls the `CheckBrowseMode` method to ensure that the dataset is Active, and to perform event notifications for a change in dataset state.

`CancelUpdates` checks for existing update buffers allocated in the dataset. When update buffers exist, the `CancelRecordUpdateBuffer` method is called for the bookmark in each of the update buffers.

`CancelUpdates` restores the record position when able, and calls `Resync` to refresh the records available in the dataset.

See also: `TDataset.CheckBrowseMode` ([432](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([454](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.Resync` ([171](#))

6.16.11 TCustomBufDataset.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` is the overridden destructor for the class instance. `Destroy` calls the `Close` method if the dataset contains `True` in the `Active` property.

`Destroy` frees resources allocated to the internal buffers for records, and `Blob` fields. The `ClearIndexes` method is called to free resources allocated for index storage mechanisms. `Destroy` calls the inherited destructor.

6.16.12 TCustomBufDataset.Locate

Synopsis: Locates the first record with fields having the specified values.

Declaration: `function Locate(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant; Options: TLocateOptions) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Locate` is an overridden `Boolean` function used to locate the first record with fields that match the specified search values. `Locate` implements the method defined in the ancestor class.

`KeyFields` is a delimited list of field names searched in the method. The delimiter character is `'` (Semicolon).

`KeyValues` is a `Variant` type with the field values required for the specified `KeyFields`. When `KeyFields` contains a single field name, `KeyValues` can be represented using the same data type as the field value. When `KeyFields` contains more than one field name, it is a `Variant` array.

`Options` is a `TLocateOptions` parameter that indicates the locate options enabled in the method. Options can contain zero (0) or more values from the `TLocateOption` enumeration.

`Locate` calls the inherited method to ensure that the dataset supports bi-directional navigation. An `Exception` is raised if the `UniDirectional` property contains `True`. The value in the `Active` property is checked to ensure that the dataset has been opened. An `Exception` is raised if `Active` contains `False`. No actions are performed in the method when `IsEmpty` returns `True`.

`Locate` initializes an internal `TDBCompareStruct` instance that is used when searching field values using the `SearchFields` and `Options` arguments. The search is performed by using the `Filter` feature; the filter fields are set to the values in `KeyValues`. Each record in the dataset is visited and the `OnFilterRecord` event is signalled to determine if the record meets the `Filter` criteria. The search ends when a record is found that matches the search values.

The record position is changed to the marching record, or positioned at the end-of-file when no matching record is found.

The return value is `True` if a record was located that matched the search values.

See also: `TDataset.Locate` (441), `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (188), `TDataset.Active` (454), `TDataset.Filter` (453), `TDataset.OnFilterRecord` (453), `TLocateOptions` (375), `TDBCompareStruct` (147)

6.16.13 TCustomBufDataset.Lookup

Synopsis: Gets values from the first record with fields that match the search condition.

Declaration: `function Lookup(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant; const ResultFields: string) : Variant; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Lookup` is an overridden `Variant` function used to get values from the first record with fields that match the specified search values. `Lookup` re-implements the method defined in the ancestor class. `Lookup` allows searching one or more fields for corresponding values, and returning a set of field values from the matching record.

KeyFields is a delimited list of field names searched in the method. The delimiter character is ';' (**Semicolon**). The following example would represent the fields **LASTNAME** and **FIRSTNAME**:

```
'LASTNAME; FIRSTNAME'
```

KeyValues is a Variant type with the field values required for the specified KeyFields. When KeyFields contains a single field name, KeyValues can be represented using the same data type as the field value. When KeyFields contains more than one field name, it is a Variant array. Using the previous values for KeyFields, the following would represent the values for '**JOHN SMITH**':

```
VarArrayOf([ 'SMITH', 'JOHN' ])
```

ResultFields contains one or more field names which determine the field values to include in the return value for the method. Like KeyFields, it is a delimited list of field names using ';' (**Semicolon**) as the delimiter character.

The return value is a Variant type that contains a value for each of the field names specified in the ResultFields argument. When a matching record is located, the return value is a Variant array. The return value is Null if a record is not found matching the specified KeyValues in its KeyFields.

```
var
  AVarValues: Variant;
  ABufDataset: TBufDataset;

// ...

ABufDataset.Lookup('lastname;firstname',
  VarArrayOf(['SMITH', 'JOHN']), 'lastname;firstname;birthdate;emailaddress');

if not VarIsNull(AVarValues) then
  DoSomethingWith(AVarValues)
else
  WriteLn('No records match the search criteria');
```

Lookup does not change the record position in the dataset. A temporary TBookmark is used to record the current record in the dataset. The record position is restored prior to exiting from the method.

Lookup calls the Locate method to search records in the dataset using the KeyFields and KeyValues arguments. The Locate method may raise an Exception if the dataset is configured for UniDirectional access or when it is not Active.

See also: TCustomBufDataset.Locate ([176](#)), TDataset.Active ([454](#)), TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional ([188](#))

6.16.14 TCustomBufDataset.UpdateStatus

Synopsis: Gets the update status for the current record in the dataset.

Declaration: function UpdateStatus : TUpdateStatus; Override

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateStatus` is an overridden `TUpdateStatus` function used to get the update status for the current record in the dataset. `UpdateStatus` re-implements the method defined in the ancestor class. The return value is a member of the `TUpdateStatus` enumeration, and includes the following values:

`usUnmodifiedRecord` has not been modified
`usModifiedRecord` has been modified
`usInsertedRecords` was appended or inserted
`usDeletedRecord` has been deleted

`UpdateStatus` calls `GetActiveRecordUpdateBuffer` to get the update buffer for the `ActiveRecord`. When an update buffer exists for the record, its `UpdateKind` property is used as the return value for the method. The return value is `usUnmodified` when an update buffer does not exist for `ActiveRecord`.

See also: `TUpdateStatus` (383), `TDataset.ActiveRecord` (425)

6.16.15 `TCustomBufDataset.CreateBlobStream`

Synopsis: Creates a Blob stream for the specified field with the given permissions.

Declaration: `function CreateBlobStream(Field: TField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode)
: TStream; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a Blob stream for the specified field with the given permissions.

See also: `TDataset.CreateBlobStream` (434), `TField` (477), `TBlobStreamMode` (364)

6.16.16 `TCustomBufDataset.AddIndex`

Synopsis: Adds an index definition to the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure AddIndex(const AName: string; const AFields: string;
AOptions: TIndexOptions; const ADescFields: string;
const ACaseInsFields: string); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddIndex` is a procedure used to add an index definition to the dataset. `AddIndex` calls `CheckBiDirectional` to ensure that the `UniDirectional` property contains `False`. An exception is raised if `UniDirectional` contains `True`.

`AddIndex` checks for a valid value in the `AFields` argument. An Exception is raised when `AFields` is an empty string ("). In addition, an index added to an Active dataset cannot cause the index count to exceed the value in `MaxIndexesCount`. An Exception is raised if the index count would be larger than the value in `MaxIndexesCount`.

`AddIndex` creates a `TBufDatasetIndex` instance by calling `InternalAddIndex` using the arguments passed to the method. The new index is temporary when the `Active` property contains `True`; it will be discarded when the dataset is closed.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (188), `TDataset.Active` (454), `TBufDatasetIndex` (145)

6.16.17 TCustomBufDataset.ClearIndexes

Synopsis: Clears index storage in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure ClearIndexes`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClearIndexes` is a procedure used to clear the storage for all indexes in the dataset. `ClearIndexes` uses the index definitions in the `BufIndexDefs` property and calls the `ClearIndex` method for each of the indexes.

`ClearIndexes` calls `CheckInactive` to ensure that the dataset has its `Active` property set to `False`. Indexes cannot be cleared if the dataset has been opened.

`ClearIndexes` is used when the value in the `UniDirectional` property is changed to `False`, and in the destructor for the class instance.

See also: `TDataset.CheckInactive` ([425](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` ([188](#))

6.16.18 TCustomBufDataset.SetDatasetPacket

Synopsis: Retrieves and applies the data packet with the content for the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure SetDatasetPacket (AReader: TDataPacketHandler)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetDatasetPacket` is a procedure used to retrieve and apply the data packet with the content for the dataset.

`AReader` is a `TDataPacketReader` instance that is used to read and apply the content for the buffered dataset. It is temporarily assigned to an internal member in the calls instance.

`SetDatasetPacket` calls the `Open` method to load the field definitions and record data for the dataset.

`SetDatasetPacket` is used in the implementation of the `LoadFromStream` method.

See also: `TDataset.Open` ([443](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromStream` ([180](#)), `TDataPacketReader` ([147](#))

6.16.19 TCustomBufDataset.GetDatasetPacket

Synopsis: Builds a data packet representing the content in the buffered dataset.

Declaration: `procedure GetDatasetPacket (AWriter: TDataPacketHandler)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetDatasetPacket` is a procedure used to build the data packet that represents the content in the buffered dataset. `GetDatasetPacket` ensures that record buffers and update buffers in the dataset are normalized and applied using the data packet handler (n.b. I won't call it a reader if it writes) in `AWriter`.

`GetDatasetPacket` sequentially processes records using the currently selected index for the dataset. Update buffers for a given record are consolidate in the record buffer, and the record buffer is stored to the data packet handler. The current record position is not changed when the process has been completed.

`GetDatasetPacket` stores the current value for an auto-increment field used in the dataset in the `AWriter` argument. The internal data packet handler for the dataset is set to `Nil` when the method is completed.

`GetDatasetPacket` is used in the implementation of the `SaveToStream` method.

See also: `TDataPacketReader` ([147](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.SaveToStream` ([180](#))

6.16.20 TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads the dataset from the specified stream using the given data format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(AStream: TStream; Format: TDataPacketFormat)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` is a procedure used to load field definitions and record data for the dataset from the specified stream. `LoadFromStream` is an overloaded variant of the method defined in the ancestor class and includes a parameter for the desired data packet format.

`AStream` is a `TStream` descendant with the values to load in the dataset. `Format` indicates the expected format for data packets in the stream. It is a variable argument that can be modified when a packet reader is located for the stream.

`LoadFromStream` calls `CheckBiDirectional` to ensure that the `UniDirectional` property in the dataset is set to `False`. An exception is raised when `UniDirectional` contains `True`. Index creation requires navigating in a non-default record order that would not be supported in a uni-directional dataset.

`LoadFromStream` creates a temporary `TDataPacketReader` class instance using the value specified in the `Format` argument. `Format` is a variable argument and can be modified when `SetDatasetPacket` is used to examine the packet reader and its stream. Calling `SetDatasetPacket` sets in motion a relatively complicated sequence of events that eventually get the field definitions and record data loaded into the dataset. The journey starts with `Open`.

`LoadFromStream` is used in the implementation of the `LoadFromFile` method.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (188), `TCustomBufDataset.SetDatasetPacket` (179), `TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromFile` (181), `TDataset.Open` (443), `TDataPacketFormat` (146)

6.16.21 TCustomBufDataset.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Saves the dataset to the specified stream using the given data format.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(AStream: TStream; Format: TDataPacketFormat)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` is a procedure used to store the content in the buffered dataset to a stream using the specified data format.

`AStream` is a `TStream` descendant where the field definitions and record data in the dataset will be stored.

`Format` is a `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration value that indicates the format used to stored dataset values into the stream. The default value is `dfBinary`, and causes the `TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader` to be used to write the content for the dataset. Use another value from the `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration to select a different registered data packet handler that handles the associated data format.

`SaveToStream` calls the `CheckBiDirectional` method to ensure that the dataset is opened for bi-directional record navigation. An Exception is raised if the `UniDirectional` property contains `True`. A temporary `TDataPacketReader` instance is created using the specified `Format`. `SaveToStream` calls the `GetDatasetPacket` method using the data packet handler to store the content in the buffered dataset to the stream.

`SaveToStream` is used in the implementation of the `SaveToFile` method.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (188), `TCustomBufDataset.SaveToFile` (181), `TDataPacketFormat` (146), `RegisterDatapacketReader` (150), `TDataPacketReaderClass` (147), `TDataPacketReader` (147)

6.16.22 TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Loads the dataset from the specified file using the given format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFileName: string;
Format: TDataPacketFormat)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` is a procedure used to load field definitions and record data from a file stored using a given data format.

`AFileName` is a String with the name of the file on the local file system. `AFileName` can contain optional path information, and should include the base name and extension for the file. For example:

```
ABufDataset.LoadFromFile('/usr/data/sample.bds');
```

or

```
ABufDataset.LoadFromFile('c:\usr\data\sample.bds');
```

The default value for `AFileName` is an empty string ("). When `AFileName` is an empty string, the value in the `FileName` property is used to load the content for the dataset. An Exception will be raised if both `AFileName` and `FileName` contain an empty String ("), or when the file name does not exist on the local file system.

`Format` is a `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration value that indicates the storage format used for the content in the file. The default value for `Format` is `dfAny`, and indicates that any registered data packet handler can be used to read the values in the file. Other values in the `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration indicate a specific registered data packet handler supporting a specific format should be used.

`LoadFromFile` creates a temporary `TFileStream` instance for the specified file name, and calls the `LoadFromStream` method to load the dataset from the stream using the specified file `Format`.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.FileName` ([185](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromStream` ([180](#))

6.16.23 TCustomBufDataset.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Saves the dataset to the specified file using the given data format.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string; Format: TDataPacketFormat)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` is a procedure used to save the content from the buffered dataset to the specified file name using a given data format.

`AFileName` is a String with the name of the file on the local file system. `AFileName` can contain optional path information, and should include the base name and extension for the file. For example:

```
ABufDataset.SaveToFile('/usr/data/sample.bds');
```

or

```
ABufDataset.SaveToFile('c:\usr\data\sample.bds');
```

The default value for `AFileName` is an empty string (''). When `AFileName` is omitted, the value in the `FileName` property will be used to save the content for the dataset. An Exception will be raised if both `AFileName` and `FileName` contain an empty String ('').

`Format` is a `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration value that indicates the storage format to use when writing the content for the file. The default value for `Format` is `dfBinary`, and indicates that the `TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader` should be used to write the values in the file. Other values in the `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration indicate a specific registered data packet handler supporting a specific format should be used.

`SaveToFile` creates a temporary `TFileStream` instance for the specified file name, and calls the `SaveToStream` method to store the dataset to the stream in the required `Format`.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.FileName` ([185](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.SaveToStream` ([180](#))

6.16.24 TCustomBufDataset.CreateDataset

Synopsis: Creates the dataset using its field definitions or bound fields.

Declaration: `procedure CreateDataset`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateDataset` is a procedure used to create the structure for a buffered dataset using the field definitions or bound fields defined in the class instance. `CreateDataset` calls `CheckInactive` to ensure that the dataset has not been opened. An exception is raised if the `Active` property contains `True`.

`CreateDataset` uses the `FieldDefs` and `Fields` properties to determine which property contains the structure for the dataset.

Preference is given to the `FieldDefs` property; it will be used even when bound fields have been created in the `Fields` property. The `CreateFields` method is called to create a bound field for each of the items in the `FieldDefs` collection.

The `Fields` property is used when there are no field definitions present in the `FieldDefs` property. The `InitFieldDefsFromFields` method is called to create a field definition in `FieldDefs` for each of the items in `Fields` collection. The `BindFields` method is called to link the items in `Fields` to the corresponding field definition in `FieldDefs`.

An exception is raised if both `FieldDefs` and `Fields` are empty.

`CreateDataset` sets the default value for an auto-increment field in the dataset to 1. `CreateDataset` also temporarily clears any value assigned to the `FileName` property; this is done to ensure that fields and record data in an existing file are not loaded when the dataset is `Opened`. The method is designed to create a dataset with field definitions but no record data. The value in `FileName` is restored after `Open` has been called in the method.

See also: `TDataset.Active` ([454](#)), `TDataset.FieldDefs` ([449](#)), `TDataset.Fields` ([452](#)), `TDataset.Open` ([443](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.FileName` ([185](#))

6.16.25 TCustomBufDataset.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the content in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is a procedure used to remove the content in the buffered dataset. `Clear` calls the `Close` method to ensure that the dataset has set its `Active` property to `False` and removed indexes and their storage. `Clear` removes field definition and bound fields in the `FieldDefs` and `Fields` properties.

See also: `TDataset.Close` ([433](#)), `TDataset.FieldDefs` ([449](#)), `TDataset.Fields` ([452](#))

6.16.26 TCustomBufDataset.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Determines if the specified `Bookmark` is valid for the dataset.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(ABookmark: TBookmark) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BookmarkValid` is an overridden `Boolean` function used to determine if the `Bookmark` specified in `ABookmark` is valid for the currently selected index in the dataset. `BookmarkValid` re-implements the method defined in the ancestor class.

`BookmarkValid` requires an index be selected and assigned to the `CurrentIndexBuf` property. The return value is `False` when no index is available to validate the bookmark. The return value is `True` when `ABookmark` represents a valid bookmark in the selected index.

See also: `TBufIndex.BookmarkValid` ([167](#))

6.16.27 TCustomBufDataset.CompareBookmarks

Synopsis: Gets the relative sort order for the specified `Bookmarks`.

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(Bookmark1: TBookmark; Bookmark2: TBookmark) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CompareBookmarks` is an overridden `LongInt` function used to get the relative sort order for the specified `Bookmarks`. `CompareBookmarks` re-implements the method defined in the ancestor class.

The return value indicates the relative sort order for the compared bookmark values, and uses the following values and meanings:

0 Compared bookmarks have the same value

1 `Bookmark1` is not assigned, or `Bookmark1` occurs after `Bookmark2` in the index

-1 `Bookmark2` is not assigned, or the current index has not been assigned (default value), or `Bookmark1` occurs before `Bookmark2` in the index

When the `CurentIndexBuf` property is assigned, its `CompareBookmarks` method is used to compare the bookmarks and get the return value for the method.

See also: `TBufIndex` ([163](#))

6.16.28 TCustomBufDataset.CopyFromDataset

Synopsis: Loads field definitions and optional data from another dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyFromDataset(DataSet: TDataSet; CopyData: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CopyFromDataset` is a procedure used to copy field definitions and optional record data for the dataset specified in the `Dataset` argument. `CopyData` indicates if record data is included in the copy operation. When `CopyData` contains `False`, only the field definitions in `DataSet` are copied to the buffered dataset.

`CopyFromDataset` calls the `Close` method prior to performing actions that clear field definitions and bound fields in the buffered dataset. A field definition is added to `FieldDefs` for each of the fields in `DataSet`. `CreateDataset` is called to bind `Fields` to the new field definitions, and to initialize index storage for the buffered dataset.

When `CopyData` contains `True`, record data from `DataSet` is copied to the class instance on a row-by-row and field-by-field basis. `Append` is called to add a new record. Internal lists with field definitions and bound fields are used to copy field values in the record (including `Blob` fields). Null field values are not copied in the method. The `DataType` for the field is used to read/write the field values. For blob fields, a temporary stream is used to read/write the field value. The `Post` method is called to store appended values in the buffered dataset. If an exception is raised, the `Cancel` method is called to clear the update and the exception is re-raised.

The record position in `DataSet` is restored to its original position prior to exiting from the method.

See also: `TDataset.Close` ([433](#)), `TDataset.Cancel` ([432](#)), `TDataset.FieldDefs` ([449](#))

6.16.29 TCustomBufDataset.ChangeCount

Synopsis: Number of pending changes for the dataset.

Declaration: `Property ChangeCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ChangeCount` is a read-only `Integer` property that indicates the number of pending changes in the update buffers allocated for the dataset. Update buffers are maintained in an internal `TRecord-UpdateBuffer` member when methods that add, delete, or modify record data are called.

`ChangeCount` can be used in an application to determine if `ApplyUpdates`, `CancelUpdates`, or `RevertRecord` should be called prior to closing the dataset.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates` ([174](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.CancelUpdates` ([175](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.RevertRecord` ([175](#))

6.16.30 TCustomBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount

Synopsis: Maximum number of indexes available in the dataset.

Declaration: `Property MaxIndexesCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `MaxIndexesCount` is an `Integer` property which indicates the maximum number of indexes available in the buffered dataset. The default value for the property is 2; representing the automatically created default index ('`DEFAULT_ORDER`') and custom index ('`CUSTOM_ORDER`').

The value in `MaxIndexesCount` is assigned when the dataset is created, and updated when an index is added using the `AddIndex` method. Setting the value in the `MaxIndexesCount` property requires the dataset to be inactive (`Active` property contains `False`). An exception is raised if the dataset is

Active, or the new value for the property is less than 2. You should not need to directly assign the value for the `MaxIndexesCount` property.

`MaxIndexesCount` is used in the `BufferOffset` method to determine the amount of space reserved for `TBufRecLinkItem` items in a record buffer for the dataset.

See also: `TDataset.Active` (454), `TCustomBufDataset.AddIndex` (178)

6.16.31 TCustomBufDataset.ReadOnly

Synopsis: Indicates if records can be added, deleted, or modified in the dataset.

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ReadOnly` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if records can be added, deleted, or modified in the buffered dataset. The default value for the property is `False`.

`ReadOnly` is used, along with `UniDirectional`, when getting the value for the `CanModify` property. The dataset can be modified when both source properties contain the value `False`, which results in setting `CanModify` to `True`. Applications can set the value in `ReadOnly` to `False` to ensure that the dataset is not changeable regardless of the value in the `UniDirectional` property.

Use the items in the `FieldDefs` property to control whether individual fields defined for the dataset include the read-only field attribute. Use the items in the `Fields` property to determine if a field bound to a field definition has its `ReadOnly` property set.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (188), `TDataset.CanModify` (447), `TDataset.FieldDefs` (449), `TDataset.Fields` (452)

6.16.32 TCustomBufDataset.ManualMergeChangeLog

Synopsis: Indicates if the update change log can be manually merged.

Declaration: `Property ManualMergeChangeLog : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ManualMergeChangeLog` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if the update change log for the dataset can be manually merged. The default value for the property is `False`.

6.16.33 TCustomBufDataset.FileName

Synopsis: File name on the local file system used to load or store the dataset.

Declaration: `Property FileName : TFileName`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileName` is a `TFileName` property that contains a file name on the local file system used to load and/or store the content for the buffered dataset. `FileName` can contain optional path information needed to access the file, and must contain a valid file name and extension for the local file system. For example:

```
ABufDataset.FileName := '/usr/data/sample.bds';
```

or

```
ABufDataset.FileName := 'c:\usr\data\sample.bds';
```

The value in `FileName` is used in methods which load and/or save field definitions and record data for the dataset, such as `LoadFromFile` and `SaveToFile`. In these methods, `FileName` is used as the default value for an omitted file name argument in the method(s). `FileName` is used in the implementation of other methods such as: `InternalInitFieldDef`, `IntLoadFieldDefsFromFile`, and `InternalOpen`.

`FileName` is also used in the `DoBeforeClose` method called when the value in the `Active` property is changed from `True` to `False`. In this method, `FileName` is passed to `SaveToFile` as an argument prior to exiting from the method.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromFile` ([181](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.SaveToFile` ([181](#)), `TDataset.Open` ([443](#)), `TDataset.Close` ([433](#))

6.16.34 TCustomBufDataset.PacketRecords

Synopsis: Number of records allowed in a data packet handled by the packet reader.

Declaration: `Property PacketRecords : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `PacketRecords` is an `Integer` property that indicates the number of records allowed in a data packet handled by the packet reader. The default value for the property is 10, and is intended to minimize memory and network overhead when processing data packets for the dataset. The value in `PacketRecords` is used in the `FetchAll` and `GetNextPacket` methods.

Additional validation is performed when setting the value for `PacketRecords` to ensure that the new property value is not -1. An exception is raised when -1 is the value for the property.

6.16.35 TCustomBufDataset.OnUpdateError

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when an error occurs while updating records.

Declaration: `Property OnUpdateError : TResolverErrorEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnUpdateError` is a `TResolverErrorEvent` property that represents the event handler signalled when an error occurs while applying updates to records in the buffered dataset. `OnUpdateError` allows an application to perform actions needed when a database exception occurs in the `ApplyUpdates` method.

Applications can assign a procedure to the event handler that implements the `TResolverErrorEvent` signature to respond to the event notification. The procedure must set the value in its `Response` argument to indicate whether the condition is handled, ignored, or can be re-raised in the calling method.

See also: `TResolverErrorEvent` ([149](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates` ([174](#))

6.16.36 TCustomBufDataset.IndexDefs

Synopsis: Index definitions for the dataset.

Declaration: `Property IndexDefs : TIndexDefs`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `IndexDefs` is a read-only `TIndexDefs` property that contains the index definitions for the buffered dataset. Read access to the property is redirected to an internal `TBufDatasetIndexDefs` member used for the `BufIndexDefs` and `BufIndexes` properties.

See also: `TBufDatasetIndexDefs` ([171](#)), `TIndexDefs` ([527](#))

6.16.37 TCustomBufDataset.IndexName

Synopsis: Name of the selected index for the dataset.

Declaration: `Property IndexName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IndexName` is a `String` property that contains the name for the selected index for the buffered dataset. The value in `IndexName` is read from the corresponding property in `CurrentIndexBuf` (when assigned).

If an empty string (") is assigned to the property, the the default index is selected for the dataset and the property is updated to 'DEFAULT_ORDER'. Any other value assigned to the property is compared to the index definitions for the dataset. If an index cannot be located with the specified name, a Database exception is raised. The index with the specified name (and its storage mechanism) are stored in the `CurrentIndexDef` and `CurrentIndexBuf` properties. If the dataset is Active, the `Resync` method is called to enable the new record order for the dataset.

See also: `TDataset.Active` ([454](#)), `TDataset.Resync` ([444](#))

6.16.38 TCustomBufDataset.IndexFieldNames

Synopsis: Field names included in the custom index.

Declaration: `Property IndexFieldNames : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IndexFieldNames` is a `String` property which contains a delimited list of field names used to construct the custom index for the dataset. Field names are separated by a ';' (Semicolon) delimiter. An optional directive can be included after the field name to indicate that the field should be in descending sort order in the index. For example:

```
ABufDataset.IndexFieldNames := 'LASTNAME; FIRSTNAME; UPDATETS DESC';
```

Please note that the leading Space character before the **DESC** directive is **required**.

When reading the value in `IndexFieldNames`, the current index is examined to determine if any of the field names in the property also appear in the descending fields for the index. The ' `DESC`' directive is added to the field name to indicate the sort order used in the index.

Setting the value for the property to an empty string (") causes the default index (' `DEFAULT_ORDER`') to be used as the selected index in the `CurrentIndexDef` property. When the new property value is not an empty string, and the dataset is Active, the `BuildCustomIndex` method is called to populate index storage with values for the specified field names.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.CurrentIndexDef` ([171](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([454](#))

6.16.39 TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional

Synopsis: Indicates if the dataset is for uni-directional navigation only.

Declaration: `Property UniDirectional : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UniDirectional` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if the dataset is limited to forward navigation through its records. The default value for the property is `False`.

`UniDirectional` is used, along with `ReadOnly`, to determine if the dataset can be modified. When either property contains `True`, the dataset cannot be changed.

`UniDirectional` also affects the index storage mechanisms created when indexes are initialized. When `UniDirectional` is `True`, the `TUniDirectionalBufIndex` type (which omits bookmarks and record numbers) is used for index storage mechanisms. In addition, the custom index (' `CUSTOM_ORDER`') is skipped for the uni-directional dataset.

Setting the value in `UniDirectional` requires the dataset to be inactive (`Active` contains `False`) to allow existing indexes to be cleared and rebuilt. Use the `Close` method to close the dataset prior to setting the value in the `UniDirectional` property.

See also: `TDataset.ReadOnly` ([425](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([454](#))

6.17 TDataPacketHandler

6.17.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
189	Create	
190	FinalizeStoreRecords	
189	GetCurrentRecord	
189	GetRecordRowState	
189	GotoNextRecord	
189	InitLoadRecords	
189	LoadFieldDefs	
190	RecognizeStream	
189	RestoreRecord	
189	StoreFieldDefs	
190	StoreRecord	

6.17.2 TDataPacketHandler.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(ADataSet: TCustomBufDataset; AStream: TStream)
; Virtual

Visibility: public

6.17.3 TDataPacketHandler.LoadFieldDefs

Declaration: procedure LoadFieldDefs(var AnAutoIncValue: Integer); Virtual
; Abstract

Visibility: public

6.17.4 TDataPacketHandler.InitLoadRecords

Declaration: procedure InitLoadRecords; Virtual; Abstract

Visibility: public

6.17.5 TDataPacketHandler.GetCurrentRecord

Declaration: function GetCurrentRecord : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract

Visibility: public

6.17.6 TDataPacketHandler.GetRecordRowState

Declaration: function GetRecordRowState(out AUpdOrder: Integer) : TRowState; Virtual
; Abstract

Visibility: public

6.17.7 TDataPacketHandler.RestoreRecord

Declaration: procedure RestoreRecord; Virtual; Abstract

Visibility: public

6.17.8 TDataPacketHandler.GotoNextRecord

Declaration: procedure GotoNextRecord; Virtual; Abstract

Visibility: public

6.17.9 TDataPacketHandler.StoreFieldDefs

Declaration: procedure StoreFieldDefs(AnAutoIncValue: Integer); Virtual; Abstract

Visibility: public

6.17.10 TDataPacketHandler.StoreRecord

Declaration: `procedure StoreRecord(ARowState: TRowState; AUpdOrder: Integer)
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.17.11 TDataPacketHandler.FinalizeStoreRecords

Declaration: `procedure FinalizeStoreRecords; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.17.12 TDataPacketHandler.RecognizeStream

Declaration: `class function RecognizeStream(AStream: TStream) : Boolean; Virtual
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

6.18 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex

6.18.1 Description

TDoubleLinkedBufIndex is a TBufIndex descendant that implements an index using a doubly-linked list. Nodes in the doubly-linked list are implemented using the TBufRecLinkItem record type and the PBufRecLinkItem pointer type. TDoubleLinkedBufIndex provides two sentinel nodes that represent the first and last items in the linked list.

TDoubleLinkedBufIndex is the type used to implement the default index ('DEFAULT_ORDER') in TBufDataset.

See also: TBufIndex ([163](#)), TBufRecLinkItem ([151](#)), PBufRecLinkItem ([146](#)), TBufDataset ([157](#))

6.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
195	AddRecord	Adds a record to the index.
194	BeginUpdate	
193	CanScrollForward	Indicates if the index can be scrolled towards the end of the index.
194	CompareBookmarks	
193	DoScrollForward	Implements actions needed to scroll forward using the index.
195	EndUpdate	
191	GetCurrent	
192	GetRecord	
193	GotoBookmark	Navigates the index to the specified Bookmark.
194	InitialiseIndex	Initializes the index.
194	InitialiseSpareRecord	Initializes the spare record in the index.
195	InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	Inserts a record prior to the current record in the index.
195	OrderCurrentRecord	
194	ReleaseSpareRecord	Releases the spare record in the index.
195	RemoveRecordFromIndex	Removes the record at the specified Bookmark from the index.
193	RestoreCurrentRecord	
194	SameBookmarks	Compares Bookmark values for ordering in the index.
191	ScrollBackward	Scrolls the index toward the beginning of the index.
192	ScrollFirst	Scrolls to the first entry in the index.
191	ScrollForward	Scrolls the index towards the end of the index.
192	ScrollLast	Scrolls to the last entry in the index.
192	SetToFirstRecord	
192	SetToLastRecord	
193	StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	
192	StoreCurrentRecord	
193	StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	

6.18.3 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollBackward

Synopsis: Scrolls the index toward the beginning of the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollBackward : TGetResult; Override`

Visibility: public

6.18.4 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollForward

Synopsis: Scrolls the index towards the end of the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollForward : TGetResult; Override`

Visibility: public

6.18.5 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GetCurrent

Synopsis:

Declaration: function GetCurrent : TGetResult; Override

Visibility: public

6.18.6 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollFirst

Synopsis: Scrolls to the first entry in the index.

Declaration: function ScrollFirst : TGetResult; Override

Visibility: public

6.18.7 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollLast

Synopsis: Scrolls to the last entry in the index.

Declaration: procedure ScrollLast; Override

Visibility: public

6.18.8 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GetRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: function GetRecord(ABookmark: PBufBookmark; GetMode: TGetMode)
: TGetResult; Override

Visibility: public

6.18.9 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToFirstRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.18.10 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SetToLastRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToLastRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.18.11 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure StoreCurrentRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.18.12 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCurrentRecord; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.13 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.CanScrollForward

Synopsis: Indicates if the index can be scrolled towards the end of the index.

Declaration: `function CanScrollForward : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.14 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.DoScrollForward

Synopsis: Implements actions needed to scroll forward using the index.

Declaration: `procedure DoScrollForward; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.15 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.16 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.17 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GotoBookmark

Synopsis: Navigates the index to the specified Bookmark.

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark); Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.18 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.CompareBookmarks

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(const ABookmark1: PBufBookmark;
const ABookmark2: PBufBookmark) : Integer
; Override`

Visibility: public

6.18.19 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SameBookmarks

Synopsis: Compares Bookmark values for ordering in the index.

Declaration: `function SameBookmarks(const ABookmark1: PBufBookmark;
const ABookmark2: PBufBookmark) : Boolean
; Override`

Visibility: public

6.18.20 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InitialiseIndex

Synopsis: Initializes the index.

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseIndex; Override`

Visibility: public

6.18.21 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord

Synopsis: Initializes the spare record in the index.

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseSpareRecord(const ASpareRecord: TRecordBuffer)
; Override`

Visibility: public

6.18.22 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord

Synopsis: Releases the spare record in the index.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseSpareRecord; Override`

Visibility: public

6.18.23 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.BeginUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; Override`

Visibility: public

6.18.24 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.AddRecord

Synopsis: Adds a record to the index.

Declaration: `procedure AddRecord; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.25 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Inserts a record prior to the current record in the index.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord(const ARecord: TRecordBuffer)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.26 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex

Synopsis: Removes the record at the specified Bookmark from the index.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRecordFromIndex(const ABookmark: TBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.27 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure OrderCurrentRecord; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.18.28 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.EndUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.19 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler

6.19.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
196	Create	
197	FinalizeStoreRecords	
196	GetCurrentRecord	
196	GetRecordRowState	
197	GotoNextRecord	
196	InitLoadRecords	
196	LoadFieldDefs	
197	RecognizeStream	
197	RestoreRecord	
196	StoreFieldDefs	
197	StoreRecord	

6.19.2 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TCustomBufDataset; AStream: TStream)
; Override`

Visibility: public

6.19.3 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.LoadFieldDefs

Declaration: `procedure LoadFieldDefs(var AnAutoIncValue: Integer); Override`

Visibility: public

6.19.4 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.StoreFieldDefs

Declaration: `procedure StoreFieldDefs(AnAutoIncValue: Integer); Override`

Visibility: public

6.19.5 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.InitLoadRecords

Declaration: `procedure InitLoadRecords; Override`

Visibility: public

6.19.6 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GetCurrentRecord

Declaration: `function GetCurrentRecord : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: public

6.19.7 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GetRecordRowState

Declaration: `function GetRecordRowState(out AUpdOrder: Integer) : TRowState
; Override`

Visibility: public

6.19.8 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.RestoreRecord

Declaration: procedure RestoreRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.19.9 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GotoNextRecord

Declaration: procedure GotoNextRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.19.10 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.StoreRecord

Declaration: procedure StoreRecord(ARowState: TRowState; AUpdOrder: Integer)
; Override

Visibility: public

6.19.11 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.FinalizeStoreRecords

Declaration: procedure FinalizeStoreRecords; Override

Visibility: public

6.19.12 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.RecognizeStream

Declaration: class function RecognizeStream(AStream: TStream) : Boolean; Override

Visibility: public

6.20 TUniDirectionalBufIndex

6.20.1 Description

TUniDirectionalBufIndex is a TBufIndex descendant that implements a uni-directional index. TUniDirectionalBufIndex does not require bookmarks used for navigation; it is uni-directional and the next record is always available in the buffers allocated for the index.

See also: TBufIndex ([163](#))

6.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
201	AddRecord	
201	BeginUpdate	
199	CanScrollForward	
200	DoScrollForward	
201	EndUpdate	
198	GetCurrent	
200	GotoBookmark	
200	InitialiseIndex	
200	InitialiseSpareRecord	
201	InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	
201	OrderCurrentRecord	
200	ReleaseSpareRecord	
201	RemoveRecordFromIndex	
199	RestoreCurrentRecord	
198	ScrollBackward	
198	ScrollFirst	
198	ScrollForward	
199	ScrollLast	
199	SetToFirstRecord	
199	SetToLastRecord	
200	StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	
199	StoreCurrentRecord	
200	StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	

6.20.3 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollBackward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollBackward : TGetResult; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.4 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollForward : TGetResult; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.5 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.GetCurrent

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TGetResult; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.6 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollFirst

Synopsis:

Declaration: function ScrollFirst : TGetResult; Override

Visibility: public

6.20.7 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.ScrollLast

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure ScrollLast; Override

Visibility: public

6.20.8 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.SetToFirstRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToFirstRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.20.9 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.SetToLastRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToLastRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.20.10 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.StoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure StoreCurrentRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.20.11 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure RestoreCurrentRecord; Override

Visibility: public

6.20.12 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.CanScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: function CanScrollForward : Boolean; Override

Visibility: public

6.20.13 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.DoScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure DoScrollForward; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.14 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.15 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.16 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.GotoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark); Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.17 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.InitialiseIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseIndex; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.18 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseSpareRecord(const ASpareRecord: TRecordBuffer)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.19 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseSpareRecord; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.20 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.BeginUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.21 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.AddRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure AddRecord; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.22 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord(const ARecord: TRecordBuffer)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.23 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRecordFromIndex(const ABookmark: TBufBookmark)
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.24 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.OrderCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure OrderCurrentRecord; Override`

Visibility: `public`

6.20.25 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.EndUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Chapter 7

Reference for unit 'bufstream'

7.1 Used units

Table 7.1: Used units by unit 'bufstream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

7.2 Overview

BufStream implements buffered streams. The streams store all data from (or for) the source stream in a memory buffer, and only flush the buffer when it's full (or refill it when it's empty).

Buffered streams can help in speeding up read or write operations, especially when a lot of small read/write operations are done. They avoid doing a lot of operating system calls.

TReadBufStream (208) is used for reading only, and allows the buffer size to be specified at the time of creation.

TWriteBufStream (209) is used for writing only, and allows the buffer size to be specified at the time of creation.

TBufferedFileStream (203) can be used for reading and writing depending on the file mode specified at the time of creation. By default, it uses an internal buffer with 8 pages using a 4,096 byte page size. Both page count and page size are configurable using methods in the class.

7.3 Constants, types and variables

7.3.1 Constants

`DefaultBufferCapacity : Integer = 16`

If no buffer size is specified when the stream is created, then this size is used.

7.4 TBufferedFileStream

7.4.1 Description

`TBufferedFileStream` is a `TFileStream` descendant which implements a buffered file stream. It provides a buffer with multiple pages used for random read / write access in the file stream.

By default, It uses a fixed-size buffer consisting of 8 pages with a 4,096 bytes per page. Both page count and page size configurable using the `InitializeCache` (206) method in the class. The buffer is automatically maintained when the stream size or position is changed, and when reading or writing content to/from the stream.

Pages which have been modified in the buffer are written to the file stream as needed (all pages are used and a read/write operation is performed), when the `Flush` method is called, and when the class instance is freed. Thus, the class will never use more than the total size obtained by multiplying the `CacheBlockSize` and `aCacheBlockCount` arguments to `InitializeCache` (206).

This class is suitable when you need to do a lot of random access to a file: hence the use of different pages of configurable size. If you simply wish to speed up sequential reads you better use `TReadBufStream` (208) or `TWriteBufStream` (209) for speeding up sequential writes.

See also: `TFileStream` (??), `THandleStream` (??), `TStream` (??), `TReadBufStream` (208), `TWriteBufStream` (209)

7.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
203	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
204	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
206	Flush	Flushes modified pages in the buffer to the file stream.
206	InitializeCache	Re-initializes the internal buffer for the buffered file stream.
205	Read	Reads the specified number of bytes into the Buffer parameter.
204	Seek	Moves the position in the buffer relative to the specified origin.
205	Write	Writes the specified number of bytes in Buffer to the internal page buffer(s).

7.4.3 TBufferedFileStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFileName: string; Mode: Word)`
`constructor Create(const AFileName: string; Mode: Word;`
`Rights: Cardinal)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the constructor for the class instance. Overloaded variants are provided to match the constructors used in the ancestor class (`TFileStream`).

`Create` ensures that resources are allocated for the internal buffer. By default, the buffer reserves 8 blocks (pages) with 4,096 bytes per block (page). `Create` calls `InitializeCache` to allocate resources needed for the internal buffer.

`Create` calls the inherited constructor using the parameter values passed to the method.

`AFileName` is the qualified path to the file where the content in the stream is stored.

`Mode` contains the file mode used for the file handle in the ancestor class. It uses the following file mode constant values:

fmCreateCreates the file if it does not already exist.

fmOpenReadOpens the file for read-only access.

fmOpenWriteOpens the file for write-only access.

fmOpenReadWriteOpens the file for read / write access.

The file mode constants (**except for fmCreate**) can be **OR**'d with sharing mode constants, including:

fmShareCompatOpens the file in DOS-compatibility sharing mode.

fmShareExclusiveLocks the file for exclusive use.

fmShareDenyWriteLocks the file and denies write access to other processes.

fmShareDenyReadLocks the file and denies read access to other processes.

fmShareDenyNoneDoes not lock the file.

Rights contains the value used as the file mode on UNIX-like file systems. It contains a value representing the read, write, execute, sticky-bit, setgid, and setuid flags used on the platform. It is ignored for all other platforms, and is significant only when using **fmCreate** in **Mode**.

The **Size** for the internal buffer is updated to use the length of the file stream.

See also: **TBufferedFileStream.InitializeCache** (206), **TBufferedFileStream.Size** (203), **TFileStream.Create** (??), **TFileStream.Size** (??)

7.4.4 TBufferedFileStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: **Destroy** is the overridden destructor for the class instance. **Destroy** ensures that memory allocated to pages in the internal buffer is freed, and that buffer pages are released. **Destroy** calls the inherited destructor prior to exit.

See also: **TFileStream.Destroy** (??)

7.4.5 TBufferedFileStream.Seek

Synopsis: Moves the position in the buffer relative to the specified origin.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override
; Overload
function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64
; Override; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: **Seek** is a method used to change the current position in the buffered file stream by the number of bytes in **Offset** relative to the given **Origin**. Overloaded variants are provided which use **LongInt** or **Int64** types for the **Offset** parameter, and **Word** or **TSeekOrigin** types for the **Origin** parameter.

Seek is overridden to use the size and position in the internal buffer when positioning the buffered file stream.

The return value contains the actual number of bytes the position was moved relative to the **Origin**. As with **TStream**, the return value may contain -1 if the stream position was not moved.

See also: **THandleStream.Seek** (??), **TStream.Seek** (??)

7.4.6 TBufferedFileStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads the specified number of bytes into the `Buffer` parameter.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` is used to read the specified number of bytes in `Count`, and store the values in the `Buffer` parameter. `Read` is overridden to use the internal buffer for the operation instead directly accessing of the underlying file stream. It locates the page in the buffer with the content for the stream position.

`Read` maintains the pages in the buffer as needed for the request. This includes writing and recycling older buffer pages, locating the position in the file stream for a new buffer page, and loading the content for a buffer page from the file stream.

`Buffer` is updated with the values copied from the internal buffer. The return value contains the actual number of bytes read from the internal buffer, or 0 when no content is available in the buffer at the current stream position.

Use `Seek` or `Position` to set the stream position (when needed) prior to calling `Read`.

Errors: `Read` raises an `EStreamError` exception with the message in `SErrCacheUnexpectedPageDiscard` when a page has been unexpectedly discarded in the buffer.

See also: `THandleStream.Read` (??), `THandleStream.Seek` (??), `TStream.Read` (??), `TStream.Seek` (??), `TStream.Position` (??), `EStreamError` (??)

7.4.7 TBufferedFileStream.Write

Synopsis: Writes the specified number of bytes in `Buffer` to the internal page buffer(s).

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` is a `LongInt` function used to write byte values in `Buffer` to the current position in the buffered file stream. `Count` contains the number of bytes requested in the write operation.

`Write` is overridden to use the internal buffer in the operation instead of the underlying file stream. It locates the page in the buffer with the content for the buffered stream position.

`Write` maintains the pages in the buffer as needed for the request. This includes recycling older buffer pages, reading values from the stream for a new buffer page, and storing the new content in the internal buffer.

`Buffer` contains the values stored in the internal buffer in the request. The return value contains the actual number of bytes written, or 0 if the write could not be performed.

Use `Seek` or `Position` to set the buffer position (when needed) prior to calling `Write`.

Errors: `Write` raises an `EStreamError` exception with the message in `SErrCacheUnexpectedPageDiscard` when a page has been unexpectedly discarded in the buffer.

See also: `TBufferedFileStream.Seek` (204), `TBufferedFileStream.GetPosition` (203), `TBufferedFileStream.SetPosition` (203), `THandleStream.Write` (??), `TStream.Write` (??), `TStream.Position` (??), `EStreamError` (??)

7.4.8 TBufferedFileStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flushes modified pages in the buffer to the file stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Flush` is used to store modified pages in the internal buffer to the file stream. `Flush` examines the pages in the buffer to determine if any have been modified using `Write`.

When a "dirty" page is found, the inherited `Seek` method is called to position the stream to the location for the modified page. The inherited `Write` method is called to store content in the modified page buffer to the stream, and the modified flag for the buffer page is reset.

Buffer pages which not been modified are not (re-)written to the file stream.

Errors: `Flush` raises an `EStreamError` exception with the message in `SErrCacheUnableToWriteExpected` when the number of bytes written for a page does not match the allocated size for the page.

See also: `TBufferedFileStream.Write` (205), `THandleStream.Seek` (??), `THandleStream.Write` (??), `TStream.Seek` (??), `TStream.Write` (??), `EStreamError` (??)

7.4.9 TBufferedFileStream.InitializeCache

Synopsis: Re-initializes the internal buffer for the buffered file stream.

Declaration: `procedure InitializeCache(const aCacheBlockSize: Integer;
const aCacheBlockCount: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Re-initializes the internal buffer to use the number of blocks (pages) in `aCacheBlockCount` where each block (page) has the size in `aCacheBlockSize`.

`InitializeCache` checks pages in the internal buffer to see if any have been modified, and writes them to the file stream when needed. Memory allocated to an existing buffer page is freed, and the page is discarded.

Values in `aCacheBlockCount` and `aCacheBlockSize` are stored internally, and the buffer size is updated to use the size from the file stream.

`InitializeCache` re-allocates and zero-fills memory used for each of the pages in the buffer prior to exiting from the method.

`InitializeCache` is called from the `Create` method to allocate buffer pages using the default count and size for the class.

Use `Flush` to write modified values in page buffers to the file stream without re-initializing the internal buffer.

See also: `TBufferedFileStream.Flush` (206), `TBufferedFileStream.Create` (203)

7.5 TBufStream

7.5.1 Description

`TBufStream` is the common ancestor for the `TReadBufStream` (208) and `TWriteBufStream` (209) streams. It completely handles the buffer memory management and position management. An instance of `TBufStream` should never be created directly. It also keeps the instance of the source stream.

See also: `TReadBufStream` (208), `TWriteBufStream` (209)

7.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
207	Create	Create a new <code>TBufStream</code> instance.
207	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TBufStream</code> instance.

7.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
207	Buffer	r	The current buffer.
208	BufferPos	r	Current buffer position.
208	BufferSize	r	Amount of data in the buffer.
208	Capacity	rw	Current buffer capacity.

7.5.4 TBufStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TBufStream` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ASource: TStream; ACapacity: Integer)`
`constructor Create(ASource: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TBufStream` instance. A buffer of size `ACapacity` is allocated, and the `ASource` source (or destination) stream is stored. If no capacity is specified, then `DefaultBufferCapacity` ([202](#)) is used as the capacity.

An instance of `TBufStream` should never be instantiated directly. Instead, an instance of `TReadBufStream` ([208](#)) or `TWriteBufStream` ([209](#)) should be created.

Errors: If not enough memory is available for the buffer, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TBufStream.Destroy` ([207](#)), `TReadBufStream` ([208](#)), `TWriteBufStream` ([209](#))

7.5.5 TBufStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TBufStream` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the instance of `TBufStream`. It flushes the buffer, deallocates it, and then destroys the `TBufStream` instance.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` ([207](#)), `TReadBufStream` ([208](#)), `TWriteBufStream` ([209](#))

7.5.6 TBufStream.Buffer

Synopsis: The current buffer.

Declaration: `Property Buffer : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Buffer` is a pointer to the actual buffer in use.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` ([207](#)), `TBufStream.Capacity` ([208](#)), `TBufStream.BufferSize` ([208](#))

7.5.7 TBufStream.Capacity

Synopsis: Current buffer capacity.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Capacity` is the amount of memory the buffer occupies. To change the buffer size, the capacity can be set. Note that the capacity cannot be set to a value that is less than the current buffer size, i.e. the current amount of data in the buffer.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (207), `TBufStream.Buffer` (207), `TBufStream.BufferSize` (208), `TBufStream.BufferPos` (208)

7.5.8 TBufStream.BufferPos

Synopsis: Current buffer position.

Declaration: `Property BufferPos : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BufPos` is the current stream position in the buffer. Depending on whether the stream is used for reading or writing, data will be read from this position, or will be written at this position in the buffer.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (207), `TBufStream.Buffer` (207), `TBufStream.BufferSize` (208), `TBufStream.Capacity` (208)

7.5.9 TBufStream.BufferSize

Synopsis: Amount of data in the buffer.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BufferSize` is the actual amount of data in the buffer. This is always less than or equal to the `Capacity` (208).

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (207), `TBufStream.Buffer` (207), `TBufStream.BufferPos` (208), `TBufStream.Capacity` (208)

7.6 TReadBufStream

7.6.1 Description

`TReadBufStream` is a read-only buffered stream. It implements the needed methods to read data from the buffer and fill the buffer with additional data when needed.

The stream provides limited forward-seek possibilities.

See also: `TBufStream` (206), `TWriteBufStream` (209)

7.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
209	Read	Reads data from the stream.
209	Seek	Set location in the buffer.

7.6.3 TReadBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set location in the buffer.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the location in the buffer. Currently, only a forward seek is allowed. It is emulated by reading and discarding data. For an explanation of the parameters, see `TStream.Seek` "(?)".

The seek method needs enhancement to enable it to do a full-featured seek. This may be implemented in a future release of Free Pascal.

Errors: In case an illegal seek operation is attempted, an exception is raised.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Seek` ([210](#)), `TReadBufStream.Read` ([209](#))

7.6.4 TReadBufStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var ABuffer; ACount: LongInt) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads at most `ACount` bytes from the stream and places them in `Buffer`. The number of actually read bytes is returned.

`TReadBufStream` first reads whatever data is still available in the buffer, and then refills the buffer, after which it continues to read data from the buffer. This is repeated until `ACount` bytes are read, or no more data is available.

See also: `TReadBufStream.Seek` ([209](#)), `TReadBufStream.Read` ([209](#))

7.7 TWriteBufStream

7.7.1 Description

`TWriteBufStream` is a write-only buffered stream. It implements the needed methods to write data to the buffer and flush the buffer (i.e., write its contents to the source stream) when needed.

See also: `TBufStream` ([206](#)), `TReadBufStream` ([208](#))

7.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
210	Destroy	Remove the <code>TWriteBufStream</code> instance from memory.
210	Seek	Set stream position.
210	Write	Write data to the stream.

7.7.3 TWriteBufStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TWriteBufStream instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes the buffer and then calls the inherited `Destroy` (207).

Errors: If an error occurs during flushing of the buffer, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Create` (207), `TBufStream.Destroy` (207)

7.7.4 TWriteBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` always raises an `EStreamError` exception, except when the seek operation would not alter the current position.

A later implementation may perform a proper seek operation by flushing the buffer and doing a seek on the source stream.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Write` (210), `TReadBufStream.Seek` (209)

7.7.5 TWriteBufStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const ABuffer; ACount: LongInt) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` writes at most `ACount` bytes from `ABuffer` to the stream. The data is written to the internal buffer first. As soon as the internal buffer is full, it is flushed to the destination stream, and the internal buffer is filled again. This process continues till all data is written (or an error occurs).

Errors: An exception may occur if the destination stream has problems writing.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Seek` (210)

Chapter 8

Reference for unit 'CacheCls'

8.1 Used units

Table 8.1: Used units by unit 'CacheCls'

Name	Page
System	??
sysutils	??

8.2 Overview

The `CacheCls` unit implements a caching class: similar to a hash class, it can be used to cache data, associated with string values (keys). The class is called `TCache`

8.3 Constants, types and variables

8.3.1 Resource strings

```
SInvalidIndex = 'Invalid index %i'
```

Message shown when an invalid index is passed.

8.3.2 Types

```
PCacheSlot = ^TCacheSlot
```

Pointer to `TCacheSlot` (212) record.

```
PCacheSlotArray = ^TCacheSlotArray
```

Pointer to `TCacheSlotArray` (212) array.

```
TCacheSlotArray = Array[0..MaxInt div SizeOf(TCacheSlot)-1] of record
```

```

Prev : PCacheSlot;
Next : PCacheSlot;
Data : Pointer;
Index
: Integer;
end

```

TCacheSlotArray is an array of TCacheSlot items. Do not use TCacheSlotArray directly, instead, use PCacheSlotArray (211) and allocate memory dynamically.

```

TOnFreeSlot = procedure (ACache: TCache; SlotIndex: Integer) of
  object

```

TOnFreeSlot is a callback prototype used when not enough slots are free, and a slot must be freed.

```

TOnIsDataEqual = function (ACache: TCache; AData1: Pointer;
  AData2: Pointer) : Boolean of object

```

TOnIsDataEqual is a callback prototype; It is used by the TCache.Add (213) call to determine whether the item to be added is a new item or not. The function returns True if the 2 data pointers AData1 and AData2 should be considered equal, or False when they are not.

For most purposes, comparing the pointers will be enough, but if the pointers are ansistrings, then the contents should be compared.

8.4 TCacheSlot

```

TCacheSlot = record
  Prev : PCacheSlot;
  Next : PCacheSlot;
  Data
  : Pointer;
  Index : Integer;
end

```

TCacheSlot is internally used by the TCache (212) class. It represents 1 element in the linked list.

8.5 ECacheError

8.5.1 Description

Exception class used in the cachecls unit.

8.6 TCache

8.6.1 Description

TCache implements a cache class: it is a list-like class, but which uses a counting mechanism, and keeps a Most-Recent-Used list; this list represents the 'cache'. The list is internally kept as a doubly-linked list.

The Data (215) property offers indexed access to the array of items. When accessing the array through this property, the MRUSlot (215) property is updated.

8.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
213	Add	Add a data element to the list.
214	AddNew	Add a new item to the list.
213	Create	Create a new cache class.
213	Destroy	Free the TCache class from memory.
214	FindSlot	Find data pointer in the list.
214	IndexOf	Return index of a data pointer in the list.
215	Remove	Remove a data item from the list.

8.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
215	Data	rw	Indexed access to data items.
216	LRUSlot	r	Last used item.
215	MRUSlot	rw	Most recent item slot.
217	OnFreeSlot	rw	Event called when a slot is freed.
216	OnIsDataEqual	rw	Event to compare 2 items.
216	SlotCount	rw	Number of slots in the list.
216	Slots	r	Indexed array to the slots.

8.6.4 TCache.Create

Synopsis: Create a new cache class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ASlotCount: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TCache`. It allocates room for `ASlotCount` entries in the list. The number of slots can be increased later.

See also: `TCache.SlotCount` ([216](#))

8.6.5 TCache.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TCache class from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the array for the elements, and calls the inherited `Destroy`. The elements in the array are not freed by this action.

See also: `TCache.Create` ([213](#))

8.6.6 TCache.Add

Synopsis: Add a data element to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Add checks whether `AData` is already in the list. If so, the item is added to the top of the MRU list. If the item is not yet in the list, then the item is added to the list and placed at the top of the MRU list using the `AddNew` (214) call.

The function returns the index at which the item was added.

If the maximum number of slots is reached, and a new item is being added, the least used item is dropped from the list.

See also: `TCache.AddNew` (214), `TCache.FindSlot` (214), `TCache.IndexOf` (214), `TCache.Data` (215), `TCache.MRUSlot` (215)

8.6.7 TCache.AddNew

Synopsis: Add a new item to the list.

Declaration: `function AddNew(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddNew` adds a new item to the list: in difference with the `Add` (213) call, no checking is performed to see whether the item is already in the list.

The function returns the index at which the item was added.

If the maximum number of slots is reached, and a new item is being added, the least used item is dropped from the list.

See also: `TCache.Add` (213), `TCache.FindSlot` (214), `TCache.IndexOf` (214), `TCache.Data` (215), `TCache.MRUSlot` (215)

8.6.8 TCache.FindSlot

Synopsis: Find data pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function FindSlot(AData: Pointer) : PCacheSlot`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindSlot` checks all items in the list, and returns the slot which contains a data pointer that matches the pointer `AData`.

If no item with data pointer that matches `AData` is found, `Nil` is returned.

For this function to work correctly, the `OnIsDataEqual` (216) event must be set.

Errors: If `OnIsDataEqual` is not set, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCache.IndexOf` (214), `TCache.Add` (213), `TCache.OnIsDataEqual` (216)

8.6.9 TCache.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of a data pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOF` searches in the list for a slot with data pointer that matches `AData` and returns the index of the slot.

If no item with data pointer that matches `AData` is found, `-1` is returned.

For this function to work correctly, the `OnIsDataEqual` (216) event must be set.

Errors: If `OnIsDataEqual` is not set, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (214), `TCache.Add` (213), `TCache.OnIsDataEqual` (216)

8.6.10 TCache.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a data item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(AData: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` searches the slot which matches `AData` and if it is found, sets the data pointer to `Nil`, thus effectively removing the pointer from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (214)

8.6.11 TCache.Data

Synopsis: Indexed access to data items.

Declaration: `Property Data[SlotIndex: Integer]: Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` offers index-based access to the data pointers in the cache. By accessing an item in the list in this manner, the item is moved to the front of the MRU list, i.e. `MRUSlot` (215) will point to the accessed item. The access is both read and write.

The index is zero-based and can maximally be `SlotCount-1` (216). Providing an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: `TCache.MRUSlot` (215)

8.6.12 TCache.MRUSlot

Synopsis: Most recent item slot.

Declaration: `Property MRUSlot : PCacheSlot`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MRUSlot` points to the most recent used slot. The most recent used slot is updated when the list is accessed through the `Data` (215) property, or when an item is added to the list with `Add` (213) or `AddNew` (214)

See also: `TCache.Add` (213), `TCache.AddNew` (214), `TCache.Data` (215), `TCache.LRUSlot` (216)

8.6.13 TCache.LRUSlot

Synopsis: Last used item.

Declaration: `Property LRUSlot : PCacheSlot`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `LRUSlot` points to the least recent used slot. It is the last item in the chain of slots.

See also: `TCache.Add` (213), `TCache.AddNew` (214), `TCache.Data` (215), `TCache.MRUSlot` (215)

8.6.14 TCache.SlotCount

Synopsis: Number of slots in the list.

Declaration: `Property SlotCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `SlotCount` is the number of slots in the list. Its initial value is set when the `TCache` instance is created, but this can be changed at any time. If items are added to the list and the list is full, then the number of slots is not increased, but the least used item is dropped from the list. In that case `OnFreeSlot` (217) is called.

See also: `TCache.Create` (213), `TCache.Data` (215), `TCache.Slots` (216)

8.6.15 TCache.Slots

Synopsis: Indexed array to the slots.

Declaration: `Property Slots[SlotIndex: Integer]: PCacheSlot`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Slots` provides index-based access to the `TCacheSlot` records in the list. Accessing the records directly does not change their position in the MRU list.

The index is zero-based and can maximally be `SlotCount-1` (216). Providing an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: `TCache.Data` (215), `TCache.SlotCount` (216)

8.6.16 TCache.OnIsDataEqual

Synopsis: Event to compare 2 items.

Declaration: `Property OnIsDataEqual : TOnIsDataEqual`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `OnIsDataEqual` is used by `FindSlot` (214) and `IndexOf` (214) to compare items when looking for a particular item. These functions are called by the `Add` (213) method. Failing to set this event will result in an exception. The function should return `True` if the 2 data pointers should be considered equal.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (214), `TCache.IndexOf` (214), `TCache.Add` (213)

8.6.17 TCache.OnFreeSlot

Synopsis: Event called when a slot is freed.

Declaration: `Property OnFreeSlot : TOnFreeSlot`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnFreeSlot` is called when an item needs to be freed, i.e. when a new item is added to a full list, and the least recent used item needs to be dropped from the list.

The cache class instance and the index of the item to be removed are passed to the callback.

See also: `TCache.Add` (213), `TCache.AddNew` (214), `TCache.SlotCount` (216)

Chapter 9

Reference for unit 'Contrns'

9.1 Used units

Table 9.1: Used units by unit 'Contrns'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

9.2 Overview

The `contrns` unit implements various general-purpose classes:

Object lists lists that manage objects instead of pointers, and which automatically dispose of the objects.

Component lists lists that manage components instead of pointers, and which automatically dispose the components.

Class lists lists that manage class pointers instead of pointers.

Stacks Stack classes to push/pop pointers or objects

Queues Classes to manage a FIFO list of pointers or objects

Hash lists General-purpose Hash lists.

9.3 Constants, types and variables

9.3.1 Constants

`MaxHashListSize = Maxint div 16`

`MaxHashListSize` is the maximum number of elements a hash list can contain.

MaxHashStrSize = Maxint

MaxHashStrSize is the maximum amount of data for the key string values. The key strings are kept in a continuous memory area. This constant determines the maximum size of this memory area.

MaxHashTableSize = Maxint div 4

MaxHashTableSize is the maximum number of elements in the hash.

MaxItemsPerHash = 3

MaxItemsPerHash is the threshold above which the hash is expanded. If the number of elements in a hash bucket becomes larger than this value, the hash size is increased.

9.3.2 Types

PBucket = ^TBucket

Pointer to TBucket (223)" type.

PHashItem = ^THashItem

PHashItem is a pointer type, pointing to the THashItem (223) record.

PHashItemList = ^THashItemList

PHashItemList is a pointer to the THashItemList (221). It's used in the TFPHashList (240) as a pointer to the memory area containing the hash item records.

PHashTable = ^THashTable

PHashTable is a pointer to the THashTable (221). It's used in the TFPHashList (240) as a pointer to the memory area containing the hash values.

```
TBucketArray = Array of record
  Count : Integer;
  Items : TBucketItemArray
;
end
```

Array of TBucket (223) records.

```
TBucketItemArray = Array of record
  Item : Pointer;
  Data : Pointer
;
end
```

Array of TBucketItem records.

TBucketListSizes = (b12,b14,b18,b116,b132,b164,b1128,b1256)

Table 9.2: Enumeration values for type TBucketListSizes

Value	Explanation
bl128	List with 128 buckets.
bl16	List with 16 buckets.
bl2	List with 2 buckets.
bl256	List with 256 buckets.
bl32	List with 32 buckets.
bl4	List with 4 buckets.
bl64	List with 64 buckets.
bl8	List with 8 buckets.

TBucketListSizes is used to set the bucket list size: It specified the number of buckets created by TBucketList (224).

```
TBucketProc = procedure(AInfo: Pointer; AItem: Pointer; AData: Pointer
;
                        out AContinue: Boolean)
```

TBucketProc is the prototype for the TCustomBucketList.Foreach (232) call. It is the plain procedural form. The Continue parameter can be set to False to indicate that the Foreach call should stop the iteration.

For a procedure of object (a method) callback, see the TBucketProcObject (220) prototype.

```
TBucketProcObject = procedure(AItem: Pointer; AData: Pointer;
    out AContinue: Boolean) of object
```

TBucketProcObject is the prototype for the TCustomBucketList.Foreach (232) call. It is the method (procedure of object) form. The Continue parameter can be set to False to indicate that the Foreach call should stop the iteration.

For a plain procedural callback, see the TBucketProc (220) prototype.

```
TDataIteratorCallBack = procedure(Item: Pointer; const Key: string
;
                                var Continue: Boolean)
```

TDataIteratorCallBack is a callback prototype for the TFPDataHashTable.Iterate (239) static CallBack. It is called for each data pointer in the hash list, passing the key (key) and data pointer (item) for each item in the list. If Continue is set to false, the iteration stops.

```
TDataIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: Pointer; const Key: string;
    var Continue: Boolean) of
    object
```

TDataIteratorMethod is a callback prototype for the TFPDataHashTable.Iterate (239) method. It is called for each data pointer in the hash list, passing the key (key) and data pointer (item) for each item in the list. If Continue is set to false, the iteration stops.

```
THashFunction = function(const S: string; const TableSize: LongWord
)
                    : LongWord
```

THashFunction is the prototype for a hash calculation function. It should calculate a hash of string S, where the hash table size is TableSize. The return value should be the hash value.

```
THashItemList = Array[0..MaxHashListSize-1] of record
  HashValue
    : LongWord;
  StrIndex : Integer;
  NextIndex : Integer;
  Data
    : Pointer;
end
```

THashItemList is an array type, primarily used to be able to define the PHashItemList (219) type. It's used in the TFPHashList (240) class.

```
THashTable = Array[0..MaxHashTableSize-1] of Integer
```

THashTable defines an array of integers, used to hold hash values. It's mainly used to define the PHashTable (219) class.

```
THTCustomNodeClass = type class(TObject)
private
  FKey : string
    = type string;
public
  constructor CreateWith(const AString: string
    );
  function HasKey(const AKey: string) : Boolean;
  property Key
    : string;
end
```

THTCustomNodeClass was used by TFPCustomHashTable (233) to decide which class should be created for elements in the list.

```
THTNode = type class(THTCustomNode)
private
  FData : pointer;
public
  property Data : pointer;
end
```

THTNode is provided for backwards compatibility.

```
TIteratorMethod = type procedure(Item: Pointer; const Key: string
  ; var Continue: Boolean)
  of object
```

TIteratorMethod is used in an internal TFPDataHashTable (239) method.

```
TObjectIteratorCallback = procedure(Item: TObject; const Key: string
  ;
  var Continue: Boolean)
```

`TObjectIteratorCallback` is the iterator callback prototype. It is used to iterate over all items in the hash table, and is called with each key value (`Key`) and associated object (`Item`). If `Continue` is set to `false`, the iteration stops.

```
TObjectIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: TObject; const Key: string
;
                                var Continue: Boolean) of
    object
```

`TObjectIteratorMethod` is the iterator callback prototype. It is used to iterate over all items in the hash table, and is called with each key value (`Key`) and associated object (`Item`). If `Continue` is set to `false`, the iteration stops.

```
TObjectListCallback = procedure(data: TObject; arg: pointer) of
    object
```

`TObjectListCallback` is used as the prototype for the `TFPObjectList.ForEachCall` (265) link call when a method should be called. The `Data` argument will contain each of the objects in the list in turn, and the `Data` argument will contain the data passed to the `ForEachCall` call.

```
TObjectListStaticCallback = procedure(data: TObject; arg: pointer
)
```

`TObjectListCallback` is used as the prototype for the `TFPObjectList.ForEachCall` (265) link call when a plain procedure should be called. The `Data` argument will contain each of the objects in the list in turn, and the `Data` argument will contain the data passed to the `ForEachCall` call.

```
TStringIteratorCallback = procedure(Item: string; const Key: string
;
                                var Continue: Boolean)
```

`TStringIteratorCallback` is the callback prototype for the `TFPStringHashTable` (267) method. It is called for each element in the hash table, with the string. If `Continue` is set to `False`, the iteration stops.

```
TStringIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: string; const Key: string
;
                                var Continue: Boolean) of
    object
```

`TStringIteratorMethod` is the callback prototype for the `TFPStringHashTable` (267) method. It is called for each element in the hash table, with the string. If `Continue` is set to `False`, the iteration stops.

9.4 Procedures and functions

9.4.1 RSHash

Synopsis: Standard hash value calculating function.

Declaration: `function RSHash(const S: string; const TableSize: LongWord) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: RSHash is the standard hash calculating function used in the TFPCustomHashTable (233) hash class. It's Robert Sedgwick's "Algorithms in C" hash function.

Errors: None.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable (233)

9.5 TBucket

```
TBucket = record
  Count : Integer;
  Items : TBucketItemArray;
end
```

TBucket describes 1 bucket in the TCustomBucketList (230) class. It is a container for TBucketItem (223) records. It should never be used directly.

9.6 TBucketItem

```
TBucketItem = record
  Item : Pointer;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

TBucketItem is a record used for internal use in TCustomBucketList (230). It should not be necessary to use it directly.

9.7 THashItem

```
THashItem = record
  HashValue : LongWord;
  StrIndex : Integer;
  NextIndex : Integer;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

THashItem is used internally in the hash list. It should never be used directly.

9.8 EDuplicate

9.8.1 Description

Exception raised when a key is stored twice in a hash table.

9.9 EKeyNotFound

9.9.1 Description

Exception raised when a key is not found.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Delete` ([235](#))

9.10 TBucketList

9.10.1 Description

`TBucketList` is a descendent of `TCustomBucketList` which allows to specify a bucket count which is a multiple of 2, up to 256 buckets. The size is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed in the lifetime of the bucket list instance.

The buckets for an item is determined by looking at the last bits of the item pointer: For 2 buckets, the last bit is examined, for 4 buckets, the last 2 bits are taken and so on. The algorithm takes into account the average granularity (4) of heap pointers.

See also: `TCustomBucketList` ([230](#))

9.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
224	Create	Create a new <code>TBucketList</code> instance.

9.10.3 TBucketList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TBucketList` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ABuckets: TBucketListSizes)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new bucketlist instance with a number of buckets determined by `ABuckets`. After creation, the number of buckets can no longer be changed.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to create the instance, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TBucketListSizes` ([220](#))

9.11 TClassList

9.11.1 Description

`TClassList` is a `Tlist` (??) descendent which stores class references instead of pointers. It introduces no new behaviour other than ensuring all stored pointers are class pointers.

The `OwnsObjects` property as found in `TComponentList` and `TObjectList` is not implemented as there are no actual instances.

See also: `#rtl.classes.tlist` (??), `TComponentList` ([227](#)), `TObjectList` ([272](#))

9.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
225	Add	Add a new class pointer to the list.
225	Extract	Extract a class pointer from the list.
226	First	Returns the first non-nil class pointer.
226	IndexOf	Search for a class pointer in the list.
226	Insert	Insert a new class pointer in the list.
226	Last	Return last non- <code>Nil</code> class pointer.
225	Remove	Remove a class pointer from the list.

9.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
227	Items	rw	Index based access to class pointers.

9.11.4 TClassList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new class pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds `AClass` to the list, and returns the position at which it was added. It simply overrides the `TList` (??) behaviour, and introduces no new functionality.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TClassList.Extract` ([225](#)), `#rtl.classes.tlist.add` (??)

9.11.5 TClassList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a class pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TClass) : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` extracts a class pointer `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns the extracted class pointer, or `Nil` if the class pointer was not present in the list. It simply overrides the implementation in `TList` so it accepts a class pointer instead of a simple pointer. No new behaviour is introduced.

Errors: None.

See also: `TClassList.Remove` ([225](#)), `#rtl.classes.Tlist.Extract` (??)

9.11.6 TClassList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a class pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes a class pointer `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns the index of the removed class pointer, or `-1` if the class pointer was not present in the list. It simply overrides the implementation in `TList` so it accepts a class pointer instead of a simple pointer. No new behaviour is introduced.

Errors: None.

See also: `TClassList.Extract` (225), `#rtl.classes.Tlist.Remove` (??)

9.11.7 TClassList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for a class pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf (AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for `AClass` in the list, and returns its position if it was found, or `-1` if it was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.tlist.indexof` (??)

9.11.8 TClassList.First

Synopsis: Returns the first non-nil class pointer.

Declaration: `function First : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` class pointer in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned. `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TClassList.Last` (226)

9.11.9 TClassList.Last

Synopsis: Return last non-`Nil` class pointer.

Declaration: `function Last : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` class pointer in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TClassList.First` (226)

9.11.10 TClassList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new class pointer in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AClass: TClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a class pointer in the list at position `Index`. It simply overrides the parent implementation so it only accepts class pointers. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Insert (??)`, `TClassList.Add (225)`, `TClassList.Remove (225)`

9.11.11 TClassList.Items

Synopsis: Index based access to class pointers.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TClass; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides index-based access to the class pointers in the list. `TClassList` overrides the default `Items` implementation of `TList` so it returns class pointers instead of pointers.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Items (??)`, `#rtl.classes.TList.Count (??)`

9.12 TComponentList

9.12.1 Description

`TComponentList` is a `TObjectList (272)` descendent which has as the default array property `TComponents (??)` instead of objects. It overrides some methods so only components can be added.

In difference with `TObjectList (272)`, `TComponentList` removes any `TComponent` from the list if the `TComponent` instance was freed externally. It uses the `FreeNotification` mechanism for this.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList (??)`, `TFPObjectList (259)`, `TObjectList (272)`, `TClassList (224)`

9.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
228	<code>Add</code>	Add a component to the list.
228	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the instance.
228	<code>Extract</code>	Remove a component from the list without destroying it.
229	<code>First</code>	First non-nil instance in the list.
229	<code>IndexOf</code>	Search for an instance in the list.
230	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new component in the list.
229	<code>Last</code>	Last non-nil instance in the list.
228	<code>Remove</code>	Remove a component from the list, possibly destroying it.

9.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
230	<code>Items</code>	rw	Index-based access to the elements in the list.

9.12.4 TComponentList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` unhooks the free notification handler and then calls the inherited `destroy` to clean up the `TComponentList` instance.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList` (272), `#rtl.classes.TComponent` (??)

9.12.5 TComponentList.Add

Synopsis: Add a component to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` overrides the `Add` operation of it's ancestors, so it only accepts `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

The function returns the index at which the component was added.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Add` (273)

9.12.6 TComponentList.Extract

Synopsis: Remove a component from the list without destroying it.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes a component (`Item`) from the list, without destroying it. It overrides the implementation of `TObjectList` (272) so only `TComponent` descendents can be extracted. It introduces no new behaviour.

`Extract` returns the instance that was extracted, or `Nil` if no instance was found.

See also: `TComponentList.Remove` (228), `TObjectList.Extract` (273)

9.12.7 TComponentList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a component from the list, possibly destroying it.

Declaration: `function Remove(AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` removes `item` from the list, and if the list owns it's items, it also destroys it. It returns the index of the item that was removed, or -1 if no item was removed.

`Remove` simply overrides the implementation in `TObjectList` (272) so it only accepts `TComponent` descendents. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.Extract` ([228](#)), `TObjectList.Remove` ([274](#))

9.12.8 TComponentList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for an instance in the list and returns it's position in the list. The position is zero-based. If no instance is found, -1 is returned.

`IndexOf` just overrides the implementation of the parent class so it accepts only `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.IndexOf` ([274](#))

9.12.9 TComponentList.First

Synopsis: First non-nil instance in the list.

Declaration: `function First : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` overrides the implementation of it's ancestors to return the first non-nil instance of `TComponent` in the list. If no non-nil instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.Last` ([229](#)), `TObjectList.First` ([275](#))

9.12.10 TComponentList.Last

Synopsis: Last non-nil instance in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` overrides the implementation of it's ancestors to return the last non-nil instance of `TComponent` in the list. If no non-nil instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.First` ([229](#)), `TObjectList.Last` ([275](#))

9.12.11 TComponentList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new component in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a `TComponent` instance (`AComponent`) in the list at position `Index`. It simply overrides the parent implementation so it only accepts `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Insert` (275), `TComponentList.Add` (228), `TComponentList.Remove` (228)

9.12.12 TComponentList.Items

Synopsis: Index-based access to the elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TComponent; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides access to the components in the list using an index. It simply overrides the default property of the parent classes so it returns/accepts `TComponent` instances only. Note that the index is zero based.

See also: `TObjectList.Items` (276)

9.13 TCustomBucketList

9.13.1 Description

`TCustomBucketList` is an associative list using buckets for storage. It scales better than a regular `TList` (??) list class, especially when an item must be searched in the list.

Since the list associates a data pointer with each item pointer, it follows that each item pointer must be unique, and can be added to the list only once.

The `TCustomBucketList` class does not determine the number of buckets or the bucket hash mechanism, this must be done by descendent classes such as `TBucketList` (224). `TCustomBucketList` only takes care of storage and retrieval of items in the various buckets.

Because `TCustomBucketList` is an abstract class - it does not determine the number of buckets - one should never instantiate an instance of `TCustomBucketList`, but always use a descendent class such as `TBucketList` (230).

See also: `TBucketList` (224)

9.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
231	Add	Add an item to the list.
232	Assign	Assign one bucket list to another.
231	Clear	Clear the list.
231	Destroy	Frees the bucketlist from memory.
232	Exists	Check if an item exists in the list.
232	Find	Find an item in the list.
232	ForEach	Loop over all items.
233	Remove	Remove an item from the list.

9.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
233	Data	rw	Associative array for data pointers.

9.13.4 TCustomBucketList.Destroy

Synopsis: Frees the bucketlist from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees all storage for the buckets from memory. The items themselves are not freed from memory.

9.13.5 TCustomBucketList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the list. The items and their data themselves are not disposed of, this must be done separately. `Clear` only removes all references to the items from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Add` ([231](#))

9.13.6 TCustomBucketList.Add

Synopsis: Add an item to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AItem: Pointer; AData: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds `AItem` with it's associated `AData` to the list and returns `AData`.

Errors: If `AItem` is already in the list, an `EListError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Exists` ([232](#)), `TCustomBucketList.Clear` ([231](#))

9.13.7 TCustomBucketList.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one bucket list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign (AList: TCustomBucketList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` is implemented by `TCustomBucketList` to copy the contents of another bucket list to the bucket list. It clears the contents prior to the copy operation.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Add` ([231](#)), `TCustomBucketList.Clear` ([231](#))

9.13.8 TCustomBucketList.Exists

Synopsis: Check if an item exists in the list.

Declaration: `function Exists (AItem: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exists` searches the list and returns `True` if the `AItem` is already present in the list. If the item is not yet in the list, `False` is returned.

If the data pointer associated with `AItem` is also needed, then it is better to use `Find` ([232](#)).

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Find` ([232](#))

9.13.9 TCustomBucketList.Find

Synopsis: Find an item in the list.

Declaration: `function Find (AItem: Pointer; out AData: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches for `AItem` in the list and returns the data pointer associated with it in `AData` if the item was found. In that case the return value is `True`. If `AItem` is not found in the list, `False` is returned.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Exists` ([232](#))

9.13.10 TCustomBucketList.ForEach

Synopsis: Loop over all items.

Declaration: `function ForEach (AProc: TBucketProc; AInfo: Pointer) : Boolean`
`function ForEach (AProc: TBucketProcObject) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEach` loops over all items in the list and calls `AProc`, passing it in turn each item in the list.

`AProc` exists in 2 variants: one which is a simple procedure, and one which is a method. In the case of the simple procedure, the `AInfo` argument is passed as well in each call to `AProc`.

The loop stops when all items have been processed, or when the `AContinue` argument of `AProc` contains `False` on return.

The result of the function is `True` if all items were processed, or `False` if the loop was interrupted with a `AContinue` return of `False`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Data` ([233](#))

9.13.11 `TCustomBucketList.Remove`

Synopsis: Remove an item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AItem: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` removes `AItem` from the list, and returns the associated data pointer of the removed item. If the item was not in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `Find` ([232](#))

9.13.12 `TCustomBucketList.Data`

Synopsis: Associative array for data pointers.

Declaration: `Property Data[AItem: Pointer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Data` provides direct access to the `Data` pointers associated with the `AItem` pointers. If `AItem` is not in the list of pointers, an `EListError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Find` ([232](#)), `TCustomBucketList.Exists` ([232](#))

9.14 `TFPCustomHashTable`

9.14.1 Description

`TFPCustomHashTable` is a general-purpose hashing class. It can store string keys and pointers associated with these strings. The hash mechanism is configurable and can be optionally be specified when a new instance of the class is created; A default hash mechanism is implemented in `RSHash` ([222](#)).

The `TFPHashList` ([240](#)) can also be used when fast lookup of data based on some key is required. It is slightly faster than the `TFPCustomHashTable` implementation, but the keys are limited to a length of 256 characters, and it is not suitable for re-use: it is a one-time fill, many times search object. `TFPCustomHashTable` is slower, but handles re-use better.

See also: `THTCustomNode` ([268](#)), `TFPObjectList` ([259](#)), `RSHash` ([222](#))

9.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
235	<code>ChangeTableSize</code>	Change the table size of the hash table.
235	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the hash table.
234	<code>Create</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TFPCustomHashTable</code> instance using the default hash mechanism.
234	<code>CreateWith</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TFPCustomHashTable</code> instance with given algorithm and size.
235	<code>Delete</code>	Delete a key from the hash list.
235	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the hash table.
236	<code>Find</code>	Search for an item with a certain key value.
236	<code>IsEmpty</code>	Check if the hash table is empty.

9.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
238	<code>AVGChainLen</code>	r	Average chain length.
236	<code>Count</code>	r	Number of items in the hash table.
239	<code>Density</code>	r	Number of filled slots.
236	<code>HashFunction</code>	rw	Hash function currently in use.
237	<code>HashTable</code>	r	Hash table instance.
237	<code>HashTableSize</code>	rw	Size of the hash table.
237	<code>LoadFactor</code>	r	Fraction of count versus size.
238	<code>MaxChainLength</code>	r	Maximum chain length.
238	<code>NumberOfCollisions</code>	r	Number of extra items.
237	<code>VoidSlots</code>	r	Number of empty slots in the hash table.

9.14.4 `TFPCustomHashTable.Create`

Synopsis: Instantiate a new `TFPCustomHashTable` instance using the default hash mechanism.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPCustomHashTable` with hash size 196613 and hash algorithm `RSHash` ([222](#))

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `CreateWith` ([234](#))

9.14.5 `TFPCustomHashTable.CreateWith`

Synopsis: Instantiate a new `TFPCustomHashTable` instance with given algorithm and size.

Declaration: `constructor CreateWith(AHashTableSize: LongWord;
aHashFunc: THashFunction)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateWith` creates a new instance of `TFPCustomHashTable` with hash size `AHashTableSize` and hash calculating algorithm `aHashFunc`.

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Create` ([234](#))

9.14.6 TFPCustomHashTable.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the hash table.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes the hash table from memory. If any data was associated with the keys in the hash table, then this data is not freed. This must be done by the programmer.

See also: `Destroy` ([235](#)), `Create` ([234](#)), `CreateWith` ([234](#))

9.14.7 TFPCustomHashTable.ChangeTableSize

Synopsis: Change the table size of the hash table.

Declaration: `procedure ChangeTableSize(const ANewSize: LongWord); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ChangeTableSize` changes the size of the hash table: it recomputes the hash value for all of the keys in the table, so this is an expensive operation.

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `HashTableSize` ([237](#))

9.14.8 TFPCustomHashTable.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the hash table.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all keys and their associated data from the hash table. The data itself is not freed from memory, this should be done by the programmer.

Errors: None.

See also: `Destroy` ([235](#))

9.14.9 TFPCustomHashTable.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a key from the hash list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(const aKey: string); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` deletes all keys with value `AKey` from the hash table. It does not free the data associated with key. If `AKey` is not in the list, nothing is removed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Find` ([236](#))

9.14.10 TFPCustomHashTable.Find

Synopsis: Search for an item with a certain key value.

Declaration: `function Find(const aKey: string) : THTCustomNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches for the `THTCustomNode` (268) instance with key value equal to `Akey` and if it finds it, it returns the instance. If no matching value is found, `Nil` is returned.

Note that the instance returned by this function cannot be freed; If it should be removed from the hash table, the `Delete` (235) method should be used instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `Delete` (235)

9.14.11 TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty

Synopsis: Check if the hash table is empty.

Declaration: `function IsEmpty : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsEmpty` returns `True` if the hash table contains no elements, or `False` if there are still elements in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (238)

9.14.12 TFPCustomHashTable.HashFunction

Synopsis: Hash function currently in use.

Declaration: `Property HashFunction : THashFunction`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HashFunction` is the hash function currently in use to calculate hash values from keys. The property can be set, this simply calls `SetHashFunction`. Note that setting the hash function does **NOT** cause the hash value of all keys to be recomputed, so changing the value while there are still keys in the table is not a good idea.

See also: `HashTableSize` (237)

9.14.13 TFPCustomHashTable.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the hash table.

Declaration: `Property Count : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the number of items in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (238)

9.14.14 TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize

Synopsis: Size of the hash table.

Declaration: `Property HashTableSize : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HashTableSize` is the size of the hash table. It can be set, in which case it will be rounded to the nearest prime number suitable for RSHash.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (239)

9.14.15 TFPCustomHashTable.HashTable

Synopsis: Hash table instance.

Declaration: `Property HashTable : TFPObjectList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TFPCustomHashTable` is the internal list object (`TFPObjectList` (259)) used for the hash table. Each element in this table is again a `TFPObjectList` (259) instance or `Nil`.

9.14.16 TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots

Synopsis: Number of empty slots in the hash table.

Declaration: `Property VoidSlots : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `VoidSlots` is the number of empty slots in the hash table. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (239), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (238)

9.14.17 TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor

Synopsis: Fraction of count versus size.

Declaration: `Property LoadFactor : Double`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `LoadFactor` is the ratio of elements in the table versus table size. Ideally, this should be as small as possible.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (239), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (238)

9.14.18 `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen`

Synopsis: Average chain length.

Declaration: `Property AVGChainLen : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `AVGChainLen` is the average chain length, i.e. the ratio of elements in the table versus the number of filled slots. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (239), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (238)

9.14.19 `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength`

Synopsis: Maximum chain length.

Declaration: `Property MaxChainLength : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `MaxChainLength` is the length of the longest chain in the hash table. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (239), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (238)

9.14.20 `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions`

Synopsis: Number of extra items.

Declaration: `Property NumberOfCollisions : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `NumberOfCollisions` is the number of items which are not the first item in a chain. If this number is too big, the hash size may be too small.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (239)

9.14.21 TFPCustomHashTable.Density

Synopsis: Number of filled slots.

Declaration: `Property Density : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Density` is the number of filled slots in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (236), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (238), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (237), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (239)

9.15 TFpDataHashTable

9.15.1 Description

`TFpDataHashTable` is a `TFPCustomHashTable` (233) descendent which stores simple data pointers together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are objects, it's better to use `TFPObjectHashTable` (257), or for string data, `TFPStringHashTable` (266) is more suitable. The data pointers are exposed with their keys through the `Items` (240) property.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` (257), `TFPStringHashTable` (266), `Items` (240)

9.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
240	<code>Add</code>	Add a data pointer to the list.
239	<code>Iterate</code>	Iterate over the pointers in the hash table.

9.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
240	<code>Items</code>	<code>rw</code>	Key-based access to the items in the table.

9.15.4 TFpDataHashTable.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over the pointers in the hash table.

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TDataIteratorMethod) : Pointer; Virtual`
`function Iterate(aMethod: TDataIteratorCallBack) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the array, calling `aMethod` for each pointer, or until the method returns `False` in its `continue` parameter. It returns `Nil` if all elements were processed, or the pointer that was being processed when `aMethod` returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter. The `aMethod` callback can be a method of an object, or a normal, static procedure.

9.15.5 TFPDataHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a data pointer to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: string; AItem: pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Add adds a data pointer (AItem) to the list with key AKey.

Errors: If AKey already exists in the table, an exception is raised.

See also: TFPDataHashTable.Items ([240](#))

9.15.6 TFPDataHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key-based access to the items in the table.

Declaration: `Property Items[index: string]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: Items provides access to the items in the hash table using their key: the array index Index is the key. A key which is not present will result in an Nil pointer.

See also: TFPStringHashTable.Add ([267](#))

9.16 TFPHashList

9.16.1 Description

TFPHashList implements a fast hash class. The class is built for speed, therefore the key values can be shortstrings only, and the data can only be non-nil pointers.

if a base class for an own hash class is wanted, the TFPCustomHashTable ([233](#)) class can be used. If a hash class for objects is needed instead of pointers, the TFPHashObjectList ([250](#)) class can be used.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable ([233](#)), TFPHashObjectList ([250](#)), TFPDataHashTable ([239](#)), TFPStringHashTable ([266](#))

9.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
242	Add	Add a new key/data pair to the list.
242	Clear	Clear the list.
241	Create	Create a new instance of the hashlist.
243	Delete	Delete an item from the list.
241	Destroy	Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap.
243	Error	Raise an error.
243	Expand	Expand the list.
243	Extract	Extract a pointer from the list.
244	Find	Find data associated with key.
244	FindIndexOf	Return index of named item.
244	FindWithHash	Find first element with given name and hash value.
246	ForEachCall	Call a procedure for each element in the list.
243	GetNextCollision	Get next collision number.
242	HashOfIndex	Return the hash value of an item by index.
244	IndexOf	Return the index of the data pointer.
242	NameOfIndex	Returns the key name of an item by index.
245	Pack	Remove nil pointers from the list.
245	Remove	Remove first instance of a pointer.
245	Rename	Rename a key.
245	ShowStatistics	Return some statistics for the list.

9.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
246	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list.
246	Count	rw	Current number of elements in the list.
246	Items	rw	Indexed array with pointers.
247	List	r	Low-level hash list.
247	Strs	r	Low-level memory area with strings.

9.16.4 TFPHashList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the hashlist.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPHashList` on the heap and sets the hash capacity to 1.

See also: `TFPHashList.Destroy` ([241](#))

9.16.5 TFPHashList.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the memory structures maintained by the hashlist and removes the `TFPHashList` instance from the heap.

`Destroy` should not be called directly, it's better to use `Free` or `FreeAndNil` instead.

See also: `TFPHashList.Create` ([241](#)), `TFPHashList.Clear` ([242](#))

9.16.6 TFPHashList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new key/data pair to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: shortstring; Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new data pointer (`Item`) with key `AName` to the list. It returns the position of the item in the list.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to hold the key and data, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.Extract` ([243](#)), `TFPHashList.Remove` ([245](#)), `TFPHashList.Delete` ([243](#))

9.16.7 TFPHashList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` removes all items from the list. It does not free the data items themselves. It frees all memory needed to contain the items.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPHashList.Extract` ([243](#)), `TFPHashList.Remove` ([245](#)), `TFPHashList.Delete` ([243](#)), `TFPHashList.Add` ([242](#))

9.16.8 TFPHashList.NameOfIndex

Synopsis: Returns the key name of an item by index.

Declaration: `function NameOfIndex(Index: Integer) : ShortString`

Visibility: public

Description: `NameOfIndex` returns the key name of the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` ([242](#)), `TFPHashList.Find` ([244](#)), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` ([244](#)), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` ([244](#))

9.16.9 TFPHashList.HashOfIndex

Synopsis: Return the hash value of an item by index.

Declaration: `function HashOfIndex(Index: Integer) : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `HashOfIndex` returns the hash value of the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` ([242](#)), `TFPHashList.Find` ([244](#)), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` ([244](#)), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` ([244](#))

9.16.10 TFPHashList.GetNextCollision

Synopsis: Get next collision number.

Declaration: `function GetNextCollision(Index: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNextCollision` returns the next collision in hash item `Index`. This is the count of items with the same hash.means that the next it

9.16.11 TFPHashList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the item at position `Index`. The data to which it points is not freed from memory.

Errors: `TFPHashList.Extract` (243)`TFPHashList.Remove` (245)`TFPHashList.Add` (242)

9.16.12 TFPHashList.Error

Synopsis: Raise an error.

Declaration: `class procedure Error(const Msg: string; Data: PtrInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Error` raises an `EListError` exception, with message `Msg`. The `Data` pointer is used to format the message.

9.16.13 TFPHashList.Expand

Synopsis: Expand the list.

Declaration: `function Expand : TFPHashList`

Visibility: public

Description: `Expand` enlarges the capacity of the list if the maximum capacity was reached. It returns itself.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.Clear` (242)

9.16.14 TFPHashList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(item: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the data item from the list, if it is in the list. It returns the pointer if it was removed from the list, `Nil` otherwise.

`Extract` does a linear search, and is not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashList.Delete` (243), `TFPHashList.Remove` (245), `TFPHashList.Clear` (242)

9.16.15 TFPHashList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of the data pointer.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of the first occurrence of pointer `Item`. If the item is not in the list, -1 is returned.

The performed search is linear, and not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (242), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (242), `TFPHashList.Find` (244), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (244), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (244)

9.16.16 TFPHashList.Find

Synopsis: Find data associated with key.

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: shortstring) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches (using the hash) for the data item associated with item `AName` and returns the data pointer associated with it. If the item is not found, `Nil` is returned. It uses the hash value of the key to perform the search.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (242), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (242), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` (244), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (244), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (244)

9.16.17 TFPHashList.FindIndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of named item.

Declaration: `function FindIndexOf(const AName: shortstring) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexOf` returns the index of the key `AName`, or -1 if the key does not exist in the list. It uses the hash value to search for the key. Note that `Nil` data pointers will result in -1 as well.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (242), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (242), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` (244), `TFPHashList.Find` (244), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (244)

9.16.18 TFPHashList.FindWithHash

Synopsis: Find first element with given name and hash value.

Declaration: `function FindWithHash(const AName: shortstring; AHash: LongWord)
: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindWithHash` searches for the item with key `AName`. It uses the provided hash value `AHash` to perform the search. If the item exists, the data pointer is returned, if not, the result is `Nil`.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (242), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (242), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` (244), `TFPHashList.Find` (244), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (244)

9.16.19 TFPHashList.Rename

Synopsis: Rename a key.

Declaration: `function Rename(const AOldName: shortstring;
const ANewName: shortstring) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` renames key `AOldname` to `ANewName`. The hash value is recomputed and the item is moved in the list to it's new position.

Errors: If an item with `ANewName` already exists, an exception will be raised.

9.16.20 TFPHashList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove first instance of a pointer.

Declaration: `function Remove(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the first occurrence of the data pointer `Item` in the list, if it is present. The return value is the removed data pointer, or `Nil` if no data pointer was removed.

See also: `TFPHashList.Delete` (243), `TFPHashList.Clear` (242), `TFPHashList.Extract` (243)

9.16.21 TFPHashList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove nil pointers from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` items from the list, and frees all unused memory.

See also: `TFPHashList.Clear` (242)

9.16.22 TFPHashList.ShowStatistics

Synopsis: Return some statistics for the list.

Declaration: `procedure ShowStatistics`

Visibility: public

Description: `ShowStatistics` prints some information about the hash list to standard output. It prints the following values:

HashSizeSize of the hash table

HashMeanMean hash value

HashStdDevStandard deviation of hash values

ListSizeSize and capacity of the list

StringSizeSize and capacity of key strings

9.16.23 TFPHashList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: Call a procedure for each element in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TListCallback; arg: pointer)`
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TListStaticCallback; arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` loops over the items in the list and calls `proc2call`, passing it the item and `arg`.

9.16.24 TFPHashList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` returns the current capacity of the list. The capacity is expanded as more elements are added to the list. If a good estimate of the number of elements that will be added to the list, the property can be set to a sufficiently large value to avoid reallocation of memory each time the list needs to grow.

See also: [Count \(246\)](#), [Items \(246\)](#)

9.16.25 TFPHashList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the current number of elements in the list.

See also: [Capacity \(246\)](#), [Items \(246\)](#)

9.16.26 TFPHashList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array with pointers.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the pointers, the index runs from 0 to `Count-1` ([246](#)).

Errors: Specifying an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: [Capacity \(246\)](#), [Count \(246\)](#)

9.16.27 TFPHashList.List

Synopsis: Low-level hash list.

Declaration: `Property List : PHashItemList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` exposes the low-level item list (221). It should not be used directly.

See also: `Strs` (247), `THashItemList` (221)

9.16.28 TFPHashList.Strs

Synopsis: Low-level memory area with strings.

Declaration: `Property Strs : PChar`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Strs` exposes the raw memory area with the strings.

See also: `List` (247)

9.17 TFPHashObject

9.17.1 Description

`TFPHashObject` is a `TObject` descendent which is aware of the `TFPHashObjectList` (250) class. It has a name property and an owning list: if the name is changed, it will reposition itself in the list which owns it. It offers methods to change the owning list: the object will correctly remove itself from the list which currently owns it, and insert itself in the new list.

See also: `TFPHashObject.Name` (249), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner` (248), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName` (248)

9.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
248	<code>ChangeOwner</code>	Change the list owning the object.
248	<code>ChangeOwnerAndName</code>	Simultaneously change the list owning the object and the name of the object.
248	<code>Create</code>	Create a named instance, and insert in a hash list.
248	<code>CreateNotOwned</code>	Create an instance not owned by any list.
249	<code>Rename</code>	Rename the object.

9.17.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
249	<code>Hash</code>	r	Hash value.
249	<code>Name</code>	r	Current name of the object.

9.17.4 TFPHashObject.CreateNotOwned

Synopsis: Create an instance not owned by any list.

Declaration: `constructor CreateNotOwned`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateNotOwned` creates an instance of `TFPHashObject` which is not owned by any `TFPHashObjectList` (250) hash list. It also has no name when created in this way.

See also: `TFPHashObject.Name` (249), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner` (248), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName` (248)

9.17.5 TFPHashObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a named instance, and insert in a hash list.

Declaration: `constructor Create (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList;
const s: shortstring)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates an instance of `TFPHashObject`, gives it the name `S` and inserts it in the hash list `HashObjectList` (250).

See also: `CreateNotOwned` (248), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner` (248), `TFPHashObject.Name` (249)

9.17.6 TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner

Synopsis: Change the list owning the object.

Declaration: `procedure ChangeOwner (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ChangeOwner` can be used to move the object between hash lists: The object will be removed correctly from the hash list that currently owns it, and will be inserted in the list `HashObjectList`.

Errors: If an object with the same name already is present in the new hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwnerAndName` (248), `Name` (249)

9.17.7 TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName

Synopsis: Simultaneously change the list owning the object and the name of the object.

Declaration: `procedure ChangeOwnerAndName (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList;
const s: shortstring)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ChangeOwnerAndName` can be used to move the object between hash lists: The object will be removed correctly from the hash list that currently owns it (using the current name), and will be inserted in the list `HashObjectList` with the new name `S`.

Errors: If the new name already is present in the new hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwner` (248), `Name` (249)

9.17.8 TFPHashObject.Rename

Synopsis: Rename the object.

Declaration: `procedure Rename(const ANewName: shortstring)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` changes the name of the object, and notifies the hash list of this change.

Errors: If the new name already is present in the hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwner` ([248](#)), `ChangeOwnerAndName` ([248](#)), `Name` ([249](#))

9.17.9 TFPHashObject.Name

Synopsis: Current name of the object.

Declaration: `Property Name : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Name` is the name of the object, it is stored in the hash list using this name as the key.

See also: `Rename` ([249](#)), `ChangeOwnerAndName` ([248](#))

9.17.10 TFPHashObject.Hash

Synopsis: Hash value.

Declaration: `Property Hash : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Hash` is the hash value of the object in the hash list that owns it.

See also: `Name` ([249](#))

9.18 TFPHashObjectList

9.18.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
251	Add	Add a new key/data pair to the list.
251	Clear	Clear the list.
250	Create	Create a new instance of the hashlist.
252	Delete	Delete an object from the list.
250	Destroy	Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap.
252	Expand	Expand the list.
253	Extract	Extract a object instance from the list.
253	Find	Find data associated with key.
254	FindIndexOf	Return index of named object.
254	FindInstanceOf	Search an instance of a certain class.
254	FindWithHash	Find first element with given name and hash value.
255	ForEachCall	Call a procedure for each object in the list.
252	GetNextCollision	Get next collision number.
252	HashOfIndex	Return the hash value of an object by index.
253	IndexOf	Return the index of the object instance.
251	NameOfIndex	Returns the key name of an object by index.
255	Pack	Remove nil object instances from the list.
253	Remove	Remove first occurrence of a object instance.
254	Rename	Rename a key.
255	ShowStatistics	Return some statistics for the list.

9.18.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
255	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list.
256	Count	rw	Current number of elements in the list.
256	Items	rw	Indexed array with object instances.
256	List	r	Low-level hash list.
256	OwnsObjects	rw	Does the list own the objects it contains.

9.18.3 TFPHashObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the hashlist.

Declaration: `constructor Create (FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPHashObjectList` on the heap and sets the hash capacity to 1.

If `FreeObjects` is `True` (the default), then the list owns the objects: when an object is removed from the list, it is destroyed (freed from memory). Clearing the list will free all objects in the list.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Destroy` ([250](#)), `TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects` ([256](#))

9.18.4 TFPHashObjectList.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the memory structures maintained by the hashlist and removes the `TFPHashObjectList` instance from the heap. If the list owns its objects, they are freed from memory as well.

`Destroy` should not be called directly, it's better to use `Free` or `FreeAndNil` instead.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Create` (250), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (251)

9.18.5 TFPHashObjectList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all objects from the list. It does not free the objects themselves, unless `OwnsObjects` (256) is `True`. It always frees all memory needed to contain the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (252), `TFPHashObjectList.Add` (251)

9.18.6 TFPHashObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new key/data pair to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: shortstring; AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new object instance (`AObject`) with key `AName` to the list. It returns the position of the object in the list.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to hold the key and data, an exception may be raised. If an object with this name already exists in the list, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (252)

9.18.7 TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex

Synopsis: Returns the key name of an object by index.

Declaration: `function NameOfIndex(Index: Integer) : ShortString`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NameOfIndex` returns the key name of the object at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (252), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (254), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (254)

9.18.8 TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex

Synopsis: Return the hash value of an object by index.

Declaration: `function HashOfIndex(Index: Integer) : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `HashOfIndex` returns the hash value of the object at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (251), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (254), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (254)

9.18.9 TFPHashObjectList.GetNextCollision

Synopsis: Get next collision number.

Declaration: `function GetNextCollision(Index: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Get next collision number.

9.18.10 TFPHashObjectList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an object from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the object at position `Index`. If `OwnsObjects` (256) is `True`, then the object itself is also freed from memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Add` (251), `OwnsObjects` (256)

9.18.11 TFPHashObjectList.Expand

Synopsis: Expand the list.

Declaration: `function Expand : TFPHashObjectList`

Visibility: public

Description: `Expand` enlarges the capacity of the list if the maximum capacity was reached. It returns itself.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (251)

9.18.12 TFPHashObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a object instance from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract (Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the data object from the list, if it is in the list. It returns the object instance if it was removed from the list, `Nil` otherwise. The object is *not* freed from memory, regardless of the value of `OwnsObjects` (256).

`Extract` does a linear search, and is not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (252), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (251)

9.18.13 TFPHashObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove first occurrence of a object instance.

Declaration: `function Remove (AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the first occurrence of the object instance `Item` in the list, if it is present. The return value is the location of the removed object instance, or `-1` if no object instance was removed.

If `OwnsObjects` (256) is `True`, then the object itself is also freed from memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (252), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (251), `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (253)

9.18.14 TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of the object instance.

Declaration: `function IndexOf (AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of the first occurrence of object instance `AObject`. If the object is not in the list, `-1` is returned.

The performed search is linear, and not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (252), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (251), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (254), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (254)

9.18.15 TFPHashObjectList.Find

Synopsis: Find data associated with key.

Declaration: `function Find (const s: shortstring) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches (using the hash) for the data object associated with key `AName` and returns the data object instance associated with it. If the object is not found, `Nil` is returned. It uses the hash value of the key to perform the search.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (252), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (251), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (254), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (254)

9.18.16 TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of named object.

Declaration: `function FindIndexOf(const s: shortstring) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexOf` returns the index of the key `AName`, or -1 if the key does not exist in the list. It uses the hash value to search for the key.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (252), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (251), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (254)

9.18.17 TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash

Synopsis: Find first element with given name and hash value.

Declaration: `function FindWithHash(const AName: shortstring; AHash: LongWord)
: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindWithHash` searches for the object with key `AName`. It uses the provided hash value `AHash` to perform the search. If the object exists, the data object instance is returned, if not, the result is `Nil`.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (252), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (251), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (253), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (254)

9.18.18 TFPHashObjectList.Rename

Synopsis: Rename a key.

Declaration: `function Rename(const AOldName: shortstring;
const ANewName: shortstring) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` renames key `AOldname` to `ANewName`. The hash value is recomputed and the object is moved in the list to it's new position.

Errors: If an object with `ANewName` already exists, an exception will be raised.

9.18.19 TFPHashObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search an instance of a certain class.

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf(AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean;
AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` searches the list for an instance of class `AClass`. It starts searching at position `AStartAt`. If `AExact` is `True`, only instances of class `AClass` are considered. If `AExact` is `False`, then descendent classes of `AClass` are also taken into account when searching. If no instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

9.18.20 TFPHashObjectList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove nil object instances from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` objects from the list, and frees all unused memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` ([251](#))

9.18.21 TFPHashObjectList.ShowStatistics

Synopsis: Return some statistics for the list.

Declaration: `procedure ShowStatistics`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShowStatistics` prints some information about the hash list to standard output. It prints the following values:

HashSizeSize of the hash table

HashMeanMean hash value

HashStdDevStandard deviation of hash values

ListSizeSize and capacity of the list

StringSizeSize and capacity of key strings

9.18.22 TFPHashObjectList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: Call a procedure for each object in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListCallback; arg: pointer)`
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListStaticCallback;`
`arg: pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ForEachCall` loops over the objects in the list and calls `proc2call`, passing it the object and `arg`.

9.18.23 TFPHashObjectList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Capacity` returns the current capacity of the list. The capacity is expanded as more elements are added to the list. If a good estimate of the number of elements that will be added to the list, the property can be set to a sufficiently large value to avoid reallocation of memory each time the list needs to grow.

See also: `Count` ([256](#)), `Items` ([256](#))

9.18.24 TFPHashObjectList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Count` is the current number of elements in the list.

See also: [Capacity \(255\)](#), [Items \(256\)](#)

9.18.25 TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Does the list own the objects it contains.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines what to do when an object is removed from the list: if it is `True` (the default), then the list owns the objects: when an object is removed from the list, it is destroyed (freed from memory). Clearing the list will free all objects in the list.

The value of `OwnsObjects` is set when the hash list is created, and may not be changed during the lifetime of the hash list. (The property is made read-only in versions later than 3.0 of Free Pascal).

See also: [TFPHashObjectList.Create \(250\)](#)

9.18.26 TFPHashObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array with object instances.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the object instances, the index runs from 0 to `Count-1` ([256](#)).

Errors: Specifying an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: [Capacity \(255\)](#), [Count \(256\)](#)

9.18.27 TFPHashObjectList.List

Synopsis: Low-level hash list.

Declaration: `Property List : TFPHashList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` exposes the low-level hash list ([240](#)). It should not be used directly.

See also: [TFPHashList \(240\)](#)

9.19 TFPObjectHashTable

9.19.1 Description

TFPStringHashTable is a TFPCustomHashTable (233) descendent which stores object instances together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are strings themselves, it's better to use TFPStringHashTable (266), or for arbitrary pointer data, TFPDataHashTable (239) is more suitable. The objects are exposed with their keys through the Items (258) property.

See also: TFPStringHashTable (266), TFPDataHashTable (239), TFPObjectHashTable.Items (258)

9.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
258	Add	Add a new object to the hash table.
257	Create	Create a new instance of TFPObjectHashTable.
257	CreateWith	Create a new hash table with given size and hash function.
258	Iterate	Iterate over the objects in the hash table.

9.19.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
258	Items	rw	Key-based access to the objects.
258	OwnsObjects	r	Does the hash table own the objects ?

9.19.4 TFPObjectHashTable.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TFPObjectHashTable.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwnsObjects: Boolean)

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TFPObjectHashTable on the heap. It sets the OwnsObjects (258) property to AOwnsObjects, and then calls the inherited Create. If AOwnsObjects is set to True, then the hash table owns the objects: whenever an object is removed from the list, it is automatically freed.

Errors: If not enough memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects (258), TFPObjectHashTable.CreateWith (257), TFPObjectHashTable.Items (258)

9.19.5 TFPObjectHashTable.CreateWith

Synopsis: Create a new hash table with given size and hash function.

Declaration: constructor CreateWith(AHashTableSize: LongWord;
aHashFunc: THashFunction; AOwnsObjects: Boolean)

Visibility: public

Description: CreateWith sets the OwnsObjects (258) property to AOwnsObjects, and then calls the inherited CreateWith. If AOwnsObjects is set to True, then the hash table owns the objects: whenever an object is removed from the list, it is automatically freed.

This constructor should be used when a table size and hash algorithm should be specified that differ from the default table size and hash algorithm.

Errors: If not enough memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects` (258), `TFPObjectHashTable.Create` (257), `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` (258)

9.19.6 TFPObjectHashTable.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over the objects in the hash table.

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TObjectIteratorMethod) : TObject; Virtual`
`function Iterate(aMethod: TObjectIteratorCallback) : TObject; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the array, calling `aMethod` for each object, or until the method returns `False` in its `continue` parameter. It returns `Nil` if all elements were processed, or the object that was being processed when `aMethod` returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter.

9.19.7 TFPObjectHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a new object to the hash table.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: string; AItem: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds the object `AItem` to the hash table, and associates it with key `aKey`.

Errors: If the key `aKey` is already in the hash table, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` (258)

9.19.8 TFPObjectHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key-based access to the objects.

Declaration: `Property Items[index: string]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides access to the objects in the hash table using their key: the array index `Index` is the key. A key which is not present will result in an `Nil` instance.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable.Add` (258)

9.19.9 TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Does the hash table own the objects ?

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines what happens with objects which are removed from the hash table: if `True`, then removing an object from the hash list will free the object. If `False`, the object is not freed. Note that way in which the object is removed is not relevant: be it `Delete`, `Remove` or `Clear`.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable.Create` (257), `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` (258)

9.20 TFPObjectList

9.20.1 Description

`TFPObjectList` is a `TFPList` (??) based list which has as the default array property `TObjects` (??) instead of pointers. By default it also manages the objects: when an object is deleted or removed from the list, it is automatically freed. This behaviour can be disabled when the list is created.

In difference with `TObjectList` (272), `TFPObjectList` offers no notification mechanism of list operations, allowing it to be faster than `TObjectList`. For the same reason, it is also not a descendent of `TFPList` (although it uses one internally).

See also: `#rtl.classes.TFPList` (??), `TObjectList` (272)

9.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
260	<code>Add</code>	Add an object to the list.
264	<code>Assign</code>	Copy the contents of a list.
260	<code>Clear</code>	Clear all elements in the list.
260	<code>Create</code>	Create a new object list.
261	<code>Delete</code>	Delete an element from the list.
260	<code>Destroy</code>	Clears the list and destroys the list instance.
261	<code>Exchange</code>	Exchange the location of two objects.
261	<code>Expand</code>	Expand the capacity of the list.
262	<code>Extract</code>	Extract an object from the list.
262	<code>FindInstanceOf</code>	Search for an instance of a certain class.
263	<code>First</code>	Return the first non-nil object in the list.
265	<code>ForEachCall</code>	For each object in the list, call a method or procedure, passing it the object.
262	<code>IndexOf</code>	Search for an object in the list.
263	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new object in the list.
263	<code>Last</code>	Return the last non-nil object in the list.
264	<code>Move</code>	Move an object to another location in the list.
264	<code>Pack</code>	Remove all <code>Nil</code> references from the list.
262	<code>Remove</code>	Remove an item from the list.
264	<code>Sort</code>	Sort the list of objects.

9.20.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
265	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list.
265	Count	rw	Number of elements in the list.
266	Items	rw	Indexed access to the elements of the list.
266	List	r	Internal list used to keep the objects.
266	OwnsObjects	rw	Should the list free elements when they are removed.

9.20.4 TFObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new object list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`
`constructor Create(FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. The `FreeObjects` parameter determines whether objects that are removed from the list should also be freed from memory. By default this is `True`. This behaviour can be changed after the list was instantiated.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Destroy` ([260](#)), `TFObjectList.OwnsObjects` ([266](#)), `TObjectList` ([272](#))

9.20.5 TFObjectList.Destroy

Synopsis: Clears the list and destroys the list instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the list, freeing all objects in the list if `OwnsObjects` ([266](#)) is `True`.

See also: `TFObjectList.OwnsObjects` ([266](#)), `TObjectList.Create` ([273](#))

9.20.6 TFObjectList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear all elements in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Removes all objects from the list, freeing all objects in the list if `OwnsObjects` ([266](#)) is `True`.

9.20.7 TFObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Add adds `AObject` to the list and returns the index of the object in the list.

Note that when `OwnsObjects` (266) is `True`, an object should not be added twice to the list: this will result in memory corruption when the object is freed (as it will be freed twice). The `Add` method does not check this, however.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.OwnsObjects` (266), `TFObjectList.Delete` (261)

9.20.8 TFObjectList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an element from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` removes the object at index `Index` from the list. When `OwnsObjects` (266) is `True`, the object is also freed.

Errors: An access violation may occur when `OwnsObjects` (266) is `True` and either the object was freed externally, or when the same object is in the same list twice.

See also: `TFObjectList.Remove` (262), `TFObjectList.Extract` (262), `TFObjectList.OwnsObjects` (266), `TFObjectList.Add` (260), `TFObjectList.Clear` (260)

9.20.9 TFObjectList.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchange the location of two objects.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` exchanges the objects at indexes `Index1` and `Index2` in a direct operation (i.e. no delete/add is performed).

Errors: If either `Index1` or `Index2` is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFObjectList.Add` (260), `TFObjectList.Delete` (261)

9.20.10 TFObjectList.Expand

Synopsis: Expand the capacity of the list.

Declaration: `function Expand : TFObjectList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Expand` increases the capacity of the list. It calls `#rtl.classes.tfplist.expand` (??) and then returns a reference to itself.

Errors: If there is not enough memory to expand the list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFObjectList.Pack` (264), `TFObjectList.Clear` (260), `#rtl.classes.tfplist.expand` (??)

9.20.11 TFObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract (Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns `Item` if it was found, `Nil` if item was not present in the list.

Note that the object is not freed, and that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Pack` (264), `TFObjectList.Clear` (260), `TFObjectList.Remove` (262), `TFObjectList.Delete` (261)

9.20.12 TFObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove (AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It frees `Item` if `OwnsObjects` (266) is `True`, and returns the index of the object that was found in the list, or -1 if the object was not found.

Note that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Pack` (264), `TFObjectList.Clear` (260), `TFObjectList.Delete` (261), `TFObjectList.Extract` (262)

9.20.13 TFObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an object in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf (AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the presence of `AObject` in the list, and returns the location (index) in the list. The index is 0-based, and -1 is returned if `AObject` was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Items` (266), `TFObjectList.Remove` (262), `TFObjectList.Extract` (262)

9.20.14 TFObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance of a certain class.

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf (AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean;
AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` will look through the instances in the list and will return the index of the first instance which is a descendent of class `AClass` if `AExact` is `False`. If `AExact` is true, then the instance should be of class `AClass`.

If no instance of the requested class is found, `-1` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.IndexOf` ([262](#))

9.20.15 TFObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new object in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AObject: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts `AObject` at position `Index` in the list. All elements in the list after this position are shifted. The index is zero based, i.e. an insert at position 0 will insert an object at the first position of the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Add` ([260](#)), `TFObjectList.Delete` ([261](#))

9.20.16 TFObjectList.First

Synopsis: Return the first non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function First : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Last` ([263](#)), `TFObjectList.Pack` ([264](#))

9.20.17 TFObjectList.Last

Synopsis: Return the last non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.First` ([263](#)), `TFObjectList.Pack` ([264](#))

9.20.18 TFObjectList.Move

Synopsis: Move an object to another location in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Move (CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Move` moves the object at current location `CurIndex` to location `NewIndex`. Note that the `NewIndex` is determined *after* the object was removed from location `CurIndex`, and can hence be shifted with 1 position if `CurIndex` is less than `NewIndex`.

Contrary to exchange (261), the move operation is done by extracting the object from it's current location and inserting it at the new location.

Errors: If either `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` is out of range, an exception may occur.

See also: `TFObjectList.Exchange` (261), `TFObjectList.Delete` (261), `TFObjectList.Insert` (263)

9.20.19 TFObjectList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy the contents of a list.

Declaration: `procedure Assign (Obj: TFObjectList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` copies the contents of `Obj` if `Obj` is of type `TFObjectList`

Errors: None.

9.20.20 TFObjectList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove all `Nil` references from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` elements from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.First` (263), `TFObjectList.Last` (263)

9.20.21 TFObjectList.Sort

Synopsis: Sort the list of objects.

Declaration: `procedure Sort (Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort` will perform a quick-sort on the list, using `Compare` as the compare algorithm. This function should accept 2 pointers and should return the following result:

less than 0 If the first pointer comes before the second.

equal to 0 If the pointers have the same value.

larger than 0 If the first pointer comes after the second.

The function should be able to deal with `Nil` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Sort` (??)

9.20.22 TFObjectList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: For each object in the list, call a method or procedure, passing it the object.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListCallback; arg: pointer)`
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListStaticCallback;`
`arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` loops through all objects in the list, and calls `proc2call`, passing it the object in the list. Additionally, `arg` is also passed to the procedure. `Proc2call` can be a plain procedure or can be a method of a class.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectListStaticCallback` (222), `TObjectListCallback` (222)

9.20.23 TFObjectList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` is the number of elements that the list can contain before it needs to expand itself, i.e., reserve more memory for pointers. It is always equal or larger than `Count` (265).

See also: `TFObjectList.Count` (265)

9.20.24 TFObjectList.Count

Synopsis: Number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the number of elements in the list. Note that this includes `Nil` elements.

See also: `TFObjectList.Capacity` (265)

9.20.25 TFObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Should the list free elements when they are removed.

Declaration: Property OwnsObjects : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OwnsObjects determines whether the objects in the list should be freed when they are removed (not extracted) from the list, or when the list is cleared. If the property is True then they are freed. If the property is False the elements are not freed.

The value is usually set in the constructor, and is seldom changed during the lifetime of the list. It defaults to True.

See also: TFObjectList.Create (260), TFObjectList.Delete (261), TFObjectList.Remove (262), TFObjectList.Clear (260)

9.20.26 TFObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the elements of the list.

Declaration: Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Items is the default property of the list. It provides indexed access to the elements in the list. The index Index is zero based, i.e., runs from 0 (zero) to Count-1.

See also: TFObjectList.Count (265)

9.20.27 TFObjectList.List

Synopsis: Internal list used to keep the objects.

Declaration: Property List : TFPList

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: List is a reference to the TFPList (??) instance used to manage the elements in the list.

See also: #rtl.classes.tfplist (??)

9.21 TFPStringHashTable

9.21.1 Description

TFPStringHashTable is a TFPCustomHashTable (233) descendent which stores simple strings together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are objects, it's better to use TFObjectHashTable (257), or for arbitrary pointer data, TFpDataHashTable (239) is more suitable. The strings are exposed with their keys through the Items (267) property.

See also: TFObjectHashTable (257), TFpDataHashTable (239), Items (267)

9.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
267	Add	Add a new string to the hash list.
267	Iterate	Iterate over the strings in the hash table.

9.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
267	Items	rw	Key based access to the strings in the hash table.

9.21.4 TFPStringHashTable.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over the strings in the hash table.

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TStringIteratorMethod) : string; Virtual`
`function Iterate(aMethod: TStringIteratorCallback) : string; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the array, calling `aMethod` for each string, or until the method returns `False` in its `continue` parameter. It returns an empty string if all elements were processed, or the string that was being processed when `aMethod` returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter.

9.21.5 TFPStringHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a new string to the hash list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: string; const aItem: string); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new string `AItem` to the hash list with key `AKey`.

Errors: If a string with key `Akey` already exists in the hash table, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPStringHashTable.Items` ([267](#))

9.21.6 TFPStringHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key based access to the strings in the hash table.

Declaration: `Property Items[index: string]: string; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides access to the strings in the hash table using their key: the array index `Index` is the key. A key which is not present will result in an empty string.

See also: `TFPStringHashTable.Add` ([267](#))

9.22 THTCustomNode

9.22.1 Description

THTCustomNode is used by the TFPCustomHashTable (233) class to store the keys and associated values.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable (233)

9.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
268	CreateWith	Create a new instance of THTCustomNode.
268	HasKey	Check whether this node matches the given key.

9.22.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
269	Key	r	Key value associated with this hash item.

9.22.4 THTCustomNode.CreateWith

Synopsis: Create a new instance of THTCustomNode.

Declaration: constructor CreateWith(const AString: string)

Visibility: public

Description: CreateWith creates a new instance of THTCustomNode and stores the string AString in it. It should never be necessary to call this method directly, it will be called by the TFPCustomHashTable (233) class when needed.

Errors: If no more memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable (233)

9.22.5 THTCustomNode.HasKey

Synopsis: Check whether this node matches the given key.

Declaration: function HasKey(const AKey: string) : Boolean

Visibility: public

Description: HasKey checks whether this node matches the given key AKey, by comparing it with the stored key. It returns True if it does, False if not.

Errors: None.

See also: THTCustomNode.Key (269)

9.22.6 THTCustomNode.Key

Synopsis: Key value associated with this hash item.

Declaration: `Property Key : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Key` is the key value associated with this hash item. It is stored when the item is created, and is read-only.

See also: `THTCustomNode.CreateWith` ([268](#))

9.23 THTDataNode

9.23.1 Description

`THTDataNode` is used by `TFPDataHashTable` ([239](#)) to store the hash items in. It simply holds the data pointer.

It should not be necessary to use `THTDataNode` directly, it's only for inner use by `TFPDataHashTable`

See also: `TFPDataHashTable` ([239](#)), `THTObjectNode` ([269](#)), `THTStringNode` ([270](#))

9.23.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
269	Data	rw	Data pointer.

9.23.3 THTDataNode.Data

Synopsis: Data pointer.

Declaration: `Property Data : pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Pointer containing the user data associated with the hash value.

9.24 THTObjectNode

9.24.1 Description

`THTObjectNode` is a `THTCustomNode` ([268](#)) descendent which holds the data in the `TFPObjectHashTable` ([257](#)) hash table. It exposes a data string.

It should not be necessary to use `THTObjectNode` directly, it's only for inner use by `TFPObjectHashTable`

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` ([257](#))

9.24.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
270	Data	rw	Object instance.

9.24.3 THTObjectNode.Data

Synopsis: Object instance.

Declaration: `Property Data : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` is the object instance associated with the key value. It is exposed in `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` ([258](#))

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` ([257](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` ([258](#)), `THTOwnedObjectNode` ([270](#))

9.25 THTOwnedObjectNode

9.25.1 Description

`THTOwnedObjectNode` is used instead of `THTObjectNode` ([269](#)) in case `TFPObjectHashTable` ([257](#)) owns it's objects. When this object is destroyed, the associated data object is also destroyed.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` ([257](#)), `THTObjectNode` ([269](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects` ([258](#))

9.25.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
270	Destroy	Destroys the node and the object.

9.25.3 THTOwnedObjectNode.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the node and the object.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first frees the data object, and then only frees itself.

See also: `THTOwnedObjectNode` ([270](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects` ([258](#))

9.26 THTStringNode

9.26.1 Description

`THTStringNode` is a `THTCustomNode` ([268](#)) descendent which holds the data in the `TFPStringHashTable` ([266](#)) hash table. It exposes a data string.

It should not be necessary to use `THTStringNode` directly, it's only for inner use by `TFPStringHashTable`

See also: `TFPStringHashTable` ([266](#))

9.26.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
271	Data	rw	String data.

9.26.3 THTStringNode.Data

Synopsis: String data.

Declaration: `Property Data : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` is the data of this has node. The data is a string, associated with the key. It is also exposed in `TFPStringHashTable.Items` ([267](#))

See also: `TFPStringHashTable` ([266](#))

9.27 TObjectBucketList

9.27.1 Description

`TObjectBucketList` is a class that redefines the associative `Data` array using `TObject` instead of `Pointer`. It also adds some overloaded versions of the `Add` and `Remove` calls using `TObject` instead of `Pointer` for the argument and result types.

See also: `TObjectBucketList` ([271](#))

9.27.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
271	Add	Add an object to the list.
272	Remove	Remove an object from the list.

9.27.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
272	Data	rw	Associative array of data items.

9.27.4 TObjectBucketList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AItem: TObject; AData: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds `AItem` to the list and associated `AData` with it.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Data` ([272](#)), `TObjectBucketList.Remove` ([272](#))

9.27.5 TObjectBucketList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AItem: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the object `AItem` from the list. It returns the `Data` object which was associated with the item. If `AItem` was not in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Add` (271), `TObjectBucketList.Data` (272)

9.27.6 TObjectBucketList.Data

Synopsis: Associative array of data items.

Declaration: `Property Data[AItem: TObject]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` provides associative access to the data in the list: it returns the data object associated with the `AItem` object. If the `AItem` object is not in the list, an `EListError` exception is raised.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Add` (271)

9.28 TObjectList

9.28.1 Description

`TObjectList` is a `TList` (??) descendent which has as the default array property `TObjects` (??) instead of pointers. By default it also manages the objects: when an object is deleted or removed from the list, it is automatically freed. This behaviour can be disabled when the list is created.

In difference with `TFPObjectList` (259), `TObjectList` offers a notification mechanism of list change operations: insert, delete. This slows down bulk operations, so if the notifications are not needed, `TFPObjectList` may be more appropriate.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList` (??), `TFPObjectList` (259), `TComponentList` (227), `TClassList` (224)

9.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
273	<code>Add</code>	Add an object to the list.
273	<code>Create</code>	Create a new object list.
273	<code>Extract</code>	Extract an object from the list.
274	<code>FindInstanceOf</code>	Search for an instance of a certain class.
275	<code>First</code>	Return the first non-nil object in the list.
274	<code>IndexOf</code>	Search for an object in the list.
275	<code>Insert</code>	Insert an object in the list.
275	<code>Last</code>	Return the last non-nil object in the list.
274	<code>Remove</code>	Remove (and possibly free) an element from the list.

9.28.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
276	Items	rw	Indexed access to the elements of the list.
275	OwnsObjects	rw	Should the list free elements when they are removed.

9.28.4 TObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new object list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`
`constructor Create(FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. The `FreeObjects` parameter determines whether objects that are removed from the list should also be freed from memory. By default this is `True`. This behaviour can be changed after the list was instantiated.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.OwnsObjects` ([275](#)), `TFPObjectList` ([259](#))

9.28.5 TObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` overrides the `TList` (??) implementation to accept objects (`AObject`) instead of pointers. The function returns the index of the position where the object was added.

Errors: If the list must be expanded, and not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Insert` ([275](#)), `#rtl.classes.TList.Delete` (??), `TObjectList.Extract` ([273](#)), `TObjectList.Remove` ([274](#))

9.28.6 TObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes the object `Item` from the list if it is present in the list. Contrary to `Remove` ([274](#)), `Extract` does not free the extracted element if `OwnsObjects` ([275](#)) is `True`

The function returns a reference to the item which was removed from the list, or `Nil` if no element was removed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Remove` ([274](#))

9.28.7 TObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove (and possibly free) an element from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Remove removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It frees `Item` if `OwnsObjects` (275) is `True`, and returns the index of the object that was found in the list, or -1 if the object was not found.

Note that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Extract` (273)

9.28.8 TObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an object in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` overrides the `TList` (??) implementation to accept an object instance instead of a pointer.

The function returns the index of the first match for `AObject` in the list, or -1 if no match was found.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.FindInstanceOf` (274)

9.28.9 TObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance of a certain class.

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf(AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean; AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` will look through the instances in the list and will return the first instance which is a descendent of class `AClass` if `AExact` is `False`. If `AExact` is `true`, then the instance should be of class `AClass`.

If no instance of the requested class is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.IndexOf` (274)

9.28.10 TObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an object in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AObject: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts `AObject` in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero-based. This method overrides the implementation in `TList` (??) to accept objects instead of pointers.

Errors: If an invalid `Index` is specified, an exception is raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Add` (273), `TObjectList.Remove` (274)

9.28.11 TObjectList.First

Synopsis: Return the first non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function First : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Last` (275)

9.28.12 TObjectList.Last

Synopsis: Return the last non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.First` (275)

9.28.13 TObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Should the list free elements when they are removed.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines whether the objects in the list should be freed when they are removed (not extracted) from the list, or when the list is cleared. If the property is `True` then they are freed. If the property is `False` the elements are not freed.

The value is usually set in the constructor, and is seldom changed during the lifetime of the list. It defaults to `True`.

See also: `TObjectList.Create` (273), `TObjectList.Remove` (274), `TObjectList.Extract` (273)

9.28.14 TObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the elements of the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is the default property of the list. It provides indexed access to the elements in the list. The index `Index` is zero based, i.e., runs from 0 (zero) to `Count-1`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Count` (??)

9.29 TObjectQueue

9.29.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
277	<code>Peek</code>	Look at the first object in the queue.
276	<code>Pop</code>	Pop the first element off the queue.
276	<code>Push</code>	Push an object on the queue.

9.29.2 TObjectQueue.Push

Synopsis: Push an object on the queue.

Declaration: `function Push(AObject: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Push` pushes another object on the queue. It overrides the `Push` method as implemented in `TQueue` so it accepts only objects as arguments.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the queue, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectQueue.Pop` ([276](#)), `TObjectQueue.Peek` ([277](#))

9.29.3 TObjectQueue.Pop

Synopsis: Pop the first element off the queue.

Declaration: `function Pop : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pop` removes the first element in the queue, and returns a reference to the instance. If the queue is empty, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectQueue.Push` ([276](#)), `TObjectQueue.Peek` ([277](#))

9.29.4 TObjectQueue.Peek

Synopsis: Look at the first object in the queue.

Declaration: `function Peek : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Peek` returns the first object in the queue, without removing it from the queue. If there are no more objects in the queue, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectQueue.Push` (276), `TObjectQueue.Pop` (276)

9.30 TObjectStack

9.30.1 Description

`TObjectStack` is a stack implementation which manages pointers only.

`TObjectStack` introduces no new behaviour, it simply overrides some methods to accept and/or return `TObject` instances instead of pointers.

See also: `TOrderedList` (278), `TStack` (280), `TQueue` (280), `TObjectQueue` (276)

9.30.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
278	<code>Peek</code>	Look at the top object in the stack.
277	<code>Pop</code>	Pop the top object of the stack.
277	<code>Push</code>	Push an object on the stack.

9.30.3 TObjectStack.Push

Synopsis: Push an object on the stack.

Declaration: `function Push(AObject: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Push` pushes another object on the stack. It overrides the `Push` method as implemented in `TStack` so it accepts only objects as arguments.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the stack, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectStack.Pop` (277), `TObjectStack.Peek` (278)

9.30.4 TObjectStack.Pop

Synopsis: Pop the top object of the stack.

Declaration: `function Pop : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pop` pops the top object of the stack, and returns the object instance. If there are no more objects on the stack, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectStack.Push` (277), `TObjectStack.Peek` (278)

9.30.5 TObjectStack.Peek

Synopsis: Look at the top object in the stack.

Declaration: `function Peek : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Peek` returns the top object of the stack, without removing it from the stack. If there are no more objects on the stack, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectStack.Push` (277), `TObjectStack.Pop` (277)

9.31 TOrderedList

9.31.1 Description

`TOrderedList` provides the base class for `TQueue` (280) and `TStack` (280). It provides an interface for pushing and popping elements on or off the list, and manages the internal list of pointers.

Note that `TOrderedList` does not manage objects on the stack, i.e. objects are not freed when the ordered list is destroyed.

See also: `TQueue` (280), `TStack` (280)

9.31.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
279	<code>AtLeast</code>	Check whether the list contains a certain number of elements.
279	<code>Count</code>	Number of elements on the list.
278	<code>Create</code>	Create a new ordered list.
279	<code>Destroy</code>	Free an ordered list.
280	<code>Peek</code>	Return the next element to be popped from the list.
280	<code>Pop</code>	Remove an element from the list.
279	<code>Push</code>	Push another element on the list.

9.31.3 TOrderedList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new ordered list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new ordered list. It initializes the internal pointer list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Destroy` (279)

9.31.4 TOrderedList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free an ordered list.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the internal pointer list, and removes the `TOrderedList` instance from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Create` ([278](#))

9.31.5 TOrderedList.Count

Synopsis: Number of elements on the list.

Declaration: `function Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Count` is the number of pointers in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.AtLeast` ([279](#))

9.31.6 TOrderedList.AtLeast

Synopsis: Check whether the list contains a certain number of elements.

Declaration: `function AtLeast (ACount: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AtLeast` returns `True` if the number of elements in the list is equal to or bigger than `ACount`. It returns `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Count` ([279](#))

9.31.7 TOrderedList.Push

Synopsis: Push another element on the list.

Declaration: `function Push (AItem: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Push` adds `AItem` to the list, and returns `AItem`.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TOrderedList.Pop` ([280](#)), `TOrderedList.Peek` ([280](#))

9.31.8 TOrderedList.Pop

Synopsis: Remove an element from the list.

Declaration: `function Pop : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pop` removes an element from the list, and returns the element that was removed from the list. If no element is on the list, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Peek` (280), `TOrderedList.Push` (279)

9.31.9 TOrderedList.Peek

Synopsis: Return the next element to be popped from the list.

Declaration: `function Peek : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Peek` returns the element that will be popped from the list at the next call to `Pop` (280), without actually popping it from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Pop` (280), `TOrderedList.Push` (279)

9.32 TQueue

9.32.1 Description

`TQueue` is a descendent of `TOrderedList` (278) which implements `Push` (279) and `Pop` (280) behaviour as a queue: what is first pushed on the queue, is popped of first (FIFO: First in, first out).

`TQueue` offers no new methods, it merely implements some abstract methods introduced by `TOrderedList` (278)

See also: `TOrderedList` (278), `TObjectQueue` (276), `TStack` (280)

9.33 TStack

9.33.1 Description

`TStack` is a descendent of `TOrderedList` (278) which implements `Push` (279) and `Pop` (280) behaviour as a stack: what is last pushed on the stack, is popped of first (LIFO: Last in, first out).

`TStack` offers no new methods, it merely implements some abstract methods introduced by `TOrderedList` (278)

See also: `TOrderedList` (278), `TObjectStack` (277), `TQueue` (280)

Chapter 10

Reference for unit 'csvdocument'

10.1 Used units

Table 10.1: Used units by unit 'csvdocument'

Name	Page
bufstream	202
Classes	??
Contnrs	218
csvreadwrite	290
System	??
sysutils	??

10.2 Overview

The `CSVDocument` unit offers the `TCSVDocument` ([282](#)) class which can be used to read, manipulate and write the contents of a CSV file. It uses the methods of the `#fcl.csvreadwrite.TCSVParser` ([296](#)) and `#fcl.csvreadwrite.TCSVBuilder` ([291](#)) units to read and write the actual file.

10.3 Constants, types and variables

10.3.1 Types

`TCSVBuilder` = type `csvreadwrite.TCSVBuilder`

`TCSVBuilder` is a backwards-compatibility alias for `csvreadwrite.TCSVParser` ([296](#))

`TCSVChar` = type `csvreadwrite.TCSVChar`

`TCSVChar` is a backwards-compatibility alias for `csvreadwrite.TCSVChar` ([291](#))

`TCSVParser` = type `csvreadwrite.TCSVParser`

`TCSVParser` is a backwards-compatibility alias for `csvreadwrite.TCSVParser` ([296](#))

10.4 TCSVDocument

10.4.1 Description

`TCSVDocument` can be used to read a CSV file in memory using e.g. `LoadFromFile` (283), manipulate the contents using the `Cells` (288) property. Additional rows can be added using `AddRow` (284), additional cells can be added using `AddCell` (284). After all is done, the `SaveToFile` (284) method can be used to save the new content to file. The various properties introduced in `csvreadwrite.TCSVHandler` (281) can be used to configure the format of the CSV file.

See also: `LoadFromFile` (283), `Cells` (288), `AddRow` (284), `AddCell` (284), `SaveToFile` (284), `csvreadwrite.TCSVHandler` (281)

10.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
284	<code>AddCell</code>	Add a new cell to a row.
284	<code>AddRow</code>	Add a new row to the CSV Data.
287	<code>Clear</code>	Remove all rows.
287	<code>CloneRow</code>	Duplicate a row.
282	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCSVDocument</code> .
283	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TCSVDocument</code> instance from memory.
287	<code>ExchangeRows</code>	Exchange positions of 2 rows.
286	<code>HasCell</code>	Test if a cell exists.
286	<code>HasRow</code>	Test if a row exists.
286	<code>IndexOfCol</code>	Test whether a value exists at a given row.
286	<code>IndexOfRow</code>	Test whether a value exists at a given column.
285	<code>InsertCell</code>	Insert cell at specified position.
285	<code>InsertRow</code>	Insert row before row number <code>aRow</code> .
283	<code>LoadFromFile</code>	Load a CSV file into the document.
283	<code>LoadFromStream</code>	Load CSV data from a stream.
285	<code>RemoveCell</code>	Remove a cell at a particular row.
285	<code>RemoveRow</code>	Remove a row.
287	<code>RemoveTrailingEmptyCells</code>	Remove empty cells at the end of each row.
284	<code>SaveToFile</code>	Save to file on disk.
284	<code>SaveToStream</code>	Save the CSV data to stream.
287	<code>UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings</code>	Ensures all values have the same line ending/.

10.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
288	<code>Cells</code>	rw	Array access to all cells.
288	<code>ColCount</code>	r	Return the column count for a given row.
289	<code>CSVText</code>	rw	Return the CSV Document as a single CSV text.
288	<code>MaxColCount</code>	r	Maximum column count.
288	<code>RowCount</code>	r	Number of available rows.

10.4.4 TCSVDocument.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCSVDocument`.

Declaration: `constructor Create;` `Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes the data structures for the CSV cells.

See also: Cells ([288](#)), Destroy ([283](#))

10.4.5 TCSVDocument.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TCSVDocument` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the data structures for the CSV cells and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: Cells ([288](#)), Create ([282](#))

10.4.6 TCSVDocument.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load a CSV file into the document.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFilename: string); Overload`
`procedure LoadFromFile(const AFilename: string; ABufferSize: Integer)`
`; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates a file stream using `aFileName` and calls `LoadFromStream` ([283](#)) to read the contents of the file.

The file is read using an internal buffer for efficiency. The size of the buffer can be specified in bytes using `ABufferSize`. If the size is not specified, a default buffer size is used.

Errors: If the file does not exist, an exception will be raised.

See also: `LoadFromStream` ([283](#)), `SaveToStream` ([284](#)), `SaveToFile` ([284](#))

10.4.7 TCSVDocument.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load CSV data from a stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the CSV data from the `aStream` stream. It uses the settings introduced in `TCSVHandler` ([294](#)) when determining fields and rows. If `EqualColCountPerRow` ([296](#)) is `True` then it will add empty cells after reading the CSV data, so all rows have an equal count of columns..

See also: `EqualColCountPerRow` ([296](#)), `SaveToStream` ([284](#)), `SaveToFile` ([284](#)), `LoadFromFile` ([283](#)), `TCSVHandler` ([294](#))

10.4.8 TCSVDocument.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save to file on disk.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFilename: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` creates a file stream from `aFileName` and calls `SaveToStream` (284) to actually write the CSV data to the file.

Errors: If the file cannot be created or cannot be written to, an exception will be raised.

See also: `SaveToStream` (284), `LoadFromStream` (283), `LoadFromFile` (283)

10.4.9 TCSVDocument.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save the CSV data to stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` saves the CSV data to the `aStream` stream. It uses the settings introduced in `TCSVHandler` (294) to apply the correct formatting to fields and rows. If `EqualColCountPerRow` (296) is `True` then it will add empty cells prior to writing, so all rows in the file have an equal count of columns.

Errors: If the stream cannot be written to, an exception will be raised.

See also: `EqualColCountPerRow` (296), `SaveToFile` (284), `LoadFromStream` (283), `LoadFromFile` (283), `TCSVHandler` (294)

10.4.10 TCSVDocument.AddRow

Synopsis: Add a new row to the CSV Data.

Declaration: `procedure AddRow(const AFirstCell: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddRow` appends a new row to collection of rows, and adds 1 cell to this new row with contents `aFirstCell`. If `aFirstCell` is not specified, then an empty cell is added.

See also: `AddCell` (284), `InsertRow` (285), `InsertCell` (285), `RemoveRow` (285)

10.4.11 TCSVDocument.AddCell

Synopsis: Add a new cell to a row.

Declaration: `procedure AddCell(ARow: Integer; const AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddCell` adds a new cell at the end of row `aRow` (zero based) with value `aValue`. If `aValue` is not specified, then an empty cell is added.

If a non-existing row is specified, rows are added till `aRow` is reached.

See also: `AddRow` (284), `InsertRow` (285), `InsertCell` (285), `RemoveCell` (285)

10.4.12 TCSVDocument.InsertRow

Synopsis: Insert row before row number `aRow`.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRow(ARow: Integer; const AFirstCell: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InsertRow` inserts a new empty row before row number `aRow`, and adds a cell to the new row with contents `aFirstCell`.

If a non-existing row is specified, the row is simply appended after the last row.

See also: `AddRow` (284), `AddCell` (284), `InsertCell` (285), `RemoveRow` (285)

10.4.13 TCSVDocument.InsertCell

Synopsis: Insert cell at specified position.

Declaration: `procedure InsertCell(ACol: Integer; ARow: Integer; const AValue: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InsertCell` inserts a new cell before cell `aCol` (zero based) in row `aRow` (zero based) with value `aValue`. If `aValue` is not specified, then an empty cell is inserted.

If a non-existing column is specified, the cell is appended at the end of the row.

If a non-existing row is specified, rows are added till `aRow` is reached.

See also: `AddRow` (284), `InsertRow` (285), `AddCell` (284), `RemoveCell` (285)

10.4.14 TCSVDocument.RemoveRow

Synopsis: Remove a row.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRow(ARow: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveRow` removes row number `aRow` (zero-based) from the list of rows. If a non-existing row index is given, no row is removed.

See also: `AddRow` (284), `RemoveCell` (285)

10.4.15 TCSVDocument.RemoveCell

Synopsis: Remove a cell at a particular row.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveCell(ACol: Integer; ARow: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveCell` removes the cell at index `aCol` (zero-based) in row `aRow` (zero-based). If either of `aCol` or `aRow` are invalid, nothing is removed.

See also: `AddCell` (284), `RemoveRow` (285), `HasCell` (286)

10.4.16 TCSVDocument.HasRow

Synopsis: Test if a row exists.

Declaration: `function HasRow (ARow: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `HasRow` returns `True` if `aRow` is a valid row index, i.e. is larger than or equal to 0 (zero) and is strictly less than `RowCount` (288).

See also: `RowCount` (288), `HasCell` (286)

10.4.17 TCSVDocument.HasCell

Synopsis: Test if a cell exists.

Declaration: `function HasCell (ACol: Integer; ARow: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `HasCell` returns `True` if `aRow` is a valid row index, (i.e. is larger than or equal to 0 (zero) and is strictly less than `RowCount` (288)) and `aCol` is a valid column index for that row, i.e. is larger than or equal to 0 (zero) and is strictly less than `ColCount[aRow]` (288) .

See also: `RowCount` (288), `HasRow` (286), `ColCount` (288)

10.4.18 TCSVDocument.IndexOfCol

Synopsis: Test whether a value exists at a given row.

Declaration: `function IndexOfCol (const AString: string; ARow: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfCol` returns the index of the first cell with given value `aString` in row `aRow`. It returns `-1` if row `aRow` does not exist, or if the value does not appear in the given row.

See also: `Cells` (288), `IndexOfRow` (286)

10.4.19 TCSVDocument.IndexOfRow

Synopsis: Test whether a value exists at a given column.

Declaration: `function IndexOfRow (const AString: string; ACol: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfRow` returns the index of the first row with given value `aString` in column `aCol`. It returns `-1` if no such row exists.

See also: `IndexOfCol` (286), `Cells` (288)

10.4.20 TCSVDocument.Clear

Synopsis: Remove all rows.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all rows from the document.

See also: [AddRow \(284\)](#)

10.4.21 TCSVDocument.CloneRow

Synopsis: Duplicate a row.

Declaration: `procedure CloneRow (ARow: Integer; AInsertPos: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloneRow` will insert a row at `aInsertPos` and duplicate all cells of row `aRow` in the new row.

See also: [AddRow \(284\)](#), [InsertRow \(285\)](#), [ExchangeRows \(287\)](#)

10.4.22 TCSVDocument.ExchangeRows

Synopsis: Exchange positions of 2 rows.

Declaration: `procedure ExchangeRows (ARow1: Integer; ARow2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExchangeRows` takes 2 rows with positions `aRow1` and `aRow2`, and exchanges them. if either of the row indexes does not exist, no action is performed.

See also: [AddRow \(284\)](#), [InsertRow \(285\)](#), [CloneRow \(287\)](#)

10.4.23 TCSVDocument.UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings

Synopsis: Ensures all values have the same line ending/.

Declaration: `procedure UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings` forces the line endings in all cell values to match the `LineEnding (281)` setting. Cell values that do not have a line-endings in them are left untouched.

See also: [LineEnding \(281\)](#), [ChangeLineEndings \(281\)](#)

10.4.24 TCSVDocument.RemoveTrailingEmptyCells

Synopsis: Remove empty cells at the end of each row.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveTrailingEmptyCells`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveTrailingEmptyCells` traverses all rows, and removes all empty cells at the end of the row. The first cell of a row is never removed.

See also: [RemoveCell \(285\)](#)

10.4.25 TCSVDocument.Cells

Synopsis: Array access to all cells.

Declaration: `Property Cells[ACol: Integer;ARow: Integer]: string; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Cells` provides read and write access to all the cells in the document using `aCol` and `aRow` (both zero-based) as the column and row indexes. If no cell data exists at the location, then reading the value will result in an empty string, and writing will add empty rows and cells so a cell exists at the given position.

See also: [AddCell \(284\)](#), [AddRow \(284\)](#), [ColCount \(288\)](#), [RowCount \(288\)](#)

10.4.26 TCSVDocument.RowCount

Synopsis: Number of available rows.

Declaration: `Property RowCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RowCount` returns the number of available rows. Valid row indexes are therefor in the range 0 to `RowCount-1`.

See also: [ColCount \(288\)](#), [Cells \(288\)](#)

10.4.27 TCSVDocument.ColCount

Synopsis: Return the column count for a given row.

Declaration: `Property ColCount[ARow: Integer]: Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ColCount` returns the number of available cells in the indicated row (`aRow`, zero-based). Valid column indexes are therefor in the range 0 to `RowCount[aRow]-1`.

See also: [RowCount \(288\)](#), [Cells \(288\)](#)

10.4.28 TCSVDocument.MaxColCount

Synopsis: Maximum column count.

Declaration: `Property MaxColCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `MaxColCount` scans all rows and returns the largest available [ColCount \(288\)](#) value.

See also: [RowCount \(288\)](#), [Cells \(288\)](#), [ColCount \(288\)](#)

10.4.29 TCSVDocument.CSVText

Synopsis: Return the CSV Document as a single CSV text.

Declaration: `Property CSVText : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `CSVText` calculates the contents of the CSV file as it would be when written using `SaveToFile` (284) and returns the resulting string.

See also: `SaveToFile` (284), `SaveToStream` (284)

Chapter 11

Reference for unit 'csvreadwrite'

11.1 Used units

Table 11.1: Used units by unit 'csvreadwrite'

Name	Page
Classes	??
strutils	??
System	??
sysutils	??

11.2 Overview

The `csvreadwrite` unit contains a class `TCSVParser` ([296](#)) which allows you to read a CSV file, and `TCSVBuilder` ([291](#)) which allows you to create a CSV file. In both classes, it offers options to handle various kinds of CSV formats. These classes are used in the `TCSVDocument` ([282](#)) class (a class that offers a matrix-like representation of the CVS data) to read and write the CSV file.

11.3 Constants, types and variables

11.3.1 Types

`TCSVByteOrderMark = (bomNone, bomUTF8, bomUTF16LE, bomUTF16BE)`

Table 11.2: Enumeration values for type `TCSVByteOrderMark`

Value	Explanation
<code>bomNone</code>	No BOM marker was read.
<code>bomUTF16BE</code>	The UTF16 big-endian BOM Marker was read.
<code>bomUTF16LE</code>	The UTF16 little-endian BOM Marker was read.
<code>bomUTF8</code>	The UTF8 BOM marker was read.

`TCSVByteOrderMark` is the type of the `TCSVParser.BOM` (300) property. It can have the following values

bomNone No BOM marker was read.

bomUTF8 The UTF8 BOM marker was read.

bomUTF16LE The UTF16 little-endian BOM Marker was read.

bomUTF16BE The UTF16 big-endian BOM Marker was read.

`TCSVChar` = type `char`

`TCSVChar` is an alias type for the basic character used in the CSV file. It is used in `TCSVChar` (291) and it's descendents to define the character type read from file.

11.4 Procedures and functions

11.4.1 ChangeLineEndings

Synopsis: Change the line endings in a string.

Declaration: `function ChangeLineEndings(const AString: string;
const ALineEnding: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ChangeLineEndings` is a utility function which changes the line ending characters CR, CR/LF and LF in `AString` to the specified line ending `aLineEnding`. It returns the transformed string.

11.5 TCSVBuilder

11.5.1 Description

`TCSVBuilder` can be used to correctly write a CSV file. To use it, optionally set a stream to which the CSV file will be written using `SetOutput` (292), call `AppendCell` (293) for each cell you wish to write, and call `AppendRow` (293) when you want to start a new line. If you didn't specify an output stream, the output is available in `DefaultOutput` (293) or `DefaultOutputAsString` (293).

See also: `SetOutput` (292), `AppendCell` (293), `AppendRow` (293), `DefaultOutput` (293), `DefaultOutputAsString` (293)

11.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
293	<code>AppendCell</code>	Append a cell to the output.
293	<code>AppendRow</code>	Append a new row.
292	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCSVBuilder</code> .
292	<code>Destroy</code>	Free a <code>TCSVBuilder</code> instance.
292	<code>ResetBuilder</code>	Reset values.
292	<code>SetOutput</code>	Set the output stream to write to.

11.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
293	DefaultOutput	r	Default output as stream.
293	DefaultOutputAsString	r	Default output as string value.

11.5.4 TCSVBuilder.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TCSVBuilder.

Declaration: constructor Create; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create calls the inherited constructor and initializes the default output.

See also: DefaultOutput ([293](#)), DefaultOutputAsString ([293](#))

11.5.5 TCSVBuilder.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a TCSVBuilder instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up the default output and calls the inherited constructor.

See also: DefaultOutput ([293](#)), DefaultOutputAsString ([293](#))

11.5.6 TCSVBuilder.SetOutput

Synopsis: Set the output stream to write to.

Declaration: procedure SetOutput (AStream: TStream)

Visibility: public

Description: SetOutput can be used to set the output stream to aStream. The use of this is optional, as the output is available by default in DefaultOutput ([293](#)) or DefaultOutputAsString ([293](#)). Calling SetOutput will result in resetting the inner state of the builder using ResetBuilder ([292](#)), so it must not be called if you already wrote some data.

See also: DefaultOutput ([293](#)), DefaultOutputAsString ([293](#)), ResetBuilder ([292](#))

11.5.7 TCSVBuilder.ResetBuilder

Synopsis: Reset values.

Declaration: procedure ResetBuilder

Visibility: public

Description: ResetBuilder resets the builder state to the initial state, at the beginning of the stream. It is called when SetOutput ([292](#)) is called.

See also: SetOutput ([292](#))

11.5.8 TCSVBuilder.AppendCell

Synopsis: Append a cell to the output.

Declaration: `procedure AppendCell(const AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendCell` appends a cell with content `AValue` to the output; It will quote the value using `QuoteChar` (295) if necessary, and append the necessary `Delimiter` (295) characters. It will not move to the next line, for this `AppendRow` (293) must be called.

See also: `QuoteChar` (295), `Delimiter` (295), `AppendRow` (293)

11.5.9 TCSVBuilder.AppendRow

Synopsis: Append a new row.

Declaration: `procedure AppendRow`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendRow` moves the cell pointer to the new row, i.e. it appends a `LineEnding` (295) character.

See also: `LineEnding` (295), `AppendCell` (293), `EqualColCountPerRow` (296)

11.5.10 TCSVBuilder.DefaultOutput

Synopsis: Default output as stream.

Declaration: `Property DefaultOutput : TMemoryStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DefaultOutput` is a stream to which the output is written if no output stream was specified with the `SetOutput` (292) call.

See also: `SetOutput` (292), `DefaultOutputAsString` (293)

11.5.11 TCSVBuilder.DefaultOutputAsString

Synopsis: Default output as string value.

Declaration: `Property DefaultOutputAsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DefaultOutput` is a string to which the output is written if no output stream was specified with the `SetOutput` (292) call. It is basically the contents of the `DefaultOutput` (293) property as a string.

See also: `SetOutput` (292), `DefaultOutput` (293)

11.6 TCSVHandler

11.6.1 Description

TCSVHandler is the base class for class TCSVParser (296) which allows you to read a CSV file, and class TCSVBuilder (291) which allows you to write a CSV file. It defines some common properties for these classes, mainly to describe the formatting of the CSV file, such as the Delimiter (295) or QuoteChar (295) and LineEnding (295) properties.

Normally you will not create an instance of TCSVHandler, instead you will create a TCSVParser or TCSVBuilder instance.

See also: TCSVParser (296), TCSVBuilder (291), Delimiter (295), QuoteChar (295), LineEnding (295)

11.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
294	Assign	Assign properties from another TCSVHandler instance.
295	AssignCSVProperties	Assign properties from another TCSVHandler instance.
294	Create	Create an instance of TCSVHandler.

11.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
295	Delimiter	rw	Field delimiter character.
296	EqualColCountPerRow	rw	Ensure every row has an equal amount of columns.
296	IgnoreOuterWhitespace	rw	Ignore whitespace between delimiters and field data.
295	LineEnding	rw	Line ending character.
295	QuoteChar	rw	Character to quote values.
296	QuoteOuterWhitespace	rw	Write quotes when outer whitespace is found in a value.

11.6.4 TCSVHandler.Create

Synopsis: Create an instance of TCSVHandler.

Declaration: `constructor Create; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and initializes various properties such as `Delimiter` (295), `QuoteChar` (295) and `LineEnding` (295) to their initial values.

See also: `Delimiter` (295), `QuoteChar` (295), `LineEnding` (295)

11.6.5 TCSVHandler.Assign

Synopsis: Assign properties from another TCSVHandler instance.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(ASource: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` overrides `TPersistent.Assign` (??) to copy all TCSVHandler properties from the `aSource` instance to the current instance. It calls `AssignCSVProperties` (295) to do the actual copying.

See also: `TPersistent.Assign` (??)

11.6.6 TCSVHandler.AssignCSVProperties

Synopsis: Assign properties from another TCSVHandler instance.

Declaration: `procedure AssignCSVProperties(ASource: TCSVHandler)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AssignCSVProperties` is called by `Assign` (294) to copy all TCSVHandler properties from the `aSource` instance to the current instance.

See also: `Assign` (294)

11.6.7 TCSVHandler.Delimiter

Synopsis: Field delimiter character.

Declaration: `Property Delimiter : TCSVChar`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Delimiter` is the field delimiter character. By default, it is the comma (,). Values that contain a delimiter character must be quoted by the character specified in `QuoteChar` (295).

See also: `QuoteChar` (295), `LineEnding` (295)

11.6.8 TCSVHandler.QuoteChar

Synopsis: Character to quote values.

Declaration: `Property QuoteChar : TCSVChar`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `QuoteChar` specifies the character to use when quoting values. Between the quote characters, field delimiter (as set in `Delimiter` (295)) or line ending (as set in `LineEnding` (295)) characters lose their special meaning and are considered part of the value. The default quote character is the double quote (").

See also: `Delimiter` (295), `LineEnding` (295)

11.6.9 TCSVHandler.LineEnding

Synopsis: Line ending character.

Declaration: `Property LineEnding : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `LineEnding` specifies the line-ending character. It is initialized with the current system's line ending character - one of CR, CR/LF or LF.

11.6.10 TCSVHandler.IgnoreOuterWhitespace

Synopsis: Ignore whitespace between delimiters and field data.

Declaration: Property IgnoreOuterWhitespace : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: IgnoreOuterWhitespace can be set to True to let the parser ignore any whitespace between the value of a field and the delimiter characters Delimiter (295) when reading data. The default is False

See also: Delimiter (295), QuoteOuterWhitespace (296)

11.6.11 TCSVHandler.QuoteOuterWhitespace

Synopsis: Write quotes when outer whitespace is found in a value.

Declaration: Property QuoteOuterWhitespace : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: QuoteOuterWhitespace can be set to True to let the parser quote values that have whitespace at the beginning or the end of the value. If set to False, there will be whitespace between the value of a field and the delimiter characters Delimiter (295), which can alter the value when reading data depending on the setting of IgnoreOuterWhitespace (296). The default is True.

See also: Delimiter (295), IgnoreOuterWhitespace (296)

11.6.12 TCSVHandler.EqualColCountPerRow

Synopsis: Ensure every row has an equal amount of columns.

Declaration: Property EqualColCountPerRow : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: EqualColCountPerRow must be set to report an equal amount of columns for every row when reading and writing. Empty columns will be reported or added for every row where the number of columns is less than the maximal amount of columns. This property is not used in the TCSVParser (296) or TCSVBuilder (291) classes. It is used in the TCSVDocument (290) class. The default is True.

See also: TCSVParser (296), TCSVBuilder (291), TCSVDocument (290)

11.7 TCSVParser

11.7.1 Description

TCSVParser can be used to read a CSV file. To use it, the stream or string containing the CSV data must be specified with SetSource (298), after which ParseNextCell (298) can be called till it returns

false. The current cell value after `ParseNextCell` returns `True` is available in `CurrentCellText` (299). By tracking `CurrentRow` (298), `CurrentCol` (299) and `MaxColCount` (299), the structure of the CSV file can be determined.

See also: `SetSource` (298), `ParseNextCell` (298), `CurrentCellText` (299), `CurrentRow` (298), `CurrentCol` (299), `MaxColCount` (299)

11.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
297	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCSVParser</code> .
297	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TCSVParser</code> instance.
298	<code>ParseNextCell</code>	Parse the next cell.
298	<code>ResetParser</code>	Reset the parser to its initial state.
298	<code>SetSource</code>	Set the CSV source data.

11.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
300	<code>BOM</code>	r	type of BOM marker found at the start of the data.
299	<code>CurrentCellText</code>	r	Current field value.
299	<code>CurrentCol</code>	r	Column (zero based) of the current field.
298	<code>CurrentRow</code>	r	Row (zero based) of the current field.
300	<code>DetectBOM</code>	rw	Must the parser attempt to read the BOM marker ?
300	<code>FreeStream</code>	rw	Does the parser free the stream when done ?
299	<code>MaxColCount</code>	r	Return the maximum column count encountered till now.

11.7.4 TCSVParser.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCSVParser`.

Declaration: `constructor Create; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TCSVParser` calls the inherited constructor and initializes some internal structures.

See also: `TCSVHandler.Create` (294)

11.7.5 TCSVParser.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the `TCSVParser` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TCSVParser` clears the internal data and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TCSVParser.Create` (297)

11.7.6 TCSVParser.SetSource

Synopsis: Set the CSV source data.

Declaration: `procedure SetSource(AStream: TStream); Overload`
`procedure SetSource(const AString: string); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetSource` sets the source of the CSV data to `aStream` (a stream) or `aString` (a string). It calls `ResetParser` (298) to reset the parser state. The stream is by default not owned by the parser, i.e. you must free it after it has been used. If `TCSVParser.FreeStream` (300) is `True`, then the stream will be freed by the parser class when it is destroyed, or when a new stream is set.

See also: `FreeStream` (300), `ResetParser` (298)

11.7.7 TCSVParser.ResetParser

Synopsis: Reset the parser to its initial state.

Declaration: `procedure ResetParser`

Visibility: public

Description: `ResetParser` resets the parser to its initial state: `CurrentRow` (298), `CurrentCol` (299) and `MaxColCount` (299) are all set to zero, and the output is cleared. The stream is put at position zero and if `DetectBOM` (300) is `True`, the BOM (300) marker is read.

See also: `SetSource` (298), `CurrentRow` (298), `CurrentCol` (299), `MaxColCount` (299), `BOM` (300)

11.7.8 TCSVParser.ParseNextCell

Synopsis: Parse the next cell.

Declaration: `function ParseNextCell : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParseNextCell` attempts to read the next field in the CSV data, moving to the next row if necessary. It returns `True` if a cell was read successfully, `False` if no more CSV data is available - when the stream has reached EOF. It takes into account the `Delimiter` (295), `QuoteChar` (295) and `LineEnding` (295) properties to determine the field boundaries. When it has returned `True`, the properties `CurrentRow` (298), `CurrentCol` (299), `MaxColCount` (299) and `CurrentCellText` (299) can be used to determine what field was read and what the contents of the field were.

See also: `CurrentRow` (298), `CurrentCol` (299), `MaxColCount` (299), `CurrentCellText` (299), `Delimiter` (295), `QuoteChar` (295), `LineEnding` (295)

11.7.9 TCSVParser.CurrentRow

Synopsis: Row (zero based) of the current field.

Declaration: `Property CurrentRow : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CurrentRow` contains the row number (zero based) of the current field (cell) in the CSV file. This value is only valid after `ParseNextCell` returns `True`.

See also: [ParseNextCell \(298\)](#), [CurrentCol \(299\)](#), [MaxColCount \(299\)](#), [CurrentCellText \(299\)](#)

11.7.10 TCSVParser.CurrentCol

Synopsis: Column (zero based) of the current field.

Declaration: `Property CurrentCol : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CurrentCol` contains the column number (zero based) of the current field (cell) in the CSV file. This value is only valid after `ParseNextCell` returns `True`.

See also: [CurrentRow \(298\)](#), [ParseNextCell \(298\)](#), [MaxColCount \(299\)](#), [CurrentCellText \(299\)](#)

11.7.11 TCSVParser.CurrentCellText

Synopsis: Current field value.

Declaration: `Property CurrentCellText : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CurrentCellText` contains the value of the current field (cell) in the CSV file. This value is only valid after `ParseNextCell` returns `True`. The value has already been processed according to the `QuoteOuterWhitespace (296)` property.

See also: [CurrentRow \(298\)](#), [CurrentCol \(299\)](#), [MaxColCount \(299\)](#), [ParseNextCell \(298\)](#), [QuoteOuterWhitespace \(296\)](#)

11.7.12 TCSVParser.MaxColCount

Synopsis: Return the maximum column count encountered till now.

Declaration: `Property MaxColCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `MaxColCount` contains the maximum column count encountered till now. This value will be updated as `ParseNextCell (298)` is called, and consequently the final value is only available after `ParseNextValue` returned `False`.

See also: [CurrentRow \(298\)](#), [CurrentCol \(299\)](#), [CurrentCellText \(299\)](#), [ParseNextCell \(298\)](#)

11.7.13 TCSVParser.FreeStream

Synopsis: Does the parser free the stream when done ?

Declaration: `Property FreeStream : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FreeStream` determines whether the parser frees the stream when done or not. The stream is by default not owned by the parser, i.e. you must free it after it has been used. If `FreeStream` is `True`, then the stream will be freed by the parser class when it is destroyed, or when a new stream is set using `SetSource` (298)

See also: `SetSource` (298)

11.7.14 TCSVParser.BOM

Synopsis: type of BOM marker found at the start of the data.

Declaration: `Property BOM : TCSVByteOrderMark`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BOM` indicates what Byte Order Marker was found at the beginning of the data. The value is updated as soon as the CSV is set using `TCSVParser.SetSource` (298) and `DetectBOM` (300) is `True`. For a list of possible values, see `TCSVByteOrderMark` (290).

See also: `TCSVByteOrderMark` (290), `TCSVParser.SetSource` (298)

11.7.15 TCSVParser.DetectBOM

Synopsis: Must the parser attempt to read the BOM marker ?

Declaration: `Property DetectBOM : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DetectBOM` can be set to `True` if you want the CSV parser to attempt to detect a BOM marker. If set to `True`, then `ResetParser` (298) will attempt to read the BOM marker when the CSV data is set using `SetSource` (298). The result of the detection is available in the `BOM` (300) property after the source data is set. It follows that `DetectBOM` must be set before calling `SetSource` (298).

See also: `SetSource` (298), `ResetParser` (298), `BOM` (300)

Chapter 12

Reference for unit 'CustApp'

12.1 Used units

Table 12.1: Used units by unit 'CustApp'

Name	Page
Classes	??
singleinstance	875
System	??
sysutils	??

12.2 Overview

The `CustApp` unit implements the `TCustomApplication` ([302](#)) class, which serves as the common ancestor to many kinds of `TApplication` classes: a GUI application in the LCL, a CGI application in FPCGI, a daemon application in `daemonapp`. It introduces some properties to describe the environment in which the application is running (environment variables, program command-line parameters) and introduces some methods to initialize and run a program, as well as functionality to handle exceptions.

Typical use of a descendent class is to introduce a global variable `Application` and use the following code:

```
Application.Initialize;  
Application.Run;
```

Since normally only a single instance of this class is created, and it is a `TComponent` descendent, it can be used as an owner for many components, doing so will ensure these components will be freed when the application terminates.

12.3 Constants, types and variables

12.3.1 Types

```
TEventLogTypes = Set of TEventType
```

`TEventLogTypes` is a set of `TEventType` (??), used in `TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter` (313) to filter events that are sent to the system log.

```
TExceptionEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; E: Exception) of
    object
```

`TExceptionEvent` is the prototype for the exception handling events in `TCustomApplication`.

```
TStringArray = Array of string
```

`TStringArray` is an array of strings, used in the `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues` (307) call.

12.3.2 Variables

```
CustomApplication : TCustomApplication = Nil
```

`CustomApplication` contains the global application instance. All descendents of `TCustomApplication` (302) should, in addition to storing an instance pointer in some variable (most likely called "Application") store the instance pointer in this variable. This ensures that, whatever kind of application is being created, user code can access the application object.

12.4 TCustomApplication

12.4.1 Description

`TCustomApplication` is the ancestor class for classes that wish to implement a global application class instance. It introduces several application-wide functionalities.

- Exception handling in `HandleException` (304), `ShowException` (305), `OnException` (310) and `StopOnException` (313).
- Command-line parameter parsing in `FindOptionIndex` (306), `GetOptionValue` (306), `CheckOptions` (307) and `HasOption` (307)
- Environment variable handling in `GetEnvironmentList` (309) and `EnvironmentVariable` (312).

Descendent classes need to override the `DoRun` protected method to implement the functionality of the program.

12.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
307	CheckOptions	Check whether all given options on the command-line are valid.
303	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TCustomApplication</code> class.
304	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TCustomApplication</code> instance.
306	FindOptionIndex	Return the index of an option.
309	GetEnvironmentList	Return a list of environment variables.
308	GetNonOptions	Get all non-switch options.
306	GetOptionValue	Return the value of a command-line option.
307	GetOptionValues	Get the values for an option that may be specified multiple times.
304	HandleException	Handle an exception.
307	HasOption	Check whether an option was specified.
304	Initialize	Initialize the application.
309	Log	Write a message to the event log.
305	Run	Runs the application.
305	ShowException	Show an exception to the user.
305	Terminate	Terminate the application.

12.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
312	CaseSensitiveOptions	rw	Are options interpreted case sensitive or not.
311	ConsoleApplication	r	Is the application a console application or not.
312	EnvironmentVariable	r	Environment variable access.
313	EventLogFilter	rw	Event to filter events, before they are sent to the system log.
313	ExceptionExitCode	rw	ExitCode to use then terminating the program due to an exception.
309	ExeName	r	Name of the executable.
310	HelpFile	rw	Location of the application help file.
311	Location	r	Application location.
310	OnException	rw	Exception handling event.
312	OptionChar	rw	Command-line switch character.
312	ParamCount	r	Number of command-line parameters.
311	Params	r	Command-line parameters.
314	SingleInstance	r	Single instance used to control single application instance behaviour.
314	SingleInstanceClass	rw	Class to use when creating single instance.
314	SingleInstanceEnabled	rw	Enable single application instance control.
313	StopOnException	rw	Should the program loop stop on an exception.
310	Terminated	r	Was <code>Terminate</code> called or not.
310	Title	rw	Application title.

12.4.4 TCustomApplication.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TCustomApplication` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TCustomApplication` class. It sets some defaults for the various properties, and then calls the inherited `Create`.

See also: [TCustomApplication.Destroy \(304\)](#)

12.4.5 TCustomApplication.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TCustomApplication` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` simply calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: [TCustomApplication.Create \(303\)](#)

12.4.6 TCustomApplication.HandleException

Synopsis: Handle an exception.

Declaration: `procedure HandleException(Sender: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HandleException` is called (or can be called) to handle the exception `Sender`. If the exception is not of class `Exception` then the default handling of exceptions in the `SysUtils` unit is called.

If the exception is of class `Exception` and the `OnException (310)` handler is set, the handler is called with the exception object and `Sender` argument.

If the `OnException` handler is not set, then the exception is passed to the `ShowException (305)` routine, which can be overridden by descendent application classes to show the exception in a way that is fit for the particular class of application. (a GUI application might show the exception in a message dialog.

When the exception is handled in the above manner, and the `StopOnException (313)` property is set to `True`, the `Terminated (310)` property is set to `True`, which will cause the `Run (305)` loop to stop, and the application will exit.

See also: [ShowException \(305\)](#), [StopOnException \(313\)](#), [Terminated \(310\)](#), [Run \(305\)](#)

12.4.7 TCustomApplication.Initialize

Synopsis: Initialize the application.

Declaration: `procedure Initialize; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Initialize` can be overridden by descendent applications to perform any initialization after the class was created. It can be used to react to properties being set at program startup. End-user code should call `Initialize` prior to calling `Run`

In `TCustomApplication`, `Initialize` sets `Terminated` to `False`.

See also: [TCustomApplication.Run \(305\)](#), [TCustomApplication.Terminated \(310\)](#)

12.4.8 TCustomApplication.Run

Synopsis: Runs the application.

Declaration: `procedure Run`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Run` is the start of the user code: when called, it starts a loop and repeatedly calls `DoRun` until `Terminated` is set to `True`. If an exception is raised during the execution of `DoRun`, it is caught and handled to `TCustomApplication.HandleException` (304). If `TCustomApplication.StopOnException` (313) is set to `True` (which is *not* the default), `Run` will exit, and the application will then terminate. The default is to call `DoRun` again, which is useful for applications running a message loop such as services and GUI applications.

See also: `TCustomApplication.HandleException` (304), `TCustomApplication.StopOnException` (313)

12.4.9 TCustomApplication.ShowException

Synopsis: Show an exception to the user.

Declaration: `procedure ShowException(E: Exception); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShowException` should be overridden by descendent classes to show an exception message to the user. The default behaviour is to call the `ShowException` (??) procedure in the `SysUtils` unit.

Descendent classes should do something appropriate for their context: GUI applications can show a message box, daemon applications can write the exception message to the system log, web applications can send a 500 error response code.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShowException` (??), `TCustomApplication.HandleException` (304), `TCustomApplication.StopOnException` (313)

12.4.10 TCustomApplication.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminate the application.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate; Virtual`
`procedure Terminate(AExitCode: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Terminate` sets the `Terminated` property to `True`. By itself, this does not terminate the application. Instead, descendent classes should in their `DoRun` method, check the value of the `Terminated` (310) property and properly shut down the application if it is set to `True`.

When `AExitCode` is specified, it will be passed to `System.ExitCode` (301), and when the program is halted, that is the exit code of the program as returned to the OS. If the application is terminated due to an exception, `ExceptionExitCode` (313) will be used as the value for this argument.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Terminated` (310), `TCustomApplication.Run` (305), `ExceptionExitCode` (313), `System.ExitCode` (301)

12.4.11 TCustomApplication.FindOptionIndex

Synopsis: Return the index of an option.

Declaration: `function FindOptionIndex(const S: string; var Longopt: Boolean;
StartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindOptionIndex` will return the index of the option `S` or the long option `LongOpt`. Neither of them should include the switch character. If no such option was specified, -1 is returned. If either the long or short option was specified, then the position on the command-line is returned.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` (312) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (312) (by default the dash ('-') character).

See also: `HasOption` (307), `GetOptionValue` (306), `CheckOptions` (307), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (312), `OptionChar` (312)

12.4.12 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue

Synopsis: Return the value of a command-line option.

Declaration: `function GetOptionValue(const S: string) : string`
`function GetOptionValue(const C: char; const S: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetOptionValue` returns the value of an option. Values are specified in the usual GNU option format, either of

`--longopt=Value`

or

`-c Value`

is supported.

The function returns the specified value, or the empty string if none was specified.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` (312) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (312) (by default the dash ('-') character).

If an option can appear multiple times, use `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues` (307) to retrieve all values. This function only returns the value of the first occurrence of an option.

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (306), `HasOption` (307), `CheckOptions` (307), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (312), `OptionChar` (312), `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues` (307)

12.4.13 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues

Synopsis: Get the values for an option that may be specified multiple times.

Declaration: `function GetOptionValues(const C: char; const S: string) : TStringArray`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetOptionValues` returns all values specified by command-line option switches C or S. For each occurrence of the command-line option C or S, the associated value is added to the array.

`TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue` (306) will only return the first occurrence of a value.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue` (306)

12.4.14 TCustomApplication.HasOption

Synopsis: Check whether an option was specified.

Declaration: `function HasOption(const S: string) : Boolean`
`function HasOption(const C: char; const S: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `HasOption` returns `True` if the specified option was given on the command line. Either the short option character C or the long option S may be used. Note that both options (requiring a value) and switches can be specified.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` (312) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (312) (by default the dash ('-') character).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (306), `GetOptionValue` (306), `CheckOptions` (307), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (312), `OptionChar` (312)

12.4.15 TCustomApplication.CheckOptions

Synopsis: Check whether all given options on the command-line are valid.

Declaration: `function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
`const Longopts: TStringList; Opts: TStringList;`
`NonOpts: TStringList; AllErrors: Boolean) : string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
`const Longopts: Array of string; Opts: TStringList;`
`NonOpts: TStringList; AllErrors: Boolean) : string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
`const Longopts: TStringList; AllErrors: Boolean)`
`: string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
`const Longopts: Array of string;`
`AllErrors: Boolean) : string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
`const Longopts: string; AllErrors: Boolean)`
`: string`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckOptions` scans the command-line and checks whether the options given are valid options. It also checks whether options that require a value are indeed specified with a value.

The `ShortOptions` contains a string with valid short option characters. Each character in the string is a valid option character. If a character is followed by a colon (:), then a value must be specified. If it is followed by 2 colon characters (::) then the value is optional.

`LongOpts` is a list of strings (which can be specified as an array, a `TStrings` instance or a string with whitespace-separated values) of valid long options.

When the function returns, if `Opts` is non-`Nil`, the `Opts` stringlist is filled with the passed valid options. If `NonOpts` is non-`nil`, it is filled with any non-option strings that were passed on the command-line.

The function returns an empty string if all specified options were valid options, and whether options requiring a value have a value. If an error was found during the check, the return value is a string describing the error.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (312) (by default the dash ('-') character).

if `AllErrors` is `True` then all errors are returned, separated by a `sLineBreak` (??) character.

Errors: If an error was found during the check, the return value is a string describing the error(s).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (306), `GetOptionValue` (306), `HasOption` (307), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (312), `OptionChar` (312)

12.4.16 TCustomApplication.GetNonOptions

Synopsis: Get all non-switch options.

Declaration:

```
function GetNonOptions(const ShortOptions: string;
                      const Longopts: Array of string) : TStringArray
procedure GetNonOptions(const ShortOptions: string;
                      const Longopts: Array of string;
                      NonOptions: TStrings)
```

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNonOptions` returns the items on the command-line that are not associated with a switch. It checks the command-line for allowed switches as they are indicated by `ShortOptions` and `Longopts`. The format is identical to `TCustomApplication.CheckOptions` (307). This is useful for an application which accepts a command form such as `svn`:

```
svn commit [options] files
```

In the above example, "commit" and "files" would be returned by `GetNonOptions`

The non-options are returned in the form of a string array, or a stringlist instance can be passed in `NonOptions`. Either will be filled with the non-options on return.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomApplication.HasOption` (307), `TCustomApplication.CheckOptions` (307), `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue` (306), `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues` (307)

12.4.17 TCustomApplication.GetEnvironmentList

Synopsis: Return a list of environment variables.

Declaration: `procedure GetEnvironmentList(List: TStrings; NamesOnly: Boolean)`
`procedure GetEnvironmentList(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnvironmentList` returns a list of environment variables in `List`. They are in the form `Name=Value`, one per item in list. If `NamesOnly` is `True`, then only the names are returned.

See also: `EnvironmentVariable` ([312](#))

12.4.18 TCustomApplication.Log

Synopsis: Write a message to the event log.

Declaration: `procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Msg: string)`
`procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Fmt: string;`
`const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Log` is meant for all applications to have a default logging mechanism. By default it does not do anything, descendent classes should override this method to provide appropriate logging: they should write the message `Msg` with type `EventType` to some log mechanism such as `#fcl.eventlog.TEventLog` ([588](#))

The second form using `Fmt` and `Args` will format the message using the provided arguments prior to logging it.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.TEventType` (??)

12.4.19 TCustomApplication.ExeName

Synopsis: Name of the executable.

Declaration: `Property ExeName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ExeName` returns the full name of the executable binary (path+filename). This is equivalent to `ParamStr(0)`

Note that some operating systems do not return the full pathname of the binary.

See also: `ParamStr` (??)

12.4.20 TCustomApplication.HelpFile

Synopsis: Location of the application help file.

Declaration: `Property HelpFile : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HelpFile` is the location of the application help file. It is a simple string property which can be set by an IDE such as Lazarus, and is mainly provided for compatibility with Delphi's `TApplication` implementation.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Title` ([310](#))

12.4.21 TCustomApplication.Terminated

Synopsis: Was `Terminate` called or not.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Terminated` indicates whether `Terminate` ([305](#)) was called or not. Descendent classes should check `Terminated` at regular intervals in their implementation of `DoRun`, and if it is set to `True`, should exit gracefully the `DoRun` method.

See also: `Terminate` ([305](#))

12.4.22 TCustomApplication.Title

Synopsis: Application title.

Declaration: `Property Title : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Title` is a simple string property which can be set to any string describing the application. It does nothing by itself, and is mainly introduced for compatibility with Delphi's `TApplication` implementation.

See also: `HelpFile` ([310](#))

12.4.23 TCustomApplication.OnException

Synopsis: Exception handling event.

Declaration: `Property OnException : TExceptionEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnException` can be set to provide custom handling of exceptions, instead of the default action, which is simply to show the exception using `ShowException` (305).

If the event is set, then it is called by the `HandleException` (304) routine. Do not use the `OnException` event directly, instead call `HandleException`.

See also: `ShowException` (305)

12.4.24 `TCustomApplication.ConsoleApplication`

Synopsis: Is the application a console application or not.

Declaration: `Property ConsoleApplication : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ConsoleApplication` returns `True` if the application is compiled as a console application (the default) or `False` if not. The result of this property is determined at compile-time by the settings of the compiler: it returns the value of the `IsConsole` (??) constant.

See also: `IsConsole` (??)

12.4.25 `TCustomApplication.Location`

Synopsis: Application location.

Declaration: `Property Location : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Location` returns the directory part of the application binary. This property works on most platforms, although some platforms do not allow to retrieve this information (Mac OS for example has no reliable way to get this information). See the discussion of `Paramstr` (??) in the RTL documentation.

See also: `Paramstr` (??), `Params` (311)

12.4.26 `TCustomApplication.Params`

Synopsis: Command-line parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Params` gives access to the command-line parameters. They contain the value of the `Index`-th parameter, where `Index` runs from 0 to `ParamCount` (312). It is equivalent to calling `ParamStr` (??).

See also: `ParamCount` (312), `Paramstr` (??)

12.4.27 TCustomApplication.ParamCount

Synopsis: Number of command-line parameters.

Declaration: `Property ParamCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ParamCount` returns the number of command-line parameters that were passed to the program. The actual parameters can be retrieved with the `Params` (311) property.

See also: `Params` (311), `Paramstr` (??), `ParamCount` (??)

12.4.28 TCustomApplication.EnvironmentVariable

Synopsis: Environment variable access.

Declaration: `Property EnvironmentVariable[envName: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `EnvironmentVariable` gives access to the environment variables of the application: It returns the value of the environment variable `EnvName`, or an empty string if no such value is available.

To use this property, the name of the environment variable must be known. To get a list of available names (and values), `GetEnvironmentList` (309) can be used.

See also: `GetEnvironmentList` (309), `TCustomApplication.Params` (311)

12.4.29 TCustomApplication.OptionChar

Synopsis: Command-line switch character.

Declaration: `Property OptionChar : char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OptionChar` is the character used for command line switches. By default, this is the dash ('-') character, but it can be set to any other non-alphanumerical character (although no check is performed on this).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (306), `GetOptionValue` (306), `HasOption` (307), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (312), `CheckOptions` (307)

12.4.30 TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveOptions

Synopsis: Are options interpreted case sensitive or not.

Declaration: `Property CaseSensitiveOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CaseSensitiveOptions` determines whether `FindOptionIndex` (306) and `CheckOptions` (307) perform searches in a case sensitive manner or not. By default, the search is case-sensitive. Setting this property to `False` makes the search case-insensitive.

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (306), `GetOptionValue` (306), `HasOption` (307), `OptionChar` (312), `CheckOptions` (307)

12.4.31 TCustomApplication.StopOnException

Synopsis: Should the program loop stop on an exception.

Declaration: `Property StopOnException : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `StopOnException` controls the behaviour of the `Run` (305) and `HandleException` (304) procedures in case of an unhandled exception in the `DoRun` code. If `StopOnException` is `True` then `Terminate` (305) will be called after the exception was handled.

See also: `Run` (305), `HandleException` (304), `Terminate` (305)

12.4.32 TCustomApplication.ExceptionExitCode

Synopsis: `ExitCode` to use then terminating the program due to an exception.

Declaration: `Property ExceptionExitCode : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ExceptionExitCode` is the exit code that will be passed to `TCustomApplication.Terminate` (305)

12.4.33 TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter

Synopsis: Event to filter events, before they are sent to the system log.

Declaration: `Property EventLogFilter : TEventLogTypes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `EventLogFilter` can be set to a set of event types that should be logged to the system log. If the set is empty, all event types are sent to the system log. If the set is non-empty, the `TCustomApplication.Log` (309) routine will check if the log event type is in the set, and if not, will not send the message to the system log.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Log` (309)

12.4.34 TCustomApplication.SingleInstance

Synopsis: Single instance used to control single application instance behaviour.

Declaration: `Property SingleInstance : TBaseSingleInstance`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `SingleInstance` is used when `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceEnabled` (314) is set to `True`. It can be used to send a message to an already running instance, or to check for messages if the current instance is the sole ("server") instance running.

See also: `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass` (314), `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceEnabled` (314)

12.4.35 TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass

Synopsis: Class to use when creating single instance.

Declaration: `Property SingleInstanceClass : TBaseSingleInstanceClass`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SingleInstanceClass` can be used to set the class used to instantiate `SingleInstance` (314). The default class is determined by the global `singleinstance.defaultSingleInstanceClass` as specified in `#fcl.singleinstance.DefaultSingleInstanceClass` (877).

See also: `TCustomApplication.SingleInstance` (314), `DefaultSingleInstanceClass` (877)

12.4.36 TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceEnabled

Synopsis: Enable single application instance control.

Declaration: `Property SingleInstanceEnabled : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SingleInstanceEnabled` can be set to `true` to start single-instance application control. This will instantiate `TCustomApplication.SingleInstance` (314) using `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass` (314) and starts the check to see whether this application is a client or server instance.

See also: `TCustomApplication.SingleInstance` (314), `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass` (314)

Chapter 13

Reference for unit 'daemonapp'

13.1 Used units

Table 13.1: Used units by unit 'daemonapp'

Name	Page
Classes	??
CustApp	301
eventlog	586
rtlconsts	??
System	??
sysutils	??

13.2 Overview

The `daemonapp` unit implements a `TApplication` class which encapsulates a daemon or service application. It handles installation where this is necessary, and does instantiation of the various daemons where necessary.

The unit consists of 3 separate classes which cooperate tightly:

TDaemon This is a class that implements the daemon's functionality. One or more descendents of this class can be implemented and instantiated in a single daemon application. For more information, see `TDaemon` ([337](#)).

TDaemonApplication This is the actual daemon application class. A global instance of this class is instantiated. It handles the command-line arguments, and instantiates the various daemons. For more information, see `TDaemonApplication` ([341](#)).

TDaemonDef This class defines the daemon in the operation system. The `TDaemonApplication` class has a collection of `TDaemonDef` instances, which it uses to start the various daemons. For more information, see `TDaemonDef` ([344](#)).

As can be seen, a single application can implement one or more daemons (services). Each daemon will be run in a separate thread which is controlled by the application class.

The classes take care of logging through the `TEventLog` ([588](#)) class.

Many options are needed only to make the application behave as a windows service application on windows. These options are ignored in UNIX-like environment. The documentation will mention this.

13.3 Constants, types and variables

13.3.1 Resource strings

`SControlFailed = 'Control code %s handling failed: %s'`

The control code was not handled correctly.

`SCustomCode = '[Custom code %d]'`

A custom code was received.

`SDaemonStatus = 'Daemon %s current status: %s'`

Daemon status report log message.

`SErrApplicationAlreadyCreated =
'An application instance of class %s was already created.'`

A second application instance is created.

`SErrDaemonStartFailed = 'Failed to start daemon %s : %s'`

The application failed to start the daemon.

`SErrDuplicateName = 'Duplicate daemon name: %s'`

Duplicate service name.

`SErrNoDaemonDefForStatus =
'%s: No daemon definition for status report'`

Internal error: no daemon definition to report status for.

`SErrNoDaemonForStatus = '%s: No daemon for status report'`

Internal error: no daemon to report status for.

`SErrNoServiceMapper = 'No daemon mapper class registered.'`

No service mapper was found.

`SErrNothingToDo = 'No command given, use ''%s -h'' for usage.'`

No operation can be performed.

`SErrOnlyOneMapperAllowed =
'Not changing daemon mapper class %s with %s: Only 1 mapper allowed.'`

An attempt was made to install a second service mapper.

```
SErrServiceManagerStartFailed =  
    'Failed to start service manager: %s'
```

Unable to start or contact the service manager.

```
SErrUnknownDaemonClass = 'Unknown daemon class name: %s'
```

Unknown daemon class requested.

```
SErrWindowClass = 'Could not register window class'
```

Could not register window class.

```
SHelpCommand = 'Where command is one of the following:'
```

Options message displayed when writing help to the console.

```
SHelpInstall = 'To install the program as a service'
```

Install option message displayed when writing help to the console.

```
SHelpRun = 'To run the service'
```

Run option message displayed when writing help to the console.

```
SHelpUnInstall = 'To uninstall the service'
```

Uninstall option message displayed when writing help to the console.

```
SHelpUsage = 'Usage: %s [command]'
```

Usage message displayed when writing help to the console.

13.3.2 Types

```
TCurrentStatus = (csStopped, csStartPending, csStopPending, csRunning  
,  
                  csContinuePending, csPausePending, csPaused)
```

Table 13.2: Enumeration values for type TCurrentStatus

Value	Explanation
csContinuePending	The daemon is continuing, but not yet running.
csPaused	The daemon is paused: running but not active.
csPausePending	The daemon is about to be paused.
csRunning	The daemon is running (it is operational).
csStartPending	The daemon is starting, but not yet fully running.
csStopped	The daemon is stopped, i.e. inactive.
csStopPending	The daemon is stopping, but not yet fully stopped.

TCurrentStatus indicates the current state of the daemon. It changes from one state to the next during the time the instance is active. The daemon application changes the state of the daemon, depending on signals it gets from the operating system, by calling the appropriate methods.

```
TCustomControlCodeEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon;
  ACode: DWord; var Handled: Boolean
)
                                of object
```

In case the system sends a non-standard control code to the daemon, an event handler is executed with this prototype.

```
TCustomControlCodeEvEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon;
  ACode: DWord; AEventType: DWord
;
                                AEventData: Pointer;
  var Handled: Boolean) of
  object
```

TCustomControlCodeEvEvent is the type used for the OnControlCodeEvent property in TDaemon.

```
TCustomDaemonApplicationClass = type class(TCustomApplication)
private
  FGUIHandle : THandle;
  FGUIMainLoop : TGuiLoopEvent;
  FEventLog
  : TEventLog;
  FMapper : TCustomDaemonMapper;
  FOnRun : TNotifyEvent
;
  FRunMode : TDaemonRunMode;
  FSysData : TObject;
  FControllerCount
  : Integer;
  FAutoRegisterMessageFile : Boolean;
  procedure BindDaemonDefs
  (AMapper: TCustomDaemonMapper);
  function InstallRun : Boolean;
  procedure SysInstallDaemon(Daemon: TCustomDaemon);
  procedure SysUnInstallDaemon
  (Daemon: TCustomDaemon);
  function UnInstallRun : Boolean;
  function
  RunDaemonsRun : Boolean;
  procedure Main(Argc: DWord; Args: PPchar
  );
  function RunGUIloop(P: Pointer) : Integer;
protected
  procedure
  SysStartUnInstallDaemons;
  procedure SysEndUnInstallDaemons;
  procedure
  SysStartInstallDaemons;
  procedure SysEndInstallDaemons;
  procedure
  SysStartRunDaemons;
  procedure SysEndRunDaemons;
```

```

procedure CreateDaemonController
  (var AController: TDaemonController)
; Virtual;
procedure CreateServiceMapper(var AMapper: TCustomDaemonMapper
)
; Virtual;
procedure CreateDaemonInstance
  (var ADaemon: TCustomDaemon;
   DaemonDef
   : TDaemonDef); Virtual;
procedure RemoveController(AController
: TDaemonController); Virtual;
function GetEventLog : TEventLog
; Virtual;
procedure DoRun; Override;
procedure DoLog(EventType
: TEventType; const Msg: string); Override;
property SysData :
  TObject;
public
  constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override
;
  destructor Destroy; Override;
  procedure ShowException(E: Exception
); Override;
  function CreateDaemon(DaemonDef: TDaemonDef) : TCustomDaemon
;
  procedure StopDaemons(Force: Boolean);
  procedure InstallDaemons
;
  procedure RunDaemons;
  procedure UnInstallDaemons;
  procedure
  ShowHelp; Virtual;
  procedure CreateForm(InstanceClass: TComponentClass
; var Reference)
; Virtual;

  property OnRun
  : TNotifyEvent;
  property EventLog : TEventLog;
  property GUIMainLoop
  : TGuiLoopEvent;
  property GuiHandle : THandle;
  property RunMode
  : TDaemonRunMode;
  property AutoRegisterMessageFile : Boolean;
end

```

Class pointer for TCustomDaemonApplication.

```

TCustomDaemonClass = type class(TDataModule)
private
  FController

```



```

    : TDaemonController;
FDaemonDef : TDaemonDef;
FThread : TThread
;
FStatus : TCurrentStatus;
function GetLogger : TEventLog;
procedure SetStatus(const AValue: TCurrentStatus);
protected
    function
    Start : Boolean; Virtual;
    function Stop : Boolean; Virtual;
    function Pause : Boolean; Virtual;
    function Continue : Boolean
    ; Virtual;
    function Execute : Boolean; Virtual;
    function ShutDown
    : Boolean; Virtual;
    function Install : Boolean; Virtual;
    function
    UnInstall : Boolean; Virtual;
    HandleCustomCode;
    procedure DoThreadTerminate
    (Sender: TObject); Virtual;
public
    procedure CheckControlMessages
    (Wait: Boolean);
    procedure LogMessage(const Msg: string);
    procedure
    ReportStatus;
    property Definition : TDaemonDef;
    property DaemonThread
    : TThread;
    property Controller : TDaemonController;
    property
    Status : TCurrentStatus;
    property Logger : TEventLog;
end

```

The class type is needed in the TDaemonDef ([344](#)) definition.

```

TCustomDaemonMapperClass = type class(TComponent)
private
    FDaemonDefs
    : TDaemonDefs;
    FOnCreate : TNotifyEvent;
    FOnDestroy : TNotifyEvent
    ;
    FOnInstall : TNotifyEvent;
    FOnRun : TNotifyEvent;
    FOnUnInstall
    : TNotifyEvent;
    procedure SetDaemonDefs(const AValue: TDaemonDefs
    );
protected

```

```

    procedure CreateDefs; Virtual;
    procedure DoOnCreate
    ; Virtual;
    procedure DoOnDestroy; Virtual;
    procedure DoOnInstall
    ; Virtual;
    procedure DoOnUnInstall; Virtual;
    procedure DoOnRun
    ; Virtual;
public
    constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override
    ;
    destructor Destroy; Override;
published
    property DaemonDefs
    : TDaemonDefs;
    property OnCreate : TNotifyEvent;
    property OnDestroy
    : TNotifyEvent;
    property OnRun : TNotifyEvent;
    property OnInstall
    : TNotifyEvent;
    property OnUnInstall : TNotifyEvent;
end

```

`TCustomDaemonMapperClass` is the class of `TCustomDaemonMapper`. It is used in the **RegisterDaemonMapper** (326) call.

```

TDaemonClass = type class(TCustomDaemon)
private
    FAfterInstall
    : TDaemonEvent;
    FAfterUnInstall : TDaemonEvent;
    FBeforeInstall
    : TDaemonEvent;
    FBeforeUnInstall : TDaemonEvent;
    FOnContinue
    : TDaemonOKEvent;
    FOnCustomControl : TCustomControlCodeEvent;
    FOnCustomControlEvents : TCustomControlCodeEvEvent;
    FOnExecute
    : TDaemonEvent;
    FOnPause : TDaemonOKEvent;
    FOnShutDown : TDaemonEvent
    ;
    FOnStart : TDaemonOKEvent;
    FOnStop : TDaemonOKEvent;
protected
    function Start : Boolean; Override;
    function Stop : Boolean
    ; Override;
    function Pause : Boolean; Override;
    function Continue
    : Boolean; Override;

```

```

function Execute : Boolean; Override;
function ShutDown : Boolean; Override;
function Install : Boolean
; Override;
function UnInstall : Boolean; Override;
HandleCustomCode
;
public
property Definition : ;
property Status : ;
published
property OnStart : TDaemonOKEvent;
property OnStop : TDaemonOKEvent
;
property OnPause : TDaemonOKEvent;
property OnContinue : TDaemonOKEvent
;
property OnShutDown : TDaemonEvent;
property OnExecute : TDaemonEvent
;
property BeforeInstall : TDaemonEvent;
property AfterInstall
: TDaemonEvent;
property BeforeUnInstall : TDaemonEvent;
property
AfterUnInstall : TDaemonEvent;
property OnControlCode : TCustomControlCodeEvent
;
property OnControlCodeEvent : TCustomControlCodeEvEvent;
end

```

Class type of TDaemon.

`TDaemonEvent` = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon) of object

`TDaemonEvent` is used in event handling. The Sender is the `TCustomDaemon` (327) instance that has initiated the event.

`TDaemonOKEvent` = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon; var OK: Boolean
)
of object

`TDaemonOKEvent` is used in event handling, when a boolean result must be obtained, for instance, to see if an operation was performed successfully.

`TDaemonOption` = (doAllowStop, doAllowPause, doInteractive)

Table 13.3: Enumeration values for type `TDaemonOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>doAllowPause</code>	The daemon can be paused.
<code>doAllowStop</code>	The daemon can be stopped.
<code>doInteractive</code>	The daemon interacts with the desktop.

Enumerated that enumerates the various daemon operation options.

`TDaemonOptions` = Set of `TDaemonOption` = (`doAllowPause`, `doAllowStop`, `doInteractive`)

`TDaemonOption` enumerates the various options a daemon can have.

`TDaemonRunMode` = (`drmUnknown`, `drmInstall`, `drmUninstall`, `drmRun`)

Table 13.4: Enumeration values for type `TDaemonRunMode`

Value	Explanation
<code>drmInstall</code>	Daemon install mode (windows only).
<code>drmRun</code>	Daemon is running normally.
<code>drmUninstall</code>	Daemon uninstall mode (windows only).
<code>drmUnknown</code>	Unknown mode.

`TDaemonRunMode` indicates in what mode the daemon application (as a whole) is currently running.

`TErrorSeverity` = (`esIgnore`, `esNormal`, `esSevere`, `esCritical`)

Table 13.5: Enumeration values for type `TErrorSeverity`

Value	Explanation
<code>esCritical</code>	Error is logged, and startup is stopped if last known good configuration is active, or system is restarted using last known good configuration.
<code>esIgnore</code>	Ignore startup errors.
<code>esNormal</code>	Error is logged, but startup continues.
<code>esSevere</code>	Error is logged, and startup is continued if last known good configuration is active, or system is restarted using last known good configuration.

`TErrorSeverity` determines what action windows takes when the daemon fails to start. It is used on windows only, and is ignored on other platforms.

`TGuiLoopEvent` = procedure of object

`TGuiLoopEvent` is the main GUI loop event procedure prototype. It is called by the application instance in case the daemon has a visual part, which needs to handle visual events. It is run in the main application thread.

`TServiceType` = (`stWin32`, `stDevice`, `stFileSystem`)

Table 13.6: Enumeration values for type `TServiceType`

Value	Explanation
<code>stDevice</code>	Device driver.
<code>stFileSystem</code>	File system driver.
<code>stWin32</code>	Regular win32 service.

The type of service. This type is used on windows only, to signal the operating system what kind of service is being installed or run.

```
TStartType = (stBoot, stSystem, stAuto, stManual, stDisabled)
```

Table 13.7: Enumeration values for type TStartType

Value	Explanation
stAuto	Started automatically by service manager during system startup.
stBoot	During system boot.
stDisabled	Service is not started, it is disabled.
stManual	Started manually by the user or other processes.
stSystem	During load of device drivers.

TStartType can be used to define when the service must be started on windows. This type is not used on other platforms.

```
TWinControlCode = (wccNetBindChange, wccParamChange, wccPreShutdown
,
wccShutdown, wccHardwareProfileChange, wccPowerEvent
,
wccSessionChange, wccTimeChange, wccTriggerEvent
,
wccUserModeReboot)
```

Table 13.8: Enumeration values for type TWinControlCode

Value	Explanation
wccHardwareProfileChange	
wccNetBindChange	
wccParamChange	
wccPowerEvent	
wccPreShutdown	
wccSessionChange	
wccShutdown	
wccTimeChange	
wccTriggerEvent	
wccUserModeReboot	

```
TWinControlCodes = Set of TWinControlCode = (wccHardwareProfileChange
, wccNetBindChange,
wccParamChange, wccPowerEvent
, wccPreShutdown,
wccSessionChange, wccShutdown, wccTimeChange
,
wccTriggerEvent, wccUserModeReboot)
```

13.3.3 Variables

`AppClass` : `TCustomDaemonApplicationClass`

`AppClass` can be set to the class of a `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329) descendant. When the `Application` (325) function needs to create an application instance, this class will be used. If `Application` was already called, the value of `AppClass` will be ignored.

```
CurrentStatusNames : = Array[TCurrentStatus] of string = ('Stopped'
, 'Start Pending', 'Stop Pending', 'Running', 'Continue Pending',
'Pause Pending', 'Paused')
```

Names for various service statuses.

```
DefaultDaemonOptions : TDaemonOptions = [doAllowStop, doAllowPause
]
```

`DefaultDaemonOptions` are the default options with which a daemon definition (`TDaemonDef` (344)) is created.

```
SStatus : = Array[1..5] of string = ('Stop', 'Pause', 'Continue'
, 'Interrogate', 'Shutdown')
```

Status message.

13.4 Procedures and functions

13.4.1 Application

Synopsis: Application instance.

Declaration: `function Application : TCustomDaemonApplication`

Visibility: default

Description: `Application` is the `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329) instance used by this application. The instance is created at the first invocation of this function, so it is possible to use `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (326) to register an alternative `TCustomDaemonApplication` class to run the application.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329), `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (326)

13.4.2 DaemonError

Synopsis: Raise an `EDaemon` exception.

Declaration: `procedure DaemonError(Msg: string)`
`procedure DaemonError(Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaemonError` raises an `EDaemon` (326) exception with message `Msg` or it formats the message using `Fmt` and `Args`.

See also: `EDaemon` (326)

13.4.3 RegisterDaemonApplicationClass

Synopsis: Register alternative TCustomDaemonApplication class.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonApplicationClass`
`(AClass: TCustomDaemonApplicationClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` can be used to register an alternative TCustomDaemonApplication (329) descendent which will be used when creating the global Application (325) instance. Only the last registered class pointer will be used.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication (329), Application (325)

13.4.4 RegisterDaemonClass

Synopsis: Register daemon.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonClass (AClass: TCustomDaemonClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonClass` must be called for each TCustomDaemon (327) descendent that is used in the class: the class pointer and class name are used by the TCustomDaemonMapperClass (321) class to create a TCustomDaemon instance when a daemon is required.

See also: TCustomDaemonMapperClass (321), TCustomDaemon (327)

13.4.5 RegisterDaemonMapper

Synopsis: Register a daemon mapper class.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonMapper (AMapperClass: TCustomDaemonMapperClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonMapper` can be used to register an alternative class for the global daemon-mapper. The daemonmapper will be used only when the application is being run, by the TCustomDaemonApplication (329) code, so registering an alternative mapping class should happen in the initialization section of the application units.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication (329), TCustomDaemonMapperClass (321)

13.5 EDaemon

13.5.1 Description

EDaemon is the exception class used by all code in the DaemonApp unit.

See also: DaemonError (325)

13.6 TCustomDaemon

13.6.1 Description

TCustomDaemon implements all the basic calls that are needed for a daemon to function. Descendents of TCustomDaemon can override these calls to implement the daemon-specific behaviour.

TCustomDaemon is an abstract class, it should never be instantiated. Either a descendent of it must be created and instantiated, or a descendent of TDaemon (337) can be designed to implement the behaviour of the daemon.

See also: TDaemon (337), TDaemonDef (344), TDaemonController (341), TDaemonApplication (341)

13.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
327	CheckControlMessages	
327	LogMessage	Log a message to the system log.
328	ReportStatus	Report the current status to the operating system.

13.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
329	Controller	r	TDaemonController instance controlling this daemon instance.
328	DaemonThread	r	Thread in which daemon is running.
328	Definition	r	The definition used to instantiate this daemon instance.
329	Logger	r	TEventLog instance used to send messages to the system log.
329	Status	rw	Current status of the daemon.

13.6.4 TCustomDaemon.CheckControlMessages

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure CheckControlMessages(Wait: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description:

13.6.5 TCustomDaemon.LogMessage

Synopsis: Log a message to the system log.

Declaration: `procedure LogMessage(const Msg: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: LogMessage can be used to send a message Msg to the system log. A TEventLog (588) instance is used to actually send messages to the system log.

The message is sent with an 'error' flag (using TEventLog.Error (592)).

Errors: None.

See also: ReportStatus (328)

13.6.6 TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus

Synopsis: Report the current status to the operating system.

Declaration: `procedure ReportStatus`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReportStatus` can be used to report the current status to the operating system. The start and stop or pause and continue operations can be slow to start up. This call can (and should) be used to report the current status to the operating system during such lengthy operations, or else it may conclude that the daemon has died.

This call is mostly important on windows operating systems, to notify the service manager that the operation is still in progress.

The implementation of `ReportStatus` simply calls `ReportStatus` in the controller.

Errors: None.

See also: `LogMessage` ([327](#))

13.6.7 TCustomDaemon.Definition

Synopsis: The definition used to instantiate this daemon instance.

Declaration: `Property Definition : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Definition` is the `TDaemonDef` ([344](#)) definition that was used to start the daemon instance. It can be used to retrieve additional information about the intended behaviour of the daemon.

See also: `TDaemonDef` ([344](#))

13.6.8 TCustomDaemon.DaemonThread

Synopsis: Thread in which daemon is running.

Declaration: `Property DaemonThread : TThread`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DaemonThread` is the thread in which the daemon instance is running. Each daemon instance in the application runs in it's own thread, none of which are the main thread of the application. The application main thread is used to handle control messages coming from the operating system.

See also: `Controller` ([329](#))

13.6.9 TCustomDaemon.Controller

Synopsis: `TDaemonController` instance controlling this daemon instance.

Declaration: `Property Controller : TDaemonController`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Controller` points to the `TDaemonController` instance that was created by the application instance to control this daemon.

See also: [DaemonThread \(328\)](#)

13.6.10 TCustomDaemon.Status

Synopsis: Current status of the daemon.

Declaration: `Property Status : TCurrentStatus`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Status` indicates the current status of the daemon. It is set by the various operations that the controller operates on the daemon, and should not be set manually.

`Status` is the value which `ReportStatus` will send to the operating system.

See also: [ReportStatus \(328\)](#)

13.6.11 TCustomDaemon.Logger

Synopsis: `TEventLog` instance used to send messages to the system log.

Declaration: `Property Logger : TEventLog`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Logger` is the `TEventLog` ([588](#)) instance used to send messages to the system log. It is used by the `LogMessage` ([327](#)) call, but is accessible through the `Logger` property in case more configurable logging is needed than offered by `LogMessage`.

See also: [LogMessage \(327\)](#), [TEventLog \(588\)](#)

13.7 TCustomDaemonApplication

13.7.1 Description

`TCustomDaemonApplication` is a `TCustomApplication` ([302](#)) descendent which is the main application instance for a daemon. It handles the command-line and decides what to do when the application is started, depending on the command-line options given to the application, by calling the various methods.

It creates the necessary `TDaemon` ([337](#)) instances by checking the `TCustomDaemonMapperClass` ([321](#)) instance that contains the daemon maps.

See also: [TCustomApplication \(302\)](#), [TCustomDaemonMapperClass \(321\)](#)

13.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
330	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
331	CreateDaemon	Create daemon instance.
332	CreateForm	Create a component.
330	Destroy	Clean up the TCustomDaemonApplication instance.
331	InstallDaemons	Install all daemons.
331	RunDaemons	Run all daemons.
330	ShowException	Show an exception.
332	ShowHelp	Display a help message.
331	StopDaemons	Stop all daemons.
332	UnInstallDaemons	Uninstall all daemons.

13.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
334	AutoRegisterMessageFile	rw	Automatically register the message file.
333	EventLog	r	Event logger instance.
333	GuiHandle	rw	Handle of GUI loop main application window handle.
333	GUIMainLoop	rw	GUI main loop callback.
332	OnRun	rw	Event executed when the daemon is run.
333	RunMode	r	Application mode.

13.7.4 TCustomDaemonApplication.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

13.7.5 TCustomDaemonApplication.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up the TCustomDaemonApplication instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroy cleans up the event log instance and then calls the inherited destroy.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog ([333](#))

13.7.6 TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowException

Synopsis: Show an exception.

Declaration: `procedure ShowException(E: Exception); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: ShowException is overridden by TCustomDaemonApplication, it sends the exception message to the system log.

13.7.7 TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon

Synopsis: Create daemon instance.

Declaration: `function CreateDaemon (DaemonDef: TDaemonDef) : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateDaemon` is called whenever a `TCustomDaemon` (327) instance must be created from a `TDaemonDef` (344) daemon definition, passed in `DemonDef`. It initializes the `TCustomDaemon` instance, and creates a controller instance of type `TDaemonController` (341) to control the daemon. Finally, it assigns the created daemon to the `TDaemonDef.Instance` (346) property.

Errors: In case of an error, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDaemonController` (341), `TCustomDaemon` (327), `TDaemonDef` (344), `TDaemonDef.Instance` (346)

13.7.8 TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons

Synopsis: Stop all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure StopDaemons (Force: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StopDaemons` sends the `STOP` control code to all daemons, or the `SHUTDOWN` control code in case `Force` is `True`.

See also: `TDaemonController.Controller` (343), `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (332), `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (331)

13.7.9 TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons

Synopsis: Install all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure InstallDaemons`

Visibility: public

Description: `InstallDaemons` installs all known daemons, i.e. registers them with the service manager on Windows. This method is called if the application is run with the `-i` or `-install` or `/install` command-line option.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (332), `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (331), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` (331)

13.7.10 TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons

Synopsis: Run all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure RunDaemons`

Visibility: public

Description: `RunDaemons` runs (starts) all known daemons. This method is called if the application is run with the `-r` or `-run` methods.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (332), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` (331), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` (331)

13.7.11 TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons

Synopsis: Uninstall all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure UnInstallDaemons`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnInstallDaemons` uninstalls all known daemons, i.e. deregisters them with the service manager on Windows. This method is called if the application is run with the `-u` or `-uninstall` or `/uninstall` command-line option.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (331), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` (331), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` (331)

13.7.12 TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowHelp

Synopsis: Display a help message.

Declaration: `procedure ShowHelp; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShowHelp` displays a help message explaining the command-line options on standard output.

13.7.13 TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateForm

Synopsis: Create a component.

Declaration: `procedure CreateForm(InstanceClass: TComponentClass; var Reference)
; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateForm` creates an instance of `InstanceClass` and fills `Reference` with the class instance pointer. It's main purpose is to give an IDE a means of assuring that forms or datamodules are created on application startup: the IDE will generate calls for all modules that are auto-created.

Errors: An exception may arise if the instance wants to stream itself from resources, but no resources are found.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon` (331)

13.7.14 TCustomDaemonApplication.OnRun

Synopsis: Event executed when the daemon is run.

Declaration: `Property OnRun : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `OnRun` is triggered when the daemon application is run and no appropriate options (one of install, uninstall or run) was given.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (331), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` (331), `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (332)

13.7.15 TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog

Synopsis: Event logger instance.

Declaration: `Property EventLog : TEventLog`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `EventLog` is the `TEventLog` (588) instance which is used to log events to the system log. It is created when the application instance is created, and destroyed when the application is destroyed.

See also: `TEventLog` (588)

13.7.16 TCustomDaemonApplication.GUIMainLoop

Synopsis: GUI main loop callback.

Declaration: `Property GUIMainLoop : TGuiLoopEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `GUIMainLoop` contains a reference to a method that can be called to process a main GUI loop. The procedure should return only when the main GUI has finished and the application should exit. It is called when the daemons are running.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle` (333)

13.7.17 TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle

Synopsis: Handle of GUI loop main application window handle.

Declaration: `Property GuiHandle : THandle`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `GuiHandle` is the handle of a GUI window which can be used to run a message handling loop on. It is created when no `GUIMainLoop` (333) procedure exists, and the application creates and runs a message loop by itself.

See also: `GUIMainLoop` (333)

13.7.18 TCustomDaemonApplication.RunMode

Synopsis: Application mode.

Declaration: `Property RunMode : TDaemonRunMode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `RunMode` indicates in which mode the application is running currently. It is set automatically by examining the command-line, and when set, one of `InstallDaemons` (331), `RunDaemons` (331) or `UnInstallDaemons` (332) is called.

See also: `InstallDaemons` (331), `RunDaemons` (331), `UnInstallDaemons` (332)

13.7.19 TCustomDaemonApplication.AutoRegisterMessageFile

Synopsis: Automatically register the message file.

Declaration: `Property AutoRegisterMessageFile : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AutoRegisterMessageFile` can be set to `True` to automatically register the service binary as the source of resource strings for the event viewer.

The event log mechanism uses several resource strings in the `fclel.res` file. These resource strings must be registered in the windows event viewer. Setting this property to `True` takes care of this registration when the program is started.

13.8 TCustomDaemonMapper

13.8.1 Description

The `TCustomDaemonMapper` class is responsible for mapping a daemon definition to an actual `TDaemon` instance. It maintains a `TDaemonDefs` (348) collection with daemon definitions, which can be used to map the definition of a daemon to a `TDaemon` descendent class.

An IDE such as Lazarus can design a `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance visually, to help establish the relationship between various `TDaemonDef` (344) definitions and the actual `TDaemon` (337) instances that will be used to run the daemons.

The `TCustomDaemonMapper` class has no support for streaming. The `TDaemonMapper` (350) class has support for streaming (and hence visual designing).

See also: `TDaemon` (337), `TDaemonDef` (344), `TDaemonDefs` (348), `TDaemonMapper` (350)

13.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
334	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TCustomDaemonMapper</code> .
335	Destroy	Clean up and destroy a <code>TCustomDaemonMapper</code> instance.

13.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
335	<code>DaemonDefs</code>	<code>rw</code>	Collection of daemons.
335	<code>OnCreate</code>	<code>rw</code>	Event called when the daemon mapper is created.
336	<code>OnDestroy</code>	<code>rw</code>	Event called when the daemon mapper is freed.
336	<code>OnInstall</code>	<code>rw</code>	Event called when the daemons are installed.
336	<code>OnRun</code>	<code>rw</code>	Event called when the daemons are executed.
336	<code>OnUnInstall</code>	<code>rw</code>	Event called when the daemons are uninstalled.

13.8.4 TCustomDaemonMapper.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCustomDaemonMapper`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of a `TCustomDaemonMapper`. It creates the `TDaemonDefs` (348) collection and then calls the inherited constructor. It should never be necessary to create a daemon mapper manually, the application will create a global `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance.

See also: `TDaemonDefs` (348), `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329), `TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy` (335)

13.8.5 `TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy`

Synopsis: Clean up and destroy a `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` frees the `DaemonDefs` (335) collection and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDaemonDefs` (348), `TCustomDaemonMapper.Create` (334)

13.8.6 `TCustomDaemonMapper.DaemonDefs`

Synopsis: Collection of daemons.

Declaration: `Property DaemonDefs : TDaemonDefs`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DaemonDefs` is the application's global collection of daemon definitions. This collection will be used to decide at runtime which `TDaemon` class must be created to run or install a daemon.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329)

13.8.7 `TCustomDaemonMapper.OnCreate`

Synopsis: Event called when the daemon mapper is created.

Declaration: `Property OnCreate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCreate` is an event that is called when the `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance is created. It can for instance be used to dynamically create daemon definitions at runtime.

See also: `OnDestroy` (336), `OnUnInstall` (336), `OnCreate` (335), `OnDestroy` (336)

13.8.8 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnDestroy

Synopsis: Event called when the daemon mapper is freed.

Declaration: `Property OnDestroy : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnDestroy` is called when the global daemon mapper instance is destroyed. it can be used to release up any resources that were allocated when the instance was created, in the `OnCreate` (335) event.

See also: `OnCreate` (335), `OnInstall` (336), `OnUnInstall` (336), `OnCreate` (335)

13.8.9 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnRun

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are executed.

Declaration: `Property OnRun : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnRun` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to run the daemons (with command-line parameter '-r'). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnInstall` (336), `OnUnInstall` (336), `OnCreate` (335), `OnDestroy` (336)

13.8.10 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnInstall

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are installed.

Declaration: `Property OnInstall : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnInstall` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to install the daemons (with command-line parameter '-i' or '/install'). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnRun` (336), `OnUnInstall` (336), `OnCreate` (335), `OnDestroy` (336)

13.8.11 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnUnInstall

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are uninstalled.

Declaration: `Property OnUnInstall : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnUnInstall` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to uninstall the daemons (with command-line parameter '-u' or '/uninstall'). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnRun` (336), `OnInstall` (336), `OnCreate` (335), `OnDestroy` (336)

13.9 TDaemon

13.9.1 Description

TDaemon is a TCustomDaemon (327) descendent which is meant for development in a visual environment: it contains event handlers for all major operations. Whenever a TCustomDaemon method is executed, it's execution is shunted to the event handler, which can be filled with code in the IDE.

All the events of the daemon are executed in the thread in which the daemon's controller is running (as given by DaemonThread (328)), which is not the main program thread.

See also: TCustomDaemon (327), TDaemonController (341)

13.9.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
340	AfterInstall	rw	Called after the daemon was installed.
340	AfterUnInstall	rw	Called after the daemon is uninstalled.
339	BeforeInstall	rw	Called before the daemon will be installed.
340	BeforeUnInstall	rw	Called before the daemon is uninstalled.
337	Definition		
338	OnContinue	rw	Daemon continue.
340	OnControlCode	rw	Called when a control code is received for the daemon.
341	OnControlCodeEvent	rw	
339	OnExecute	rw	Daemon execute event.
338	OnPause	rw	Daemon pause event.
339	OnShutDown	rw	Daemon shutdown.
337	OnStart	rw	Daemon start event.
338	OnStop	rw	Daemon stop event.
337	Status		

13.9.3 TDaemon.Definition

Declaration: Property Definition :

Visibility: public

Access:

13.9.4 TDaemon.Status

Declaration: Property Status :

Visibility: public

Access:

13.9.5 TDaemon.OnStart

Synopsis: Daemon start event.

Declaration: Property OnStart : TDaemonOKEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnStart` is the event called when the daemon must be started. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (328) method.

If the start of the daemon should do some continuous action, then this action should be performed in a new thread: this thread should then be created and started in the `OnExecute` (339) event handler, so the event handler can return at once.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStop` (338), `TDaemon.OnExecute` (339), `TDaemon.OnContinue` (338), `ReportStatus` (328)

13.9.6 TDaemon.OnStop

Synopsis: Daemon stop event.

Declaration: `Property OnStop : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnStart` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (328) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (339) event, this is the place where the thread should be stopped.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (337), `TDaemon.OnPause` (338), `ReportStatus` (328)

13.9.7 TDaemon.OnPause

Synopsis: Daemon pause event.

Declaration: `Property OnPause : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnPause` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (328) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (339) event, this is the place where the thread's execution should be suspended.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStop` (338), `TDaemon.OnContinue` (338), `ReportStatus` (328)

13.9.8 TDaemon.OnContinue

Synopsis: Daemon continue.

Declaration: `Property OnContinue : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnPause` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (328) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (339) event and it was suspended in a `OnPause` (337) event, this is the place where the thread's executed should be resumed.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (337), `TDaemon.OnPause` (338), `ReportStatus` (328)

13.9.9 TDaemon.OnShutDown

Synopsis: Daemon shutdown.

Declaration: `Property OnShutDown : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnShutDown` is the event called when the daemon must be shut down. When the system is being shut down and the daemon does not respond to stop signals, then a shutdown message is sent to the daemon. This event can be used to respond to such a message. The daemon process will simply be stopped after this event.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (339), this is the place where the thread's executed should be stopped or the thread freed from memory.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (337), `TDaemon.OnPause` (338), `ReportStatus` (328)

13.9.10 TDaemon.OnExecute

Synopsis: Daemon execute event.

Declaration: `Property OnExecute : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnExecute` is executed once after the daemon was started. If assigned, it should perform whatever operation the daemon is designed.

If the daemon's action is event based, then no `OnExecute` handler is needed, and the events will control the daemon's execution: the daemon thread will then go in a loop, passing control messages to the daemon.

If an `OnExecute` event handler is present, the checking for control messages must be done by the implementation of the `OnExecute` handler.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (337), `TDaemon.OnStop` (338)

13.9.11 TDaemon.BeforeInstall

Synopsis: Called before the daemon will be installed.

Declaration: `Property BeforeInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeInstall` is called before the daemon is installed. It can be done to specify extra dependencies, or change the daemon description etc.

See also: [AfterInstall \(340\)](#), [BeforeUnInstall \(340\)](#), [AfterUnInstall \(340\)](#)

13.9.12 TDaemon.AfterInstall

Synopsis: Called after the daemon was installed.

Declaration: `Property AfterInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterInstall` is called after the daemon was successfully installed.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(339\)](#), [BeforeUnInstall \(340\)](#), [AfterUnInstall \(340\)](#)

13.9.13 TDaemon.BeforeUnInstall

Synopsis: Called before the daemon is uninstalled.

Declaration: `Property BeforeUnInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeUnInstall` is called before the daemon is uninstalled.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(339\)](#), [AfterInstall \(340\)](#), [AfterUnInstall \(340\)](#)

13.9.14 TDaemon.AfterUnInstall

Synopsis: Called after the daemon is uninstalled.

Declaration: `Property AfterUnInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterUnInstall` is called after the daemon is successfully uninstalled.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(339\)](#), [AfterInstall \(340\)](#), [BeforeUnInstall \(340\)](#)

13.9.15 TDaemon.OnControlCode

Synopsis: Called when a control code is received for the daemon.

Declaration: `Property OnControlCode : TCustomControlCodeEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnControlCode` is called when the daemon receives a control code. If the daemon has not handled the control code, it should set the `Handled` parameter to `False`. By default it is set to `True`.

See also: [Architecture \(315\)](#)

13.9.16 TDaemon.OnControlCodeEvent

Synopsis:

Declaration: Property OnControlCodeEvent : TCustomControlCodeEvEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description:

13.10 TDaemonApplication

13.10.1 Description

`TDaemonApplication` is the default `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329) descendent that is used to run the daemon application. It is possible to register an alternative `TCustomDaemonApplication` class (using `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (326)) to run the application in a different manner.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329), `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (326)

13.11 TDaemonController

13.11.1 Description

`TDaemonController` is a class that is used by the `TDaemonApplication` (341) class to control the daemon during runtime. The `TDaemonApplication` class instantiates an instance of `TDaemonController` for each daemon in the application and communicates with the daemon through the `TDaemonController` instance. It should rarely be necessary to access or use this class.

See also: `TCustomDaemon` (327), `TDaemonApplication` (341)

13.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
343	Controller	Controller.
342	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TDaemonController</code> class.
342	Destroy	Free a <code>TDaemonController</code> instance.
342	Main	Daemon main entry point.
343	ReportStatus	Report the status to the operating system.
342	StartService	Start the service.

13.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
344	CheckPoint	r	Send checkpoint signal to the operating system.
343	Daemon	r	Daemon instance this controller controls.
344	LastStatus	r	Last reported status.
343	Params	r	Parameters passed to the daemon.

13.11.4 TDaemonController.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TDaemonController` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TDaemonController` class. It should never be necessary to create a new instance manually, because the controllers are created by the global `TDaemonApplication` (341) instance, and `AOwner` will be set to the global `TDaemonApplication` (341) instance.

See also: `TDaemonApplication` (341), `Destroy` (342)

13.11.5 TDaemonController.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a `TDaemonController` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` deallocates some resources allocated when the instance was created.

See also: `Create` (342)

13.11.6 TDaemonController.StartService

Synopsis: Start the service.

Declaration: `procedure StartService; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartService` starts the service controlled by this instance.

Errors: None.

See also: `TDaemonController.Main` (342)

13.11.7 TDaemonController.Main

Synopsis: Daemon main entry point.

Declaration: `procedure Main(Argc: DWord; Args: PPChar); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Main` is the service's main entry point, called when the system wants to start the service. The global application will call this function whenever required, with the appropriate arguments.

The standard implementation starts the daemon thread, and waits for it to stop. All other daemon action - such as responding to control code events - is handled by the thread.

Errors: If the daemon thread cannot be created, an exception is raised.

See also: `TDaemonThread` (351)

13.11.8 TDaemonController.Controller

Synopsis: Controller.

Declaration: `procedure Controller(ControlCode: DWord; EventType: DWord;
 EventData: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Controller` is responsible for sending the control code to the daemon thread so it can be processed.

This routine is currently only used on windows, as there is no service manager on Linux. Later on this may be changed to respond to signals on Linux as well.

See also: `TDaemon.OnControlCode` ([340](#))

13.11.9 TDaemonController.ReportStatus

Synopsis: Report the status to the operating system.

Declaration: `function ReportStatus : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReportStatus` reports the status of the daemon to the operating system. On windows, this sends the current service status to the service manager. On other operating systems, this sends a message to the system log.

Errors: If an error occurs, an error message is sent to the system log.

See also: `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` ([328](#)), `TDaemonController.LastStatus` ([344](#))

13.11.10 TDaemonController.Daemon

Synopsis: Daemon instance this controller controls.

Declaration: `Property Daemon : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Daemon` is the daemon instance that is controller by this instance of the `TDaemonController` class.

13.11.11 TDaemonController.Params

Synopsis: Parameters passed to the daemon.

Declaration: `Property Params : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Params` contains the parameters passed to the daemon application by the operating system, comparable to the application's command-line parameters. The property is set by the `Main` ([342](#)) method.

13.11.12 TDaemonController.LastStatus

Synopsis: Last reported status.

Declaration: `Property LastStatus : TCurrentStatus`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `LastStatus` is the last status reported to the operating system.

See also: `ReportStatus` ([343](#))

13.11.13 TDaemonController.CheckPoint

Synopsis: Send checkpoint signal to the operating system.

Declaration: `Property CheckPoint : DWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CheckPoint` can be used to send a checkpoint signal during lengthy operations, to signal that a lengthy operation is in progress. This should be used mainly on windows, to signal the service manager that the service is alive.

See also: `ReportStatus` ([343](#))

13.12 TDaemonDef

13.12.1 Description

`TDaemonDef` contains the definition of a daemon in the application: The name of the daemon, which `TCustomDaemon` ([327](#)) descendent should be started to run the daemon, a description, and various other options should be set in this class. The global `TDaemonApplication` instance maintains a collection of `TDaemonDef` instances and will use these definitions to install or start the various daemons.

See also: `TDaemonApplication` ([341](#)), `TDaemon` ([337](#))

13.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
345	Create	Create a new <code>TDaemonDef</code> instance.
345	Destroy	Free a <code>TDaemonDef</code> from memory.

13.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
345	DaemonClass	r	TDaemon class to use for this daemon.
346	DaemonClassName	rw	Name of the TDaemon class to use for this daemon.
346	Description	rw	Description of the daemon.
347	DisplayName	rw	Displayed name of the daemon (service).
347	Enabled	rw	Is the daemon enabled or not.
346	Instance	rw	Instance of the daemon class.
348	LogStatusReport	rw	Log the status report to the system log.
346	Name	rw	Name of the daemon (service).
348	OnCreateInstance	rw	Event called when a daemon is instantiated.
347	Options	rw	Service options.
347	RunArguments	rw	Additional command-line arguments when running daemon.
348	WinBindings	rw	Windows-specific bindings (windows only).

13.12.4 TDaemonDef.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TDaemonDef instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new TDaemonDef instance. It should not be necessary to instantiate a definition manually, it is handled by the collection.

See also: TDaemonDefs ([348](#))

13.12.5 TDaemonDef.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a TDaemonDef from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes the TDaemonDef from memory.

13.12.6 TDaemonDef.DaemonClass

Synopsis: TDaemon class to use for this daemon.

Declaration: `Property DaemonClass : TCustomDaemonClass`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DaemonClass` is the TDaemon class that is used when this service is requested. It is looked up in the application's global daemon mapper by its name in `DaemonClassName` ([346](#)).

See also: `DaemonClassName` ([346](#)), `TDaemonMapper` ([350](#))

13.12.7 TDaemonDef.Instance

Synopsis: Instance of the daemon class.

Declaration: `Property Instance : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Instance` points to the `TDaemon` (337) instance that is used when the service is in operation at runtime.

See also: `TDaemonDef.DaemonClass` (345)

13.12.8 TDaemonDef.DaemonClassName

Synopsis: Name of the `TDaemon` class to use for this daemon.

Declaration: `Property DaemonClassName : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DaemonClassName` is the name of the `TCustomDaemon` class that will be used whenever the service is needed. The name is used to look up the class pointer registered in the daemon mapper, when `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329) creates an instance of the daemon.

See also: `TDaemonDef.Instance` (346), `TDaemonDef.DaemonClass` (345), `RegisterDaemonClass` (326), `TCustomDaemon` (327), `TCustomDaemonApplication` (329)

13.12.9 TDaemonDef.Name

Synopsis: Name of the daemon (service).

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` is the internal name of the daemon as it is known to the operating system.

See also: `TDaemonDef.DisplayName` (347)

13.12.10 TDaemonDef.Description

Synopsis: Description of the daemon.

Declaration: `Property Description : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Description` is the description shown in the Windows service manager when managing this service. It is supplied to the windows service manager when the daemon is installed.

13.12.11 TDaemonDef.DisplayName

Synopsis: Displayed name of the daemon (service).

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayName` is the displayed name of the daemon as it is known to the operating system.

See also: `TDaemonDef.Name` ([346](#))

13.12.12 TDaemonDef.RunArguments

Synopsis: Additional command-line arguments when running daemon.

Declaration: `Property RunArguments : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RunArguments` specifies any additional command-line arguments that should be specified when running the daemon: these arguments will be passed to the service manager when registering the service on windows.

13.12.13 TDaemonDef.Options

Synopsis: Service options.

Declaration: `Property Options : TDaemonOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` tells the operating system which operations can be performed on the daemon while it is running.

This option is only used during the installation of the daemon.

13.12.14 TDaemonDef.Enabled

Synopsis: Is the daemon enabled or not.

Declaration: `Property Enabled : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Enabled` specifies whether a daemon should be installed, run or uninstalled. Disabled daemons are not installed, run or uninstalled.

13.12.15 TDaemonDef.WinBindings

Synopsis: Windows-specific bindings (windows only).

Declaration: `Property WinBindings : TWinBindings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WinBindings` is used to group together the windows-specific properties of the daemon. This property is totally ignored on other platforms.

See also: `TWinBindings` ([356](#))

13.12.16 TDaemonDef.OnCreateInstance

Synopsis: Event called when a daemon is instantiated.

Declaration: `Property OnCreateInstance : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCreateInstance` is called whenever an instance of the daemon is created. This can be used for instance when a single `TDaemon` class is used to run several services, to correctly initialize the `TDaemon`.

13.12.17 TDaemonDef.LogStatusReport

Synopsis: Log the status report to the system log.

Declaration: `Property LogStatusReport : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogStatusReport` can be set to `True` to send the status reports also to the system log. This can be used to track the progress of the daemon.

See also: `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` ([328](#))

13.13 TDaemonDefs

13.13.1 Description

`TDaemonDefs` is the class of the global list of daemon definitions. It contains an item for each daemon in the application.

Normally it is not necessary to create an instance of `TDaemonDefs` manually. The global `TCustomDaemonMapper` ([334](#)) instance will create a collection and maintain it.

See also: `TCustomDaemonMapper` ([334](#)), `TDaemonDef` ([344](#))

13.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
349	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDaemonDefs</code> collection.
350	DaemonDefByName	Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.
349	FindDaemonDef	Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.
349	IndexOfDaemonDef	Return index of daemon definition.

13.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
350	Daemons	rw	Indexed access to <code>TDaemonDef</code> instances.

13.13.4 TDaemonDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDaemonDefs` collection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent; AClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TDaemonDefs` collection. It keeps the `AOwner` parameter for future reference and calls the inherited constructor.

Normally it is not necessary to create an instance of `TDaemonDefs` manually. The global `TCustomDaemonMapper` ([334](#)) instance will create a collection and maintain it.

See also: `TDaemonDef` ([344](#))

13.13.5 TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef

Synopsis: Return index of daemon definition.

Declaration: `function IndexOfDaemonDef(const DaemonName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfDaemonDef` searches the collection for a `TDaemonDef` ([344](#)) instance with a name equal to `DaemonName`, and returns its index. It returns -1 if no definition was found with this name. The search is case insensitive.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef` ([349](#)), `TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName` ([350](#))

13.13.6 TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef

Synopsis: Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.

Declaration: `function FindDaemonDef(const DaemonName: string) : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindDaemonDef` searches the list of daemon definitions and returns the `TDaemonDef` ([344](#)) instance whose name matches `DaemonName`. If no definition is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef` ([349](#)), `TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName` ([350](#))

13.13.7 TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName

Synopsis: Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.

Declaration: `function DaemonDefByName(const DaemonName: string) : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindDaemonDef` searches the list of daemon definitions and returns the `TDaemonDef` (344) instance whose name matches `DemonName`. If no definition is found, an `EDaemon` (326) exception is raised.

The `FindDaemonDef` (349) call does not raise an error, but returns `Nil` instead.

Errors: If no definition is found, an `EDaemon` (326) exception is raised.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef` (349), `TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef` (349)

13.13.8 TDaemonDefs.Daemons

Synopsis: Indexed access to `TDaemonDef` instances.

Declaration: `Property Daemons[Index: Integer]: TDaemonDef; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Daemons` is the default property of `TDaemonDefs`, it gives access to the `TDaemonDef` instances in the collection.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (344)

13.14 TDaemonMapper

13.14.1 Description

`TDaemonMapper` is a direct descendent of `TCustomDaemonMapper` (334), but introduces no new functionality. It's sole purpose is to make it possible for an IDE to stream the `TDaemonMapper` instance.

For this purpose, it overrides the `Create` constructor and tries to find a resource with the same name as the class name, and tries to stream the instance from this resource.

If the instance should not be streamed, the `CreateNew` (351) constructor can be used instead.

See also: `CreateNew` (351), `Create` (351)

13.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
351	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TDaemonMapper</code> instance and initializes it from streamed resources.
351	<code>CreateNew</code>	Create a new <code>TDaemonMapper</code> instance without initialization.

13.14.3 TDaemonMapper.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TDaemonMapper` instance and initializes it from streamed resources.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TDaemonMapper` and attempts to read the component from resources compiled in the application.

If the instance should not be streamed, the `CreateNew` (351) constructor can be used instead.

Errors: If no streaming system is found, or no resource exists for the class, an exception is raised.

See also: `CreateNew` (351)

13.14.4 TDaemonMapper.CreateNew

Synopsis: Create a new `TDaemonMapper` instance without initialization.

Declaration: `constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent; Dummy: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateNew` initializes a new instance of `TDaemonMapper`. In difference with the `Create` constructor, it does not attempt to read the component from a stream.

See also: `Create` (351)

13.15 TDaemonThread

13.15.1 Description

`TDaemonThread` is the thread in which the daemons in the application are run. Each daemon is run in it's own thread.

It should not be necessary to create these threads manually, the `TDaemonController` (341) class will take care of this.

See also: `TDaemonController` (341), `TDaemon` (337)

13.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
352	<code>CheckControlMessage</code>	Check if a control message has arrived.
353	<code>ContinueDaemon</code>	Continue the daemon.
352	<code>Create</code>	Create a new thread.
352	<code>Execute</code>	Run the daemon.
353	<code>InterrogateDaemon</code>	Report the daemon status.
353	<code>PauseDaemon</code>	Pause the daemon.
353	<code>ShutDownDaemon</code>	Shut down daemon.
352	<code>StopDaemon</code>	Stops the daemon.

13.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
354	<code>Daemon</code>	r	Daemon instance.

13.15.4 TDaemonThread.Create

Synopsis: Create a new thread.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ADaemon: TCustomDaemon)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new thread instance. It initializes the `Daemon` property with the passed `ADaemon`. The thread is created suspended.

See also: `TDaemonThread.Daemon` ([354](#))

13.15.5 TDaemonThread.Execute

Synopsis: Run the daemon.

Declaration: `procedure Execute; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` starts executing the daemon and waits till the daemon stops. It also listens for control codes for the daemon.

See also: `TDaemon.Execute` ([337](#))

13.15.6 TDaemonThread.CheckControlMessage

Synopsis: Check if a control message has arrived.

Declaration: `procedure CheckControlMessage (WaitForMessage: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckControlMessage` checks if a control message has arrived for the daemon and executes the appropriate daemon message. If the parameter `WaitForMessage` is `True`, then the routine waits for the message to arrive. If it is `False` and no message is present, it returns at once.

13.15.7 TDaemonThread.StopDaemon

Synopsis: Stops the daemon.

Declaration: `function StopDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopDaemon` attempts to stop the `Daemon` by calling methods in the `TCustomDaemon` instance. `StopDaemon` also terminates the thread. The return value is `True` if the `Daemon` was successfully stopped in the method.

See also: `TDaemonThread.Daemon` ([354](#)), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` ([353](#)), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` ([353](#)), `TCustomDaemon` ([327](#)), `TThread.Terminate` ([??](#))

13.15.8 TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon

Synopsis: Pause the daemon.

Declaration: `function PauseDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PauseDaemon` attempts to pause the Daemon by calling methods in the `TCustomDaemon` (327) instance, and calling `Suspend` to suspend the thread. It returns `True` if the attempt was successful.

See also: `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (352), `TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon` (353), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` (353), `TCustomDaemon` (327), `TThread.Suspend` (??)

13.15.9 TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon

Synopsis: Continue the daemon.

Declaration: `function ContinueDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ContinueDaemon` attempts to restart the Daemon by calling methods in the `TCustomDaemon` (327) instance. It returns `True` if the attempt was successful.

See also: `TDaemonThread.Daemon` (354), `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (352), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` (353), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` (353), `TCustomDaemon` (327)

13.15.10 TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon

Synopsis: Shut down daemon.

Declaration: `function ShutDownDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShutDownDaemon` shuts down the Daemon for the thread. This happens normally only when the system is shut down and the daemon didn't respond to the stop request. The return value is the result from the method in the `TCustomDaemon` (327) instance. The thread is terminated in this method.

See also: `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (352), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` (353), `TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon` (353), `TCustomDaemon` (327), `TThread.Terminate` (??)

13.15.11 TDaemonThread.InterrogateDaemon

Synopsis: Report the daemon status.

Declaration: `function InterrogateDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InterrogateDaemon` simply calls `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` (328) for the daemon that is running in this thread. It always returns `True`.

See also: `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` (328)

13.15.12 TDaemonThread.Daemon

Synopsis: Daemon instance.

Declaration: `Property Daemon : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Daemon` is the daemon instance which is running in this thread.

See also: `TDaemon` ([337](#))

13.16 TDependencies

13.16.1 Description

`TDependencies` is just a descendent of `TCollection` which contains a series of dependencies on other services. It overrides the default property of `TCollection` to return `TDependency` ([355](#)) instances.

See also: `TDependency` ([355](#))

13.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
354	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDependencies</code> collection.

13.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
354	Items	rw	Default property override.

13.16.4 TDependencies.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDependencies` collection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` Create a new instance of a `TDependencies` collection.

13.16.5 TDependencies.Items

Synopsis: Default property override.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TDependency; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` overrides the default property of `TCollection` so the items are of type `TDependency` ([355](#)).

See also: `TDependency` ([355](#))

13.17 TDependency

13.17.1 Description

TDependency is a collection item used to specify dependencies on other daemons (services) in windows. It is used only on windows and when installing the daemon: changing the dependencies of a running daemon has no effect.

See also: TDependencies ([354](#)), TDaemonDef ([344](#))

13.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
355	Assign	Assign TDependency instance to another.

13.17.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
355	IsGroup	rw	Name refers to a service group.
355	Name	rw	Name of the service.

13.17.4 TDependency.Assign

Synopsis: Assign TDependency instance to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign is overridden by TDependency to copy all properties from one instance to another.

13.17.5 TDependency.Name

Synopsis: Name of the service.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name is the name of a service or service group that the current daemon depends on.

See also: TDependency.IsGroup ([355](#))

13.17.6 TDependency.IsGroup

Synopsis: Name refers to a service group.

Declaration: `Property IsGroup : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: IsGroup can be set to True to indicate that Name refers to the name of a service group.

See also: TDependency.Name ([355](#))

13.18 TWinBindings

13.18.1 Description

`TWinBindings` contains windows-specific properties for the daemon definition (in `TDaemonDef.WinBindings` (348)). If the daemon should not run on Windows, then the properties can be ignored.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (344), `TDaemonDef.WinBindings` (348)

13.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
357	<code>Assign</code>	Copies all properties.
356	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TWinBindings</code> instance.
356	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove a <code>TWinBindings</code> instance from memory.

13.18.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
360	<code>AcceptedCodes</code>	rw	
357	<code>Dependencies</code>	rw	Service dependencies.
357	<code>ErrCode</code>	rw	Service specific error code.
359	<code>ErrorSeverity</code>	rw	Error severity in case of startup failure.
358	<code>GroupName</code>	rw	Service group name.
359	<code>IDTag</code>	rw	Location in the service group.
358	<code>Password</code>	rw	Password for service startup.
359	<code>ServiceType</code>	rw	Type of service.
358	<code>StartType</code>	rw	Service startup type.
358	<code>UserName</code>	rw	Username to run service as.
359	<code>WaitHint</code>	rw	Timeout wait hint.
357	<code>Win32ErrCode</code>	rw	General windows error code.

13.18.4 TWinBindings.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TWinBindings` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes various properties such as the dependencies.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (344), `TDaemonDef.WinBindings` (348), `TWinBindings.Dependencies` (357)

13.18.5 TWinBindings.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a `TWinBindings` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the `TWinBindings` instance.

See also: `TWinBindings.Dependencies` (357), `TWinBindings.Create` (356)

13.18.6 TWinBindings.Assign

Synopsis: Copies all properties.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` is overridden by `TWinBindings` so all properties are copied from `Source` to the `TWinBindings` instance.

13.18.7 TWinBindings.ErrCode

Synopsis: Service specific error code.

Declaration: `Property ErrCode : DWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ErrCode` contains a service specific error code that is reported with `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` (328) to the windows service manager. If it is zero, then the contents of `Win32ErrCode` (357) are reported. If it is nonzero, then the windows-errorcode is set to `ERROR_SERVICE_SPECIFIC_ERROR`.

See also: `TWinBindings.Win32ErrCode` (357)

13.18.8 TWinBindings.Win32ErrCode

Synopsis: General windows error code.

Declaration: `Property Win32ErrCode : DWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Win32ErrCode` is a general windows service error code that can be reported with `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` (328) to the windows service manager. It is sent if `ErrCode` (357) is zero.

See also: `ErrCode` (357)

13.18.9 TWinBindings.Dependencies

Synopsis: Service dependencies.

Declaration: `Property Dependencies : TDependencies`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Dependencies` contains the list of other services (or service groups) that this service depends on. Windows will first attempt to start these services prior to starting this service. If they cannot be started, then the service will not be started either.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

13.18.10 **TWInBindings.GroupName**

Synopsis: Service group name.

Declaration: `Property GroupName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `GroupName` specifies the name of a service group that the service belongs to. If it is empty, then the service does not belong to any group.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `TDependency.IsGroup` ([355](#))

13.18.11 **TWInBindings.Password**

Synopsis: Password for service startup.

Declaration: `Property Password : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Password` contains the service password: if the service is started with credentials other than one of the system users, then the password for the user must be entered here.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `UserName` ([358](#))

13.18.12 **TWInBindings.UserName**

Synopsis: Username to run service as.

Declaration: `Property UserName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UserName` specifies the name of a user whose credentials should be used to run the service. If it is left empty, the service is run as the system user. The password can be set in the `Password` ([358](#)) property.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `Password` ([358](#))

13.18.13 **TWInBindings.StartType**

Synopsis: Service startup type.

Declaration: `Property StartType : TStartType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StartType` specifies when the service should be started during system startup.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

13.18.14 TWinBindings.WaitHint

Synopsis: Timeout wait hint.

Declaration: `Property WaitHint : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WaitHint` specifies the estimated time for a start/stop/pause or continue operation (in milliseconds). `ReportStatus` should be called prior to this time to report the next status.

See also: `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` ([328](#))

13.18.15 TWinBindings.IDTag

Synopsis: Location in the service group.

Declaration: `Property IDTag : DWord`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IDTag` contains the location of the service in the service group after installation of the service. It should not be set, it is reported by the service manager.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

13.18.16 TWinBindings.ServiceType

Synopsis: Type of service.

Declaration: `Property ServiceType : TServiceType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ServiceType` specifies what kind of service is being installed.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

13.18.17 TWinBindings.ErrorSeverity

Synopsis: Error severity in case of startup failure.

Declaration: `Property ErrorSeverity : TErrorSeverity`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ErrorSeverity` can be used at installation time to tell the windows service manager how to behave when the service fails to start during system startup.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

13.18.18 TWinBindings.AcceptedCodes

Synopsis:

Declaration: Property AcceptedCodes : TWinControlCodes

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description:

Chapter 14

Reference for unit 'DB'

14.1 Used units

Table 14.1: Used units by unit 'DB'

Name	Page
Classes	??
FmtBCD	??
MaskUtils	758
System	??
sysutils	??
Variants	??

14.2 Overview

The `db` unit provides the basis for all database access mechanisms. It introduces abstract classes, on which all database access mechanisms are based: `TDataset` ([425](#)) representing a set of records from a database, `TField` ([477](#)) which represents the contents of a field in a record, `TDataSource` ([464](#)) which acts as an event distributor on behalf of a dataset and `TParams` ([559](#)) which can be used to parameterize queries. The databases connections themselves are abstracted in the `TDatabase` ([415](#)) class.

14.3 Constants, types and variables

14.3.1 Constants

```
DefaultFieldClasses : = Array[TFieldType] of class of TField = (TField
, TStringField, TSmallIntField, TLongIntField, TWordField, TBooleanField
, TFloatField, TCurrencyField, TBCDField, TDateField, TTimeField,
TDateTimeField, TBytesField, TVarBytesField, TAutoIncField, TBlobField
, TMemoField, TGraphicField, TBlobField, TBlobField, TBlobField, TBlobField
, Nil, TStringField, TWideStringField, TLargeIntField, Nil, TArrayField
, Nil, Nil, TBlobField, TMemoField, TVariantField, Nil, Nil, TGuidField
, Nil, TFMTBCDField, TWideStringField, TWideMemoField, Nil, Nil, TLongWordField
```

```
, TShortintField, TByteField, TExtendedField, TSingleField)
```

DefaultFieldClasses contains the TField (477) descendent class to use when a TDataset instance needs to create fields based on the TFieldDefs (509) field definitions when opening the dataset. The entries can be set to create customized TField descendents for certain field datatypes in all datasets.

```
dsEditModes = [dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey]
```

dsEditModes contains the various values of TDataset.State (452) for which the dataset is in edit mode, i.e. states in which it is possible to set field values for that dataset.

```
dsMaxBufferCount = MAXINT div 8
```

Maximum data buffers count for dataset.

```
dsMaxStringSize = 8192
```

Maximum size of string fields.

```
dsWriteModes = [dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey, dsCalcFields, dsFilter
, dsNewValue, dsInternalCalc, dsRefreshFields]
```

dsWriteModes contains the various values of TDataset.State (452) for which data can be written to the dataset buffer.

```
FieldTypeNames : = Array[TFieldType] of string[15] = ('Unknown',
'String', 'Smallint', 'Integer', 'Word', 'Boolean', 'Float', 'Currency'
, 'BCD', 'Date', 'Time', 'DateTime', 'Bytes', 'VarBytes', 'AutoInc'
, 'Blob', 'Memo', 'Graphic', 'FmtMemo', 'ParadoxOle', 'DBaseOle',
'TypedBinary', 'Cursor', 'FixedChar', 'WideString', 'Largeint', 'ADT'
, 'Array', 'Reference', 'DataSet', 'OraBlob', 'OraClob', 'Variant'
, 'Interface', 'IDispatch', 'Guid', 'TimeStamp', 'FMTBcd', 'FixedWideChar'
, 'WideMemo', 'OraTimeStamp', 'OraInterval', 'LongWord', 'Shortint'
, 'Byte', 'Extended', 'Single')
```

FieldTypeNames contains the names (in English) for the various field data types.

```
FieldTypetoVariantMap : = Array[TFieldType] of Integer = (varError
, varOleStr, varSmallint, varInteger, varSmallint, varBoolean, varDouble
, varCurrency, varCurrency, varDate, varDate, varDate, varOleStr,
varOleStr, varInteger, varOleStr, varOleStr, varOleStr, varOleStr
, varOleStr, varOleStr, varOleStr, varError, varOleStr, varOleStr
, varInt64, varError, varError, varError, varError, varOleStr, varOleStr
, varVariant, varUnknown, varDispatch, varOleStr, varOleStr, varDouble
, varOleStr, varOleStr, varUnknown, varUnknown, varLongWord, varShortint
, varByte, varDouble, varSingle)
```

FieldTypetoVariantMap contains for each field datatype the variant value type that corresponds to it. If a field type cannot be expressed by a variant type, then varError is stored in the variant value.

```
ftBlobTypes = [ftBlob, ftMemo, ftGraphic, ftFmtMemo, ftParadoxOle
, ftDBaseOle, ftTypedBinary, ftOraBlob, ftOraClob, ftWideMemo]
```

ftBlobTypes is a constant containing all blob field data types. It is to be preferred over the TBlobType (364) range, which contains some non-blob types as well.

```
ObjectFieldTypes = [ftADT, ftArray, ftReference, ftDataSet]
```

```
SQLDelimiterCharacters = [';', ', ', ' ', '(', ')', #13, #10, #9]
```

SQL statement delimiter token characters.

```
YesNoChars : = Array[Boolean] of char = ('N', 'Y')
```

Array of characters mapping a boolean to Y/N.

14.3.2 Types

```
LargeInt = type Int64
```

Large (64-bit) integer.

```
PBookmarkFlag = ^TBookmarkFlag
```

PBookmarkFlag is a convenience type, defined for internal use in TDataset (425) or one of it's descendents.

```
PBufferList = ^TBufferList
```

PBufferList is a pointer to a structure of type TBufferList (364). It is an internal type, and should not be used in end-user code.

```
PDateTimeRec = ^TDateTimeRec
```

Pointer to TDateTimeRec record.

```
PLargeInt = ^LargeInt
```

Pointer to Large (64-bit) integer.

```
PLookupListRec = ^TLookupListRec
```

Pointer to TLookupListRec record.

```
TBlobData = type TBytes
```

TBlobData should never be used directly in application code.

```
TBlobStreamMode = (bmRead, bmWrite, bmReadWrite)
```

Table 14.2: Enumeration values for type `TBlobStreamMode`

Value	Explanation
<code>bmRead</code>	Read blob data.
<code>bmReadWrite</code>	Read and write blob data.
<code>bmWrite</code>	Write blob data.

`TBlobStreamMode` is used when creating a stream for reading BLOB data. It indicates what the data will be used for: reading, writing or both.

`TBlobType = ftBlob..ftWideMemo` deprecated

`TBlobType` is a subrange type, indicating the various datatypes of BLOB fields.

`TBookmark = type TBytes`

`TBookmark` is the type used by the `TDataset.SetBookmark` (425) method. It is of type `TBytes`, the contents of the buffer is determined by the actual `TDataset` descendent.

`TBookmarkFlag = (bfCurrent, bfBOF, bfEOF, bfInserted)`

Table 14.3: Enumeration values for type `TBookmarkFlag`

Value	Explanation
<code>bfBOF</code>	First record in the dataset.
<code>bfCurrent</code>	Buffer used for the current record.
<code>bfEOF</code>	Last record in the dataset.
<code>bfInserted</code>	Buffer used for insert.

`TBookmarkFlag` is used internally by `TDataset` (425) and it's descendent types to mark the internal memory buffers. It should not be used in end-user applications.

`TBookmarkStr = type ansistring`

`TBookmarkStr` was the type used by the `TDataset.Bookmark` (446) property in earlier versions of FPC. It can be used as a string, but should in fact be considered an opaque type.

This type is deprecated, and no longer usable, use the `TBookmark` (364) type instead.

`TBufferArray = ^TRecordBuffer`

`TBufferArray` is an internally used type. It can change in future implementations, and should not be used in application code.

`TBufferList = Array[0..dsMaxBufferCount-1] of PAnsiChar`

`TBufferList` is used internally by the `TDataset` (425) class to manage the memory buffers for the data. It should not be necessary to use this type in end-user applications.

```
TCloseErrorEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; aError: Exception)
  of object
```

```
TDataAction = (daFail, daAbort, daRetry)
```

Table 14.4: Enumeration values for type TDataAction

Value	Explanation
daAbort	The operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an EAbort exception is raised).
daFail	The operation should fail (an exception will be raised).
daRetry	Retry the operation.

TDataAction is used by the TDataSetErrorEvent (366) event handler prototype. The parameter Action of this event handler is of TDataAction type, and should indicate what action must be taken by the dataset.

```
TDatabaseClass = type class
end
```

TDatabaseClass is the class pointer for the TDatabase (415) class.

```
TDataChangeEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Field: TField) of
  object
```

TDataChangeEvent is the event handler prototype for the TDatasource.OnDataChange (467) event. The sender parameter is the TDatasource instance that triggered the event, and the Field parameter is the field whose data has changed. If the dataset has scrolled, then the Field parameter is Nil.

```
TDataEvent = (deFieldChange, deRecordChange, deDataSetChange,
  deDataSetScroll, deLayoutChange, deUpdateRecord,
  deUpdateState, deCheckBrowseMode, dePropertyChange,
  deFieldListChange, deFocusControl, deParentScroll,
  deConnectChange, deReconcileError, deDisabledStateChange)
```

Table 14.5: Enumeration values for type TDataEvent

Value	Explanation
deCheckBrowseMode	The browse mode is being checked.
deConnectChange	Unused.
deDataSetChange	The dataset property changed.
deDataSetScroll	The dataset scrolled to another record.
deDisabledStateChange	Unused.
deFieldChange	A field value changed.
deFieldListChange	Event sent when the list of fields of a dataset changes.
deFocusControl	Event sent whenever a control connected to a field should be focused.
deLayoutChange	The layout properties of one of the fields changed.
deParentScroll	Unused.
dePropertyChange	Unused.
deReconcileError	Unused.
deRecordChange	The current record changed.
deUpdateRecord	The record is being updated.
deUpdateState	The dataset state is updated.

TDataEvent describes the various events that can be sent to TDataSource (464) instances connected to a TDataset (425) instance.

```
TDataOperation = procedure of object
```

TDataOperation is a prototype handler used internally in TDataset. It can be changed at any time, so it should not be used in end-user code.

```
TDatasetClass = type class
end
```

TDatasetClass is the class type for the TDataset (425) class. It is currently unused in the DB unit and is defined for the benefit of other units.

```
TDatasetErrorEvent = procedure(DataSet: TDataSet; E: EDatabaseError
;
                                var DataAction: TDataAction) of
object
```

TDatasetErrorEvent is used by the TDataset.OnEditError (461), TDataset.OnPostError (462) and TDataset.OnDeleteError (461) event handlers to allow the programmer to specify what should be done if an update operation fails with an exception: The DataSet parameter indicates what dataset triggered the event, the E parameter contains the exception object. The DataAction must be set by the event handler, and based on its return value, the dataset instance will take appropriate action. The default value is daFail, i.e. the exception will be raised again. For a list of available return values, see TDataAction (365).

```
TDatasetNotifyEvent = procedure(DataSet: TDataSet) of object
```

TDatasetNotifyEvent is used in most of the TDataset (425) event handlers. It differs from the more general TNotifyEvent (defined in the Classes unit) in that the Sender parameter of the latter is replaced with the DataSet parameter. This avoids typecasts, the available TDataset methods can be used directly.

```

TDataSetState = (dsInactive, dsBrowse, dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey,
  dsCalcFields, dsFilter, dsNewValue, dsOldValue, dsCurValue
  ,
  dsBlockRead, dsInternalCalc, dsOpening, dsRefreshFields
  )

```

Table 14.6: Enumeration values for type TDataSetState

Value	Explanation
dsBlockRead	The dataset is open, but no events are transferred to datasources.
dsBrowse	The dataset is active, and the cursor can be used to navigate the data.
dsCalcFields	The dataset is calculating it's calculated fields.
dsCurValue	The dataset is showing the current values of a record.
dsEdit	The dataset is in editing mode: the current record can be modified.
dsFilter	The dataset is filtering records.
dsInactive	The dataset is not active. No data is available.
dsInsert	The dataset is in insert mode: the current record is a new record which can be edited.
dsInternalCalc	The dataset is calculating it's internally calculated fields.
dsNewValue	The dataset is showing the new values of a record.
dsOldValue	The dataset is showing the old values of a record.
dsOpening	The dataset is currently opening, but is not yet completely open.
dsRefreshFields	Dataset is refreshing field values from server after an update.
dsSetKey	The dataset is calculating the primary key.

TDataSetState describes the current state of the dataset. During it's lifetime, the dataset's state is described by these enumerated values.

Some state are not used in the default TDataset implementation, and are only used by certain descendants.

```
TDateTimeAlias = type TDateTime
```

TDateTimeAlias is no longer used.

```

TDateTimeRec = record
case TFieldType of
ftDate: (
  Date : LongInt
  );
ftTime: (
  Time : LongInt;
  );
ftDateTime: (
  DateTime : TDateTimeAlias
  );
end

```

TDateTimeRec was used by older TDataset (425) implementations to store date/time values. Newer implementations use the TDateTime. This type should no longer be used.


```
TDBDatasetClass = type TDBDataset
```

TDBDatasetClass is the class pointer for TDBDataset (470)

```
TFieldAttribute = (faHiddenCol, faReadonly, faRequired, faLink, faUnNamed
,
faFixed)
```

Table 14.7: Enumeration values for type TFieldAttribute

Value	Explanation
faFixed	Fixed length field.
faHiddenCol	Field is a hidden column (used to construct a unique key).
faLink	Field is a link field for other datasets.
faReadonly	Field is read-only.
faRequired	Field is required.
faUnNamed	Field has no original name.

TFieldAttribute is used to denote some attributes of a field in a database. It is used in the Attributes (507) property of TFieldDef (503).

```
TFieldAttributes = Set of TFieldAttribute = (faFixed, faHiddenCol, faLink
, faReadonly, faRequired,
faUnNamed)
```

TFieldAttributes is used in the TFieldDef.Attributes (507) property to denote additional attributes of the underlying field.

```
TFieldChars = Set of char
```

TFieldChars is a type used in the TField.ValidChars (494) property. It's a simple set of characters.

```
TFieldClass = type class
end
```

```
TFieldDefClass = type class(TNamedItem)
private
  FAttributes : TFieldAttributes
  ;
  FCodePage : TSystemCodePage;
  FDataType : TFieldType;
  FFieldNo
  : LongInt;
  FChildDefs : TFieldDefs;
  FInternalCalcField : Boolean
  ;
  FPrecision : LongInt;
  FRequired : Boolean;
```

```

FSize : Integer
;
function GetCharSize : Word;
function GetChildDefs : TFieldDefs
;
function GetFieldClass : TFieldClass;
function GetParentDef
: TFieldDef;
function GetSize : Integer;
procedure SetAttributes
(AValue: TFieldAttributes);
procedure SetDataType(AValue: TFieldType
);
;
procedure SetChildDefs(AValue: TFieldDefs);
procedure SetPrecision
(const AValue: LongInt);
procedure SetSize(const AValue: Integer
);
;
procedure SetRequired(const AValue: Boolean);
public
Create
;
destructor Destroy; Override;
function AddChild : TFieldDef
;
;
procedure Assign(APersistent: TPersistent); Override;
function
CreateField(AOwner: TComponent; ParentField: TObjectField;
const FieldName: string; CreateChildren: Boolean
)
: TField;
function HasChildDefs : Boolean
;
;
property FieldClass : TFieldClass;
property FieldNo : LongInt
;
;
property CharSize : Word;
property InternalCalcField : Boolean
;
;
property ParentDef : TFieldDef;
property Required : Boolean
;
;
property Codepage : TSystemCodePage;
published
property Attributes
: TFieldAttributes;
property DataType : TFieldType;
property
ChildDefs : TFieldDefs;
property Precision : LongInt;
property
Size : Integer;
end

```

TFieldDefClass is used to be able to customize the actual TDataset.FieldDefs (449) items class.

```
TFieldDefsClass = type class(TDefCollection)
private
  FParentDef
    : TFieldDef;
  FHiddenFields : Boolean;
  function GetItem(Index
    : LongInt) : TFieldDef;
  procedure SetItem(Index: LongInt; const
    AValue: TFieldDef);
protected
  class function FieldDefClass : TFieldDefClass
    ; Virtual;
public
  constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent);
  Add
    ;
  function AddFieldDef : TFieldDef;
  procedure Assign(FieldDefs
    : TFieldDefs); Overload;
  function Find(const AName: string) : TFieldDef
    ;
  procedure Update; Overload;
  function MakeNameUnique(const AName
    : string) : string; Virtual;
  property HiddenFields : Boolean;
  property Items[Index: LongInt]: TFieldDef; default;
  property ParentDef
    : TFieldDef;
end
```

TFieldDefClass is used to be able to customize the actual TDataset.FieldDefs (449) class used in a TDataset (425) descendent.

```
TFieldGetTextEvent = procedure(Sender: TField; var aText: string;
  DisplayText: Boolean) of object
```

TFieldGetTextEvent is the prototype for the TField.OnGetText (502) event handler. It should be used when the text of a field requires special formatting. The event handler should return the contents of the field in formatted form in the AText parameter. The DisplayText is True if the text is used for displaying purposes or is False if it will be used for editing purposes.

```
TFieldKind = (fkData, fkCalculated, fkLookup, fkInternalCalc)
```

Table 14.8: Enumeration values for type TFieldKind

Value	Explanation
fkCalculated	The field is calculated on the fly.
fkData	Field represents actual data in the underlying data structure.
fkInternalCalc	Field is calculated but stored in an underlying buffer.
fkLookup	The field is a lookup field.

TFieldKind indicates the type of a TField instance. Besides TField instances that represent fields present in the underlying data records, there can also be calculated or lookup fields. To distinguish between these kind of fields, TFieldKind is introduced.

```
TFieldKinds = Set of TFieldKind = (fkCalculated, fkData, fkInternalCalc
    , fkLookup)
```

TFieldKinds is a set of TFieldKind (370) values. It is used internally by the classes of the DB unit.

```
TFieldMap = Array[TFieldType] of Byte
```

TFieldMap is no longer used.

```
TFieldNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TField) of object
```

TFieldNotifyEvent is a prototype for the event handlers in the TField (477) class. It's Sender parameter is the field instance that triggered the event.

```
TFieldRef = ^TField
```

Pointer to a TField instance.

```
TFieldsClass = type class(TObject)
private
    FDataset : TDataSet;
    FFieldList : TFPList;
    FOnChange : TNotifyEvent;
    FValidFieldKinds
        : TFieldKinds;
protected
    procedure ClearFieldDefs;
    procedure
        Changed;
    procedure CheckfieldKind(Fieldkind: TFieldKind; Field
        : TField);
    function GetCount : LongInt;
    function GetField(Index
        : Integer) : TField;
    procedure SetField(Index: Integer; Value: TField
        );
    procedure SetFieldIndex(Field: TField; Value: Integer);
    property
        OnChange : TNotifyEvent;
    property ValidFieldKinds : TFieldKinds
        ;
public
    constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet);
    destructor Destroy
        ; Override;
    procedure Add(Field: TField);
    procedure CheckFieldName
```

```

(const Value: string);
procedure CheckFieldNames(const Value: string
);
procedure Clear;
function FindField(const Value: string) :
TField;
function FieldByName(const Value: string) : TField;
function
FieldByNumber(FieldNo: Integer) : TField;
function GetEnumerator
: TFieldsEnumerator;
procedure GetFieldNames(Values: TStrings)
;
function IndexOf(Field: TField) : LongInt;
procedure Remove
(Value: TField);
property Count : Integer;
property Dataset :
TDataSet;
property Fields[Index: Integer]: TField; default;
end

```

TFieldsClass is needed to be able to specify the class of fields used in TDataSet.Fields ([452](#));

```

TFieldSetTextEvent = procedure(Sender: TField; const aText: string
)
of object

```

TFieldSetTextEvent is the prototype for an event handler used to set the contents of a field based on a user-edited text. It should be used when the text of a field is entered with special formatting. The event handler should set the contents of the field based on the formatted text in the AText parameter.

```

TFieldType = (ftUnknown, ftString, ftSmallint, ftInteger, ftWord, ftBoolean
,
ftFloat, ftCurrency, ftBCD, ftDate, ftTime, ftDateTime
, ftBytes,
ftVarBytes, ftAutoInc, ftBlob, ftMemo, ftGraphic
, ftFmtMemo,
ftParadoxOle, ftDBaseOle, ftTypedBinary, ftCursor
,
ftFixedChar, ftWideString, ftLargeint, ftADT, ftArray
,
ftReference, ftDataSet, ftOraBlob, ftOraClob, ftVariant
,
ftInterface, ftIDispatch, ftGuid, ftTimeStamp, ftFMTBcd
,
ftFixedWideChar, ftWideMemo, ftOraTimeStamp, ftOraInterval
,
ftLongWord, ftShortint, ftByte, ftExtended, ftSingle)

```

Table 14.9: Enumeration values for type TFieldType

Value	Explanation
ftADT	ADT value.
ftArray	Array data.
ftAutoInc	Auto-increment integer value (4 bytes).
ftBCD	Binary Coded Decimal value (DECIMAL and NUMERIC SQL types).
ftBlob	Binary data value (no type, no size).
ftBoolean	Boolean value.
ftByte	Byte field type.
ftBytes	Array of bytes value, fixed size (untyped).
ftCurrency	Currency value (4 decimal points).
ftCursor	Cursor data value (no size).
ftDataSet	Dataset data (blob).
ftDate	Date value.
ftDateTime	Date/Time (timestamp) value.
ftDBaseOle	Paradox OLE field data.
ftExtended	Extended field type.
ftFixedChar	Fixed character array (string).
ftFixedWideChar	Fixed wide character date (2 bytes per character).
ftFloat	Floating point value (double).
ftFMTBcd	Formatted BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value.
ftFmtMemo	Formatted memo data value (no size).
ftGraphic	Graphical data value (no size).
ftGuid	GUID data value.
ftIDispatch	Dispatch data value.
ftInteger	Regular integer value (4 bytes, signed).
ftInterface	interface data value.
ftLargeint	Large integer value (8-byte).
ftLongWord	Longword (cardinal) field type.
ftMemo	Binary text data (no size).
ftOraBlob	Oracle BLOB data.
ftOraClob	Oracle CLOB data.
ftOraInterval	Oracle interval field type.
ftOraTimeStamp	Oracle time stamp field type.
ftParadoxOle	Paradox OLE field data (no size).
ftReference	Reference data.
ftShortint	Shortint field type.
ftSingle	
ftSmallint	Small integer value(1 byte, signed).
ftString	String data value (ansistring).
ftTime	Time value.
ftTimeStamp	Timestamp data value.
ftTypedBinary	Binary typed data (no size).
ftUnknown	Unknown data type.
ftVarBytes	Array of bytes value, variable size (untyped).
ftVariant	Variant data value.
ftWideMemo	Widestring memo data.
ftWideString	Widestring (2 bytes per character).
ftWord	Word-sized value(2 bytes, unsigned).

TFieldType indicates the type of a TField (477) underlying data, in the DataType (490) property.

```
TFilterOption = (foCaseInsensitive, foNoPartialCompare)
```

Table 14.10: Enumeration values for type TFilterOption

Value	Explanation
foCaseInsensitive	Filter case insensitively.
foNoPartialCompare	Do not compare values partially, always compare completely.

TFilterOption enumerates the various options available when filtering a dataset. The TFilterOptions (374) set is used in the TDataset.FilterOptions (454) property to indicate which of the options should be used when filtering the data.

```
TFilterOptions = Set of TFilterOption = (foCaseInsensitive, foNoPartialCompare
)
```

TFilterOption is the set of filter options to use when filtering a dataset. This set type is used in the TDataset.FilterOptions (454) property. The available values are described in the TFilterOption (374) type.

```
TFilterRecordEvent = procedure (DataSet: TDataSet; var Accept: Boolean
)
of object
```

TFilterRecordEvent is the prototype for the TDataset.OnFilterRecord (462) event handler. The DataSet parameter indicates which dataset triggered the event, and the Accept parameter must be set to true if the current record should be shown, False should be used when the record should be hidden.

```
TGetMode = (gmCurrent, gmNext, gmPrior)
```

Table 14.11: Enumeration values for type TGetMode

Value	Explanation
gmCurrent	Retrieve the current record.
gmNext	Retrieve the next record.
gmPrior	Retrieve the previous record.

TGetMode is used internally by TDataset (425) when it needs to fetch more data for its buffers (using GetRecord). It tells the descendent dataset what operation must be performed.

```
TGetResult = (grOK, grBOF, grEOF, grError)
```

Table 14.12: Enumeration values for type TGetResult

Value	Explanation
grBOF	The beginning of the recordset is reached.
grEOF	The end of the recordset is reached.
grError	An error occurred.
grOK	The operation was completed successfully.

TGetResult is used by descendents of TDataset (425) when they have to communicate the result of the GetRecord operation back to the TDataset record.

```
TIndexOption = (ixPrimary, ixUnique, ixDescending, ixCaseInsensitive
,
                ixExpression, ixNonMaintained)
```

Table 14.13: Enumeration values for type TIndexOption

Value	Explanation
ixCaseInsensitive	The values in the index are sorted case-insensitively.
ixDescending	The values in the index are sorted descending.
ixExpression	The values in the index are based on a calculated expression.
ixNonMaintained	The index is non-maintained, i.e. changing the data will not update the index.
ixPrimary	The index is the primary index for the data.
ixUnique	The index is a unique index, i.e. each index value can occur only once.

TIndexOption describes the various properties that an index can have. It is used in the TIndexOptions (375) set type to describe all properties of an index definition as in TIndexDef (524).

```
TIndexOptions = Set of TIndexOption = (ixCaseInsensitive, ixDescending
, ixExpression,
                ixNonMaintained, ixPrimary, ixUnique
)
```

TIndexOptions contains the set of properties that an index can have. It is used in the TIndexDef.Options (526) property to describe all properties of an index definition as in TIndexDef (524).

```
TLocateOption = (loCaseInsensitive, loPartialKey)
```

Table 14.14: Enumeration values for type TLocateOption

Value	Explanation
loCaseInsensitive	Perform a case-insensitive search.
loPartialKey	Accept partial key matches for string fields.

TLocateOption is used in the TDataset.Locate (441) call to enumerate the possible options available when locating a record in the dataset.

For string-type fields, this option indicates that fields starting with the search value are considered a match. For other fields (e.g. integer, date/time), this option is ignored and only equal field values are considered a match.

```
TLocateOptions = Set of TLocateOption = (loCaseInsensitive, loPartialKey
)
```

TLocateOptions is used in the TDataset.Locate (441) call: It should contain the actual options to use when locating a record in the dataset.


```
TLoginEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Username: string;
    Password: string) of object
```

TLoginEvent is the prototype for the TCustomConnection.OnLogin (414) event handler. It gets passed the TCustomConnection instance that is trying to login, and the initial username and password.

```
TParamBinding = Array of Integer
```

TParamBinding is an auxiliary type used when parsing and binding parameters in SQL statements. It should never be used directly in application code.

```
TParamClass = type class(TCollectionItem)
private
    FNativeStr : string
    = type string;
    FValue : Variant;
    FPrecision : Integer;
    FNumericScale
    : Integer;
    FName : string = type string;
    FDataType : TFieldType
    ;
    FBound : Boolean;
    FParamType : TParamType;
    FSize : Integer
    ;
    function GetDataSet : TDataSet;
    function IsParamStored : Boolean
    ;
protected
    procedure AssignParam(Param: TParam);
    procedure AssignTo
    (Dest: TPersistent); Override;
    function GetAsBoolean : Boolean
    ;
    function GetAsBytes : TBytes;
    function GetAsCurrency : Currency
    ;
    function GetAsDateTime : TDateTime;
    function GetAsFloat : Double
    ;
    function GetAsInteger : LongInt;
    function GetAsLargeInt : LargeInt
    ;
    function GetAsLongWord : LongWord;
    function GetAsMemo : string
    ;
    function GetAsSingle : Single;
    function GetAsString : string
    ;
    function GetAsAnsiString : AnsiString;
    function GetAsUnicodeString
```

```

: UnicodeString;
function GetAsUTF8String : UTF8String;
function
GetAsWideString : WideString;
function GetAsVariant : Variant;
function GetAsFmtBCD : TBCD;
function GetDisplayName : string
; Override;
function GetIsNull : Boolean;
function IsEqual(AValue
: TParam) : Boolean;
procedure SetAsBCD(const AValue: Currency)
;
procedure SetAsBlob(const AValue: TBlobData);
procedure SetAsBoolean
(AValue: Boolean);
procedure SetAsByte(const AValue: LongInt);
procedure SetAsBytes(const AValue: TBytes);
procedure SetAsCurrency
(const AValue: Currency);
procedure SetAsDate(const AValue: TDateTime
);
procedure SetAsDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime);
procedure
SetAsFloat(const AValue: Double);
procedure SetAsInteger(AValue
: LongInt);
procedure SetAsLargeInt(AValue: LargeInt);
procedure
SetAsLongWord(AValue: LongWord);
procedure SetAsMemo(const AValue
: string);
procedure SetAsShortInt(const AValue: LongInt);
procedure
SetAsSingle(AValue: Single);
procedure SetAsSmallInt(AValue: LongInt
);
procedure SetAsString(const AValue: string);
procedure SetAsAnsiString
(const AValue: AnsiString);
procedure SetAsUTF8String(const AValue
: UTF8String);
procedure SetAsUnicodeString(const AValue: UnicodeString
);
procedure SetAsWideString(const AValue: WideString);
procedure
SetAsTime(const AValue: TDateTime);
procedure SetAsVariant(const
AValue: Variant);
procedure SetAsWord(AValue: LongInt);
procedure
SetAsFmtBCD(const AValue: TBCD);
procedure SetDataType(AValue:
TFieldType);

```

```

    procedure SetText(const AValue: string);
public
    Create;
    procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override;
    procedure
    AssignField(Field: TField);
    procedure AssignToField(Field: TField
    );
    procedure AssignFieldValue(Field: TField; const AValue: Variant
    );
    procedure AssignFromField(Field: TField);
    procedure Clear;
    procedure GetData(Buffer: Pointer);
    function GetDataSize : Integer
    ;
    procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; BlobType: TBlobType
    );
    procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; BlobType: TBlobType
    );
    procedure SetBlobData(Buffer: Pointer; ASize: Integer);
    procedure
    SetData(Buffer: Pointer);
    property AsBCD : Currency;
    property
    AsBlob : TBlobData;
    property AsBoolean : Boolean;
    property AsByte
    : LongInt;
    property AsBytes : TBytes;
    property AsCurrency : Currency
    ;
    property AsDate : TDateTime;
    property AsDateTime : TDateTime
    ;
    property AsFloat : Double;
    property AsInteger : LongInt;
    property
    AsLargeInt : LargeInt;
    property AsLongWord : LongWord;
    property
    AsMemo : string;
    property AsShortInt : LongInt;
    property AsSingle
    : Single;
    property AsSmallInt : LongInt;
    property AsString :
    string;
    property AsAnsiString : AnsiString;
    property AsUTF8String
    : UTF8String;
    property AsUnicodeString : UnicodeString;
    property
    AsTime : TDateTime;
    property AsWord : LongInt;

```

```

property AsFMTBCD
: TBCD;
property Bound : Boolean;
property Dataset : TDataSet
;
property IsNull : Boolean;
property NativeStr : string;
property
Text : string;
property AsWideString : WideString;
published
property DataType : TFieldType;
property Name : string;
property
NumericScale : Integer;
property ParamType : TParamType;
property
Precision : Integer;
property Size : Integer;
property Value
: Variant;
end

```

TParamClass is needed to be able to specify the type of parameters when instantiating a TParams (559) collection.

```
TParamStyle = (psInterbase,psPostgreSQL,psSimulated)
```

Table 14.15: Enumeration values for type TParamStyle

Value	Explanation
psInterbase	Parameters are specified by a ? character.
psPostgreSQL	Parameters are specified by a \$N character.
psSimulated	Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

TParamStyle denotes the style in which parameters are specified in a query. It is used in the TParams.ParseSQL (562) method, and can have the following values:

psInterbase Parameters are specified by a ? character.

psPostgreSQL Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

psSimulated Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

```
TParamType = (ptUnknown,ptInput,ptOutput,ptInputOutput,ptResult)
```

Table 14.16: Enumeration values for type TParamType

Value	Explanation
ptInput	Input parameter.
ptInputOutput	Input/output parameter.
ptOutput	Output parameter, filled on result.
ptResult	Result parameter.
ptUnknown	Unknown type.

TParamType indicates the kind of parameter represented by a TParam (545) instance. it has one of the following values:

ptUnknown Unknown type.

ptInput Input parameter.

ptOutput Output parameter, filled on result.

ptInputOutput Input/output parameter.

ptResult Result parameter.

```
TParamTypes = Set of TParamType = (ptInput, ptInputOutput, ptOutput
, ptResult, ptUnknown)
```

TParamTypes is defined for completeness: a set of TParamType (379) values.

```
TProviderFlag = (pfInUpdate, pfInWhere, pfInKey, pfHidden,
pfRefreshOnInsert, pfRefreshOnUpdate)
```

Table 14.17: Enumeration values for type TProviderFlag

Value	Explanation
pfHidden	
pfInKey	Field is a key field and used in the WHERE clause of an update statement.
pfInUpdate	Changes to the field should be propagated to the database.
pfInWhere	Field should be used in the WHERE clause of an update statement in case of upWhereChanged.
pfRefreshOnInsert	This field's value should be refreshed after insert.
pfRefreshOnUpdate	This field's value should be refreshed after update.

TProviderFlag describes how the field should be used when applying updates from a dataset to the database. Each field of a TDataset (425) has one or more of these flags.

```
TProviderFlags = Set of TProviderFlag = (pfHidden, pfInKey, pfInUpdate
, pfInWhere,
pfRefreshOnInsert, pfRefreshOnUpdate)
```

TProviderFlags is used for the TField.ProviderFlags (501) property to describe the role of the field when applying updates to a database.

```
TPSCommandType = (ctUnknown, ctQuery, ctTable, ctStoredProc, ctSelect
,
ctInsert, ctUpdate, ctDelete, ctDDL)
```

Table 14.18: Enumeration values for type TPSCommandType

Value	Explanation
ctDDL	SQL DDL statement.
ctDelete	SQL DELETE Statement.
ctInsert	SQL INSERT Statement.
ctQuery	General SQL statement.
ctSelect	SQL SELECT Statement.
ctStoredProc	Stored procedure statement.
ctTable	Table contents (select * from table).
ctUnknown	Unknown SQL type or not SQL based.
ctUpdate	SQL UPDATE statement.

TPSCommandType is used in the IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandType (391) call to determine the type of SQL command that the provider is exposing. It is meaningless for datasets that are not SQL based.

```
TRecordBuffer = type PAnsiChar
```

TRecordBuffer is the type used by TDataset (425) to point to a record's data buffer. It is used in several internal TDataset routines.

```
TRecordBufferBaseType = type AnsiChar
```

TRecordBufferBaseType should not be used directly. It just serves as an (opaque) base type to TRecordBuffer (381)

```
TResolverResponse = (rrSkip, rrAbort, rrMerge, rrApply, rrIgnore)
```

Table 14.19: Enumeration values for type TResolverResponse

Value	Explanation
rrAbort	Abort the whole update process, no error message is displayed (no EAbort exception raised).
rrApply	Replace the update with new values applied by the event handler.
rrIgnore	Ignore the error and remove update from change log.
rrMerge	Merge the update with existing changes on the server.
rrSkip	Skip the current update, leave it in the change log.

TResolverResponse is used to indicate what should happen to a pending change that could not be resolved. It is used in callbacks.

```
TResyncMode= Set of (rmExact, rmCenter)
```

Table 14.20: Enumeration values for type

Value	Explanation
rmCenter	Try to position the cursor in the middle of the buffer.
rmExact	Reposition at exact the same location in the buffer.

TResyncMode is used internally by various TDataSet (425) navigation and data manipulation methods such as the TDataSet.Refresh (444) method when they need to reset the cursor position in the dataset's buffer.

```
TSQLParseOption = (spoCreate, spoEscapeSlash, spoEscapeRepeat, spoUseMacro
)
```

Table 14.21: Enumeration values for type TSQLParseOption

Value	Explanation
spoCreate	Indicates existing parameters are cleared and re-created, not updated.
spoEscapeRepeat	Causes an escaped character to be repeated.
spoEscapeSlash	Causes the Slash character ('/') to be escaped.
spoUseMacro	Enables macro expansion in a SQL statement.

TSQLParseOption is an enumerated type with values that represent SQL parser options available for use in the TParams collection. Value(s) from TSQLParseOption are stored in the TSQLParseOptions set type, and passed as an argument to the TParams.ParseSQL method. When a value from the enumeration is included in the set, the feature or behavior is enabled while parsing the SQL statement.

```
TSQLParseOptions = Set of TSQLParseOption = (spoCreate, spoEscapeRepeat
, spoEscapeSlash, spoUseMacro)
```

TSQLParseOptions is a set type used to store zero or more values from the TSQLParseOption enumeration. TSQLParseOptions is used in the TParams.ParseSQL method to indicate the options enabled when the SQL statement is parsed. The set type can be passed as an argument to the method.

See TSQLParseOption (382) for information about the enumeration values and their meanings.

```
TStringFieldBuffer = Array[0..dsMaxStringSize] of AnsiChar
```

Type to access string field content buffers as an array of characters.

```
TUpdateAction = (uaFail, uaAbort, uaSkip, uaRetry, uaApplied)
```

Table 14.22: Enumeration values for type TUpdateAction

Value	Explanation
uaAbort	The whole update operation should abort.
uaApplied	Consider the update as applied.
uaFail	Update operation should fail.
uaRetry	Retry the update operation.
uaSkip	The update of the current record should be skipped. (but not discarded).

TUpdateAction indicates what action must be taken in case the applying of updates on the underlying database fails. This type is not used in the TDataset (425) class, but is defined on behalf of TDataset descendents that implement caching of updates: It indicates what should be done when the (delayed) applying of the updates fails. This event occurs long after the actual post or delete operation.

TUpdateKind = (ukModify, ukInsert, ukDelete)

Table 14.23: Enumeration values for type TUpdateKind

Value	Explanation
ukDelete	Delete a record in the database.
ukInsert	insert a new record in the database.
ukModify	Modify an existing record in the database.

TUpdateKind indicates what kind of update operation is in progress when applying updates.

TUpdateMode = (upWhereAll, upWhereChanged, upWhereKeyOnly)

Table 14.24: Enumeration values for type TUpdateMode

Value	Explanation
upWhereAll	Use all old field values.
upWhereChanged	Use only old field values of modified fields.
upWhereKeyOnly	Only use key fields in the where clause.

TUpdateMode determines how the WHERE clause of update queries for SQL databases should be constructed.

TUpdateStatus = (usUnmodified, usModified, usInserted, usDeleted)

Table 14.25: Enumeration values for type TUpdateStatus

Value	Explanation
usDeleted	Record exists in the database, but is locally deleted.
usInserted	Record does not yet exist in the database, but is locally inserted.
usModified	Record exists in the database but is locally modified.
usUnmodified	Record is unmodified.

TUpdateStatus determines the current state of the record buffer, if updates have not yet been applied to the database.

```
TUpdateStatusSet = Set of TUpdateStatus = (usDeleted,usInserted,usModified
,usUnmodified)
```

TUpdateStatusSet is a set of TUpdateStatus (383) values.

14.3.3 Variables

```
LoginDialogExProc : = function(const ADatabaseName: string; var AUserName
: string;
var APassword: string; UserNameReadOnly: Boolean
) : Boolean = Nil
```

LoginDialogExProc is a procedural variable that can be set to handle login dialogs: if a database connection component needs to collect login data (typically when LoginPrompt is True), then if this callback is set it can e.g. be used to show a dialog used to fetch the data.

14.4 Procedures and functions

14.4.1 BuffersEqual

Synopsis: Check whether 2 memory buffers are equal.

```
Declaration: function BuffersEqual(Buf1: Pointer; Buf2: Pointer; Size: Integer)
: Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: BuffersEqual compares the memory areas pointed to by the Buf1 and Buf2 pointers and returns True if the contents are equal. The memory areas are compared for the first Size bytes. If all bytes in the indicated areas are equal, then True is returned, otherwise False is returned.

Errors: If Buf1 or Buf2 do not point to a valid memory area or Size is too large, then an exception may occur

See also: #rtl.sysutils.Comparemem (??)

14.4.2 DatabaseError

Synopsis: Raise an EDatabaseError exception.

```
Declaration: procedure DatabaseError(const Msg: string); Overload
procedure DatabaseError(const Msg: string; Comp: TComponent); Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: DatabaseError raises an EDatabaseError (387) exception, passing it Msg. If Comp is specified, the name of the component is prepended to the message.

See also: DatabaseErrorFmt (385), EDatabaseError (387)

14.4.3 DatabaseErrorFmt

Synopsis: Raise an `EDatabaseError` exception with a formatted message.

Declaration:

```
procedure DatabaseErrorFmt(const Fmt: string;
                           const Args: Array of const); Overload
procedure DatabaseErrorFmt(const Fmt: string;
                           const Args: Array of const; Comp: TComponent)
                           ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `DatabaseErrorFmt` raises an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception, passing it a message made by calling `#rtl.sysutils.format` (??) with the `fmt` and `Args` arguments. If `Comp` is specified, the name of the component is prepended to the message.

See also: `DatabaseError` (384), `EDatabaseError` (387)

14.4.4 DateTimeRecToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert `TDateTimeRec` record to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration:

```
function DateTimeRecToDateTime(DT: TFieldType; Data: TDateTimeRec)
                               : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeRecToDateTime` examines `Data` and `Dt` and uses `dt` to convert the timestamp in `Data` to a `TDateTime` value.

See also: `TFieldType` (372), `TDateTimeRec` (367), `DateTimeToDateTimeRec` (385)

14.4.5 DateTimeToDateTimeRec

Synopsis: Convert `TDateTime` value to a `TDateTimeRec` record.

Declaration:

```
function DateTimeToDateTimeRec(DT: TFieldType; Data: TDateTime)
                               : TDateTimeRec
```

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToDateTimeRec` examines `Data` and `Dt` and uses `dt` to convert the date/time value in `Data` to a `TDateTimeRec` record.

See also: `TFieldType` (372), `TDateTimeRec` (367), `DateTimeRecToDateTime` (385)

14.4.6 DisposeMem

Synopsis: Dispose of a heap memory block and `Nil` the pointer (deprecated).

Declaration:

```
procedure DisposeMem(var Buffer; Size: Integer)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeMem` disposes of the heap memory area pointed to by `Buffer` (`Buffer` must be of type `Pointer`). The `Size` parameter indicates the size of the memory area (it is, in fact, ignored by the heap manager). The pointer `Buffer` is set to `Nil`. If `Buffer` is `Nil`, then nothing happens. Do not use `DisposeMem` on objects, because their destructor will not be called.

Errors: If `Buffer` is not pointing to a valid heap memory block, then memory corruption may occur.

See also: `#rtl.system.FreeMem` (??), `#rtl.sysutils.freeandnil` (??)

14.4.7 enumerator(TDataSet):TDataSetEnumerator

Synopsis: Operator to return dataset enumerator.

Declaration: `operator enumerator(ADataset: TDataSet) : TDataSetEnumerator`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows to use the `TDataSetEnumerator` (463) as an enumerator for a `TDataset` (425)

See also: `TDataSetEnumerator` (463), `TDataset` (425)

14.4.8 ExtractFieldName

Synopsis: Extract the field name at position.

Declaration: `function ExtractFieldName(const Fields: string; var Pos: Integer)
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFieldName` returns the string starting at position `Pos` till the next semicolon (;) character or the end of the string. On return, `Pos` contains the position of the first character after the semicolon character (or one more than the length of the string).

See also: `TFields.GetFieldList` (512)

14.4.9 SkipComments

Synopsis: Skip SQL comments.

Declaration: `function SkipComments(var p: PChar; EscapeSlash: Boolean;
EscapeRepeat: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SkipComments` examines the null-terminated string in `P` and skips any SQL comment or string literal found at the start. It returns `P` the first non-comment or non-string literal position. The `EscapeSlash` parameter determines whether the backslash character (\) functions as an escape character (i.e. the following character is not considered a delimiter). `EscapeRepeat` must be set to `True` if the quote character is repeated to indicate itself.

The function returns `True` if a comment was found and skipped, `False` otherwise.

Errors: No checks are done on the validity of `P`.

See also: `TParams.ParseSQL` (562)

14.5 TLookupListRec

```
TLookupListRec = record
  Key : Variant;
  Value : Variant;
end
```

TLookupListRec is used by lookup fields to store lookup results, if the results should be cached. Its two fields keep the key value and associated lookup value.

14.6 EDatabaseError

14.6.1 Description

EDatabaseError is the base class from which database-related exception classes should derive. It is raised by the DatabaseError (384) call.

See also: DatabaseError (384), DatabaseErrorFmt (385)

14.7 EUpdateError

14.7.1 Description

EupdateError is an exception used by the TProvider database support. It should never be raised directly.

See also: EDatabaseError (387)

14.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
387	Create	Create a new EUpdateError instance.
388	Destroy	Free the EupdateError instance.

14.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
388	Context	r	Context in which exception occurred.
388	ErrorCode	r	Numerical error code.
389	OriginalException	r	Originally raised exception.
389	PreviousError	r	Previous error number.

14.7.4 EUpdateError.Create

Synopsis: Create a new EUpdateError instance.

Declaration: constructor Create (NativeError: string; Context: string;
ErrCode: Integer; PrevError: Integer; E: Exception)

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new `EUpdateError` object and populates the various properties with the `NativeError`, `Context`, `ErrCode` and `PrevError` parameters. The `E` parameter is the actual exception that occurred while the update operation was attempted. The exception object `E` will be freed if the `EUpdateError` instance is freed.

See also: `EDatabaseError` ([387](#))

14.7.5 `EUpdateError.Destroy`

Synopsis: Free the `EupdateError` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the original exception object (if there was one) and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: If the original exception object was already freed, an error will occur.

See also: `EUpdateError.OriginalException` ([389](#))

14.7.6 `EUpdateError.Context`

Synopsis: Context in which exception occurred.

Declaration: `Property Context : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: A description of the context in which the original exception was raised.

See also: `EUpdateError.OriginalException` ([389](#)), `EUpdateError.ErrorCode` ([388](#)), `EUpdateError.PreviousError` ([389](#))

14.7.7 `EUpdateError.ErrorCode`

Synopsis: Numerical error code.

Declaration: `Property ErrorCode : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ErrorCode` is a numerical error code, provided by the native data access layer, to describe the error. It may or not be filled.

See also: `EUpdateError.OriginalException` ([389](#)), `EUpdateError.Context` ([388](#)), `EUpdateError.PreviousError` ([389](#))

14.7.8 EUpdateError.OriginalException

Synopsis: Originally raised exception.

Declaration: `Property OriginalException : Exception`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `OriginalException` is the originally raised exception that is transformed to an `EUpdateError` exception.

See also: `DB.EDatabaseError` ([387](#))

14.7.9 EUpdateError.PreviousError

Synopsis: Previous error number.

Declaration: `Property PreviousError : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `PreviousError` is used to order the errors which occurred during an update operation.

See also: `EUpdateError.ErrorCode` ([388](#)), `EUpdateError.Context` ([388](#)), `EUpdateError.OriginalException` ([389](#))

14.8 IProviderSupport

14.8.1 Description

`IProviderSupport` is an interface used by Delphi's `TProvider` (datasnap) technology. It is currently not used in Free Pascal, but is provided for Delphi compatibility. The `TDataset` ([425](#)) class implements all the methods of this interface for the benefit of descendent classes, but does not publish the interface in it's declaration.

See also: `TDataset` ([425](#))

14.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
390	<code>PSEndTransaction</code>	End an active transaction.
390	<code>PSExecute</code>	Execute the current command-text.
390	<code>PSExecuteStatement</code>	Execute a SQL statement.
391	<code>PSGetAttributes</code>	Get a list of attributes (metadata).
391	<code>PSGetCommandText</code>	Return the SQL command executed for getting data.
391	<code>PSGetCommandType</code>	Return SQL command type.
392	<code>PSGetDefaultOrder</code>	Default order index definition.
392	<code>PSGetIndexDefs</code>	Return a list of index definitions.
392	<code>PSGetKeyFields</code>	Return a list of key fields in the dataset.
392	<code>PSGetParams</code>	Get the parameters in the commandtext.
393	<code>PSGetQuoteChar</code>	Quote character for quoted strings.
393	<code>PSGetTableName</code>	Name of database table which must be updated.
393	<code>PSGetUpdateException</code>	Transform exception to <code>UpdateError</code> .
393	<code>PSInTransaction</code>	Is the dataset in an active transaction.
394	<code>PSIsSQLBased</code>	Is the dataset SQL based.
394	<code>PSIsSQLSupported</code>	Can the dataset support SQL statements.
394	<code>PSReset</code>	Position the dataset on the first record.
394	<code>PSSetCommandText</code>	Set the command-text of the dataset.
395	<code>PSSetParams</code>	Set the parameters for the command text.
395	<code>PSStartTransaction</code>	Start a new transaction.
395	<code>PSUpdateRecord</code>	Update a record.

14.8.3 `IProviderSupport.PSEndTransaction`

Synopsis: End an active transaction.

Declaration: `procedure PSEndTransaction (ACommit: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSEndTransaction` ends an active transaction if an transaction is active. (`PSInTransaction` ([361](#)) returns `True`). If `ACommit` is `True` then the transaction is committed, else it is rolled back.

See also: `PSInTransaction` ([361](#)), `PSStartTransaction` ([361](#))

14.8.4 `IProviderSupport.PSExecute`

Synopsis: Execute the current command-text.

Declaration: `procedure PSExecute`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSExecute` executes the current SQL statement: the command as it is returned by `PSGetCommandText` ([361](#)).

See also: `PSGetCommandText` ([361](#)), `PSExecuteStatement` ([361](#))

14.8.5 `IProviderSupport.PSExecuteStatement`

Synopsis: Execute a SQL statement.

Declaration: `function PSExecuteStatement(const ASQL: string; AParams: TParams;
ResultSet: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSExecuteStatement` will execute the ASQL SQL statement in the current transaction. The SQL statement can have parameters embedded in it (in the form `:ParamName`), values for these parameters will be taken from `AParams`. If the SQL statement returns a result-set, then the result set can be returned in `ResultSet`. The function returns `True` if the statement was executed successful. `PSExecuteStatement` does not modify the content of `CommandText`: `PSGetCommandText` (361) returns the same value before and after a call to `PSExecuteStatement`.

See also: `PSGetCommandText` (361), `PSSetCommandText` (361), `PSExecuteStatement` (361)

14.8.6 IProviderSupport.PSGetAttributes

Synopsis: Get a list of attributes (metadata).

Declaration: `procedure PSGetAttributes(List: TList)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetAttributes` returns a set of name=value pairs which is included in the data packet sent to a client.

See also: `PSGetCommandText` (361)

14.8.7 IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandText

Synopsis: Return the SQL command executed for getting data.

Declaration: `function PSGetCommandText : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetCommandText` returns the SQL command that is executed when the `PSExecute` (361) function is called (for a `TSQLQuery` this would be the SQL property) or when the dataset is opened.

See also: `PSExecute` (361), `PSSetCommandText` (361)

14.8.8 IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandType

Synopsis: Return SQL command type.

Declaration: `function PSGetCommandType : TPSCommandType`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetCommandType` should return the kind of SQL statement that is executed by the command (as returned by `PSGetCommandText` (361)). The list of possible command types is enumerated in `TPSCommandType` (381).

See also: `PSGetCommandText` (361), `TPSCommandType` (381), `PSExecute` (361)

14.8.9 IProviderSupport.PSGetDefaultOrder

Synopsis: Default order index definition.

Declaration: `function PSGetDefaultOrder : TIndexDef`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetDefaultOrder` should return the index definition from the list of indexes (as returned by `PSGetIndexDefs` (361)) that represents the default sort order.

See also: `PSGetIndexDefs` (361), `PSGetKeyFields` (361)

14.8.10 IProviderSupport.PSGetIndexDefs

Synopsis: Return a list of index definitions.

Declaration: `function PSGetIndexDefs(IndexTypes: TIndexOptions) : TIndexDefs`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetIndexDefs` should return a list of index definitions, limited to the types of indexes in `IndexTypes`.

See also: `PSGetDefaultOrder` (361), `PSGetKeyFields` (361)

14.8.11 IProviderSupport.PSGetKeyFields

Synopsis: Return a list of key fields in the dataset.

Declaration: `function PSGetKeyFields : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetKeyFields` returns a semicolon-separated list of fieldnames that make up the unique key for a record. Normally, these are the names of the fields that have `pfInKey` in their `ProviderOptions` (477) property.

See also: `PSGetIndexDefs` (361), `PSGetDefaultOrder` (361), `TField.ProviderOptions` (477), `TProviderFlags` (380)

14.8.12 IProviderSupport.PSGetParams

Synopsis: Get the parameters in the commandtext.

Declaration: `function PSGetParams : TParams`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetParams` returns the list of parameters in the command-text (as returned by `PSGetCommandText` (361)). This is usually the `Params` property of a `TDataset` (425) descendant.

See also: `PSGetCommandText` (361), `PSSetParams` (361)

14.8.13 IProviderSupport.PSGetQuoteChar

Synopsis: Quote character for quoted strings.

Declaration: `function PSGetQuoteChar : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetQuoteChar` returns the quote character needed to enclose string literals in an SQL statement for the underlying database.

See also: `PSGetTableName` ([361](#))

14.8.14 IProviderSupport.PSGetTableName

Synopsis: Name of database table which must be updated.

Declaration: `function PSGetTableName : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetTableName` returns the name of the table for which update SQL statements must be constructed. The provider can create and execute SQL statements to update the underlying database by itself. For this, it uses `PSGetTableName` as the name of the table to update.

See also: `PSGetQuoteChar` ([361](#))

14.8.15 IProviderSupport.PSGetUpdateException

Synopsis: Transform exception to `UpdateError`.

Declaration: `function PSGetUpdateException(E: Exception; Prev: EUpdateError)
: EUpdateError`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetUpdateException` is called to transform and chain exceptions that occur during an `ApplyUpdates` operation. The exception `E` must be transformed to an `EUpdateError` ([387](#)) exception. The previous `EUpdateError` exception in the update batch is passed in `Prev`.

See also: `EUpdateError` ([387](#))

14.8.16 IProviderSupport.PSInTransaction

Synopsis: Is the dataset in an active transaction.

Declaration: `function PSInTransaction : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSInTransaction` returns `True` if the dataset is in an active transaction or `False` if no transaction is active.

See also: `PSEndTransaction` ([361](#)), `PSStartTransaction` ([361](#))

14.8.17 IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLBased

Synopsis: Is the dataset SQL based.

Declaration: `function PSIsSQLBased : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSIsSQLBased` returns `True` if the dataset is SQL based or not. Note that this is different from `PSIsSQLSupported` (361) which indicates whether SQL statements can be executed using `PSExecuteCommand` (361)

See also: `PSIsSQLSupported` (361), `PSExecuteCommand` (361)

14.8.18 IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLSupported

Synopsis: Can the dataset support SQL statements.

Declaration: `function PSIsSQLSupported : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSIsSQLSupported` returns `True` if `PSExecuteCommand` (361) can be used to execute SQL statements on the underlying database.

See also: `PSExecuteCommand` (361)

14.8.19 IProviderSupport.PSReset

Synopsis: Position the dataset on the first record.

Declaration: `procedure PSReset`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSReset` repositions the dataset on the first record. For bi-directional datasets, this usually means that first is called, but for unidirectional datasets this may result in re-fetching the data from the underlying database.

See also: `TDataset.First` (438), `TDataset.Open` (443)

14.8.20 IProviderSupport.PSSetCommandText

Synopsis: Set the command-text of the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure PSSetCommandText (const CommandText: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSSetCommandText` sets the `commandtext` (SQL) statement that is executed by `PSExecute` or that is used to open the dataset.

See also: `PSExecute` (361), `PSGetCommandText` (361), `PSSetParams` (361)

14.8.21 IProviderSupport.PSSetParams

Synopsis: Set the parameters for the command text.

Declaration: `procedure PSSetParams (AParams: TParams)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSSetParams` sets the values of the parameters that should be used when executing the command-text SQL statement.

See also: `PSSetCommandText` (361), `PSGetParams` (361)

14.8.22 IProviderSupport.PSStartTransaction

Synopsis: Start a new transaction.

Declaration: `procedure PSStartTransaction`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSStartTransaction` is used by the provider to start a new transaction. It will only be called if no transaction was active yet (i.e. `PSIntransaction` (361) returned `False`).

See also: `PSEndTransaction` (361), `PSIntransaction` (361)

14.8.23 IProviderSupport.PSUpdateRecord

Synopsis: Update a record.

Declaration: `function PSUpdateRecord (UpdateKind: TUpdateKind; Delta: TDataSet)
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSUpdateRecord` is called before attempting to update the records through generated SQL statements. The update to be performed is passed in `UpdateKind` parameter. The `Delta` Dataset's current record contains all data for the record that must be updated.

The function returns `True` if the update was successfully applied, `False` if not. In that case the provider will attempt to update the record using SQL statements if the dataset allows it.

See also: `PSIsSQLSupported` (361), `PSExecuteCommand` (361)

14.9 TArrayField

14.9.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
395	<code>Create</code>	

14.9.2 TArrayField.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create (AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

14.10 TAutoIncField

14.10.1 Description

`TAutoIncField` is the class created when a dataset must manage 32-bit signed integer data, of datatype `ftAutoInc`: This field gets it's data automatically by the database engine. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 32-bit signed integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TAutoIncField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each auto-incremental field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` ([477](#))

14.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
396	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TAutoIncField</code> class.

14.10.3 TAutoIncField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TAutoIncField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TAutoIncField` class. It simply calls the inherited constructor and then sets up some of the `TField` ([477](#)) class' fields.

See also: `TField` ([477](#))

14.11 TBCDField

14.11.1 Description

`TBCDField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of Binary Coded Decimal type. (`TField.DataType` ([490](#)) equals `ftBCD`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` ([477](#)) class, and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with BCD fields.

`TBCDField` assumes that the field's contents can be stored in a currency type, i.e. the maximum number of decimals after the decimal separator that can be stored in a `TBCDField` is 4. Fields that need to store a larger amount of decimals should be represented by a `TFMTBCDField` ([520](#)) instance.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBCDField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each BCD field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` ([425](#)), `TField` ([477](#)), `TFMTBCDField` ([520](#))

14.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
397	CheckRange	Check whether a values falls within the allowed range.
397	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TBCDField</code> class.

14.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
398	Currency	rw	Does the field represent a currency amount.
398	MaxValue	rw	Maximum value for the field.
399	MinValue	rw	Minimum value for the field.
398	Precision	rw	Precision of the BCD field.
399	Size		Number of decimals after the decimal separator.
397	Value	rw	Value of the field contents as a Currency type.

14.11.4 TBCDField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TBCDField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBCDField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([477](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with BCD data values.

See also: `TField` ([477](#))

14.11.5 TBCDField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a values falls within the allowed range.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: Currency) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` ([399](#)) and `MaxValue` ([398](#)) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` ([398](#)), `MinValue` ([399](#))

14.11.6 TBCDField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field contents as a Currency type.

Declaration: `Property Value : Currency`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is overridden from the `TField.Value` ([494](#)) property to a currency type field. It returns the same value as the `TField.AsCurrency` ([484](#)) field.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AsCurrency` ([484](#))

14.11.7 TBCDField.Precision

Synopsis: Precision of the BCD field.

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the total number of decimals in the BCD value. It is not the same as `TBCDField.Size` (399), which is the number of decimals after the decimal point. The `Precision` property should be set by the descendent classes when they initialize the field, and should be considered read-only. Changing the value will influence the values returned by the various `AsXXX` properties.

See also: `TBCDField.Size` (399), `TBCDField.Value` (397)

14.11.8 TBCDField.Currency

Synopsis: Does the field represent a currency amount.

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Currency` can be set to `True` to indicate that the field contains data representing an amount of currency. This affects the way the `TField.DisplayText` (491) and `TField.Text` (493) properties format the value of the field: if the `Currency` property is `True`, then these properties will format the value as a currency value (generally appending the currency sign) and if the `Currency` property is `False`, then they will format it as a normal floating-point value.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` (491), `TField.Text` (493)

14.11.9 TBCDField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Currency`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` can be set to a value different from zero, it is then the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` (399) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TBCDField.MinValue` (399), `TBCDField.CheckRange` (397)

14.11.10 TBCDField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : Currency`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `MinValue` can be set to a value different from zero, then it is the minimum value for the field.

When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `TBCDField.MaxValue` (398) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TBCDField.MaxValue` (398), `TBCDField.CheckRange` (397)

14.11.11 TBCDField.Size

Synopsis: Number of decimals after the decimal separator.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Size` is the number of decimals after the decimal separator. It is not the total number of decimals, which is stored in the `TBCDField.Precision` (398) field.

See also: `TBCDField.Precision` (398)

14.12 TBinaryField

14.12.1 Description

`TBinaryField` is an abstract class, designed to handle binary data of variable size. It overrides some of the properties and methods of the `TField` (477) class to be able to work with binary field data, such as retrieving the contents as a string or as a variant.

One must never create an instance of `TBinaryField` manually, it is an abstract class. Instead, a descendent class such as `TBytesField` (406) or `TVarBytesField` (572) should be created.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField` (477), `TBytesField` (406), `TVarBytesField` (572)

14.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
400	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TBinaryField</code> class.

14.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
400	Size		Size of the binary data.

14.12.4 TBinaryField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TBinaryField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the TBinaryField class. It simply calls the inherited destructor.

See also: TField ([477](#))

14.12.5 TBinaryField.Size

Synopsis: Size of the binary data.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Size` is simply redeclared published with a default value of 16.

See also: TField.Size ([493](#))

14.13 TBlobField

14.13.1 Description

TBlobField is the class used when a dataset must manage BLOB data. (TField.DataType ([490](#)) equals `ftBLOB`). It initializes some of the properties of the TField ([477](#)) class, and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with BLOB fields. It also serves as parent class for some specialized blob-like field types such as TMemofield ([540](#)), TWideMemofield ([573](#)) or TGraphicField ([523](#))

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TBlobField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each BLOB field when a dataset is opened.

See also: TDataset ([425](#)), TField ([477](#)), TMemofield ([540](#)), TWideMemofield ([573](#)), TGraphicField ([523](#))

14.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
401	Clear	Clear the BLOB field's contents.
401	Create	Create a new instance of a TBlobField class.
401	IsBlob	Is the field a blob field.
401	LoadFromFile	Load the contents of the field from a file.
402	LoadFromStream	Load the field's contents from stream.
402	SaveToFile	Save field contents to a file.
402	SaveToStream	Save the field's contents to stream.
403	SetFieldType	Set field type.

14.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
403	BlobSize	r	Size of the current blob.
404	BlobType	rw	Type of blob.
403	Modified	rw	Has the field's contents been modified.
404	Size		Size of the blob field.
404	Transliterate	rw	Should the contents of the field be transliterated.
403	Value	rw	Return the field's contents as a string.

14.13.4 TBlobField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TBlobField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the TBlobField class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some TField ([477](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with BLOB data.

See also: TField ([477](#))

14.13.5 TBlobField.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the BLOB field's contents.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` overrides the TField implementation of TField.Clear ([481](#)). It creates and immediately releases an empty blob stream in write mode, effectively clearing the contents of the BLOB field.

See also: TField.Clear ([481](#)), TField.IsNull ([492](#))

14.13.6 TBlobField.IsBlob

Synopsis: Is the field a blob field.

Declaration: `class function IsBlob : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsBlob` is overridden by TBlobField to return `True`

See also: TField.IsBlob ([482](#))

14.13.7 TBlobField.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load the contents of the field from a file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates a file stream with `FileName` as the name of the file to open, en then calls `LoadFromStream` (402) to read the contents of the blob field from the file. The file is opened in read-only mode.

Errors: If the file does not exist or is nor available for reading, an exception will be raised.

See also: `LoadFromStream` (402), `SaveToFile` (402)

14.13.8 TBlobField.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load the field's contents from stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` can be used to load the contents of the field from a `TStream` (??) descendent. The entire data of the stream will be copied, and the stream will be positioned on the first byte of data, so it must be seekable.

Errors: If the stream is not seekable, an exception will be raised.

See also: `SaveToStream` (402), `LoadFromFile` (401)

14.13.9 TBlobField.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save field contents to a file.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` creates a file stream with `FileName` as the name of the file to open, en then calls `SaveToStream` (402) to write the contents of the blob field to the file. The file is opened in write mode and is created if it does not yet exist.

Errors: If the file cannot be created or is not available for writing, an exception will be raised.

See also: `LoadFromFile` (401), `SaveToStream` (402)

14.13.10 TBlobField.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save the field's contents to stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` can be used to save the contents of the field to a `TStream` (??) descendent. The entire data of the field will be copied. The stream must of course support writing.

Errors: If the stream is not writable, an exception will be raised.

See also: `SaveToFile` (402), `LoadFromStream` (402)

14.13.11 TBlobField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set field type.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldType` is overridden by `TBlobField` to check whether a valid Blob field type is set. If so, it calls the inherited method.

See also: `TField.DataType` ([490](#))

14.13.12 TBlobField.BlobSize

Synopsis: Size of the current blob.

Declaration: `Property BlobSize : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `BlobSize` is the size (in bytes) of the current contents of the field. It will vary as the dataset's current record moves from record to record.

See also: `TField.Size` ([493](#)), `TField.DataSize` ([490](#))

14.13.13 TBlobField.Modified

Synopsis: Has the field's contents been modified.

Declaration: `Property Modified : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Modified` indicates whether the field's contents have been modified for the current record.

See also: `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` ([402](#))

14.13.14 TBlobField.Value

Synopsis: Return the field's contents as a string.

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TBlobField` as a string value: getting or setting this value will convert the BLOB data to a string, it will return the same value as the `TField.AsString` ([487](#)) property.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AsString` ([487](#))

14.13.15 TBlobField.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the contents of the field be transliterated.

Declaration: `Property Transliterate : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Transliterate` indicates whether the contents of the field should be transliterated (i.e. changed from OEM to non OEM codepage and vice versa) when reading or writing the value. The actual transliteration must be done in the `TDataset.Translate` (445) method of the dataset to which the field belongs. By default this property is `False`, but it can be set to `True` for BLOB data which contains text in another codepage.

See also: `TStringField.Transliterate` (570), `TDataset.Translate` (445)

14.13.16 TBlobField.BlobType

Synopsis: Type of blob.

Declaration: `Property BlobType : TBlobType`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BlobType` is an alias for `TField.DataType` (490), but with a restricted set of values. Setting `BlobType` is equivalent to setting the `TField.DataType` (490) property.

See also: `TField.DataType` (490)

14.13.17 TBlobField.Size

Synopsis: Size of the blob field.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Size` is the size of the blob in the internal memory buffer. It defaults to 0, as the BLOB data is not stored in the internal memory buffer. To get the size of the data in the current record, use the `BlobSize` (403) property instead.

See also: `BlobSize` (403)

14.14 TBooleanField**14.14.1 Description**

`TBooleanField` is the field class used by `TDataset` (425) whenever it needs to manage boolean data (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftBoolean`). It overrides some properties and methods of `TField` (477) to be able to work with boolean data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBooleanField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each boolean field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField` (477)

14.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
405	Create	Create a new instance of the TBooleanField class.

14.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
405	DisplayValues	rw	Textual representation of the true and false values.
405	Value	rw	Value of the field as a boolean value.

14.14.4 TBooleanField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TBooleanField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the TBooleanField class. It calls the inherited constructor and then sets some TField ([477](#)) properties to configure it for working with boolean values.

See also: TField ([477](#))

14.14.5 TBooleanField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a boolean value.

Declaration: `Property Value : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is redefined from TField.Value ([494](#)) by TBooleanField as a boolean value. It returns the same value as the TField.AsBoolean ([484](#)) property.

See also: TField.AsBoolean ([484](#)), TField.Value ([494](#))

14.14.6 TBooleanField.DisplayValues

Synopsis: Textual representation of the true and false values.

Declaration: `Property DisplayValues : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DisplayValues` contains 2 strings, separated by a semicolon (;) which are used to display the `True` and `False` values of the fields. The first string is used for `True` values, the second value is used for `False` values. If only one value is given, it will serve as the representation of the `True` value, the `False` value will be represented as an empty string.

A value of `Yes;No` will result in `True` values being displayed as 'Yes', and `False` values as 'No'. When writing the value of the field as a string, the string will be compared (case insensitively) with the value for `True`, and if it matches, the field's value will be set to `True`. After this it will be compared to the value for `False`, and if it matches, the field's value will be set to `False`. If the text matches neither of the two values, an exception will be raised.

See also: [TField.AsString \(487\)](#), [TField.Text \(493\)](#)

14.15 TByteField

14.15.1 Description

`TByteField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 8-bit unsigned data: the data type `ftByte`. It overrides some methods of `TField` ([477](#)) to handle `Byte` data, and sets some of the properties to values for `Byte` data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as [MinValue \(533\)](#) and [MaxValue \(533\)](#).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TByteField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: [MinValue \(533\)](#), [MaxValue \(533\)](#)

14.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
406	Create	Create new instance of <code>TByteField</code> .

14.15.3 TByteField.Create

Synopsis: Create new instance of `TByteField`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and sets the values of the [MinValue \(533\)](#)[MaxValue \(533\)](#) and [TField.DataType \(490\)](#) properties.

See also: [MinValue \(533\)](#), [MaxValue \(533\)](#), [TField.DataType \(490\)](#)

14.16 TBytesField

14.16.1 Description

`TBytesField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of fixed-size binary type. ([TField.DataType \(490\)](#) equals `ftBytes`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` ([477](#)) class to be able to work with fixed-size byte fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBytesField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each binary data field when a dataset is opened.

See also: [TDataSet \(425\)](#), [TField \(477\)](#), [TVarBytesField \(572\)](#)

14.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
407	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TBytesField</code> class.

14.16.3 TBytesField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TBytesField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBytesField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (477) properties to configure the instance for working with binary data values.

See also: `TField` (477)

14.17 TCheckConstraint

14.17.1 Description

`TCheckConstraint` can be used to store the definition of a record-level constraint. It does not enforce the constraint, it only stores the constraint's definition. The constraint can come from several sources: an imported constraints from the database, usually stored in the `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (408) property, or a constraint enforced by the user on a particular dataset instance stored in `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (408).

See also: `TCheckConstraints` (409), `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (408), `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (408)

14.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
407	<code>Assign</code>	Assign one constraint to another.

14.17.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
408	<code>CustomConstraint</code>	<code>rw</code>	User-defined constraint.
408	<code>ErrorMessage</code>	<code>rw</code>	Message to display when the constraint is violated.
408	<code>FromDictionary</code>	<code>rw</code>	True if the constraint is imported from a datadictionary.
408	<code>ImportedConstraint</code>	<code>rw</code>	Constraint imported from the database engine.

14.17.4 TCheckConstraint.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one constraint to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` is overridden by `TCheckConstraint` to copy all published properties if `Source` is also a `TCheckConstraint` instance.

Errors: If `Source` is not an instance of `TCheckConstraint`, an exception may be thrown.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (408), `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (408)

14.17.5 TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint

Synopsis: User-defined constraint.

Declaration: `Property CustomConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CustomConstraint` is an SQL expression with an additional user-defined constraint. The expression should be enforced by a `TDataset` (425) descendent when data is posted to the dataset. If the constraint is violated, then the dataset should raise an exception, with message as specified in `TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage` (408)

See also: `TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage` (408)

14.17.6 TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage

Synopsis: Message to display when the constraint is violated.

Declaration: `Property ErrorMessage : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ErrorMessage` is used as the message when the dataset instance raises an exception if the constraint is violated.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (408)

14.17.7 TCheckConstraint.FromDictionary

Synopsis: True if the constraint is imported from a datadictionary.

Declaration: `Property FromDictionary : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FromDictionary` indicates whether a constraint is imported from a data dictionary. This can be set by `TDataset` (425) descendents to indicate the source of the constraint, but is otherwise ignored.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (408)

14.17.8 TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint

Synopsis: Constraint imported from the database engine.

Declaration: `Property ImportedConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ImportedConstraint` is a constraint imported from the database engine: it will not be enforced locally by the `TDataset` (425) descendent.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (408)

14.18 TCheckConstraints

14.18.1 Description

`TCheckConstraints` is a `TCollection` descendent which keeps a collection of `TCheckConstraint` (407) items. It overrides the `Add` (409) method to return a `TCheckConstraint` instance.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (407)

14.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
409	<code>Add</code>	Add new <code>TCheckConstraint</code> item to the collection.
409	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TCheckConstraints</code> class.

14.18.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
409	<code>Items</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to the items in the collection.

14.18.4 TCheckConstraints.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TCheckConstraints` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TCheckConstraints` class. The `AOwner` argument is usually the `TDataset` (425) instance for which the data is managed. It is kept for future reference. After storing the owner, the inherited constructor is called with the `TCheckConstraint` (407) class pointer.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (407), `TDataset` (425)

14.18.5 TCheckConstraints.Add

Synopsis: Add new `TCheckConstraint` item to the collection.

Declaration: `function Add : TCheckConstraint`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` is overridden by `TCheckConstraint` to add a new `TCheckConstraint` (407) instance to the collection. it returns the newly added instance.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (407), `#rtl.classes.TCollection.Add` (??)

14.18.6 TCheckConstraints.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the items in the collection.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: LongInt]: TCheckConstraint; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is overridden by `TCheckConstraints` to provide type-safe access to the items in the collection. The `index` is zero-based, so it runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TCollection.Items` (??)

14.19 TCurrencyField

14.19.1 Description

`TCurrencyField` is the field class used by `TDataset` (425) when it needs to manage currency-valued data. (`TField.Datatype` (490) equals `ftCurrency`). It simply sets some `Tfield` (477) properties to be able to work with currency data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TCurrencyField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each currency field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (477), `TDataset` (425)

14.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
410	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TCurrencyField</code> .

14.19.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
410	Currency		Is the field a currency field.

14.19.4 TCurrencyField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TCurrencyField`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TCurrencyField`. It calls the inherited constructor and then sets some properties (`TCurrencyField.Currency` (410)) to be able to work with currency data.

See also: `TField` (477), `TCurrencyField.Currency` (410)

14.19.5 TCurrencyField.Currency

Synopsis: Is the field a currency field.

Declaration: `Property Currency :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Currency` is inherited from `TFloatField.Currency` (519) but is initialized to `True` by the `TCurrencyField` constructor. It can be set to `False` if the contents of the field is of type currency, but does not represent an amount of currency.

See also: `TFloatField.Currency` (519)

14.20 TCustomConnection

14.20.1 Description

`TCustomConnection` must be used for all database classes that need a connection to a server. The class introduces some methods and classes to activate the connection (`Open` (412)) and to deactivate the connection (`TCustomConnection.Close` (411)), plus a property to inspect the state (`Connected` (413)) of the connected.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` (412), `TCustomConnection.Close` (411), `TCustomConnection.Connected` (413)

14.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
411	<code>Close</code>	Close the connection.
412	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TCustomconnection</code> instance from memory.
412	<code>Open</code>	Makes the connection to the server.

14.20.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
413	<code>AfterConnect</code>	rw	Event triggered after a connection is made.
414	<code>AfterDisconnect</code>	rw	Event triggered after a connection is closed.
414	<code>BeforeConnect</code>	rw	Event triggered before a connection is made.
414	<code>BeforeDisconnect</code>	rw	Event triggered before a connection is closed.
413	<code>Connected</code>	rw	Is the connection established or not.
412	<code>DataSetCount</code>	r	Number of datasets connected to this connection.
413	<code>DataSets</code>	r	Datasets linked to this connection.
413	<code>LoginPrompt</code>	rw	Should the <code>OnLogin</code> be triggered.
415	<code>OnCloseError</code>	rw	
414	<code>OnLogin</code>	rw	Event triggered when a login prompt is shown.

14.20.4 TCustomConnection.Close

Synopsis: Close the connection.

Declaration: `procedure Close(ForceClose: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the connection with the server if it was connected. Calling this method first triggers the `BeforeDisconnect` (414) event. If an exception is raised during the execution of that event handler, the disconnect process is aborted. After calling this event, the connection is actually closed. After the connection was closed, the `AfterDisconnect` (414) event is triggered.

Calling the `Close` method is equivalent to setting the `Connected` (413) property to `False`.

If `ForceClose` is `True` then the descendent should ignore errors from the underlying connection, allowing all datasets to be closed properly.

Errors: If the connection cannot be broken for some reason, an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect` (414), `TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect` (414), `TCustomConnection.Open` (412), `TCustomConnection.Connected` (413)

14.20.5 TCustomConnection.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TCustomConnection` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` closes the connection, and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: If an exception is raised during the disconnect process, an exception will be raised, and the instance is not removed from memory.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (411)

14.20.6 TCustomConnection.Open

Synopsis: Makes the connection to the server.

Declaration: `procedure Open`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Open` establishes the connection with the server if it was not yet connected. Calling this method first triggers the `BeforeConnect` (414) event. If an exception is raised during the execution of that event handler, the connect process is aborted. If `LoginPrompt` (413) is `True`, the `OnLogin` (414) event handler is called. Only after this event, the connection is actually established. After the connection was established, the `AfterConnect` (413) event is triggered.

Calling the `Open` method is equivalent to setting the `Connected` (413) property to `True`.

Errors: If an exception is raised during the `BeforeConnect` or `OnLogin` handlers, the connection is not actually established.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (414), `TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt` (413), `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (414), `TCustomConnection.AfterConnect` (413), `TCustomConnection.Connected` (413)

14.20.7 TCustomConnection.DataSetCount

Synopsis: Number of datasets connected to this connection.

Declaration: `Property DataSetCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSetCount` is the number of datasets connected to this connection component. The actual datasets are available through the `Datasets` (413) array property. As implemented in `TCustomConnection`, this property is always zero. Descendent classes implement the actual count.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TCustomConnection.Datasets` (413)

14.20.8 TCustomConnection.DataSets

Synopsis: Datasets linked to this connection.

Declaration: `Property DataSets[Index: LongInt]: TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSets` allows indexed access to the datasets connected to this connection. `Index` is a zero-based indexed, it's maximum value is `DatasetCount-1` (412).

See also: `DatasetCount` (412)

14.20.9 TCustomConnection.Connected

Synopsis: Is the connection established or not.

Declaration: `Property Connected : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Connected` is `True` if the connection to the server is established, `False` if it is disconnected. The property can be set to `True` to establish a connection (equivalent to calling `TCustomConnection.Open` (412), or to `False` to break it (equivalent to calling `TCustomConnection.Close` (411).

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` (412), `TCustomConnection.Close` (411)

14.20.10 TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Should the `OnLogin` be triggered.

Declaration: `Property LoginPrompt : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `LoginPrompt` can be set to `True` if the `OnLogin` handler should be called when the `Open` method is called. If it is not `True`, then the event handler is not called.

See also: `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (414)

14.20.11 TCustomConnection.AfterConnect

Synopsis: Event triggered after a connection is made.

Declaration: `Property AfterConnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterConnect` is called after a connection is successfully established in `TCustomConnection.Open` (412). It can be used to open datasets, or indicate a connection status change.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` (412), `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (414), `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (414)

14.20.12 TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect

Synopsis: Event triggered after a connection is closed.

Declaration: `Property AfterDisconnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterDisConnect` is called after a connection is successfully closed in `TCustomConnection.Close` (411). It can be used for instance to indicate a connection status change.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (411), `TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect` (414)

14.20.13 TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect

Synopsis: Event triggered before a connection is made.

Declaration: `Property BeforeConnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeConnect` is called before a connection is attempted in `TCustomConnection.Open` (412). It can be used to set connection parameters, or to abort the establishing of the connection: if an exception is raised during this event, the connection attempt is aborted.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` (412), `TCustomConnection.AfterConnect` (413), `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (414)

14.20.14 TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect

Synopsis: Event triggered before a connection is closed.

Declaration: `Property BeforeDisconnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeDisConnect` is called before a connection is closed in `TCustomConnection.Close` (411). It can be used for instance to check for unsaved changes, to save those changes, or to abort the disconnect operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, the disconnect operation is aborted entirely.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (411), `TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect` (414)

14.20.15 TCustomConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event triggered when a login prompt is shown.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin : TLoginEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnLogin` is triggered when the connection needs a login prompt during the call: it is triggered when the `LoginPrompt` (413) property is `True`, after the `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (414) event, but before the connection is actually established.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (414), `TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt` (413), `TCustomConnection.Open` (412)

14.20.16 TCustomConnection.OnCloseError

Declaration: `Property OnCloseError : TCloseErrorEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

14.21 TDatabase

14.21.1 Description

`TDatabase` is a component whose purpose is to provide a connection to an external database engine, not to provide the database itself. This class provides generic methods for attachment to databases and querying their contents; the details of the actual connection are handled by database-specific components (such as `SQLDb` for SQL-based databases, or `DBA` for `DBASE/FoxPro` style databases).

Like `TDataset` (425), `TDatabase` is an abstract class. It provides methods to keep track of datasets connected to the database, and to close these datasets when the connection to the database is closed. To this end, it introduces a `Connected` (418) boolean property, which indicates whether a connection to the database is established or not. The actual logic to establish a connection to a database must be implemented by descendent classes.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TDatabase` (415)

14.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
416	<code>CloseDataSets</code>	Close all connected datasets.
417	<code>CloseTransactions</code>	End all transactions.
416	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new <code>TDatabase</code> class instance.
416	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove a <code>TDatabase</code> instance from memory.
417	<code>EndTransaction</code>	End an active transaction.
417	<code>StartTransaction</code>	Start a new transaction.

14.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
418	Connected	rw	Is the database connected.
419	DatabaseName	rw	Database name or path.
418	Directory	rw	Directory for the database.
418	IsSQLBased	r	Is the database SQL based.
419	KeepConnection	rw	Should the connection be kept active.
419	Params	rw	Connection parameters.
417	TransactionCount	r	Number of transaction components connected to this database.
418	Transactions	r	Indexed access to all transaction components connected to this database.

14.21.4 TDatabase.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new `TDatabase` class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TDatabase` class. It allocates some resources and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TDBDataset` ([470](#)), `TDBTransaction` ([471](#)), `TDatabase.Destroy` ([416](#))

14.21.5 TDatabase.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a `TDatabase` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` starts by disconnecting the database (thus closing all datasets and ending all transactions), then notifies all connected datasets and transactions that it is about to be released. After this, it releases all resources used by the `TDatabase` instance

See also: `TDatabase.CloseDatasets` ([416](#))

14.21.6 TDatabase.CloseDataSets

Synopsis: Close all connected datasets.

Declaration: `procedure CloseDataSets`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseDatasets` closes all connected datasets. It is called automatically when the connection is closed.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` ([411](#)), `TDatabase.CloseTransactions` ([417](#))

14.21.7 TDatabase.CloseTransactions

Synopsis: End all transactions.

Declaration: `procedure CloseTransactions`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseTransaction` calls `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (471) on all connected transactions. It is called automatically when the connection is closed, after all datasets are closed.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (411), `TDatabase.CloseDatasets` (416)

14.21.8 TDatabase.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start a new transaction.

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` must be implemented by descendent classes to start a new transaction. This method is provided for Delphi compatibility: new applications should use a `TDBTransaction` (471) component instead and invoke the `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (471) method.

See also: `TDBTransaction` (471), `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (471)

14.21.9 TDatabase.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End an active transaction.

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndTransaction` must be implemented by descendent classes to end an active transaction. This method is provided for Delphi compatibility: new applications should use a `TDBTransaction` (471) component instead and invoke the `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (471) method.

See also: `TDBTransaction` (471), `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (471)

14.21.10 TDatabase.TransactionCount

Synopsis: Number of transaction components connected to this database.

Declaration: `Property TransactionCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `TransactionCount` is the number of transaction components which are connected to this database instance. It is the upper bound for the `TDatabase.Transactions` (418) array property.

See also: `TDatabase.Transactions` (418)

14.21.11 TDatabase.Transactions

Synopsis: Indexed access to all transaction components connected to this database.

Declaration: `Property Transactions[Index: LongInt]: TDBTransaction`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Transactions` provides indexed access to the transaction components connected to this database.
The `Index` is zero based: it runs from 0 to `TransactionCount-1`.

See also: `TDatabase.TransactionCount` ([417](#))

14.21.12 TDatabase.Directory

Synopsis: Directory for the database.

Declaration: `Property Directory : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Directory` is provided for Delphi compatibility: it indicates (for Paradox and dBase based databases) the directory where the database files are located. It is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of `TDatabase` ([415](#)).

See also: `TDatabase.Params` ([419](#)), `TDatabase.IsSQLBased` ([418](#))

14.21.13 TDatabase.IsSQLBased

Synopsis: Is the database SQL based.

Declaration: `Property IsSQLBased : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `IsSQLbased` is a read-only property which indicates whether a property is SQL-Based, i.e. whether the database engine accepts SQL commands.

See also: `TDatabase.Params` ([419](#)), `TDatabase.Directory` ([418](#))

14.21.14 TDatabase.Connected

Synopsis: Is the database connected.

Declaration: `Property Connected : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Connected` is simply promoted to published property from `TCustomConnection.Connected` ([413](#)).

See also: `TCustomConnection.Connected` ([413](#))

14.21.15 TDatabase.DatabaseName

Synopsis: Database name or path.

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DatabaseName` specifies the path of the database. For directory-based databases this will be the same as the `Directory` (418) property. For other databases this will be the name of a known pre-configured connection, or the location of the database file.

See also: `TDatabase.Directory` (418), `TDatabase.Params` (419)

14.21.16 TDatabase.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Should the connection be kept active.

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeepConnection` is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of `TDatabase`.

See also: `TDatabase.Params` (419)

14.21.17 TDatabase.Params

Synopsis: Connection parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params : TStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Params` is a catch-all storage mechanism for database connection parameters. It is a list of strings in the form of `Name=Value` pairs. Which name/value pairs are supported depends on the `TDatabase` descendent, but the `user_name` and `password` parameters are commonly used to store the login credentials for the database.

See also: `TDatabase.Directory` (418), `TDatabase.DatabaseName` (419)

14.22 TDataLink

14.22.1 Description

`TDataLink` is used by GUI controls or datasets in a master-detail relationship to handle data events coming from a `TDataSource` (464) instance. It is a class that exists for component programmers, application coders should never need to use `TDataLink` or one of its descendents.

DB-Aware Component coders must use a `TDataLink` instance to handle all communication with a `TDataSet` (425) instance, rather than communicating directly with the dataset. `TDataLink` contains

methods which are called by the various events triggered by the dataset. Inversely, it has some methods to trigger actions in the dataset.

`TDatalink` is an abstract class; it is never used directly. Instead, a descendent class is used which overrides the various methods that are called in response to the events triggered by the dataset. Examples are .

See also: `TDataset` ([425](#)), `TDatasource` ([464](#)), `TDetailDatalink` ([475](#)), `TMasterDataLink` ([537](#))

14.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
420	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new instance of <code>TDatalink</code> .
420	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove an instance of <code>TDatalink</code> from memory.
421	<code>Edit</code>	Set the dataset in edit mode, if possible.
421	<code>ExecuteAction</code>	Execute action.
422	<code>UpdateAction</code>	Update handler for actions.
421	<code>UpdateRecord</code>	Called when the data in the dataset must be updated.

14.22.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
422	<code>Active</code>	r	Is the link active.
422	<code>ActiveRecord</code>	rw	Currently active record.
422	<code>BOF</code>	r	Is the dataset at the first record.
423	<code>BufferCount</code>	rw	Set to the number of record buffers this datalink needs.
423	<code>DataSet</code>	r	Dataset this datalink is connected to.
423	<code>DataSource</code>	rw	Datasource this datalink is connected to.
423	<code>DataSourceFixed</code>	rw	Can the datasource be changed.
424	<code>Editing</code>	r	Is the dataset in edit mode.
424	<code>Eof</code>	r	
424	<code>ReadOnly</code>	rw	Is the link readonly.
424	<code>RecordCount</code>	r	Number of records in the buffer of the dataset.

14.22.4 TDatalink.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TDatalink`.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes some fields. In particular, it sets the `buffercount` to 1.

See also: `TDatalink.Destroy` ([420](#))

14.22.5 TDatalink.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove an instance of `TDatalink` from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the `TDatalink` instance (in particular, it removes itself from the datasource it is coupled to), and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDatalink.Destroy` ([420](#))

14.22.6 `TDatalink.Edit`

Synopsis: Set the dataset in edit mode, if possible.

Declaration: `function Edit : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Edit` attempts to put the dataset in edit mode. It returns `True` if this operation succeeded, `False` if not. To this end, it calls the `Edit` ([465](#)) method of the `DataSource` ([423](#)) to which the datalink instance is coupled. If the `TDatasource.AutoEdit` ([466](#)) property is `False` then this operation will not succeed, unless the dataset is already in edit mode. GUI controls should always respect the result of this function, and not allow the user to edit data if this function returned `false`.

See also: `TDatasource` ([464](#)), `TDatalink.Datasource` ([423](#)), `TDatasource.Edit` ([465](#)), `TDatasource.AutoEdit` ([466](#))

14.22.7 `TDatalink.UpdateRecord`

Synopsis: Called when the data in the dataset must be updated.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateRecord`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Updaterecord` is called when the dataset expects the GUI controls to post any pending changes to the dataset. This method guards against recursive behaviour: while an `UpdateRecord` is in progress, the `TDatalink.RecordChange` ([419](#)) notification (which could result from writing data to the dataset) will be blocked.

See also: `TDatalink.RecordChange` ([419](#))

14.22.8 `TDatalink.ExecuteAction`

Synopsis: Execute action.

Declaration: `function ExecuteAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteAction` implements action support. It should never be necessary to call `ExecuteAction` from program code, as it is called automatically whenever a target control needs to handle an action. This method must be overridden in case any additional action must be taken when the action must be executed. The implementation in `TDatalink` checks if the action handles the datasource, and then calls `Action.ExecuteTarget`, passing it the datasource. If so, it returns `True`.

See also: `TDatalink.UpdateAction` ([422](#))

14.22.9 TDataLink.UpdateAction

Synopsis: Update handler for actions.

Declaration: `function UpdateAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateAction` implements action update support. It should never be necessary to call `UpdateAction` from program code, as it is called automatically whenever a target control needs to update an action. This method must be overridden in case any specific action must be taken when the action must be updated. The implementation in `TDatalink` checks if the action handles the datasource, and then calls `Action.UpdateTarget`, passing it the datasource. If so, it returns `True`.

See also: `TDatalink.ExecuteAction` ([421](#))

14.22.10 TDataLink.Active

Synopsis: Is the link active.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Active` determines whether the events of the dataset are passed on to the control connected to the actionlink. If it is set to `False`, then no events are passed between control and dataset. It is set to `TDataset.Active` ([454](#)) whenever the `DataSource` ([423](#)) property is set.

See also: `TDatalink.Datasource` ([423](#)), `TDatalink.ReadOnly` ([424](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([454](#))

14.22.11 TDataLink.ActiveRecord

Synopsis: Currently active record.

Declaration: `Property ActiveRecord : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ActiveRecord` returns the index of the active record in the dataset's record buffer for this datalink.

See also: `TDatalink.BOF` ([422](#)), `TDatalink.EOF` ([424](#))

14.22.12 TDataLink.BOF

Synopsis: Is the dataset at the first record.

Declaration: `Property BOF : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BOF` returns `TDataset.BOF` ([446](#)) if the dataset is available, `True` otherwise.

See also: `TDatalink.EOF` ([424](#)), `TDataset.BOF` ([446](#))

14.22.13 TDataLink.BufferCount

Synopsis: Set to the number of record buffers this datalink needs.

Declaration: `Property BufferCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BufferCount` can be set to the number of buffers that the dataset should manage on behalf of the control connected to this datalink. By default, this is 1. Controls that must display more than 1 buffer (such as grids) can set this to a higher value.

See also: `TDataset.ActiveBuffer` ([430](#)), `TDatalink.ActiveRecord` ([422](#))

14.22.14 TDataLink.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this datalink is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataset`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSet` equals `Datasource.Dataset` if the datasource is set, or `Nil` otherwise.

See also: `TDatalink.DataSource` ([423](#)), `TDataset` ([425](#))

14.22.15 TDataLink.DataSource

Synopsis: Datasource this datalink is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataSource : TDataSource`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataSource` should be set to a `TDataSource` ([464](#)) instance to get access to the dataset it is connected to. A datalink never points directly to a `TDataset` ([425](#)) instance, always to a datasource. When the datasource is enabled or disabled, all `TDatalink` instances connected to it are enabled or disabled at once.

See also: `TDataset` ([425](#)), `TDatasource` ([464](#))

14.22.16 TDataLink.DataSourceFixed

Synopsis: Can the datasource be changed.

Declaration: `Property DataSourceFixed : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataSourceFixed` can be set to `True` to prevent changing of the `DataSource` ([423](#)) property. When lengthy operations are in progress, this can be done to prevent user code (e.g. event handlers) from changing the datasource property which might interfere with the operation in progress.

See also: `TDataLink.DataSource` ([423](#))

14.22.17 TDataLink.Editing

Synopsis: Is the dataset in edit mode.

Declaration: `Property Editing : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Editing` determines whether the dataset is in one of the edit states (`dsEdit`, `dsInsert`). It can be set into this mode by calling the `TDatalink.Edit` (421) method. Never attempt to set the dataset in editing mode directly. The `Edit` method will perform the needed checks prior to setting the dataset in edit mode and will return `True` if the dataset was successfully set in the editing state.

See also: `TDatalink.Edit` (421), `TDataset.Edit` (435)

14.22.18 TDataLink.Eof

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property Eof : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `EOF` returns `TDataset.EOF` (448) if the dataset is available, `True` otherwise.

See also: `TDatalink.BOF` (422), `TDataset.EOF` (448)

14.22.19 TDataLink.ReadOnly

Synopsis: Is the link readonly.

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `ReadOnly` can be set to `True` to indicate that the link is read-only, i.e. the connected control will not modify the dataset. Methods as `TDatalink.Edit` (421) will check this property and fail if the link is read-only. This setting has no effect on the communication of dataset events to the datalink: the `TDatalink.Active` (422) property can be used to disable delivery of events to the datalink.

See also: `TDatalink.Active` (422), `TDatalink.edit` (421)

14.22.20 TDataLink.RecordCount

Synopsis: Number of records in the buffer of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property RecordCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `RecordCount` returns the number of records in the dataset's buffer. It is limited by the `TDatalink.BufferCount` (423) property: `RecordCount` is always less than `Buffercount`.

See also: `TDatalink.BufferCount` (423)

14.23 TDataSet

14.23.1 Description

`TDataSet` is the main class of the `db` unit. This abstract class provides all basic functionality to access data stored in tabular format: The data consists of records, and the data in each record is organised in several fields.

`TDataSet` has a buffer to cache a few records in memory, this buffer is used by `TDataSource` to create the ability to use data-aware components.

`TDataSet` is an abstract class, which provides the basic functionality to access, navigate through the data and - in case read-write access is available, edit existing or add new records.

`TDataSet` is an abstract class: it does not have the knowledge to store or load the records from whatever medium the records are stored on. Descendants add the functionality to load and save the data. Therefore `TDataSet` is never used directly, one always instantiates a descendent class.

Initially, no data is available: the dataset is inactive. The `Open` (443) method must be used to fetch data into memory. After this command, the data is available in memory for browsing or editing purposes: The dataset is active (indicated by the `TDataSet.Active` (454) property). Likewise, the `Close` (433) method can be used to remove the data from memory. Any changes not yet saved to the underlying medium will be lost.

Data is expected to be in tabular format, where each row represents a record. The dataset has an idea of a cursor: this is the current position of the data cursor in the set of rows. Only the data of the current record is available for display or editing purposes. Through the `Next` (442), `Prev` (425), `First` (438) and `Last` (441) methods, it is possible to navigate through the records. The `EOF` (448) property will be `True` if the last row has been reached. Likewise, the `BOF` (446) property will return `True` if the first record in the dataset has been reached when navigating backwards. If both properties are empty, then there is no data available. For dataset descendants that support counting the number of records, the `RecordCount` (451) will be zero.

The `Append` (431) and `Insert` (440) methods can be used to insert new records to the set of records. The `TDataSet.Delete` (434) statement is used to delete the current record, and the `Edit` (435) command must be used to set the dataset in editing mode: the contents of the current record can then be changed. Any changes made to the current record (be it a new or existing record) must be saved by the `Post` (443) method, or can be undone using the `Cancel` (432) method.

The data in the various fields properties is available through the `Fields` (452) array property, giving indexed access to all the fields in a record. The contents of a field is always readable. If the dataset is in one of the editing modes, then the fields can also be written to.

See also: `TField` (477)

14.23.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
430	ActiveBuffer	Currently active memory buffer.
431	Append	Append a new record to the data.
431	AppendRecord	Append a new record to the dataset and fill with data.
432	BookmarkValid	Test whether ABookMark is a valid bookmark.
432	Cancel	Cancel the current editing operation.
432	CheckBrowseMode	Check whether the dataset is in browse mode.
432	ClearFields	Clear the values of all fields.
433	Close	Close the dataset.
433	CompareBookmarks	Compare two bookmarks.
433	ControlsDisabled	Check whether the controls are disabled.
430	Create	Create a new TDataset instance.
434	CreateBlobStream	Create blob stream.
434	CursorPosChanged	Indicate a change in cursor position.
434	DataConvert	Convert data from/to native format.
434	Delete	Delete the current record.
430	Destroy	Free a TDataset instance.
435	DisableControls	Disable event propagation of controls.
435	Edit	Set the dataset in editing mode.
436	EnableControls	Enable event propagation of controls.
436	FieldByName	Search a field by name.
436	FindField	Find a field by name.
437	FindFirst	Find the first active record (deprecated).
437	FindLast	Find the last active record (deprecated).
437	FindNext	Find the next active record (deprecated).
437	FindPrior	Find the previous active record (deprecated).
438	First	Position the dataset on the first record.
438	FreeBookmark	Free a bookmark obtained with GetBookmark (deprecated).
438	GetBookmark	Get a bookmark pointer (deprecated).
439	GetCurrentRecord	Copy the data for the current record in a memory buffer.
430	GetFieldData	Get the data for a field.
439	GetFieldList	Return field instances in a list.
439	GetFieldNames	Return a list of all available field names.
439	GotoBookmark	Jump to bookmark.
440	Insert	Insert a new record at the current position.
440	InsertRecord	Insert a new record with given values.
440	IsEmpty	Check if the dataset contains no data.
440	IsLinkedTo	Check whether a datasource is linked to the dataset.
441	IsSequenced	Is the data sequenced.
441	Last	Navigate forward to the last record.
441	Locate	Locate a record based on some key values.
442	Lookup	Search for a record and return matching values.
442	MoveBy	Move the cursor position.
442	Next	Go to the next record in the dataset.
443	Open	Activate the dataset: Fetch data into memory.
443	Post	Post pending edits to the database.
444	Prior	Go to the previous record.
444	Refresh	Refresh the records in the dataset.
444	Resync	Resynchronize the data buffer.
431	SetFieldData	Store the data for a field.
444	SetFields	Set a number of field values at once.
445	Translate	Transliterate a buffer.
445	UpdateCursorPos	Update cursor position.
445	UpdateRecord	Indicate that the record contents have changed.
446	UpdateStatus	Get the update status for the current record.

14.23.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
454	Active	rw	Is the dataset open or closed.
458	AfterCancel	rw	Event triggered after a Cancel operation.
455	AfterClose	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is closed.
459	AfterDelete	rw	Event triggered after a successful Delete operation.
457	AfterEdit	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is put in edit mode.
456	AfterInsert	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is put in insert mode.
455	AfterOpen	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is opened.
457	AfterPost	rw	Event called after changes have been posted to the underlying database.
460	AfterRefresh	rw	Event triggered after the data has been refreshed.
459	AfterScroll	rw	Event triggered after the cursor has changed position.
454	AutoCalcFields	rw	How often should the value of calculated fields be calculated.
458	BeforeCancel	rw	Event triggered before a Cancel operation.
455	BeforeClose	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is closed.
458	BeforeDelete	rw	Event triggered before a Delete operation.
456	BeforeEdit	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is put in edit mode.
456	BeforeInsert	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is put in insert mode.
455	BeforeOpen	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is opened.
457	BeforePost	rw	Event called before changes are posted to the underlying database.
460	BeforeRefresh	rw	Event triggered before the data is refreshed.
459	BeforeScroll	rw	Event triggered before the cursor changes position.
446	BlockReadSize	rw	Number of records to read.
446	BOF	r	Is the cursor at the beginning of the data (on the first record).
446	Bookmark	rw	Get or set the current cursor position.
447	CanModify	r	Can the data in the dataset be modified.
448	DataSource	r	Datasource this dataset is connected to.
448	DefaultFields	r	Is the dataset using persistent fields or not.
448	EOF	r	Indicates whether the last record has been reached.
449	FieldCount	r	Number of fields.
449	FieldDefs	rw	Definitions of available fields in the underlying database.
452	Fields	r	Indexed access to the fields of the dataset.
453	FieldValues	rw	Access to field values based on the field names.
453	Filter	rw	Filter to apply to the data in memory.
453	Filtered	rw	Is the filter active or not.
454	FilterOptions	rw	Options to apply when filtering.
450	Found	r	Check success of one of the Find methods.
450	IsUniDirectional	r	Is the dataset unidirectional (i.e. forward scrolling only).
450	Modified	r	Was the current record modified ?
460	OnCalcFields	rw	Event triggered when values for calculated fields must be computed.
461	OnDeleteError	rw	Event triggered when a delete operation fails.
461	OnEditError	rw	Event triggered when an edit operation fails.
462	OnFilterRecord	rw	Event triggered to filter records.
462	OnNewRecord	rw	Event triggered when a new record is created.
462	OnPostError	rw	Event triggered when a post operation fails.
451	RecNo	rw	Current record number.
451	RecordCount	r	Number of records in the dataset.
451	RecordSize	r	Size of the record in memory.
452	SparseArrays	rw	
452	State	r	Current operational state of the dataset.

14.23.4 TDataSet.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TDataSet instance.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new TDataSet (425) instance. It calls the inherited constructor, and then initializes the internal structures needed to manage the dataset (fielddefs, fieldlist, constraints etc.).

See also: TDataSet.Destroy (430)

14.23.5 TDataSet.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a TDataSet instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy removes a TDataSet instance from memory. It closes the dataset if it was open, clears all internal structures and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: An exception may occur during the close operation, in that case, the dataset will not be removed from memory.

See also: TDataSet.Close (433), TDataSet.Create (430)

14.23.6 TDataSet.ActiveBuffer

Synopsis: Currently active memory buffer.

Declaration: function ActiveBuffer : TRecordBuffer

Visibility: public

Description: ActiveBuffer points to the currently active memory buffer. It should not be used in application code.

14.23.7 TDataSet.GetFieldData

Synopsis: Get the data for a field.

```
Declaration: function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer) : Boolean
                ; Virtual; Overload
function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
                NativeFormat: Boolean) : Boolean; Virtual
                ; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: GetFieldData should copy the data for field Field from the internal dataset memory buffer into the memory pointed to by Buffer. This function is not intended for use by end-user applications, and should be used only in descendent classes, where it can be overridden. The function should return True if data was available and has been copied, or False if no data was available (in which case the field has value Null). The NativeFormat determines whether the data should be in native format (e.g. whether the date/time values should be in TDateTime format).

Errors: No checks are performed on the validity of the memory buffer

See also: `TField.DisplayText` ([491](#))

14.23.8 TDataSet.SetFieldData

Synopsis: Store the data for a field.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer); Virtual
; Overload
procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
NativeFormat: Boolean); Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldData` should copy the data from field `Field`, stored in the memory pointed to by `Buffer` to the dataset memory buffer for the current record. This function is not intended for use by end-user applications, and should be used only in descendent classes, where it can be overridden. The `NativeFormat` determines whether the data is in native format (e.g. whether the date/time values are in `TDatetime` format).

See also: `TField.DisplayText` ([491](#))

14.23.9 TDataSet.Append

Synopsis: Append a new record to the data.

Declaration: `procedure Append`

Visibility: public

Description: `Append` appends a new record at the end of the dataset. It is functionally equal to the `TDataSet.Insert` ([440](#)) call, but the cursor is positioned at the end of the dataset prior to performing the insert operation. The same events occur as when the `Insert` call is made.

See also: `TDataSet.Insert` ([440](#)), `TDataSet.Edit` ([435](#))

14.23.10 TDataSet.AppendRecord

Synopsis: Append a new record to the dataset and fill with data.

Declaration: `procedure AppendRecord(const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendRecord` first calls `Append` to add a new record to the dataset. It then copies the values in `Values` to the various fields (using `TDataSet.SetFields` ([444](#))) and attempts to post the record using `TDataSet.Post` ([443](#)). If all went well, the result is that the values in `Values` have been added as a new record to the dataset.

Errors: Various errors may occur (not supplying a value for all required fields, invalid values) and may cause an exception. This may leave the dataset in editing mode.

See also: `TDataSet.Append` ([431](#)), `TDataSet.SetFields` ([444](#)), `TDataSet.Post` ([443](#))

14.23.11 TDataSet.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Test whether ABookMark is a valid bookmark.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(ABookmark: TBookMark) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BookmarkValid` returns `True` if `ABookMark` is a valid bookmark for the dataset. Various operations can render a bookmark invalid: changing the sort order, closing and re-opening the dataset. `BookmarkValid` always returns `False` in `TDataSet`. Descendent classes must override this method to do an actual test.

Errors: If the bookmark is a completely arbitrary pointer, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.GetBookmark` (438), `TDataSet.SetBookmark` (425), `TDataSet.FreeBookmark` (438), `TDataSet.BookmarkAvailable` (425)

14.23.12 TDataSet.Cancel

Synopsis: Cancel the current editing operation.

Declaration: `procedure Cancel; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Cancel` cancels the current editing operation and sets the dataset again in browse mode. This operation triggers the `TDataSet.BeforeCancel` (458) and `TDataSet.AfterCancel` (458) events. If the dataset was in insert mode, then the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459) events are triggered after and respectively before the `BeforeCancel` and `AfterCancel` events. If the dataset was not in one of the editing modes when `Cancel` is called, then nothing will happen.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (452), `TDataSet.Append` (431), `TDataSet.Insert` (440), `TDataSet.Edit` (435)

14.23.13 TDataSet.CheckBrowseMode

Synopsis: Check whether the dataset is in browse mode.

Declaration: `procedure CheckBrowseMode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckBrowseMode` will force the dataset to browse mode (`State=dsBrowse`) if it is active. If it is not active, an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception is raised. If it is active, but in an edit state, then `TDataSet.UpdateRecord` (445) is called, and if the `TDataSet.Modified` (450) property is true, a `TDataSet.Post` (443) is performed, else `TDataSet.Cancel` (432) is called.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (452), `TDataSet.Post` (443), `TDataSet.Cancel` (432), `TDataSet.UpdateRecord` (445), `TDataSet.Modified` (450)

14.23.14 TDataSet.ClearFields

Synopsis: Clear the values of all fields.

Declaration: `procedure ClearFields`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClearFields` clears the values of all fields.

Errors: If the dataset is not in editing mode (`State` in `dsEditmodes`), then an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.State` (452), `TField.Clear` (481)

14.23.15 `TDataset.Close`

Synopsis: Close the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Close`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the dataset if it is open (`Active=True`). This action triggers the `TDataset.BeforeClose` (455) and `TDataset.AfterClose` (455) events. If the dataset is not active, nothing happens.

Errors: If an exception occurs during the closing of the dataset, the `AfterClose` event will not be triggered.

See also: `TDataset.Active` (454), `TDataset.Open` (443)

14.23.16 `TDataset.ControlsDisabled`

Synopsis: Check whether the controls are disabled.

Declaration: `function ControlsDisabled : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ControlsDisabled` returns `True` if the controls are disabled, i.e. no events are propagated to the controls connected to this dataset. The `TDataset.DisableControls` (435) call can be used to disable sending of data events to the controls. The sending can be re-enabled with `TDataset.EnableControls` (436). This mechanism has a counting mechanism: in order to enable sending of events to the controls, `EnableControls` must be called as much as `DisableControls` was called. The `ControlsDisabled` function will return `true` as long as the internal counter is not zero.

See also: `TDataset.DisableControls` (435), `TDataset.EnableControls` (436)

14.23.17 `TDataset.CompareBookmarks`

Synopsis: Compare two bookmarks.

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(Bookmark1: TBookmark; Bookmark2: TBookmark)
: LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CompareBookmarks` can be used to compare the relative positions of 2 bookmarks. It returns a negative value if `Bookmark1` is located before `Bookmark2`, zero if they refer to the same record, and a positive value if the second bookmark appears before the first bookmark. This function must be overridden by descendent classes of `TDataset`. The implementation in `TDataset` always returns zero.

Errors: No checks are performed on the validity of the bookmarks.

See also: `TDataset.BookmarkValid` (432), `TDataset.GetBookmark` (438), `TDataset.SetBookmark` (425)

14.23.18 TDataSet.CreateBlobStream

Synopsis: Create blob stream.

Declaration: `function CreateBlobStream(Field: TField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode)
: TStream; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateBlobStream` is not intended for use by application programmers. It creates a stream object which can be used to read or write data from a blob field. Instead, application programmers should use the `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` (402) and `TBlobField.SaveToStream` (402) methods when reading and writing data from/to BLOB fields. Which operation must be performed on the stream is indicated in the `Mode` parameter, and the `Field` parameter contains the field whose data should be read. The caller is responsible for freeing the stream created by this function.

See also: `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` (402), `TBlobField.SaveToStream` (402)

14.23.19 TDataSet.CursorPosChanged

Synopsis: Indicate a change in cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure CursorPosChanged`

Visibility: public

Description: `CursorPosChanged` is not intended for internal use only, and serves to indicate that the current cursor position has changed. (it clears the internal cursor position).

14.23.20 TDataSet.DataConvert

Synopsis: Convert data from/to native format.

Declaration: `procedure DataConvert(aField: TField; aSource: Pointer; aDest: Pointer;
aToNative: Boolean); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DataConvert` converts the data from field `AField` in buffer `ASource` to native format and puts the result in `ADest`. If the `aToNative` parameter equals `False`, then the data is converted from native format to non-native format. Currently, only date/time/datetime and BCD fields are converted from/to native data. This means the routine handles conversion between `TDateTime` (the native format) and `TDateTimeRec`, and between `TBCD` and currency (the native format) for BCD fields. `DataConvert` is used internally by `TDataset` and descendent classes. There should be no need to use this routine in application code.

Errors: No checking on the validity of the buffer pointers is performed. If an invalid pointer is passed, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataset.GetFieldData` (430), `TDataset.SetFieldData` (431)

14.23.21 TDataSet.Delete

Synopsis: Delete the current record.

Declaration: `procedure Delete; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` will delete the current record. This action will trigger the `TDataset.BeforeDelete` (458), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (459), `TDataset.AfterDelete` (459) and `TDataset.AfterScroll` (459) events. If the dataset was in edit mode, the edits will be canceled before the delete operation starts.

Errors: If the dataset is empty or read-only, then an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Cancel` (432), `TDataset.BeforeDelete` (458), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (459), `TDataset.AfterDelete` (459), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (459)

14.23.22 TDataSet.DisableControls

Synopsis: Disable event propagation of controls.

Declaration: `procedure DisableControls`

Visibility: public

Description: `DisableControls` tells the dataset to stop sending data-related events to the controls. This can be used before starting operations that will cause the current record to change a lot, or before any other lengthy operation that may cause a lot of events to be sent to the controls that show data from the dataset: each event will cause the control to update itself, which is a time-consuming operation that may also cause a lot of flicker on the screen.

The sending of events to the controls can be re-enabled with `Tdataset.EnableControls` (436). Note that for each call to `DisableControls`, a matching call to `EnableControls` must be made: an internal count is kept and only when the count reaches zero, the controls are again notified of changes to the dataset. It is therefore essential that the call to `EnableControls` is put in a `Finally` block:

```
MyDataset.DisableControls;
Try
    // Do some intensive stuff
Finally
    MyDataset.EnableControls
end;
```

Errors: Failure to call `enablecontrols` will prevent the controls from receiving updates. The state can be checked with `TDataset.ControlsDisabled` (433).

See also: `TDataset.EnableControls` (436), `TDataset.ControlsDisabled` (433)

14.23.23 TDataSet.Edit

Synopsis: Set the dataset in editing mode.

Declaration: `procedure Edit`

Visibility: public

Description: `Edit` will set the dataset in edit mode: the contents of the current record can then be changed. This action will call the `TDataset.BeforeEdit` (456) and `TDataset.AfterEdit` (457) events. If the dataset was already in insert or edit mode, nothing will happen (the events will also not be triggered). If the dataset is empty, this action will execute `TDataset.Append` (431) instead.

Errors: If the dataset is read-only or not opened, then an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.State` (452), `TDataset.EOF` (448), `TDataset.BOF` (446), `TDataset.Append` (431), `TDataset.BeforeEdit` (456), `TDataset.AfterEdit` (457)

14.23.24 TDataSet.EnableControls

Synopsis: Enable event propagation of controls.

Declaration: `procedure EnableControls`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EnableControls` tells the dataset to resume sending data-related events to the controls. This must be used after a call to `TDataSet.DisableControls` (435) to re-enable updating of controls.

Note that for each call to `DisableControls`, a matching call to `EnableControls` must be made: an internal count is kept and only when the count reaches zero, the controls are again notified of changes to the dataset. It is therefore essential that the call to `EnableControls` is put in a `Finally` block:

```
MyDataset.DisableControls;
Try
    // Do some intensive stuff
Finally
    MyDataset.EnableControls
end;
```

Errors: Failure to call `enablecontrols` will prevent the controls from receiving updates. The state can be checked with `TDataSet.ControlsDisabled` (433).

See also: `TDataSet.DisableControls` (435), `TDataSet.ControlsDisabled` (433)

14.23.25 TDataSet.FieldByName

Synopsis: Search a field by name.

Declaration: `function FieldByName(const FieldName: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FieldByName` is a shortcut for `Fields.FieldByName` (514): it searches for the field with `fieldname` equalling `FieldName`. The case is performed case-insensitive. The matching field instance is returned.

Errors: If the field is not found, an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` (514), `TDataSet.FindField` (436)

14.23.26 TDataSet.FindField

Synopsis: Find a field by name.

Declaration: `function FindField(const FieldName: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindField` is a shortcut for `Fields.FindField` (514): it searches for the field with `fieldname` equalling `FieldName`. The case is performed case-insensitive. The matching field instance is returned, and if no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TDataSet.FieldByName` (436), `TFields.FindField` (514)

14.23.27 TDataSet.FindFirst

Synopsis: Find the first active record (deprecated).

Declaration: `function FindFirst : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindFirst` positions the cursor on the first record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.First` (438) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.First` (438), `TDataSet.FindLast` (437), `TDataSet.FindNext` (437), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (437)

14.23.28 TDataSet.FindLast

Synopsis: Find the last active record (deprecated).

Declaration: `function FindLast : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindLast` positions the cursor on the last record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.Last` (441) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.Last` (441), `TDataSet.FindFirst` (437), `TDataSet.FindNext` (437), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (437)

14.23.29 TDataSet.FindNext

Synopsis: Find the next active record (deprecated).

Declaration: `function FindNext : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindNext` positions the cursor on the next record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.Next` (442) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.Next` (442), `TDataSet.FindFirst` (437), `TDataSet.FindLast` (437), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (437)

14.23.30 TDataSet.FindPrior

Synopsis: Find the previous active record (deprecated).

Declaration: `function FindPrior : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindPrior` positions the cursor on the previous record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataset`: The implementation in `TDataset` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataset.Prior` (444) instead.

See also: `TDataset.Prior` (444), `TDataset.FindFirst` (437), `TDataset.FindLast` (437), `TDataset.FindPrior` (437)

14.23.31 `TDataset.First`

Synopsis: Position the dataset on the first record.

Declaration: `procedure First`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` positions the dataset on the first record. This action will trigger the `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (459) and `TDataset.AfterScroll` (459) events. After the action is completed, the `TDataset.BOF` (446) property will be `True`.

Errors: If the dataset is unidirectional or is closed, an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Prior` (444), `TDataset.Last` (441), `TDataset.Next` (442), `TDataset.BOF` (446), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (459), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (459)

14.23.32 `TDataset.FreeBookmark`

Synopsis: Free a bookmark obtained with `GetBookmark` (deprecated).

Declaration: `procedure FreeBookmark(ABookmark: TBookmark); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeBookmark` must be used to free a bookmark obtained by `TDataset.GetBookmark` (438). It should not be used on bookmarks obtained with the `TDataset.Bookmark` (446) property. Both `GetBookmark` and `FreeBookmark` are deprecated. Use the `Bookmark` property instead: it uses a string type, which is automatically disposed of when the string variable goes out of scope.

See also: `TDataset.GetBookmark` (438), `TDataset.Bookmark` (446)

14.23.33 `TDataset.GetBookmark`

Synopsis: Get a bookmark pointer (deprecated).

Declaration: `function GetBookmark : TBookmark; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetBookmark` gets a bookmark pointer to the current cursor location. The `TDataset.SetBookmark` (425) call can be used to return to the current record in the dataset. After use, the bookmark must be disposed of with the `TDataset.FreeBookmark` (438) call. The bookmark will be `Nil` if the dataset is empty or not active.

This call is deprecated. Use the `TDataset.Bookmark` (446) property instead to get a bookmark.

See also: `TDataset.SetBookmark` (425), `TDataset.FreeBookmark` (438), `TDataset.Bookmark` (446)

14.23.34 TDataSet.GetCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Copy the data for the current record in a memory buffer.

Declaration: `function GetCurrentRecord(Buffer: TRecordBuffer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetCurrentRecord` can be overridden by `TDataSet` descendents to copy the data for the current record to `Buffer`. `Buffer` must point to a memory area, large enough to contain the data for the record. If the data is copied successfully to the buffer, the function returns `True`. The `TDataSet` implementation is empty, and returns `False`.

See also: `TDataSet.ActiveBuffer` ([430](#))

14.23.35 TDataSet.GetFieldList

Synopsis: Return field instances in a list.

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldList(List: TList; const FieldNames: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetfieldList` parses `FieldNames` for names of fields, and returns the field instances that match the names in `list`. `FieldNames` must be a list of field names, separated by semicolons. The list is cleared prior to filling with the requested field instances.

Errors: If `FieldNames` contains a name of a field that does not exist in the dataset, then an `EDatabaseError` ([387](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.GetFieldNames` ([439](#)), `TDataSet.FieldByName` ([436](#)), `TDataSet.FindField` ([436](#))

14.23.36 TDataSet.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Return a list of all available field names.

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFieldNames` returns in `List` the names of all available fields, one field per item in the list. The dataset must be open for this function to work correctly.

See also: `TDataSet.GetFieldNameList` ([425](#)), `TDataSet.FieldByName` ([436](#)), `TDataSet.FindField` ([436](#))

14.23.37 TDataSet.GotoBookmark

Synopsis: Jump to bookmark.

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: TBookmark)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GotoBookmark` positions the dataset to the bookmark position indicated by `ABookmark`. `ABookmark` is a bookmark obtained by the `TDataSet.GetBookmark` ([438](#)) function.

This function is deprecated, use the `TDataSet.Bookmark` ([446](#)) property instead.

Errors: if `ABookmark` does not contain a valid bookmark, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Bookmark` ([446](#)), `TDataSet.GetBookmark` ([438](#)), `TDataSet.FreeBookmark` ([438](#))

14.23.38 TDataSet.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new record at the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Insert` will insert a new record at the current position. When this function is called, any pending modifications (when the dataset already is in insert or edit mode) will be posted. After that, the `BeforeInsert` (456), `BeforeScroll` (459), `OnNewRecord` (462), `AfterInsert` (456) and `AfterScroll` (459) events are triggered in the order indicated here. The dataset is in the `dsInsert` state after this method is called, and the contents of the various fields can be set. To write the new record to the underlying database `TDataSet.Post` (443) must be called.

Errors: If the dataset is read-only, calling `Insert` will result in an `EDatabaseError` (387).

See also: `BeforeInsert` (456), `BeforeScroll` (459), `OnNewRecord` (462), `AfterInsert` (456), `AfterScroll` (459), `TDataSet.Post` (443), `TDataSet.Append` (431)

14.23.39 TDataSet.InsertRecord

Synopsis: Insert a new record with given values.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecord(const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InsertRecord` is not yet implemented in Free Pascal. It does nothing.

See also: `TDataSet.Insert` (440), `TDataSet.SetFieldValues` (425)

14.23.40 TDataSet.IsEmpty

Synopsis: Check if the dataset contains no data.

Declaration: `function IsEmpty : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsEmpty` returns `True` if the dataset is empty, i.e. if `EOF` (448) and `TDataSet.BOF` (446) are both `True`, and the dataset is not in insert mode.

See also: `TDataSet.EOF` (448), `TDataSet.BOF` (446), `TDataSet.State` (452)

14.23.41 TDataSet.IsLinkedTo

Synopsis: Check whether a datasource is linked to the dataset.

Declaration: `function IsLinkedTo(ADatasource: TDataSource) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsLinkedTo` returns `True` if `ADatasource` is linked to this dataset, either directly (the `ADatasource.Dataset`" (466) points to the current dataset instance, or indirectly.

See also: `TDataSource.Dataset` (466)

14.23.42 TDataSet.IsSequenced

Synopsis: Is the data sequenced.

Declaration: `function IsSequenced : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsSequenced` indicates whether it is safe to use the `TDataSet.RecNo` (451) property to navigate in the records of the data. By default, this property is set to `True`, but `TDataSet` descendants may set this property to `False` (for instance, unidirectional datasets), in which case `RecNo` should not be used to navigate through the data.

See also: `TDataSet.RecNo` (451)

14.23.43 TDataSet.Last

Synopsis: Navigate forward to the last record.

Declaration: `procedure Last`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` puts the cursor at the last record in the dataset, fetching more records from the underlying database if needed. It is equivalent to moving to the last record and calling `TDataSet.Next` (442). After a call to `Last`, the `TDataSet.EOF` (448) property will be `True`.

Calling this method will trigger the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459) events.

See also: `TDataSet.First` (438), `TDataSet.Next` (442), `TDataSet.EOF` (448), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459)

14.23.44 TDataSet.Locate

Synopsis: Locate a record based on some key values.

Declaration: `function Locate(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant; Options: TLocateOptions) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Locate` attempts to locate a record in the dataset. There are 2 possible cases when using `Locate`.

1. `Keyvalues` is a single value. In that case, `KeyFields` is the name of the field whose value must be matched to the value in `KeyValues`
2. `Keyvalues` is a variant array. In that case, `KeyFields` must contain a list of names of fields (separated by semicolons) whose values must be matched to the values in the `KeyValues` array

The matching always happens according to the `Options` parameter. For a description of the possible values, see `TLocateOption` (375).

If a record is found that matches the criteria, then the `locate` operation positions the cursor on this record, and returns `True`. If no record is found to match the criteria, `False` is returned, and the position of the cursor is unchanged.

The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`. It is up to `TDataSet` descendants to implement this method and return an appropriate value.

See also: `TDataSet.Find` (425), `TDataSet.Lookup` (442), `TLocateOption` (375)

14.23.45 TDataSet.Lookup

Synopsis: Search for a record and return matching values.

Declaration: `function Lookup(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant;
const ResultFields: string) : Variant; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Lookup` always returns `Null` in `TDataSet`. Descendents of `TDataSet` can override this method to call `TDataSet.Locate` (441) to locate the record with fields `KeyFields` matching `KeyValues` and then to return the values of the fields in `ResultFields`. If `ResultFields` contains more than one fieldname (separated by semicolons), then the function returns an array. If there is only 1 fieldname, the value is returned directly.

Errors: If the dataset is unidirectional, then a `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Locate` (441)

14.23.46 TDataSet.MoveBy

Synopsis: Move the cursor position.

Declaration: `function MoveBy(Distance: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveBy` moves the current record pointer with `Distance` positions. `Distance` may be a positive number, in which case the cursor is moved forward, or a negative number, in which case the cursor is moved backward. The move operation will stop as soon as the beginning or end of the data is reached. The `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459) events are triggered (once) when this method is called. The function returns the distance which was actually moved by the cursor.

Errors: A negative distance will result in an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception on unidirectional datasets.

See also: `TDataSet.RecNo` (451), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459)

14.23.47 TDataSet.Next

Synopsis: Go to the next record in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Next`

Visibility: public

Description: `Next` positions the cursor on the next record in the dataset. It is equivalent to a `MoveBy(1)` operation. Calling this method triggers the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459) events. If the dataset is located on the last known record (`EOF` (448) is true), then no action is performed, and the events are not triggered.

Errors: Calling this method on a closed dataset will result in an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception.

See also: `TDataSet.MoveBy` (442), `TDataSet.Prior` (444), `TDataSet.Last` (441), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459), `TDataSet.EOF` (448)

14.23.48 TDataSet.Open

Synopsis: Activate the dataset: Fetch data into memory.

Declaration: `procedure Open`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Open` must be used to make the `TDataSet` Active. It does nothing if the dataset is already active. `Open` initializes the `TDataSet` and brings the dataset in a browsable state:

Effectively the following happens:

1. The `BeforeOpen` event is triggered.
2. The descendants `InternalOpen` method is called to actually fetch data and initialize field-defs and field instances.
3. `BOF` (446) is set to `True`
4. Internal buffers are allocated and filled with data
5. If the dataset is empty, `EOF` (448) is set to `true`
6. `State` (452) is set to `dsBrowse`
7. The `AfterOpen` (455) event is triggered

Errors: If the descendent class cannot fetch the data, or the data does not match the field definitions present in the dataset, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Active` (454), `TDataSet.State` (452), `TDataSet.BOF` (446), `TDataSet.EOF` (448), `TDataSet.BeforeOpen` (455), `TDataSet.AfterOpen` (455)

14.23.49 TDataSet.Post

Synopsis: Post pending edits to the database.

Declaration: `procedure Post; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Post` attempts to save pending edits when the dataset is in one of the edit modes: that is, after a `Insert` (440), `Append` (431) or `TDataSet.Edit` (435) operation. The changes will be committed to memory - and usually immediately to the underlying database as well. Prior to saving the data to memory, it will check some constraints: in `TDataSet`, the presence of a value for all required fields is checked. if for a required field no value is present, an exception will be raised. A call to `Post` results in the triggering of the `BeforePost` (457), `AfterPost` (457) events. After the call to `Post`, the `State` (452) of the dataset is again `dsBrowse`, i.e. the dataset is again in browse mode.

Errors: Invoking the `post` method when the dataset is not in one of the editing modes (`dsEditModes` (362)) will result in an `EdatabaseError` (387) exception. If an exception occurs during the save operation, the `OnPostError` (462) event is triggered to handle the error.

See also: `Insert` (440), `Append` (431), `Edit` (435), `OnPostError` (462), `BeforePost` (457), `AfterPost` (457), `State` (452)

14.23.50 TDataSet.Prior

Synopsis: Go to the previous record.

Declaration: `procedure Prior`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Prior` moves the cursor to the previous record. It is equivalent to a `MoveBy(-1)` operation. Calling this method triggers the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459) events. If the dataset is located on the first record, (`BOF` (446) is true) then no action is performed, and the events are not triggered.

Errors: Calling this method on a closed dataset will result in an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception.

See also: `TDataSet.MoveBy` (442), `TDataSet.Next` (442), `TDataSet.First` (438), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459), `TDataSet.BOF` (446)

14.23.51 TDataSet.Refresh

Synopsis: Refresh the records in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Refresh`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Refresh` posts any pending edits, and refetches the data in the dataset from the underlying database, and attempts to reposition the cursor on the same record as it was. This operation is not supported by all datasets, and should be used with care. The repositioning may not always succeed, in which case the cursor will be positioned on the first record in the dataset. This is in particular true for unidirectional datasets. Calling `Refresh` results in the triggering of the `BeforeRefresh` (460) and `AfterRefresh` (460) events.

Errors: Refreshing may fail if the underlying dataset descendent does not support it.

See also: `TDataSet.Close` (433), `TDataSet.Open` (443), `BeforeRefresh` (460), `AfterRefresh` (460)

14.23.52 TDataSet.Resync

Synopsis: Resynchronize the data buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Resync (Mode: TResyncMode); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Resync` refetches the records around the cursor position. It should not be used by application code, instead `TDataSet.Refresh` (444) should be used. The `Resync` parameter indicates how the buffers should be refreshed.

See also: `TDataSet.Refresh` (444)

14.23.53 TDataSet.SetFields

Synopsis: Set a number of field values at once.

Declaration: `procedure SetFields (const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetFields` sets the values of the fields with the corresponding values in the array. It starts with the first field in the `TDataset.Fields` (452) property, and works its way down the array.

Errors: If the dataset is not in edit mode, then an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised. If there are more values than fields, an `EListError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Fields` (452)

14.23.54 `TDataset.Translate`

Synopsis: Transliterate a buffer.

Declaration: `function Translate(Src: PChar; Dest: PChar; ToOem: Boolean) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Translate` is called for all string fields for which the `TStringField.Transliterate` (570) property is set to `True`. The `toOEM` parameter is set to `True` if the transliteration must happen from the used codepage to the codepage used for storage, and if it is set to `False` then the transliteration must happen from the native codepage to the storage codepage. This call must be overridden by descendants of `TDataset` to provide the necessary transliteration: `TDataset` just copies the contents of the `Src` buffer to the `Dest` buffer. The result must be the number of bytes copied to the destination buffer.

Errors: No checks are performed on the buffers.

See also: `TStringField.Transliterate` (570)

14.23.55 `TDataset.UpdateCursorPos`

Synopsis: Update cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateCursorPos`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateCursorPos` should not be used in application code. It is used to ensure that the logical cursor position is the correct (physical) position.

See also: `TDataset.Refresh` (444)

14.23.56 `TDataset.UpdateRecord`

Synopsis: Indicate that the record contents have changed.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateRecord`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateRecord` notifies controls that the contents of the current record have changed. It triggers the event. This should never be called by application code, and is intended only for descendants of `TDataset`.

See also: `OnUpdateRecord` (425)

14.23.57 TDataSet.UpdateStatus

Synopsis: Get the update status for the current record.

Declaration: `function UpdateStatus : TUpdateStatus; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateStatus` always returns `usUnModified` in the `TDataSet` implementation. Descendent classes should override this method to indicate the status for the current record in case they support cached updates: the function should return the status of the current record: has the record been locally inserted, modified or deleted, or none of these. `UpdateStatus` is not used in `TDataSet` itself, but is provided so applications have a unique API to work with datasets that have support for cached updates.

14.23.58 TDataSet.BlockReadSize

Synopsis: Number of records to read.

Declaration: `Property BlockReadSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BlockReadSize` can be set to a positive number to prevent the dataset from sending notifications to DB-Aware controls while scrolling through the data. Setting it to zero will re-enable sending of notifications, as will putting the dataset in another state (edit etc.).

See also: `EnableControls` ([361](#)), `DisableControls` ([361](#))

14.23.59 TDataSet.BOF

Synopsis: Is the cursor at the beginning of the data (on the first record).

Declaration: `Property BOF : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BOF` returns `True` if the first record is the first record in the dataset, `False` otherwise. It will always be `True` if the dataset is just opened, or after a call to `TDataSet.First` ([438](#)). As soon as `TDataSet.Next` ([442](#)) is called, `BOF` will no longer be true.

See also: `TDataSet.EOF` ([448](#)), `TDataSet.Next` ([442](#)), `TDataSet.First` ([438](#))

14.23.60 TDataSet.Bookmark

Synopsis: Get or set the current cursor position.

Declaration: `Property Bookmark : TBookMark`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bookmark` can be read to obtain a bookmark to the current position in the dataset. The obtained value can be used to return to current position at a later stage. Writing the `Bookmark` property with a value previously obtained like this, will reposition the dataset on the same position as it was when the property was read.

This is often used when scanning all records, like this:

```
Var
  B : TBookmark;

begin
  With MyDataset do
    begin
      B:=Bookmark;
      DisableControls;
      try
        First;
        While Not EOF do
          begin
            DoSomething;
            Next;
          end;
        finally
          EnableControls;
          Bookmark:=B;
        end;
      end;
    end;
```

At the end of this code, the dataset will be positioned on the same record as when the code was started. The `TDataset.DisableControls` (435) and `TDataset.EnableControls` (436) calls prevent the controls from receiving update notifications as the dataset scrolls through the records, thus reducing flicker on the screen.

Note that bookmarks become invalid as soon as the dataset closes. A call to refresh may also destroy the bookmarks.

See also: `TDataset.DisableControls` (435), `TDataset.EnableControls` (436)

14.23.61 TDataSet.CanModify

Synopsis: Can the data in the dataset be modified.

Declaration: `Property CanModify : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CanModify` indicates whether the dataset allows editing. `Unidirectional` datasets do not allow editing. Descendent datasets can impose additional conditions under which the data can not be modified (read-only datasets, for instance). If the `CanModify` property is `False`, then the edit, append or insert methods will fail.

See also: `TDataset.Insert` (440), `TDataset.Append` (431), `TDataset.Delete` (434), `Tdataset.Edit` (435)

14.23.62 TDataSet.DataSource

Synopsis: Datasource this dataset is connected to.

Declaration: Property DataSource : TDataSource

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Datasource is the datasource this dataset is connected to, and from which it can get values for parameters. In TDataSet, the Datasource property is not used, and is always Nil. It is up to descendent classes that actually support a datasource to implement getter and setter routines for the Datasource property.

See also: TDataSource ([464](#))

14.23.63 TDataSet.DefaultFields

Synopsis: Is the dataset using persistent fields or not.

Declaration: Property DefaultFields : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: DefaultFields is True if the fields were generated dynamically when the dataset was opened. If it is False then the field instances are persistent, i.e. they were created at design time with the fields editor. If DefaultFields is True, then for each item in the TDataSet.FieldDefs ([449](#)) property, a field instance is created. These fields instances are freed again when the dataset is closed. If DefaultFields is False, then there may be less field instances than there are items in the FieldDefs property. This can be the case for instance when opening a DBF file at runtime which has more fields than the file used at design time.

See also: TDataSet.FieldDefs ([449](#)), TDataSet.Fields ([452](#)), TField ([477](#))

14.23.64 TDataSet.EOF

Synopsis: Indicates whether the last record has been reached.

Declaration: Property EOF : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: EOF is True if the cursor is on the last record in the dataset, and no more records are available. It is also True for an empty dataset. The EOF property will be set to True in the following cases:

- 1.The cursor is on the last record, and the TDataSet.Next ([442](#)) method is called.
- 2.The TDataSet.Last ([441](#)) method is called (which is equivalent to moving to the last record and calling TDataSet.Next ([442](#))).
- 3.The dataset is empty when opened.

In all other cases, `EOF` is `False`. Note: when the cursor is on the last-but-one record, and `Next` is called (moving the cursor to the last record), `EOF` will not yet be `True`. Only if both the cursor is on the last record **and** `Next` is called, will `EOF` become `True`.

This means that the following loop will stop after the last record was visited:

```
With MyDataset do
  While not EOF do
    begin
      DoSomething;
      Next;
    end;
```

See also: `TDataset.BOF` (446), `TDataset.Next` (442), `TDataset.Last` (441), `TDataset.IsEmpty` (440)

14.23.65 `TDataset.FieldCount`

Synopsis: Number of fields.

Declaration: `Property FieldCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FieldCount` is the same as `Fields.Count` (516), i.e. the number of fields. For a dataset with persistent fields (when `DefaultFields` (448) is `False`) then this number will be always the same every time the dataset is opened. For a dataset with dynamically created fields, the number of fields may be different each time the dataset is opened.

See also: `TFields` (512)

14.23.66 `TDataset.FieldDefs`

Synopsis: Definitions of available fields in the underlying database.

Declaration: `Property FieldDefs : TFieldDefs`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `FieldDefs` is filled by the `TDataset` descendent when the dataset is opened. It represents the fields as they are returned by the particular database when the data is initially fetched from the engine. If the dataset uses dynamically created fields (when `DefaultFields` (448) is `True`), then for each item in this list, a field instance will be created with default properties available in the field definition. If the dataset uses persistent fields, then the fields in the field list will be checked against the items in the `FieldDefs` property. If no matching item is found for a persistent field, then an exception will be raised. Items that exist in the `fielddefs` property but for which there is no matching field instance, are ignored.

See also: `TDataset.Open` (443), `TDataset.DefaultFields` (448), `TDataset.Fields` (452)

14.23.67 TDataSet.Found

Synopsis: Check success of one of the `Find` methods.

Declaration: `Property Found : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Found` is `True` if the last of one of the `TDataSet.FindFirst` (437), `TDataSet.FindLast` (437), `TDataSet.FindNext` (437) or `TDataSet.FindPrior` (437) operations was successful.

See also: `TDataSet.FindFirst` (437), `TDataSet.FindLast` (437), `TDataSet.FindNext` (437), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (437)

14.23.68 TDataSet.Modified

Synopsis: Was the current record modified ?

Declaration: `Property Modified : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Modified` is `True` if the current record was modified after a call to `Tdataset.Edit` (435) or `Tdataset.Insert` (440). It becomes `True` if a value was written to one of the fields of the dataset.

See also: `Tdataset.Edit` (435), `TDataSet.Insert` (440), `TDataSet.Append` (431), `TDataSet.Cancel` (432), `TDataSet.Post` (443)

14.23.69 TDataSet.IsUniDirectional

Synopsis: Is the dataset unidirectional (i.e. forward scrolling only).

Declaration: `Property IsUniDirectional : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsUniDirectional` is `True` if the dataset is unidirectional. By default it is `False`, i.e. scrolling backwards is allowed. If the dataset is unidirectional, then any attempt to scroll backwards (using one of `TDataSet.Prior` (444) or `TDataSet.Last` (441)), random positioning of the cursor, editing or filtering will result in an `EDatabaseError` (387). Unidirectional datasets are also not suitable for display in a grid, as they have only 1 record in memory at any given time: they are only useful for performing an action on all records:

```
With MyDataset do
  While not EOF do
    begin
      DoSomething;
    Next;
  end;
```

See also: `TDataSet.Prior` (444), `TDataSet.Next` (442)

14.23.70 TDataSet.RecordCount

Synopsis: Number of records in the dataset.

Declaration: `Property RecordCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RecordCount` is the number of records in the dataset. This number is not necessarily equal to the number of records returned by a query. For optimization purposes, a `TDataSet` descendent may choose not to fetch all records from the database when the dataset is opened. If this is the case, then the `RecordCount` will only reflect the number of records that have actually been fetched at the current time, and therefor the value will change as more records are fetched from the database.

Only when `Last` has been called (and the dataset has been forced to fetch all records returned by the database), will the value of `RecordCount` be equal to the number of records returned by the query.

In general, datasets based on in-memory data or flat files, will return the correct number of records in `RecordCount`.

See also: `TDataSet.RecNo` ([451](#))

14.23.71 TDataSet.RecNo

Synopsis: Current record number.

Declaration: `Property RecNo : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `RecNo` returns the current position in the dataset. It can be written to set the cursor to the indicated position. This property must be implemented by `TDataSet` descendents, for `TDataSet` the property always returns -1.

This property should not be used if exact positioning is required. it is inherently unreliable.

See also: `TDataSet.RecordCount` ([451](#))

14.23.72 TDataSet.RecordSize

Synopsis: Size of the record in memory.

Declaration: `Property RecordSize : Word`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RecordSize` is the total size of the memory buffer used for the records. This property returns always 0 in the `TDataSet` implementation. Descendent classes should implement this property. Note that this property does not necessarily reflect the actual data size for the records. that may be more or less, depending on how the `TDataSet` descendent manages it's data.

See also: `TField.Datasize` ([490](#)), `TDataSet.RecordCount` ([451](#)), `TDataSet.RecNo` ([451](#))

14.23.73 TDataSet.SparseArrays

Declaration: `Property SparseArrays : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

14.23.74 TDataSet.State

Synopsis: Current operational state of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property State : TDataSetState`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `State` determines the current operational state of the dataset. During its lifetime, the dataset is in one of many states, depending on which operation is currently in progress:

- If a dataset is closed, the `State` is `dsInactive`.
- As soon as it is opened, it is in `dsBrowse` mode, and remains in this state while changing the cursor position.
- If the `Edit` or `Insert` or `Append` methods is called, the `State` changes to `dsEdit` or `dsInsert`, respectively.
- As soon as edits have been posted or cancelled, the state is again `dsBrowse`.
- Closing the dataset sets the state again to `dsInactive`.

There are some other states, mainly connected to internal operations, but which can become visible in some of the dataset's events.

See also: `TDataSet.Active` (454), `TDataSet.Edit` (435), `TDataSet.Insert` (440), `TDataSet.Append` (431), `TDataSet.Post` (443), `TDataSet.Cancel` (432)

14.23.75 TDataSet.Fields

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fields of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property Fields : TFields`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Fields` provides access to the fields of the dataset. It is of type `TFields` (512) and therefore gives indexed access to the fields, but also allows other operations such as searching for fields based on their names or getting a list of fieldnames.

See also: `TFieldDefs` (509), `TField` (477)

14.23.76 TDataSet.FieldValues

Synopsis: Access to field values based on the field names.

Declaration: `Property FieldValues[FieldName: string]: Variant; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldValues` provides array-like access to the values of the fields, based on the names of the fields. The value is read or written as a variant type. It is equivalent to the following:

```
FieldByName(FieldName).AsVariant
```

It can be read as well as written.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` ([514](#))

14.23.77 TDataSet.Filter

Synopsis: Filter to apply to the data in memory.

Declaration: `Property Filter : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Filter` is not implemented by `TDataset`. It is up to descendent classes to implement actual filtering: the filtering happens on in-memory data, and is not applied on the database level. (in particular: setting the filter property will in no way influence the WHERE clause of an SQL-based dataset).

In general, the `filter` property accepts a SQL-like syntax usually encountered in the WHERE clause of an SQL SELECT statement.

The filter is only applied if the `Filtered` property is set to `True`. If the `Filtered` property is `False`, the `Filter` property is ignored.

See also: `TDataset.Filtered` ([453](#)), `TDataset.FilterOptions` ([454](#))

14.23.78 TDataSet.Filtered

Synopsis: Is the filter active or not.

Declaration: `Property Filtered : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Filtered` determines whether the filter condition in `TDataset.Filter` ([453](#)) is applied or not. The filter is only applied if the `Filtered` property is set to `True`. If the `Filtered` property is `False`, the `Filter` property is ignored.

See also: `TDataset.Filter` ([453](#)), `TDataset.FilterOptions` ([454](#))

14.23.79 TDataSet.FilterOptions

Synopsis: Options to apply when filtering.

Declaration: Property FilterOptions : TFilterOptions

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: FilterOptions determines what options should be taken into account when applying the filter in TDataSet.Filter (453), such as case-sensitivity or whether to treat an asterisk as a wildcard: By default, an asterisk (*) at the end of a literal string in the filter expression is treated as a wildcard. When FilterOptions does not include foNoPartialCompare, strings that have an asterisk at the end, indicate a partial string match. In that case, the asterisk matches any number of characters. If foNoPartialCompare is included in the options, the asterisk is regarded as a regular character.

See also: TDataSet.Filter (453), TDataSet.FilterOptions (454)

14.23.80 TDataSet.Active

Synopsis: Is the dataset open or closed.

Declaration: Property Active : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Active is True if the dataset is open, and False if it is closed (TDataSet.State (452) is then dsInactive). Setting the Active property to True is equivalent to calling TDataSet.Open (443), setting it to False is equivalent to calling TDataSet.Close (433)

See also: TDataSet.State (452), TDataSet.Open (443), TDataSet.Close (433)

14.23.81 TDataSet.AutoCalcFields

Synopsis: How often should the value of calculated fields be calculated.

Declaration: Property AutoCalcFields : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AutoCalcFields is by default true, meaning that the values of calculated fields will be computed in the following cases:

- When the dataset is opened
- When the dataset is put in edit mode
- When a data field changed

When AutoCalcFields is False, then the calculated fields are called whenever

- The dataset is opened
- The dataset is put in edit mode

Both proper calculated fields and lookup fields are computed. Calculated fields are computed through the TDataSet.OnCalcFields (460) event.

See also: TField.FieldKind (497), TDataSet.OnCalcFields (460)

14.23.82 TDataSet.BeforeOpen

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is opened.

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeOpen` is triggered before the dataset is opened. No actions have been performed yet when this event is called, and the dataset is still in `dsInactive` state. It can be used to set parameters and options that influence the opening process. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains closed.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterOpen` ([455](#)), `TDataSet.State` ([452](#))

14.23.83 TDataSet.AfterOpen

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is opened.

Declaration: `Property AfterOpen : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterOpen` is triggered after the dataset is opened. The dataset has fetched its data and is in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If the dataset is not empty, then a `TDataSet.AfterScroll` ([459](#)) event will be triggered immediately after the `AfterOpen` event. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains open, but the `AfterScroll` event will not be triggered.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterOpen` ([455](#)), `TDataSet.State` ([452](#)), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` ([459](#))

14.23.84 TDataSet.BeforeClose

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is closed.

Declaration: `Property BeforeClose : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeClose` is triggered before the dataset is closed. No actions have been performed yet when this event is called, and the dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state or one of the editing states. It can be used to prevent closing of the dataset, for instance if there are pending changes not yet committed to the database. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains opened.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterClose` ([455](#)), `TDataSet.State` ([452](#))

14.23.85 TDataSet.AfterClose

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is closed.

Declaration: `Property AfterClose : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterOpen` is triggered after the dataset is opened. The dataset has discarded its data and has cleaned up its internal memory structures. It is in `dsInactive` state when this event is triggered.

See also: `TDataset.BeforeClose` (455), `TDataset.State` (452)

14.23.86 `TDataset.BeforeInsert`

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is put in insert mode.

Declaration: Property `BeforeInsert` : `TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeInsert` is triggered at the start of the `TDataset.Append` (431) or `TDataset.Insert` (440) methods. The dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If an exception is raised in the `BeforeInsert` event handler, then the dataset will remain in `dsBrowse` state, and the append or insert operation is cancelled.

See also: `TDataset.AfterInsert` (456), `TDataset.Append` (431), `TDataset.Insert` (440)

14.23.87 `TDataset.AfterInsert`

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is put in insert mode.

Declaration: Property `AfterInsert` : `TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterInsert` is triggered after the dataset has finished putting the dataset in `dsInsert` state and it has initialized the new record buffer. This event can be used e.g. to set initial field values. After the `AfterInsert` event, the `TDataset.AfterScroll` (459) event is still triggered. Raising an exception in the `AfterInsert` event, will prevent the `AfterScroll` event from being triggered, but does not undo the insert or append operation.

See also: `TDataset.BeforeInsert` (456), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (459), `TDataset.Append` (431), `TDataset.Insert` (440)

14.23.88 `TDataset.BeforeEdit`

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is put in edit mode.

Declaration: Property `BeforeEdit` : `TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeEdit` is triggered at the start of the `TDataset.Edit` (435) method. The dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If an exception is raised in the `BeforeEdit` event handler, then the dataset will remain in `dsBrowse` state, and the edit operation is cancelled.

See also: `TDataset.AfterEdit` (457), `TDataset.Edit` (435), `TDataset.State` (452)

14.23.89 TDataSet.AfterEdit

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is put in edit mode.

Declaration: Property `AfterEdit` : `TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterEdit` is triggered after the dataset has finished putting the dataset in `dsEdit` state and it has initialized the edit buffer for the record. Raising an exception in the `AfterEdit` event does not undo the edit operation.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforeEdit` (456), `TDataSet.Edit` (435), `TDataSet.State` (452)

14.23.90 TDataSet.BeforePost

Synopsis: Event called before changes are posted to the underlying database.

Declaration: Property `BeforePost` : `TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforePost` is triggered at the start of the `TDataSet.Post` (443) method, when the dataset is still in one of the edit states (`dsEdit`,`dsInsert`). If the dataset was not in an edit state when `Post` is called, the `BeforePost` event is not triggered. This event can be used to supply values for required fields that have no value yet (the `Post` operation performs the check on required fields only after this event), or it can be used to abort the post operation: if an exception is raised during the `BeforePost` operation, the posting operation is cancelled, and the dataset remains in the editing state it was in before the post operation.

See also: `TDataSet.post` (443), `TDataSet.AfterPost` (457), `TDataSet.State` (452)

14.23.91 TDataSet.AfterPost

Synopsis: Event called after changes have been posted to the underlying database.

Declaration: Property `AfterPost` : `TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterPost` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Post` (443) operation was successfully completed, and the dataset is again in `dsBrowse` state. If an error occurred during the post operation, then the `AfterPost` event is not called, but the `TDataSet.OnPostError` (462) event is triggered instead.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforePost` (457), `TDataSet.Post` (443), `TDataSet.State` (452), `TDataSet.OnPostError` (462)

14.23.92 TDataSet.BeforeCancel

Synopsis: Event triggered before a Cancel operation.

Declaration: `Property BeforeCancel : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeCancel` is triggered at the start of the `TDataSet.Cancel` (432) operation, when the state is still one of the editing states (`dsEdit,dsInsert`). The event handler can be used to abort the cancel operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, then the cancel operation stops. If the dataset was not in one of the editing states when the `Cancel` method was called, then the event is not triggered.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterCancel` (458), `TDataSet.Cancel` (432), `TDataSet.State` (452)

14.23.93 TDataSet.AfterCancel

Synopsis: Event triggered after a Cancel operation.

Declaration: `Property AfterCancel : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterCancel` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Cancel` (432) operation was successfully completed, and the dataset is again in `dsBrowse` state.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforeCancel` (458), `TDataSet.Cancel` (432), `TDataSet.State` (452)

14.23.94 TDataSet.BeforeDelete

Synopsis: Event triggered before a Delete operation.

Declaration: `Property BeforeDelete : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeDelete` is triggered at the start of the `TDataSet.Delete` (434) operation, when the dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state. The event handler can be used to abort the delete operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, then the delete operation stops. The event is followed by a `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459) event. If the dataset was in insert mode when the `Delete` method was called, then the event will not be called, as `TDataSet.Cancel` (432) is called instead.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterDelete` (459), `TDataSet.Delete` (434), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (459), `TDataSet.Cancel` (432), `TDataSet.State` (452)

14.23.95 TDataSet.AfterDelete

Synopsis: Event triggered after a successful Delete operation.

Declaration: `Property AfterDelete : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterDelete` is triggered after the successful completion of the `TDataSet.Delete` (434) operation, when the dataset is again in `dsBrowse` state. The event is followed by a `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459) event.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforeDelete` (458), `TDataSet.Delete` (434), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459), `TDataSet.State` (452)

14.23.96 TDataSet.BeforeScroll

Synopsis: Event triggered before the cursor changes position.

Declaration: `Property BeforeScroll : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeScroll` is triggered before the cursor changes position. This can happen with one of the navigation methods: `TDataSet.Next` (442), `TDataSet.Prior` (444), `TDataSet.First` (438), `TDataSet.Last` (441), but also with two of the editing operations: `TDataSet.Insert` (440) and `TDataSet.Delete` (434). Raising an exception in this event handler aborts the operation in progress.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459), `TDataSet.Next` (442), `TDataSet.Prior` (444), `TDataSet.First` (438), `TDataSet.Last` (441), `TDataSet.Insert` (440), `TDataSet.Delete` (434)

14.23.97 TDataSet.AfterScroll

Synopsis: Event triggered after the cursor has changed position.

Declaration: `Property AfterScroll : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterScroll` is triggered after the cursor has changed position. This can happen with one of the navigation methods: `TDataSet.Next` (442), `TDataSet.Prior` (444), `TDataSet.First` (438), `TDataSet.Last` (441), but also with two of the editing operations: `TDataSet.Insert` (440) and `TDataSet.Delete` (434) and after the dataset was opened. It is suitable for displaying status information or showing a value that needs to be calculated for each record.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (459), `TDataSet.Next` (442), `TDataSet.Prior` (444), `TDataSet.First` (438), `TDataSet.Last` (441), `TDataSet.Insert` (440), `TDataSet.Delete` (434), `TDataSet.Open` (443)

14.23.98 TDataSet.BeforeRefresh

Synopsis: Event triggered before the data is refreshed.

Declaration: Property BeforeRefresh : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: BeforeRefresh is triggered at the start of the TDataSet.Refresh (444) method, after the dataset has been put in browse mode. If the dataset cannot be put in browse mode, the BeforeRefresh method will not be triggered. If an exception is raised during the BeforeRefresh method, then the refresh method is cancelled and the dataset remains in the dsBrowse state.

See also: TDataSet.Refresh (444), TDataSet.AfterRefresh (460), TDataSet.State (452)

14.23.99 TDataSet.AfterRefresh

Synopsis: Event triggered after the data has been refreshed.

Declaration: Property AfterRefresh : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterRefresh is triggered at the end of the TDataSet.Refresh (444) method, after the dataset has refreshed its data and is again in dsBrowse state. This event can be used to react on changes in data in the current record

See also: TDataSet.Refresh (444), TDataSet.State (452), TDataSet.BeforeRefresh (460)

14.23.100 TDataSet.OnCalcFields

Synopsis: Event triggered when values for calculated fields must be computed.

Declaration: Property OnCalcFields : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnCalcFields is triggered whenever the dataset needs to (re)compute the values of any calculated fields in the dataset. It is called very often, so this event should return as quickly as possible. Only the values of the calculated fields should be set, no methods of the dataset that change the data or cursor position may be called during the execution of this event handler. The frequency with which this event is called can be controlled through the TDataSet.AutoCalcFields (454) property. Note that the value of lookup fields does not need to be calculated in this event, their value is computed automatically before this event is triggered.

See also: TDataSet.AutoCalcFields (454), TField.Kind (477)

14.23.101 TDataSet.OnDeleteError

Synopsis: Event triggered when a delete operation fails.

Declaration: `Property OnDeleteError : TDataSetErrorEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnDeleteError` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Delete` (434) method fails to delete the record in the underlying database. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed delete should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter `E`), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the `DataAction` parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised).

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an `EAbort` exception is raised).

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the `TDataSetErrorEvent` (366) event handler type.

See also: `TDataSetErrorEvent` (366), `TDataSet.Delete` (434), `TDataSet.OnEditError` (461), `TDataSet.OnPostError` (462)

14.23.102 TDataSet.OnEditError

Synopsis: Event triggered when an edit operation fails.

Declaration: `Property OnEditError : TDataSetErrorEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnEditError` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Edit` (435) method fails to put the dataset in edit mode because the underlying database engine reported an error. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed edit operation should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter `E`), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the `DataAction` parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised).

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an `EAbort` exception is raised).

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the `TDataSetErrorEvent` (366) event handler type.

See also: `TDataSetErrorEvent` (366), `TDataSet.Edit` (435), `TDataSet.OnDeleteError` (461), `TDataSet.OnPostError` (462)

14.23.103 TDataSet.OnFilterRecord

Synopsis: Event triggered to filter records.

Declaration: `Property OnFilterRecord : TFilterRecordEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnFilterRecord` can be used to provide event-based filtering for datasets that support it. This event is only triggered when the `Tdataset.Filtered` (453) property is set to `True`. The event handler should set the `Accept` parameter to `True` if the current record should be accepted, or to `False` if it should be rejected. No methods that change the state of the dataset may be used during this event, and calculated fields or lookup field values are not yet available.

See also: `TDataset.Filter` (453), `TDataset.Filtered` (453), `TDataset.state` (452)

14.23.104 TDataSet.OnNewRecord

Synopsis: Event triggered when a new record is created.

Declaration: `Property OnNewRecord : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnNewRecord` is triggered by the `TDataset.Append` (431) or `TDataset.Insert` (440) methods when the buffer for the new record's data has been allocated. This event can be used to set default value for some of the fields in the dataset. If an exception is raised during this event handler, the operation is cancelled and the dataset is put again in browse mode (`TDataset.State` (452) is again `dsBrowse`).

See also: `TDataset.Append` (431), `TDataset.Insert` (440), `TDataset.State` (452)

14.23.105 TDataSet.OnPostError

Synopsis: Event triggered when a post operation fails.

Declaration: `Property OnPostError : TDataSetErrorEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnPostError` is triggered when the `TDataset.Post` (443) method fails to post the changes in the dataset buffer to the underlying database, because the database engine reported an error. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed post operation should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter `E`), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the `DataAction` parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised).

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an `EAbort` exception is raised).

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the `TDataSetErrorEvent` (366) event handler type.

See also: `TDataSetErrorEvent` (366), `TDataset.Post` (443), `TDataset.OnDeleteError` (461), `TDataset.OnEditError` (461)

14.24 TDataSetEnumerator

14.24.1 Description

`TDataSetEnumerator` is an enumerator for the records in a dataset. It returns the `TDataSet.Fields` (452) instance. It navigates from the first till the last record in the dataset. The following is an example of how this can be used, in conjunction with the field enumerator:

```
var
  Rec : TFields;
  Fld : TField;

begin
  for Rec in MyDataset do
    for F in Rec do
      Writeln(F.Name, ' : ', F.AsString);
```

Note that the current record pointer of the dataset is modified as the loop is traversed. If the current record is modified by other code while the loop is running, the result may become unpredictable. Similarly, if 2 enumerators are used simultaneously for the same dataset, the results are unpredictable.

See also: `TDataSet` (425), `TFields` (512), `TFieldsEnumerator` (516)

14.24.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
463	Create	Create a new instance of the dataset enumerator.
463	MoveNext	Attempts to navigate to the next record.

14.24.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
464	Current	r	Current record.

14.24.4 TDataSetEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the dataset enumerator.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ADataset: TDataSet)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` saves the dataset for later use, and puts the dataset on the first record.

Errors: None.

See also: `TDataSet` (425), `TDataSet.First` (438), `TFieldsEnumerator` (516)

14.24.5 TDataSetEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Attempts to navigate to the next record.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` attempts to navigate to the next record. It returns `True` if the attempt was successful, `False` if not (EOF is true).

See also: `TDataset.Next` (442), `TDataset.EOF` (448)

14.24.6 `TDatasetEnumerator.Current`

Synopsis: Current record.

Declaration: `Property Current : TFields`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` always returns `TDataset.Fields` (452).

See also: `TDataset.Fields` (452)

14.25 `TDataSource`

14.25.1 Description

`TDataSource` is a mediating component: it handles communication between any DB-Aware component (often edit controls on a form) and a `TDataset` (425) instance. Any database aware component should never communicate with a dataset directly. Instead, it should communicate with a `TDataSource` (464) instance. The `TDataset` instance will communicate with the `TDataSource` instance, which will notify every component attached to it. Vice versa, any component that wishes to make changes to the dataset, will notify the `TDataSource` instance, which will then (if needed) notify the `TDataset` instance. The datasource can be disabled, in which case all communication between the dataset and the DB-Aware components is suspended until the datasource is again enabled.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TDatalink` (419)

14.25.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
465	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TDataSource</code> .
465	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove a <code>TDataSource</code> instance from memory.
465	<code>Edit</code>	Put the dataset in edit mode, if needed.
465	<code>IsLinkedTo</code>	Check if a dataset is linked to a certain dataset.

14.25.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
466	<code>AutoEdit</code>	rw	Should the dataset be put in edit mode automatically.
466	<code>DataSet</code>	rw	Dataset this datasource is connected to.
467	<code>Enabled</code>	rw	Enable or disable sending of events.
467	<code>OnDataChange</code>	rw	Called whenever data changes in the current record.
467	<code>OnStateChange</code>	rw	Called whenever the state of the dataset changes.
468	<code>OnUpdateData</code>	rw	Called whenever the data in the dataset must be updated.
466	<code>State</code>	r	State of the dataset.

14.25.4 TDataSource.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TDataSource.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TDataSource. It simply allocates some resources and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: TDataSource.Destroy (465)

14.25.5 TDataSource.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a TDataSource instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` notifies all TDataLink (419) instances connected to it that the dataset is no longer available, and then removes itself from the TDataLink instance. It then cleans up all resources and calls the inherited constructor.

See also: TDataSource.Create (465), TDataLink (419)

14.25.6 TDataSource.Edit

Synopsis: Put the dataset in edit mode, if needed.

Declaration: `procedure Edit`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Edit` will check `AutoEdit` (466): if it is `True`, then it puts the Dataset (466) it is connected to in edit mode, if it was in browse mode. If `AutoEdit` is `False`, then nothing happens. Application or component code that deals with GUI development should always attempt to set a dataset in edit mode through this method instead of calling `TDataSet.Edit` (435) directly.

Errors: An `EDatabaseError` (387) exception can occur if the dataset is read-only or fails to set itself in edit mode. (e.g. unidirectional datasets).

See also: TDataSource.AutoEdit (466), TDataSet.Edit (435), TDataSet.State (452)

14.25.7 TDataSource.IsLinkedTo

Synopsis: Check if a dataset is linked to a certain dataset.

Declaration: `function IsLinkedTo(ADataset: TDataSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsLinkedTo` checks if it is somehow linked to `ADataset`: it checks the `Dataset` (466) property, and returns `True` if it is the same. If not, it continues by checking any detail dataset fields that the dataset possesses (recursively). This function can be used to detect circular links in e.g. master-detail relationships.

See also: TDataSource.Dataset (466)

14.25.8 TDataSource.State

Synopsis: State of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property State : TDataSetState`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `State` contains the `State` (452) of the dataset it is connected to, or `dsInactive` if the dataset property is not set or the datasource is not enabled. Components connected to a dataset through a datasource property should always check `TDataSource.State` instead of checking `TDataSet.State` (452) directly, to take into account the effect of the `Enabled` (467) property.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (452), `TDataSource.Enabled` (467)

14.25.9 TDataSource.AutoEdit

Synopsis: Should the dataset be put in edit mode automatically.

Declaration: `Property AutoEdit : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AutoEdit` can be set to `True` to prevent visual controls from putting the dataset in edit mode. Visual controls use the `TDataSource.Edit` (465) method to attempt to put the dataset in edit mode as soon as the user changes something. If `AutoEdit` is set to `False` then the `Edit` method does nothing. The effect is that the user must explicitly set the dataset in edit mode (by clicking some button or some other action) before the fields can be edited.

See also: `TDataSource.Edit` (465), `TDataSet.Edit` (435)

14.25.10 TDataSource.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this datasource is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataSet` must be set by the application programmer to the `TDataSet` (425) instance for which this datasource is handling events. Setting it to `Nil` will disable all controls that are connected to this datasource instance. Once it is set and the datasource is enabled, the datasource will start sending data events to the controls or components connected to it.

See also: `TDataSet` (425), `TDataSource.Enabled` (467)

14.25.11 TDataSource.Enabled

Synopsis: Enable or disable sending of events.

Declaration: Property Enabled : Boolean

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Enabled is by default set to True: the datasource instance communicates events from the dataset to components connected to the datasource, and vice versa: components can interact with the dataset. If the Enabled property is set to False then no events are communicated to connected components: it is as if the dataset property was set to Nil. Reversely, the components cannot interact with the dataset if the Enabled property is set to False.

See also: TDataset ([425](#)), TDataSource.Dataset ([466](#)), TDataSource.AutoEdit ([466](#))

14.25.12 TDataSource.OnStateChange

Synopsis: Called whenever the state of the dataset changes.

Declaration: Property OnStateChange : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnStateChange is called whenever the TDataset.State ([452](#)) property changes, and the datasource is enabled. It can be used in application code to react to state changes: enabling or disabling non-DB-Aware controls, setting empty values etc.

See also: TDataSource.OnUpdateData ([468](#)), TDataSource.OnStateChange ([467](#)), TDataset.State ([452](#)), TDataSource.Enabled ([467](#))

14.25.13 TDataSource.OnDataChange

Synopsis: Called whenever data changes in the current record.

Declaration: Property OnDataChange : TDataChangeEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnDatachange is called whenever a field value changes: if the Field parameter is set, a single field value changed. If the Field parameter is Nil, then the whole record changed: when the dataset is opened, when the user scrolls to a new record. This event handler can be set to react to data changes: to update the contents of non-DB-aware controls for instance. The event is not called when the datasource is not enabled.

See also: TDataSource.OnUpdateData ([468](#)), TDataSource.OnStateChange ([467](#)), TDataset.AfterScroll ([459](#)), TField.OnChange ([502](#)), TDataSource.Enabled ([467](#))

14.25.14 TDataSource.OnUpdateData

Synopsis: Called whenever the data in the dataset must be updated.

Declaration: `Property OnUpdateData : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnUpdateData` is called whenever the dataset needs the latest data from the controls: usually just before a `TDataset.Post` (443) operation. It can be used to copy data from non-db-aware controls to the dataset just before the dataset is posting the changes to the underlying database.

See also: `TDatasource.OnDataChange` (467), `TDatasource.OnStateChange` (467), `TDataset.Post` (443)

14.26 TDateField

14.26.1 Description

`TDateField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type date. (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftDate`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (477) class to be able to work with date fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TDateField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each date field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField` (477), `TDateTimeField` (468), `TTimeField` (571)

14.26.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
468	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDateField</code> class.

14.26.3 TDateField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDateField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TDateField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (477) properties to configure the instance for working with date values.

See also: `TField` (477)

14.27 TDateTimeField

14.27.1 Description

`TDateTimeField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type datetime. (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftDateTime`). It also serves as base class for the `TDateField` (468) or `TTimeField` (571) classes. It overrides some of the properties and methods of the `TField` (477) class to be able to work with date/time fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TDateTimeField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each datetime field when a dataset is opened.

See also: [TDataSet \(425\)](#), [TField \(477\)](#), [TDateField \(468\)](#), [TTimeField \(571\)](#)

14.27.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
469	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDateTimeField</code> class.

14.27.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
469	DisplayFormat	rw	Formatting string for textual representation of the field.
470	EditMask		Specify an edit mask for an edit control.
469	Value	rw	Contents of the field as a <code>TDateTime</code> value.

14.27.4 TDateTimeField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDateTimeField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TDateTimeField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([477](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with date/time values.

See also: [TField \(477\)](#)

14.27.5 TDateTimeField.Value

Synopsis: Contents of the field as a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `Property Value : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined from `TField.Value` ([494](#)) by `TDateTimeField` as a `TDateTime` value. It returns the same value as the `TField.AsDateTime` ([485](#)) property.

See also: `TField.AsDateTime` ([485](#)), `TField.Value` ([494](#))

14.27.6 TDateTimeField.DisplayFormat

Synopsis: Formatting string for textual representation of the field.

Declaration: `Property DisplayFormat : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayFormat` can be set to a formatting string that will then be used by the `TField.DisplayText` (491) property to format the value with the `DateTimeToString` (??) function.

See also: `DateTimeToString` (??), `FormatDateTime` (??), `TField.DisplayText` (491)

14.27.7 TDateTimeField.EditMask

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control.

Declaration: `Property EditMask :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

`TDateTimeField` just changes the visibility of the `EditMask` property, it is introduced in `TField`.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TField.EditMask` (491)

14.28 TDBDataset

14.28.1 Description

`TDBDataset` is a `TDataset` descendent which introduces the concept of a database: a central component (`TDatabase` (415)) which represents a connection to a database. This central component is exposed in the `TDBDataset.Database` (471) property. When the database is no longer connected, or is no longer in memory, all `TDBDataset` instances connected to it are disabled.

`TDBDataset` also introduces the notion of a transaction, exposed in the `Transaction` (471) property.

`TDBDataset` is an abstract class, it should never be used directly.

Dataset component writers should descend their component from `TDBDataset` if they wish to introduce a central database connection component. The database connection logic will be handled automatically by `TDBDataset`.

See also: `TDatabase` (415), `TDBTransaction` (471)

14.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
471	<code>destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TDBDataset</code> instance from memory.

14.28.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
471	<code>DataBase</code>	rw	Database this dataset is connected to.
471	<code>Transaction</code>	rw	Transaction in which this dataset is running.

14.28.4 TDBDataset.destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TDBDataset` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` will disconnect the `TDBDataset` from its `Database` (471) and `Transaction` (471). After this it calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDBDataset.Database` (471), `TDatabase` (415)

14.28.5 TDBDataset.DataBase

Synopsis: Database this dataset is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDataBase`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Database` should be set to the `TDatabase` (415) instance this dataset is connected to. It can only be set when the dataset is closed.

Descendent classes should check in the property setter whether the database instance is of the correct class.

Errors: If the property is set when the dataset is active, an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDatabase` (415), `TDBDataset.Transaction` (471)

14.28.6 TDBDataset.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction in which this dataset is running.

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TDBTransaction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Transaction` points to a `TDBTransaction` (471) component that represents the transaction this dataset is active in. This property should only be used for databases that support transactions.

The property can only be set when the dataset is disabled.

See also: `TDBTransaction` (471), `TDBDataset.Database` (471)

14.29 TDBTransaction

14.29.1 Description

`TDBTransaction` encapsulates a SQL transaction. It is an abstract class, and should be used by component creators that wish to encapsulate transactions in a class. The `TDBTransaction` class offers functionality to refer to a `TDatabase` (415) instance, and to keep track of `TDataset` instances which are connected to the transaction.

See also: `TDatabase` (415), `TDataset` (425)

14.29.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
472	CloseDataSets	Close all connected datasets.
472	Create	Transaction property.
472	Destroy	Remove a TDBTransaction instance from memory.

14.29.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
473	Active	rw	Is the transaction active or not.
473	DataBase	rw	Database this transaction is connected to.

14.29.4 TDBTransaction.Create

Synopsis: Transaction property.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TDBTransaction` instance. It sets up the necessary resources, after having called the inherited constructor.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Destroy` ([472](#))

14.29.5 TDBTransaction.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a `TDBTransaction` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first disconnects all connected `TDBDataset` ([470](#)) instances and then cleans up the resources allocated in the `Create` ([472](#)) constructor. After that it calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Create` ([472](#))

14.29.6 TDBTransaction.CloseDataSets

Synopsis: Close all connected datasets.

Declaration: `procedure CloseDataSets`
`procedure CloseDataSets(InCommit: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseDatasets` closes all connected datasets (All `TDBDataset` ([470](#)) instances whose `Transaction` ([471](#)) property points to this `TDBTransaction` instance).

See also: `TDBDataset` ([470](#)), `TDBDataset.Transaction` ([471](#))

14.29.7 TDBTransaction.DataBase

Synopsis: Database this transaction is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDataBase`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataBase` points to the database that this transaction is part of. This property can be set only when the transaction is not active.

Errors: Setting this property to a new value when the transaction is active will result in an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Active` (473), `TDataBase` (415)

14.29.8 TDBTransaction.Active

Synopsis: Is the transaction active or not.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Active` is `True` if a transaction was started using `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (471). Reversely, setting `Active` to `True` will call `StartTransaction`, setting it to `False` will call `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (471).

See also: `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (471), `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (471)

14.30 TDefCollection

14.30.1 Description

`TDefCollection` is a parent class for the `TFieldDefs` (509) and `TIndexDefs` (527) collections: It holds a set of named definitions on behalf of a `TDataset` (425) component. To this end, it introduces a `dataset` (475) property, and a mechanism to notify the dataset of any updates in the collection. It is supposed to hold items of class `TNamedItem` (542), so the `TDefCollection.Find` (474) method can find items by named.

14.30.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
474	<code>create</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TDefCollection</code> instance.
474	<code>Find</code>	Find an item by name.
474	<code>GetItemNames</code>	Return a list of all names in the collection.
474	<code>IndexOf</code>	Find location of item by name.

14.30.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
475	<code>Dataset</code>	<code>r</code>	Dataset this collection manages definitions for.
475	<code>Updated</code>	<code>rw</code>	Has one of the items been changed.

14.30.4 TDefCollection.create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new TDefCollection instance.

Declaration: `constructor create(ADataset: TDataSet; AOwner: TPersistent;
AClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create saves the ADataset and AOwner components in local variables for later reference, and then calls the inherited Create with AClass as a parameter. AClass should at least be of type TNamedItem. ADataset is the dataset on whose behalf the collection is managed. AOwner is the owner of the collection, normally this is the form or datamodule on which the dataset is dropped.

See also: TDataSet ([425](#)), TNamedItem ([542](#))

14.30.5 TDefCollection.Find

Synopsis: Find an item by name.

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: string) : TNamedItem`

Visibility: public

Description: Find searches for an item in the collection with name AName and returns the item if it is found. If no item with the requested name is found, Nil is returned. The search is performed case-insensitive.

Errors: If no item with matching name is found, Nil is returned.

See also: TNamedItem.Name ([542](#)), TDefCollection.IndexOf ([474](#))

14.30.6 TDefCollection.GetItemNames

Synopsis: Return a list of all names in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure GetItemNames(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: GetItemNames fills List with the names of all items in the collection. It clears the list first.

Errors: If List is not a valid TStrings instance, an exception will occur.

See also: TNamedItem.Name ([542](#))

14.30.7 TDefCollection.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find location of item by name.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AName: string) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOf searches in the collection for an item whose Name property matches AName and returns the index of the item if it finds one. If no item is found, -1 is returned. The search is performed case-insensitive.

See also: TDefCollection.Find ([474](#)), TNamedItem.Name ([542](#))

14.30.8 TDefCollection.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset this collection manages definitions for.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset this collection manages definitions for. It must be supplied when the collection is created and cannot change during the lifetime of the collection.

14.30.9 TDefCollection.Updated

Synopsis: Has one of the items been changed.

Declaration: `Property Updated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Changed` indicates whether the collection has changed: an item was added or removed, or one of the properties of the items was changed.

14.31 TDetailDataLink

14.31.1 Description

`TDetailDataLink` handles the communication between a detail dataset and the master datasource in a master-detail relationship between datasets. It should never be used in an application, and should only be used by component writers that wish to provide master-detail functionality for `TDataSet` descendents.

See also: `TDataSet` ([425](#)), `TDataSource` ([464](#))

14.31.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
475	<code>DetailDataSet</code>	<code>r</code>	Detail dataset in Master-detail relation.

14.31.3 TDetailDataLink.DetailDataSet

Synopsis: Detail dataset in Master-detail relation.

Declaration: `Property DetailDataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DetailDataSet` is the detail dataset in a master-detail relationship between 2 datasets. `DetailDataSet` is always `Nil` in `TDetailDataLink` and is only filled in in descendent classes like `TMasterDataLink` ([537](#)). The master dataset is available through the regular `TDataLink.DataSource` ([423](#)) property.

See also: `TDataSet` ([425](#)), `TMasterDataLink` ([537](#)), `TDataLink.DataSource` ([423](#))

14.32 TExtendedField

14.32.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
476	CheckRange	
476	Create	

14.32.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
476	Currency	rw	
476	MaxValue	rw	
477	MinValue	rw	
477	Precision	rw	
476	Value	rw	

14.32.3 TExtendedField.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

14.32.4 TExtendedField.CheckRange

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: Extended) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

14.32.5 TExtendedField.Value

Declaration: `Property Value : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.32.6 TExtendedField.Currency

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.32.7 TExtendedField.MaxValue

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Extended`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.32.8 TExtendedField.MinValue

Declaration: Property MinValue : Extended

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

14.32.9 TExtendedField.Precision

Declaration: Property Precision : LongInt

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

14.33 TField

14.33.1 Description

TField is an abstract class that defines access methods for a field in a record, controlled by a TDataset (425) instance. It provides methods and properties to access the contents of the field in the current record. Reading one of the AsXXX properties of TField will access the field contents and return the contents as the desired type. Writing one of the AsXXX properties will write a value to the buffer represented by the TField instance.

TField is an abstract class, meaning that it should never be created directly. TDataset instances always create one of the descendent classes of TField, depending on the type of the underlying data.

See also: TDataset (425), TFieldDef (503), TFields (512)

14.33.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
480	Assign	Copy properties from one TField instance to another.
480	AssignValue	Assign value of a variant record to the field.
481	Clear	Clear the field contents.
480	Create	Create a new TField instance.
480	Destroy	Destroy the TField instance.
481	FocusControl	Set focus to the first control connected to this field.
481	GetData	Get the data from this field.
482	IsBlob	Is the field a BLOB field (untyped data of indeterminate size).
482	IsValidChar	Check whether a character is valid input for the field.
482	RefreshLookupList	Refresh the lookup list.
482	SetData	Save the field data.
483	SetFieldType	Set the field data type.
483	Validate	Validate the data buffer.

14.33.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
495	Alignment	rw	Alignment for this field.
487	AsAnsiString	rw	Return field contents as an ANSI string.
483	AsBCD	rw	Access the field's contents as a BCD (Binary coded Decimal).
484	AsBoolean	rw	Access the field's contents as a Boolean value.
484	AsBytes	rw	Retrieve the contents of the field as an array of bytes.
484	AsCurrency	rw	Access the field's contents as a Currency value.
485	AsDateTime	rw	Access the field's contents as a TDateTime value.
485	AsExtended	rw	
485	AsFloat	rw	Access the field's contents as a floating-point (Double) value.
486	AsInteger	rw	Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.
486	AsLargeInt	rw	Access the field's contents as a 64-bit signed integer (longint) value.
485	AsLongint	rw	Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.
486	AsLongWord	rw	Access field contents as 32-bit unsigned integer (longword/cardinal).
487	AsSingle	rw	
487	AsString	rw	Access the field's contents as an AnsiString value.
488	AsUnicodeString	rw	Field contents as a UnicodeString.
488	AsUTF8String	rw	Field contents as a UTF8 String.
489	AsVariant	rw	Access the field's contents as a Variant value.
488	AsWideString	rw	Access the field's contents as a WideString value.
489	AttributeSet	rw	Not used: dictionary information.
489	Calculated	rw	Is the field a calculated field ?
489	CanModify	r	Can the field's contents be modified.
496	ConstraintErrorMessage	rw	Message to display if the CustomConstraint constraint is violated.
490	CurValue	r	Current value of the field.
496	CustomConstraint	rw	Custom constraint for the field's value.
490	DataSet	rw	Dataset this field belongs to.
490	DataSet	rw	Dataset this field belongs to.
490	DataSet	rw	Dataset this field belongs to.
490	DataSet	rw	Dataset this field belongs to.
490	DataSet	rw	Dataset this field belongs to.
496	DefaultExpression	rw	Default value for the field.
497	DisplayLabel	rws	Name of the field for display purposes.
491	DisplayName	r	User-readable fieldname.
491	DisplayText	r	Formatted field value.
497	DisplayWidth	rws	Width of the field in characters.
491	EditMask	rw	Specify an edit mask for an edit control.
492	EditMaskPtr	r	Alias for EditMask.
495	FieldDef	r	Fielddef associated with this field.
497	FieldKind	rw	The kind of field.
497	FieldName	rw	Name of the field.
492	FieldNo	r	Number of the field in the record.
498	HasConstraints	r	Does the field have any constraints defined.
498	ImportedConstraint	rw	Constraint for the field value on the level of the underlying database.
498	Index	rw	Index of the field in the list of fields.
492	IsIndexField	r	Is the field an indexed field ?
492	IsNull	r	Is the field empty.
499	KeyFields	rw	Key fields to use when looking up a field value.
500	Lookup	rws	Is the field a lookup field.
499	LookupCache	rw	Should lookup values be cached.
499	LookupDataSet	rw	Dataset with lookup values.
499	LookupKeyFields	rw	Names of fields on which to perform a locate.
495	LookupList	r	List of lookup values.
500	LookupResultField	rw	Name of field to use as lookup value.

14.33.4 TField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TField instance.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new TField instance and sets up initial values for the fields. TField is a component, and AOwner will be used as the owner of the TField instance. This usually will be the form or datamodule on which the dataset was placed. There should normally be no need for a programmer to create a Tfield instance manually. The TDataSet.Open (443) method will create the necessary TField instances, if none had been created in the designer.

See also: TDataSet.Open (443)

14.33.5 TField.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TField instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up any structures set up by the field instance, and then calls the inherited destructor. There should be no need to call this method under normal circumstances: the dataset instance will free any TField instances it has created when the dataset was opened.

See also: TDataSet.Close (433)

14.33.6 TField.Assign

Synopsis: Copy properties from one TField instance to another.

Declaration: procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Assign is overridden by TField to copy the field value (not the field properties) from Source if it exists. If Source is Nil then the value of the field is cleared.

Errors: If Source is not a TField instance, then an exception will be raised.

See also: TField.Value (494)

14.33.7 TField.AssignValue

Synopsis: Assign value of a variant record to the field.

Declaration: procedure AssignValue(const AValue: TVarRec)

Visibility: public

Description: AssignValue assigns the value of a "array of const" record AValue (of type TVarRec) to the field's value. If the record contains a TPersistent instance, it will be used as argument for the Assign to the field.

The dataset must be in edit mode to execute this method.

Errors: If the `AValue` contains an unsupported value (such as a non-nil pointer) then an exception will be raised. If the dataset is not in one of the edit modes, then executing this method will raise an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception.

See also: `TField.Assign` (480), `TField.Value` (494)

14.33.8 TField.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the field contents.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the contents of the field. After calling this method the value of the field is `Null` and `IsNull` (492) returns `True`.

The dataset must be in edit mode to execute this method.

Errors: If the dataset is not in one of the edit modes, then executing this method will raise an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (492), `TField.Value` (494)

14.33.9 TField.FocusControl

Synopsis: Set focus to the first control connected to this field.

Declaration: `procedure FocusControl`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FocusControl` will set focus to the first control that is connected to this field.

Errors: If the control cannot receive focus, then this method will raise an exception.

See also: `TDataset.EnableControls` (436), `TDataset.DisableControls` (435)

14.33.10 TField.GetData

Synopsis: Get the data from this field.

Declaration: `function GetData(Buffer: Pointer) : Boolean; Overload`
`function GetData(Buffer: Pointer; NativeFormat: Boolean) : Boolean`
`; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetData` is used internally by `TField` to fetch the value of the data of this field into the data buffer pointed to by `Buffer`. If it returns `False` if the field has no value (i.e. is `Null`). If the `NativeFormat` parameter is true, then date/time formats should use the `TDateTime` format. It should not be necessary to use this method, instead use the various 'AsXXX' methods to access the data.

Errors: No validity checks are performed on `Buffer`: it should point to a valid memory area, and should be large enough to contain the value of the field. Failure to provide a buffer that matches these criteria will result in an exception.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (492), `TField.SetData` (482), `TField.Value` (494)

14.33.11 TField.IsBlob

Synopsis: Is the field a BLOB field (untyped data of indeterminate size).

Declaration: `class function IsBlob : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsBlob` returns `True` if the field is one of the blob field types. The `TField` implementation returns `false`. Only one of the blob-type field classes override this function and let it return `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBlobField.IsBlob` (401)

14.33.12 TField.IsValidChar

Synopsis: Check whether a character is valid input for the field.

Declaration: `function IsValidChar(InputChar: char) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsValidChar` checks whether `InputChar` is a valid characters for the current field. It does this by checking whether `InputChar` is in the set of characters specified by the `TField.ValidChars` (494) property. The `ValidChars` property will be initialized to a correct set of characters by descendent classes. For instance, a numerical field will only accept numerical characters and the sign and decimal separator characters.

Descendent classes can override this method to provide custom checks. The `ValidChars` property can be set to restrict the list of valid characters to a subset of what would normally be available.

See also: `TField.ValidChars` (494)

14.33.13 TField.RefreshLookupList

Synopsis: Refresh the lookup list.

Declaration: `procedure RefreshLookupList`

Visibility: public

Description: `RefreshLookupList` fills the lookup list for a lookup fields with all key, value pairs found in the lookup dataset. It will open the lookup dataset if needed. The lookup list is only used if the `TField.LookupCache` (499) property is set to `True`.

Errors: If the values of the various lookup properties is not correct or the lookup dataset cannot be opened, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `LookupDataset` (499), `LookupKeyFields` (499), `LookupResultField` (500)

14.33.14 TField.SetData

Synopsis: Save the field data.

Declaration: `procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer); Overload`
`procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer; NativeFormat: Boolean); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetData` saves the value of the field data in `Buffer` to the dataset internal buffer. The `Buffer` pointer should point to a memory buffer containing the data for the field in the correct format. If the `NativeFormat` parameter is true, then date/time formats should use the `TDateTime` format.

There should normally not be any need to call `SetData` directly: it is called by the various setter methods of the `AsXXX` properties of `TField`.

Errors: No validity checks are performed on `Buffer`: it should point to a valid memory area, and should be large enough to contain the value of the field. Failure to provide a buffer that matches these criteria will result in an exception.

See also: `TField.GetData` (481), `TField.Value` (494)

14.33.15 TField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field data type.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldType` does nothing, but it can be overridden by descendent classes to provide special handling when the field type is set.

See also: `TField.DataType` (490)

14.33.16 TField.Validate

Synopsis: Validate the data buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Validate(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Validate` is called by `SetData` prior to writing the data from `Buffer` to the dataset buffer. It will call the `TField.OnValidate` (503) event handler, if one is set, to allow the application programmer to program additional checks.

See also: `TField.SetData` (482), `TField.OnValidate` (503)

14.33.17 TField.AsBCD

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a BCD (Binary coded Decimal).

Declaration: `Property AsBCD : TBCD`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBCD` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a BCD value (Binary Coded Decimal). If the native type of the field is not BCD, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a BCD value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a BCD value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.AsCurrency` (484), `TField.Value` (494)

14.33.18 TField.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a Boolean value.

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a boolean value. If the native type of the field is not Boolean, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a boolean value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a Boolean value (for instance a string value), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AsInteger` ([486](#))

14.33.19 TField.AsBytes

Synopsis: Retrieve the contents of the field as an array of bytes.

Declaration: `Property AsBytes : TBytes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBytes` returns the contents of the field as an array of bytes. For blob data this is the actual blob content.

See also: `TBlobField` ([400](#))

14.33.20 TField.AsCurrency

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a Currency value.

Declaration: `Property AsCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a currency value. If the native type of the field is not Boolean, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a currency value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a currency-compatible value (dates or string values), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AsFloat` ([485](#))

14.33.21 TField.AsDateTime

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `Property AsDateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsDateTime` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a TDateTime value (for both date and time values). If the native type of the field is not a date or time value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a TDateTime value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a TDateTime-compatible value (dates or string values), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AsString` ([487](#))

14.33.22 TField.AsExtended

Declaration: `Property AsExtended : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

14.33.23 TField.AsFloat

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a floating-point (Double) value.

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsFloat` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a floating-point value (of type double, i.e. with double precision). If the native type of the field is not a floating-point value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a floating-point value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a floating-point-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AsString` ([487](#)), `TField.AsCurrency` ([484](#))

14.33.24 TField.AsLongint

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsLongint : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLongint` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 32-bit signed integer value (of type `longint`). If the native type of the field is not a longint value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a longint value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 32-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised. This is an alias for the `TField.AsInteger` (486).

See also: `TField.Value` (494), `TField.AsString` (487), `TField.AsInteger` (486)

14.33.25 TField.AsLongWord

Synopsis: Access field contents as 32-bit unsigned integer (longword/cardinal).

Declaration: `Property AsLongWord : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInteger` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 32-bit signed integer value (of type `Integer`). If the native type of the field is not an integer value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a integer value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 32-bit unsigned integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (494), `TField.AsInteger` (486)

14.33.26 TField.AsLargeInt

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 64-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsLargeInt : LargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLargeInt` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 64-bit signed integer value (of type `Int64`). If the native type of the field is not an `Int64` value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to an `Int64` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 64-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (494), `TField.AsString` (487), `TField.AsInteger` (486)

14.33.27 TField.AsInteger

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInteger` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 32-bit signed integer value (of type `Integer`). If the native type of the field is not an integer value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a integer value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 32-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AsString` ([487](#)), `TField.AsLongint` ([485](#)), `TField.AsInt64` ([477](#))

14.33.28 TField.AsSingle

Declaration: `Property AsSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

14.33.29 TField.AsString

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as an `AnsiString` value.

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as an `AnsiString` value. If the native type of the field is not an `ansistring` value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a `ansistring` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not an `ansistring`-compatible value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AsWideString` ([488](#))

14.33.30 TField.AsAnsiString

Synopsis: Return field contents as an ANSI string.

Declaration: `Property AsAnsiString : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsAnsiString` returns the field data as an ANSI string (single byte character string). Note that if the field contains unicode data, some characters may get lost when reading.

See also: `TField.AsString` ([487](#)), `TField.AsUnicodeString` ([488](#)), `TField.AsUTF8String` ([488](#)), `TField.CodePage` ([477](#))

14.33.31 TField.AsUnicodeString

Synopsis: Field contents as a UnicodeString.

Declaration: `Property AsUnicodeString : UnicodeString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsUnicodeString` returns the field data as a Unicode string (double byte character string). If the field contains an `AnsiString`, the data will be converted to unicode according to the `CodePage` (477) when reading, and when writing the written data will be converted to single-byte string. Note that if the field is an `ansistring` field, some characters may get lost when writing.

See also: `TField.AsString` (487), `TField.AsAnsiString` (487), `TField.AsUTF8String` (488), `TField.CodePage` (477)

14.33.32 TField.AsUTF8String

Synopsis: Field contents as a UTF8 String.

Declaration: `Property AsUTF8String : UTF8String`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsUTF8String` returns the field data as a UTF8-Encoded string (single byte character string). If the field contains an `AnsiString`, the data will be converted to unicode according to the `CodePage` (477). If the field contains a unicode string, the string is UTF-8 encoded. When writing the written data will be converted to single-byte string. Note that if the field is an `ansistring` field, some characters may get lost when writing.

See also: `TField.AsString` (487), `TField.AsUnicodeString` (488), `TField.AsAnsi8String` (477), `TField.CodePage` (477)

14.33.33 TField.AsWideString

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a WideString value.

Declaration: `Property AsWideString : WideString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsWideString` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a WideString value. If the native type of the field is not a widestring value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a widestring value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a widestring-compatible value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (494), `TField.Astring` (477)

14.33.34 TField.AsVariant

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a Variant value.

Declaration: `Property AsVariant : variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsVariant` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a Variant value. If the native type of the field is not a Variant value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a variant value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a variant-compatible value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#)), `TField.AString` ([477](#))

14.33.35 TField.AttributeSet

Synopsis: Not used: dictionary information.

Declaration: `Property AttributeSet : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AttributeSet` was used in older Delphi versions to store data dictionary information for use in data-aware controls at design time. Not used in FreePascal (or newer Delphi versions); kept for Delphi compatibility.

14.33.36 TField.Calculated

Synopsis: Is the field a calculated field ?

Declaration: `Property Calculated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Calculated` is `True` if the `FieldKind` ([497](#)) is `fkCalculated`. Setting the property will result in `FieldKind` being set to `fkCalculated` (for a value of `True`) or `fkData`. This property should be considered read-only.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` ([497](#))

14.33.37 TField.CanModify

Synopsis: Can the field's contents be modified.

Declaration: `Property CanModify : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `CanModify` is `True` if the field is not read-only and the dataset allows modification.

See also: `TField.ReadOnly` ([501](#)), `TDataset.CanModify` ([447](#))

14.33.38 TField.CurValue

Synopsis: Current value of the field.

Declaration: `Property CurValue : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CurValue` returns the current value of the field as a variant.

See also: `TField.Value` ([494](#))

14.33.39 TField.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this field belongs to.

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `DataSet` contains the dataset this field belongs to. Writing this property will add the field to the list of fields of a dataset, after removing it from the list of fields of the dataset the field was previously assigned to. It should under normal circumstances never be necessary to set this property, the `TDataSet` code will take care of this.

See also: `TDataSet` ([425](#)), `TDataSet.Fields` ([452](#))

14.33.40 TField.DataSize

Synopsis: Size of the field's data.

Declaration: `Property DataSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSize` is the memory size needed to store the field's contents. This is different from the `Size` ([493](#)) property which declares a logical size for datatypes that have a variable size (such as string fields). For BLOB fields, use the `TBlobField.BlobSize` ([403](#)) property to get the size of the field's contents for the current record..

See also: `TField.Size` ([493](#)), `TBlobField.BlobSize` ([403](#))

14.33.41 TField.DataType

Synopsis: The data type of the field.

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Datatype` indicates the type of data the field has. This property is initialized when the dataset is opened or when persistent fields are created for the dataset. Instead of checking the class type of the field, it is better to check the `Datatype`, since the actual class of the `TField` instance may differ depending on the dataset.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` ([497](#))

14.33.42 `TField.DisplayName`

Synopsis: User-readable fieldname.

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DisplayName` is the name of the field as it will be displayed to the user e.g. in grid column headers. By default it equals the `FieldName` ([497](#)) property, unless assigned another value.

The use of this property is deprecated. Use `DisplayLabel` ([497](#)) instead.

See also: `TField.FieldName` ([497](#))

14.33.43 `TField.DisplayText`

Synopsis: Formatted field value.

Declaration: `Property DisplayText : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DisplayText` returns the field's value as it should be displayed to the user, with all necessary formatting applied. Controls that should display the value of the field should use `DisplayText` instead of the `TField.AsString` ([487](#)) property, which does not take into account any formatting.

See also: `TField.AsString` ([487](#))

14.33.44 `TField.EditMask`

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control.

Declaration: `Property EditMask : TEditMask`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TDateTimeField.EditMask` ([470](#)), `TStringField.EditMask` ([570](#))

14.33.45 TField.EditMaskPtr

Synopsis: Alias for EditMask.

Declaration: `Property EditMaskPtr : TEditMask`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EditMaskPtr` is a read-only alias for the `EditMask` (491) property. It is not used.

See also: `TField.EditMask` (491)

14.33.46 TField.FieldNo

Synopsis: Number of the field in the record.

Declaration: `Property FieldNo : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FieldNo` is the position of the field in the record. It is a 1-based index and is initialized when the dataset is opened or when persistent fields are created for the dataset.

See also: `TField.Index` (498)

14.33.47 TField.IsIndexField

Synopsis: Is the field an indexed field ?

Declaration: `Property IsIndexField : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsIndexField` is true if the field is an indexed field. By default this property is `False`, descendants of `TDataset` (425) can change this to `True`.

See also: `TField.Calculated` (489)

14.33.48 TField.IsNull

Synopsis: Is the field empty.

Declaration: `Property IsNull : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsNull` is `True` if the field does not have a value. If the underlying data contained a value, or a value is written to it, `IsNull` will return `False`. After `TDataset.Insert` (440) is called or `Clear` (481) is called then `IsNull` will return `True`.

See also: `TField.Clear` (481), `TDataset.Insert` (440)

14.33.49 TField.NewValue

Synopsis: The new value of the field.

Declaration: `Property NewValue : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `NewValue` returns the new value of the field. The FPC implementation of `TDataset` (425) does not yet support this.

See also: `TField.Value` (494), `TField.CurValue` (490)

14.33.50 TField.Offset

Synopsis: Offset of the field's value in the dataset buffer.

Declaration: `Property Offset : Word`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Offset` is the location of the field's contents in the dataset memory buffer. It is read-only and initialized by the dataset when it is opened.

See also: `TField.FieldNo` (492), `TField.Index` (498), `TField.Datasize` (490)

14.33.51 TField.Size

Synopsis: Logical size of the field.

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Size` is the declared size of the field for datatypes that can have variable size, such as string types, BCD types or array types. To get the size of the storage needed to store the field's content, the `DataSize` (490) should be used. For blob fields, the current size of the data is not guaranteed to be present.

See also: `DataSize` (490)

14.33.52 TField.Text

Synopsis: Text representation of the field.

Declaration: `Property Text : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Text` can be used to retrieve or set the value of the value as a string value for editing purposes. It will trigger the `TField.OnGetText` (502) event handler if a handler was specified. For display purposes, the `TField.DisplayText` (491) property should be used. Controls that should display the value in a textual format should use `Text` whenever they must display the text for editing purposes. Inversely, when a control should save the value entered by the user, it should write the contents to the `Text` property, not the `AsString` (487) property, this will invoke the `TField.OnSetText` (502) event handler, if one is set.

See also: `TField.AsString` (487), `TField.DisplayText` (491), `TField.Value` (494)

14.33.53 TField.ValidChars

Synopsis: Characters that are valid input for the field's content.

Declaration: `Property ValidChars : TFieldChars`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ValidChars` is a property that is initialized by descendent classes to contain the set of characters that can be entered in an edit control which is used to edit the field. Numerical fields will set this to a set of numerical characters, string fields will set this to all possible characters. It is possible to restrict the possible input by setting this property to a subset of all possible characters (for example, set it to all uppercase letters to allow the user to enter only uppercase characters. `TField` itself does not enforce the validity of the data when the content of the field is set, an edit control should check the validity of the user input by means of the `IsValidChar` (482) function.

See also: `TField.IsValidChar` (482)

14.33.54 TField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a variant value.

Declaration: `Property Value : variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` can be used to read or write the value of the field as a `Variant` value. When setting the value, the value will be converted to the actual type of the field as defined in the underlying data. Likewise, when reading the value property, the actual field value will be converted to a variant value. If the field does not contain a value (when `IsNull` (492) returns `True`), then `Value` will contain `Null`.

It is not recommended to use the `Value` property: it should only be used when the type of the field is unknown. If the type of the field is known, it is better to use one of the `AsXXX` properties, which will not only result in faster code, but will also avoid strange type conversions.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (492), `TField.Text` (493), `TField.DisplayText` (491)

14.33.55 TField.OldValue

Synopsis: Old value of the field.

Declaration: `Property OldValue : variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `OldValue` returns the value of the field prior to an edit operation. This feature is currently not supported in FPC.

See also: `TField.Value` (494), `TField.CurValue` (490), `TField.NewValue` (493)

14.33.56 TField.LookupList

Synopsis: List of lookup values.

Declaration: `Property LookupList : TLookupList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `LookupList` contains the list of key, value pairs used when caching the possible lookup values for a lookup field. The list is only valid when the `LookupCache` (499) property is set to `True`. It can be refreshed using the `RefreshLookupList` (482) method.

See also: `TField.RefreshLookupList` (482), `TField.LookupCache` (499)

14.33.57 TField.FieldDef

Synopsis: `Fielddef` associated with this field.

Declaration: `Property FieldDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldDef` references the `TFieldDef` instance to which this field instance is bound. When a dataset is opened, the `TDataset.FieldDefs` (449) property is filled with field definitions as returned from the server. After this fields are created, or if they already exist, are bound to these fielddefs.

See also: `TDataset.FieldDefs` (449)

14.33.58 TField.Alignment

Synopsis: Alignment for this field.

Declaration: `Property Alignment : TAlignment`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Alignment` contains the alignment that UI controls should observe when displaying the contents of the field. Setting the property at the field level will make sure that all DB-Aware controls will display the contents of the field with the same alignment.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` (491)

14.33.59 TField.CustomConstraint

Synopsis: Custom constraint for the field's value.

Declaration: `Property CustomConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CustomConstraint` may contain a constraint that will be enforced when the dataset posts it's data. It should be a SQL-like expression that results in a `True` or `False` value. Examples of valid constraints are:

```
Salary < 10000
YearsEducation < Age
```

If the constraint is not satisfied when the record is posted, then an exception will be raised with the value of `ConstraintErrorMessage` (496) as a message.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TField.ConstraintErrorMessage` (496), `TField.ImportedConstraint` (498)

14.33.60 TField.ConstraintErrorMessage

Synopsis: Message to display if the `CustomConstraint` constraint is violated.

Declaration: `Property ConstraintErrorMessage : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ConstraintErrorMessage` is the message that should be displayed when the dataset checks the constraints and the constraint in `TField.CustomConstraint` (496) is violated.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TField.CustomConstraint` (496)

14.33.61 TField.DefaultExpression

Synopsis: Default value for the field.

Declaration: `Property DefaultExpression : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefaultValue` can be set to a value that should be entered in the field whenever the `TDataset.Append` (431) or `TDataset.Insert` (440) methods are executed. It should contain a valid SQL expression that results in the correct type for the field.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TDataset.Insert` (440), `TDataset.Append` (431), `TDataset.CustomConstraint` (425)

14.33.62 TField.DisplayLabel

Synopsis: Name of the field for display purposes.

Declaration: `Property DisplayLabel : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayLabel` is the name of the field as it will be displayed to the user e.g. in grid column headers. By default it equals the `FieldName` (497) property, unless assigned another value.

See also: `TField.FieldName` (497)

14.33.63 TField.DisplayWidth

Synopsis: Width of the field in characters.

Declaration: `Property DisplayWidth : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayWidth` is the width (in characters) that should be used by controls that display the contents of the field (such as in grids or lookup lists). It is initialized to a default value for most fields (e.g. it equals `Size` (493) for string fields) but can be modified to obtain a more appropriate value for the field's expected content.

See also: `TField.Alignment` (495), `TField.DisplayText` (491)

14.33.64 TField.FieldKind

Synopsis: The kind of field.

Declaration: `Property FieldKind : TFieldKind`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FieldKind` indicates the type of the `TField` instance. Besides `TField` instances that represent fields present in the underlying data records, there can also be calculated or lookup fields. This property determines what kind of field the `TField` instance is.

14.33.65 TField.FieldName

Synopsis: Name of the field.

Declaration: `Property FieldName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FieldName` is the name of the field as it is defined in the underlying data structures (for instance the name of the field in a SQL table, DBase file, or the alias of the field if it was aliased in a SQL SELECT statement. It does not always equal the `Name` property, which is the name of the `TField` component instance. The `Name` property will generally equal the name of the dataset appended with the value of the `FieldName` property.

See also: `TFieldDef.Name` (503), `TField.Size` (493), `TField.DataType` (490)

14.33.66 TField.HasConstraints

Synopsis: Does the field have any constraints defined.

Declaration: `Property HasConstraints : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `HasConstraints` will contain `True` if one of the `CustomConstraint` (496) or `ImportedConstraint` (498) properties is set to a non-empty value.

See also: `CustomConstraint` (496), `ImportedConstraint` (498)

14.33.67 TField.Index

Synopsis: Index of the field in the list of fields.

Declaration: `Property Index : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Index` is the name of the field in the list of fields of a dataset. It is, in general, the (0-based) position of the field in the underlying data structures, but this need not always be so. The `TField.FieldNo` (492) property should be used for that.

See also: `TField.FieldNo` (492)

14.33.68 TField.ImportedConstraint

Synopsis: Constraint for the field value on the level of the underlying database.

Declaration: `Property ImportedConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `ImportedConstraint` contains any constraints that the underlying data engine imposes on the values of a field (usually in an SQL CONSTRAINT) clause. Whether this field is filled with appropriate data depends on the implementation of the `TDataset` (425) descendent.

See also: `TField.CustomConstraint` (496), `TDataset` (425), `TField.ConstraintErrorMessage` (496)

14.33.69 TField.KeyFields

Synopsis: Key fields to use when looking up a field value.

Declaration: `Property KeyFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeyFields` should contain a semi-colon separated list of field names from the lookupfield's dataset which will be matched to the fields enumerated in `LookupKeyFields` (499) in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (499) property.

See also: `LookupKeyFields` (499), `LookupDataset` (499)

14.33.70 TField.LookupCache

Synopsis: Should lookup values be cached.

Declaration: `Property LookupCache : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupCache` is by default `False`. If it is set to `True` then a list of key, value pairs will be created from the `LookupKeyFields` (499) in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (499) property. The list of key, value pairs is available through the `TField.LookupList` (495) property.

See also: `LookupKeyFields` (499), `LookupDataset` (499), `TField.LookupList` (495)

14.33.71 TField.LookupDataSet

Synopsis: Dataset with lookup values.

Declaration: `Property LookupDataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupDataset` is used by lookup fields to fetch the field's value. The `LookupKeyFields` (499) property is used as a list of fields to locate a record in this dataset, and the value of the `LookupResultField` (500) field is then used as the value of the lookup field.

See also: `KeyFields` (499), `LookupKeyFields` (499), `LookupResultField` (500), `LookupCache` (499)

14.33.72 TField.LookupKeyFields

Synopsis: Names of fields on which to perform a locate.

Declaration: `Property LookupKeyFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupKeyFields` should contain a semi-colon separated list of field names from the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (499) property. These fields will be used when locating a record corresponding to the values in the `TField.KeyFields` (499) property.

See also: `KeyFields` (499), `LookupDataset` (499), `LookupResultField` (500), `LookupCache` (499)

14.33.73 TField.LookupResultField

Synopsis: Name of field to use as lookup value.

Declaration: `Property LookupResultField : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupResultField` contains the field name from a field in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (499) property. The value of this field will be used as the lookup's field value when a record is found in the lookup dataset as result for the lookup field value.

See also: `KeyFields` (499), `LookupDataset` (499), `LookupKeyFields` (499), `LookupCache` (499)

14.33.74 TField.Lookup

Synopsis: Is the field a lookup field.

Declaration: `Property Lookup : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Lookup` is `True` if the `FieldKind` (497) equals `fkLookup`, `False` otherwise. Setting the `Lookup` property will switch the `FieldKind` between the `fkLookup` and `fkData`.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` (497)

14.33.75 TField.Origin

Synopsis: Original fieldname of the field.

Declaration: `Property Origin : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Origin` contains the origin of the field in the form `TableName.fieldName`. This property is filled only if the `TDataset` (425) descendent or the database engine support retrieval of this property. It can be used to automatically create update statements, together with the `TField.ProviderFlags` (501) property.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField.ProviderFlags` (501)

14.33.76 TField.ParentField

Declaration: `Property ParentField : TObjectField`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

14.33.77 TField.ProviderFlags

Synopsis: Flags for provider or update support.

Declaration: `Property ProviderFlags : TProviderFlags`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ProviderFlags` contains a set of flags that can be used by engines that automatically generate update SQL statements or update data packets. The various items in the set tell the engine whether the key is a key field, should be used in the where clause of an update statement or whether - in fact - it should be updated at all.

These properties should be set by the programmer so engines such as SQLDB can create correct update SQL statements whenever they need to post changes to the database. Note that to be able to set these properties in a designer, persistent fields must be created.

See also: `TField.Origin` ([500](#))

14.33.78 TField.ReadOnly

Synopsis: Is the field read-only.

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ReadOnly` can be set to `True` to prevent controls of writing data to the field, effectively making it a read-only field. Setting this property to `True` does not prevent the field from getting a value through code: it is just an indication for GUI controls that the field's value is considered read-only.

See also: `TFieldDef.Attributes` ([507](#))

14.33.79 TField.Required

Synopsis: Does the field require a value.

Declaration: `Property Required : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Required` determines whether the field needs a value when posting the data: when a dataset posts the changed made to a record (new or existing), it will check whether all fields with the `Required` property have a value assigned to them. If not, an exception will be raised. Descendents of `TDataset` ([425](#)) will set the property to `True` when opening the dataset, depending on whether the field is required in the underlying data engine. For fields that are not required by the database engine, the programmer can still set the property to `True` if the business logic requires a field.

See also: `TDataset.Open` ([443](#)), `ReadOnly` ([501](#)), `Visible` ([502](#))

14.33.80 TField.Visible

Synopsis: Should the field be shown in grids.

Declaration: `Property Visible : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Visible` can be used to hide fields from a grid when displaying data to the user. Invisible fields will by default not be shown in the grid.

See also: `TField.ReadOnly` (501), `TField.Required` (501)

14.33.81 TField.OnChange

Synopsis: Event triggered when the field's value has changed.

Declaration: `Property OnChange : TFieldNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnChange` is triggered whenever the field's value has been changed. It is triggered only after the new contents have been written to the dataset buffer, so it can be used to react to changes in the field's content. To prevent the writing of changes to the buffer, use the `TField.OnValidate` (503) event. It is not allowed to change the state of the dataset or the contents of the field during the execution of this event handler: doing so may lead to infinite loops and other unexpected results.

See also: `TField.OnChange` (502)

14.33.82 TField.OnGetText

Synopsis: Event to format the field's content.

Declaration: `Property OnGetText : TFieldGetTextEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnGetText` is triggered whenever the `TField.Text` (493) or `TField.DisplayText` (491) properties are read. It can be used to return a custom formatted string in the `AText` parameter which will then typically be used by a control to display the field's contents to the user. It is not allowed to change the state of the dataset or the contents of the field during the execution of this event handler.

See also: `TField.Text` (493), `TField.DisplayText` (491), `TField.OnSetText` (502), `TFieldGetTextEvent` (370)

14.33.83 TField.OnSetText

Synopsis: Event to set the field's content based on a user-formatted string.

Declaration: `Property OnSetText : TFieldSetTextEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnSetText` is called whenever the `TField.Text` ([493](#)) property is written. It can be used to set the actual value of the field based on the passed `AText` parameter. Typically, this event handler will perform the inverse operation of the `TField.OnGetText` ([502](#)) handler, if it exists.

See also: `TField.Text` ([493](#)), `TField.OnGetText` ([502](#)), `TField.GetTextEvent` ([370](#))

14.33.84 TField.OnValidate

Synopsis: Event to validate the value of a field before it is written to the data buffer.

Declaration: `Property OnValidate : TFieldNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnValidate` is called prior to writing a new field value to the dataset's data buffer. It can be used to prevent writing the new value to the buffer by raising an exception in the event handler. Note that this event handler is always called, irrespective of the way the value of the field is set.

See also: `TField.Text` ([493](#)), `TField.OnGetText` ([502](#)), `TField.OnSetText` ([502](#)), `TField.OnChange` ([502](#))

14.34 TFieldDef

14.34.1 Description

`TFieldDef` is used to describe the fields that are present in the data underlying the dataset. For each field in the underlying field, an `TFieldDef` instance is created when the dataset is opened. This class offers almost no methods, it is mainly a storage class, to store all relevant properties of fields in a record (name, data type, size, required or not, etc.)

See also: `TDataset.FieldDefs` ([449](#)), `TFieldDefs` ([509](#))

14.34.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
505	<code>AddChild</code>	
505	<code>Assign</code>	Assign the contents of one <code>TFieldDef</code> instance to another.
504	<code>Create</code>	Constructor for <code>TFieldDef</code> .
505	<code>CreateField</code>	Create <code>TField</code> instance based on definitions in current <code>TFieldDef</code> instance.
504	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TFieldDef</code> instance.
505	<code>HasChildDefs</code>	

14.34.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
507	Attributes	rw	Additional attributes of the field.
506	CharSize	r	Character size.
508	ChildDefs	rws	
507	Codepage	r	System code page for the values in string and wide string field types.
508	DataType	rw	Data type for the field.
505	FieldClass	r	TField class used for this fielddef.
506	FieldNo	r	Field number.
506	InternalCalcField	rw	Is this a definition of an internally calculated field ?
507	ParentDef	r	
508	Precision	rw	Precision used in BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) fields.
507	Required	rw	Is the field required ?
508	Size	rw	Size of the buffer needed to store the data of the field.

14.34.4 TFieldDef.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for TFieldDef.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Override`
`constructor Create(AOwner: TFieldDefs; const AName: string;`
`ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Integer;`
`ARequired: Boolean; AFieldNo: LongInt;`
`ACodePage: TSystemCodePage); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the constructor for the `TFieldDef` class.

If a simple call is used, with a single argument `ACollection`, the inherited `Create` is called and the Field number is set to the incremented current index.

If the more complicated call is used, with multiple arguments, then after the inherited `Create` call, the Name ([503](#)), datatype ([508](#)), size ([508](#)), precision ([508](#)), FieldNo ([506](#)), Required ([507](#)) and CodePage ([507](#)) property are all set according to the passed arguments.

Errors: If a duplicate name is passed, then an exception will occur.

See also: Name ([503](#)), datatype ([508](#)), size ([508](#)), precision ([508](#)), FieldNo ([506](#)), Required ([507](#)), CodePage ([507](#))

14.34.5 TFieldDef.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TFieldDef instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` destroys the `TFieldDef` instance. It simply calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TFieldDef.Create` ([504](#))

14.34.6 TFieldDef.AddChild

Declaration: `function AddChild : TFieldDef`

Visibility: `public`

14.34.7 TFieldDef.Assign

Synopsis: Assign the contents of one TFieldDef instance to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(APersistent: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Assign assigns all published properties of APersistent to the current instance, if APersistent is an instance of class TFieldDef.

Errors: If APersistent is not of class TFieldDef (503), then an exception will be raised.

14.34.8 TFieldDef.CreateField

Synopsis: Create TField instance based on definitions in current TFieldDef instance.

Declaration: `function CreateField(AOwner: TComponent; ParentField: TObjectField;
const FieldName: string; CreateChildren: Boolean)
: TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: CreateField determines, based on the DataType (508) what TField (477) descendent it should create, and then returns a newly created instance of this class. It sets the appropriate defaults for the Size (493), FieldName (497), FieldNo (492), Precision (477), ReadOnly (501) and Required (501) properties of the newly created instance. It should never be necessary to use this call in an end-user program, only TDataSet descendent classes should use this call.

The newly created field is owned by the component instance passed in the AOwner parameter.

The DefaultFieldClasses (362) array is used to determine which TField Descendent class should be used when creating the TField instance, but descendents of TDataSet may override the values in that array.

See also: DefaultFieldClasses (362), TField (477)

14.34.9 TFieldDef.HasChildDefs

Declaration: `function HasChildDefs : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

14.34.10 TFieldDef.FieldClass

Synopsis: TField class used for this fielddef.

Declaration: `Property FieldClass : TFieldClass`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FieldClass` is the class of the `TField` instance that is created by the `CreateField` (505) class. The return value is retrieved from the `TDataset` instance the `TFieldDef` instance is associated with. If there is no `TDataset` instance available, the return value is `Nil`

See also: `TDataset` (425), `CreateField` (505), `TField` (477)

14.34.11 TFieldDef.FieldNo

Synopsis: Field number.

Declaration: `Property FieldNo : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldNo` is the number of the field in the data structure where the dataset contents comes from, for instance in a DBase file. If the underlying data layer does not support the concept of field number, a sequential number is assigned.

14.34.12 TFieldDef.CharSize

Synopsis: Character size.

Declaration: `Property CharSize : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CharSize` is only relevant for string fields: it indicates the number of bytes used to represent a single character. It is calculated from the `TFieldDef.CodePage` (507) property and can have the following values:

- 1 for single-byte string fields
- 2 for UnicodeString fields
- 4 for UTF8 strings

See also: `TFieldDef.CodePage` (507), `TFieldDef.Size` (508)

14.34.13 TFieldDef.InternalCalcField

Synopsis: Is this a definition of an internally calculated field ?

Declaration: `Property InternalCalcField : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `InternalCalc` is `True` if the `fielddef` instance represents an internally calculated field: for internally calculated fields, storage must be provided by the underlying data mechanism.

14.34.14 TFieldDef.ParentDef

Declaration: `Property ParentDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

14.34.15 TFieldDef.Required

Synopsis: Is the field required ?

Declaration: `Property Required : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Required` is set to `True` if the field requires a value when posting data to the dataset. If no value was entered, the dataset will raise an exception when the record is posted. The `Required` property is usually initialized based on the definition of the field in the underlying database. For SQL-based databases, a field declared as `NOT NULL` will result in a `Required` property of `True`.

14.34.16 TFieldDef.Codepage

Synopsis: System code page for the values in string and wide string field types.

Declaration: `Property Codepage : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Codepage` is a read-only `TSystemCodePage` property with the system code page used for values in the field. The value in `CodePage` is assigned in the overloaded constructor which includes a `TSystemCodePage` argument. `CodePage` is relevant for string or wide string field types, and uses the following values:

ftString, ftFixedChar, ftMemo Uses the value passed in the argument. The default value is 0.

ftWideString, ftFixedWideChar, ftWideMemo Use the value in the `CP_UTF16` constant.

Other non-string field types Uses the value 0 in `Codepage`.

See also: `TFieldDef.Create` ([504](#)), `TFieldDef.DataType` ([508](#))

14.34.17 TFieldDef.Attributes

Synopsis: Additional attributes of the field.

Declaration: `Property Attributes : TFieldAttributes`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Attributes` contain additional attributes of the field. It shares the `faRequired` attribute with the `Required` property.

See also: `TFieldDef.Required` ([507](#))

14.34.18 TFieldDef.DataType

Synopsis: Data type for the field.

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DataType` contains the data type of the field's contents. Based on this property, the `FieldClass` property determines what kind of field class must be used to represent this field.

See also: `TFieldDef.FieldClass` ([505](#)), `TFieldDef.CreateField` ([505](#))

14.34.19 TFieldDef.ChildDefs

Declaration: `Property ChildDefs : TFieldDefs`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

14.34.20 TFieldDef.Precision

Synopsis: Precision used in BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) fields.

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the number of digits used in a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) field. It is not the number of digits after the decimal separator, but the total number of digits.

See also: `TFieldDef.Size` ([508](#))

14.34.21 TFieldDef.Size

Synopsis: Size of the buffer needed to store the data of the field.

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Size` indicates the size of the buffer needed to hold data for the field. For types with a fixed size (such as integer, word or data/time) the size can be zero: the buffer mechanism reserves automatically enough heap memory. For types which can have various sizes (blobs, string types), the `Size` property tells the buffer mechanism how many bytes are needed to hold the data for the field. For BCD fields, the size property indicates the number of decimals after the decimal separator.

See also: `TFieldDef.Precision` ([508](#)), `TFieldDef.DataType` ([508](#))

14.35 TFieldDefs

14.35.1 Description

`TFieldDefs` is used by each `TDataset` instance to keep a description of the data that it manages; for each field in a record that makes up the underlying data, the `TFieldDefs` instance keeps an instance of `TFieldDef` that describes the field's contents. For any internally calculated fields of the dataset, a `TFieldDef` instance is kept as well. This collection is filled by descendent classes of `TDataset` as soon as the dataset is opened; it is cleared when the dataset closes. After the collection was populated, the dataset creates `TField` instances based on all the definitions in the collections. If persistent fields were used, the contents of the `fielddefs` collection is compared to the field components that are present in the dataset. If the collection contains more field definitions than field components, these extra fields will not be available in the dataset.

See also: `TFieldDef` ([503](#)), `TDataset` ([425](#))

14.35.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
509	<code>Add</code>	Add a new field definition to the collection.
510	<code>AddFieldDef</code>	Add new <code>TFieldDef</code> .
510	<code>Assign</code>	Copy all items from one dataset to another.
509	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TFieldDefs</code> .
510	<code>Find</code>	Find item by name.
511	<code>MakeNameUnique</code>	Create a unique field name starting from a base name.
511	<code>Update</code>	Force update of definitions.

14.35.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
511	<code>HiddenFields</code>	rw	Should field instances be created for hidden fields.
511	<code>Items</code>	rw	Indexed access to the <code>fielddef</code> instances.
512	<code>ParentDef</code>	r	

14.35.4 TFieldDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFieldDefs`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is used to create a new instance of `TFieldDefs`. The `ADataset` argument contains the dataset instance for which the collection contains the field definitions.

See also: `TFieldDef` ([503](#)), `TDataset` ([425](#))

14.35.5 TFieldDefs.Add

Synopsis: Add a new field definition to the collection.

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType;
ASize: Integer; APrecision: Integer; ARequired: Boolean;
AReadOnly: Boolean; AFieldNo: Integer;`

```

        ACodePage: TSystemCodePage) : TFieldDef; Overload
function Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Word;
        ARequired: Boolean; AFieldNo: Integer) : TFieldDef
        ; Overload
procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Word;
        ARequired: Boolean); Overload
procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Word)
        ; Overload
procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType); Overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new item to the collection and fills in the Name, DataType, Size and Required properties of the newly added item with the provided parameters.

Errors: If an item with name AName already exists in the collection, then an exception will be raised.

See also: TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef ([510](#))

14.35.6 TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef

Synopsis: Add new TFieldDef.

Declaration: function AddFieldDef : TFieldDef

Visibility: public

Description: AddFieldDef creates a new TFieldDef item and returns the instance.

See also: TFieldDefs.Add ([509](#))

14.35.7 TFieldDefs.Assign

Synopsis: Copy all items from one dataset to another.

Declaration: procedure Assign(FieldDefs: TFieldDefs); Overload

Visibility: public

Description: Assign simply calls inherited Assign with the FieldDefs argument.

See also: TFieldDef.Assign ([505](#))

14.35.8 TFieldDefs.Find

Synopsis: Find item by name.

Declaration: function Find(const AName: string) : TFieldDef

Visibility: public

Description: Find simply calls the inherited TDefCollection.Find ([474](#)) to find an item with name AName and typecasts the result to TFieldDef.

See also: TDefCollection.Find ([474](#)), TNamedItem.Name ([542](#))

14.35.9 TFieldDefs.Update

Synopsis: Force update of definitions.

Declaration: `procedure Update; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Update` notifies the dataset that the field definitions are updated, if it was not yet notified.

See also: `TDefCollection.Updated` ([475](#))

14.35.10 TFieldDefs.MakeNameUnique

Synopsis: Create a unique field name starting from a base name.

Declaration: `function MakeNameUnique(const AName: string) : string; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MakeNameUnique` uses `AName` to construct a name of a field that is not yet in the collection. If `AName` is not yet in the collection, then `AName` is returned. If a field definition with field name equal to `AName` already exists, then a new name is constructed by appending a sequence number to `AName` till the resulting name does not appear in the list of field definitions.

See also: `TFieldDefs.Find` ([510](#)), `TFieldDef.Name` ([503](#))

14.35.11 TFieldDefs.HiddenFields

Synopsis: Should field instances be created for hidden fields.

Declaration: `Property HiddenFields : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HiddenFields` determines whether a field is created for fielddefs that have the `faHiddenCol` attribute set. If set to `False` (the default) then no `TField` instances will be created for hidden fields. If it is set to `True`, then a `TField` instance will be created for hidden fields.

See also: `TFieldDef.Attributes` ([507](#))

14.35.12 TFieldDefs.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fielddef instances.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: LongInt]: TFieldDef; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` provides zero-based indexed access to all `TFieldDef` instances in the collection. The index must vary between 0 and `Count-1`, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFieldDef` ([503](#))

14.35.13 TFieldDefs.ParentDef

Declaration: `Property ParentDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

14.36 TFields

14.36.1 Description

`TFields` mimics a `TCollection` class for the `Fields` (452) property of `TDataset` (425) instance. Since `TField` (477) is a descendent of `TComponent`, it cannot be an item of a collection, and must be managed by another class.

See also: `TField` (477), `TDataset` (425), `TDataset.Fields` (452)

14.36.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
513	<code>Add</code>	Add a new field to the list.
513	<code>CheckFieldName</code>	Check field name for duplicate entries.
513	<code>CheckFieldNames</code>	Check a list of field names for duplicate entries.
514	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the list of fields.
512	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TFields</code> .
513	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TFields</code> instance.
514	<code>FieldByName</code>	Find a field based on its name.
514	<code>FieldByNumber</code>	Search field based on its fieldnumber.
514	<code>FindField</code>	Find a field based on its name.
515	<code>GetEnumerator</code>	Return an enumerator for the <code>for..in</code> construct.
515	<code>GetFieldNames</code>	Get the list of fieldnames.
515	<code>IndexOf</code>	Return the index of a field instance.
515	<code>Remove</code>	Remove an instance from the list.

14.36.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
516	<code>Count</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of fields in the list.
516	<code>Dataset</code>	<code>r</code>	Dataset the fields belong to.
516	<code>Fields</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to the fields in the list.

14.36.4 TFields.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFields`.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ADataset: TDataset)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TFields`. It stores the `ADataset` parameter, so it can be retrieved at any time in the `TFields.Dataset` (516) property, and initializes an internal list object to store the list of fields.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TFields.Dataset` (516), `TField` (477)

14.36.5 TFields.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TFields instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the field instances that it manages on behalf of the Dataset (516). After that it cleans up the internal structures and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: TDataSet (425), TField (477), TFields.Clear (514)

14.36.6 TFields.Add

Synopsis: Add a new field to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(Field: TField)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` must be used to add a new TField (477) instance to the list of fields. After a TField instance is added to the list, the TFields instance will free the field instance if it is cleared.

See also: TField (477), TFields.Clear (514)

14.36.7 TFields.CheckFieldName

Synopsis: Check field name for duplicate entries.

Declaration: `procedure CheckFieldName(const Value: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckFieldName` checks whether a field with name equal to `Value` (case insensitive) already appears in the list of fields (using `TFields.Find` (512)). If it does, then an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception is raised.

See also: TField.FieldName (497), TFields.Find (512)

14.36.8 TFields.CheckFieldNames

Synopsis: Check a list of field names for duplicate entries.

Declaration: `procedure CheckFieldNames(const Value: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckFieldNames` splits `Value` in a list of fieldnames, using semicolon as a separator. For each of the fieldnames obtained in this way, it calls `CheckFieldName` (513).

Errors: Spaces are not discarded, so leaving a space after or before a fieldname will not find the fieldname, and will yield a false negative result.

See also: TField.FieldName (497), TFields.CheckFieldName (513), TFields.Find (512)

14.36.9 TFields.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list of fields.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all `TField` (477) var instances from the list. All field instances are freed after they have been removed from the list.

See also: `TField` (477)

14.36.10 TFields.FindField

Synopsis: Find a field based on its name.

Declaration: `function FindField(const Value: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindField` searches the list of fields and returns the field instance whose `FieldName` (497) property matches `Value`. The search is performed case-insensitively. If no field instance is found, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldName` (514)

14.36.11 TFields.FieldByName

Synopsis: Find a field based on its name.

Declaration: `function FieldByName(const Value: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Fieldbyname` searches the list of fields and returns the field instance whose `FieldName` (497) property matches `Value`. The search is performed case-insensitively.

Errors: If no field instance is found, then an exception is raised. If this behaviour is undesired, use `TField.FindField` (477), where `Nil` is returned if no match is found.

See also: `TFields.FindField` (514), `TFields.FieldName` (512), `TFields.FieldByNumber` (514), `TFields.IndexOf` (515)

14.36.12 TFields.FieldByNumber

Synopsis: Search field based on its fieldnumber.

Declaration: `function FieldByNumber(FieldNo: Integer) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FieldByNumber` searches for the field whose `TField.FieldNo` (492) property matches the `FieldNo` parameter. If no such field is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldName` (514), `TFields.FindField` (514), `TFields.IndexOf` (515)

14.36.13 TFields.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator for the `for .. in` construct.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFieldsEnumerator`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of `IEnumerable` and returns an instance of `TFieldsEnumerator` ([516](#))

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator` ([516](#)), `#rtl.system.IEnumerable` ([??](#))

14.36.14 TFields.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Get the list of fieldnames.

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(Values: TStrings)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetFieldNames` fills `Values` with the fieldnames of all the fields in the list, each item in the list contains 1 fieldname. The list is cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `TField.FieldName` ([497](#))

14.36.15 TFields.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of a field instance.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Field: TField) : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOf` scans the list of fields and returns the index of the field instance in the list (it compares actual field instances, not field names). If the field does not appear in the list, -1 is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` ([514](#)), `TFields.FieldByNumber` ([514](#)), `TFields.FindField` ([514](#))

14.36.16 TFields.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an instance from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(Value: TField)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` removes the field `Value` from the list. It does not free the field after it was removed. If the field is not in the list, then nothing happens.

See also: `TFields.Clear` ([514](#))

14.36.17 TFields.Count

Synopsis: Number of fields in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the number of fields in the fieldlist. The items in the `Fields` (516) property are numbered from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TFields.fields` (516)

14.36.18 TFields.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset the fields belong to.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset instance that owns the fieldlist. It is set when the `TFields` (512) instance is created. This property is purely for informational purposes. When adding fields to the list, no check is performed whether the field's `Dataset` property matches this dataset.

See also: `TFields.Create` (512), `TField.Dataset` (490), `TDataSet` (425)

14.36.19 TFields.Fields

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fields in the list.

Declaration: `Property Fields[Index: Integer]: TField; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Fields` is the default property of the `TFields` class. It provides indexed access to the fields in the list: the index runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

Errors: Providing an index outside the allowed range will result in an `EListError` exception.

See also: `TFields.FieldName` (514)

14.37 TFieldsEnumerator

14.37.1 Description

`TFieldsEnumerator` implements all the methods of `IEnumerator` so a `TFields` (512) instance can be used in a `for..in` construct. `TFieldsEnumerator` returns all the fields in the `TFields` collection. Therefore the following construct is possible:

```

Var
  F : TField;

begin
  // ...
  For F in MyDataset.Fields do
    begin
      // F is of type TField.
    end;
  // ...

```

Do not create an instance of `TFieldsEnumerator` manually. The compiler will do all that is needed when it encounters the `for..in` construct.

See also: `TField` ([477](#)), `TFields` ([512](#)), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` ([??](#))

14.37.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
517	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TFieldsEnumerator</code> .
517	MoveNext	Move the current field to the next field in the collection.

14.37.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
518	Current	r	Return the current field.

14.37.4 TFieldsEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFieldsEnumerator`.

Declaration: `constructor Create (AFields: TFields)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TFieldsEnumerator`. It stores the `AFields` reference, pointing to the `TFields` ([512](#)) instance that created the enumerator. It initializes the enumerator position.

14.37.5 TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the current field to the next field in the collection.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` moves the internal pointer to the next field in the fields collection, and returns `True` if the operation was a success. If no more fields are available, then `False` is returned.

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator.Current` ([518](#))

14.37.6 TFieldsEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Return the current field.

Declaration: `Property Current : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` returns the current field. It will return a non-nil value only after `MoveNext` returned `True`.

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext` ([517](#))

14.38 TFloatField

14.38.1 Description

`TFloatField` is the class created when a dataset must manage floating point values of double precision. It exposes a few new properties such as `Currency` ([519](#)), `MaxValue` ([519](#)), `MinValue` ([520](#)) and overrides some `TField` ([477](#)) methods to work with floating point data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TFloatField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each floating-point field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `Currency` ([519](#)), `MaxValue` ([519](#)), `MinValue` ([520](#))

14.38.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
519	<code>CheckRange</code>	Check whether a value is in the allowed range of values for the field.
518	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TFloatField</code> .

14.38.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
519	<code>Currency</code>	<code>rw</code>	Is the field a currency field.
519	<code>MaxValue</code>	<code>rw</code>	Maximum value for the field.
520	<code>MinValue</code>	<code>rw</code>	Minimum value for the field.
520	<code>Precision</code>	<code>rw</code>	Precision (number of digits) of the field in text representations.
519	<code>Value</code>	<code>rw</code>	Value of the field as a double type.

14.38.4 TFloatField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TFloatField`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TFloatField`. It calls the inherited constructor and then initializes some properties.

14.38.5 TFloatField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a value is in the allowed range of values for the field.

Declaration: `function CheckRange (AValue: Double) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` (520) and `MaxValue` (519) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` (519), `MinValue` (520)

14.38.6 TFloatField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a double type.

Declaration: `Property Value : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TFloatField` to return a value of type `Double`. It returns the same value as `TField.AsFloat` (485)

See also: `TField.AsFloat` (485), `TField.Value` (494)

14.38.7 TFloatField.Currency

Synopsis: Is the field a currency field.

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Currency` can be set to `True` to indicate that the field contains data representing an amount of currency. This affects the way the `TField.DisplayText` (491) and `TField.Text` (493) properties format the value of the field: if the `Currency` property is `True`, then these properties will format the value as a currency value (generally appending the currency sign) and if the `Currency` property is `False`, then they will format it as a normal floating-point value.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` (491), `TField.Text` (493), `TNumericField.DisplayFormat` (543), `TNumericField.EditFormat` (544)

14.38.8 TFloatField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Double`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaxValue` can be set to a value different from zero, it is then the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` (520) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TFloatField.MinValue` (520)

14.38.9 TFloatField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : Double`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` can be set to a value different from zero, then it is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `MaxValue` (519) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TFloatField.MaxValue` (519), `TFloatField.CheckRange` (519)

14.38.10 TFloatField.Precision

Synopsis: Precision (number of digits) of the field in text representations.

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the maximum number of digits that should be used when the field is converted to a textual representation in `TField.Displaytext` (491) or `TField.Text` (493), it is used in the arguments to `FormatFloat` (??).

See also: `TField.Displaytext` (491), `TField.Text` (493), `FormatFloat` (??)

14.39 TFMTBCDField

14.39.1 Description

`TFMTBCDField` is the field created when a data type of `ftFMTBCD` is encountered. It represents usually a fixed-precision floating point data type (BCD : Binary Coded Decimal data) such as the `DECIMAL` or `NUMERIC` field types in an SQL database.

See also: `TFloatField` (518)

14.39.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
521	CheckRange	Check value if it is in the range defined by MinValue and MaxValue.
521	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TFMTBCDField</code> class.

14.39.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
522	Currency	rw	Does the field contain currency data ?
522	MaxValue	rw	Maximum value for the field.
522	MinValue	rw	Minimum value for the field.
522	Precision	rw	Total number of digits in the BCD data.
523	Size		Number of digits after the decimal point.
521	Value	rw	The value of the field as a BCD value.

14.39.4 TFMTBCDField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TFMTBCDField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TFMTBCDField` class: it sets the `MinValue` ([361](#)), `MaxValue` ([361](#)), `Size` ([493](#)) (15) and `Precision` ([361](#)) (2) fields to their default values.

See also: `MinValue` ([361](#)), `MaxValue` ([361](#)), `Size` ([493](#)), `Precision` ([361](#))

14.39.5 TFMTBCDField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check value if it is in the range defined by `MinValue` and `MaxValue`.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: TBCD) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` checks whether `AValue` is between `MinValue` ([361](#)) and `MaxValue` ([361](#)) if they are both nonzero. If either of them is zero, then `True` is returned. The `MinValue` and `MaxValue` values themselves are also valid values.

See also: `MinValue` ([361](#)), `MaxValue` ([361](#))

14.39.6 TFMTBCDField.Value

Synopsis: The value of the field as a BCD value.

Declaration: `Property Value : TBCD`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is the value of the field as a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value.

See also: `TField.AsFloat` ([485](#)), `TField.AsCurrency` ([484](#))

14.39.7 TFMTBCDField.Precision

Synopsis: Total number of digits in the BCD data.

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the total number of digits in the BCD data. The maximum precision is 32.

See also: `TField.AsFloat` (485), `TField.AsCurrency` (484), `Size` (361)

14.39.8 TFMTBCDField.Currency

Synopsis: Does the field contain currency data ?

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Currency` determines how the textual representation of the data is formatted. It has no influence on the actual data itself. If `True` it is represented as a currency (monetary value). If `DisplayFormat` (477) or `EditFormat` (477) are set, these values are used instead to format the value.

See also: `TField.DisplayFormat` (477), `TField.EditFormat` (477)

14.39.9 TFMTBCDField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` can be set to a nonzero value to indicate the maximum value the field may contain. It must be set together with `MinValue` (361) or it will not have any effect.

See also: `TFMTBCDField.CheckRange` (521), `MinValue` (361)

14.39.10 TFMTBCDField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` can be set to a nonzero value to indicate the maximum value the field may contain. It must be set together with `MaxValue` (361) or it will not have any effect.

See also: `TFMTBCDField.CheckRange` (521), `MaxValue` (361)

14.39.11 TFMTBCDField.Size

Synopsis: Number of digits after the decimal point.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Size` is the maximum number of digits allowed after the decimal point. Together with the `Precision` (361) property it determines the maximum allowed range of values for the field. This range can be restricted using the `MinValue` (361) and `MaxValue` (361) properties.

See also: `MinValue` (361), `MaxValue` (361), `Precision` (361)

14.40 TGraphicField

14.40.1 Description

`TGraphicField` is the class used when a dataset must manage graphical BLOB data. (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftGraphic`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (477) class. All methods to be able to work with graphical BLOB data have been implemented in the `TBlobField` (400) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TGraphicsField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each graphical BLOB field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField` (477), `TBLOBField` (400), `TMemoField` (540), `TWideMemoField` (573)

14.40.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
523	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TGraphicField</code> class.

14.40.3 TGraphicField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TGraphicField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TGraphicField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (477) properties to configure the instance for working with graphical BLOB values.

See also: `TField` (477)

14.41 TGUIDField

14.41.1 Description

`TGUIDField` is the class used when a dataset must manage native variant-typed data. (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftGUID`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (477) class and overrides

some of its methods to be able to work with variant data. It also adds a method to retrieve the field value as a native TGUID type.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TGUIDField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each GUID field when a dataset is opened.

See also: TDataset (425), TField (477), TGuidField.AsGuid (524)

14.41.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
524	Create	Create a new instance of the TGUIDField class.

14.41.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
524	AsGuid	rw	Field content as a GUID value.

14.41.4 TGuidField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TGUIDField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TGUIDField class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some TField (477) properties to configure the instance for working with GUID values.

See also: TField (477)

14.41.5 TGuidField.AsGuid

Synopsis: Field content as a GUID value.

Declaration: `Property AsGuid : TGUID`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AsGUID can be used to get or set the field's content as a value of type TGUID.

See also: TField.AsString (487)

14.42 TIndexDef

14.42.1 Description

TIndexDef describes one index in a set of indexes of a TDataset (425) instance. The collection of indexes is described by the TIndexDefs (527) class. It just has the necessary properties to describe an index, but does not implement any functionality to maintain an index.

See also: TIndexDefs (527)

14.42.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
525	Create	Create a new index definition.

14.42.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
526	CaseInsFields	rw	Fields in field list that are ordered case-insensitively.
526	DescFields	rw	Fields in field list that are ordered descending.
525	Expression	rw	Expression that makes up the index values.
525	Fields	rw	Fields making up the index.
526	Options	rw	Index options.
527	Source	rw	Source of the index.

14.42.4 TIndexDef.Create

Synopsis: Create a new index definition.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Owner: TIndexDefs; const AName: string;
const TheFields: string; TheOptions: TIndexOptions)
; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TIndexDef` ([524](#)) instance with the `AName` value as the index name, `AField` as the fields making up the index, and `TheOptions` as the options. `Owner` should be the `TIndexDefs` ([527](#)) instance to which the new `TIndexDef` can be added.

Errors: If an index with name `AName` already exists in the collection, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TIndexDefs` ([527](#)), `TIndexDef.Options` ([526](#)), `TIndexDef.Fields` ([525](#))

14.42.5 TIndexDef.Expression

Synopsis: Expression that makes up the index values.

Declaration: `Property Expression : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Expression` is an SQL expression based on which the index values are computed. It is only used when `ixExpression` is in `TIndexDef.Options` ([526](#))

See also: `TIndexDef.Options` ([526](#)), `TindexDef.Fields` ([525](#))

14.42.6 TIndexDef.Fields

Synopsis: Fields making up the index.

Declaration: `Property Fields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Fields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons: the fields that make up the index, in case the index is not based on an expression. The list contains the names of all fields, regardless of whether the sort order for a particular field is ascending or descending. The fields should be in the right order, i.e. the first field is sorted on first, and so on.

The `TIndexDef.DescFields` (526) property can be used to determine the fields in the list that have a descending sort order. The `TIndexDef.CaseInsFields` (526) property determines which fields are sorted in a case-insensitive manner.

See also: `TIndexDef.DescFields` (526), `TIndexDef.CaseInsFields` (526), `TIndexDef.Expression` (525)

14.42.7 TIndexDef.CaseInsFields

Synopsis: Fields in field list that are ordered case-insensitively.

Declaration: `Property CaseInsFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CaseInsFields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons. It contains the names of the fields in the `Fields` (525) property which are ordered in a case-insensitive manner. `CaseInsFields` may not contain fieldnames that do not appear in `Fields`.

See also: `TIndexDef.Fields` (525), `TIndexDef.Expression` (525), `TIndexDef.DescFields` (526)

14.42.8 TIndexDef.DescFields

Synopsis: Fields in field list that are ordered descending.

Declaration: `Property DescFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DescFields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons. It contains the names of the fields in the `Fields` (525) property which are ordered in a descending manner. `DescFields` may not contain fieldnames that do not appear in `Fields`.

See also: `TIndexDef.Fields` (525), `TIndexDef.Expression` (525), `TIndexDef.DescFields` (526)

14.42.9 TIndexDef.Options

Synopsis: Index options.

Declaration: `Property Options : TIndexOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` describes the various properties of the index. This is usually filled by the dataset that provides the index definitions. For datasets that provide In-memory indexes, this should be set prior to creating the index: it cannot be changed once the index is created.

See the description of `TIndexOption` (375) for more information on the various available options.

See also: `TIndexOptions` (375)

14.42.10 TIndexDef.Source

Synopsis: Source of the index.

Declaration: `Property Source : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Source` describes where the index comes from. This is a property for the convenience of the various datasets that provide indexes: they can use it to describe the source of the index.

14.43 TIndexDefs

14.43.1 Description

`TIndexDefs` is used to keep a collection of index (sort order) definitions. It can be used by classes that provide in-memory or on-disk indexes to provide a list of available indexes.

See also: `TIndexDef` ([524](#)), `TIndexDefs.Items` ([529](#))

14.43.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
528	<code>Add</code>	Add a new index definition with given name and options.
528	<code>AddIndexDef</code>	Add a new, empty, index definition.
527	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TIndexDefs</code> instance.
528	<code>Find</code>	Find an index by name.
528	<code>FindIndexForFields</code>	Find index definition based on field names.
529	<code>GetIndexForFields</code>	Get index definition based on field names.
529	<code>Update</code>	Called whenever one of the items changes.

14.43.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
529	<code>Items</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to the index definitions.

14.43.4 TIndexDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TIndexDefs` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet); Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TIndexDefs` class. It simply calls the inherited destructor with the appropriate item class, `TIndexDef` ([524](#)).

See also: `TIndexDef` ([524](#)), `TIndexDefs.Destroy` ([527](#))

14.43.5 TIndexDefs.Add

Synopsis: Add a new index definition with given name and options.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const Name: string; const Fields: string;
Options: TIndexOptions); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new `TIndexDef` (524) instance to the list of indexes. It initializes the index definition properties `Name`, `Fields` and `Options` with the values given in the parameters with the same names.

Errors: If an index with the same `Name` already exists in the list of indexes, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TIndexDef` (524), `TNamedItem.Name` (542), `TIndexDef.Fields` (525), `TIndexDef.Options` (526), `TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef` (528)

14.43.6 TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef

Synopsis: Add a new, empty, index definition.

Declaration: `function AddIndexDef : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddIndexDef` adds a new `TIndexDef` (524) instance to the list of indexes, and returns the newly created instance. It does not initialize any of the properties of the new index definition.

See also: `TIndexDefs.Add` (528)

14.43.7 TIndexDefs.Find

Synopsis: Find an index by name.

Declaration: `function Find(const IndexName: string) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` overloads the `TDefCollection.Find` (474) method to search and return a `TIndexDef` (524) instance based on the name. The search is case-insensitive and raises an exception if no matching index definition was found. Note: `TIndexDefs.IndexOf` can be used instead if an exception is not desired.

See also: `TIndexDef` (524), `TDefCollection.Find` (474), `TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields` (528)

14.43.8 TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields

Synopsis: Find index definition based on field names.

Declaration: `function FindIndexForFields(const Fields: string) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexForFields` searches in the list of indexes for an index whose `TIndexDef.Fields` (525) property matches the list of fields in `Fields`. If it finds an index definition, then it returns the found instance.

Errors: If no matching definition is found, an exception is raised. This is different from other `Find` functionality, where `Find` usually returns `Nil` if nothing is found.

See also: `TIndexDef` (524), `TIndexDefs.Find` (528), `TIndexDefs.GetindexForFields` (529)

14.43.9 TIndexDefs.GetIndexForFields

Synopsis: Get index definition based on field names.

Declaration: `function GetIndexForFields(const Fields: string;
CaseInsensitive: Boolean) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetIndexForFields` searches in the list of indexes for an index whose `TIndexDef.Fields` (525) property matches the list of fields in `Fields`. If `CaseInsensitive` is `True` it only searches for case-sensitive indexes. If it finds an index definition, then it returns the found instance. If it does not find a matching definition, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TIndexDef` (524), `TIndexDefs.Find` (528), `TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields` (528)

14.43.10 TIndexDefs.Update

Synopsis: Called whenever one of the items changes.

Declaration: `procedure Update; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Update` can be called to have the dataset update its index definitions.

14.43.11 TIndexDefs.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the index definitions.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIndexDef; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is redefined by `TIndexDefs` using `TIndexDef` as the type for the elements. It is the default property of the `TIndexDefs` class.

See also: `TIndexDef` (524)

14.44 TIntegerField

14.44.1 Description

`TIntegerField` is an alias for `TLongintField` (531).

See also: `TLongintField` (531), `TField` (477)

14.45 TLargeintField

14.45.1 Description

`TLargeIntField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 64-bit signed data: the data type `ftLargeInt`. It overrides some methods of `TField` (477) to handle `int64` data, and

sets some of the properties to values for int64 data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to 64-bit integer data such as `MinValue` (531) and `MaxValue` (531).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TLargeIntField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each int64 field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (477), `MinValue` (531), `MaxValue` (531)

14.45.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
530	<code>CheckRange</code>	Check whether a values falls within the allowed range.
530	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TLargeIntField</code> class.

14.45.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
531	<code>MaxValue</code>	rw	Maximum value for the field.
531	<code>MinValue</code>	rw	Minimum value for the field.
530	<code>Value</code>	rw	Field contents as a 64-bit integer value.

14.45.4 TLargeIntField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TLargeIntField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TLargeIntField` class: it calls the inherited constructor and then initializes the various properties of `Tfield` (477) and `MinValue` (531) and `MaxValue` (531).

See also: `TField` (477), `MinValue` (531), `MaxValue` (531)

14.45.5 TLargeIntField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a values falls within the allowed range.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: LargeInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` (531) and `MaxValue` (531) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` (531), `MinValue` (531)

14.45.6 TLargeIntField.Value

Synopsis: Field contents as a 64-bit integer value.

Declaration: `Property Value : LargeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Value is redefined by `TLargeIntField` as a 64-bit integer value. It returns the same value as `TField.AsLargeInt` (486).

See also: `TField.Value` (494), `TField.AsLargeInt` (486)

14.45.7 TLargeIntField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : LargeInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` is the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` (531) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TLargeIntField.MinValue` (531)

14.45.8 TLargeIntField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : LargeInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `MaxValue` (531) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TLargeIntField.MaxValue` (531)

14.46 TLongintField

14.46.1 Description

`TLongintField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 32-bit signed data: the data type `ftInteger`. It overrides some methods of `TField` (477) to handle integer data, and sets some of the properties to values for integer data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as `MinValue` (533) and `MaxValue` (533).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TLongintField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (477), `MaxValue` (533), `MinValue` (533)

14.46.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
532	CheckRange	Check whether a valid is in the allowed range of values for the field.
532	Create	Create a new instance of TLongintField.

14.46.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
533	MaxValue	rw	Maximum value for the field.
533	MinValue	rw	Minimum value for the field.
532	Value	rw	Value of the field as longint.

14.46.4 TLongintField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TLongintField.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TLongintField. After calling the inherited constructor, it initializes the `MinValue` ([533](#)) and `MaxValue` ([533](#)) properties.

See also: TField ([477](#)), `MaxValue` ([533](#)), `MinValue` ([533](#))

14.46.5 TLongintField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a valid is in the allowed range of values for the field.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` ([533](#)) and `MaxValue` ([533](#)) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` ([533](#)), `MinValue` ([533](#))

14.46.6 TLongintField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as longint.

Declaration: `Property Value : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined by TLongintField as a 32-bit signed integer value. It returns the same value as the TField.AsInteger ([486](#)) property.

See also: TField.Value ([494](#))

14.46.7 TLongintField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` is the maximum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals `MaxInt`, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

See also: `MinValue` ([533](#))

14.46.8 TLongintField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals `-MaxInt`, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

See also: `MaxValue` ([533](#))

14.47 TLongWordField

14.47.1 Description

`TByteField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 32-bit unsigned data: the data type `ftLongword`. It overrides some methods of `TField` ([477](#)) to handle `LongWord` data, and sets some of the properties to values for `LongWord` data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as `MinValue` ([535](#)) and `MaxValue` ([534](#)).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TLongWordField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `MinValue` ([535](#)), `MaxValue` ([534](#))

14.47.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
534	<code>CheckRange</code>	Checkif a value is in the allowed range.
534	<code>Create</code>	Create new instance of <code>TLongWordField</code> .

14.47.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
534	<code>MaxValue</code>	rw	Maximum field value.
535	<code>MinValue</code>	rw	Minimum field value.
534	<code>Value</code>	rw	Value as longword.

14.47.4 TLongWordField.Create

Synopsis: Create new instance of TLongWordField.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and sets the values of the `MinValue` (535) `MaxValue` (534) and `TField.DataType` (490) properties.

See also: `MinValue` (533), `MaxValue` (533), `TField.DataType` (490)

14.47.5 TLongWordField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check if a value is in the allowed range.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: LargeInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` checks whether `aValue` is in the range of allowed values. This is normally `[0..High(LongWord)]`, unless specified otherwise in `MinValue` (535) or `MaxValue` (534)

See also: `MinValue` (535), `MaxValue` (534)

14.47.6 TLongWordField.Value

Synopsis: Value as longword.

Declaration: `Property Value : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is reintroduced in `TLongWordField` and gives access to the value of the field as `LongWord` data (a `Cardinal`).

See also: `TField.Value` (494)

14.47.7 TLongWordField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum field value.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : LongWord`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaxValue` is the maximum value the field contents can have. It is checked when setting the field value. By default it is set to `High(LongWord)` but you can set it to a smaller value to limit the range of allowed values.

See also: `MinValue` (535), `CheckRange` (534)

14.47.8 TLongWordField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum field value.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : LongWord`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MinValue` is the minimum value the field contents can have. It is checked when setting the field value. By default it is set to `Low (LongWord) (Zero)` but you can set it to a larger value to limit the range of allowed values.

See also: `MaxValue` ([534](#)), `CheckRange` ([534](#))

14.48 TLookupList

14.48.1 Description

`TLookupList` is a list object used for storing values of lookup operations by lookup fields. There should be no need to create an instance of `TLookupList` manually, the `TField` instance will create an instance of `TLookupList` on demand.

See also: `TField.LookupCache` ([499](#))

14.48.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
536	<code>Add</code>	Add a key, value pair to the list.
536	<code>Clear</code>	Remove all key, value pairs from the list.
535	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TLookupList</code> .
535	<code>Destroy</code>	Free a <code>TLookupList</code> instance from memory.
536	<code>FirstKeyByValue</code>	Find the first key that matches a value.
536	<code>ValueOfKey</code>	Look up value based on a key.
537	<code>ValuesToStrings</code>	Convert values to stringlist.

14.48.3 TLookupList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TLookupList`.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` sets up the necessary structures to manage a list of lookup values for a lookup field.

See also: `TLookupList.Destroy` ([535](#))

14.48.4 TLookupList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a `TLookupList` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees all resources (mostly memory) allocated by the lookup list, and calls then the inherited destructor.

See also: `TLookupList.Create` ([535](#))

14.48.5 TLookupList.Add

Synopsis: Add a key, value pair to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const AKey: Variant; const AValue: Variant)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` will add the value `AValue` to the list and associate it with key `AKey`. The same key cannot be added twice.

See also: `TLookupList.Clear` ([536](#))

14.48.6 TLookupList.Clear

Synopsis: Remove all key, value pairs from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all keys and associated values from the list.

See also: `TLookupList.Add` ([536](#))

14.48.7 TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue

Synopsis: Find the first key that matches a value.

Declaration: `function FirstKeyByValue(const AValue: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FirstKeyByValue` does a reverse lookup: it returns the first key value in the list that matches the `AValue` value. If none is found, `Null` is returned. This mechanism is quite slow, as a linear search is performed.

Errors: If no key is found, `Null` is returned.

See also: `TLookupList.ValueOfKey` ([536](#))

14.48.8 TLookupList.ValueOfKey

Synopsis: Look up value based on a key.

Declaration: `function ValueOfKey(const AKey: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ValueOfKey` does a value lookup based on a key: it returns the value in the list that matches the `AKey` key. If none is found, `Null` is returned. This mechanism is quite slow, as a linear search is performed.

See also: `TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue` ([536](#)), `TLookupList.Add` ([536](#))

14.48.9 TLookupList.ValuesToStrings

Synopsis: Convert values to stringlist.

Declaration: `procedure ValuesToStrings(AStrings: TStrings)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ValuesToStrings` converts the list of values to a stringlist, so they can be used e.g. in a drop-down list.

See also: `TLookupList.ValueOfKey` (536)

14.49 TMasterDataLink

14.49.1 Description

`TMasterDataLink` is a `TDatalink` descendent which handles master-detail relations. It can be used in `TDataset` (425) descendents that must have master-detail functionality: the detail dataset creates an instance of `TMasterDataLink` to point to the master dataset, which is subsequently available through the `TDatalink.Dataset` (423) property.

The class also provides functionality for keeping a list of fields that make up the master-detail functionality, in the `TMasterDataLink.FieldName`s (538) and `TMasterDataLink.Fields` (538) properties.

This class should never be used in application code.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TDatalink.DataSource` (423), `TDatalink.DataSet` (423), `TMasterDataLink.FieldName`s (538), `TMasterDataLink.Fields` (538)

14.49.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
537	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TMasterDataLink</code> .
538	Destroy	Free the <code>datalink</code> instance from memory.

14.49.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
538	<code>FieldNames</code>	rw	List of fieldnames that make up the master-detail relationship.
538	<code>Fields</code>	r	List of fields as specified in <code>FieldNames</code> .
538	<code>OnMasterChange</code>	rw	Called whenever the master dataset data changes.
539	<code>OnMasterDisable</code>	rw	Called whenever the master dataset is disabled.

14.49.4 TMasterDataLink.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TMasterDataLink`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataset); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TMasterDataLink`. The `ADataset` parameter is the detail dataset in the master-detail relation: it is saved in the `DetailDataset` (475) property. The master dataset must be set through the `DataSource` (423) property, and is usually set by the application programmer.

See also: [TDetailDataLink.DetailDataset \(475\)](#), [TDatalink.Datasource \(423\)](#)

14.49.5 TMasterDataLink.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the datalink instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the resources used by `TMasterDataLink` and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: [TMasterDataLink.Create \(537\)](#)

14.49.6 TMasterDataLink.FieldNames

Synopsis: List of fieldnames that make up the master-detail relationship.

Declaration: `Property FieldNames : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldNames` is a semicolon-separated list of fieldnames in the master dataset ([TDatalink.Dataset \(423\)](#)) on which the master-detail relationship is based. Setting this property will fill the `TMasterDataLink.Fields (538)` property with the field instances of the master dataset.

See also: [TMasterDataLink.Fields \(538\)](#), [TDatalink.Dataset \(423\)](#), [TDataset.GetFieldList \(439\)](#)

14.49.7 TMasterDataLink.Fields

Synopsis: List of fields as specified in `FieldNames`.

Declaration: `Property Fields : TList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Fields` is filled with the [TField \(477\)](#) instances from the master dataset ([TDatalink.Dataset \(423\)](#)) when the `FieldNames (538)` property is set, and when the master dataset opens.

See also: [TField \(477\)](#), [TMasterDataLink.FieldNames \(538\)](#)

14.49.8 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange

Synopsis: Called whenever the master dataset data changes.

Declaration: `Property OnMasterChange : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnMasterChange` is called whenever the field values in the master dataset changes, i.e. when it becomes active, or when the current record changes. If the `TMasterDataLink.Fields (538)` list is empty, `TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable (539)` is called instead.

See also: [TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable \(539\)](#)

14.49.9 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable

Synopsis: Called whenever the master dataset is disabled.

Declaration: Property OnMasterDisable : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnMasterDisable is called whenever the master dataset is disabled, or when it is active and the field list is empty.

See also: TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange ([538](#))

14.50 TMasterParamsDataLink

14.50.1 Description

TMasterParamsDataLink is a TDataLink ([419](#)) descendent that can be used to establish a master-detail relationship between 2 TDataset instances where the detail dataset is parameterized using a TParams instance. It takes care of closing and opening the detail dataset and copying the parameter values from the master dataset whenever the data in the master dataset changes.

See also: TDatalink ([419](#)), TDataset ([425](#)), TParams ([559](#)), TParam ([545](#))

14.50.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
540	CopyParamsFromMaster	Copy parameter values from master dataset.
539	Create	Initialize a new TMasterParamsDataLink instance.
540	RefreshParamNames	Refresh the list of parameter names.

14.50.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
540	Params	rw	Parameters of detail dataset.

14.50.4 TMasterParamsDataLink.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new TMasterParamsDataLink instance.

Declaration: constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create first calls the inherited constructor using ADataset, and then looks for a property named Params of type TParams ([559](#)) in the published properties of ADataset and assigns it to the Params ([540](#)) property.

See also: TDataset ([425](#)), TParams ([559](#)), TMasterParamsDataLink.Params ([540](#))

14.50.5 TMasterParamsDataLink.RefreshParamNames

Synopsis: Refresh the list of parameter names.

Declaration: `procedure RefreshParamNames; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RefreshParamNames` scans the `Params` (540) property and sets the `FieldNames` (538) property to the list of parameter names.

See also: `TMasterParamsDataLink.Params` (540), `TMasterDataLink.FieldNames` (538)

14.50.6 TMasterParamsDataLink.CopyParamsFromMaster

Synopsis: Copy parameter values from master dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyParamsFromMaster(CopyBound: Boolean); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CopyParamsFromMaster` calls `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (564), passing it the master dataset: it provides the parameters of the detail dataset with their new values. If `CopyBound` is `false`, then only parameters with their `Bound` (556) property set to `False` are copied. If it is `True` then the value is set for all parameters.

Errors: If the master dataset does not have a corresponding field for each parameter, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (564), `TParam.Bound` (556)

14.50.7 TMasterParamsDataLink.Params

Synopsis: Parameters of detail dataset.

Declaration: `Property Params : TParams`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Params` is the `TParams` instance of the detail dataset. If the detail dataset contains a property named `Params` of type `TParams`, then it will be set when the `TMasterParamsDataLink` instance was created. If the property is not published, or has another name, then the `Params` property must be set in code.

See also: `TParams` (559), `TMasterParamsDataLink.Create` (539)

14.51 TMemoField

14.51.1 Description

`TMemoField` is the class used when a dataset must manage memo (Text BLOB) data. (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftMemo`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (477) class. All methods to be able to work with memo fields have been implemented in the `TBlobField` (400) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TMemoField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each memo field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField` (477), `TBlobField` (400), `TWideMemoField` (573), `TGraphicField` (523)

14.51.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
541	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TMemoField</code> class.

14.51.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
541	CodePage	r	Codepage of the memo field string data.
541	Transliterate		Should the contents of the field be transliterated.

14.51.4 TMemofield.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TMemoField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TMemoField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([477](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with memo values.

See also: `TField` ([477](#))

14.51.5 TMemofield.CodePage

Synopsis: Codepage of the memo field string data.

Declaration: `Property CodePage : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CodePage` is the code page of the string data in the field. It is determined when the field is initially created from the dataset's data, and cannot be changed while the dataset is active.

See also: `TField.AsString` ([487](#)), `TFieldDef.CodePage` ([507](#))

14.51.6 TMemofield.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the contents of the field be transliterated.

Declaration: `Property Transliterate :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Transliterate` is redefined from `TBlobField.Transliterate` ([404](#)) with a default value of `true`.

See also: `TBlobField.Transliterate` ([404](#)), `TStringField.Transliterate` ([570](#)), `TDataset.Translate` ([445](#))

14.52 TNamedItem

14.52.1 Description

`NamedItem` is a `TCollectionItem` (??) descendent which introduces a `Name` (542) property. It automatically returns the value of the `Name` property as the value of the `DisplayName` (542) property.

See also: `DisplayName` (542), `Name` (542)

14.52.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
542	<code>DisplayName</code>	rw	Display name.
542	<code>Name</code>	rw	Name of the item.

14.52.3 TNamedItem.DisplayName

Synopsis: Display name.

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayName` is declared in `TCollectionItem` (??), and is made public in `TNamedItem`. The value equals the value of the `Name` (542) property.

See also: `Name` (542)

14.52.4 TNamedItem.Name

Synopsis: Name of the item.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is the name of the item in the collection. This property is also used as the value for the `DisplayName` (542) property. If the `TNamedItem` item is owned by a `TDefCollection` (473) collection, then the name must be unique, i.e. each `Name` value may appear only once in the collection.

See also: `DisplayName` (542), `TDefCollection` (473)

14.53 TNumericField

14.53.1 Description

`TNumericField` is an abstract class which overrides some of the methods of `TField` (477) to handle numerical data. It also introduces or publishes a couple of properties that are only relevant in the case of numerical data, such as `TNumericField.DisplayFormat` (543) and `TNumericField.EditFormat` (544).

Since `TNumericField` is an abstract class, it must never be instantiated directly. Instead one of the descendent classes should be created.

See also: [TField \(477\)](#), [TNumericField.DisplayFormat \(543\)](#), [TNumericField.EditFormat \(544\)](#), [TField.Alignment \(495\)](#), [TIntegerField \(529\)](#), [TLargeIntField \(529\)](#), [TFloatField \(518\)](#), [TBCDField \(396\)](#)

14.53.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
543	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TNumericField</code> .

14.53.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
543	Alignment		Alignment of the field.
543	DisplayFormat	rw	Format string for display of numerical data.
544	EditFormat	rw	Format string for editing of numerical data.

14.53.4 TNumericField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TNumericField`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes the `TField.Alignment (495)` property with

See also: [TField.Alignment \(495\)](#)

14.53.5 TNumericField.Alignment

Synopsis: Alignment of the field.

Declaration: `Property Alignment :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Alignment` is published by `TNumericField` with `taRightJustify` as a default value.

See also: [TField.Alignment \(495\)](#)

14.53.6 TNumericField.DisplayFormat

Synopsis: Format string for display of numerical data.

Declaration: `Property DisplayFormat : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DisplayFormat` specifies a format string (such as used by the `Format (??)` and `FormatFloat (??)` functions) for display purposes: the `TField.DisplayText (491)` property will use this property to format the field's value. Which formatting function (and, consequently, which format can be entered) is used depends on the descendent of the `TNumericField` class.

See also: `Format (??)`, `FormatFloat (??)`, [TField.DisplayText \(491\)](#), [TNumericField.EditFormat \(544\)](#)

14.53.7 TNumericField.EditFormat

Synopsis: Format string for editing of numerical data.

Declaration: `Property EditFormat : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `EditFormat` specifies a format string (such as used by the `Format (??)` and `FormatFloat (??)` functions) for editing purposes: the `TField.Text (493)` property will use this property to format the field's value. Which formatting function (and, consequently, which format can be entered) is used depends on the descendent of the `TNumericField` class.

See also: `Format (??)`, `FormatFloat (??)`, `TField.Text (493)`, `TNumericField.DisplayFormat (543)`

14.54 TObjectField

14.54.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
544	<code>FieldCount</code>	<code>r</code>	
544	<code>Fields</code>	<code>r</code>	
544	<code>FieldValues</code>	<code>rw</code>	
545	<code>ObjectType</code>	<code>rw</code>	
545	<code>UnNamed</code>	<code>r</code>	

14.54.2 TObjectField.FieldCount

Declaration: `Property FieldCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

14.54.3 TObjectField.Fields

Declaration: `Property Fields : TFields`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

14.54.4 TObjectField.FieldValues

Declaration: `Property FieldValues[AIndex: Integer]: Variant; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.54.5 TObjectField.UnNamed

Declaration: `Property UnNamed : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

14.54.6 TObjectField.ObjectType

Declaration: `Property ObjectType : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.55 TParam

14.55.1 Description

`TParam` is one item in a `TParams` (559) collection. It describes the name (`TParam.Name` (557)), type (`ParamType` (558)) and value (`TParam.Value` (559)) of a parameter in a parameterized query or stored procedure. Under normal circumstances, it should never be necessary to create a `TParam` instance manually; the `TDataset` (425) descendent that owns the parameters should have created all necessary `TParam` instances.

See also: `TParams` (559)

14.55.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
547	<code>Assign</code>	Assign one parameter instance to another.
547	<code>AssignField</code>	Copy value from field instance.
547	<code>AssignFieldValue</code>	Assign field value to the parameter.
548	<code>AssignFromField</code>	Copy field type and value.
547	<code>AssignToField</code>	Assign parameter value to field.
548	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the parameter value.
546	<code>Create</code>	Create a new parameter value.
548	<code>GetData</code>	Get the parameter value from a memory buffer.
548	<code>GetDataSize</code>	Return the size of the data.
549	<code>LoadFromFile</code>	Load a parameter value from file.
549	<code>LoadFromStream</code>	Load a parameter value from stream.
549	<code>SetBlobData</code>	Set BLOB data.
549	<code>SetData</code>	Set the parameter value from a buffer.

14.55.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
554	AsAnsiString	rw	Parameter contents as an ANSI string.
550	AsBCD	rw	Get or set parameter value as BCD value.
550	AsBlob	rw	Return parameter value as a blob.
550	AsBoolean	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a boolean value.
551	AsByte	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a 8-bit unsigned integer value.
551	AsBytes	rw	Get or set parameter value as TBytes.
551	AsCurrency	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a currency value.
551	AsDate	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a date (TDateTime) value.
552	AsDateTime	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a date/time (TDateTime) value.
552	AsFloat	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a floating-point value.
555	AsFmtBCD	rw	Parameter value as a BCD value.
552	AsInteger	rw	Get/Set parameter value as an integer (32-bit) value.
552	AsLargeInt	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a 64-bit integer value.
553	AsLongWord	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a 32-bit unsigned integer value.
553	AsMemo	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a memo (string) value.
553	AsShortInt	rw	
553	AsSingle	rw	
553	AsSmallInt	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a smallint value.
554	AsString	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a string value.
555	AsTime	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a time (TDateTime) value.
555	AsUnicodeString	rw	Parameter contents as a Unicode string.
554	AsUTF8String	rw	Parameter contents as an UTF8 string.
557	AsWideString	rw	Get/Set the value as a widestring.
555	AsWord	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a word value.
556	Bound	rw	Is the parameter value bound (set to fixed value).
556	Dataset	r	Dataset to which this parameter belongs.
557	DataType	rw	Data type of the parameter.
556	IsNull	r	Is the parameter empty.
557	Name	rw	Name of the parameter.
556	NativeStr	rw	No description available.
558	NumericScale	rw	Numeric scale.
558	ParamType	rw	Type of parameter.
558	Precision	rw	Precision of the BCD value.
559	Size	rw	Size of the parameter.
557	Text	rw	Read or write the value of the parameter as a string.
559	Value	rws	Value as a variant.

14.55.4 TParam.Create

Synopsis: Create a new parameter value.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Override; Overload
 constructor Create(AParams: TParams; AParamType: TParamType); Overload
 ; Reintroduce`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` first calls the inherited `create`, and then initializes the parameter properties. The first form creates a default parameter, the second form is a convenience function and initializes a parameter of a certain kind (`AParamType`), in which case the owning `TParams` collection must be specified in `AParams`

See also: `TParams` ([559](#))

14.55.5 TParam.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one parameter instance to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign copies the Name, ParamType, Bound, Value, SizePrecision and NumericScale properties from ASource if it is of type TParam. If Source is of type TField (477), then it is passed to TParam.AssignField (547). If Source is of type TStrings, then it is assigned to TParams.AsMemo (559).

Errors: If Source is not of type TParam, TField or TStrings, an exception will be raised.

See also: TField (477), TParam.Name (557), TParam.Bound (556), TParam.NumericScale (558), TParam.ParamType (558), TParam.value (559), TParam.Size (559), TParam.AssignField (547), Tparam.AsMemo (553)

14.55.6 TParam.AssignField

Synopsis: Copy value from field instance.

Declaration: `procedure AssignField(Field: TField)`

Visibility: public

Description: AssignField copies the Field, FieldName (497) and Value (494) to the parameter instance. The parameter is bound after this operation. If Field is Nil then the parameter name and value are cleared.

See also: TParam.assign (547), TParam.AssignToField (547), TParam.AssignFieldValue (547)

14.55.7 TParam.AssignToField

Synopsis: Assign parameter value to field.

Declaration: `procedure AssignToField(Field: TField)`

Visibility: public

Description: AssignToField copies the parameter value (559) to the field instance. If Field is Nil, nothing happens.

Errors: An EDatabaseError (387) exception is raised if the field has an unsupported field type (for types ftCursor, ftArray, ftDataset, ftReference).

See also: TParam.Assign (547), TParam.AssignField (547), TParam.AssignFromField (548)

14.55.8 TParam.AssignFieldValue

Synopsis: Assign field value to the parameter.

Declaration: `procedure AssignFieldValue(Field: TField; const AValue: Variant)`

Visibility: public

Description: AssignFieldValue copies only the field type from Field and the value from the AValue parameter. It sets the TParam.Bound (556) bound parameter to True. This method is called from TParam.AssignField (547).

See also: TField (477), TParam.AssignField (547), TParam.Bound (556)

14.55.9 TParam.AssignFromField

Synopsis: Copy field type and value.

Declaration: `procedure AssignFromField(Field: TField)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AssignFromField` copies the field value (494) and data type (`TField.DataType` (490)) to the parameter instance. If `Field` is `Nil`, nothing happens. This is the reverse operation of `TParam.AssignToField` (547).

Errors: An `EDatabaseError` (387) exception is raised if the field has an unsupported field type (for types `ftCursor`, `ftArray`, `ftDataset`, `ftReference`).

See also: `TParam.Assign` (547), `TParam.AssignField` (547), `TParam.AssignToField` (547)

14.55.10 TParam.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the parameter value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the parameter value, it is set to `UnAssigned`. The Datatype, parameter type or name are not touched.

See also: `TParam.Value` (559), `TParam.Name` (557), `TParam.ParamType` (558), `TParam.DataType` (557)

14.55.11 TParam.GetData

Synopsis: Get the parameter value from a memory buffer.

Declaration: `procedure GetData(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetData` retrieves the parameter value and stores it in `buffer`. It uses the same data layout as `TField` (477), and can be used to copy the parameter value to a record buffer.

Errors: Only basic field types are supported. Using an unsupported field type will result in an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception.

See also: `TParam.SetData` (549), `TField` (477)

14.55.12 TParam.GetDataSize

Synopsis: Return the size of the data.

Declaration: `function GetDataSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetDataSize` returns the size (in bytes) needed to store the current value of the parameter.

Errors: For an unsupported data type, an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: `TParam.GetData` (548), `TParam.SetData` (549)

14.55.13 TParam.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load a parameter value from file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; BlobType: TBlobType)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` can be used to load a BLOB-type parameter from a file named `FileName`. The `BlobType` parameter can be used to set the exact data type of the parameter: it must be one of the BLOB data types. This function simply creates a `TFileStream` instance and passes it to `TParam.LoadFromStream` (549).

Errors: If the specified `FileName` is not a valid file, or the file is not readable, an exception will occur.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromStream` (549), `TBlobType` (364), `TParam.SaveToFile` (545)

14.55.14 TParam.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load a parameter value from stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; BlobType: TBlobType)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` can be used to load a BLOB-type parameter from a stream. The `BlobType` parameter can be used to set the exact data type of the parameter: it must be one of the BLOB data types.

Errors: If the stream does not support taking the `Size` of the stream, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromFile` (549), `TParam.SaveToStream` (545)

14.55.15 TParam.SetBlobData

Synopsis: Set BLOB data.

Declaration: `procedure SetBlobData(Buffer: Pointer; ASize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetBlobData` reads the value of a BLOB type parameter from a memory buffer: the data is read from the memory buffer `Buffer` and is assumed to be `Size` bytes long.

Errors: No checking is performed on the validity of the data buffer. If the data buffer is invalid or the size is wrong, an exception may occur.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromStream` (549)

14.55.16 TParam.SetData

Synopsis: Set the parameter value from a buffer.

Declaration: `procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetData` performs the reverse operation of `TParam.GetData` (548): it reads the parameter value from the memory area pointed to by `Buffer`. The size of the data read is determined by `TParam.GetDataSize` (548) and the type of data by `TParam.DataType` (557) : it is the same storage mechanism used by `TField` (477), and so can be used to copy the value from a `TDataset` (425) record buffer.

Errors: Not all field types are supported. If an unsupported field type is encountered, an `EDatabaseError` (387) exception is raised.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TParam.GetData` (548), `TParam.DataType` (557), `TParam.GetDataSize` (548)

14.55.17 TParam.AsBCD

Synopsis: Get or set parameter value as BCD value.

Declaration: `Property AsBCD : Currency`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBCD` can be used to get or set a parameter value as a BCD encoded floating point value.

See also: `TParam.AsFloat` (552)

14.55.18 TParam.AsBlob

Synopsis: Return parameter value as a blob.

Declaration: `Property AsBlob : TBlobData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBlob` returns the parameter value as a blob: currently this is a string. It can be set to set the parameter value.

See also: `TParam.AsString` (554)

14.55.19 TParam.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a boolean value.

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` will return the parameter value as a boolean value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftBoolean`.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (557), `TParam.Value` (559)

14.55.20 TParam.AsByte

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a 8-bit unsigned integer value.

Declaration: `Property AsByte : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsByte` will return the parameter value as a 8-bit unsigned integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftByte`.

See also: `TParam.asInteger` ([552](#)), `TParam.asSmallint` ([553](#)), `TParam.AsWord` ([555](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.21 TParam.AsBytes

Synopsis: Get or set parameter value as `TBytes`.

Declaration: `Property AsBytes : TBytes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsBCD` can be used to get or set a parameter value as a `TBytes` value. This should normally only be used for blob type parameters.

See also: `TParam.AsString` ([554](#))

14.55.22 TParam.AsCurrency

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a currency value.

Declaration: `Property AsCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsCurrency` will return the parameter value as a currency value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftCurrency`.

See also: `TParam.AsFloat` ([552](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.23 TParam.AsDate

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a date (`TDateTime`) value.

Declaration: `Property AsDate : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsDate` will return the parameter value as a date value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftDate`.

See also: `TParam.AsDateTime` ([552](#)), `TParam.AsTime` ([555](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.24 TParam.AsDateTime

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a date/time (TDateTime) value.

Declaration: `Property AsDateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsDateTime` will return the parameter value as a `TDateTime` value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftDateTime`.

See also: `TParam.AsDate` (551), `TParam.asTime` (555), `TParam.DataType` (557), `TParam.Value` (559)

14.55.25 TParam.AsFloat

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a floating-point value.

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsFloat` will return the parameter value as a double floating-point value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftFloat`.

See also: `TParam.AsCurrency` (551), `TParam.DataType` (557), `TParam.Value` (559)

14.55.26 TParam.AsInteger

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as an integer (32-bit) value.

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsInteger` will return the parameter value as a 32-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftInteger`.

See also: `TParam.AsLargeInt` (552), `TParam.AsSmallInt` (553), `TParam.AsWord` (555), `TParam.DataType` (557), `TParam.Value` (559)

14.55.27 TParam.AsLargeInt

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a 64-bit integer value.

Declaration: `Property AsLargeInt : LargeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsLargeInt` will return the parameter value as a 64-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftLargeInt`.

See also: `TParam.asInteger` (552), `TParam.asSmallint` (553), `TParam.AsWord` (555), `TParam.DataType` (557), `TParam.Value` (559)

14.55.28 TParam.AsLongWord

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a 32-bit unsigned integer value.

Declaration: `Property AsLongWord : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLongWord` will return the parameter value as a 32-bit unsigned integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftLongWord`.

See also: `TParam.asInteger` ([552](#)), `TParam.asSmallint` ([553](#)), `TParam.AsWord` ([555](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.29 TParam.AsMemo

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a memo (string) value.

Declaration: `Property AsMemo : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsMemo` will return the parameter value as a memo (string) value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftMemo`.

See also: `TParam.asString` ([554](#)), `TParam.LoadFromStream` ([549](#)), `TParam.SaveToStream` ([545](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.30 TParam.AsShortInt

Declaration: `Property AsShortInt : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

14.55.31 TParam.AsSingle

Declaration: `Property AsSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

14.55.32 TParam.AsSmallInt

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a smallint value.

Declaration: `Property AsSmallInt : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsSmallInt` will return the parameter value as a 16-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftSmallInt`.

See also: `TParam.AsInteger` ([552](#)), `TParam.AsLargeInt` ([552](#)), `TParam.AsWord` ([555](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.33 TParam.AsString

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a string value.

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` will return the parameter value as a string value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftString`.

See also: `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.34 TParam.AsAnsiString

Synopsis: Parameter contents as an ANSI string.

Declaration: `Property AsAnsiString : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsAnsiString` returns the parameter data as an ANSI string (single byte character string). Note that if the parameter contains unicode data, some characters may get lost when reading.

See also: `TParam.AsString` ([554](#)), `TParam.AsUnicodeString` ([555](#)), `TParam.AsUTF8String` ([554](#))

14.55.35 TParam.AsUTF8String

Synopsis: Parameter contents as an UTF8 string.

Declaration: `Property AsUTF8String : UTF8String`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsUTF8String` returns the parameter data as an UTF8 string (single byte-encoded unicode string).

See also: `TParam.AsString` ([554](#)), `TParam.AsUnicodeString` ([555](#)), `TParam.AsAnsiString` ([554](#))

14.55.36 TParam.AsUnicodeString

Synopsis: Parameter contents as a Unicode string.

Declaration: `Property AsUnicodeString : UnicodeString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsUTF8String` returns the parameter data as a `UnicodeString` (double byte unicode string).

See also: `TParam.AsString` ([554](#)), `TParam.AsUTF8String` ([554](#)), `TParam.AsAnsiString` ([554](#))

14.55.37 TParam.AsTime

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a time (`TDateTime`) value.

Declaration: `Property AsTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsTime` will return the parameter value as a time (`TDateTime`) value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftTime`.

See also: `TParam.AsDate` ([551](#)), `TParam.AsDateTime` ([552](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.38 TParam.AsWord

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a word value.

Declaration: `Property AsWord : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsWord` will return the parameter value as an integer. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftWord`.

See also: `TParam.AsInteger` ([552](#)), `TParam.AsLargeInt` ([552](#)), `TParam.AsSmallint` ([553](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.Value` ([559](#))

14.55.39 TParam.AsFmtBCD

Synopsis: Parameter value as a BCD value.

Declaration: `Property AsFmtBCD : TBCD`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsFmtBCD` can be used to get or set the parameter's value as a BCD typed value.

See also: `AsFloat` ([361](#)), `AsCurrency` ([361](#))

14.55.40 TParam.Bound

Synopsis: Is the parameter value bound (set to fixed value).

Declaration: `Property Bound : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bound` indicates whether a parameter has received a fixed value: setting the parameter value will set `Bound` to `True`. When creating master-detail relationships, parameters with their `Bound` property set to `True` will not receive a value from the master dataset: their value will be kept. Only parameters where `Bound` is `False` will receive a new value from the master dataset.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (557), `TParam.Value` (559)

14.55.41 TParam.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset to which this parameter belongs.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset that owns the `TParams` (559) instance of which this `TParam` instance is a part. It is `Nil` if the collection is not set, or is not a `TParams` instance.

See also: `TDataSet` (425), `TParams` (559)

14.55.42 TParam.IsNull

Synopsis: Is the parameter empty.

Declaration: `Property IsNull : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsNull` is `True` if the value is empty or not set (`Null` or `UnAssigned`).

See also: `TParam.Clear` (548), `TParam.Value` (559)

14.55.43 TParam.NativeStr

Synopsis: No description available.

Declaration: `Property NativeStr : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: No description available

14.55.44 TParam.Text

Synopsis: Read or write the value of the parameter as a string.

Declaration: `Property Text : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsText` returns the same value as `TParam.AsString` (554), but, when written, does not set the data type: instead, it attempts to convert the value to the type specified in `TParam.DataType` (557).

See also: `TParam.AsString` (554), `TParam.DataType` (557)

14.55.45 TParam.AsWideString

Synopsis: Get/Set the value as a widestring.

Declaration: `Property AsWideString : WideString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsWideString` returns the parameter value as a widestring value. Setting the property will set the value of the parameter and will also set the `DataType` (557) to `ftWideString`.

See also: `TParam.AsString` (554), `TParam.Value` (559), `TParam.DataType` (557)

14.55.46 TParam.DataType

Synopsis: Data type of the parameter.

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DataType` is the current data type of the parameter value. It is set automatically when one of the various `AsXYZ` properties is written, or when the value is copied from a field value.

See also: `TParam.IsNull` (556), `TParam.Value` (559), `TParam.AssignField` (547)

14.55.47 TParam.Name

Synopsis: Name of the parameter.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is the name of the parameter. The name is usually determined automatically from the SQL statement the parameter is part of. Each parameter name should appear only once in the collection.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (557), `TParam.Value` (559), `TParams.ParamByName` (562)

14.55.48 TParam.NumericScale

Synopsis: Numeric scale.

Declaration: `Property NumericScale : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `NumericScale` can be used to store the numerical scale for BCD values. It is currently unused.

See also: `TParam.Precision` ([558](#)), `TParam.Size` ([559](#))

14.55.49 TParam.ParamType

Synopsis: Type of parameter.

Declaration: `Property ParamType : TParamType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ParamType` specifies the type of parameter: is the parameter value written to the database engine, or is it received from the database engine, or both ? It can have the following value:

ptUnknownUnknown type.

ptInputInput parameter.

ptOutputOutput parameter, filled on result.

ptInputOutputInput/output parameter.

ptResultResult parameter.

The `ParamType` property is usually set by the database engine that creates the parameter instances.

See also: `TParam.DataType` ([557](#)), `TParam.DataSize` ([545](#)), `TParam.Name` ([557](#))

14.55.50 TParam.Precision

Synopsis: Precision of the BCD value.

Declaration: `Property Precision : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` can be used to store the numerical precision for BCD values. It is currently unused.

See also: `TParam.NumericScale` ([558](#)), `TParam.Size` ([559](#))

14.55.51 TParam.Size

Synopsis: Size of the parameter.

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Size` is the declared size of the parameter. In the current implementation, this parameter is ignored other than copying it from `TField.DataSize` (490) in the `TParam.AssignFieldValue` (547) method. The actual size can be retrieved through the `TParam.Datasize` (545) property.

See also: `TParam.Datasize` (545), `TField.DataSize` (490), `TParam.AssignFieldValue` (547)

14.55.52 TParam.Value

Synopsis: Value as a variant.

Declaration: `Property Value : Variant`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` returns (or sets) the value as a variant value.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (557)

14.56 TParams

14.56.1 Description

`TParams` is a collection of `TParam` (545) values. It is used to specify parameter values for parameterized SQL statements, but is also used to specify parameter values for stored procedures. Its default property is an array of `TParam` (545) values. The class also offers a method to scan a SQL statement for parameter names and replace them with placeholders understood by the SQL engine: `TParams.ParseSQL` (562).

`TDataset` (425) itself does not use `TParams`. The class is provided in the `DB` unit, so all `TDataset` descendents that need some kind of parameterization make use of the same interface. The `TMasterParamsDataLink` (539) class can be used to establish a master-detail relationship between a parameter-aware `TDataset` instance and another dataset; it will automatically refresh parameter values when the fields in the master dataset change. To this end, the `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (564) method exists.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TMasterParamsDataLink` (539), `TParam` (545), `TParams.ParseSQL` (562), `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (564)

14.56.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
560	AddParam	Add a parameter to the collection.
561	AssignValues	Copy values from another collection.
564	CopyParamValuesFromDataset	Copy parameter values from the fields in a dataset.
560	Create	Create a new instance of TParams.
561	CreateParam	Create and add a new parameter to the collection.
561	FindParam	Find a parameter with given name.
562	GetEnumerator	Return an enumerator for the parameters.
561	GetParamList	Fetch a list of TParam instances.
562	IsEqual	Is the list of parameters equal.
562	ParamByName	Return a parameter by name.
562	ParseSQL	Parse SQL statement, replacing parameter names with SQL parameter placeholders.
563	RemoveParam	Remove a parameter from the collection.

14.56.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
564	Dataset	r	Dataset that owns the TParams instance.
564	Items	rw	Indexed access to TParams instances in the collection.
564	ParamValues	rw	Named access to the parameter values.

14.56.4 TParams.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TParams.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent;
 AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass); Overload
constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent); Overload
constructor Create; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of TParams. It calls the inherited constructor with TParam ([545](#)) as the collection's item class, and sets AOwner as the owner of the collection. Usually, AOwner will be the dataset that needs parameters.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TCollection.create` ([??](#)), TParam ([545](#))

14.56.5 TParams.AddParam

Synopsis: Add a parameter to the collection.

Declaration: `procedure AddParam(Value: TParam)`

Visibility: public

Description: AddParam adds Value to the collection.

Errors: No checks are done on the TParam instance. If it is Nil, an exception will be raised.

See also: TParam ([545](#)), `#rtl.classes.tcollection.add` ([??](#))

14.56.6 TParams.AssignValues

Synopsis: Copy values from another collection.

Declaration: `procedure AssignValues(Value: TParams)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AssignValues` examines all `TParam` (545) instances in `Value`, and looks in its own items for a `TParam` instance with the same name. If it is found, then the value and type of the parameter are copied (using `TParam.Assign` (547)). If it is not found, nothing is done.

See also: `TParam` (545), `TParam.Assign` (547)

14.56.7 TParams.CreateParam

Synopsis: Create and add a new parameter to the collection.

Declaration: `function CreateParam(FldType: TFieldType; const ParamName: string; ParamType: TParamType) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateParam` creates a new `TParam` (545) instance with datatype equal to `fldType`, Name equal to `ParamName` and sets its `ParamType` property to `ParamType`. The parameter is then added to the collection.

See also: `TParam` (545), `TParam.Name` (557), `TParam.Datatype` (557), `TParam.Paramtype` (558)

14.56.8 TParams.FindParam

Synopsis: Find a parameter with given name.

Declaration: `function FindParam(const Value: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindParam` searches the collection for the `TParam` (545) instance with property `Name` equal to `Value`. It will return the last instance with the given name, and will only return one instance. If no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

Remark A `TParams` collection can have 2 `TParam` instances with the same name: no checking for duplicates is done.

See also: `TParam.Name` (557), `TParams.ParamByName` (562), `TParams.GetParamList` (561)

14.56.9 TParams.GetParamList

Synopsis: Fetch a list of `TParam` instances.

Declaration: `procedure GetParamList(List: TList; const ParamNames: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetParamList` examines the parameter names in the semicolon-separated list `ParamNames`. It searches each `TParam` instance from the names in the list and adds it to `List`.

Errors: If the `ParamNames` list contains an unknown parameter name, then an exception is raised. Whitespace is not discarded.

See also: `TParam` (545), `TParam.Name` (557), `TParams.ParamByName` (562)

14.56.10 TParams.IsEqual

Synopsis: Is the list of parameters equal.

Declaration: `function IsEqual(Value: TParams) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsEqual` compares the parameter count of `Value` and if it matches, it compares all `TParam` items of `Value` with the items it owns. If all items are equal (all properties match), then `True` is returned. The items are compared on index, so the order is important.

See also: `TParam` ([545](#))

14.56.11 TParams.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator for the parameters.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TParamsEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator that loops over all parameters (as implemented by `TParamsEnumerator` ([565](#)))

See also: `TParamsEnumerator` ([565](#))

14.56.12 TParams.ParamByName

Synopsis: Return a parameter by name.

Declaration: `function ParamByName(const Value: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParamByName` searches the collection for the `TParam` ([545](#)) instance with property `Name` equal to `Value`. It will return the last instance with the given name, and will only return one instance. If no match is found, an exception is raised.

Remark A `TParams` collection can have 2 `TParam` instances with the same name: no checking for duplicates is done.

See also: `TParam.Name` ([557](#)), `TParams.FindParam` ([561](#)), `TParams.GetParamList` ([561](#))

14.56.13 TParams.ParseSQL

Synopsis: Parse SQL statement, replacing parameter names with SQL parameter placeholders.

```
Declaration: function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean) : string
                ; Overload
function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean;
                EscapeSlash: Boolean; EscapeRepeat: Boolean;
                ParameterStyle: TParamStyle) : string; Overload
function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean;
                EscapeSlash: Boolean; EscapeRepeat: Boolean;
                ParameterStyle: TParamStyle;
                out ParamBinding: TParamBinding) : string; Overload
function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean;
```

```

        EscapeSlash: Boolean; EscapeRepeat: Boolean;
        ParameterStyle: TParamStyle;
        out ParamBinding: TParamBinding;
        out ReplaceString: string) : string; Overload
function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; Options: TSQLParseOptions;
        ParameterStyle: TParamStyle;
        out ParamBinding: TParamBinding; MacroChar: char;
        out ReplaceString: string) : string

```

Visibility: public

Description: ParseSQL parses the SQL statement for parameter names in the form :ParamName. It replaces them with a SQL parameter placeholder. If DoCreate is True then a TParam instance is added to the collection with the found parameter name.

The parameter placeholder is determined by the ParameterStyle property, which can have the following values:

psInterbaseParameters are specified by a ? character.

psPostgreSQLParameters are specified by a \$N character.

psSimulatedParameters are specified by a \$N character.

psInterbase is the default.

If the EscapeSlash parameter is True, then backslash characters are used to quote the next character in the SQL statement. If it is False, the backslash character is regarded as a normal character.

If the EscapeRepeat parameter is True (the default) then embedded quotes in string literals are escaped by repeating themselves. If it is false then they should be quoted with backslashes.

ParamBinding, if specified, is filled with the indexes of the parameter instances in the parameter collection: for each SQL parameter placeholder, the index of the corresponding TParam instance is returned in the array.

ReplaceString, if specified, contains the placeholder used for the parameter names (by default, \$). It has effect only when ParameterStyle equals psSimulated.

The function returns the SQL statement with the parameter names replaced by placeholders.

See also: TParam ([545](#)), TParam.Name ([557](#)), TParamStyle ([379](#))

14.56.14 TParams.RemoveParam

Synopsis: Remove a parameter from the collection.

Declaration: procedure RemoveParam(Value: TParam)

Visibility: public

Description: RemoveParam removes the parameter Value from the collection, but does not free the instance.

Errors: Value must be a valid instance, or an exception will be raised.

See also: TParam ([545](#))

14.56.15 TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset

Synopsis: Copy parameter values from the fields in a dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyParamValuesFromDataset (ADataset: TDataSet;
CopyBound: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyParamValuesFromDataset` assigns values to all parameters in the collection by searching in `ADataset` for fields with the same name, and assigning the value of the field to the `TParam` instances using `TParam.AssignField` (547). By default, this operation is only performed on `TParam` instances with their `Bound` (556) property set to `False`. If `CopyBound` is true, then the operation is performed on all `TParam` instances in the collection.

Errors: If, for some `TParam` instance, `ADataset` misses a field with the same name, an `EDatabaseError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TParam` (545), `TParam.Bound` (556), `TParam.AssignField` (547), `TDataSet` (425), `TDataSet.FieldName` (436)

14.56.16 TParams.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset that owns the `TParams` instance.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Dataset` is the `TDataSet` (425) instance that was specified when the `TParams` instance was created.

See also: `TParams.Create` (560), `TDataSet` (425)

14.56.17 TParams.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to `TParams` instances in the collection.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TParam; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is overridden by `TParams` so it has the proper type (`TParam`). The `Index` runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TParams` (559)

14.56.18 TParams.ParamValues

Synopsis: Named access to the parameter values.

Declaration: `Property ParamValues[ParamName: string]: Variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ParamValues` provides access to the parameter values (`TParam.Value` (559)) by name. It is equivalent to reading and writing

```
ParamByName (ParamName) .Value
```

See also: `TParam.Value` (559), `TParams.ParamByName` (562)

14.57 TParamsEnumerator

14.57.1 Description

`TParamsEnumerator` is a helper class to implement enumeration (`for..in`) of parameters. It implements the `IEnumerator` interface.

See also: `TParams.GetEnumerator` (562)

14.57.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
565	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TParamsEnumerator</code> instance.
565	<code>MoveNext</code>	Go to next <code>TParam</code> .

14.57.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
566	<code>Current</code>	r	Current <code>TParam</code> instance.

14.57.4 TParamsEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TParamsEnumerator` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create (AParams: TParams)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new enumerator for `AParams`.

See also: `TParams.GetEnumerator` (562)

14.57.5 TParamsEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Go to next `TParam`.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` will move to the next `TParam` instance if possible. If it returns `True` then `TParamsEnumerator.Current` (566) will return the new current `TParam`

See also: `TParamsEnumerator.Current` (566)

14.57.6 TParamsEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current TParam instance.

Declaration: Property Current : TParam

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current is the current TParam instance. It is only valid if TParamsEnumerator.MoveNext (565) returned true.

See also: TParamsEnumerator.MoveNext (565)

14.58 TShortintField

14.58.1 Description

TShortintField is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 8-bit signed data: the data type `ftShortInt`. It overrides some methods of TField (477) to handle `ShortInt` data, and sets some of the properties to values for `ShortInt` data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as `MinValue` (533) and `MaxValue` (533).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TShortintField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `MinValue` (533), `MaxValue` (533)

14.58.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
566	Create	Create new instance of TShortintField.

14.58.3 TShortintField.Create

Synopsis: Create new instance of TShortintField.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create calls the inherited constructor and sets the values of the `MinValue` (533)`MaxValue` (533) and `TField.DataType` (490) properties.

See also: `MinValue` (533), `MaxValue` (533), `TField.DataType` (490)

14.59 TSingleField

14.59.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
567	CheckRange	
567	Create	

14.59.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
567	Currency	rw	
567	MaxValue	rw	
567	MinValue	rw	
568	Precision	rw	
567	Value	rw	

14.59.3 TSingleField.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

14.59.4 TSingleField.CheckRange

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: Single) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

14.59.5 TSingleField.Value

Declaration: `Property Value : Single`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.59.6 TSingleField.Currency

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.59.7 TSingleField.MaxValue

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Single`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.59.8 TSingleField.MinValue

Declaration: `Property MinValue : Single`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.59.9 TSingleField.Precision

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

14.60 TSmallIntField

14.60.1 Description

`TSmallIntField` is the class created when a dataset must manage 16-bit signed integer data, of datatype `ftSmallInt`. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 16-bit signed integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TSmallIntField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each smallint field when a dataset is opened.

See also: [TField \(477\)](#), [TNumericField \(542\)](#), [TLongintField \(531\)](#), [TWordField \(575\)](#)

14.60.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
568	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TSmallIntField</code> class.

14.60.3 TSmallIntField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TSmallIntField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TSmallIntField` ([568](#)) class. It calls the inherited constructor and then simply sets some of the `TField` ([477](#)) properties to work with 16-bit signed integer data.

See also: [TField \(477\)](#)

14.61 TStringField

14.61.1 Description

`TStringField` is the class used whenever a dataset has to handle a string field type (data type `ftString`). This class overrides some of the standard `TField` ([477](#)) methods to handle string data, and introduces some properties that are only pertinent for data fields of string type. It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TStringField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each string field when a dataset is opened.

See also: [TField \(477\)](#), [TWideStringField \(574\)](#), [TDataset \(425\)](#)

14.61.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
569	Create	Create a new instance of the TStringField class.
569	SetFieldType	Set the field type.

14.61.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
569	CodePage	r	Codepage of the field string data.
570	EditMask		Specify an edit mask for an edit control.
570	FixedChar	rw	Is the string declared with a fixed length ?
571	Size		Maximum size of the string.
570	Transliterate	rw	Should the field value be transliterated when reading or writing.
570	Value	rw	Value of the field as a string.

14.61.4 TStringField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TStringField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is used to create a new instance of the TStringField class. It initializes some TField ([477](#)) properties after having called the inherited constructor.

14.61.5 TStringField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field type.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetFieldType` is overridden in TStringField ([568](#)) to check the data type more accurately (`ftString` and `ftFixedChar`). No extra functionality is added.

See also: TField.DataType ([490](#))

14.61.6 TStringField.CodePage

Synopsis: Codepage of the field string data.

Declaration: `Property CodePage : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CodePage` is the code page of the string data in the field. It is determined when the field is initially created from the dataset's data, and cannot be changed while the dataset is active.

See also: TField.AsString ([487](#)), TField.AsUnicodeString ([488](#)), TField.AsAnsi8String ([477](#)), TFieldDef.CodePage ([507](#))

14.61.7 TStringField.FixedChar

Synopsis: Is the string declared with a fixed length ?

Declaration: `Property FixedChar : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FixedChar` is `True` if the underlying data engine has declared the field with a fixed length, as in a `SQL CHAR()` declaration: the field's value will then always be padded with as many spaces as needed to obtain the declared length of the field. If it is `False` then the declared length is simply the maximum length for the field, and no padding with spaces is performed.

14.61.8 TStringField.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the field value be transliterated when reading or writing.

Declaration: `Property Transliterate : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Transliterate` can be set to `True` if the field's contents should be transliterated prior to copying it from or to the field's buffer. Transliteration is done by a method of `TDataset`: `TDataset.Translate` (445).

See also: `TDataset.Translate` (445)

14.61.9 TStringField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a string.

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is overridden in `TField` to return the value of the field as a string. It returns the contents of `TField.AsString` (487) when read, or sets the `AsString` property when written to.

See also: `TField.AsString` (487), `TField.Value` (494)

14.61.10 TStringField.EditMask

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control.

Declaration: `Property EditMask :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

`TStringField` just changes the visibility of the `EditMask` property, it is introduced in `TField`.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TField.EditMask` ([491](#))

14.61.11 TStringField.Size

Synopsis: Maximum size of the string.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Size` is made published by the `TStringField` class so it can be set in the IDE: it is the declared maximum size of the string (in characters) and is used to calculate the size of the dataset buffer.

See also: `TField.Size` ([493](#))

14.62 TTimeField

14.62.1 Description

`TimeField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type time. (`TField.DataType` ([490](#)) equals `ftTime`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` ([477](#)) class to be able to work with time fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TTimeField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each time field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` ([425](#)), `TField` ([477](#)), `TDateTimeField` ([468](#)), `TDateField` ([468](#))

14.62.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
571	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a <code>TTimeField</code> class.

14.62.3 TTimeField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TTimeField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TTimeField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([477](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with time values.

See also: `TField` ([477](#))

14.63 TVarBytesField

14.63.1 Description

`TVarBytesField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of variable-size binary type. (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftVarBytes`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (477) class to be able to work with variable-size byte fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TVarBytesField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each variable-sized binary data field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField` (477), `TBytesField` (406)

14.63.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
572	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TVarBytesField</code> class.

14.63.3 TVarBytesField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TVarBytesField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TVarBytesField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (477) properties to configure the instance for working with variable-size binary data values.

See also: `TField` (477)

14.64 TVariantField

14.64.1 Description

`TVariantField` is the class used when a dataset must manage native variant-typed data. (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftVariant`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (477) class and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with variant data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TVariantField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each variant field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField` (477)

14.64.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
573	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TVariantField</code> class.

14.64.3 TVariantField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TVariantField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TVariantField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (477) properties to configure the instance for working with variant values.

See also: `TField` (477)

14.65 TWideMemoField

14.65.1 Description

`TWideMemoField` is the class used when a dataset must manage memo (Text BLOB) data. (`TField.DataType` (490) equals `ftWideMemo`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (477) class. All methods to be able to work with widestring memo fields have been implemented in the `TBlobField` (400) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TWideMemoField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each widestring memo field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (425), `TField` (477), `TBLOBField` (400), `TMemoField` (540), `TGraphicField` (523)

14.65.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
573	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TWideMemoField</code> class.

14.65.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
574	<code>Value</code>	<code>rw</code>	Value of the field's contents as a widestring.

14.65.4 TWideMemoField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TWideMemoField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TWideMemoField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (477) properties to configure the instance for working with widestring memo values.

See also: `TField` (477)

14.65.5 TWideMemoField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field's contents as a widestring.

Declaration: `Property Value : WideString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TWideMemoField` as a `WideString` value. Reading and writing this property is equivalent to reading and writing the `TField.AsWideString` (488) property.

See also: `TField.Value` (494), `Tfield.AsWideString` (488)

14.66 TWideStringField

14.66.1 Description

`TWideStringField` is the string field class instantiated for fields of data type `ftWideString`. This class overrides some of the standard `TField` (477) methods to handle widestring data, and introduces some properties that are only pertinent for data fields of widestring type. It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TWideStringField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each widestring field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (477), `TStringField` (568), `TDataset` (425)

14.66.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
574	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TWideStringField</code> class.
574	<code>SetFieldType</code>	Set the field type.

14.66.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
575	<code>Value</code>	<code>rw</code>	Value of the field as a widestring.

14.66.4 TWideStringField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TWideStringField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is used to create a new instance of the `TWideStringField` class. It initializes some `TField` (477) properties after having called the inherited constructor.

14.66.5 TWideStringField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field type.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldType` is overridden in `TWideStringField` (574) to check the data type more accurately (`ftWideString` and `ftFixedWideChar`). No extra functionality is added.

See also: `TField.DataType` (490)

14.66.6 TWideStringField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a widestring.

Declaration: `Property Value : WideString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is overridden by the `TWideStringField` to return a `WideString` value. It is the same value as the `TField.AsWideString` (488) property.

See also: `TField.AsWideString` (488), `TField.Value` (494)

14.67 TWordField

14.67.1 Description

`TWordField` is the class created when a dataset must manage 16-bit unsigned integer data, of datatype `ftWord`. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 16-bit unsigned integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TWordField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each word field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (477), `TNumericField` (542), `TLongintField` (531), `TSmallIntField` (568)

14.67.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
575	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TWordField</code> class.

14.67.3 TWordField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TWordField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TWordField` (575) class. It calls the inherited constructor and then simply sets some of the `TField` (477) properties to work with 16-bit unsigned integer data.

See also: `TField` (477)

Chapter 15

Reference for unit 'dbugintf'

15.1 Used units

Table 15.1: Used units by unit 'dbugintf'

Name	Page
dbugmsg	583
System	??

15.2 Overview

Use `dbugintf` to add debug messages to your application. The messages are not sent to standard output, but are sent to a debug server process which collects messages from various clients and displays them somehow on screen.

The unit is transparent in its use: it does not need initialization, it will start the debug server by itself if it can find it: the program should be called `debugserver` and should be in the `PATH`. When the first debug message is sent, the unit will initialize itself.

The FCL contains a sample debug server (`dbugsrv`) which can be started in advance, and which writes debug message to the console (both on Windows and Linux). The Lazarus project contains a visual application which displays the messages in a GUI.

The `dbugintf` unit relies on the SimpleIPC ([576](#)) mechanism to communicate with the debug server, hence it works on all platforms that have a functional version of that unit. It also uses `TProcess` to start the debug server if needed, so the process ([576](#)) unit should also be functional.

15.3 Writing a debug server.

Writing a debug server is relatively easy. It should instantiate a `TSimpleIPCServer` class from the SimpleIPC ([576](#)) unit, and use the `DebugServerID` as `ServerID` identification. This constant, as well as the record containing the message which is sent between client and server is defined in the `msgintf` unit.

The `dbugintf` unit relies on the SimpleIPC ([576](#)) mechanism to communicate with the debug server, hence it works on all platforms that have a functional version of that unit. It also uses `TProcess` to

start the debug server if needed, so the process (576) unit should also be functional.

15.4 Constants, types and variables

15.4.1 Resource strings

`SEntering = '> Entering '`

String used when sending method enter message.

`SExiting = '< Exiting '`

String used when sending method exit message.

`SProcessID = '%d Process %s (PID=%d) '`

String used when sending identification message to the server.

`SSeparator = '>-----<'`

String used when sending a separator line.

`SServerStartFailed = 'Failed to start debugserver. (%s) '`

String used to display an error message when the start of the debug server failed.

15.4.2 Types

`TDebugLevel = (dlInformation, dlWarning, dlError)`

Table 15.2: Enumeration values for type `TDebugLevel`

Value	Explanation
<code>dlError</code>	Error message.
<code>dlInformation</code>	Informational message.
<code>dlWarning</code>	Warning message.

`TDebugLevel` indicates the severity level of the debug message to be sent. By default, an informational message is sent.

`TErrorLevel = Array[TDebugLevel] of Integer`

`TErrorLevel` is used to easily convert an error level enumerated value to an integer value.

15.4.3 Variables

`DebugServerExe : string = type string = ''`

`DefaultDebugServerExe` is the filename for the default debug server executable.

`DefaultDebugServer : string = type string = DebugServerID`

`DefaultDebugServer` is the name at which the default debug server can be reached.

`SendError : string = type string = ''`

Whenever a call encounters an exception, the exception message is stored in this variable.

15.5 Procedures and functions

15.5.1 FreeDebugClient

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure FreeDebugClient`

Visibility: default

Description:

15.5.2 GetDebuggingEnabled

Synopsis: Check if sending of debug messages is enabled.

Declaration: `function GetDebuggingEnabled : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDebuggingEnabled` returns the value set by the last call to `SetDebuggingEnabled`. It is `True` by default.

See also: `SetDebuggingEnabled` ([582](#)), `SendDebug` ([579](#))

15.5.3 InitDebugClient

Synopsis: Initialize the debug client.

Declaration: `function InitDebugClient : Boolean`
`function InitDebugClient(const ShowPID: Boolean;`
`const ServerLogFilename: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitDebugClient` starts the debug server and then performs all necessary initialization of the debug IPC communication channel.

Normally this function should not be called. The `SendDebug` ([579](#)) call will initialize the debug client when it is first called.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` ([579](#)), `StartDebugServer` ([582](#))

15.5.4 SendBoolean

Synopsis: Send the value of a boolean variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendBoolean(const Identifier: string; const Value: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendBoolean` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (579) which sends the name and value of a boolean value as an informational message.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendDateTime` (579), `SendInteger` (580), `SendPointer` (581)

15.5.5 SendDateTime

Synopsis: Send the value of a `TDateTime` variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendDateTime(const Identifier: string; const Value: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDateTime` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (579) which sends the name and value of an integer value as an informational message. The value is converted to a string using the `DateTimeToStr` (??) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendBoolean` (579), `SendInteger` (580), `SendPointer` (581)

15.5.6 SendDebug

Synopsis: Send a message to the debug server.

Declaration: `procedure SendDebug(const Msg: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebug` sends the message `Msg` to the debug server as an informational message (debug level `dlInformation`). If no debug server is running, then an attempt will be made to start the server first.

The binary that is started is called `debugserver` and should be somewhere on the `PATH`. A sample binary which writes received messages to standard output is included in the FCL, it is called `dbugsrv`. This binary can be renamed to `debugserver` or can be started before the program is started.

Errors: Errors are silently ignored, any exception messages are stored in `SendError` (578).

See also: `SendDebugEx` (579), `SendDebugFmt` (580), `SendDebugFmtEx` (580)

15.5.7 SendDebugEx

Synopsis: Send debug message other than informational messages.

Declaration: `procedure SendDebugEx(const Msg: string; MType: TDebugLevel)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebugEx` allows to specify the debug level of the message to be sent in `MType`. By default, `SendDebug` (579) uses informational messages.

Other than that the function of `SendDebugEx` is equal to that of `SendDebug`

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendDebugFmt` (580), `SendDebugFmtEx` (580)

15.5.8 SendDebugFmt

Synopsis: Format and send a debug message.

Declaration: `procedure SendDebugFmt(const Msg: string; const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebugFmt` is a utility routine which formats a message by passing `Msg` and `Args` to `Format` (??) and sends the result to the debug server using `SendDebug` (579). It exists mainly to avoid the `Format` call in calling code.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendDebugEx` (579), `SendDebugFmtEx` (580), `#rtl.sysutils.format` (??)

15.5.9 SendDebugFmtEx

Synopsis: Format and send message with alternate type.

Declaration: `procedure SendDebugFmtEx(const Msg: string; const Args: Array of const; MType: TDebugLevel)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebugFmtEx` is a utility routine which formats a message by passing `Msg` and `Args` to `Format` (??) and sends the result to the debug server using `SendDebugEx` (579) with Debug level `MType`. It exists mainly to avoid the `Format` call in calling code.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendDebugEx` (579), `SendDebugFmt` (580), `#rtl.sysutils.format` (??)

15.5.10 SendInteger

Synopsis: Send the value of an integer variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendInteger(const Identifier: string; const Value: Integer; HexNotation: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendInteger` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (579) which sends the name and value of an integer value as an informational message. If `HexNotation` is `True`, then the value will be displayed using hexadecimal notation.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendBoolean` (579), `SendDateTime` (579), `SendPointer` (581)

15.5.11 SendMethodEnter

Synopsis: Send method enter message.

Declaration: `procedure SendMethodEnter(const MethodName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendMethodEnter` sends a "Entering MethodName" message to the debug server. After that it increases the message indentation (currently 2 characters). By sending a corresponding `SendMethodExit` (581), the indentation of messages can be decreased again.

By using the `SendMethodEnter` and `SendMethodExit` methods at the beginning and end of a procedure/method, it is possible to visually trace program execution.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendMethodExit` (581), `SendSeparator` (582)

15.5.12 SendMethodExit

Synopsis: Send method exit message.

Declaration: `procedure SendMethodExit(const MethodName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendMethodExit` sends a "Exiting MethodName" message to the debug server. After that it decreases the message indentation (currently 2 characters). By sending a corresponding `SendMethodEnter` (581), the indentation of messages can be increased again.

By using the `SendMethodEnter` and `SendMethodExit` methods at the beginning and end of a procedure/method, it is possible to visually trace program execution.

Note that the indentation level will not be made negative.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendMethodEnter` (581), `SendSeparator` (582)

15.5.13 SendPointer

Synopsis: Send the value of a pointer variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendPointer(const Identifier: string; const Value: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendInteger` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (579) which sends the name and value of a pointer value as an informational message. The pointer value is displayed using hexadecimal notation.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendBoolean` (579), `SendDateTime` (579), `SendInteger` (580)

15.5.14 SendSeparator

Synopsis: Send a separator message.

Declaration: `procedure SendSeparator`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `SendSeparator` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (579) which sends a short horizontal line to the debug server. It can be used to visually separate execution of blocks of code or blocks of values.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `SendMethodEnter` (581), `SendMethodExit` (581)

15.5.15 SetDebuggingEnabled

Synopsis: Temporary enables or disables debugging.

Declaration: `procedure SetDebuggingEnabled(const AValue: Boolean)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `SetDebuggingEnabled` can be used to temporarily enable or disable sending of debug messages: this allows to control the amount of messages sent to the debug server without having to remove the `SendDebug` (579) statements. By default, debugging is enabled. If set to `false`, debug messages are simply discarded till debugging is enabled again.

A value of `True` enables sending of debug messages. A value of `False` disables sending.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `GetDebuggingEnabled` (578), `SendDebug` (579)

15.5.16 StartDebugServer

Synopsis: Start the debug server.

Declaration: `function StartDebugServer(const aLogFilename: string) : Integer`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `StartDebugServer` attempts to start the debug server. The process started is called `debugserver` and should be located in the `PATH`.

Normally this function should not be called. The `SendDebug` (579) call will attempt to start the server by itself if it is not yet running.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `SendDebug` (579), `InitDebugClient` (578)

Chapter 16

Reference for unit 'dbugmsg'

16.1 Used units

Table 16.1: Used units by unit 'dbugmsg'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

16.2 Overview

`dbugmsg` is an auxiliary unit used in the `dbugintf` ([576](#)) unit. It defines the message protocol used between the debug unit and the debug server.

16.3 Constants, types and variables

16.3.1 Constants

```
DebugServerID = 'fpcdebugserver'
```

`DebugServerID` is a string which is used when creating the message protocol, it is used when identifying the server in the (platform dependent) client-server protocol.

```
lctError = 2
```

`lctError` is the identification of error messages.

```
lctIdentify = 3
```

`lctIdentify` is sent by the client to a server when it first connects. It's the first message, and contains the name of client application.

```
lctInformation = 0
```


`lctInformation` is the identification of informational messages.

`lctStop = - 1`

`lctStop` is sent by the client to a server when it disconnects.

`lctWarning = 1`

`lctWarning` is the identification of warning messages.

16.3.2 Types

16.4 Procedures and functions

16.4.1 DebugMessageName

Synopsis: Return the name of the debug message.

Declaration: `function DebugMessageName (msgType: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DebugMessageName` returns the name of the message type. It can be used to examine the `MsgType` field of a `TDebugMessage` (585) record, and if `msgType` contains a known type, it returns a string describing this type.

Errors: If `MsgType` contains an unknown type, 'Unknown' is returned.

16.4.2 ReadDebugMessageFromStream

Synopsis: Read a message from stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadDebugMessageFromStream (AStream: TStream;
var Msg: TDebugMessage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` reads a `TDebugMessage` (585) record (`Msg`) from the stream `AStream`.

The record is not read in a byte-ordering safe way, i.e. it cannot be exchanged between little- and big-endian systems.

Errors: If the stream contains not enough bytes or is malformed, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDebugMessage` (585), `WriteDebugMessageToStream` (584)

16.4.3 WriteDebugMessageToStream

Synopsis: Write a message to stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDebugMessageToStream (AStream: TStream;
const Msg: TDebugMessage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteDebugMessageFromStream` writes a `TDebugMessage` (585) record (`Msg`) to the stream `AStream`.

The record is not written in a byte-ordering safe way, i.e. it cannot be exchanged between little- and big-endian systems.

Errors: A stream write error may occur if the stream cannot be written to.

See also: `TDebugMessage` (585), `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` (584)

16.5 TDebugMessage

```
TDebugMessage = record
  MsgType : Integer;
  MsgTimeStamp : TDateTime
;
  Msg : string = type string;
end
```

`TDebugMessage` is a record that describes the message passed from the client to the server. It should not be passed directly in shared memory, as the string containing the message is allocated on the heap. Instead, the `WriteDebugMessageToStream` (584) and `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` (584) can be used to read or write the message from/to a stream.

Chapter 17

Reference for unit 'eventlog'

17.1 Used units

Table 17.1: Used units by unit 'eventlog'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

17.2 Overview

The EventLog unit implements the TEventLog ([588](#)) component, which is a component that can be used to send log messages to the system log (if it is available) or to a file.

17.3 Constants, types and variables

17.3.1 Resource strings

SErrLogFailedMsg = 'Failed to log entry (Error: %s) '

Message used to format an error when an error exception is raised.

SErrLogOpenStdErr = 'Standard Error not available for logging'

Error message if stderr is not open for writing.

SErrLogOpenStdOut = 'Standard Output not available for logging'

Error message if stdout is not open for writing.

SLogCustom = 'Custom (%d) '

Custom message formatting string.

SLogDebug = 'Debug'

Debug message name.

SLogError = 'Error'

Error message name.

SLogInfo = 'Info'

Informational message name.

SLogWarning = 'Warning'

Warning message name.

17.3.2 Types

TLogCategoryEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var Code: Word) of object

TLogCategoryEvent is the event type for the TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory (595) event handler. It should return a OS event category code for the etCustom log event type in the Code parameter.

TLogCodeEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var Code: DWord) of object

TLogCodeEvent is the event type for the OnGetCustomEvent (596) and OnGetCustomEventID (596) event handlers. It should return a OS system log code for the etCustom log event or event ID type in the Code parameter.

TLogMessageEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; EventType: TEventType
; const Msg: string) of object

TLogMessageEvent is the signature of the event handler TEventLog.OnLogMessage (596). If you write your own log message handling method, then it must use this signature.

TLogType = (ltSystem, ltFile, ltStdOut, ltStdErr)

Table 17.2: Enumeration values for type TLogType

Value	Explanation
ltFile	Write to file.
ltStdErr	Write log messages to standard error output.
ltStdOut	Write log messages to standard output.
ltSystem	Use the system log.

TLogType determines where the log messages are written. It is the type of the TEventLog.LogType (593) property. It can have 2 values:

ItFile This is used to write all messages to file. if no system logging mechanism exists, this is used as a fallback mechanism.

ItSystem This is used to send all messages to the system log mechanism. Which log mechanism this is, depends on the operating system.

17.4 ELogError

17.4.1 Description

ELogError is the exception used in the TEventLog (588) component to indicate errors.

See also: TEventLog (588)

17.5 TEventLog

17.5.1 Description

TEventLog is a component which can be used to send messages to the system log. In case no system log exists (such as on Windows 95/98 or DOS), the messages are written to a file. Messages can be logged using the general Log (591) call, or the specialized Warning (591), Error (592), Info (592) or Debug (592) calls, which have the event type predefined.

See also: Log (591), Warning (591), Error (592), Info (592), Debug (592)

17.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
592	Debug	Log a debug message.
589	Destroy	Clean up TEventLog instance.
592	Error	Log an error message to.
589	EventTypeToString	Create a string representation of an event type.
592	Info	Log an informational message.
591	Log	Log a message to the system log.
591	Pause	Pause the sending of log messages.
589	RegisterMessageFile	Register message file.
591	Resume	Resume sending of log messages if sending was paused.
590	UnRegisterMessageFile	Unregister the message file (needed on windows only).
591	Warning	Log a warning message.

17.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
593	Active	rw	Activate the log mechanism.
592	AppendContent	rw	Control whether output is appended to an existing file.
595	CustomLogType	rw	Custom log type ID.
594	DefaultEventType	rw	Default event type for the Log (591) call.
595	EventIDOffset	rw	Offset for event ID messages identifiers.
594	FileName	rw	File name for log file.
593	Identification	rw	Identification string for messages.
593	LogType	rw	Log type.
595	OnGetCustomCategory	rw	Event to retrieve custom message category.
596	OnGetCustomEvent	rw	Event to retrieve custom event Code.
596	OnGetCustomEventID	rw	Event to retrieve custom event ID.
596	OnLogMessage	rw	Implement custom handling of log messages.
596	Paused	rw	Is the message sending paused ?
594	RaiseExceptionOnError	rw	Determines whether logging errors are reported or ignored.
594	TimeStampFormat	rw	Format for the timestamp string.

17.5.4 TEventLog.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up TEventLog instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the TEventLog instance. It cleans any log structures that might have been set up to perform logging, by setting the Active ([593](#)) property to False.

See also: Active ([593](#))

17.5.5 TEventLog.EventTypeToString

Synopsis: Create a string representation of an event type.

Declaration: `function EventTypeToString(E: TEventType) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EventTypeToString` converts the event type E to a suitable string representation for logging purposes. It's mainly used when writing messages to file, as the system log usually has it's own mechanisms for displaying the various event types.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.TEventType` (??)

17.5.6 TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile

Synopsis: Register message file.

Declaration: `function RegisterMessageFile(AFileName: string) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RegisterMessageFile` is used on Windows to register the file `AFileName` containing the formatting strings for the system messages. This should be a file containing resource strings. If `AFileName` is empty, the filename of the application binary is substituted.

When a message is logged to the windows system log, Windows looks for a formatting string in the file registered with this call.

There are 2 kinds of formatting strings:

Category strings these should be numbered from 1 to 4

1 Should contain the description of the `etInfo` event type.

2 Should contain the description of the `etWarning` event type.

4 Should contain the description of the `etError` event type.

4 Should contain the description of the `etDebug` event type.

None of these strings should have a string substitution placeholder.

The second type of strings are the **message definitions**. Their number starts at `EventIDOffset` ([595](#)) (default is 1000) and each string should have 1 placeholder.

Free Pascal comes with a `fclel.res` resource file which contains default values for the 8 strings, in English. It can be linked in the application binary with the statement

```
{ $R fclel.res }
```

This file is generated from the `fclel.mc` and `fclel.rc` files that are distributed with the Free Pascal sources.

If the strings are not registered, windows will still display the event messages, but they will not be formatted nicely.

Note that while any messages logged with the event logger are displayed in the event viewer in Windows locks the file registered here. This usually means that the binary is locked.

On non-windows operating systems, this call is ignored.

Errors: If `AFileName` is invalid, false is returned.

17.5.7 TEventLog.UnRegisterMessageFile

Synopsis: Unregister the message file (needed on windows only).

Declaration: `function UnRegisterMessageFile : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnRegisterMessageFile` can be used to unregister a message file previously registered with `TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile` ([589](#)). This function is usable only on windows, it has no effect on other platforms. Note that windows locks the registered message file while viewing messages, so unregistering helps to avoid file locks while event viewer is open.

See also: `TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile` ([589](#))

17.5.8 TEventLog.Pause

Synopsis: Pause the sending of log messages.

Declaration: `procedure Pause`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pause` temporarily suspends the sending of log messages. the various log calls will simply eat the log message and return as if the message was sent.

The sending can be resumed by calling `Resume` ([591](#)).

See also: `TEventLog.Resume` ([591](#)), `TEventLog.Paused` ([596](#))

17.5.9 TEventLog.Resume

Synopsis: Resume sending of log messages if sending was paused.

Declaration: `procedure Resume`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Resume` resumes the sending of log messages if sending was paused through `Pause` ([586](#)).

See also: `TEventLog.Pause` ([591](#)), `TEventLog.Paused` ([596](#))

17.5.10 TEventLog.Log

Synopsis: Log a message to the system log.

Declaration: `procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Msg: string)`
`procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Fmt: string;`
`Args: Array of const)`
`procedure Log(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Log(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Log` sends a log message to the system log. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters. If `EventType` is specified, then it is used as the message event type. If `EventType` is omitted, then the event type is determined from `Default-EventType` ([594](#)).

If `EventType` is `etCustom`, then the `OnGetCustomEvent` ([596](#)), `OnGetCustomEventID` ([596](#)) and `OnGetCustomCategory` ([595](#)).

The other logging calls: `Info` ([592](#)), `Warning` ([591](#)), `Error` ([592](#)) and `Debug` ([592](#)) use the `Log` call to do the actual work.

See also: `Info` ([592](#)), `Warning` ([591](#)), `Error` ([592](#)), `Debug` ([592](#)), `OnGetCustomEvent` ([596](#)), `OnGetCustomEventID` ([596](#)), `OnGetCustomCategory` ([595](#))

17.5.11 TEventLog.Warning

Synopsis: Log a warning message.

Declaration: `procedure Warning(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Warning(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Warning` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etWarning` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([591](#)), Info ([592](#)), Error ([592](#)), Debug ([592](#))

17.5.12 TEventLog.Error

Synopsis: Log an error message to.

Declaration: `procedure Error(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Error(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Error` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etError` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([591](#)), Info ([592](#)), Warning ([591](#)), Debug ([592](#))

17.5.13 TEventLog.Debug

Synopsis: Log a debug message.

Declaration: `procedure Debug(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Debug(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Debug` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etDebug` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([591](#)), Info ([592](#)), Warning ([591](#)), Error ([592](#))

17.5.14 TEventLog.Info

Synopsis: Log an informational message.

Declaration: `procedure Info(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Info(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Info` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etInfo` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([591](#)), Warning ([591](#)), Error ([592](#)), Debug ([592](#))

17.5.15 TEventLog.AppendContent

Synopsis: Control whether output is appended to an existing file.

Declaration: `Property AppendContent : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `AppendContent` determines what is done when the log type is `ltFile` and a log file already exists. If the log file already exists, then the default behaviour (`AppendContent=False`) is to re-create the log file when the log is activated. If `AppendContent` is `True` then output will be appended to the existing file.

See also: `LogType` ([593](#)), `FileName` ([594](#))

17.5.16 TEventLog.Identification

Synopsis: Identification string for messages.

Declaration: `Property Identification : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Identification` is used as a string identifying the source of the messages in the system log. If it is empty, the filename part of the application binary is used.

See also: `Active` ([593](#)), `TimeStampFormat` ([594](#))

17.5.17 TEventLog.LogType

Synopsis: Log type.

Declaration: `Property LogType : TLogType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogType` is the type of the log: if it is `ltSystem`, then the system log is used, if it is available. If it is `ltFile` or there is no system log available, then the log messages are written to a file. The name for the log file is taken from the `FileName` ([594](#)) property.

See also: `FileName` ([594](#))

17.5.18 TEventLog.Active

Synopsis: Activate the log mechanism.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Active` determines whether the log mechanism is active: if set to `True`, the component connects to the system log mechanism, or opens the log file if needed. Any attempt to log a message while the log is not active will try to set this property to `True`. Disconnecting from the system log or closing the log file is done by setting the `Active` property to `False`.

If the connection to the system logger fails, or the log file cannot be opened, then setting this property may result in an exception.

See also: `Log` ([591](#))

17.5.19 TEventLog.RaiseExceptionOnError

Synopsis: Determines whether logging errors are reported or ignored.

Declaration: `Property RaiseExceptionOnError : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RaiseExceptionOnError` determines whether an error during a logging operation will be signaled with an exception or not. If set to `False`, errors will be silently ignored, thus not disturbing normal operation of the program.

17.5.20 TEventLog.DefaultEventType

Synopsis: Default event type for the `Log` (591) call.

Declaration: `Property DefaultEventType : TEventType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefaultEventType` is the event type used by the `Log` (591) call if it's `EventType` parameter is omitted.

See also: `Log` (591)

17.5.21 TEventLog.FileName

Synopsis: File name for log file.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileName` is the name of the log file used to log messages if no system logger is available or the `LogType` (593) is `ltFile`. If none is specified, then the name of the application binary is used, with the extension replaced by `.log`. The file is then located in the `/tmp` directory on UNIX-like systems, or in the application directory for Dos/Windows like systems.

See also: `LogType` (593)

17.5.22 TEventLog.TimeStampFormat

Synopsis: Format for the timestamp string.

Declaration: `Property TimeStampFormat : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TimeStampFormat` is the formatting string used to create a timestamp string when writing log messages to file. It should have a format suitable for the `FormatDateTime` (??) call. If it is left empty, then `yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss.zzz` is used.

See also: `TEventLog.Identification` (593)

17.5.23 TEventLog.CustomLogType

Synopsis: Custom log type ID.

Declaration: `Property CustomLogType : Word`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CustomLogType` is used in the `EventTypeToString` (589) to format the custom log event type string.

See also: `EventTypeToString` (589)

17.5.24 TEventLog.EventIDOffset

Synopsis: Offset for event ID messages identifiers.

Declaration: `Property EventIDOffset : DWord`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `EventIDOffset` is the offset for the message formatting strings in the windows resource file. This property is ignored on other platforms.

The message strings in the file registered with the `RegisterMessageFile` (589) call are windows resource strings. They each have a unique ID, which must be communicated to windows. In the resource file distributed by Free Pascal, the resource strings are numbered from 1000 to 1004. The actual number communicated to windows is formed by adding the ordinal value of the message's eventtype to `EventIDOffset` (which is by default 1000), which means that by default, the string numbers are:

1000Custom event types

1001Information event type

1002Warning event type

1003Error event type

1004Debug event type

See also: `RegisterMessageFile` (589)

17.5.25 TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom message category.

Declaration: `Property OnGetCustomCategory : TLogCategoryEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnGetCustomCategory` is called on the windows platform to determine the category of a custom event type. It should return an ID which will be used by windows to look up the string which describes the message category in the file containing the resource strings.

See also: `OnGetCustomEventID` (596), `OnGetCustomEvent` (596)

17.5.26 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEventID

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom event ID.

Declaration: Property `OnGetCustomEventID` : `TLogCodeEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnGetCustomEventID` is called on the windows platform to determine the category of a custom event type. It should return an ID which will be used by windows to look up the string which formats the message, in the file containing the resource strings.

See also: `OnGetCustomCategory` ([595](#)), `OnGetCustomEvent` ([596](#))

17.5.27 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEvent

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom event Code.

Declaration: Property `OnGetCustomEvent` : `TLogCodeEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnGetCustomEvent` is called on the windows platform to determine the event code of a custom event type. It should return an ID.

See also: `OnGetCustomCategory` ([595](#)), `OnGetCustomEventID` ([596](#))

17.5.28 TEventLog.OnLogMessage

Synopsis: Implement custom handling of log messages.

Declaration: Property `OnLogMessage` : `TLogMessageEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnLogMessage` can be used to implement custom handling of log messages. It is always called, regardless of the `LogType` ([593](#)) setting.

See also: `LogType` ([593](#)), `TLogMessageEvent` ([587](#))

17.5.29 TEventLog.Paused

Synopsis: Is the message sending paused ?

Declaration: Property `Paused` : `Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Paused` indicates whether the sending of messages is temporarily suspended or not. Setting it to `True` has the same effect as calling `Pause` ([591](#)). Setting it to `False` has the same effect as calling `Resume` ([591](#)).

See also: `TEventLog.Pause` ([591](#)), `TEventLog.Resume` ([591](#))

Chapter 18

Reference for unit 'ezcgi'

18.1 Used units

Table 18.1: Used units by unit 'ezcgi'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

18.2 Overview

`ezcgi`, written by Michael Hess, provides a single class which offers simple access to the CGI environment which a CGI program operates under. It supports both GET and POST methods. It's intended for simple CGI programs which do not need full-blown CGI support. File uploads are not supported by this component.

To use the unit, a descendent of the `TEZCGI` class should be created and the `DoPost` ([600](#)) or `DoGet` ([600](#)) methods should be overridden.

18.3 Constants, types and variables

18.3.1 Constants

```
hexTable = '0123456789ABCDEF'
```

String constant used to convert a number to a hexadecimal code or back.

18.4 ECGIException

18.4.1 Description

Exception raised by `TEZcgi` ([598](#)).

See also: `TEZcgi` ([598](#))

18.5 TEZcgi

18.5.1 Description

`TEZcgi` implements all functionality to analyze the CGI environment and query the variables present in it. It's main use is the exposed variables.

Programs wishing to use this class should make a descendent class of this class and override the `DoPost` (600) or `DoGet` (600) methods. To run the program, an instance of this class must be created, and it's `Run` (599) method should be invoked. This will analyze the environment and call the `DoPost` or `DoGet` method, depending on what HTTP method was used to invoke the program.

18.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
598	Create	Creates a new instance of the <code>TEZCGI</code> component.
598	Destroy	Removes the <code>TEZCGI</code> component from memory.
600	DoGet	Method to handle <code>GET</code> requests.
600	DoPost	Method to handle <code>POST</code> requests.
600	GetValue	Return the value of a request variable.
599	PutLine	Send a line of output to the web-client.
599	Run	Run the CGI application.
599	WriteContent	Writes the content type to standard output.

18.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
602	Email	rw	Email of the server administrator.
602	Name	rw	Name of the server administrator.
601	Names	r	Indexed array with available variable names.
600	Values	r	Variables passed to the CGI script.
602	VariableCount	r	Number of available variables.
601	Variables	r	Indexed array with variables as name=value pairs.

18.5.4 TEZcgi.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TEZCGI` component.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes the CGI program's environment: it reads the environment variables passed to the CGI program and stores them in the `Variable` (601) property.

See also: `Variables` (601), `Names` (601), `Values` (600)

18.5.5 TEZcgi.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the `TEZCGI` component from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes all variables from memory and then calls the inherited `destroy`, removing the `TEZCGI` instance from memory.

`Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`

See also: `Create` ([598](#))

18.5.6 TEZcgi.Run

Synopsis: Run the CGI application.

Declaration: `procedure Run`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Run` analyses the variables passed to the application, processes the request variables (it stores them in the `Variables` ([601](#)) property) and calls the `DoPost` ([600](#)) or `DoGet` ([600](#)) methods, depending on the method passed to the web server.

After creating the instance of `TEZCGI`, the `Run` method is the only method that should be called when using this component.

See also: `Variables` ([601](#)), `DoPost` ([600](#)), `DoGet` ([600](#))

18.5.7 TEZcgi.WriteContent

Synopsis: Writes the content type to standard output.

Declaration: `procedure WriteContent(cType: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteContent` writes the content type `cType` to standard output, followed by an empty line. After this method was called, no more HTTP headers may be written to standard output. Any HTTP headers should be written before `WriteContent` is called. It should be called from the `DoPost` ([600](#)) or `DoGet` ([600](#)) methods.

See also: `DoPost` ([600](#)), `DoGet` ([600](#)), `PutLine` ([599](#))

18.5.8 TEZcgi.PutLine

Synopsis: Send a line of output to the web-client.

Declaration: `procedure PutLine(sOut: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PutLine` writes a line of text (`sOut`) to the web client (currently, to standard output). It should be called only after `WriteContent` ([599](#)) was called with a content type of `text`. The sent text is not processed in any way, i.e. no HTML entities or so are inserted instead of special HTML characters. This should be done by the user.

Errors: No check is performed whether the content type is right.

See also: `WriteContent` ([599](#))

18.5.9 TEZcgi.GetValue

Synopsis: Return the value of a request variable.

Declaration: `function GetValue(Index: string; defaultValue: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetValue` returns the value of the variable named `Index`, and returns `DefaultValue` if it is empty or does not exist.

See also: [Values \(600\)](#)

18.5.10 TEZcgi.DoPost

Synopsis: Method to handle POST requests.

Declaration: `procedure DoPost; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoPost` is called by the `Run (599)` method the POST method was used to invoke the CGI application. It should be overridden in descendents of `TEZcgi` to actually handle the request.

See also: [Run \(599\)](#), [DoGet \(600\)](#)

18.5.11 TEZcgi.DoGet

Synopsis: Method to handle GET requests.

Declaration: `procedure DoGet; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoGet` is called by the `Run (599)` method the GET method was used to invoke the CGI application. It should be overridden in descendents of `TEZcgi` to actually handle the request.

See also: [Run \(599\)](#), [DoPost \(600\)](#)

18.5.12 TEZcgi.Values

Synopsis: Variables passed to the CGI script.

Declaration: `Property Values[Index: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Values` is a name-based array of variables that were passed to the script by the web server or the HTTP request. The `Index` variable is the name of the variable whose value should be retrieved. The following standard values are available:

AUTH_TYPEAuthorization type

CONTENT_LENGTHContent length

CONTENT_TYPEContent type

GATEWAY_INTERFACEUsed gateway interface
PATH_INFORequested URL
PATH_TRANSLATEDTransformed URL
QUERY_STRINGClient query string
REMOTE_ADDRAddress of remote client
REMOTE_HOSTDNS name of remote client
REMOTE_IDENTRemote identity.
REMOTE_USERRemote user
REQUEST_METHODRequest methods (POST or GET)
SCRIPT_NAMEScript name
SERVER_NAMEServer host name
SERVER_PORTServer port
SERVER_PROTOCOLServer protocol
SERVER_SOFTWAREWeb server software
HTTP_ACCEPTAccepted responses
HTTP_ACCEPT_CHARSETAccepted character sets
HTTP_ACCEPT_ENCODINGAccepted encodings
HTTP_IF_MODIFIED_SINCEProxy information
HTTP_REFERERReferring page
HTTP_USER_AGENTClient software name

Other than the standard list, any variables that were passed by the web-client request, are also available. Note that the variables are case insensitive.

See also: [TEZCGI.Variables \(601\)](#), [TEZCGI.Names \(601\)](#), [TEZCGI.GetValue \(600\)](#), [TEZcgi.VariableCount \(602\)](#)

18.5.13 TEZcgi.Names

Synopsis: Indexed array with available variable names.

Declaration: `Property Names[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Names` provides indexed access to the available variable names. The `Index` may run from 0 to `VariableCount` ([602](#)). Any other value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: [TEZcgi.Variables \(601\)](#), [TEZcgi.Values \(600\)](#), [TEZcgi.GetValue \(600\)](#), [TEZcgi.VariableCount \(602\)](#)

18.5.14 TEZcgi.Variables

Synopsis: Indexed array with variables as name=value pairs.

Declaration: `Property Variables[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Variables` provides indexed access to the available variable names and values. The variables are returned as `Name=Value` pairs. The `Index` may run from 0 to `VariableCount` (602). Any other value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: `TEZcgi.Names` (601), `TEZcgi.Values` (600), `TEZcgi.GetValue` (600), `TEZcgi.VariableCount` (602)

18.5.15 `TEZcgi.VariableCount`

Synopsis: Number of available variables.

Declaration: `Property VariableCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `TEZcgi.VariableCount` returns the number of available CGI variables. This includes both the standard CGI environment variables and the request variables. The actual names and values can be retrieved with the `Names` (601) and `Variables` (601) properties.

See also: `Names` (601), `Variables` (601), `TEZcgi.Values` (600), `TEZcgi.GetValue` (600)

18.5.16 `TEZcgi.Name`

Synopsis: Name of the server administrator.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is used when displaying an error message to the user. This should set prior to calling the `TEZcgi.Run` (599) method.

See also: `TEZcgi.Run` (599), `TEZcgi.Email` (602)

18.5.17 `TEZcgi.Email`

Synopsis: Email of the server administrator.

Declaration: `Property Email : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Email` is used when displaying an error message to the user. This should set prior to calling the `TEZcgi.Run` (599) method.

See also: `TEZcgi.Run` (599), `TEZcgi.Name` (602)

Chapter 19

Reference for unit 'fpjson'

19.1 Used units

Table 19.1: Used units by unit 'fpjson'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contnrs	218
System	??
sysutils	??
Variants	??

19.2 Overview

The JSON unit implements JSON support for Free Pascal. It contains the data structures (TJSONData [\(640\)](#) and descendent objects) to treat JSON data and output JSON as a string TJSONData.AsJSON [\(649\)](#). The generated JSON can be formatted in several ways TJSONData.FormatJSON [\(645\)](#).

Using the JSON data structures is simple. Instantiate an appropriate descendent of TJSONData, set the data and call AsJSON. The following JSON data types are supported:

Numbers in one of TJSONIntegerNumber [\(652\)](#), TJSONFloatNumber [\(650\)](#) or TJSONInt64Number [\(651\)](#), depending on the type of the number.

Strings in TJSONString [\(667\)](#).

Boolean in TJSONBoolean [\(639\)](#).

null is supported using TJSONNull [\(653\)](#)

Array is supported using TJSONArray [\(629\)](#)

Object is supported using TJSONObject [\(655\)](#)

The constructors of these objects allow to set the value, making them very easy to use. The memory management is automatic in the sense that arrays and objects own their values, and when the array or object is freed, all data in it is freed as well.

Typical use would be:

```

Var
  O : TJSONObject;

begin
  O:=TJSONObject.Create(['Age',44,
                        'Firstname','Michael',
                        'Lastname','Van Canneyt']);

  Writeln(O.AsJSON);
  Write('Welcome ',O.Strings['Firstname'],' ');
  Writeln(O.Get('Lastname','')); // empty default.
  Writeln(' your current age is ',O.Integers('Age'));
  O.Free;
end;

```

The `TJSONArray` and `TJSONObject` classes offer methods to examine, get and set the various members and search through the various members.

Currently the JSON support only allows the use of UTF-8 data.

Parsing incoming JSON and constructing the JSON data structures is not implemented in the `fpJSON` unit. For this, the `jsonscanner` unit must be included in the program unit clause. This sets several callback hooks (using `SetJSONParserHandler` (626) and then the `GetJSON` (624) function can then be used to transform a string or stream to JSON data structures:

```

uses fpjson, jsonparser;

Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=GetJSON('{ "Children" : ['+
             ' { "Age" : 23, '+
             '   "Names" : { "LastName" : "Rodriquez",'+
             '               "FirstName" : "Roberto" }},'+
             ' { "Age" : 20, '+
             '   "Names" : { "LastName" : "Rodriquez",'+
             '               "FirstName" : "Maria" } }'+
             ' ]}');
  E:=D.FindPath('Children[1].Names.FirstName');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
  D.Free;
end.

```

will print "Maria".

The `FPJSON` code does not use hardcoded class names when creating the JSON: it uses the various `CreateJSON` (623) functions to create the data. These functions use a registry of classes, so it is possible to create descendents of the classes in the `fpjson` unit and have these used for construction of JSON Data structures. The `GetJSONInstanceType` (625) and `SetJSONInstanceType` (626) functions can be used to get or set the classes that must be used. the default parser used by `GetJSON` (624) will also use these functions.

19.3 Constants, types and variables

19.3.1 Constants

`ActualValueJSONTypes = ValueJSONTypes - [jtNull]`

`ActualValueJSONTypes` is a set constant designating the JSON types that have a non-null single value, i.e., all types except array or object or null.

`AsCompactJSON = [foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject, foskipWhiteSpace, foDoNotQuoteMembers]`

`AsCompressedJSON` can be used to let `FormatJSON` (645) behave as `TJSONData.AsJSON` (649) with `TJSONData.CompressedJSON` equal to `True` and `TJSONData.UnquotedMemberNames` equal to `True`.

`AsCompressedJSON = [foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject, foskipWhiteSpace]`

`AsCompressedJSON` can be used to let `TJSONData.FormatJSON` (645) behave as `TJSONData.AsJSON` (649) with `TJSONData.CompressedJSON` (645) equal to `True`

`AsJSONFormat = [foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject]`

`AsJSONFormat` contains the options that make `TJSONData.FormatJSON` (645) behave like `TJSONData.AsJSON` (649)

`DefaultFormat = []`

`DefaultFormat` contains the default formatting options used in formatted JSON.

`DefaultIndentSize = 2`

`DefaultIndentSize` is the default indent size used in formatted JSON.

`jitNumberLargeInt = jitNumberInt64`

LargeInt type definition.

`StructuredJSONTypes = [jtArray, jtObject]`

`StructuredJSONTypes` is a set constant designating the JSON types that contain multiple values: array or object.

`ValueJSONTypes = [jtNumber, jtString, jtBoolean, jtNull]`

`ValueJSONTypes` is a set constant designating the JSON types that have a single value, i.e., all types except array or object.

19.3.2 Types

PJSONCharType = ^TJSONCharType

PJSONCharType is a pointer to a TJSONCharType (610) character. It is used while parsing JSON.

```
TFormatOption = (foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject,
  foDoNotQuoteMembers, foUseTabchar, foSkipWhiteSpace,
  foSkipWhiteSpaceOnlyLeading)
```

Table 19.2: Enumeration values for type TFormatOption

Value	Explanation
foDoNotQuoteMembers	Do not use quote characters around object member names.
foSingleLineArray	Keep all array elements on a single line.
foSingleLineObject	Keep all object elements on a single line.
foSkipWhiteSpace	Skip whitespace.
foSkipWhiteSpaceOnlyLeading	Only skip leading whitespace when formatting JSON.
foUseTabchar	Use the tabulator character for indents.

TFormatOption enumerates the various formatting options that can be used in the TJSONData.FormatJSON (645) function.

```
TFormatOptions = Set of TFormatOption = (foDoNotQuoteMembers, foSingleLineArray
  ,
  foSingleLineObject, foSkipWhiteSpace,
  foSkipWhiteSpaceOnlyLeading, foUseTabchar)
```

TFormatOptions is the set definition used to specify options in TJSONData.FormatJSON (645).

```
TFPJSStream = type class(TCustomMemoryStream)
  FCapacity = ;
  procedure
  SetCapacity;
  procedure Realloc;
  property Capacity : ;
  procedure
  Destroy;
  procedure Clear;
  procedure LoadFromStream;
  procedure
  LoadFromFile;
  procedure SetSize;
  procedure Write;
end
```

TFPJSStream resolves to a stream on native platforms, TJSArray in javascript runtimes.

```
TJSONArrayClass = type class(TJSONData)
private
  FList : TFPObjectList
```

```

;
function GetArrays(Index: Integer) : TJSONArray;
function GetBooleans
(Index: Integer) : Boolean;
function GetFloats(Index: Integer)
: TJSONFloat;
function GetIntegers(Index: Integer) : Integer;
function GetNulls(Index: Integer) : Boolean;
function GetObjects
(Index: Integer) : TJSONObject;
function GetStrings(Index: Integer
) : TJJSONStringType;
function GetTypes(Index: Integer) : TJSONType
;
function GetInt64s(Index: Integer) : Int64;
function GetQWords
(Index: Integer) : QWord;
function GetUnicodeStrings(Index: Integer
) : TJJSONUnicodeStringType;
procedure SetInt64s(Index: Integer;
const AValue: Int64);
procedure SetQWords(Index: Integer; AValue
: QWord);
procedure SetUnicodeStrings(Index: Integer;
const AValue: TJJSONUnicodeStringType);
procedure
SetArrays(Index: Integer; const AValue: TJSONArray);
procedure
SetBooleans(Index: Integer; const AValue: Boolean);
procedure SetFloats
(Index: Integer; const AValue: TJSONFloat);
procedure SetIntegers
(Index: Integer; const AValue: Integer);
procedure SetObjects(Index
: Integer; const AValue: TJSONObject);
procedure SetStrings(Index
: Integer; const AValue: TJJSONStringType);
protected
function DoFindPath
(const APath: TJJSONStringType;
out NotFound
: TJJSONStringType) : TJSONData; Override;
procedure Convertererror
(From: Boolean);
function GetAsBoolean : Boolean; Override;
function
GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat; Override;
function GetAsInteger : Integer
; Override;
function GetAsInt64 : Int64; Override;
function
GetAsQWord : QWord; Override;
procedure SetAsInt64(const AValue
: Int64); Override;

```



```

procedure SetAsQword(const AValue: QWord);
Override;
procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue: Boolean); Override
;
procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJSONFloat); Override;
procedure
SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer); Override;
function GetAsJSON
: TJSONStringType; Override;
function GetAsString : TJSONStringType
; Override;
procedure SetAsString(const AValue: TJSONStringType
); Override;
function GetValue : TJSONVariant; Override;
procedure
SetValue(const AValue: TJSONVariant); Override;
function GetCount
: Integer; Override;
function GetItem(Index: Integer) : TJSONData
; Override;
procedure SetItem(Index: Integer; const AValue: TJSONData
); Override;
function DoFormatJSON(Options: TFormatOptions; CurrentIndent
: Integer;
                        Indent: Integer) : TJSONStringType
; Override;
public
Create;
destructor Destroy; Override;
class
function JSONType : TJSONtype; Override;
function Clone : TJSONData
; Override;
procedure Iterate(Iterator: TJSONArrayIterator; Data
: TObject);
function IndexOf(obj: TJSONData) : Integer;
function
GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator; Override;
procedure Clear
; Override;
Add;
procedure Delete(Index: Integer);
procedure
Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer);
Extract;
Insert;
procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer);
procedure
Remove(Item: TJSONData);
procedure Sort(Compare: TListSortCompare
);
property Items : ; default;
property Types[Index: Integer]
: TJSONtype;

```

```

property Nulls[Index: Integer]: Boolean;
property
Integers[Index: Integer]: Integer;
property Int64s[Index: Integer
]: Int64;
property LargeInts[Index: Integer]: TJSONLargeInt;
property
QWords[Index: Integer]: QWord;
property UnicodeStrings[Index: Integer
]: TJSONUnicodeStringType;
property Strings[Index: Integer]: TJSONStringType
;
property Floats[Index: Integer]: TJSONFloat;
property Booleans
[Index: Integer]: Boolean;
property Arrays[Index: Integer]: TJSONArray
;
property Objects[Index: Integer]: TJSONObject;
end

```

TJSONArray is the class type for the TJSONArray (629) class. It is used in CreateJSONArray (624).

```

TJSONArrayIterator = procedure(Item: TJSONData; Data: TObject;
var Continue: Boolean) of object

```

TJSONArrayIterator is the procedural callback used by TJSONArray.Iterate (631) to iterate over the values. Item is the current item in the iteration. Data is the data passed on when calling Iterate. The Continue parameter can be set to false to stop the iteration loop.

```

TJSONBooleanClass = type class(TJSONData)
private
FValue : Boolean
;
protected
function GetValue : TJSONVariant; Override;
procedure
SetValue(const AValue: TJSONVariant); Override;
function GetAsBoolean
: Boolean; Override;
function GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat; Override
;
function GetAsInteger : Integer; Override;
function GetAsInt64
: Int64; Override;
function GetAsQWord : QWord; Override;
procedure
SetAsInt64(const AValue: Int64); Override;
procedure SetAsQword
(const AValue: QWord); Override;
procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue
: Boolean); Override;
procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJSONFloat

```

```

); Override;
procedure SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer); Override
;
function GetAsJSON : TJJSONStringType; Override;
function GetAsString
: TJJSONStringType; Override;
procedure SetAsString(const AValue
: TJJSONStringType); Override;
public
constructor Create(AValue
: Boolean); Reintroduce;
class function JSONType : TJJSONtype;
Override;
procedure Clear; Override;
function Clone : TJJSONData
; Override;
end

```

TJJSONBooleanClass is the class type of TJJSONBoolean (639). It is used in the factory methods.

TJJSONCharType = type AnsiChar

TJJSONCharType is the type of a single character in a TJJSONStringType (622) string. It is used by the parser.

```

TJJSONDataClass = type class(TObject)
private
  ElementSeps : = Array
  [Boolean] of UTF8String = (' ', ' ', ' ', ' ');
  FCompressedJSON : Boolean
  ;
  FElementSep : TJJSONStringType;
  class procedure DetermineElementSeparators
  ;
  class function GetCompressedJSON : Boolean; Static;
  class procedure
  SetCompressedJSON(AValue: Boolean); Static;
protected
  DoError
  ;
  function DoFindPath(const APath: TJJSONStringType;
  out NotFound: TJJSONStringType) : TJJSONData; Virtual;
  function GetAsBoolean : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract;
  function
  GetAsFloat : TJJSONFloat; Virtual; Abstract;
  function GetAsInteger
  : Integer; Virtual; Abstract;
  function GetIsNull : Boolean;
  Virtual;
  function GetAsInt64 : Int64; Virtual; Abstract;
  function
  GetAsQWord : QWord; Virtual; Abstract;
  function GetAsUnicodeString

```

```

: TJJSONUnicodeStringType; Virtual;
procedure SetAsInt64(const
AValue: Int64); Virtual; Abstract;
procedure SetAsQword(const
AValue: QWord); Virtual; Abstract;
procedure SetAsUnicodeString
(const AValue: TJJSONUnicodeStringType)
; Virtual;
procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue: Boolean);
Virtual; Abstract;
procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJJSONFloat
); Virtual; Abstract;
procedure SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer
); Virtual; Abstract;
function GetAsJSON : TJJSONStringType; Virtual
; Abstract;
function GetAsString : TJJSONStringType; Virtual;
Abstract;
procedure SetAsString(const AValue: TJJSONStringType)
; Virtual
; Abstract;

function GetValue
: TJJSONVariant; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure SetValue(const AValue
: TJJSONVariant); Virtual; Abstract;
function GetItem(Index: Integer
) : TJJSONData; Virtual;
procedure SetItem(Index: Integer; const
AValue: TJJSONData); Virtual;
function DoFormatJSON(Options: TFormatOptions
; CurrentIndent: Integer;
Indent: Integer
) : TJJSONStringType; Virtual;
function GetCount : Integer; Virtual
;
public
class function JSONType : TJJSONType; Virtual;
property
CompressedJSON : Boolean;
constructor Create; Virtual;
procedure
Clear; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure DumpJSON(S: TFPJSStream)
;
function GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator; Virtual;
function
FindPath(const APath: TJJSONStringType) : TJJSONData;
function GetPath
(const APath: TJJSONStringType) : TJJSONData;
function Clone : TJJSONData
; Virtual; Abstract;
function FormatJSON(Options: TFormatOptions
; Indentsize: Integer
) : TJJSONStringType;

```

```

property Count : Integer;
property Items[Index: Integer]: TJSONData
;
property Value : TJSONVariant;
property AsString : TJSONStringType
;
property AsUnicodeString : TJSONUnicodeStringType;
property
AsInt64 : Int64;
property AsQWord : QWord;
property AsLargeInt
: TJSONLargeInt;
property AsFloat : TJSONFloat;
property AsInteger
: Integer;
property AsBoolean : Boolean;
property IsNull : Boolean
;
property AsJSON : TJSONStringType;
end

```

TJSONDataClass is used in the [CreateJSON \(623\)](#), [SetJSONInstanceType \(626\)](#) and [GetJSONInstanceType \(625\)](#) functions to set the actual classes used when creating JSON data.

TJSONFloat = type Double

TJSONFloat is the floating point type used in the JSON support. It is currently a double, but this can be changed easily.

```

TJSONFloatNumberClass = type class(TJSONNumber)
private
    FValue
    : TJSONFloat;
protected
    function GetAsBoolean : Boolean; Override
    ;
    function GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat; Override;
    function GetAsInteger
    : Integer; Override;
    function GetAsJSON : TJSONStringType; Override
    ;
    function GetAsString : TJSONStringType; Override;
    function
    GetValue : TJSONVariant; Override;
    function GetAsInt64 : Int64
    ; Override;
    function GetAsQWord : QWord; Override;
    procedure
    SetAsInt64(const AValue: Int64); Override;
    procedure SetAsQword
    (const AValue: QWord); Override;
    procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue
    : Boolean); Override;

```

```

procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJSONFloat
); Override;
procedure SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer); Override
;
procedure SetAsString(const AValue: TJSONStringType); Override
;
procedure SetValue(const AValue: TJSONVariant); Override;
public
  constructor Create(AValue: TJSONFloat); Reintroduce;
  class function
    NumberType : TJSONNumberType; Override;
  procedure Clear; Override
  ;
  function Clone : TJSONData; Override;
end

```

TJSONFloatNumberClass is the class type of TJSONFloatNumber (650). It is used in the factory methods.

```

TJSONInstanceType = (jitUnknown, jitNumberInteger, jitNumberInt64,
  jitNumberQWord, jitNumberFloat, jitString, jitBoolean
  ,
    jitNull, jitArray, jitObject)

```

Table 19.3: Enumeration values for type TJSONInstanceType

Value	Explanation
jitArray	Array value.
jitBoolean	Boolean value.
jitNull	Null value.
jitNumberFloat	Floating point real number value.
jitNumberInt64	64-bit signed integer number value.
jitNumberInteger	32-bit signed integer number value.
jitNumberQWord	Qword integer number type.
jitObject	Object value.
jitString	String value.
jitUnknown	Unknown.

TJSONInstanceType is used by the parser to determine what kind of TJSONData (640) descendent to create for a particular data item. It is a more fine-grained division than TJSONType (622)

```

TJSONInt64NumberClass = type class(TJSONNumber)
private
  FValue
    : Int64;
protected
  function GetAsBoolean : Boolean; Override;
  function GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat; Override;
  function GetAsInteger
    : Integer; Override;
  function GetAsInt64 : Int64; Override;

```

```

function GetAsQWord : QWord;  Override;
procedure SetAsBoolean
(const AValue: Boolean);  Override;
procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue
: TJSONFloat);  Override;
procedure SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer
);  Override;
procedure SetAsInt64(const AValue: Int64);  Override
;
procedure SetAsQword(const AValue: QWord);  Override;
function
GetAsJSON : TJJSONStringType;  Override;
function GetAsString :
TJJSONStringType;  Override;
procedure SetAsString(const AValue
: TJJSONStringType);  Override;
function GetValue : TJJSONVariant
;  Override;
procedure SetValue(const AValue: TJJSONVariant);  Override
;
public
  constructor Create(AValue: Int64);  Reintroduce;
  class
    function NumberType : TJJSONNumberType;  Override;
    procedure Clear
    ;  Override;
    function Clone : TJJSONData;  Override;
end

```

TJJSONInt64NumberClass is the class type of TJJSONInt64Number ([651](#)). It is used in the factory methods.

```

TJJSONIntegerNumberClass = type class(TJJSONNumber)
private
  FValue
  : Integer;
protected
  function GetAsBoolean : Boolean;  Override
  ;
  function GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat;  Override;
  function GetAsInteger
  : Integer;  Override;
  function GetAsInt64 : Int64;  Override;
  function GetAsQWord : QWord;  Override;
  procedure SetAsInt64(const
  AValue: Int64);  Override;
  procedure SetAsQword(const AValue: QWord
  );  Override;
  procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue: Boolean);  Override
  ;
  procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJSONFloat);  Override;
  procedure
  SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer);  Override;
  function GetAsJSON

```

```

: TJJSONStringType; Override;
function GetAsString : TJJSONStringType
; Override;
procedure SetAsString(const AValue: TJJSONStringType
); Override;
function GetValue : TJJSONVariant; Override;
procedure
SetValue(const AValue: TJJSONVariant); Override;
public
constructor
Create(AValue: Integer); Reintroduce;
class function NumberType
: TJJSONNumberType; Override;
procedure Clear; Override;
function
Clone : TJJSONData; Override;
end

```

TJJSONIntegerNumberClass is the class type of TJJSONIntegerNumber ([652](#)). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJJSONLargeInt = type Int64
```

TJJSONLargeInt resolves to the largest possible integer type for the current platform. This is NativeInt for Pas2JS and Int64 for all other platforms.

```

TJJSONLargeIntNumber = type class(TJJSONNumber)
private
    FValue : Int64
;
protected
    function GetAsBoolean : Boolean; Override;
    function
GetAsFloat : TJJSONFloat; Override;
    function GetAsInteger : Integer
; Override;
    function GetAsInt64 : Int64; Override;
    function
GetAsQWord : QWord; Override;
    procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue
: Boolean); Override;
    procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJJSONFloat
); Override;
    procedure SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer); Override
;
    procedure SetAsInt64(const AValue: Int64); Override;
    procedure
SetAsQword(const AValue: QWord); Override;
    function GetAsJSON
: TJJSONStringType; Override;
    function GetAsString : TJJSONStringType
; Override;
    procedure SetAsString(const AValue: TJJSONStringType

```



```

); Override;
function GetValue : TJSONVariant; Override;
procedure
SetValue(const AValue: TJSONVariant); Override;
public
constructor
Create(AValue: Int64); Reintroduce;
class function NumberType
: TJSONNumberType; Override;
procedure Clear; Override;
function
Clone : TJSONData; Override;
end

```

This class is instantiated when a TJSONLargeInt must be represented.

TJSONLargeIntNumberClass = type class of TJSONInt64Number

TJSONLargeIntNumberClass is the Class reference for TJSONLargeIntNumber ([616](#))

```

TJSONNullClass = type class(TJSONData)
protected
procedure Convertererror
(From: Boolean);
function GetAsBoolean : Boolean; Override;
function
GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat; Override;
function GetAsInteger : Integer
; Override;
function GetIsNull : Boolean; Override;
function
GetAsJSON : TJSONStringType; Override;
function GetAsString :
TJSONStringType; Override;
function GetValue : TJSONVariant;
Override;
function GetAsInt64 : Int64; Override;
function GetAsQWord
: QWord; Override;
procedure SetAsInt64(const AValue: Int64);
Override;
procedure SetAsQword(const AValue: QWord); Override
;
procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue: Boolean); Override;
procedure
SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJSONFloat); Override;
procedure SetAsInteger
(const AValue: Integer); Override;
procedure SetAsString(const
AValue: TJSONStringType); Override;
procedure SetValue(const AValue
: TJSONVariant); Override;
public

```

```

class function JSONType : TJSONType
;   Override;
procedure Clear;   Override;
function Clone : TJSONData
;   Override;
end

```

TJSONNullClass is the class type of TJSONNull (653). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJSONNumberType = (ntFloat, ntInteger, ntInt64, ntQWord)
```

Table 19.4: Enumeration values for type TJSONNumberType

Value	Explanation
ntFloat	Floating point value.
ntInt64	64-bit integer value.
ntInteger	32-bit Integer value.
ntQWord	64-bit unsigned integer value.

TJSONNumberType is used to enumerate the different kind of numerical types: JSON only has a single 'number' format. Depending on how the value was parsed, FPC tries to create a value that is as close to the original value as possible: this can be one of integer, int64 or TJSONFloatType (normally a double). The number types have a common ancestor, and they are distinguished by their TJSONNumber.NumberType (655) value.

```

TJSONObjectClass = type class(TJSONData)
private
  ElementStart :
    = Array[Boolean] of UTF8String = ('"', ' ');
  SpacedQuoted : =
    Array[Boolean] of UTF8String = ('" : ', ' : ');
  UnSpacedQuoted
    : = Array[Boolean] of UTF8String = ('":', ' :');
  ObjStartSeps
    : = Array[Boolean] of UTF8String = ('{ ', '{}');
  ObjEndSeps :
    = Array[Boolean] of UTF8String = (' }', '}');
  FUnquotedMemberNames
    : Boolean;
  FObjStartSep : TJSONStringType;
  FObjEndSep : TJSONStringType
;
  FElementEnd : TJSONStringType;
  FElementStart : TJSONStringType
;
  function DoAdd(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: TJSONData
;
                    FreeOnError: Boolean) : Integer;
  class procedure
    DetermineElementQuotes;
  FHash : TFPHashObjectList;

```

```

function GetArrays
(const AName: string) : TJSONArray;
function GetBooleans(const AName
: string) : Boolean;
function GetElements(const AName: string)
: TJSONData;
function GetFloats(const AName: string) : TJSONFloat
;
function GetIntegers(const AName: string) : Integer;
function
GetIsNull(const AName: string) : Boolean; Reintroduce;
function
GetNameOf(Index: Integer) : TJSONStringType;
function GetObjects
(const AName: string) : TJSONObject;
function GetStrings(const AName
: string) : TJSONStringType;
function GetTypes(const AName: string
) : TJSONtype;
procedure SetArrays(const AName: string; const AValue
: TJSONArray);
procedure SetBooleans(const AName: string; const
AValue: Boolean);
procedure SetElements(const AName: string; const
AValue: TJSONData);
procedure SetFloats(const AName: string; const
AValue: TJSONFloat);
procedure SetIntegers(const AName: string
; const AValue: Integer);
function GetInt64s(const AName: string
) : Int64;
function GetUnicodeStrings(const AName: string) : TJSONUnicodeStringType
;
function GetQWords(AName: string) : QWord;
procedure SetInt64s
(const AName: string; const AValue: Int64);
procedure SetQWords
(AName: string; AValue: QWord);
procedure SetUnicodeStrings(const
AName: string;
                                const AValue: TJSONUnicodeStringType
);
procedure SetIsNull(const AName: string; const AValue: Boolean
);
procedure SetObjects(const AName: string; const AValue: TJSONObject
);
procedure SetStrings(const AName: string; const AValue: TJSONStringType
);
class function GetUnquotedMemberNames : Boolean; Static;
class
procedure SetUnquotedMemberNames(AValue: Boolean); Static;
protected
function DoFindPath(const APath: TJSONStringType;
out NotFound: TJSONStringType) : TJSONData; Override;

```

```

procedure Convertererror(From: Boolean);
function GetAsBoolean
: Boolean; Override;
function GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat; Override
;
function GetAsInteger : Integer; Override;
function GetAsInt64
: Int64; Override;
function GetAsQWord : QWord; Override;
procedure
SetAsInt64(const AValue: Int64); Override;
procedure SetAsQword
(const AValue: QWord); Override;
procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue
: Boolean); Override;
procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJSONFloat
); Override;
procedure SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer); Override
;
function GetAsJSON : TJSONStringType; Override;
function GetAsString
: TJSONStringType; Override;
procedure SetAsString(const AValue
: TJSONStringType); Override;
function GetValue : TJSONVariant
; Override;
procedure SetValue(const AValue: TJSONVariant); Override
;
function GetCount : Integer; Override;
function GetItem(Index
: Integer) : TJSONData; Override;
procedure SetItem(Index: Integer
; const AValue: TJSONData); Override;
function DoFormatJSON(Options
: TFormatOptions; CurrentIndent: Integer;
Indent: Integer) : TJSONStringType; Override;
public
Create;
destructor Destroy; Override;
class function JSONType : TJSONType
; Override;
property UnquotedMemberNames : Boolean;
function
Clone : TJSONData; Override;
function GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator
; Override;
procedure Iterate(Iterator: TJSONObjectIterator; Data
: TObject);
function IndexOf(Item: TJSONData) : Integer;
function
IndexOfName(const AName: TJSONStringType;
CaseInsensitive: Boolean) : Integer;
Find;
Get;

```

```

procedure Clear
; Override;
Add;
Delete;
procedure Remove(Item: TJSONData)
;
Extract;
property Names[Index: Integer]: TJJSONStringType;
property Elements[AName: string]: TJSONData; default;
property
Types[AName: string]: TJJSONtype;
property Nulls[AName: string]
: Boolean;
property Floats[AName: string]: TJJSONFloat;
property
Integers[AName: string]: Integer;
property Int64s[AName: string
]: Int64;
property QWords[AName: string]: QWord;
property LargeInts
[AName: string]: TJJSONLargeInt;
property UnicodeStrings[AName: string
]: TJJSONUnicodeStringType;
property Strings[AName: string]: TJJSONStringType
;
property Booleans[AName: string]: Boolean;
property Arrays[AName
: string]: TJJSONArray;
property Objects[AName: string]: TJJSONObject
;
end

```

TJJSONObject is the class type for the TJJSONObject (655) class. It is used in CreateJSONObject (624).

```

TJJSONObjectIterator = procedure(const AName: TJJSONStringType;
Item: TJSONData; Data: TObject;
var Continue: Boolean) of object

```

TJJSONObjectIterator is the procedural callback used by TJJSONObject.Iterate (658) to iterate over the values. Item is the current item in the iteration, and AName it's name. Data is the data passed on when calling Iterate. The Continue parameter can be set to false to stop the iteration loop.

```

TJJSONParserHandler = procedure(AStream: TStream;
const AUseUTF8: Boolean;
out Data: TJSONData)

```

TJJSONParserHandler is a callback prototype used by the GetJSON (624) function to do the actual parsing. It has 2 arguments: AStream, which is the stream containing the JSON that must be parsed, and AUseUTF8, which indicates whether the (ansi) strings contain UTF-8.

The result should be returned in Data.

The parser is expected to use the JSON class types registered using the SetJSONInstanceType (626) method, the actual types can be retrieved with GetJSONInstanceType (625)

```

TJSONQWordNumberClass = type class(TJSONNumber)
private
    FValue
        : QWord;
protected
    function GetAsBoolean : Boolean; Override;
    function GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat; Override;
    function GetAsInteger
        : Integer; Override;
    function GetAsInt64 : Int64; Override;
    function GetAsQWord : QWord; Override;
    procedure SetAsBoolean
        (const AValue: Boolean); Override;
    procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue
        : TJSONFloat); Override;
    procedure SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer
        ); Override;
    procedure SetAsInt64(const AValue: Int64); Override
    ;
    procedure SetAsQword(const AValue: QWord); Override;
    function
        GetAsJSON : TJJSONStringType; Override;
    function GetAsString :
        TJJSONStringType; Override;
    procedure SetAsString(const AValue
        : TJJSONStringType); Override;
    function GetValue : TJSONVariant
        ; Override;
    procedure SetValue(const AValue: TJSONVariant); Override
    ;
public
    constructor Create(AValue: QWord); Reintroduce;
    class
        function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; Override;
    procedure Clear
        ; Override;
    function Clone : TJSONData; Override;
end

```

TJSONQwordNumberClass is the class type of TJJSONQWordNumber (666). It is used in the factory methods.

```

TJSONStringClass = type class(TJSONData)
private
    FValue : TJJSONStringType
    ;
protected
    function GetValue : TJSONVariant; Override;
    procedure
        SetValue(const AValue: TJSONVariant); Override;
    function GetAsBoolean
        : Boolean; Override;
    function GetAsFloat : TJSONFloat; Override
    ;

```

```

function GetAsInteger : Integer;  Override;
function GetAsInt64
: Int64;  Override;
function GetAsQWord : QWord;  Override;
procedure
SetAsInt64(const AValue: Int64);  Override;
procedure SetAsQword
(const AValue: QWord);  Override;
procedure SetAsBoolean(const AValue
: Boolean);  Override;
procedure SetAsFloat(const AValue: TJSONFloat
);  Override;
procedure SetAsInteger(const AValue: Integer);  Override
;
function GetAsJSON : TJJSONStringType;  Override;
function GetAsString
: TJJSONStringType;  Override;
procedure SetAsString(const AValue
: TJJSONStringType);  Override;
public
  StrictEscaping : Boolean;
  Create;
  class function JSONType : TJJSONtype;  Override;
  procedure
  Clear;  Override;
  function Clone : TJJSONData;  Override;
end

```

TJJSONStringClass is the class type of TJJSONString (667). It is used in the factory methods.

```

TJJSONStringParserHandler = procedure(const aJSON: TJJSONStringType
;
                                     const AUseUTF8: Boolean;
                                     out Data: TJJSONData)

```

TJJSONStringParserHandler is the prototype for the handler to convert a JSON string to a TJJSONData (640). It is used in the SetJSONStringParserHandler (627) and GetJSONStringParserHandler (625) calls.

```
TJJSONStringType = type UTF8String
```

TJJSONFloat is the string point type used in the JSON support. It is currently an ansistring, but this can be changed easily. Unicode characters can be encoded with UTF-8.

```

TJJSONtype = (jtUnknown, jtNumber, jtString, jtBoolean, jtNull, jtArray
,
              jtObject)

```

Table 19.5: Enumeration values for type TJSONtype

Value	Explanation
jtArray	Array data (integer index, elements can be any type).
jtBoolean	Boolean data.
jtNull	Null data.
jtNumber	Numerical type. This can be integer (32/64 bit) or float.
jtObject	Object data (named index, elements can be any type).
jtString	String data type.
jtUnknown	Unknown JSON data type.

TJSONtype determines the type of JSON data a particular object contains. The class function TJSONData.TJSONtype (641) returns this type, and indicates what kind of data that particular descendent contains. The values correspond to the original data types in the JSON specification. The TJSONData object itself returns the unknown value.

```
TJSONUnicodeStringType = type Unicodestring
```

TJSONUnicodeStringType is an alias used wherever a Unicode (double byte) string is used in the fpJSON code, in particular the TJSONData.AsUnicodeString (647) property.

```
TJSONVariant = type variant
```

TJSONVariant resolves to Variant on native platforms, JSValue in javascript runtimes.

19.4 Procedures and functions

19.4.1 CreateJSON

Synopsis: Create a JSON data item.

```
Declaration: function CreateJSON : TJSONNull
function CreateJSON(Data: Boolean) : TJSONBoolean
function CreateJSON(Data: Integer) : TJSONIntegerNumber
function CreateJSON(Data: Int64) : TJSONInt64Number
function CreateJSON(Data: QWord) : TJSONQWordNumber
function CreateJSON(Data: TJSONFloat) : TJSONFloatNumber
function CreateJSON(const Data: TJSONStringType) : TJSONString
function CreateJSON(const Data: TJSONUnicodeStringType) : TJSONString
```

Visibility: default

Description: CreateJSON will create a JSON Data item depending on the type of data passed to it, and will use the classes returned by GetJSONInstanceType (625) to do so. The classes to be used can be set using the SetJSONInstanceType (626).

The JSON parser uses these functions to create instances of TJSONData (640).

Errors: None.

See also: GetJSONInstanceType (625), SetJSONInstanceType (626), GetJSON (624), CreateJSONArray (624), CreateJSONObject (624)

19.4.2 CreateJSONArray

Synopsis: Create a JSON array.

Declaration: `function CreateJSONArray(const Data: Array of const) : TJSONArray`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateJSONArray` retrieves the class registered to represent JSON array data, and creates an instance of this class, passing `Data` to the constructor. For the `Data` array the same type conversion rules as for the constructor apply.

Errors: if one of the elements in `Data` cannot be converted to a JSON structure, an exception will be raised.

See also: `GetJSONInstanceType` (625), `SetJSONInstanceType` (626), `GetJSON` (624), `CreateJSON` (623), `TJSONArray` (629)

19.4.3 CreateJSONObject

Synopsis: Create a JSON object.

Declaration: `function CreateJSONObject(const Data: Array of const) : TJSONObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateJSONObject` retrieves the class registered to represent JSON object data, and creates an instance of this class, passing `Data` to the constructor. For the `Data` array the same type conversion rules as for the `TJSONObject.Create` (656) constructor apply.

Errors: if one of the elements in `Data` cannot be converted to a JSON structure, an exception will be raised.

See also: `GetJSONInstanceType` (625), `SetJSONInstanceType` (626), `GetJSON` (624), `CreateJSON` (623), `TJSONObject` (655)

19.4.4 GetJSON

Synopsis: Convert JSON string to JSON data structure.

Declaration: `function GetJSON(const JSON: TJSONStringType; const UseUTF8: Boolean)
: TJSONData
function GetJSON(const JSON: TStream; const UseUTF8: Boolean)
: TJSONData`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetJSON` will read the `JSON` argument (a string or stream that contains a valid JSON data representation) and converts it to native JSON objects. The stream must be positioned on the start of the JSON.

The `fpJSON` unit does not contain a JSON parser. The `jsonparser` unit does contain a JSON parser, and must be included once in the project to be able to parse JSON. The `jsonparser` unit uses the `SetJSONParserHandler` (626) call to set a callback that is used by `GetJSON` to parse the data.

If `UseUTF8` is set to true, then Unicode characters will be encoded as UTF-8. Otherwise, they are converted to the nearest matching ansi character.

Errors: An exception will be raised if the JSON data stream does not contain valid JSON data.

See also: `GetJSONParserHandler` (625), `SetJSONParserHandler` (626), `TJSONData` (640)

19.4.5 GetJSONInstanceType

Synopsis: JSON factory: Get the JSONData class types to use.

Declaration: `function GetJSONInstanceType(AType: TJSONInstanceType) : TJSONDataClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetJSONInstanceType` can be used to retrieve the registered descendents of the `TJSONData` (640) class, one for each possible kind of data. The result is the class type used to instantiate data of type `AType`.

The JSON parser and the `CreateJSON` (623) function will use the registered types to instantiate JSON Data. When the parser encounters a value of type `AType`, it will instantiate a class of the type returned by this function. By default, the classes in the `fpJSON` unit are returned.

See also: `CreateJSON` (623), `TJSONData` (640), `GetJSON` (624)

19.4.6 GetJSONParserHandler

Synopsis: Get the current JSON parser handler.

Declaration: `function GetJSONParserHandler : TJSONParserHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetJSONParserHandler` can be used to get the current value of the JSON parser handler callback.

The `fpJSON` unit does not contain a JSON parser in itself: it contains simply the data structure and the ability to write JSON. The parsing must be done using a separate unit.

See also: `SetJSONParserHandler` (626), `GetJSONStringParserHandler` (625), `TJSONParserHandler` (620), `GetJSON` (624)

19.4.7 GetJSONStringParserHandler

Synopsis: return the current JSON string to JSON Data conversion callback.

Declaration: `function GetJSONStringParserHandler : TJJSONStringParserHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetJSONStringParserHandler` returns the handler installed by the last `SetJSONStringParserHandler` (627) call.

See also: `SetJSONStringParserHandler` (627), `SetJSONParserHandler` (626), `GetJSONParserHandler` (625)

19.4.8 JSONStringToString

Synopsis: Convert a JSON-escaped string to a string.

Declaration: `function JSONStringToString(const S: TJJSONStringType) : TJJSONStringType`

Visibility: default

Description: `JSONStringToString` examines the string `S` and replaces any special characters by an escaped string, as in the JSON specification. The following escaped characters are recognized:

`\\ \" \/ \b \t \n \f \r \u000X`

See also: `StringToJSONString` (627), `JSONTypeName` (626)

19.4.9 JSONTypeName

Synopsis: Convert a JSON type to a string.

Declaration: `function JSONTypeName (JSONType: TJSONType) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `JSONTypeName` converts the `JSONType` to a string that describes the type of JSON value.

See also: `StringToJSONString` (627), `JSONStringToString` (625)

19.4.10 SetJSONInstanceType

Synopsis: JSON factory: Set the JSONData class types to use.

Declaration: `function SetJSONInstanceType (AType: TJSONInstanceType;
AClass: TJSONDataClass) : TJSONDataClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJSONInstanceType` can be used to register descendents of the `TJSONData` (640) class, one for each possible kind of data. The class type used to instantiate data of type `AType` is passed in `AClass`.

The JSON parser will use the registered types to instantiate JSON Data instanced: when the parser encounters a value of type `AType`, it will instantiate a class of type `AClass`. By default, the classes in the `fpJSON` unit are used.

The `CreateJSON` (623) functions also use the types registered here to instantiate their data.

The return value is the previously registered instance type for the `AType`.

Errors: If `AClass` is not suitable to contain data of type `AType`, an exception is raised.

See also: `GetJSONInstanceType` (625), `CreateJSON` (623)

19.4.11 SetJSONParserHandler

Synopsis: Set the JSON parser handler.

Declaration: `function SetJSONParserHandler (AHandler: TJSONParserHandler)
: TJSONParserHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJSONParserHandler` can be used to set the JSON parser handler callback. The `fpJSON` unit does not contain a JSON parser in itself: it contains simply the data structure and the ability to write JSON. The parsing must be done using a separate unit, and is invoked through a callback. `SetJSONParserHandler` must be used to set this callback.

The `jsonparser` unit does contain a JSON parser, and must be included once in the project to be able to parse JSON. The `jsonparser` unit uses the `SetJSONParserHandler` call to set the callback that is used by `GetJSON` to parse the data. This is done once at the initialization of that unit, so it is sufficient to include the unit in the `uses` clause of the program.

The function returns the previously registered callback.

This handler uses a stream as input. For speed reasons you can also register handler that converts a string to JSON data. This is done with the `SetJSONStringParserHandler` (627) call.

See also: `SetJSONStringParserHandler` (627), `GetJSONParserHandler` (625), `TJSONParserHandler` (620), `GetJSON` (624)

19.4.12 SetJSONStringParserHandler

Synopsis: Install a JSON string to JSON Data conversion callback.

Declaration: `function SetJSONStringParserHandler(AHandler: TJJSONStringParserHandler)
: TJJSONStringParserHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJSONStringParserHandler` has the same functionality as `SetJSONParserHandler` (626).

It sets a callback that will be used by the `GetJSON` (624) call to convert a string value to JSON data. If no such callback is installed, the string will be converted to a stream, and the handler set by `SetJSONParserHandler` (626) will be used instead. Setting this handler prevents a conversion from a string to a stream.

The function returns the previously installed handler, if any.

See also: `GetJSONStringParserHandler` (625), `SetJSONParserHandler` (626), `GetJSONParserHandler` (625)

19.4.13 StringToJSONString

Synopsis: Convert a string to a JSON-escaped string.

Declaration: `function StringToJSONString(const S: TJJSONStringType; Strict: Boolean)
: TJJSONStringType`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToJSONString` examines the string `S` and replaces any special characters by an escaped string, as in the JSON specification. The following characters are escaped:

`\ " #8 #9 #10 #12 #13.`

`Strict` indicates that only the absolutely necessary characters will be escaped (when set to `True`) when converging string values to JSON. If set to `False` / will also be escaped, although this is strictly speaking not necessary.

See also: `JSONStringToString` (625), `JSONTypeName` (626)

19.5 TJJSONEnum

```
TJJSONEnum = record
  Key : TJJSONStringType;
  KeyNum : Integer;
  Value : TJJSONData;
end
```

`TJJSONEnum` is the loop variable type to use when implementing a JSON enumerator (`for in`). It contains 3 elements which are available in the loop: `key`, `keynum` (numerical key) and the actual value (`TJJSONData`).

19.6 EJSON

19.6.1 Description

`EJSON` is the exception raised by the JSON implementation to report JSON error.

19.7 TBaseJSONEnumerator

19.7.1 Description

`TBaseJSONEnumerator` is the base type for the JSON enumerators. It should not be used directly, instead use the enumerator support of Object pascal to loop over values in JSON data.

The value of the `TBaseJSONEnumerator` enumerator is a record that describes the key and value of a JSON value. The key can be string-based (for records) or numerical (for arrays).

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([627](#))

19.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
628	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Return the current value of the enumerator.
628	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move to next value in array/object.

19.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
628	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Return the current value of the enumerator.

19.7.4 TBaseJSONEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current value of the enumerator.

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TJSONEnum; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current value of the enumerator. This is a `TJSONEnum` ([627](#)) value.

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([627](#))

19.7.5 TBaseJSONEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move to next value in array/object.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` attempts to move to the next value. This will return `True` if the move was successful, or `False` if not. When `True` is returned, then

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([627](#)), `TJSONData` ([640](#))

19.7.6 TBaseJSONEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Return the current value of the enumerator.

Declaration: `Property Current : TJSONEnum`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `Current` returns the current enumerator value of type `TJSEnum` (627). It is only valid after `MoveNext` (628) returned `True`.

See also: `TJSEnum` (627), `TJSEData` (640), `MoveNext` (628)

19.8 TJSEArray

19.8.1 Description

`TJSEArrayClass` is the class type of `TJSEArray` (629). It is used in the factory methods.

See also: `TJSEArray` (629), `SetJSONInstanceType` (626), `GetJSONInstanceType` (625)

19.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
632	Add	Add a JSON value to the array.
631	Clear	Clear the array.
630	Clone	Clone the JSON array.
630	Create	Create a new instance of JSON array data.
632	Delete	Delete an element from the list by index.
630	Destroy	Free the JSON array.
632	Exchange	Exchange 2 elements in the list.
633	Extract	Extract an element from the array.
631	GetEnumerator	Get an array enumerator.
631	IndexOf	Return index of <code>JSONData</code> instance in array.
633	Insert	Insert an element in the array.
631	Iterate	Iterate over all elements in the array.
630	JSONType	native JSON data type.
633	Move	Move a value from one location to another.
634	Remove	Remove an element from the list.
634	Sort	Sort the items in the array.

19.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
638	Arrays	rw	Get or set elements as JSON array values.
638	Booleans	rw	Get or set elements as boolean values.
637	Floats	rw	Get or set elements as floating-point numerical values.
635	Int64s	rw	Get or set elements as Int64 values.
635	Integers	rw	Get or set elements as integer values.
634	Items		Indexed access to the values in the array.
636	LargeInts	rw	Get or set elements as <code>LargeInt</code> values.
635	Nulls	r	Check which elements are null.
638	Objects	rw	Get or set elements as JSON object values.
636	QWords	rw	Get or set elements as <code>QWord</code> values.
637	Strings	rw	Get or set elements as string values.
634	Types	r	JSON types of elements in the array.
636	UnicodeStrings	rw	Get or set elements as Unicode string values.

19.8.4 TJSONArray.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of JSON array data.

Declaration: `constructor Create; Overload; Reintroduce
constructor Create(const Elements: Array of const); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new JSON array instance, and initializes the data with `Elements`. The elements are converted to various `TJSONData` (640) instances, instances of `TJSONData` are inserted in the array as-is.

The data type of the inserted objects is determined from the type of data passed to it, with a natural mapping. A `Nil` pointer will be inserted as a `TJSONNull` value.

Errors: If an invalid class or not recognized data type (pointer) is inserted in the elements array, an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: `GetJSONInstanceType` (625)

19.8.5 TJSONArray.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the JSON array.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` will delete all elements in the array and clean up the `TJSONArray` (629) instance.

See also: `TJSONArray.Clear` (631), `TJSONArray.Create` (630)

19.8.6 TJSONArray.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONArray` to return `jtArray`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` (641)

19.8.7 TJSONArray.Clone

Synopsis: Clone the JSON array.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` creates a new `TJSONArray`, clones all elements in the array and adds them to the newly created array in the same order as they are in the array.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` (645)

19.8.8 TJSONArray.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over all elements in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Iterate(Iterator: TJSONArrayIterator; Data: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the array, passing them one by one to the `Iterator` callback, together with the `Data` parameter. The iteration stops when all elements have been passed or when the iterator callback returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter.

See also: `TJSONArrayIterator` (609)

19.8.9 TJSONArray.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of `JSONData` instance in array.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(obj: TJSONData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` compares all elements in the array with `Obj` and returns the index of the element instance that equals `Obj`. The actual instances are compared, not the JSON value. If none of the elements match, the function returns -1.

See also: `Clear` (631)

19.8.10 TJSONArray.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Get an array enumerator.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is overridden in `TJSONArray` so it returns an array enumerator. The array enumerator will return all the elements in the array, and stores their index in the `KeyNum` member of `TJSONEnum` (627).

See also: `TJSONEnum` (627), `TJSONData.GetEnumerator` (642)

19.8.11 TJSONArray.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the array.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` clears the array and frees all elements in it. After the call to clear, `Count` (646) returns 0.

See also: `Delete` (632), `Extract` (633)

19.8.12 TJSONArray.Add

Synopsis: Add a JSON value to the array.

Declaration:

```
function Add(Item: TJSONData) : Integer
function Add(I: Integer) : Integer
function Add(I: Int64) : Int64
function Add(I: QWord) : QWord
function Add(const S: UnicodeString) : Integer
function Add(const S: string) : Integer
function Add : Integer
function Add(F: TJSONFloat) : Integer
function Add(B: Boolean) : Integer
function Add(AnArray: TJSONArray) : Integer
function Add(AnObject: TJSONObject) : Integer
```

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds the value passed on to the array. If it is a plain pascal value, it is converted to an appropriate TJSONData (640) instance. If a TJSONData instance is passed, it is simply added to the array. Note that the instance will be owned by the array, and destroyed when the array is cleared (this is in particular true is an JSON array or object).

The function returns the TJSONData instance that was added to the array.

See also: Delete (632), Extract (633)

19.8.13 TJSONArray.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an element from the list by index.

Declaration:

```
procedure Delete(Index: Integer)
```

Visibility: public

Description: Delete deletes the element with given Index from the list. The TJSONData (640) element is freed.

Errors: If an invalid index is passed, an exception is raised.

See also: Clear (631), Add (632), Extract (633), Exchange (632)

19.8.14 TJSONArray.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchange 2 elements in the list.

Declaration:

```
procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)
```

Visibility: public

Description: Exchange exchanges 2 elements at locations Index1 and Index2 in the list. This is more efficient than manually extracting and adding the elements to the list.

Errors: If an invalid index (for either element) is passed, an exception is raised.

19.8.15 TJSONArray.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an element from the array.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TJSONData) : TJSONData`
`function Extract(Index: Integer) : TJSONData`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the element at position `Index` or the indicated element from the list, just as `Delete` (632) does. In difference with `Delete`, it does not free the object instance. Instead, it returns the extracted element.

See also: `Delete` (632), `Clear` (631), `Insert` (633), `Add` (632)

19.8.16 TJSONArray.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an element in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; Item: TJSONData)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; I: Integer)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; I: Int64)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; I: QWord)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const S: UnicodeString)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const S: string)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; F: TJSONFloat)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; B: Boolean)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; AnArray: TJSONArray)`
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; AnObject: TJSONObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` adds a value or element to the array at position `Index`. Elements with index equal to or larger than `Index` are shifted. Like `Add` (632), it converts plain pascal values to JSON values.

Note that when inserting a `TJSONData` (640) instance to the array, it is owned by the array. `Index` must be a value between 0 and `Count-1`.

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an exception is raised.

See also: `Add` (632), `Delete` (632), `Extract` (633), `Clear` (631)

19.8.17 TJSONArray.Move

Synopsis: Move a value from one location to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the element at index `CurIndex` to the position `NewIndex`. It will shift the elements in between as needed. This operation is more efficient than extracting and inserting the element manually.

See also: `Exchange` (632), `Extract` (633), `Insert` (633)

19.8.18 TJSONArray.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an element from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(Item: TJSONData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `item` from the array, if it is in the array. The object pointer is checked for presence in the array, not the JSON values. Note that the element is freed if it was in the array and is removed.

See also: `Delete` (632), `Extract` (633)

19.8.19 TJSONArray.Sort

Synopsis: Sort the items in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` can be used to perform a sort in an array. The array does not compare elements, for this the `Compare` callback must be used, to compare 2 elements from the array.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TListSortCompare` (??)

19.8.20 TJSONArray.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the values in the array.

Declaration: `Property Items : ; default`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `Items` is introduced in `TJSONData.Items` (646). `TJSONArray` simply declares it as the default property.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (646)

19.8.21 TJSONArray.Types

Synopsis: JSON types of elements in the array.

Declaration: `Property Types[Index: Integer]: TJSONType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Types` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.JSONType` (641) result of the elements in the array. Accessing it is equivalent to accessing

`Items[Index].JSONType`

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` (641), `TJSONData.Items` (646)

19.8.22 TJSONArray.Nulls

Synopsis: Check which elements are null.

Declaration: `Property Nulls[Index: Integer]: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Nulls` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.IsNull` (649) property when reading. It is then equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].IsNull
```

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` (641), `TJSONData.Items` (646), `TJSONData.IsNull` (649), `TJSONArray.Types` (634)

19.8.23 TJSONArray.Integers

Synopsis: Get or set elements as integer values.

Declaration: `Property Integers[Index: Integer]: Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Integers` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsInteger` (648) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsInteger
```

When writing, it will check if an integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (646), `TJSONData.IsNull` (649), `TJSONArray.Types` (634), `TJSONArray.Int64s` (635), `TJSONArray.QWords` (636), `TJSONArray.Floats` (637), `TJSONArray.Strings` (637), `TJSONArray.Booleans` (638)

19.8.24 TJSONArray.Int64s

Synopsis: Get or set elements as Int64 values.

Declaration: `Property Int64s[Index: Integer]: Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Int64s` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsInt64` (647) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsInt64
```

When writing, it will check if a 64-bit integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-64-bit-integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written int64 value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (646), `TJSONData.IsNull` (649), `TJSONArray.Types` (634), `TJSONArray.Integers` (635), `TJSONArray.Floats` (637), `TJSONArray.Strings` (637), `TJSONArray.Booleans` (638), `TJSONArray.QWords` (636)

19.8.25 TJSONArray.LargeInts

Synopsis: Get or set elements as LargeInt values.

Declaration: `Property LargeInts[Index: Integer]: TJSONLargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LargeInts` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsLargeInt` (648) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsLargeInt
```

When writing, it will check if an Largeint integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-large-integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written value.

See also: `TJSONData.AsLargeInt` (648), `TJSONData.Items` (646), `TJSONData.IsNull` (649), `TJSONArray.Types` (634), `TJSONArray.Integers` (635), `TJSONArray.Floats` (637), `TJSONArray.Strings` (637), `TJSONArray.Booleans` (638), `TJSONArray.QWords` (636)

19.8.26 TJSONArray.QWords

Synopsis: Get or set elements as QWord values.

Declaration: `Property QWords[Index: Integer]: QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `QWords` gives direct access to the `AsQWord` (647) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsQWord
```

When writing, it will check if an 64-bit unsigned integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-64-bit unsigned integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written QWord value.

See also: `Items` (603), `AsQWord` (647), `IsNull` (649), `Types` (634), `Integers` (635), `Floats` (637), `Strings` (637), `Booleans` (638)

19.8.27 TJSONArray.UnicodeStrings

Synopsis: Get or set elements as Unicode string values.

Declaration: `Property UnicodeStrings[Index: Integer]: TJSONUnicodeStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UnicodeStrings` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsUnicodeString` (647) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsUnicodeString
```

When writing, it will check if a UNicodeStrings JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-string value is there, it is replaced with the written Unicode string value.

See also: [TJSONData.Items \(646\)](#), [TJSONData.IsNull \(649\)](#), [TJSONArray.Types \(634\)](#), [TJSONArray.Integers \(635\)](#), [TJSONArray.QWords \(636\)](#), [TJSONArray.Floats \(637\)](#), [TJSONArray.Int64s \(635\)](#), [TJSONArray.Booleans \(638\)](#), [TJSONArray.Strings \(637\)](#)

19.8.28 TJSONArray.Strings

Synopsis: Get or set elements as string values.

Declaration: `Property Strings[Index: Integer]: TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Strings` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsString (646)` property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsString
```

When writing, it will check if a string JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-string value is there, it is replaced with the written string value.

See also: [TJSONData.Items \(646\)](#), [TJSONData.IsNull \(649\)](#), [TJSONArray.Types \(634\)](#), [TJSONArray.Integers \(635\)](#), [TJSONArray.QWords \(636\)](#), [TJSONArray.Floats \(637\)](#), [TJSONArray.Int64s \(635\)](#), [TJSONArray.Booleans \(638\)](#)

19.8.29 TJSONArray.Floats

Synopsis: Get or set elements as floating-point numerical values.

Declaration: `Property Floats[Index: Integer]: TJSONFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Floats` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsFloat (648)` property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsFloat
```

When writing, it will check if a floating point numerical JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-floating point numerical value is there, it is replaced with the written floating point value.

See also: [TJSONData.Items \(646\)](#), [TJSONData.IsNull \(649\)](#), [TJSONArray.Types \(634\)](#), [TJSONArray.Integers \(635\)](#), [TJSONArray.Strings \(637\)](#), [TJSONArray.Int64s \(635\)](#), [TJSONArray.QWords \(636\)](#), [TJSONArray.Booleans \(638\)](#)

19.8.30 TJSONArray.Booleans

Synopsis: Get or set elements as boolean values.

Declaration: `Property Booleans[Index: Integer]: Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Floats` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsBoolean` (649) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsBoolean
```

When writing, it will check if a boolean JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-boolean value is there, it is replaced with the written boolean value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (646), `TJSONData.IsNull` (649), `TJSONArray.Types` (634), `TJSONArray.Integers` (635), `TJSONArray.Strings` (637), `TJSONArray.Int64s` (635), `TJSONArray.QWords` (636), `TJSONArray.Floats` (637)

19.8.31 TJSONArray.Arrays

Synopsis: Get or set elements as JSON array values.

Declaration: `Property Arrays[Index: Integer]: TJSONArray`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Arrays` gives direct access to JSON Array values when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index] As TJSONArray
```

When writing, it will replace any previous value at that location with the written value. Note that the old value is freed, and the new value is owned by the array.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (646), `TJSONData.IsNull` (649), `TJSONArray.Types` (634), `TJSONArray.Integers` (635), `TJSONArray.Strings` (637), `TJSONArray.Int64s` (635), `TJSONArray.QWords` (636), `TJSONArray.Floats` (637), `TJSONArray.Objects` (638)

19.8.32 TJSONArray.Objects

Synopsis: Get or set elements as JSON object values.

Declaration: `Property Objects[Index: Integer]: TJSONObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Objects` gives direct access to JSON object values when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index] As TJSONObject
```

When writing, it will replace any previous value at that location with the written value. Note that the old value is freed, and the new value is owned by the array.

See also: [TJSONData.Items \(646\)](#), [TJSONData.IsNull \(649\)](#), [TJSONArray.Types \(634\)](#), [TJSONArray.Integers \(635\)](#), [TJSONArray.Strings \(637\)](#), [TJSONArray.Int64s \(635\)](#), [TJSONArray.QWords \(636\)](#), [TJSONArray.Floats \(637\)](#), [TJSONArray.Arrays \(638\)](#)

19.9 TJSONBoolean

19.9.1 Description

`TJSONBoolean` must be used whenever boolean data must be represented. It has limited functionality to convert the value from or to integer or floating point data.

See also: [TJSONFloatNumber \(650\)](#), [TJSONIntegerNumber \(652\)](#), [TJSONInt64Number \(651\)](#), [TJSONBoolean \(639\)](#), [TJSONNull \(653\)](#), [TJSONArray \(629\)](#), [TJSONObject \(655\)](#)

19.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
640	<code>Clear</code>	Clear data.
640	<code>Clone</code>	Clone boolean value.
639	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of boolean JSON data.
639	<code>JSONType</code>	native JSON data type.

19.9.3 TJSONBoolean.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of boolean JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: Boolean);` Reintroduce

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new boolean JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`.

See also: [TJSONIntegerNumber.Create \(653\)](#), [TJSONFloatNumber.Create \(650\)](#), [TJSONInt64Number.Create \(651\)](#), [TJSONString.Create \(667\)](#), [TJSONArray.Create \(630\)](#), [TJSONObject.Create \(656\)](#)

19.9.4 TJSONBoolean.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType;` Override

Visibility: `public`

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONString` to return `jtBoolean`.

See also: [TJSONData.JSONType \(641\)](#)

19.9.5 TJSONBoolean.Clear

Synopsis: Clear data.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONBoolean` to set the value to `False`.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([642](#))

19.9.6 TJSONBoolean.Clone

Synopsis: Clone boolean value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#)) and creates an instance of the same class with the same boolean value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#))

19.10 TJSONData

19.10.1 Description

`TJSONData` is an abstract class which introduces all properties and methods needed to work with JSON-based data. It should never be instantiated. Based on the type of data that must be represented one of the following descendents must be instantiated instead.

Numbers must be represented using one of `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([652](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber` ([650](#)) or `TJSONInt64Number` ([651](#)), depending on the type of the number.

Strings can be represented with `TJSONString` ([667](#)).

Boolean can be represented with `TJSONBoolean` ([639](#)).

null is supported using `TJSONNull` ([653](#))

Array data can be represented using `TJSONArray` ([629](#))

Object data can be supported using `TJSONObject` ([655](#))

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([652](#)), `TJSONString` ([667](#)), `TJSONBoolean` ([639](#)), `TJSONNull` ([653](#)), `TJSONArray` ([629](#)), `TJSONObject` ([655](#))

19.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
642	Clear	Clear the raw value of this data object.
645	Clone	Duplicate the value of the JSON data.
641	Create	Create a new instance of TJSONData.
642	DumpJSON	Fast, memory efficient dump of JSON in stream.
642	FindPath	Find data by name.
645	FormatJSON	Return a formatted JSON representation of the data.
642	GetEnumerator	Return an enumerator for the data.
644	GetPath	Get data by name.
641	JSONType	The native JSON data type represented by this object.

19.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
649	AsBoolean	rw	Access the raw JSON value as a boolean.
648	AsFloat	rw	Access the raw JSON value as a float.
647	AsInt64	rw	Access the raw JSON value as an 64-bit integer.
648	AsInteger	rw	Access the raw JSON value as an 32-bit integer.
649	AsJSON	r	Return a JSON representation of the value.
648	AsLargeInt	rw	Access to data as largeint.
647	AsQWord	rw	Access the raw JSON value as an 64-bit unsigned integer.
646	AsString	rw	Access the raw JSON value as a string.
647	AsUnicodeString	rw	Return the value as a Unicode string.
645	CompressedJSON	rw	Compress JSON - skip whitespace.
646	Count	r	Number of sub-items for this data element.
649	IsNull	r	Is the data a null value ?
646	Items	rw	Indexed access to sub-items.
646	Value	rw	The value of this data object as a variant.

19.10.4 TJSONData.JSONType

Synopsis: The native JSON data type represented by this object.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `JSONType` indicates the JSON data type that this object will be written as, or the JSON data type that instantiated this object. In `TJSONData`, this function returns `jtUnknown`. Descendents override this method to return the correct data type.

See also: `TJSONType` ([622](#))

19.10.5 TJSONData.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TJSONData`.

Declaration: `constructor Create; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TJSONData` object. It should never be called directly, instead one of the descendents should be instantiated.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` ([653](#)), `TJSONString.Create` ([667](#)), `TJSONBoolean.Create` ([639](#)), `TJSONArray.Create` ([630](#)), `TJSONObject.Create` ([656](#))

19.10.6 TJSONData.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the raw value of this data object.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` is implemented by the descendents of `TJSONData` to clear the data. An array will be emptied, an object will remove all properties, numbers are set to zero, strings set to the empty string, etc.

See also: `Create` ([641](#))

19.10.7 TJSONData.DumpJSON

Synopsis: Fast, memory efficient dump of JSON in stream.

Declaration: `procedure DumpJSON(S: TFPJSStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `DumpJSON` writes the data as a JSON string to the stream `S`. No intermediate strings are created, making this a more fast and memory efficient operation than creating a string with `TJSONData.AsJSON` ([649](#)) and writing it to stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TJSONData.FormatJSON` ([645](#)), `TJSONData.AsJSON` ([649](#))

19.10.8 TJSONData.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator for the data.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator for the JSON data. For simple types, the enumerator will just contain the current value. For arrays and objects, the enumerator will loop over the values in the array. The return value is not a `TJSONData` ([640](#)) type, but a `TJSONEnum` ([627](#)) structure, which contains the value, and for structured types, the key (numerical or string).

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([627](#)), `TJSONArray` ([629](#)), `TJSONObject` ([655](#))

19.10.9 TJSONData.FindPath

Synopsis: Find data by name.

Declaration: `function FindPath(const APath: TJSONStringType) : TJSONData`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPath` finds a value based on its path. If none is found, `Nil` is returned. The path elements are separated by dots and square brackets, as in object member notation or array notation. The path is case sensitive.

- For simple values, the path must be empty.
- For JSON objects (655), a member can be specified using its name, and the object value itself can be retrieved with the empty path.
- For JSON Arrays (655), the elements can be found based on an array index. The array value itself can be retrieved with the empty path.

The following code will return the value itself, i.e. `E` will contain the same element as `D`:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONIntegerNumber.Create(123);
  E:=D.FindPath('');
end.
```

The following code will not return anything:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONIntegerNumber.Create(123);
  E:=D.FindPath('a');
end.
```

The following code will return the third element from the array:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONArray.Create([1,2,3,4,5]);
  E:=D.FindPath('[2]');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
end.
```

The output of this program is 3.

The following code returns the element `Age` from the object:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONObject.Create(['Age',23,
                        'Lastame','Rodriguez',
                        'FirstName','Roberto']);
  E:=D.FindPath('Age');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
end.
```

The code will print 23.

Obviously, this can be combined:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONObject.Create(['Age',23,
                        'Names', TJSONObject.Create([
                            'LastName','Rodriguez',
                            'FirstName','Roberto'])]);
  E:=D.FindPath('Names.LastName');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
end.
```

And mixed:

```
var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONObject.Create(['Children',
    TJSONArray.Create([
      TJSONObject.Create(['Age',23,
        'Names', TJSONObject.Create([
          'LastName','Rodriguez',
          'FirstName','Roberto'])
        ]),
      TJSONObject.Create(['Age',20,
        'Names', TJSONObject.Create([
          'LastName','Rodriguez',
          'FirstName','Maria'])
        ])
    ])
  ];
  E:=D.FindPath('Children[1].Names.FirstName');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
end.
```

See also: [TJSONArray \(629\)](#), [TJSONObject \(655\)](#), [GetPath \(644\)](#)

19.10.10 TJSONData.GetPath

Synopsis: Get data by name.

Declaration: `function GetPath(const APath: TJSONStringType) : TJSONData`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetPath` is identical to `FindPath` ([642](#)) but raises an exception if no element was found. The exception message contains the piece of path that was not found.

Errors: An `EJSON` ([627](#)) exception is raised if the path does not exist.

See also: [FindPath \(642\)](#)

19.10.11 TJSONData.Clone

Synopsis: Duplicate the value of the JSON data.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` returns a new instance of the `TJSONData` descendent that has the same value as the instance, i.e. the `AsJSON` property of the instance and its clone is the same.

Note that the clone must be freed by the caller. Freeing a JSON object will not free its clones.

Errors: Normally, no JSON-specific errors should occur, but an `EOutOfMemory` (??) exception can be raised.

See also: `Clear` (642), `EOutOfMemory` (??)

19.10.12 TJSONData.FormatJSON

Synopsis: Return a formatted JSON representation of the data.

Declaration: `function FormatJSON(Options: TFormatOptions; Indentsize: Integer)
: TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Description: `FormatJSON` returns a formatted JSON representation of the data. For simple JSON values, this is the same representation as the `AsJSON` (603) property, but for complex values (`TJSONArray` (629) and `TJSONObject` (655)) the JSON is formatted differently.

There are some optional parameters to control the formatting. `Options` controls the use of whitespace and newlines. `IndentSize` controls the amount of indent applied when starting a new line.

The implementation is not optimized for speed.

See also: `AsJSON` (649), `TFormatOptions` (606)

19.10.13 TJSONData.CompressedJSON

Synopsis: Compress JSON - skip whitespace.

Declaration: `Property CompressedJSON : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CompressedJSON` can be used to let `TJSONData.AsJSON` (649) return JSON which does not contain any whitespace. By default it is `False` and whitespace is inserted. If set to `True`, output will contain no whitespace.

See also: `TJSONData.FormatJSON` (645), `TJSONData.AsJSON` (649), `TJSONData.UnquotedMemberNames` (640), `TJSONData.AsCompressedJSON` (640), `TJSONObject.UnquotedMemberNames` (661)

19.10.14 TJSONData.Count

Synopsis: Number of sub-items for this data element.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the amount of members of this data element. For simple values (null, boolean, number and string) this is zero. For complex structures, this is the amount of elements in the array or the number of properties of the object

See also: [Items \(646\)](#)

19.10.15 TJSONData.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to sub-items.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TJSONData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` allows indexed access to the sub-items of this data. The `Index` is 0-based, and runs from 0 to `Count-1`. For simple data types, this function always returns `Nil`, the complex data type descendents ([TJSONArray \(629\)](#) and [TJSONObject \(655\)](#)) override this method to return the `Index`-th element in the list.

See also: [Count \(646\)](#), [TJSONArray \(629\)](#), [TJSONObject \(655\)](#)

19.10.16 TJSONData.Value

Synopsis: The value of this data object as a variant.

Declaration: `Property Value : TJSONVariant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` returns the value of the data object as a variant when read, and converts the variant value to the native JSON type of the object. It does not change the native JSON type ([TJSONType \(622\)](#)), so the variant value must be convertible to the native JSON type.

For complex types, reading or writing this property will raise an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: [TJSONType \(622\)](#)

19.10.17 TJSONData.AsString

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as a string.

Declaration: `Property AsString : TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` allows access to the raw value as a string. When reading, it converts the native value of the data to a string. When writing, it attempts to transform the string to a native value. If this conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONString` (667) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsInteger` (648), `Value` (646), `AsInt64` (647), `AsFloat` (648), `AsBoolean` (649), `IsNull` (649), `AsJSON` (649)

19.10.18 TJSONData.AsUnicodeString

Synopsis: Return the value as a Unicode string.

Declaration: `Property AsUnicodeString : TJSONUnicodeStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsUnicodeString` returns the value of a simple JSON value as a Unicode string.

See also: `TJSONData.AsString` (646)

19.10.19 TJSONData.AsInt64

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as an 64-bit integer.

Declaration: `Property AsInt64 : Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInt64` allows access to the raw value as a 64-bit integer value. When reading, it attempts to convert the native value of the data to a 64-bit integer value. When writing, it attempts to transform the 64-bit integer value to a native value. If either conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONInt64Number` (651) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsFloat` (648), `Value` (646), `AsInteger` (648), `AsString` (646), `AsBoolean` (649), `IsNull` (649), `AsJSON` (649)

19.10.20 TJSONData.AsQWord

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as an 64-bit unsigned integer.

Declaration: `Property AsQWord : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsQWord` allows access to the raw value as a 64-bit unsigned integer value. When reading, it attempts to convert the native value of the data to a 64-bit unsigned integer value. When writing, it attempts to transform the 64-bit unsigned integer value to a native value. If either conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONQwordNumber` (666) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsFloat` (648), `Value` (646), `AsInteger` (648), `AsInt64` (647), `AsString` (646), `AsBoolean` (649), `IsNull` (649), `AsJSON` (649)

19.10.21 TJSONData.AsLargeInt

Synopsis: Access to data as largeint.

Declaration: `Property AsLargeInt : TJSONLargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLargeInt` returns an integer value of the largest possible integer type for the current platform: This is `NativeInt` on the `pas2JS` platform, `Int64` on all other platforms.

19.10.22 TJSONData.AsFloat

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as a float.

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : TJSONFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsFloat` allows access to the raw value as a floating-point value. When reading, it converts the native value of the data to a floating-point. When writing, it attempts to transform the floating-point value to a native value. If this conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONFloatNumber` (650) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsInteger` (648), `Value` (646), `AsInt64` (647), `AsString` (646), `AsBoolean` (649), `IsNull` (649), `AsJSON` (649)

19.10.23 TJSONData.AsInteger

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as an 32-bit integer.

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInteger` allows access to the raw value as a 32-bit integer value. When reading, it attempts to convert the native value of the data to a 32-bit integer value. When writing, it attempts to transform the 32-bit integer value to a native value. If either conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONIntegerNumber` (652) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsFloat` (648), `Value` (646), `AsInt64` (647), `AsString` (646), `AsBoolean` (649), `IsNull` (649), `AsJSON` (649)

19.10.24 TJSONData.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as a boolean.

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` allows access to the raw value as a boolean value. When reading, it attempts to convert the native value of the data to a boolean value. When writing, it attempts to transform the boolean value to a native value. For numbers this means that non-zero numbers result in `True`, a zero results in `False`. If either conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONBoolean` (639) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsFloat` (648), `Value` (646), `AsInt64` (647), `AsString` (646), `AsInteger` (648), `IsNull` (649), `AsJSON` (649)

19.10.25 TJSONData.IsNull

Synopsis: Is the data a null value ?

Declaration: `Property IsNull : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `IsNull` is `True` only for `JSONType=jtNull`, i.e. for a `TJSONNull` (653) instance. In all other cases, it is `False`. This value cannot be set.

See also: `TJSONType` (622), `JSONType` (641), `TJSONNull` (653), `AsFloat` (648), `Value` (646), `AsInt64` (647), `AsString` (646), `AsInteger` (648), `AsBoolean` (649), `AsJSON` (649)

19.10.26 TJSONData.AsJSON

Synopsis: Return a JSON representation of the value.

Declaration: `Property AsJSON : TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `AsJSON` returns a JSON representation of the value of the data. For simple values, this is just a textual representation of the object. For objects and arrays, this is an actual JSON Object or JSON Array.

See also: `AsFloat` (648), `Value` (646), `AsInt64` (647), `AsString` (646), `AsInteger` (648), `AsBoolean` (649), `AsJSON` (649)

19.11 TJSONFloatNumber

19.11.1 Description

`TJSONFloatNumber` must be used whenever floating point data must be represented. It can handle `TJSONFloat` (612) data (normally a double). For integer data, `TJSONIntegerNumber` (652) or `TJSONInt64Number` (651) are better suited.

See also: `TJSONNumber` (654), `TJSONFloat` (612), `TJSONIntegerNumber` (652), `TJSONInt64Number` (651)

19.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
651	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
651	<code>Clone</code>	Clone floating point value.
650	<code>Create</code>	Create a new floating-point value.
650	<code>NumberType</code>	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

19.11.3 TJSONFloatNumber.Create

Synopsis: Create a new floating-point value.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: TJSONFloat);` Reintroduce

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new JSON floating point value, and initializes it with `AValue`.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` (653), `TJSONInt64Number.Create` (651)

19.11.4 TJSONFloatNumber.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONFloatNumber` to return `ntFloat`.

See also: `TJSONNumberType` (617), `TJSONData.JSONtype` (641)

19.11.5 TJSONFloatNumber.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONFloatNumber` to set the value to 0.0

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([642](#))

19.11.6 TJSONFloatNumber.Clone

Synopsis: Clone floating point value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#)) and creates an instance of the same class with the same floating-point value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#))

19.12 TJSONInt64Number

19.12.1 Description

`TJSONInt64Number` must be used whenever 64-bit integer data must be represented. For 32-bit integer data, `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([652](#)) must be used.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` ([650](#)), `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([652](#))

19.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
652	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
652	<code>Clone</code>	Clone 64-bit integer value.
651	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of 64-bit integer JSON data.
652	<code>NumberType</code>	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

19.12.3 TJSONInt64Number.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of 64-bit integer JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: Int64); Reintroduce`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new 64-bit integer JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` ([653](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber.Create` ([650](#))

19.12.4 TJSONInt64Number.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONInt64Number` to return `ntInt64`.

See also: `TJSONNumberType` (617), `TJSONData.JSONtype` (641)

19.12.5 TJSONInt64Number.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONInt64Number` to set the value to 0.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` (642)

19.12.6 TJSONInt64Number.Clone

Synopsis: Clone 64-bit integer value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` (645) and creates an instance of the same class with the same 64-bit integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` (645)

19.13 TJSONIntegerNumber

19.13.1 Description

`TJSONIntegerNumber` must be used whenever 32-bit integer data must be represented. For 64-bit integer data, `TJSONInt64Number` (651) must be used.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` (650), `TJSONInt64Number` (651)

19.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
653	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
653	<code>Clone</code>	Clone 32-bit integer value.
653	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of 32-bit integer JSON data.
653	<code>NumberType</code>	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

19.13.3 TJSONIntegerNumber.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of 32-bit integer JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: Integer);` Reintroduce

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new 32-bit integer JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber.Create` (650), `TJSONInt64Number.Create` (651)

19.13.4 TJSONIntegerNumber.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONIntegerNumber` to return `ntInteger`.

See also: `TJSONNumberType` (617), `TJSONData.JSONtype` (641)

19.13.5 TJSONIntegerNumber.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONIntegerNumber` to set the value to 0.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` (642)

19.13.6 TJSONIntegerNumber.Clone

Synopsis: Clone 32-bit integer value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` (645) and creates an instance of the same class with the same 32-bit integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` (645)

19.14 TJSONNull

19.14.1 Description

`TJSONNull` must be used whenever a `null` value must be represented.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` (650), `TJSONIntegerNumber` (652), `TJSONInt64Number` (651), `TJSONBoolean` (639), `TJSONString` (667), `TJSONArray` (629), `TJSONObject` (655)

19.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
654	Clear	Clear data.
654	Clone	Clone boolean value.
654	JSONType	native JSON data type.

19.14.3 TJSONNull.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONNull` to return `jtNull`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` ([641](#))

19.14.4 TJSONNull.Clear

Synopsis: Clear data.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` does nothing.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([642](#))

19.14.5 TJSONNull.Clone

Synopsis: Clone boolean value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#)) and creates an instance of the same class.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#))

19.15 TJSONNumber

19.15.1 Description

`TJSONNumber` is an abstract class which serves as the ancestor for the 3 numerical classes. It should never be instantiated directly. Instead, depending on the kind of data, one of `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([652](#)), `TJSONInt64Number` ([651](#)) or `TJSONFloatNumber` ([650](#)) should be instantiated.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([652](#)), `TJSONInt64Number` ([651](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber` ([650](#))

19.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
655	JSONType	native JSON data type.
655	NumberType	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

19.15.3 TJSONNumber.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONNumber` to return `jtNumber`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` ([641](#))

19.15.4 TJSONNumber.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONNumber` descendents to return the kind of numerical data that can be managed by the class.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([652](#)), `TJSONInt64Number` ([651](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber` ([650](#)), `JSONType` ([603](#))

19.16 TJSONObject

19.16.1 Description

`TJSONObjectClass` is the class type of `TJSONObject` ([655](#)). It is used in the factory methods.

See also: `TJSONObject` ([655](#)), `SetJSONInstanceType` ([626](#)), `GetJSONInstanceType` ([625](#))

19.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
660	Add	Add a name, value to the object.
660	Clear	Clear the object.
657	Clone	Clone the JSON object.
656	Create	Create a new instance of JSON object data.
660	Delete	Delete an element from the list by index.
657	Destroy	Free the JSON object.
661	Extract	Extract an element from the object.
659	Find	Find an element by name.
659	Get	Retrieve a value by name.
658	GetEnumerator	Get an object enumerator.
658	IndexOf	Return index of JSONData instance in object.
658	IndexOfName	Return index of name in item list.
658	Iterate	Iterate over all elements in the object.
657	JSONType	native JSON data type.
661	Remove	Remove item by instance.

19.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
665	Arrays	rw	Named access to JSON array values.
665	Booleans	rw	Named access to boolean values.
662	Elements	rw	Name-based access to JSON values in the object.
663	Floats	rw	Named access to float values.
663	Int64s	rw	Named access to int64 values.
663	Integers	rw	Named access to integer values.
664	LargeInts	rw	Get or set elements as LargeInt values.
662	Names	r	Indexed access to the names of elements.
663	Nulls	rw	Named access to null values.
666	Objects	rw	Named access to JSON object values.
664	QWords	rw	Named access to QWord values.
665	Strings	rw	Named access to string values.
662	Types	r	Types of values in the object.
664	UnicodeStrings	rw	Named access to Unicode string values.
661	UnquotedMemberNames	rw	Should member names be written unquoted or quoted in JSON.

19.16.4 TJSONObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of JSON object data.

Declaration: `constructor Create;` Reintroduce
`constructor Create(const Elements: Array of const);` Overload

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new JSON object instance, and initializes the data with `Elements`. `Elements` is an array containing an even number of items, alternating a name and a value. The names must be strings, and the values are converted to various `TJSONData` ([640](#)) instances. If a value is an instance of `TJSONData`, it is added to the object array as-is.

The data type of the inserted objects is determined from the type of data passed to it, with a natural mapping. A `Nil` pointer will be inserted as a `TJSONNull` value. The following gives an example:

```

Var
  O : TJSONObject;

begin
  O:=TJSONObject.Create([ 'Age', 44,
                          'Firstname', 'Michael',
                          'Lastname', 'Van Canneyt' ]);

```

Errors: An `EConvertError` exception is raised in one of the following cases:

- 1.If an odd number of arguments is passed
- 2.an item where a name is expected does not contain a string
- 3.A value contains an invalid class
- 4.A value of a not recognized data type (pointer) is inserted in the elements

See also: [Add \(660\)](#), [GetJSONInstanceType \(625\)](#)

19.16.5 TJSONObject.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the JSON object.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` will delete all elements in the array and clean up the `TJSONObject` [\(655\)](#) instance.

See also: `TJSONObject.Clear` [\(660\)](#), `TJSONObject.Create` [\(656\)](#)

19.16.6 TJSONObject.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONObject` to return `jtObject`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` [\(641\)](#)

19.16.7 TJSONObject.Clone

Synopsis: Clone the JSON object.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` creates a new `TJSONObject`, clones all elements in the array and adds them to the newly created array with the same names as they were in the array.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` [\(645\)](#)

19.16.8 TJSONObject.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Get an object enumerator.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is overridden in `TJSONObject` so it returns an object enumerator. The array enumerator will return all the elements in the array, and stores their name in the `Key` and index in the `KeyNum` members of `TJSONEnum` (627).

See also: `TJSONEnum` (627), `TJSONData.GetEnumerator` (642)

19.16.9 TJSONObject.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over all elements in the object.

Declaration: `procedure Iterate(Iterator: TJSONObjectIterator; Data: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the object, passing them one by one with name and value to the `Iterator` callback, together with the `Data` parameter. The iteration stops when all elements have been passed or when the iterator callback returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter.

See also: `TJSONObjectIterator` (620)

19.16.10 TJSONObject.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of `JSONData` instance in object.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: TJSONData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` compares all elements in the object with `Obj` and returns the index (in the `TJSONData.Items` (646) property) of the element instance that equals `Obj`. The actual instances are compared, not the JSON value. If none of the elements match, the function returns -1.

See also: `Clear` (660), `IndexOfName` (658)

19.16.11 TJSONObject.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Return index of name in item list.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const AName: TJJSONStringType;
CaseInsensitive: Boolean) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfName` compares the names of all elements in the object with `AName` and returns the index (in the `TJSONData.Items` (646) property) of the element instance whose name matched `AName`. If none of the element's names match, the function returns -1.

Since JSON is a case-sensitive specification, the names are searched case-sensitively by default. This can be changed by setting the optional `CaseInsensitive` parameter to `True`

See also: `IndexOf` (658)

19.16.12 TJSONObject.Find

Synopsis: Find an element by name.

Declaration:

```
function Find(const AName: string) : TJSONData; Overload
function Find(const AName: string; AType: TJSONType) : TJSONData
    ; Overload
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONData)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONObject)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONArray)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONString)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONBoolean)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONNumber)
    : Boolean
```

Visibility: public

Description: Find compares the names of all elements in the object with AName and returns the matching element. If none of the element's names match, the function returns Nil

Since JSON is a case-sensitive specification, the names are searched case-sensitively.

If AType is specified then the element's type must also match the specified type.

See also: IndexOf ([658](#)), IndexOfName ([658](#))

19.16.13 TJSONObject.Get

Synopsis: Retrieve a value by name.

Declaration:

```
function Get(const AName: string) : TJSONVariant
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONFloat) : TJSONFloat
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: Integer) : Integer
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: Int64) : Int64
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: QWord) : QWord
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONUnicodeStringType)
    : TJSONUnicodeStringType
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: Boolean) : Boolean
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONStringType)
    : TJSONStringType
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONArray) : TJSONArray
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONObject) : TJSONObject
```

Visibility: public

Description: Get can be used to retrieve a value by name. If an element with name equal to AName exists, and its type corresponds to the type of the ADefault, then the value is returned. If no element with the correct type exists, the ADefault value is returned.

If no default is specified, the value is returned as a variant type, or Null if no value was found.

The other value retrieval properties such as Integers ([663](#)), Int64s ([663](#)), Booleans ([665](#)), Strings ([665](#)), Floats ([663](#)), Arrays ([665](#)), and Objects ([666](#)) will raise an exception if the name is not found. The Get function does not raise an exception.

See also: Integers ([663](#)), Int64s ([663](#)), Booleans ([665](#)), Strings ([665](#)), Floats ([663](#)), Arrays ([665](#)), Objects ([666](#))

19.16.14 TJSONObject.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the object.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the object and frees all elements in it. After the call to `Clear`, `Count` (646) returns 0.

See also: `Delete` (660), `Extract` (661)

19.16.15 TJSONObject.Add

Synopsis: Add a name, value to the object.

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: TJSONData) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: Boolean) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: TJSONFloat) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; const AValue: TJSONStringType) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: string; AValue: TJSONUnicodeStringType) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: Int64) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: QWord) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: Integer) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType) : Integer; Overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: TJSONArray) : Integer; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds the value `AValue` with name `AName` to the object. If the value is not a `TJSONData` (640) descendent, then it is converted to a `TJSONData` value, and it returns the `TJSONData` descendent that was created to add the value.

The properties `Integers` (663), `Int64s` (663), `Booleans` (665), `Strings` (665), `Floats` (663), `Arrays` (665) and `Objects` (666) will not raise an exception if an existing name is used. They will overwrite any existing value.

Errors: If a value with the same name already exists, an exception is raised.

See also: `Integers` (663), `Int64s` (663), `Booleans` (665), `Strings` (665), `Floats` (663), `Arrays` (665), `Objects` (666)

19.16.16 TJSONObject.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an element from the list by index.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`
`procedure Delete(const AName: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` deletes the element with given `Index` or `AName` from the list. The `TJSONData` (640) element is freed. If a non-existing name is specified, no value is deleted.

Errors: If an invalid index is passed, an exception is raised.

See also: `Clear` (660), `Add` (660), `Extract` (661), `Exchange` (655)

19.16.17 TJSONObject.Remove

Synopsis: Remove item by instance.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(Item: TJSONData)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` will locate the value `Item` in the list of values, and removes it if it exists. The item is freed.

See also: `Delete` (660), `Extract` (661)

19.16.18 TJSONObject.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an element from the object.

Declaration: `function Extract(Index: Integer) : TJSONData`
`function Extract(const AName: string) : TJSONData`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes the element at position `Index` or with the `AName` from the list, just as `Delete` (603) does. In difference with `Delete`, it does not free the object instance. Instead, it returns the extracted element. The result is `Nil` if a non-existing name is specified.

See also: `Delete` (603), `Clear` (603), `Insert` (603), `Add` (603)

19.16.19 TJSONObject.UnquotedMemberNames

Synopsis: Should member names be written unquoted or quoted in JSON.

Declaration: `Property UnquotedMemberNames : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `UnquotedMemberNames` can be set to let `AsJSON` write the member names of a JSON object without quotes (`True`) or with quotes (`False`) around the member names.

When the value is `False`, JSON is written as:

```
{
  "name" : "Free Pascal",
  "type" : "Compiler"
}
```

When the value is `True`, JSON is written as:

```
{
  name : "Free Pascal",
  type : "Compiler"
}
```

Care must be taken when setting this property: The JSON standard requires the quotes to be written, but since JSON is mostly consumed in a Javascript engine, the unquoted values are usually also accepted.

See also: `TJSONData.CompressedJSON` ([645](#))

19.16.20 TJSONObject.Names

Synopsis: Indexed access to the names of elements.

Declaration: `Property Names[Index: Integer]: TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Names` allows to retrieve the names of the elements in the object. The index is zero-based, running from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `Types` ([662](#)), `Elements` ([662](#))

19.16.21 TJSONObject.Elements

Synopsis: Name-based access to JSON values in the object.

Declaration: `Property Elements[AName: string]: TJSONData; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Elements` allows to retrieve the JSON values of the elements in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` ([627](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Items` ([646](#)), `Names` ([662](#)), `Types` ([662](#)), `Integers` ([663](#)), `Int64s` ([663](#)), `Booleans` ([665](#)), `Strings` ([665](#)), `Floats` ([663](#)), `Arrays` ([665](#)), `Objects` ([666](#))

19.16.22 TJSONObject.Types

Synopsis: Types of values in the object.

Declaration: `Property Types[AName: string]: TJSONtype`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Types` allows to retrieve the JSON types of the elements in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` ([627](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Items` ([646](#)), `Names` ([662](#)), `Elements` ([662](#)), `Integers` ([663](#)), `Int64s` ([663](#)), `Booleans` ([665](#)), `Strings` ([665](#)), `Floats` ([663](#)), `Arrays` ([665](#)), `Nulls` ([663](#)), `Objects` ([666](#))

19.16.23 TJSONObject.Nulls

Synopsis: Named access to null values.

Declaration: `Property Nulls[AName: string]: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Nulls` allows to retrieve or set the NULL values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON (627)` exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by a null value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items (646)`, `TJSONObject.Names (662)`, `Elements (603)`, `Integers (603)`, `Int64s (603)`, `Booleans (603)`, `Strings (603)`, `Floats (603)`, `Arrays (603)`, `Types (603)`, `Objects (603)`

19.16.24 TJSONObject.Floats

Synopsis: Named access to float values.

Declaration: `Property Floats[AName: string]: TJSONFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Floats` allows to retrieve or set the float values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON (627)` exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified floating-point value.

See also: `Items (646)`, `Names (662)`, `Elements (662)`, `Integers (663)`, `Int64s (663)`, `Booleans (665)`, `Strings (665)`, `Nulls (663)`, `Arrays (665)`, `Types (662)`, `Objects (666)`

19.16.25 TJSONObject.Integers

Synopsis: Named access to integer values.

Declaration: `Property Integers[AName: string]: Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Integers` allows to retrieve or set the integer values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON (627)` exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items (646)`, `Names (662)`, `Elements (662)`, `Floats (663)`, `Int64s (663)`, `Booleans (665)`, `Strings (665)`, `Nulls (663)`, `Arrays (665)`, `Types (662)`, `Objects (666)`

19.16.26 TJSONObject.Int64s

Synopsis: Named access to int64 values.

Declaration: `Property Int64s[AName: string]: Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Int64s` allows to retrieve or set the int64 values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an EJSON (627) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified int64 value.

See also: Items (646), Names (662), Elements (662), Floats (663), Integers (663), Booleans (665), Strings (665), Nulls (663), Arrays (665), Types (662), Objects (666)

19.16.27 TJSONObject.QWords

Synopsis: Named access to QWord values.

Declaration: `Property QWords[AName: string]: QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `QWords` allows to retrieve or set the QWord values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an EJSON (627) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified QWord value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (646), Names (662), Elements (662), Floats (663), Integers (663), Booleans (665), Strings (665), Nulls (663), Arrays (665), Types (662), Objects (666)

19.16.28 TJSONObject.LargeInts

Synopsis: Get or set elements as LargeInt values.

Declaration: `Property LargeInts[AName: string]: TJSONLargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LargeInts` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsLargeInt` (648) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsLargeInt
```

When writing, it will check if an Largeint integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-large-integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written value.

See also: `TJSONData.AsLargeInt` (648), `TJSONData.Items` (646), `TJSONData.IsNull` (649), `TJSONObject.Types` (662), `TJSONObject.Integers` (663), `TJSONObject.Floats` (663), `TJSONObject.Strings` (665), `TJSONObject.Booleans` (665), `TJSONObject.QWords` (664)

19.16.29 TJSONObject.UnicodeStrings

Synopsis: Named access to Unicode string values.

Declaration: `Property UnicodeStrings[AName: string]: TJSONUnicodeStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Strings` allows to retrieve or set the Unicode string values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` (627) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified `UnicodeString` value.

See also: Items (646), Names (662), Elements (662), Floats (663), Integers (663), Booleans (665), Int64s (663), Nulls (663), Arrays (665), Types (662), Objects (666), Strings (665)

19.16.30 `TJSONObject.Strings`

Synopsis: Named access to string values.

Declaration: `Property Strings[AName: string]: TJJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Strings` allows to retrieve or set the string values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` (627) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified string value.

See also: Items (646), Names (662), Elements (662), Floats (663), Integers (663), Booleans (665), Int64s (663), Nulls (663), Arrays (665), Types (662), Objects (666), `UnicodeStrings` (664)

19.16.31 `TJSONObject.Booleans`

Synopsis: Named access to boolean values.

Declaration: `Property Booleans[AName: string]: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Booleans` allows to retrieve or set the boolean values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` (627) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified boolean value.

See also: Items (646), Names (662), Elements (662), Floats (663), Integers (663), Strings (665), Int64s (663), Nulls (663), Arrays (665), Types (662), Objects (666)

19.16.32 `TJSONObject.Arrays`

Synopsis: Named access to JSON array values.

Declaration: `Property Arrays[AName: string]: TJJSONArray`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Arrays` allows to retrieve or set the JSON array values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` (627) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified JSON array.

See also: Items (646), Names (662), Elements (662), Floats (663), Integers (663), Strings (665), Int64s (663), Nulls (663), Booleans (665), Types (662), Objects (666)

19.16.33 TJSONObject.Objects

Synopsis: Named access to JSON object values.

Declaration: `Property Objects[AName: string]: TJSONObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Objects` allows to retrieve or set the JSON object values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` (627) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified JSON object.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (646), `Names` (662), `Elements` (662), `Floats` (663), `Integers` (663), `Strings` (665), `Int64s` (663), `Nulls` (663), `Booleans` (665), `Types` (662), `Arrays` (665)

19.17 TJSONQWordNumber

19.17.1 Description

`TJSONQWordNumber` must be used whenever 64-bit unsigned integer data must be represented. For 32-bit integer data, `TJSONIntegerNumber` (652) must be used. For 64-bit signed integer data, `TJSONInt64Number` (651) must be used.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` (650), `TJSONIntegerNumber` (652), `TJSONInt64Number` (651)

19.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
667	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
667	<code>Clone</code>	Clone 64-bit unsigned integer value.
666	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of 64-bit unsigned integer JSON data.
666	<code>NumberType</code>	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

19.17.3 TJSONQWordNumber.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of 64-bit unsigned integer JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: QWord); Reintroduce`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new 64-bit unsigned integer JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` (653), `TJSONInt64Number.Create` (651), `TJSONFloatNumber.Create` (650)

19.17.4 TJSONQWordNumber.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONQwordNumber` to return `ntQWord`.

See also: `TJSONNumberType` (617), `TJSONData.JSONtype` (641)

19.17.5 TJSONQWordNumber.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONQwordNumber` to set the value to 0.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([642](#))

19.17.6 TJSONQWordNumber.Clone

Synopsis: Clone 64-bit unsigned integer value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#)) and creates an instance of the same class with the 64-bit unsigned integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#))

19.18 TJSONString

19.18.1 Description

`TJSONString` must be used whenever string data must be represented. Currently the implementation uses an ANSI string to hold the data. This means that to correctly hold Unicode data, a UTF-8 encoding must be used.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` ([650](#)), `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([652](#)), `TJSONInt64Number` ([651](#)), `TJSONBoolean` ([639](#)), `TJSONNull` ([653](#)), `TJSONArray` ([629](#)), `TJSONObject` ([655](#))

19.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
668	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
668	<code>Clone</code>	Clone string value.
667	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of string JSON data.
668	<code>JSONType</code>	native JSON data type.

19.18.3 TJSONString.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of string JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AValue: TJSONStringType); Reintroduce`
`constructor Create(const AValue: TJSONUnicodeStringType); Reintroduce`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new string JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`. Currently the implementation uses an ANSI string to hold the data. This means that to correctly hold Unicode data, a UTF-8 encoding must be used.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` ([653](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber.Create` ([650](#)), `TJSONInt64Number.Create` ([651](#)), `TJSONBoolean.Create` ([639](#)), `TJSONArray.Create` ([630](#)), `TJSONObject.Create` ([656](#))

19.18.4 TJSONString.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONString` to return `jtString`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` ([641](#))

19.18.5 TJSONString.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONString` to set the value to the empty string "".

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([642](#))

19.18.6 TJSONString.Clone

Synopsis: Clone string value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#)) and creates an instance of the same class with the same string value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([645](#))

Chapter 20

Reference for unit 'fpmimetypes'

20.1 Used units

Table 20.1: Used units by unit 'fpmimetypes'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contnrs	218
System	??
sysutils	??

20.2 Overview

The `fpmimetypes` unit contains a class which handles mapping of filename extensions to MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions) types. The `TFPMimeTypes` ([670](#)) class handles this mapping. A global instance of this class is available through the `MimeTypes` ([669](#)) function. The list of known mime types can be instantiated through the `LoadKnownTypes` ([671](#)) method, or a file in the standard `mime.types` format can be loaded through the `LoadFromFile` ([672](#)) method.

20.3 Procedures and functions

20.3.1 MimeTypes

Synopsis: Global `TFPMimeTypes` instance.

Declaration: `function MimeTypes : TFPMimeTypes`

Visibility: default

Description: `MimeTypes` returns a global instance of the `TFPMimeTypes` ([670](#)) class. It is not initialized with a list of extensions, so this instance must still be explicitly initialized with `TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes` ([671](#))

This function is not thread-safe, so be sure to call it once from the main thread and initialize the resulting list.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes` ([670](#)), `TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes` ([671](#))

20.4 TFPMimeType

20.4.1 Description

TFPMimeTypes manages a list of MIME types.

The list of types can be initialized with the OS list of known MIME types through the LoadKnownTypes (671) method, or a file in the standard mime.types format can be loaded through the LoadFromFile (672) method.

The associated mime type of a file extension can be retrieved with TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType (672).

See also: TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes (671), TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromFile (672), TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType (672)

20.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
672	AddType	Add a MIME type to the list.
671	Clear	Clear the list of known MIME types.
670	Create	Create a new instance of the TFPMimeTypes class.
670	Destroy	Remove instance from memory.
673	GetKnownExtensions	Get a list of all known extensions.
673	GetKnownMimeType	Get a list of all known MIME types.
672	GetMimeTypeExtensions	Get the extensions associated with a MIME type.
672	GetMimeType	Get MIME type of an extension.
671	GetNextExtension	Extract an extension from an extension list as returned by GetMimeTypeExtensions.
672	LoadFromFile	Load mime types from a file in mime.types file format.
671	LoadFromStream	Load mime types from a stream in mime.types file format.
671	LoadKnownTypes	Queries the OS for a list of known MIME types.

20.4.3 TFPMimeTypes.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TFPMimeTypes class.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: The Create method sets up the necessary internal structures.

See also: TFPMimeTypes.Destroy (670)

20.4.4 TFPMimeTypes.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove instance from memory.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy destroys the TFPMimeTypes instance and removes it from memory.

See also: TFPMimeTypes.Create (670)

20.4.5 TFPMimeType.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list of known MIME types.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the list of known mime types.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes` ([671](#))

20.4.6 TFPMimeType.LoadKnownTypes

Synopsis: Queries the OS for a list of known MIME types.

Declaration: `procedure LoadKnownTypes; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadKnownTypes` uses the default mechanism of the OS to initialize the list of MIME types. Under windows, this loads a list of known extensions from the registry (under `HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT`) and attempts to load a `mime.types` located next to the application binary. Under unixlike OS-es, the system location for the `mime.types` is used to load the `mime.types` file.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromFile` ([672](#))

20.4.7 TFPMimeType.GetNextExtension

Synopsis: Extract an extension from an extension list as returned by `GetMimeExtensions`.

Declaration: `class function GetNextExtension(var E: string) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNextExtension` is a helper function that extracts and returns the next extension from the semicolon separated list of extensions `E` and removes the extension from the list. If there is no more extension, the empty string is returned.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeExtensions` ([672](#))

20.4.8 TFPMimeType.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load mime types from a stream in `mime.types` file format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(const Stream: TStream); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromStream` parses the stream for MIME type definitions and extensions and adds them to the list of known MIME types. The stream is expected to have the text format of the `mime.types` as found in unix systems.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromFile` ([672](#))

20.4.9 TFPMimeType.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load mime types from a file in mime.types file format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` loads the file `aFileName` and parses the file for MIME type definitions and extensions and adds them to the list of known MIME types. The file is expected to have the text format of the `mime.types` as found in unix systems.

Errors: if the file `aFileName` does not exist, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromStream` ([671](#))

20.4.10 TFPMimeType.AddType

Synopsis: Add a MIME type to the list.

Declaration: `procedure AddType(const AMimeType: string; const AExtensions: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddType` can be used to add `AMimeType` to the list of known MIME types, and associate a semicolon-separated list of extensions `AExtensions` with it. If `AMimeType` is already present in the list of MIME types, then the list of extensions in `AExtensions` is merged with the existing extensions. The extensions may not have a dot character prepended to them.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeExtensions` ([672](#)), `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType` ([672](#))

20.4.11 TFPMimeType.GetMimeExtensions

Synopsis: Get the extensions associated with a MIME type.

Declaration: `function GetMimeExtensions(const AMimeType: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetMimeExtensions` returns the list of extensions associated with a MIME type (`AMimeType`). If none are known, an empty string is returned. `AMimeType` is searched case insensitively.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType` ([672](#))

20.4.12 TFPMimeType.GetMimeType

Synopsis: Get MIME type of an extension.

Declaration: `function GetMimeType(const AExtension: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetMimeType` returns the MIME type of the extension `AExtension`. The extension is searched case-insensitive. If no MIME type is found, an empty string is returned. The extension may start with a dot character or not.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeExtensions` ([672](#))

20.4.13 TFPMimeType.GetKnownMimeType

Synopsis: Get a list of all known MIME types.

Declaration: `function GetKnownMimeType (AList: TStrings) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetKnownMimeType` fills `AList` with the list of known MIME types (one per line) in random order. It clears the list first, and returns the number of entries added to the list.

See also: `TFPMimeType.GetKnownExtensions` ([673](#))

20.4.14 TFPMimeType.GetKnownExtensions

Synopsis: Get a list of all known extensions.

Declaration: `function GetKnownExtensions (AList: TStrings) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetKnownExtensions` fills `AList` with the list of known extensions (one per line) in random order. It clears the list first, and returns the number of entries added to the list. The extensions do not have a dot (.) character prepended.

See also: `TFPMimeType.GetKnownMimeType` ([673](#))

20.5 TMimeType

20.5.1 Description

`TMimeType` is a helper class which stores a MIME type and its associated extensions. It should not be necessary to create instances of this class manually, the creation is handled entirely through the `TFPMimeType` ([670](#)) class.

See also: `TMimeType.MimeType` ([674](#)), `TMimeType.Extensions` ([674](#)), `TFPMimeType` ([670](#))

20.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
674	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TMimeType</code> .
674	MergeExtensions	Merge extensions in the list of extensions.

20.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
674	Extensions	rw	Semicolon-separated list of extensions associated with <code>MimeType</code> .
674	MimeType	rw	Mime type name.

20.5.4 TMimeType.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TMimeType.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AMimeType: string; const AExtensions: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TMimeType and sets the TMimeType.MimeType (674) TMimeType.Extensions (674) properties to `aMimeType` and `aExtensions`.

See also: TMimeType.MimeType (674), TMimeType.Extensions (674)

20.5.5 TMimeType.MergeExtensions

Synopsis: Merge extensions in the list of extensions.

Declaration: `procedure MergeExtensions(AExtensions: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `MergeExtensions` merges the comma-separated list of extensions in `AExtensions` into TMimeType.Extensions (674) in such a way that there are no duplicates.

See also: TMimeType.Extensions (674)

20.5.6 TMimeType.MimeType

Synopsis: Mime type name.

Declaration: `Property MimeType : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MimeType` is the lowercase name of the mime type.

See also: TMimeType.Extensions (674)

20.5.7 TMimeType.Extensions

Synopsis: Semicolon-separated list of extensions associated with MimeType.

Declaration: `Property Extensions : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Extensions` is the comma-separated list of extensions that is associated with MimeType (674)

See also: TMimeType.MimeType (674)

Chapter 21

Reference for unit 'fptimer'

21.1 Used units

Table 21.1: Used units by unit 'fptimer'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

21.2 Overview

The `fpTimer` unit implements a timer class `TFPTimer` ([677](#)) which can be used on all supported platforms. The timer class uses a driver class `TFPTimerDriver` ([679](#)) which does the actual work.

A default timer driver class is implemented on all platforms. It will work in GUI and non-gui applications, but only in the application's main thread.

An alternative driver class can be used by setting the `DefaultTimerDriverClass` ([676](#)) variable to the class pointer of the driver class. The driver class should descend from `TFPTimerDriver` ([679](#)).

21.3 Constants, types and variables

21.3.1 Types

```
TFPTimerDriverClass = type class(TObject)
protected
  FTimer : TFPCustomTimer
  ;
  FTimerStarted : Boolean;
  procedure SetInterval(const AValue
    : Cardinal); Virtual;
public
  constructor Create(ATimer: TFPCustomTimer
  ); Virtual;
  procedure StartTimer; Virtual; Abstract;
```

```

procedure
  StopTimer; Virtual; Abstract;
property Timer : TFPCustomTimer
  ;
property TimerStarted : Boolean;
end

```

TFPTimerDriverClass is the class pointer of TFPTimerDriver (679) it exists mainly for the purpose of being able to set DefaultTimerDriverClass (676), so a custom timer driver can be used for the timer instances.

21.3.2 Variables

```
DefaultTimerDriverClass : TFPTimerDriverClass = Nil
```

DefaultTimerDriverClass contains the TFPTimerDriver (679) class pointer that should be used when a new instance of TFPCustomTimer (676) is created. It is by default set to the system timer class.

Setting this class pointer to another descendent of TFPTimerDriver allows to customize the default timer implementation used in the entire application.

21.4 TFPCustomTimer

21.4.1 Description

TFPCustomTimer is the timer class containing the timer's implementation. It relies on an extra driver instance (of type TFPTimerDriver (679)) to do the actual work.

TFPCustomTimer publishes no events or properties, so it is unsuitable for handling in an IDE. The TFPTimer (677) descendent class publishes all needed events of TFPCustomTimer.

See also: TFPTimerDriver (679), TFPTimer (677)

21.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
676	Create	Create a new timer.
677	Destroy	Release a timer instance from memory.
677	StartTimer	Start the timer.
677	StopTimer	Stop the timer.

21.4.3 TFPCustomTimer.Create

Synopsis: Create a new timer.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new TFPCustomTimer instance. It creates the timer driver instance from the DefaultTimerDriverClass class pointer.

See also: TFPCustomTimer.Destroy (677)

21.4.4 TFPCustomTimer.Destroy

Synopsis: Release a timer instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` releases the timer driver component from memory, and then calls `Inherited` to clean the `TFPCustomTimer` instance from memory.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.Create` (676)

21.4.5 TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer

Synopsis: Start the timer.

Declaration: `procedure StartTimer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTimer` starts the timer. After a call to `StartTimer`, the timer will start producing timer ticks.

The timer stops producing ticks only when the `StopTimer` (677) event is called.

See also: `StopTimer` (677), `Enabled` (678), `OnTimer` (678)

21.4.6 TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer

Synopsis: Stop the timer.

Declaration: `procedure StopTimer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopTimer` stops a started timer. After a call to `StopTimer`, the timer no longer produces timer ticks.

See also: `StartTimer` (677), `Enabled` (678), `OnTimer` (678)

21.5 TFPTimer

21.5.1 Description

`TFPTimer` implements no new events or properties, but merely publishes events and properties already implemented in `TFPCustomTimer` (676): `Enabled` (678), `OnTimer` (678) and `Interval` (678).

The `TFPTimer` class is suitable for use in an IDE.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer` (676), `Enabled` (678), `OnTimer` (678), `Interval` (678)

21.5.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
678	Enabled		Start or stop the timer.
678	Interval		Timer tick interval in milliseconds.
679	OnStartTimer		
679	OnStopTimer		
678	OnTimer		Event called on each timer tick.
678	UseTimerThread		

21.5.3 TFPTimer.Enabled

Synopsis: Start or stop the timer.

Declaration: `Property Enabled :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Enabled` controls whether the timer is active. Setting `Enabled` to `True` will start the timer (calling `StartTimer` ([677](#))), setting it to `False` will stop the timer (calling `StopTimer` ([677](#))).

See also: `StartTimer` ([677](#)), `StopTimer` ([677](#)), `OnTimer` ([678](#)), `Interval` ([678](#))

21.5.4 TFPTimer.Interval

Synopsis: Timer tick interval in milliseconds.

Declaration: `Property Interval :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Interval` specifies the timer interval in milliseconds. Every `Interval` milliseconds, the `OnTimer` ([678](#)) event handler will be called.

Note that the milliseconds interval is a minimum interval. Under high system load, the timer tick may arrive later.

See also: `OnTimer` ([678](#)), `Enabled` ([678](#))

21.5.5 TFPTimer.UseTimerThread

Declaration: `Property UseTimerThread :`

Visibility: published

Access:

21.5.6 TFPTimer.OnTimer

Synopsis: Event called on each timer tick.

Declaration: `Property OnTimer :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `OnTimer` is called on each timer tick. The event handler must be assigned to a method that will do the actual work that should occur when the timer fires.

See also: [Interval \(678\)](#), [Enabled \(678\)](#)

21.5.7 TFPTimer.OnStartTimer

Declaration: `Property OnStartTimer :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

21.5.8 TFPTimer.OnStopTimer

Declaration: `Property OnStopTimer :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

21.6 TFPTimerDriver

21.6.1 Description

`TFPTimerDriver` is the abstract timer driver class: it simply provides an interface for the `TFP-CustomTimer (676)` class to use.

The `fpTimer` unit implements a descendent of this class which implements the default timer mechanism.

See also: [TFPCustomTimer \(676\)](#), [DefaultTimerDriverClass \(676\)](#)

21.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
679	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new driver instance.
680	<code>StartTimer</code>	Start the timer.
680	<code>StopTimer</code>	Stop the timer.

21.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
680	<code>Timer</code>	<code>r</code>	Timer tick.
680	<code>TimerStarted</code>	<code>r</code>	True when the timer driver has called its <code>StartTimer</code> method.

21.6.4 TFPTimerDriver.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new driver instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ATimer: TFPCustomTimer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` should be overridden by descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` to do additional initialization of the timer driver. `Create` just stores (in `Timer` (680)) a reference to the `ATimer` instance which created the driver instance.

See also: `Timer` (680), `TFPTimer` (677)

21.6.5 TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer

Synopsis: Start the timer.

Declaration: `procedure StartTimer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `StartTimer` is called by `TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer` (677). It should be overridden by descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` to actually start the timer.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer` (677), `TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer` (680)

21.6.6 TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer

Synopsis: Stop the timer.

Declaration: `procedure StopTimer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `StopTimer` is called by `TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer` (677). It should be overridden by descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` to actually stop the timer.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer` (677), `TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer` (680)

21.6.7 TFPTimerDriver.Timer

Synopsis: Timer tick.

Declaration: `Property Timer : TFPCustomTimer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Timer` calls the `TFPCustomTimer` (676) timer event. Descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` should call `Timer` whenever a timer tick occurs.

See also: `TFPTimer.OnTimer` (678), `TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer` (680), `TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer` (680)

21.6.8 TFPTimerDriver.TimerStarted

Synopsis: True when the timer driver has called its `StartTimer` method.

Declaration: `Property TimerStarted : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: True when the timer driver has called its `StartTimer` method.

Chapter 22

Reference for unit 'gettext'

22.1 Used units

Table 22.1: Used units by unit 'gettext'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

22.2 Overview

The `gettext` unit can be used to hook into the resource string mechanism of Free Pascal to provide translations of the resource strings, based on the GNU `gettext` mechanism. The unit provides a class (`TMOFile` ([684](#))) to read the `.mo` files with localizations for various languages. It also provides a couple of calls to translate all resource strings in an application based on the translations in a `.mo` file.

22.3 Constants, types and variables

22.3.1 Constants

```
MOFileHeaderMagic = $950412DE
```

This constant is found as the first integer in a `.mo`

22.3.2 Types

```
PLongWordArray = ^TLongWordArray
```

Pointer to a `TLongWordArray` ([682](#)) array.

```
PMOStringTable = ^TMOStringTable
```

Pointer to a TMOStringTable (682) array.

```
PPCharArray = ^TPCharArray
```

Pointer to a TPCharArray (682) array.

```
TLongWordArray = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(LongWord)] of
    LongWord
```

TLongWordArray is an array used to define the PLongWordArray (681) pointer. A variable of type TLongWordArray should never be directly declared, as it would occupy too much memory. The PLongWordArray type can be used to allocate a dynamic number of elements.

```
TMOStringTable = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(TMOStringInfo)] of packed
    record
        &length : LongWord;
        offset : LongWord;
    end
```

TMOStringTable is an array type containing TMOStringInfo (683) records. It should never be used directly, as it would occupy too much memory.

```
TPCharArray = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(PChar)] of PChar
```

TLongWordArray is an array used to define the PPCharArray (682) pointer. A variable of type TPCharArray should never be directly declared, as it would occupy too much memory. The PPCharArray type can be used to allocate a dynamic number of elements.

22.4 Procedures and functions

22.4.1 GetLanguageIDs

Synopsis: Return the current language IDs.

Declaration: `procedure GetLanguageIDs(var Lang: string; var FallbackLang: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: GetLanguageIDs returns the current language IDs (an ISO string) as returned by the operating system. On windows, the GetUserDefaultLCID and GetLocaleInfo calls are used. On other operating systems, the LC_ALL, LC_MESSAGES or LANG environment variables are examined.

22.4.2 TranslateResourceStrings

Synopsis: Translate the resource strings of the application.

Declaration: `procedure TranslateResourceStrings(AFile: TMOFile)`
`procedure TranslateResourceStrings(const AFilename: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateResourceStrings` translates all the resource strings in the application based on the values in the `.mo` file `AFileName` or `AFile`. The procedure creates an `TMOFile` (684) instance to read the `.mo` file if a filename is given.

Errors: If the file does not exist or is an invalid `.mo` file.

See also: `TranslateUnitResourceStrings` (683), `TMOFile` (684)

22.4.3 TranslateUnitResourceStrings

Synopsis: Translate the resource strings of a unit.

Declaration:

```
procedure TranslateUnitResourceStrings(const AUnitName: string;
                                       AFile: TMOFile)
procedure TranslateUnitResourceStrings(const AUnitName: string;
                                       const AFilename: string)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateUnitResourceStrings` is identical in function to `TranslateResourceStrings` (682), but translates the strings of a single unit (`AUnitName`) which was used to compile the application. This can be more convenient, since the resource string files are created on a unit basis.

See also: `TranslateResourceStrings` (682), `TMOFile` (684)

22.5 TMOFileHeader

```
TMOFileHeader = packed record
  magic : LongWord;
  revision : LongWord
;
  nstrings : LongWord;
  OrigTabOffset : LongWord;
  TransTabOffset
    : LongWord;
  HashTabSize : LongWord;
  HashTabOffset : LongWord
;
end
```

This structure describes the structure of a `.mo` file with string localizations.

22.6 TMOStringInfo

```
TMOStringInfo = packed record
  &length : LongWord;
  offset : LongWord
;
end
```

This record is one element in the string tables describing the original and translated strings. It describes the position and length of the string. The location of these tables is stored in the `TMOFileHeader` (683) record at the start of the file.

22.7 EMOFileError

22.7.1 Description

EMOFileError is raised in case an TMOFile (684) instance is created with an invalid .mo.

See also: TMOFile (684)

22.8 TMOFile

22.8.1 Description

TMOFile is a class providing easy access to a .mo file. It can be used to translate any of the strings that reside in the .mo file. The internal structure of the .mo is completely hidden.

22.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
684	Create	Create a new instance of the TMOFile class.
684	Destroy	Removes the TMOFile instance from memory.
685	Translate	Translate a string.

22.8.3 TMOFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TMOFile class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFilename: string)`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of the MOFile class. It opens the file AFileName or the stream AStream. If a stream is provided, it should be seekable.

The whole contents of the file is read into memory during the Create call. This means that the stream is no longer needed after the Create call.

Errors: If the named file does not exist, then an exception may be raised. If the file does not contain a valid TMOFileHeader (683) structure, then an EMOFileError (684) exception is raised.

See also: TMOFile.Destroy (684)

22.8.4 TMOFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the TMOFile instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans the internal structures with the contents of the .mo. After this the TMOFile instance is removed from memory.

See also: TMOFile.Create (684)

22.8.5 TMOFile.Translate

Synopsis: Translate a string.

Declaration:

```
function Translate(AOrig: PChar; ALen: Integer; AHash: LongWord)
                : string
function Translate(AOrig: string; AHash: LongWord) : string
function Translate(AOrig: string) : string
```

Visibility: public

Description: `Translate` translates the string `AOrig`. The string should be in the `.mo` file as-is. The string can be given as a plain string, as a `PChar` (with length `ALen`). If the hash value (`AHash`) of the string is not given, it is calculated.

If the string is in the `.mo` file, the translated string is returned. If the string is not in the file, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

Chapter 23

Reference for unit 'IBConnection'

23.1 Used units

Table 23.1: Used units by unit 'IBConnection'

Name	Page
BufDataset	145
Classes	??
DB	361
dbconst	??
ibase60dyn	??
SQLDB	882
System	??
sysutils	??

23.2 Constants, types and variables

23.2.1 Constants

`DEFDIALECT = 3`

Default dialect that will be used when connecting to databases. See `TIBConnection.Dialect` ([692](#)) for more details on dialects.

`MAXBLOBSEGMENTSIZE = 65535`

Maximum size to use when fetching blob segments.

23.2.2 Types

`TStatusVector = Array[0..19] of ISC_STATUS`

`TStatusVector` is the (opaque) type of the Interbase internal status vector.

23.3 TDatabaseInfo

```
TDatabaseInfo = record
  Dialect : Integer;
  ODSMajorVersion : Integer
  ;
  ServerVersion : string = type string;
  ServerVersionString :
    string = type string;
end
```

TDatabaseInfo is used internally by TIBconnection to store information about the connected database.

23.4 EIBDatabaseError

23.4.1 Description

Firebird/Interbase database error, a descendant of db.EDatabaseError ([686](#)).

See also: db.EDatabaseError ([686](#))

23.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
687	GDSErrorCode	r	Firebird/Interbase GDS error code.
687	StatusVector	rw	Low-level IB API status vector.

23.4.3 EIBDatabaseError.StatusVector

Synopsis: Low-level IB API status vector.

Declaration: `Property StatusVector : TStatusVector`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: StatusVector contains the low-level status information returned by the last firebird/interbase APO call.

23.4.4 EIBDatabaseError.GDSErrorCode

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase GDS error code.

Declaration: `Property GDSErrorCode : Integer; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Firebird/Interbase-specific error code, the GDS error code. From a Firebird perspective: Firebird throws 2 error codes for an exception. The high-level one is the SQLCODE, which is a negative 3-digit code. The lower-level one is the ISC code (or GDSCODE) which has 9 digits. Related ISC error types are grouped under the same SQLCODE. In some cases, each successive gdscode error gives you further information about the error condition. Note: SQLCODE is a deprecated SQL standard; its successor is SQLSTATE.

23.5 TIBConnection

23.5.1 Description

`TIBConnection` is a descendant of `TSQLConnection` (686) and represents a connection to a Firebird/Interbase server.

It is designed to work with Interbase 6, Firebird 1 and newer database servers.

`TIBConnection` by default requires the Firebird/Interbase client library (e.g. `gds32.dll`, `libfbclient.so`, `fbclient.dll`, `fbembed.dll`) and its dependencies to be installed on the system. The bitness between library and your application must match: e.g. use 32 bit `fbclient` when developing a 32 bit application on 64 bit Linux.

On Windows, in accordance with the regular Windows way of loading DLLs, the library can also be in the executable directory. In fact, this directory is searched first, and might be a good option for distributing software to end users as it eliminates problems with incompatible DLL versions.

`TIBConnection` is based on FPC Interbase/Firebird code (`ibase60.inc`) that tries to load the client library. If you want to use Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded library is searched/loaded first. There are several ways to do this:

- Include `ibase60` in your `uses` clause, set `UseEmbeddedFirebird` to `true`
- On Windows, with FPC newer than 2.5.1, put `fbembed.dll` in your application directory
- On Windows, put the `fbembed.dll` in your application directory and rename it to `fbclient.dll`

Pre 2.5.1 versions of FPC did not try to load the `fbembed` library by default. See [FPC bug 17664](#) for more details.

An indication of which DLLs need to be installed on Windows (Firebird 2.5, differs between versions:

- `fbclient.dll` (or `fbembed.dll`)
- `firebird.msg`
- `ib_util.dll`
- `icudt30.dll`
- `icuin30.dll`
- `icuuc30.dll`
- `msvcpr80.dll`
- `msvcr80.dll`

Please see your database documentation for details.

The `TIBConnection` component does not reliably detect computed fields as such. This means that automatically generated update SQL statements will attempt to update these fields, resulting in SQL

errors. These errors can be avoided by removing the `pfInUpdate` flag from the `provideroptions` from a field, once it has been created:

```
MyQuery.FieldName('full_name').ProviderFlags:=[];
```

See also: [TSQLConnection \(686\)](#)

23.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
689	Create	Creates a <code>TIBConnection</code> object.
690	CreateDB	Creates a database on disk.
690	DropDB	Deletes a database from disk.
689	GetConnectionInfo	Return some information about the connection.

23.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
691	BlobSegmentSize	rw	Write this amount of bytes per BLOB segment.
692	CheckTransactionParams	rw	Let StartTransaction check transaction parameters.
691	DatabaseName		Name of the database to connect to.
692	Dialect	rws	Database dialect.
692	KeepConnection		Keep open connection after first query.
692	LoginPrompt		Switch for showing custom login prompt.
691	ODSMajorVersion	r	Database On-Disk Structure major version.
693	OnLogin		Event triggered when a login prompt needs to be shown.
693	Params		Firebird/Interbase specific parameters.
693	Port	s	Port at which the server listens.
693	UseConnectionCharSetIfNone	rw	For string/blob fields with codepage none, use the connection character set when copying data.
694	WireCompression	rw	Use wire compression when communicating with the server.

23.5.4 TIBConnection.Create

Synopsis: Creates a `TIBConnection` object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a `TIBConnection` object.

23.5.5 TIBConnection.GetConnectionInfo

Synopsis: Return some information about the connection.

Declaration: `function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetConnectionInfo` overrides `TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo` (918) to return the relevant information for the Interbase/Firebird connection.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo` (918), `TConnInfoType` (892)

23.5.6 TIBConnection.CreateDB

Synopsis: Creates a database on disk.

Declaration: `procedure CreateDB; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Instructs the Interbase or Firebird database server to create a new database.

If set, the `TSQLConnection.Params` (686) (specifically, `PAGE_SIZE`) and `TSQLConnection.CharSet` (686) properties influence the database creation.

If creating a database using a client/server environment, the `TIBConnection` code will connect to the database server before trying to create the database. Therefore make sure the connection properties are already correctly set, e.g. `TSQLConnection.HostName` (686), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (686), `TSQLConnection.Password` (686).

If creating a database using Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded library is loaded, the `TSQLConnection.HostName` (686) property is empty, and set the `TSQLConnection.UserName` (686) to e.g. 'SYSDBA'. See `TIBConnection: Firebird/Interbase specific TSQLConnection` (686). for details on loading the embedded database library.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Params` (686), `TSQLConnection.DropDB` (686), `TIBConnection` (688)

23.5.7 TIBConnection.DropDB

Synopsis: Deletes a database from disk.

Declaration: `procedure DropDB; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `DropDB` instructs the Interbase/Firebird database server to delete the database that is specified in the `TIBConnection` (688).

In a client/server environment, the `TIBConnection` code will connect to the database server before telling it to drop the database. Therefore make sure the connection properties are already correctly set, e.g. `TSQLConnection.HostName` (686), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (686), `TSQLConnection.Password` (686).

When using Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded connection library is loaded, the `TSQLConnection.HostName` (686) property is empty, and set the `TSQLConnection.UserName` (686) to e.g. 'SYSDBA'. See `TIBConnection: Firebird/Interbase specific TSQLConnection` (686). for more details on loading the embedded library.

See also: `TSQLConnection.CreateDB` (686), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (686), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (686), `TSQLConnection.Password` (686)

23.5.8 TIBConnection.BlobSegmentSize

Synopsis: Write this amount of bytes per BLOB segment.

Declaration: `Property BlobSegmentSize : Word; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: **Deprecated** since FPC 2.7.1 revision 19659

When sending BLOBs to the database, the code writes them in segments.

Before FPC 2.7.1 revision 19659, these segments were 80 bytes and could be changed using `BlobSegmentSize`. Please set `BlobSegmentSize` to 65535 for better write performance.

In newer FPC versions, the `BlobSegmentSize` property is ignored and segments of 65535 bytes are always used.

23.5.9 TIBConnection.ODSMajorVersion

Synopsis: Database On-Disk Structure major version.

Declaration: `Property ODSMajorVersion : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ODSMajorVersion` is the Database On-Disk Structure major version. It is provided for information purposes only.

23.5.10 TIBConnection.DatabaseName

Synopsis: Name of the database to connect to.

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Name of the Interbase/Firebird database to connect to.

This can be either the path to the database or an alias name. Please see your database documentation for details.

In a client/server environment, the name indicates the location of the database on the server's file system, so if you have a Linux Firebird server, you might have something like `/var/lib/firebird/2.5/data/employee.fdb`

If using an embedded Firebird database, the name is a relative path relative to the `fbembed` library.

Note that the path is specified as an `AnsiString`, meaning that databases residing in directories that rely on Unicode characters will not work. (firebird itself also cannot handle this).

23.5.11 TIBConnection.Dialect

Synopsis: Database dialect.

Declaration: `Property Dialect : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Firebird/Interbase servers since Interbase 6 have a dialect setting for backwards compatibility. It can be 1, 2 or 3, the default is 3.

Note: the dialect for new Interbase/Firebird databases is 3; dialects 1 and 2 are only used in legacy environments. In practice, you can ignore this setting for newly created databases.

23.5.12 TIBConnection.CheckTransactionParams

Synopsis: Let StartTransaction check transaction parameters.

Declaration: `Property CheckTransactionParams : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CheckTransactionParams` can be set to `True` to force the connection component to check the transaction parameters for valid values before starting a transaction.

23.5.13 TIBConnection.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Keep open connection after first query.

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Determines whether to keep the connection open once it is established and the first query has been executed.

23.5.14 TIBConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Switch for showing custom login prompt.

Declaration: `Property LoginPrompt :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: If true, the `OnLogin` ([686](#)) event will fire, allowing you to handle supplying of credentials yourself.

See also: `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` ([686](#))

23.5.15 TIBConnection.Params

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase specific parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` is a `#rtl.classes.TStringList` (??) of name=value combinations that set database-specific parameters.

The following parameter is supported:

- `PAGE_SIZE`: size of database pages (an integer), e.g. 16384.

See your database documentation for more details.

See also: `#fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.Params` ([925](#))

23.5.16 TIBConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event triggered when a login prompt needs to be shown.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `OnLogin` is triggered when the connection needs a login prompt when connecting: it is triggered when the `LoginPrompt` ([686](#)) property is `True`, after the `BeforeConnect` ([414](#)) event, but before the connection is actually established.

See also: `#fcl.db.TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` ([414](#)), `TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt` ([686](#)), `#fcl.db.TCustomConnection.Open` ([412](#)), `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` ([686](#))

23.5.17 TIBConnection.Port

Synopsis: Port at which the server listens.

Declaration: `Property Port :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Port` can be set to the port that Firebird is listening on. If not specified, the default port of 3050 is used when establishing a connection. This property must be set prior to activating the connection.

23.5.18 TIBConnection.UseConnectionCharSetIfNone

Synopsis: For string/blob fields with codepage none, use the connection character set when copying data.

Declaration: `Property UseConnectionCharSetIfNone : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UseConnectionCharSetIfNone` can be set to true to assume that fields which have no code-page set in the database schema, use the connection character set.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Charset` ([922](#))

23.5.19 TIBConnection.WireCompression

Synopsis: Use wire compression when communicating with the server.

Declaration: `Property WireCompression : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WireCompression` can be set to `True` to force the client to use compression when communicating with the server. This property must be set prior to activating the connection.

23.6 TIBConnectionDef

23.6.1 Description

Child of `TConnectionDef` ([686](#)) used to register an Interbase/Firebird connection, so that it is available in "connection factory" scenarios where database drivers/connections are loaded at runtime and it is unknown at compile time whether the required database libraries are present on the end user's system.

See also: `TConnectionDef` ([686](#))

23.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
695	<code>ConnectionClass</code>	Firebird/Interbase child of <code>ConnectionClass</code> (904).
695	<code>DefaultLibraryName</code>	Default name of the firebird client library.
695	<code>Description</code>	Description for the Firebird/Interbase child of <code>#fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass</code> (904).
696	<code>LoadedLibraryName</code>	Actually loaded library name.
695	<code>LoadFunction</code>	Return Function to call when loading firebird support.
694	<code>TypeName</code>	Firebird/Interbase child of <code>TConnectionDef.TypeName</code> (686).
695	<code>UnLoadFunction</code>	Return Function to call when unloading firebird support.

23.6.3 TIBConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase child of `TConnectionDef.TypeName` ([686](#)).

Declaration: `class function TypeName : string; Override`

Visibility: default

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` ([686](#)), `TIBConnection` ([688](#))

23.6.4 TIBConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase child of ConnectionClass ([904](#)).

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass; Override`

Visibility: default

See also: TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass ([686](#)), TIBConnection ([688](#))

23.6.5 TIBConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: Description for the Firebird/Interbase child of #fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass ([904](#)).

Declaration: `class function Description : string; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: The description identifies this ConnectionDef object as a Firebird/Interbase connection.

See also: #fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.Description ([904](#)), TIBConnection ([688](#))

23.6.6 TIBConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Synopsis: Default name of the firebird client library.

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName : string; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: DefaultLibraryName returns the library name to use when loading the firebird client library.

23.6.7 TIBConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Synopsis: Return Function to call when loading firebird support.

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction : TLibraryLoadFunction; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: LoadFunction is used by the connector logic to get the function to dynamically load firebird support.

23.6.8 TIBConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Synopsis: Return Function to call when unloading firebird support.

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction : TLibraryUnLoadFunction; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: UnLoadFunction is used by the connector logic to get the function to unload firebird support.

23.6.9 TIBConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Synopsis: Actually loaded library name.

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName : string; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadedLibraryName` returns the actually loaded library name.

See also: `DefaultLibraryName` ([695](#))

23.7 TIBCursor

23.7.1 Description

A cursor that keeps track of where you are in a Firebird/Interbase dataset. It is a descendent of `TSQLCursor` ([686](#)).

See also: `TSQLCursor` ([686](#)), `TIBConnection` ([688](#))

23.8 TIBTrans

23.8.1 Description

Firebird/Interbase database transaction object. Descendant of `TSQLHandle` ([686](#)).

See also: `TSQLHandle` ([686](#)), `TIBConnection` ([688](#))

Chapter 24

Reference for unit 'idea'

24.1 Used units

Table 24.1: Used units by unit 'idea'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

24.2 Overview

Besides some low level IDEA encryption routines, the IDEA unit also offers 2 streams which offer on-the-fly encryption or decryption: there are 2 stream objects: A write-only encryption stream which encrypts anything that is written to it, and a decryption stream which decrypts anything that is read from it.

24.3 Constants, types and variables

24.3.1 Constants

`IDEABLOCKSIZE = 8`

IDEA block size.

`IDEAKEYSIZE = 16`

IDEA Key size constant.

`KEYLEN = 6 * ROUNDS + 4`

Key length.

`ROUNDS = 8`

Number of rounds to encrypt.

24.3.2 Types

`IdeaCryptData = type Array[0..3] of Word`

Provided for backward functionality.

`IdeaCryptKey = type Array[0..7] of Word`

Provided for backward functionality.

`IDEAkey = type Array[0..keylen-1] of Word`

Provided for backward functionality.

`TIdeaCryptData = Array[0..3] of Word`

`TIdeaCryptData` is an internal type, defined to hold data for encryption/decryption.

`TIdeaCryptKey = Array[0..7] of Word`

The actual encryption or decryption key for IDEA is 64-bit long. This type is used to hold such a key. It can be generated with the `EnKeyIDEA` (699) or `DeKeyIDEA` (698) algorithms depending on whether an encryption or decryption key is needed.

`TIDEAKey = Array[0..keylen-1] of Word`

The IDEA key should be filled by the user with some random data (say, a passphrase). This key is used to generate the actual encryption/decryption keys.

24.4 Procedures and functions

24.4.1 CipherIdea

Synopsis: Encrypt or decrypt a buffer.

Declaration: `procedure CipherIdea(Input: TIdeaCryptData;
out outdata: TIdeaCryptData; z: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CipherIdea` encrypts or decrypts a buffer with data (`Input`) using key `z`. The resulting encrypted or decrypted data is returned in `Output`.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnKeyIdea` (699), `DeKeyIdea` (698), `TIDEAEncryptStream` (701), `TIDEADecryptStream` (699)

24.4.2 DeKeyIdea

Synopsis: Create a decryption key from an encryption key.

Declaration: `procedure DeKeyIdea(z: TIDEAKey; out dk: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DeKeyIdea` creates a decryption key based on the encryption key `z`. The decryption key is returned in `dk`. Note that only a decryption key generated from the encryption key that was used to encrypt the data can be used to decrypt the data.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnKeyIdea` (699), `CipherIdea` (698)

24.4.3 EnKeyIdea

Synopsis: Create an IDEA encryption key from a user key.

Declaration: `procedure EnKeyIdea (UserKey: TIDEACryptKey; out z: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnKeyIdea` creates an IDEA encryption key from user-supplied data in `UserKey`. The Encryption key is stored in `z`.

Errors: None.

See also: `DeKeyIdea` (698), `CipherIdea` (698)

24.5 EIDEAError

24.5.1 Description

`EIDEAError` is used to signal errors in the IDEA encryption decryption streams.

24.6 TIDEADeCryptStream

24.6.1 Description

`TIDEADeCryptStream` is a stream which decrypts anything that is read from it using the IDEA mechanism. It reads the encrypted data from a source stream and decrypts it using the `CipherIDEA` (698) algorithm. It is a read-only stream: it is not possible to write data to this stream.

When creating a `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance, an IDEA decryption key should be passed to the constructor, as well as the stream from which encrypted data should be read written.

The encrypted data can be created with a `TIDEAEncryptStream` (701) encryption stream.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` (701), `TIDEAStream.Create` (703), `CipherIDEA` (698)

24.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
700	Create	Constructor to create a new <code>TIDEADeCryptStream</code> instance.
700	Read	Reads data from the stream, decrypting it as needed.
700	Seek	Set position on the stream.

24.6.3 TIDEADeCryptStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor to create a new `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AKey: string; Dest: TStream); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance using the string `AKey` to compute the encryption key (698), which is then passed on to the inherited constructor `TIDEAStream.Create` (703). It is an easy-access function which introduces no new functionality.

The string is truncated at the maximum length of the `TIdeaCryptKey` (698) structure, so it makes no sense to provide a string with length longer than this structure.

See also: `TIdeaCryptKey` (698), `TIDEAStream.Create` (703), `TIDEAEnCryptStream.Create` (701)

24.6.4 TIDEADeCryptStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads data from the stream, decrypting it as needed.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` attempts to read `Count` bytes from the stream, placing them in `Buffer` the bytes are read from the source stream and decrypted as they are read. (bytes are read from the source stream in blocks of 8 bytes. The function returns the number of bytes actually read.

Errors: If an error occurs when reading data from the source stream, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Seek` (700), `TIDEAEncryptStream` (701)

24.6.5 TIDEADeCryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set position on the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` will only work on a forward seek. It emulates a forward seek by reading and discarding bytes from the input stream. The `TIDEADeCryptStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginning If `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Origin=soFromCurrent If `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Errors: An `EIDEAError` (699) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `Read` (700)

24.7 TIDEAEncryptStream

24.7.1 Description

`TIDEAEncryptStream` is a stream which encrypts anything that is written to it using the IDEA mechanism, and then writes the encrypted data to the destination stream using the `CipherIDEA` (698) algorithm. It is a write-only stream: it is not possible to read data from this stream.

When creating a `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance, an IDEA encryption key should be passed to the constructor, as well as the stream to which encrypted data should be written.

The resulting encrypted data can be read again with a `TIDEADecryptStream` (699) decryption stream.

See also: `TIDEADecryptStream` (699), `TIDEAStream.Create` (703), `CipherIDEA` (698)

24.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
701	Create	Constructor to create a new <code>TIDEAEncryptStream</code> instance.
701	Destroy	Flush data buffers and free the stream instance.
702	Flush	Write remaining bytes from the stream.
702	Seek	Set stream position.
702	Write	Write bytes to the stream to be encrypted.

24.7.3 TIDEAEncryptStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor to create a new `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AKey: string; Dest: TStream); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance using the string `AKey` to compute the encryption key (698), which is then passed on to the inherited constructor `TIDEAStream.Create` (703). It is an easy-access function which introduces no new functionality.

The string is truncated at the maximum length of the `TIdeaCryptKey` (698) structure, so it makes no sense to provide a string with length longer than this structure.

See also: `TIdeaCryptKey` (698), `TIDEAStream.Create` (703), `TIDEADeCryptStream.Create` (700)

24.7.4 TIDEAEncryptStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Flush data buffers and free the stream instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` flushes any data still remaining in the internal encryption buffer, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`

By default, the destination stream is not freed when the encryption stream is freed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TIDEAStream.Create` (703)

24.7.5 TIDEAEncryptStream.Write

Synopsis: Write bytes to the stream to be encrypted.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream, encrypting the bytes as they are written (encryption in blocks of 8 bytes).

Errors: If an error occurs writing to the destination stream, an error may occur.

See also: `Read` ([700](#))

24.7.6 TIDEAEncryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` return the current position if called with 0 and `soFromCurrent` as arguments. With all other values, it will always raise an exception, since it is impossible to set the position on an encryption stream.

Errors: An `EIDEAError` ([699](#)) will be raised unless called with 0 and `soFromCurrent` as arguments.

See also: `Write` ([702](#)), `EIDEAError` ([699](#))

24.7.7 TIDEAEncryptStream.Flush

Synopsis: Write remaining bytes from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: public

Description: `Flush` writes the current encryption buffer to the stream. Encryption always happens in blocks of 8 bytes, so if the buffer is not completely filled at the end of the writing operations, it must be flushed. It should never be called directly, unless at the end of all writing operations. It is called automatically when the stream is destroyed.

Errors: None.

See also: `Write` ([702](#))

24.8 TIDEAStream

24.8.1 Description

Do not create instances of `TIDEAStream` directly. It implements no useful functionality: it serves as a common ancestor of the `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([701](#)) and `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([699](#)), and simply provides some fields that these descendent classes use when encrypting/decrypting. One of these classes should be created, depending on whether one wishes to encrypt or to decrypt.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([701](#)), `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([699](#))

24.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
703	Create	Creates a new instance of the <code>TIDEAStream</code> class.

24.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
703	Key	r	Key used when encrypting/decrypting.

24.8.4 TIDEAStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TIDEAStream` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AKey: TIDEAKey; Dest: TStream); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` stores the encryption/decryption key and then calls the inherited `Create` to store the `Dest` stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([701](#)), `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([699](#))

24.8.5 TIDEAStream.Key

Synopsis: Key used when encrypting/decrypting.

Declaration: `Property Key : TIDEAKey`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Key` is the key as it was passed to the constructor of the stream. It cannot be changed while data is read or written. It is the key as it is used when encrypting/decrypting.

See also: `CipherIdea` ([698](#))

Chapter 25

Reference for unit 'inicol'

25.1 Used units

Table 25.1: Used units by unit 'inicol'

Name	Page
Classes	??
IniFiles	714
System	??
sysutils	??

25.2 Overview

`inicol` contains an implementation of `TCollection` and `TCollectionItem` descendents which cooperate to read and write the collection from and to a `.ini` file. It uses the `TCustomIniFile` ([716](#)) class for this.

25.3 Constants, types and variables

25.3.1 Constants

```
KeyCount = 'Count'
```

`KeyCount` is used as a key name when reading or writing the number of items in the collection from the global section.

```
SGlobal = 'Global'
```

`SGlobal` is used as the default name of the global section when reading or writing the collection.

25.4 EIniCol

25.4.1 Description

EIniCol is used to report error conditions in the load and save methods of TIniCollection (705).

25.5 TIniCollection

25.5.1 Description

TIniCollection is a collection (??) descendent which has the capability to write itself to an .ini file. It introduces some load and save mechanisms, which can be used to write all items in the collection to disk. The items should be descendents of the type TIniCollectionItem (709).

All methods work using a TCustomIniFile class, making it possible to save to alternate file formats, or even databases.

An instance of TIniCollection should never be used directly. Instead, a descendent should be used, which sets the FPrefix and FSectionPrefix protected variables.

See also: TIniCollection.LoadFromFile (707), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni (707), TIniCollection.SaveToIni (706), TIniCollection.SaveToFile (706)

25.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
705	Load	Loads the collection from the default filename.
707	LoadFromFile	Load collection from file.
707	LoadFromIni	Load collection from a file in .ini file format.
706	Save	Save the collection to the default filename.
706	SaveToFile	Save collection to a file in .ini file format.
706	SaveToIni	Save the collection to a TCustomIniFile descendent.

25.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
708	FileName	rw	Filename of the collection.
708	GlobalSection	rw	Name of the global section.
707	Prefix	r	Prefix used in global section.
708	SectionPrefix	r	Prefix string for section names.

25.5.4 TIniCollection.Load

Synopsis: Loads the collection from the default filename.

Declaration: procedure Load

Visibility: public

Description: Load loads the collection from the file as specified in the FileName (708) property. It calls the LoadFromFile (707) method to do this.

Errors: If the collection was not loaded or saved to file before this call, an EIniCol exception will be raised.

See also: [TIniCollection.LoadFromFile \(707\)](#), [TIniCollection.LoadFromIni \(707\)](#), [TIniCollection.Save \(706\)](#), [FileName \(708\)](#)

25.5.5 TIniCollection.Save

Synopsis: Save the collection to the default filename.

Declaration: `procedure Save`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Save` writes the collection to the file as specified in the [FileName \(708\)](#) property, using [GlobalSection \(708\)](#) as the section. It calls the [SaveToFile \(706\)](#) method to do this.

Errors: If the collection was not loaded or saved to file before this call, an `EIniCol` exception will be raised.

See also: [TIniCollection.SaveToFile \(706\)](#), [TIniCollection.SaveToIni \(706\)](#), [TIniCollection.Load \(705\)](#), [FileName \(708\)](#)

25.5.6 TIniCollection.SaveToIni

Synopsis: Save the collection to a `TCustomIniFile` descendent.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToIni` does the actual writing. It writes the number of elements in the global section (as specified by the `Section` argument), as well as the section name for each item in the list. The item names are written using the [Prefix \(707\)](#) property for the key. After this it calls the [SaveToIni \(709\)](#) method of all [TIniCollectionItem \(709\)](#) instances.

This means that the global section of the .ini file will look something like this:

```
[globalsection]
Count=3
Prefix1=SectionPrefixFirstItemName
Prefix2=SectionPrefixSecondItemName
Prefix3=SectionPrefixThirdItemName
```

This construct allows to re-use an ini file for multiple collections.

After this method is called, the [GlobalSection \(708\)](#) property contains the value of `Section`, it will be used in the [Save \(706\)](#) method.

See also: [TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni \(709\)](#), [TIniCollection.Save \(706\)](#)

25.5.7 TIniCollection.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save collection to a file in .ini file format.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(AFileName: string; Section: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToFile` will create a `TMemIniFile` instance with the `AFileName` argument as a filename. This instance is passed on to the `SaveToIni` (706) method, together with the `Section` argument, to do the actual saving.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the path in `AFileName` does not exist.

See also: `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (706), `TIniCollection.LoadFromFile` (707)

25.5.8 TIniCollection.LoadFromIni

Synopsis: Load collection from a file in .ini file format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromIni` will load the collection from the `Ini` instance. It first clears the collection, and reads the number of items from the global section with the name as passed through the `Section` argument. After this, an item is created and added to the collection, and its data is read by calling the `TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni` (709) method, passing the appropriate section name as found in the global section.

The description of the global section can be found in the `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (706) method description.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromFile` (707), `TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni` (709), `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (706)

25.5.9 TIniCollection.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load collection from file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(AFileName: string; Section: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates a `TMemIniFile` instance using `AFileName` as the filename. It calls `LoadFromIni` (707) using this instance and `Section` as the parameters.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (707), `TIniCollection.Load` (705), `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (706), `TIniCollection.SaveToFile` (706)

25.5.10 TIniCollection.Prefix

Synopsis: Prefix used in global section.

Declaration: `Property Prefix : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Prefix` is used when writing the section names of the items in the collection to the global section, or when reading the names from the global section. If the prefix is set to `Item` then the global section might look something like this:

```
[MyCollection]
Count=2
Item1=FirstItem
Item2=SecondItem
```

A descendent of `TIniCollection` should set the value of this property, it cannot be empty.

See also: `TIniCollection.SectionPrefix` (708), `TIniCollection.GlobalSection` (708)

25.5.11 `TIniCollection.SectionPrefix`

Synopsis: Prefix string for section names.

Declaration: `Property SectionPrefix : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `SectionPrefix` is a string that is prepended to the section name specified using the `TIniCollectionItem.SectionName` (710) property. The two elements form the actual section name where the collection items are stored. The value can be an empty string (") if a Prefix is not needed in the realized `SectionName`.

See also: `TIniCollection.GlobalSection` (708), `TIniCollectionItem.SectionName` (710)

25.5.12 `TIniCollection.FileName`

Synopsis: Filename of the collection.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileName` is the filename as used in the last `LoadFromFile` (707) or `SaveToFile` (706) operation. It is used in the `Load` (705) or `Save` (706) calls.

See also: `Save` (706), `LoadFromFile` (707), `SaveToFile` (706), `Load` (705)

25.5.13 `TIniCollection.GlobalSection`

Synopsis: Name of the global section.

Declaration: `Property GlobalSection : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `GlobalSection` contains the value of the `Section` argument in the `LoadFromIni` (707) or `SaveToIni` (706) calls. It's used in the `Load` (705) or `Save` (706) calls.

See also: `Save` (706), `LoadFromFile` (707), `SaveToFile` (706), `Load` (705)

25.6 TIniCollectionItem

25.6.1 Description

TIniCollectionItem is a #rtl.classes.tcollectionitem (??) descendent which has some extra methods for saving/loading the item to or from an .ini file.

To use this class, a descendent should be made, and the SaveToIni (709) and LoadFromIni (709) methods should be overridden. They should implement the actual loading and saving. The loading and saving is always initiated by the methods in TIniCollection (705), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni (707) and TIniCollection.SaveToIni (706) respectively.

See also: TIniCollection (705), TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni (709), TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni (709), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni (707), TIniCollection.SaveToIni (706)

25.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
710	LoadFromFile	Load item from a file.
709	LoadFromIni	Method called when the item must be loaded.
710	SaveToFile	Save item to a file.
709	SaveToIni	Method called when the item must be saved.

25.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
710	SectionName	rw	Default section name.

25.6.4 TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni

Synopsis: Method called when the item must be saved.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); Virtual
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: SaveToIni is called by TIniCollection.SaveToIni (706) when it saves this item. Descendent classes should override this method to save the data they need to save. All write methods of the TCustomIniFile instance passed in Ini can be used, as long as the writing happens in the section passed in Section.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether the values are actually written to the correct section.

See also: TIniCollection.SaveToIni (706), LoadFromIni (709), SaveToFile (710), LoadFromFile (710)

25.6.5 TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni

Synopsis: Method called when the item must be loaded.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); Virtual
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromIni` is called by `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (707) when it saves this item. Descendent classes should override this method to load the data they need to load. All read methods of the `TCustomIniFile` instance passed in `Ini` can be used, as long as the reading happens in the section passed in `Section`.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether the values are actually read from the correct section.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (707), `SaveToIni` (709), `LoadFromFile` (710), `SaveToFile` (710)

25.6.6 TIniCollectionItem.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save item to a file.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(FileName: string; Section: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` creates an instance of `TIniFile` with the indicated `FileName` calls `SaveToIni` (709) to save the item to the indicated file in .ini format under the section `Section`

Errors: An exception can occur if the file is not writeable.

See also: `SaveToIni` (709), `LoadFromFile` (710)

25.6.7 TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load item from a file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(FileName: string; Section: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates an instance of `TMemIniFile` and calls `LoadFromIni` (709) to load the item from the indicated file in .ini format from the section `Section`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SaveToFile` (710), `LoadFromIni` (709)

25.6.8 TIniCollectionItem.SectionName

Synopsis: Default section name.

Declaration: `Property SectionName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `SectionName` is the section name under which the item will be saved or from which it should be read. The read/write functions should be overridden in descendents to determine a unique section name within the .ini file.

See also: `SaveToFile` (710), `LoadFromIni` (709)

25.7 TNamedIniCollection

25.7.1 Description

TNamedIniCollection is the collection to go with the TNamedIniCollectionItem (712) item class. it provides some functions to look for items based on the UserData (711) or based on the Name (711).

See also: TNamedIniCollectionItem (712), IndexOfUserData (711), IndexOfName (711)

25.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
712	FindByName	Return the item based on its name.
712	FindByUserData	Return the item based on its UserData.
711	IndexOfName	Search for an item, based on its name, and return its position.
711	IndexOfUserData	Search for an item based on it's UserData property.

25.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
712	NamedItems	rw	Indexed access to the TNamedIniCollectionItem items.

25.7.4 TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfUserData

Synopsis: Search for an item based on it's UserData property.

Declaration: `function IndexOfUserData(UserData: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOfUserData searches the list of items and returns the index of the item which has UserData in its UserData (711) property. If no such item exists, -1 is returned.

Note that the (linear) search starts at the last element and works it's way back to the first.

Errors: If no item exists, -1 is returned.

See also: IndexOfName (711), TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData (713)

25.7.5 TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Search for an item, based on its name, and return its position.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOfName searches the list of items and returns the index of the item which has name equal to AName (case insensitive). If no such item exists, -1 is returned.

Note that the (linear) search starts at the last element and works it's way back to the first.

Errors: If no item exists, -1 is returned.

See also: IndexOfUserData (711), TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name (713)

25.7.6 TNamedIniCollection.FindByName

Synopsis: Return the item based on its name.

Declaration: `function FindByName(const AName: string) : TNamedIniCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindByName` returns the collection item whose name matches `AName` (case insensitive match). It calls `IndexOfName` (711) and returns the item at the found position. If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `IndexOfName` (711), `FindByUserData` (712)

25.7.7 TNamedIniCollection.FindByUserData

Synopsis: Return the item based on its `UserData`.

Declaration: `function FindByUserData(UserData: TObject) : TNamedIniCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindByName` returns the collection item whose `UserData` (713) property value matches the `UserData` parameter. If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

25.7.8 TNamedIniCollection.NamedItems

Synopsis: Indexed access to the `TNamedIniCollectionItem` items.

Declaration: `Property NamedItems[Index: Integer]: TNamedIniCollectionItem; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `NamedItem` is the default property of the `TNamedIniCollection` collection. It allows indexed access to the `TNamedIniCollectionItem` (712) items. The index is zero based.

See also: `TNamedIniCollectionItem` (712)

25.8 TNamedIniCollectionItem

25.8.1 Description

`TNamedIniCollectionItem` is a `TIniCollectionItem` (709) descent with a published name property. The name is used as the section name when saving the item to the ini file.

See also: `TIniCollectionItem` (709)

25.8.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
713	Name	rw	Name of the item.
713	UserData	rw	User-defined data.

25.8.3 TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData

Synopsis: User-defined data.

Declaration: `Property UserData : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UserData` can be used to associate an arbitrary object with the item - much like the `Objects` property of a `TStrings`.

25.8.4 TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name

Synopsis: Name of the item.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` is the name of this item. It is also used as the section name when writing the collection item to the `.ini` file.

See also: `TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData` ([713](#))

Chapter 26

Reference for unit 'IniFiles'

26.1 Used units

Table 26.1: Used units by unit 'IniFiles'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contrns	218
System	??
sysutils	??

26.2 Overview

IniFiles provides support for handling .ini files. It contains an implementation completely independent of the Windows API for handling such files. The basic (abstract) functionality is defined in TCustomIniFile ([716](#)) and is implemented in TIniFile ([729](#)) and TMemIniFile ([738](#)). The API presented by these components is Delphi compatible.

26.3 Constants, types and variables

26.3.1 Types

```
TIniFileOption = (ifoStripComments, ifoStripInvalid, ifoEscapeLineFeeds  
,  
                 ifoCaseSensitive, ifoStripQuotes,  
                 ifoFormatSettingsActive, ifoWriteStringBoolean)
```

Table 26.2: Enumeration values for type TIniFileOption

Value	Explanation
ifoCaseSensitive	Key and section names are case sensitive.
ifoEscapeLineFeeds	Observe backslash as linefeed escape character.
ifoFormatSettingsActive	Observe the values in FormatSettings.
ifoStripComments	Strip comments from file.
ifoStripInvalid	Strip invalid lines from file.
ifoStripQuotes	Strip double quotes from values.
ifoWriteStringBoolean	Read/Write booleans as strings instead of 0/1.

TIniFileOption enumerates the possible options when creating a new TCustomIniFile (716) instance.

ifoStripComments Strip comments from file.

ifoStripInvalid Strip invalid lines from file.

ifoEscapeLineFeeds Observe backslash as linefeed escape character.

ifoCaseSensitive Key and section names are case sensitive.

ifoStripQuotes Strip double quotes from values.

ifoFormatSettingsActive Observe the values in FormatSettings.

```
TIniFileOptions = Set of TIniFileOption = (ifoCaseSensitive,ifoEscapeLineFeeds
,
            ifoFormatSettingsActive,ifoStripComments,
            ifoStripInvalid,ifoStripQuotes,ifoWriteStringBoolean
)
```

TIniFileOptions is the set for TIniFileOption (714). It is used in the TCustomIniFile.Create (717) constructor and TCustomIniFile.Options (726) property.

```
TSectionValuesOption = (svoIncludeComments,svoIncludeInvalid,
            svoIncludeQuotes)
```

Table 26.3: Enumeration values for type TSectionValuesOption

Value	Explanation
svoIncludeComments	Include comment lines.
svoIncludeInvalid	Include invalid lines.
svoIncludeQuotes	Include existing quotes around values.

TSectionValuesOption is used to control the behaviour of TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues (724)

svoIncludeComments Include comment lines.

svoIncludeInvalid Include invalid lines.

svoIncludeQuotes Include existing quotes around values.

```
TSectionValuesOptions = Set of TSectionValuesOption = (svoIncludeComments
, svoIncludeInvalid,
svoIncludeQuotes)
```

`TSectionValuesOptions` is the set for `TSectionValuesOptions` (716). It is used in the `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (724) call.

26.4 TCustomIniFile

26.4.1 Description

`TCustomIniFile` implements all calls for manipulating a .ini. It does not implement any of this behaviour, the behaviour must be implemented in a descendent class like `TIniFile` (729) or `TMemIniFile` (738).

Since `TCustomIniFile` is an abstract class, it should never be created directly. Instead, one of the `TIniFile` or `TMemIniFile` classes should be created.

See also: `TIniFile` (729), `TMemIniFile` (738)

26.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
717	Create	Instantiate a new instance of <code>TCustomIniFile</code> .
725	DeleteKey	Delete a key from a section.
718	Destroy	Remove the <code>TCustomIniFile</code> instance from memory.
724	EraseSection	Clear a section.
722	ReadBinaryStream	Read binary data.
720	ReadBool	
721	ReadDate	Read a date value.
721	ReadDateTime	Read a Date/Time value.
721	ReadFloat	Read a floating point value.
719	ReadInt64	Read an Int64 value.
719	ReadInteger	Read an integer value from the file.
723	ReadSection	Read the key names in a section.
724	ReadSections	Read the list of sections.
724	ReadSectionValues	Read names and values of a section.
718	ReadString	Read a string valued key.
721	ReadTime	Read a time value.
718	SectionExists	Check if a section exists.
718	SetBoolStringValues	Set the boolean string values to use when writing to file.
725	UpdateFile	Update the file on disk.
725	ValueExists	Check if a value exists.
723	WriteBinaryStream	Write binary data.
720	WriteBool	Write boolean value.
722	WriteDate	Write date value.
722	WriteDateTime	Write date/time value.
723	WriteFloat	Write a floating-point value.
720	WriteInt64	Write an Int64 value.
719	WriteInteger	Write an integer value.
719	WriteString	Write a string value.
723	WriteTime	Write time value.

26.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
728	BoolFalseStrings	rw	Strings to recognize as boolean <code>False</code> values.
727	BoolTrueStrings	rw	Strings to recognize as boolean <code>True</code> values.
726	CaseSensitive	rw	Are key and section names case sensitive.
725	Encoding	rw	Encoding of the ini file.
726	EscapeLineFeeds	r	Should linefeeds be escaped ?
726	FileName	r	Name of the .ini file.
727	FormatSettingsActive	rw	Is <code>FormatSettings</code> used or not.
726	Options	rw	Options currently in effect.
728	OwnsEncoding	r	Does the ini file instance own the encoding ?
727	StripQuotes	rw	Should quotes be stripped from string values.

26.4.4 TCustomIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of `TCustomIniFile`.

Declaration:

```

constructor Create(const AFileName: string;
                  ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding;
                  AOptions: TIniFileOptions)
constructor Create(const AFileName: string;
                  ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding; AOwnsEncoding: Boolean;
                  AOptions: TIniFileOptions)
constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AOptions: TIniFileOptions)
; Virtual
constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)
; Virtual

```

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TCustomIniFile` and loads it with the data from `AFileName`, if this file exists. If the `ifEscapeLineFeeds` option is present in `AOptions` or `AEscapeLineFeeds` parameter is `True`, then lines which have their end-of-line markers escaped with a backslash, will be concatenated. This means that the following 2 lines

```

Description=This is a \
line with a long text

```

is equivalent to

```

Description=This is a line with a long text

```

By default, not escaping of linefeeds is performed (for Delphi compatibility)

Default options for the `TCustomIniFile.Options` ([726](#)) property can be specified in `AOptions`.

A Default string encoding can be specified in `aEncoding`. If `aOwnsEncoding` is `True` the encoding will be freed when the ini file instance is destroyed.

Errors: If the file cannot be read, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Destroy` ([718](#)), `TCustomIniFile.Options` ([726](#))

26.4.5 TCustomIniFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TCustomIniFile` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up all internal structures and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: `TCustomIniFile` (716)

26.4.6 TCustomIniFile.SetBoolStringValues

Synopsis: Set the boolean string values to use when writing to file.

Declaration: `procedure SetBoolStringValues(ABoolValue: Boolean;
Values: Array of string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetBoolStringValues` Sets the strings to recognize as boolean variable `ABoolValue` to `Values`. When reading boolean values, these values are reported as `ABoolValue` in `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` (720). The first value in the list is used to write the boolean `ABoolValue` value.

To ensure correct operation, this function should be called with values for both `True` and `False`.

The string values are ignored if `ifoWriteStringBoolean` is not in the ini file options (726).

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` (720), `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` (720), `TCustomIniFile.BoolTrueStrings` (727), `TCustomIniFile.BoolFalseStrings` (728), `TCustomIniFile.Options` (726)

26.4.7 TCustomIniFile.SectionExists

Synopsis: Check if a section exists.

Declaration: `function SectionExists(const Section: string) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SectionExists` returns `True` if a section with name `Section` exists, and contains keys. (comments are not considered keys)

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ValueExists` (725)

26.4.8 TCustomIniFile.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string valued key.

Declaration: `function ReadString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Default: string) : string; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a string. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. Note that if the key exists, but is empty, an empty string will be returned.

See also: `WriteString` (719), `ReadInteger` (719), `ReadBool` (720), `ReadDate` (721), `ReadDateTime` (721), `ReadTime` (721), `ReadFloat` (721), `ReadBinaryStream` (722)

26.4.9 TCustomIniFile.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Value: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteString` writes the string `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

Note that it is not possible to write strings with newline characters in them. Newlines can be read from a .ini file, but there is no support for writing them.

See also: [ReadString \(718\)](#), [WriteInteger \(719\)](#), [WriteBool \(720\)](#), [WriteDate \(722\)](#), [WriteDateTime \(722\)](#), [WriteTime \(723\)](#), [WriteFloat \(723\)](#), [WriteBinaryStream \(723\)](#)

26.4.10 TCustomIniFile.ReadInteger

Synopsis: Read an integer value from the file.

Declaration: `function ReadInteger(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: LongInt) : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInteger` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as an integer. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid integer value, `Default` is also returned.

See also: [WriteInteger \(719\)](#), [ReadString \(718\)](#), [ReadBool \(720\)](#), [ReadDate \(721\)](#), [ReadDateTime \(721\)](#), [ReadTime \(721\)](#), [ReadFloat \(721\)](#), [ReadBinaryStream \(722\)](#)

26.4.11 TCustomIniFile.WriteInteger

Synopsis: Write an integer value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteInteger` writes the integer `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

See also: [ReadInteger \(719\)](#), [WriteString \(719\)](#), [WriteBool \(720\)](#), [WriteDate \(722\)](#), [WriteDateTime \(722\)](#), [WriteTime \(723\)](#), [WriteFloat \(723\)](#), [WriteBinaryStream \(723\)](#)

26.4.12 TCustomIniFile.ReadInt64

Synopsis: Read an Int64 value.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: Int64) : Int64; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInt64` reads a signed 64-bit integer value from the ini file. The value is searched in the `Section` section, with key `Ident`.

If the value is not found at the specified `Section`, `Ident` pair, or the value is not a `Int64` value then the `Default` value is returned instead.

This function is needed because `ReadInteger` (719) reads at most a 32-bit value.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadInteger` (719), `TCustomIniFile.WriteInt64` (720)

26.4.13 TCustomIniFile.WriteInt64

Synopsis: Write an `Int64` value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInt64(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Value: Int64); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteInt64` writes `Value` as a signed 64-bit integer value to section `Section`, key `Ident`.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.WriteInteger` (719), `TCustomIniFile.ReadInt64` (719)

26.4.14 TCustomIniFile.ReadBool

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ReadBool(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Default: Boolean) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a boolean (valid values are 0 and 1). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid integer value, `False` is also returned.

See also: `WriteBool` (720), `ReadInteger` (719), `ReadString` (718), `ReadDate` (721), `ReadDateTime` (721), `ReadTime` (721), `ReadFloat` (721), `ReadBinaryStream` (722)

26.4.15 TCustomIniFile.WriteBool

Synopsis: Write boolean value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBool(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Value: Boolean); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteBool` writes the boolean `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

See also: `ReadBool` (720), `WriteInteger` (719), `WriteString` (719), `WriteDate` (722), `WriteDateTime` (722), `WriteTime` (723), `WriteFloat` (723), `WriteBinaryStream` (723)

26.4.16 TCustomIniFile.ReadDate

Synopsis: Read a date value.

Declaration: `function ReadDate(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadDate` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a date (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid date value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct date.

See also: `WriteDate` (722), `ReadInteger` (719), `ReadBool` (720), `ReadString` (718), `ReadDateTime` (721), `ReadTime` (721), `ReadFloat` (721), `ReadBinaryStream` (722)

26.4.17 TCustomIniFile.ReadDateTime

Synopsis: Read a Date/Time value.

Declaration: `function ReadDateTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadDateTime` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a date/time (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid date/time value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct date/time.

See also: `WriteDateTime` (722), `ReadInteger` (719), `ReadBool` (720), `ReadDate` (721), `ReadString` (718), `ReadTime` (721), `ReadFloat` (721), `ReadBinaryStream` (722)

26.4.18 TCustomIniFile.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a floating point value.

Declaration: `function ReadFloat(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: Double) : Double; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFloat` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a float (`Double`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid float value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct float.

See also: `WriteFloat` (723), `ReadInteger` (719), `ReadBool` (720), `ReadDate` (721), `ReadDateTime` (721), `ReadTime` (721), `ReadString` (718), `ReadBinaryStream` (722)

26.4.19 TCustomIniFile.ReadTime

Synopsis: Read a time value.

Declaration: `function ReadTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadTime` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a time (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid time value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct time.

See also: `WriteTime` (723), `ReadInteger` (719), `ReadBool` (720), `ReadDate` (721), `ReadDateTime` (721), `ReadString` (718), `ReadFloat` (721), `ReadBinaryStream` (722)

26.4.20 TCustomIniFile.ReadBinaryStream

Synopsis: Read binary data.

Declaration: `function ReadBinaryStream(const Section: string; const Name: string; Value: TStream) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadBinaryStream` reads the key `Name` in section `Section`, and returns the value in the stream `Value`. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the contents of `Value` are left untouched. The stream is not cleared prior to adding data to it.

The data is interpreted as a series of 2-byte hexadecimal values, each representing a byte in the data stream, i.e, it should always be an even number of hexadecimal characters.

See also: `WriteBinaryStream` (723), `ReadInteger` (719), `ReadBool` (720), `ReadDate` (721), `ReadDateTime` (721), `ReadTime` (721), `ReadFloat` (721), `ReadString` (718)

26.4.21 TCustomIniFile.WriteDate

Synopsis: Write date value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Value: TDateTime); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDate` writes the date `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The date is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadDate` (721), `WriteInteger` (719), `WriteBool` (720), `WriteString` (719), `WriteDateTime` (722), `WriteTime` (723), `WriteFloat` (723), `WriteBinaryStream` (723)

26.4.22 TCustomIniFile.WriteDateTime

Synopsis: Write date/time value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDateTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Value: TDateTime); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDateTime` writes the date/time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The date/time is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadDateTime` (721), `WriteInteger` (719), `WriteBool` (720), `WriteDate` (722), `WriteString` (719), `WriteTime` (723), `WriteFloat` (723), `WriteBinaryStream` (723)

26.4.23 TCustomIniFile.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Write a floating-point value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: Double); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteFloat` writes the time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The floating point value is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadFloat` (721), `WriteInteger` (719), `WriteBool` (720), `WriteDate` (722), `WriteDateTime` (722), `WriteTime` (723), `WriteString` (719), `WriteBinaryStream` (723)

26.4.24 TCustomIniFile.WriteTime

Synopsis: Write time value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: TDateTime); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteTime` writes the time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The time is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadTime` (721), `WriteInteger` (719), `WriteBool` (720), `WriteDate` (722), `WriteDateTime` (722), `WriteString` (719), `WriteFloat` (723), `WriteBinaryStream` (723)

26.4.25 TCustomIniFile.WriteBinaryStream

Synopsis: Write binary data.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinaryStream(const Section: string; const Name: string;
Value: TStream); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteBinaryStream` writes the binary data in `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

The binary data is encoded using a 2-byte hexadecimal value per byte in the data stream. The data stream must be seekable, so it's size can be determined. The data stream is not repositioned, it must be at the correct position.

See also: `ReadBinaryStream` (722), `WriteInteger` (719), `WriteBool` (720), `WriteDate` (722), `WriteDateTime` (722), `WriteTime` (723), `WriteFloat` (723), `WriteString` (719)

26.4.26 TCustomIniFile.ReadSection

Synopsis: Read the key names in a section.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSection(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSection` will return the names of the keys in section `Section` in `Strings`, one string per key. If a non-existing section is specified, the list is cleared. To return the values of the keys as well, the `ReadSectionValues` (724) method should be used.

See also: `ReadSections` (724), `SectionExists` (718), `ReadSectionValues` (724)

26.4.27 TCustomIniFile.ReadSections

Synopsis: Read the list of sections.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSections(Strings: TStrings); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSections` returns the names of existing sections in `Strings`. It also returns names of empty sections.

See also: `SectionExists` (718), `ReadSectionValues` (724), `ReadSection` (723)

26.4.28 TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues

Synopsis: Read names and values of a section.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings;
Options: TSectionValuesOptions); Virtual
; Overload
procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionValues` returns the keys and their values in the section `Section` in `Strings`. They are returned as `Key=Value` strings, one per key, so the `Values` property of the stringlist can be used to read the values. To retrieve just the names of the available keys, `ReadSection` (723) can be used.

See also: `SectionExists` (718), `ReadSections` (724), `ReadSection` (723)

26.4.29 TCustomIniFile.EraseSection

Synopsis: Clear a section.

Declaration: `procedure EraseSection(const Section: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `EraseSection` deletes all values from the section named `Section` and removes the section from the ini file. If the section didn't exist prior to a call to `EraseSection`, nothing happens.

See also: `SectionExists` (718), `ReadSections` (724), `DeleteKey` (725)

26.4.30 TCustomIniFile.DeleteKey

Synopsis: Delete a key from a section.

Declaration: `procedure DeleteKey(const Section: string; const Ident: string)
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteKey` deletes the key `Ident` from section `Section`. If the key or section didn't exist prior to the `DeleteKey` call, nothing happens.

See also: `EraseSection` ([724](#))

26.4.31 TCustomIniFile.UpdateFile

Synopsis: Update the file on disk.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateFile; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateFile` writes the in-memory image of the ini-file to disk. To speed up operation of the inifile class, the whole ini-file is read into memory when the class is created, and all operations are performed in-memory. If `CacheUpdates` is set to `True`, any changes to the inifile are only in memory, until they are committed to disk with a call to `UpdateFile`. If `CacheUpdates` is set to `False`, then all operations which cause a change in the .ini file will immediately be committed to disk with a call to `UpdateFile`. Since the whole file is written to disk, this may have serious impact on performance.

See also: `CacheUpdates` ([733](#))

26.4.32 TCustomIniFile.ValueExists

Synopsis: Check if a value exists.

Declaration: `function ValueExists(const Section: string; const Ident: string)
: Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ValueExists` checks whether the key `Ident` exists in section `Section`. It returns `True` if a key was found, or `False` if not. The key may be empty.

See also: `SectionExists` ([718](#))

26.4.33 TCustomIniFile.Encoding

Synopsis: Encoding of the ini file.

Declaration: `Property Encoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Encoding` is the encoding specified in the constructor. It cannot be changed during the lifetime of the instance.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.Create` ([717](#)), `TCustomIniFile.OwnsEncoding` ([728](#))

26.4.34 TCustomIniFile.FileName

Synopsis: Name of the .ini file.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FileName` is the name of the ini file on disk. It should be specified when the `TCustomIniFile` instance is created. Contrary to the Delphi implementation, if no path component is present in the filename, the filename is not searched in the windows directory.

See also: [Create \(717\)](#)

26.4.35 TCustomIniFile.Options

Synopsis: Options currently in effect.

Declaration: `Property Options : TIniFileOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Options` is the set of options currently in effect. See [TIniFileOption \(714\)](#) for a list of allowed options. The initial value of this property can be specified using the constructor of the class, `TCustomIniFile.Create (717)`. Not all options can be specified after the ini file object was created.

See also: [TIniFileOption \(714\)](#), [TIniFileOptions \(715\)](#), [TCustomIniFile.Create \(717\)](#)

26.4.36 TCustomIniFile.EscapeLineFeeds

Synopsis: Should linefeeds be escaped ?

Declaration: `Property EscapeLineFeeds : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EscapeLineFeeds` determines whether escaping of linefeeds is enabled: For a description of this feature, see [Create \(717\)](#), as the value of this property must be specified when the `TCustomIniFile` instance is created.

By default, `EscapeLineFeeds` is `False`.

See also: [Create \(717\)](#), [CaseSensitive \(726\)](#)

26.4.37 TCustomIniFile.CaseSensitive

Synopsis: Are key and section names case sensitive.

Declaration: `Property CaseSensitive : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CaseSensitive` determines whether searches for sections and keys are performed case-sensitive or not. By default, they are not case sensitive.

See also: `EscapeLineFeeds` (726)

26.4.38 TCustomIniFile.StripQuotes

Synopsis: Should quotes be stripped from string values.

Declaration: `Property StripQuotes : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `StripQuotes` determines whether quotes around string values are stripped from the value when reading the values from file. By default, quotes are not stripped (this is Delphi and Windows compatible).

26.4.39 TCustomIniFile.FormatSettingsActive

Synopsis: Is `FormatSettings` used or not.

Declaration: `Property FormatSettingsActive : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FormatSettingsActive` can be set to `True` to use the `TCustomIniFile.FormatSettings` (??) field when reading and/or writing values of type date/time or float. If the setting is set to `False` then the defaults specified in the `sysutils` unit are used.

26.4.40 TCustomIniFile.BoolTrueStrings

Synopsis: Strings to recognize as boolean `True` values.

Declaration: `Property BoolTrueStrings : TStringArray`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BoolTrueStrings` is a list of strings that will be recognized as boolean `True` value in `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` (720) The first string in the list will be used when writing a `True` boolean value in `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` (720).

The string values are ignored if `ifoWriteStringBoolean` is not in the ini file options (726).

See also: `TCustomIniFile.SetBoolStringValues` (718), `TCustomIniFile.BoolFalseStrings` (728), `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` (720), `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` (720), `TCustomIniFile.Options` (726)

26.4.41 TCustomIniFile.BoolFalseStrings

Synopsis: Strings to recognize as boolean `False` values.

Declaration: `Property BoolFalseStrings : TStringArray`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `BoolFalseStrings` is a list of strings that will be recognized as boolean `False` value in `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` (720). The first string in the list will be used when writing a `False` boolean value in `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` (720).

The string values are ignored if `ifoWriteStringBoolean` is not in the ini file options (726).

See also: `TCustomIniFile.SetBoolStringValue` (718), `TCustomIniFile.BoolTrueStrings` (727), `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` (720), `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` (720), `TCustomIniFile.Options` (726)

26.4.42 TCustomIniFile.OwnsEncoding

Synopsis: Does the ini file instance own the encoding ?

Declaration: `Property OwnsEncoding : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `OwnsEncoding` indicates whether the encoding is owned by the ini file instance or not. If it is owned, it will be freed on destroy. The value of this property is set in the constructor.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.Encoding` (725), `TCustomIniFile.Create` (717)

26.5 THashedStringList

26.5.1 Description

`THashedStringList` is a `TStringList` (??) descendent which creates has values for the strings and names (in the case of a name-value pair) stored in it. The `IndexOf` (729) and `IndexOfName` (729) functions make use of these hash values to quickly locate a value.

See also: `IndexOf` (729), `IndexOfName` (729)

26.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
728	<code>Destroy</code>	Clean up instance.
729	<code>IndexOf</code>	Returns the index of a string in the list of strings.
729	<code>IndexOfName</code>	Return the index of a name in the list of name=value pairs.

26.5.3 THashedStringList.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the hash tables and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

26.5.4 THashedStringList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of a string in the list of strings.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: string) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` overrides the `#rtl.classes.TStringList.IndexOf (??)` method and uses the hash values to look for the location of `S`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TStringList.IndexOf (??)`, `THashedStringList.IndexOfName (729)`

26.5.5 THashedStringList.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Return the index of a name in the list of name=value pairs.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const Name: string) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfName` overrides the `#rtl.classes.TStrings.IndexOfName (??)` method and uses the hash values of the names to look for the location of `Name`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TStrings.IndexOfName (??)`, `THashedStringList.IndexOf (729)`

26.6 TIniFile

26.6.1 Description

`TIniFile` is an implementation of `TCustomIniFile (716)` which does the same as `TMemIniFile (738)`, namely it reads the whole file into memory. Unlike `TMemIniFile` it does not cache updates in memory, but immediately writes any changes to disk.

`TIniFile` introduces no new methods, it just implements the abstract methods introduced in `TCustomIniFile`

See also: `TCustomIniFile (716)`, `TMemIniFile (738)`

26.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
730	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TIniFile</code> .
732	DeleteKey	Delete key.
730	Destroy	Remove the <code>TIniFile</code> instance from memory.
732	EraseSection	
731	ReadSection	Read the key names in a section.
731	ReadSectionRaw	Read raw section.
731	ReadSections	Read section names.
732	ReadSectionValues	
730	ReadString	Read a string.
732	UpdateFile	Update the file on disk.
731	WriteString	Write string to file.

26.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
733	CacheUpdates	rw	Should changes be kept in memory.
733	Stream	r	Stream from which ini file was read.
733	WriteBOM	rw	Indicates if a Byte Order Mark (BOM) is written at the start of the .INI file.

26.6.4 TIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TIniFile.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AOptions: TIniFileOptions)`
`; Override; Overload`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream; AOptions: TIniFileOptions)`
`; Overload`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)`
`; Overload`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream; ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding;`
`AOptions: TIniFileOptions)`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream; ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding;`
`AOwnsEncoding: Boolean; AOptions: TIniFileOptions)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TIniFile` and initializes the class by reading the file from disk if the filename `AFileName` is specified, or from stream in case `AStream` is specified. It also sets most variables to their initial values, i.e. `AEscapeLineFeeds` is saved prior to reading the file, and `Cacheupdates` is set to `False`.

Default options for the `TCustomIniFile.Options` ([726](#)) property can be specified in `AOptions`.

See also: `TCustomIniFile` ([716](#)), `TMemIniFile` ([738](#)), `TCustomIniFile.Options` ([726](#))

26.6.5 TIniFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TIniFile` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` writes any pending changes to disk, and cleans up the `TIniFile` structures, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, effectively removing the instance from memory.

Errors: If an error happens when the file is written to disk, an exception will be raised.

See also: `UpdateFile` ([725](#)), `CacheUpdates` ([733](#))

26.6.6 TIniFile.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string.

Declaration: `function ReadString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;`
`const Default: string) : string; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadString` implements the `TCustomIniFile.ReadString` (718) abstract method by looking at the in-memory copy of the ini file and returning the string found there.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadString` (718)

26.6.7 TIniFile.WriteString

Synopsis: Write string to file.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Value: string); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteString` implements the `TCustomIniFile.WriteString` (719) abstract method by writing the string to the in-memory copy of the ini file. If `CacheUpdates` (733) property is `False`, then the whole file is immediately written to disk as well.

Errors: If an error happens when the file is written to disk, an exception will be raised.

26.6.8 TIniFile.ReadSection

Synopsis: Read the key names in a section.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSection(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSection` reads the key names from `Section` into `Strings`, taking the in-memory copy of the ini file. This is the implementation for the abstract `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (723)

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (723), `TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw` (731)

26.6.9 TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw

Synopsis: Read raw section.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionRaw(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionRaw` returns the contents of the section `Section` as it is: this includes the comments in the section. (these are also stored in memory)

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (731), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (723)

26.6.10 TIniFile.ReadSections

Synopsis: Read section names.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSections(Strings: TStrings); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSections` is the implementation of `TCustomIniFile.ReadSections` (724). It operates on the in-memory copy of the inifile, and places all section names in `Strings`.

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (731), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSections` (724), `TIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (732)

26.6.11 TIniFile.ReadSectionValues

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings; AOptions: TSectionValuesOptions); Override; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionValues` is the implementation of `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (724). It operates on the in-memory copy of the ini file, and places all key names from `Section` together with their values in `Strings`.

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (731), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (724), `TIniFile.ReadSections` (731)

26.6.12 TIniFile.EraseSection

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EraseSection(const Section: string); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `EraseSection` deletes the section `Section` from memory, if `CacheUpdates` (733) is `False`, then the file is immediately updated on disk. This method is the implementation of the abstract `TCustomIniFile.EraseSection` (724) method.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.EraseSection` (724), `TIniFile.ReadSection` (731), `TIniFile.ReadSections` (731)

26.6.13 TIniFile.DeleteKey

Synopsis: Delete key.

Declaration: `procedure DeleteKey(const Section: string; const Ident: string); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteKey` deletes the `Ident` from the section `Section`. This operation is performed on the in-memory copy of the ini file. if `CacheUpdates` (733) is `False`, then the file is immediately updated on disk.

See also: `CacheUpdates` (733)

26.6.14 TIniFile.UpdateFile

Synopsis: Update the file on disk.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateFile; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateFile` writes the in-memory data for the ini file to disk. The whole file is written. If the ini file was instantiated from a stream, then the stream is updated. Note that the stream must be seekable for this to work correctly. The ini file is marked as 'clean' after a call to `UpdateFile` (i.e. not in need of writing to disk).

Errors: If an error occurs when writing to stream or disk, an exception may be raised.

See also: `CacheUpdates` (733)

26.6.15 TIniFile.Stream

Synopsis: Stream from which ini file was read.

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Stream` is the stream which was used to create the `IniFile`. The `UpdateFile` (732) method will use this stream to write changes to.

See also: `Create` (730), `UpdateFile` (732)

26.6.16 TIniFile.CacheUpdates

Synopsis: Should changes be kept in memory.

Declaration: `Property CacheUpdates : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CacheUpdates` determines how to deal with changes to the ini-file data: if set to `True` then changes are kept in memory till the file is written to disk with a call to `UpdateFile` (732). If it is set to `False` then each call that changes the data of the ini-file will result in a call to `UpdateFile`. This is the default behaviour, but it may adversely affect performance.

See also: `UpdateFile` (732)

26.6.17 TIniFile.WriteBOM

Synopsis: Indicates if a Byte Order Mark (BOM) is written at the start of the .INI file.

Declaration: `Property WriteBOM : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `WriteBOM` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if a **Byte Order Mark (BOM)** is written at the start of the .INI file. The default value for the property is **False**, and causes the BOM to be omitted when storing the .INI file content.

Setting a new value for the property can cause the sections and section values to be re-written to the `FileName` or `Stream` where the .INI file content is stored. When `CacheUpdates` is **False**, the `UpdateFile` method is called to re-write the values in the storage. When `CacheUpdates` is **True**, the `Dirty` property is set to **True** and the action is deferred until the class instance is freed or update caching is disabled.

The property value is used in the `UpdateFile` method, and is assigned to the `WriteBOM` property in the `TStrings` instance used to write the content for the .INI file.

26.7 TIniFileKey

26.7.1 Description

TIniFileKey is used to keep the key/value pairs in the ini file in memory. It is an internal structure, used internally by the TIniFile (729) class.

See also: TIniFile (729)

26.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
734	Create	Create a new instance of TIniFileKey.

26.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
734	Ident	rw	Key name.
734	Value	rw	Key value.

26.7.4 TIniFileKey.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TIniFileKey.

Declaration: constructor Create(const AIdent: string; const AValue: string)

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new instance of TIniFileKey on the heap. It fills Ident (734) with AIdent and Value (734) with AValue.

See also: Ident (734), Value (734)

26.7.5 TIniFileKey.Ident

Synopsis: Key name.

Declaration: Property Ident : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Ident is the key value part of the key/value pair.

See also: Value (734)

26.7.6 TIniFileKey.Value

Synopsis: Key value.

Declaration: Property Value : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is the value part of the key/value pair.

See also: `Ident` ([734](#))

26.8 TIniFileKeyList

26.8.1 Description

`TIniFileKeyList` maintains a list of `TIniFileKey` ([734](#)) instances on behalf of the `TIniFileSection` ([736](#)) class. It stores the keys of one section of the .ini files.

See also: `TIniFileKey` ([734](#)), `TIniFileSection` ([736](#))

26.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
735	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the list.
735	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the instance.

26.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
735	<code>Items</code>	<code>r</code>	Indexed access to <code>TIniFileKey</code> items in the list.

26.8.4 TIniFileKeyList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears up the list using `Clear` ([735](#)) and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

See also: `Clear` ([735](#))

26.8.5 TIniFileKeyList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all `TIniFileKey` ([734](#)) instances from the list, and frees the instances.

See also: `TIniFileKey` ([734](#))

26.8.6 TIniFileKeyList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to `TIniFileKey` items in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIniFileKey; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the `TIniFileKey` (734) items in the list. The index is zero-based and runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TIniFileKey` (734)

26.9 TIniFileSection

26.9.1 Description

`TIniFileSection` is a class which represents a section in the .ini, and is used internally by the `TIniFile` (729) class (one instance of `TIniFileSection` is created for each section in the file by the `TIniFileSectionList` (737) list). The name of the section is stored in the `Name` (737) property, and the key/value pairs in this section are available in the `KeyList` (737) property.

See also: `TIniFileKeyList` (735), `TIniFile` (729), `TIniFileSectionList` (737)

26.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
736	Create	Create a new section object.
737	Destroy	Free the section object from memory.
736	Empty	Is the section empty.

26.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
737	KeyList	r	List of key/value pairs in this section.
737	Name	r	Name of the section.

26.9.4 TIniFileSection.Empty

Synopsis: Is the section empty.

Declaration: `function Empty : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Empty` returns `True` if the section contains no key values (even if they are empty). It may contain comments.

26.9.5 TIniFileSection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new section object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TIniFileSection` class, and sets the name to `AName`. It allocates a `TIniFileKeyList` (735) instance to keep all the key/value pairs for this section.

See also: `TIniFileKeyList` (735)

26.9.6 TIniFileSection.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the section object from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the key list, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, removing the `TIniFileSection` instance from memory.

See also: [Create \(736\)](#), [TIniFileKeyList \(735\)](#)

26.9.7 TIniFileSection.Name

Synopsis: Name of the section.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Name` is the name of the section in the file.

See also: [TIniFileSection.KeyList \(737\)](#)

26.9.8 TIniFileSection.KeyList

Synopsis: List of key/value pairs in this section.

Declaration: `Property KeyList : TIniFileKeyList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `KeyList` is the [TIniFileKeyList \(735\)](#) instance that is used by the `TIniFileSection` to keep the key/value pairs of the section.

See also: [TIniFileSection.Name \(737\)](#), [TIniFileKeyList \(735\)](#)

26.10 TIniFileSectionList

26.10.1 Description

`TIniFileSectionList` maintains a list of [TIniFileSection \(736\)](#) instances, one for each section in an .ini file. `TIniFileSectionList` is used internally by the [TIniFile \(729\)](#) class to represent the sections in the file.

See also: [TIniFileSection \(736\)](#), [TIniFile \(729\)](#)

26.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
738	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the list.
738	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the object from memory.

26.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
738	Items	r	Indexed access to all the section objects in the list.

26.10.4 TIniFileSectionList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the object from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `Clear` ([738](#)) to clear the section list and the calls the inherited `Destroy`

See also: `Clear` ([738](#))

26.10.5 TIniFileSectionList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all `TIniFileSection` ([736](#)) items from the list, and frees the items it removes from the list.

See also: `TIniFileSection` ([736](#)), `TIniFileSectionList.Items` ([738](#))

26.10.6 TIniFileSectionList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to all the section objects in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIniFileSection; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to all the section objects in the list. `Index` should run from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TIniFileSection` ([736](#)), `TIniFileSectionList.Clear` ([738](#))

26.11 TMemIniFile

26.11.1 Description

`TMemIniFile` is a simple descendent of `TIniFile` ([729](#)) which introduces some extra methods to be compatible to the Delphi implementation of `TMemIniFile`. The FPC implementation of `TIniFile` is implemented as a `TMemIniFile`, except that `TIniFile` does not cache its updates, and `TMemIniFile` does.

See also: `TIniFile` ([729](#)), `TCustomIniFile` ([716](#)), `CacheUpdates` ([733](#))

26.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
739	Clear	Clear the data.
739	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TMemIniFile</code> .
739	GetStrings	Get contents of ini file as stringlist.
740	Rename	Rename the ini file.
740	SetStrings	Set data from a stringlist.

26.11.3 TMemIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TMemIniFile`.

```
Declaration: constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AOptions: TIniFileOptions)
                ; Override; Overload
constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)
                ; Override; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` simply calls the inherited `Create` (730), and sets the `CacheUpdates` (733) to `True` so updates will be kept in memory till they are explicitly written to disk.

See also: [TIniFile.Create \(730\)](#), [CacheUpdates \(733\)](#)

26.11.4 TMemIniFile.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the data.

Declaration: procedure Clear

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` removes all sections and key/value pairs from memory. If `CacheUpdates` (733) is set to `False` then the file on disk will immediately be emptied.

See also: [SetStrings \(740\)](#), [GetStrings \(739\)](#)

26.11.5 TMemIniFile.GetStrings

Synopsis: Get contents of ini file as stringlist.

```
Declaration: procedure GetString(List: TStringList)
```

Visibility: public

Description: `GetStrings` returns the whole contents of the ini file in a single stringlist, `List`. This includes comments and empty sections.

The `GetStrings` call can be used to get data for a call to `SetStrings` (740), which can be used to copy data between 2 in-memory ini files.

See also: [SetStrings \(740\)](#), [Clear \(739\)](#)

26.11.6 TMemIniFile.Rename

Synopsis: Rename the ini file.

Declaration: `procedure Rename(const AFileName: string; Reload: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` will rename the ini file with the new name `AFileName`. If `Reload` is `True` then the in-memory contents will be cleared and replaced with the contents found in `AFileName`, if it exists. If `Reload` is `False`, the next call to `UpdateFile` will replace the contents of `AFileName` with the in-memory data.

See also: `UpdateFile` ([732](#))

26.11.7 TMemIniFile.SetStrings

Synopsis: Set data from a stringlist.

Declaration: `procedure SetStrings(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetStrings` sets the in-memory data from the `List` stringlist. The data is first cleared.

The `SetStrings` call can be used to set the data of the ini file to a list of strings obtained with `GetStrings` ([739](#)). The two calls combined can be used to copy data between 2 in-memory ini files.

See also: `GetStrings` ([739](#)), `Clear` ([739](#))

26.12 TStringHash

26.12.1 Description

`TStringHash` is a Delphi compatibility object. It is not used in the `TIniFile` implementation. It implements a bucket list for `Name=Value` pairs, where `Value` is an integer. This enables quick lookup of values based on a name.

See also: `TIniFile` ([729](#)), `TStringHash.Create` ([741](#)), `TStringHash.ValueOf` ([742](#))

26.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
741	<code>Add</code>	Add a new value to the hash.
741	<code>Clear</code>	Remove all values.
741	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TStringHash</code> .
741	<code>Destroy</code>	Free <code>TStringHash</code> instance.
742	<code>Modify</code>	Try to modify an existing value.
742	<code>Remove</code>	Remove a key from the hash.
742	<code>ValueOf</code>	Retrieve value of <code>Key</code> .

26.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
742	<code>AddReplacesExisting</code>	<code>rw</code>	Should <code>Add</code> replace existing values or not.

26.12.4 TStringHash.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TStringHash.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACapacity: Cardinal)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TStringHash`. The `ACapacity` argument is present for Delphi compatibility, but is otherwise unused.

See also: `TStringHash.ValueOf` (742), `TStringHash.Destroy` (741)

26.12.5 TStringHash.Destroy

Synopsis: Free `TStringHash` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` clears the internal data structures and removes the `TStringHash` instance from memory.

See also: `TStringHash.Create` (741), `TStringHash.Clear` (741)

26.12.6 TStringHash.Add

Synopsis: Add a new value to the hash.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const Key: string; Value: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds the value `Value` with name `AKey` to the list. The behaviour of `Add` depends on `AddReplacesExisting` (742). If it is `False`, then the existing value is left unchanged, and an exception is raised. If `AddReplacesExisting` is `True` then an existing value is replaced.

Errors: An exception will be raised if the value already exists and `AddReplacesExisting` is `False`

See also: `TStringHash.AddReplacesExisting` (742), `TStringHash.Modify` (742), `TStringHash.Remove` (742), `TStringHash.ValueOf` (742)

26.12.7 TStringHash.Clear

Synopsis: Remove all values.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` removes all values from the hash.

See also: `TStringHash.Destroy` (741), `TStringHash.Add` (741), `TStringHash.Remove` (742), `TStringHash.ValueOf` (742)

26.12.8 TStringHash.Modify

Synopsis: Try to modify an existing value.

Declaration: `function Modify(const Key: string; Value: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Modify` will replace the value of `Key` with `Value`. `Key` must exist. It returns `True` if the operation was successful. If the value didn't exist, `False` is returned.

See also: `TStringHash.Add` (741), `TStringHash.Clear` (741), `TStringHash.Remove` (742), `TStringHash.ValueOf` (742)

26.12.9 TStringHash.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a key from the hash.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(const Key: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the key `Key` from the hash, if it was present.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStringHash.Add` (741), `TStringHash.Clear` (741), `TStringHash.Modify` (742), `TStringHash.ValueOf` (742)

26.12.10 TStringHash.ValueOf

Synopsis: Retrieve value of `Key`.

Declaration: `function ValueOf(const Key: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ValueOf` returns the value of `AKey`, if it is present. if the key is not present, `-1` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStringHash.Add` (741), `TStringHash.Clear` (741), `TStringHash.Modify` (742), `TStringHash.Remove` (742)

26.12.11 TStringHash.AddReplacesExisting

Synopsis: Should `Add` replace existing values or not.

Declaration: `Property AddReplacesExisting : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AddReplacesExisting` indicates whether `TStringHash.Add` (741) will replace an existing value (`True`) or will raise an exception when an existing value is added (`False`).

See also: `TStringHash.Add` (741)

Chapter 27

Reference for unit 'iostream'

27.1 Used units

Table 27.1: Used units by unit 'iostream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

27.2 Overview

The `iostream` implements a descendent of `THandleStream` (??) streams that can be used to read from standard input and write to standard output and standard diagnostic output (`stderr`).

27.3 Constants, types and variables

27.3.1 Types

`TIOSType = (iosInput, iosOutPut, iosError)`

Table 27.2: Enumeration values for type `TIOSType`

Value	Explanation
<code>iosError</code>	The stream can be used to write to standard diagnostic output.
<code>iosInput</code>	The stream can be used to read from standard input.
<code>iosOutPut</code>	The stream can be used to write to standard output.

`TIOSType` is passed to the `Create` (744) constructor of `TIOStream` (744), it determines what kind of stream is created.

27.4 EIOStreamError

27.4.1 Description

Error thrown in case of an invalid operation on a TIOStream (744).

27.5 TIOStream

27.5.1 Description

TIOStream can be used to create a stream which reads from or writes to the standard input, output or stderr file descriptors. It is a descendent of THandleStream. The type of stream that is created is determined by the TIOSType (743) argument to the constructor. The handle of the standard input, output or stderr file descriptors is determined automatically.

The TIOStream keeps an internal Position, and attempts to provide minimal Seek (745) behaviour based on this position.

See also: TIOSType (743), THandleStream (??)

27.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
744	Create	Construct a new instance of TIOStream (744).
744	Read	Read data from the stream.
745	Seek	Set the stream position.
745	Write	Write data to the stream.

27.5.3 TIOStream.Create

Synopsis: Construct a new instance of TIOStream (744).

Declaration: `constructor Create(aIOSType: TIOSType)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TIOStream (744), which can subsequently be used

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether the requested file descriptor is actually open for reading/writing. In that case, subsequent calls to Read or Write or seek will fail.

See also: TIOStream.Read (744), TIOStream.Write (745)

27.5.4 TIOStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read checks first whether the type of the stream allows reading (type is iosInput). If not, it raises a EIOStreamError (744) exception. If the stream can be read, it calls the inherited Read to actually read the data.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` exception is raised if the stream does not allow reading.

See also: `TIOSType` (743), `TIOStream.Write` (745)

27.5.5 TIOStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` checks first whether the type of the stream allows writing (type is `iosOutput` or `iosError`). If not, it raises a `EIOStreamError` (744) exception. If the stream can be written to, it calls the inherited `Write` to actually read the data.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` exception is raised if the stream does not allow writing.

See also: `TIOSType` (743), `TIOStream.Read` (744)

27.5.6 TIOStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. Normally, standard input, output and stderr are not seekable. The `TIOStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginning If `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

Origin=soFromCurrent If `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

All other cases will result in a `EIOStreamError` exception.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` (744) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `EIOStreamError` (744)

Chapter 28

Reference for unit 'libtar'

28.1 Used units

Table 28.1: Used units by unit 'libtar'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	??
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??
Unix	??
UnixType	??

28.2 Overview

The libtar units provides 2 classes to read and write .tar archives: TTarArchive ([750](#)) class can be used to read a tar file, and the TTarWriter ([752](#)) class can be used to write a tar file. The unit was implemented originally by Stefan Heymann.

28.3 Constants, types and variables

28.3.1 Constants

```
ALL_PERMISSIONS = [tpReadByOwner, tpWriteByOwner, tpExecuteByOwner  
    , tpReadByGroup, tpWriteByGroup, tpExecuteByGroup, tpReadByOther,  
    tpWriteByOther, tpExecuteByOther]
```

ALL_PERMISSIONS is a set constant containing all possible permissions (read/write/execute, for all groups of users) for an archive entry.

```
EXECUTE_PERMISSIONS = [tpExecuteByOwner, tpExecuteByGroup, tpExecuteByOther  
    ]
```

WRITE_PERMISSIONS is a set constant containing all possible execute permissions set for an archive entry.

```
FILETYPE_NAME : = Array[TFileType] of string = ('Regular', 'Link'
, 'Symbolic Link', 'Char File', 'Block File', 'Directory', 'FIFO File'
, 'Contiguous', 'Dir Dump', 'Multivol', 'Volume Header')
```

FILETYPE_NAME can be used to get a textual description for each of the possible entry file types.

```
READ_PERMISSIONS = [tpReadByOwner, tpReadByGroup, tpReadByOther]
```

READ_PERMISSIONS is a set constant containing all possible read permissions set for an archive entry.

```
WRITE_PERMISSIONS = [tpWriteByOwner, tpWriteByGroup, tpWriteByOther
]
```

WRITE_PERMISSIONS is a set constant containing all possible write permissions set for an archive entry.

28.3.2 Types

```
TFileType = (ftNormal, ftLink, ftSymbolicLink, ftCharacter, ftBlock,
ftDirectory, ftFifo, ftContiguous, ftDumpDir, ftMultiVolume
,
ftVolumeHeader)
```

Table 28.2: Enumeration values for type TFileType

Value	Explanation
ftBlock	Block device file.
ftCharacter	Character device file.
ftContiguous	Contiguous file.
ftDirectory	Directory.
ftDumpDir	List of files.
ftFifo	FIFO file.
ftLink	Hard link.
ftMultiVolume	Multi-volume file part.
ftNormal	Normal file.
ftSymbolicLink	Symbolic link.
ftVolumeHeader	Volume header, can appear only as first entry in the archive.

TFileType describes the file type of a file in the archive. It is used in the FileType field of the TTarDirRec (748) record.

```
TTarDirRec = record
public
  Name : AnsiString;
  Size : Int64;
  DateTime : TDateTime;
  Permissions : TTarPermissions;
  FileType
  : TFileType;
```

```

LinkName : AnsiString;
UID : Integer;
GID : Integer
;
UserName : AnsiString;
GroupName : AnsiString;
ChecksumOK
: Boolean;
Mode : TTarModes;
Magic : AnsiString;
MajorDevNo
: Integer;
MinorDevNo : Integer;
FilePos : Int64;
end

```

TTarDirRec describes an entry in the tar archive. It is similar to a directory entry as in TSearchRec (??), and is returned by the TTarArchive.FindNext (751) call.

```
TTarMode = (tmSetUid, tmSetGid, tmSaveText)
```

Table 28.3: Enumeration values for type TTarMode

Value	Explanation
tmSaveText	Bit \$200 is set.
tmSetGid	File has SetGID bit set.
tmSetUid	File has SetUID bit set.

TTarMode describes extra file modes. It is used in the Mode field of the TTarDirRec (748) record.

```
TTarModes = Set of TTarMode = (tmSaveText, tmSetGid, tmSetUid)
```

TTarModes denotes the full set of permission bits for the file in the field Mode field of the TTarDirRec (748) record.

```

TTarPermission = (tpReadByOwner, tpWriteByOwner, tpExecuteByOwner,
tpReadByGroup, tpWriteByGroup, tpExecuteByGroup,
tpReadByOther, tpWriteByOther, tpExecuteByOther)

```

Table 28.4: Enumeration values for type TTarPermission

Value	Explanation
tpExecuteByGroup	Group can execute the file.
tpExecuteByOther	Other people can execute the file.
tpExecuteByOwner	Owner can execute the file.
tpReadByGroup	Group can read the file.
tpReadByOther	Other people can read the file.
tpReadByOwner	Owner can read the file.
tpWriteByGroup	Group can write the file.
tpWriteByOther	Other people can write the file.
tpWriteByOwner	Owner can write the file.

`TTarPermission` denotes part of a files permission as it stored in the .tar archive. Each of these enumerated constants correspond with one of the permission bits from a UNIX file permission.

```
TTarPermissions = Set of TTarPermission = (tpExecuteByGroup, tpExecuteByOther
, tpExecuteByOwner,
        tpReadByGroup, tpReadByOther, tpReadByOwner
,
        tpWriteByGroup, tpWriteByOther, tpWriteByOwner)
```

`TTarPermissions` describes the complete set of permissions that a file has. It is used in the `Permissions` field of the `TTarDirRec` (748) record.

28.4 Procedures and functions

28.4.1 ClearDirRec

Synopsis: Initialize tar archive entry.

Declaration: `procedure ClearDirRec (var DirRec: TTarDirRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClearDirRec` clears the `DirRec` entry, it basically zeroes out all fields.

See also: `TTarDirRec` (748)

28.4.2 ConvertFilename

Synopsis: Convert filename to archive format.

Declaration: `function ConvertFilename (Filename: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConvertFileName` converts the file name `FileName` to a format allowed by the tar archive. Basically, it converts directory specifiers to forward slashes.

28.4.3 FileTimeGMT

Synopsis: Extract filetype.

Declaration: `function FileTimeGMT (FileName: string) : TDateTime; Overload`
`function FileTimeGMT (SearchRec: TSearchRec) : TDateTime; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileTimeGMT` returns the timestamp of a filename (`FileName` must exist) or a search rec (`TSearchRec`) to a GMT representation that can be used in a tar entry.

See also: `TTarDirRec` (748)

28.4.4 PermissionString

Synopsis: Convert a set of permissions to a string.

Declaration: `function PermissionString(Permissions: TTarPermissions) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PermissionString` can be used to convert a set of `Permissions` to a string in the same format as used by the UNIX `'ls'` command.

See also: `TTarPermissions` ([749](#))

28.5 TTarArchive

28.5.1 Description

`TTarArchive` is the class used to read and examine `.tar` archives. It can be constructed from a stream or from a filename. Creating an instance will not perform any operation on the stream yet.

See also: `TTarWriter` ([752](#)), `FindNext` ([751](#))

28.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
750	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the archive.
750	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy <code>TTarArchive</code> instance.
751	<code>FindNext</code>	Find next archive entry.
752	<code>GetFilePos</code>	Return current archive position.
751	<code>ReadFile</code>	Read a file from the archive.
751	<code>Reset</code>	Reset archive.
752	<code>SetFilePos</code>	Set position in archive.

28.5.3 TTarArchive.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the archive.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream); Overload`
`constructor Create(Filename: string; FileMode: Word); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` can be used to create a new instance of `TTarArchive` using either a `StreamTStream` ([??](#)) descendent or using a name of a file to open: `FileName`. In case of the filename, an open mode can be specified.

Errors: In case a filename is specified and the file cannot be opened, an exception will occur.

See also: `FindNext` ([751](#))

28.5.4 TTarArchive.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy `TTarArchive` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the archive stream (if it created a stream) and cleans up the `TTarArchive` instance.

See also: `TTarArchive.Create` ([750](#))

28.5.5 `TTarArchive.Reset`

Synopsis: Reset archive.

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: public

Description: `Reset` sets the archive file position on the beginning of the archive.

See also: `TTarArchive.Create` ([750](#))

28.5.6 `TTarArchive.FindNext`

Synopsis: Find next archive entry.

Declaration: `function FindNext (var DirRec: TTarDirRec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNext` positions the file pointer on the next archive entry, and returns all information about the entry in `DirRec`. It returns `True` if the operation was successful, or `False` if not (for instance, when the end of the archive was reached).

Errors: In case there are no more entries, `False` is returned.

See also: `TTarArchive.ReadFile` ([751](#))

28.5.7 `TTarArchive.ReadFile`

Synopsis: Read a file from the archive.

Declaration: `procedure ReadFile (Buffer: POINTER); Overload`
`procedure ReadFile (Stream: TStream); Overload`
`procedure ReadFile (Filename: string); Overload`
`function ReadFile : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFile` can be used to read the current file in the archive. It can be called after the archive was successfully positioned on an entry in the archive. The file can be read in various ways:

- directly in a memory buffer. No checks are performed to see whether the buffer points to enough memory.
- It can be copied to a `Stream`.
- It can be copied to a file with name `FileName`.
- The file content can be copied to a string

Errors: An exception may occur if the buffer is not large enough, or when the file specified in `filename` cannot be opened.

28.5.8 TTarArchive.GetFilePos

Synopsis: Return current archive position.

Declaration: `procedure GetFilePos (var Current: Int64; var Size: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFilePos` returns the position in the tar archive in `Current` and the complete archive size in `Size`.

See also: `TTarArchive.SetFilePos` ([752](#)), `TTarArchive.Reset` ([751](#))

28.5.9 TTarArchive.SetFilePos

Synopsis: Set position in archive.

Declaration: `procedure SetFilePos (NewPos: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFilePos` can be used to set the absolute position in the tar archive.

See also: `TTarArchive.Reset` ([751](#)), `TTarArchive.GetFilePos` ([752](#))

28.6 TTarWriter

28.6.1 Description

`TTarWriter` can be used to create `.tar` archives. It can be created using a filename, in which case the archive will be written to the filename, or it can be created using a stream, in which case the archive will be written to the stream - for instance a compression stream.

See also: `TTarArchive` ([750](#))

28.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
754	<code>AddDir</code>	Add directory to archive.
753	<code>AddFile</code>	Add a file to the archive.
755	<code>AddLink</code>	Add hard link to archive.
754	<code>AddStream</code>	Add stream contents to archive.
754	<code>AddString</code>	Add string as file data.
755	<code>AddSymbolicLink</code>	Add a symbolic link to the archive.
755	<code>AddVolumeHeader</code>	Add volume header entry.
753	<code>Create</code>	Create a new archive.
753	<code>Destroy</code>	Close archive and clean up <code>TTarWriter</code> .
755	<code>Finalize</code>	Finalize the archive.

28.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
756	GID	rw	Archive entry group ID.
757	GroupName	rw	Archive entry group name.
757	Magic	rw	Archive entry Magic constant.
757	Mode	rw	Archive entry mode.
756	Permissions	rw	Archive entry permissions.
756	UID	rw	Archive entry user ID.
756	UserName	rw	Archive entry user name.

28.6.4 TTarWriter.Create

Synopsis: Create a new archive.

Declaration: `constructor Create(TargetStream: TStream); Overload`
`constructor Create(TargetFilename: string; Mode: Integer); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TTarWriter` instance. This will start a new `.tar` archive. The archive will be written to the `TargetStream` stream or to a file with name `TargetFileName`, which will be opened with filemode `Mode`.

Errors: In case `TargetFileName` cannot be opened, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TTarWriter.Destroy` ([753](#))

28.6.5 TTarWriter.Destroy

Synopsis: Close archive and clean up `TTarWriter`.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` will close the archive (i.e. it writes the end-of-archive marker, if it was not yet written), and then frees the `TTarWriter` instance.

See also: `TTarWriter.Finalize` ([755](#))

28.6.6 TTarWriter.AddFile

Synopsis: Add a file to the archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddFile(Filename: string; TarFilename: AnsiString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddFile` adds a file to the archive: the contents is read from `FileName`. Optionally, an alternative filename can be specified in `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. If it is not specified, the name will be computed from `FileName`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

Errors: If `FileName` cannot be opened, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddStream` ([754](#)), `TTarWriter.AddString` ([754](#)), `TTarWriter.AddLink` ([755](#)), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` ([755](#)), `TTarWriter.AddDir` ([754](#)), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` ([755](#))

28.6.7 TTarWriter.AddStream

Synopsis: Add stream contents to archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddStream(Stream: TStream; TarFilename: AnsiString;
FileDateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddStream` will add the contents of `Stream` to the archive. The `Stream` will not be reset: only the contents of the stream from the current position will be written to the archive. The entry will be written with file name `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. The entry will be written with timestamp `FileDateGmt`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (753), `TTarWriter.AddString` (754), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (754), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (755)

28.6.8 TTarWriter.AddString

Synopsis: Add string as file data.

Declaration: `procedure AddString(Contents: Ansistring; TarFilename: AnsiString;
FileDateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddString` adds the string `Contents` as the data of an entry with file name `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. The entry will be written with timestamp `FileDateGmt`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (753), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (754), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (754), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (755)

28.6.9 TTarWriter.AddDir

Synopsis: Add directory to archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddDir(Dirname: AnsiString; DateGmt: TDateTime;
MaxDirSize: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddDir` adds a directory entry to the archive. The entry is written with name `DirName`, maximum directory size `MaxDirSize` (0 means unlimited) and timestamp `DateGmt`.

Note that this call only adds an entry for a directory to the archive: if `DirName` is an existing directory, it does not write all files in the directory to the archive.

The directory entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (753), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (754), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddString` (754), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (755)

28.6.10 TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink

Synopsis: Add a symbolic link to the archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddSymbolicLink (Filename: AnsiString; Linkname: AnsiString;
DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddSymbolicLink` adds a symbolic link entry to the archive, with name `FileName`, pointing to `LinkName`. The entry is written with timestamp `DateGmt`.

The link entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (753), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (754), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (754), `TTarWriter.AddString` (754), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (755)

28.6.11 TTarWriter.AddLink

Synopsis: Add hard link to archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddLink (Filename: AnsiString; Linkname: AnsiString;
DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddLink` adds a hard link entry to the archive. The entry has name `FileName`, timestamp `DateGmt` and points to `LinkName`.

The link entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (753), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (754), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (754), `TTarWriter.AddString` (754), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (755)

28.6.12 TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader

Synopsis: Add volume header entry.

Declaration: `procedure AddVolumeHeader (VolumeId: AnsiString; DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddVolumeHeader` adds a volume header entry to the archive. The entry is written with name `VolumeID` and timestamp `DateGmt`.

The volume header entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (753), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (754), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (755), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (754), `TTarWriter.AddString` (754), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (755)

28.6.13 TTarWriter.Finalize

Synopsis: Finalize the archive.

Declaration: `procedure Finalize`

Visibility: public

Description: `Finalize` writes the end-of-archive marker to the archive. No more entries can be added after `Finalize` was called.

If the `TTarWriter` instance is destroyed, it will automatically call `finalize` if `finalize` was not yet called.

See also: `TTarWriter.Destroy` ([753](#))

28.6.14 `TTarWriter.Permissions`

Synopsis: Archive entry permissions.

Declaration: `Property Permissions : TTarPermissions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Permissions` is used for the permissions field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([748](#))

28.6.15 `TTarWriter.UID`

Synopsis: Archive entry user ID.

Declaration: `Property UID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UID` is used for the `UID` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([748](#))

28.6.16 `TTarWriter.GID`

Synopsis: Archive entry group ID.

Declaration: `Property GID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GID` is used for the `GID` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([748](#))

28.6.17 `TTarWriter.UserName`

Synopsis: Archive entry user name.

Declaration: `Property UserName : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UserName` is used for the `UserName` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([748](#))

28.6.18 TTarWriter.GroupName

Synopsis: Archive entry group name.

Declaration: `Property GroupName : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GroupName` is used for the `GroupName` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([748](#))

28.6.19 TTarWriter.Mode

Synopsis: Archive entry mode.

Declaration: `Property Mode : TTarModes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Mode` is used for the `Mode` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([748](#))

28.6.20 TTarWriter.Magic

Synopsis: Archive entry Magic constant.

Declaration: `Property Magic : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Magic` is used for the `Magic` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([748](#))

Chapter 29

Reference for unit 'MaskUtils'

29.1 Used units

Table 29.1: Used units by unit 'MaskUtils'

Name	Page
System	??
sysutils	??

29.2 Overview

This unit provides routines to work with edit masks. For this, it provied [FormatMaskText \(761\)](#), [FormatMaskInput \(760\)](#) and [MaskDoFormatText \(761\)](#) functions, as well as the underlying [TMaskUtils \(761\)](#) class.

29.3 Constants, types and variables

29.3.1 Types

`TEditMask = type string`

`TEditMask` is a string type with different RTTI, this is used to enable registering special property handlers in an IDE.

`TMaskeditTrimType = (metTrimLeft,metTrimRight)`

Table 29.2: Enumeration values for type `TMaskeditTrimType`

Value	Explanation
<code>metTrimLeft</code>	Trimm on the left (start) of the string.
<code>metTrimRight</code>	Trim on the right (end) of the string.

TMaskeditTrimType is used when calculating output strings. It is an internal type for the TMaskUtils (761) class.

metTrimLeft Trimm on the left (start) of the string.

metTrimRight Trim on the right (end) of the string.

```
tMaskedType = (Char_Start, Char_Number, Char_NumberFixed,
    Char_NumberPlusMin, Char_Letter, Char_LetterFixed,
    Char_LetterUpCase, Char_LetterDownCase,
        Char_LetterFixedUpCase
    , Char_LetterFixedDownCase,
        Char_AlphaNum, Char_AlphaNumFixed
    , Char_AlphaNumUpCase,
        Char_AlphaNumDownCase, Char_AlphaNumFixedUpCase
    ,
        Char_AlphaNumFixedDownCase, Char_All, Char_AllFixed
    ,
        Char_AllUpCase, Char_AllDownCase, Char_AllFixedUpCase
    ,
        Char_AllFixedDownCase, Char_HourSeparator,
    Char_DateSeparator, Char_Stop)
```

Table 29.3: Enumeration values for type tMaskedType

Value	Explanation
Char_All	Any ASCII or space.
Char_AllDownCase	Any lowercase character.
Char_AllFixed	Any ASCII character.
Char_AllFixedDownCase	Any lowercase character, no space.
Char_AllFixedUpCase	Any uppercase character, no space.
Char_AllUpCase	Any uppercase character.
Char_AlphaNum	One of A-Z, a-z, 0-9 or space.
Char_AlphaNumDownCase	One of a-z, 0-9 or space.
Char_AlphaNumFixed	One of A-Z, a-z, 0-9.
Char_AlphaNumFixedDownCase	One of a-z, 0-9.
Char_AlphaNumFixedUpCase	One of A-Z, 0-9.
Char_AlphaNumUpCase	One of A-Z, 0-9 or space.
Char_DateSeparator	The system locale date separator.
Char_HourSeparator	The system locale hour separator.
Char_Letter	One of A-Z, a-z or a space.
Char_LetterDownCase	One of a-z or space.
Char_LetterFixed	One of A-Z, a-z.
Char_LetterFixedDownCase	One of a-z.
Char_LetterFixedUpCase	One of A-Z.
Char_LetterUpCase	One of A-Z or space.
Char_Number	Numerical character or space.
Char_NumberFixed	Numerical character.
Char_NumberPlusMin	Numerical character, plus or minus or space.
Char_Start	Sentinel value: start of enumerate.
Char_Stop	Sentinel value: end of enumerate.

`tMaskedType` is used internally in `TMaskUtils` (761) to describe the mask characters.

Char_start Sentinel value: start of enumerate.

Char_Number Numerical character or space.

Char_NumberFixed Numerical character.

Char_NumberPlusMin Numerical character, plus or minus or space.

Char_Letter One of A-Z, a-z or a space.

Char_LetterFixed One of A-Z, a-z.

Char_LetterUpCase One of A-Z or space.

Char_LetterDownCase One of a-z or space.

Char_LetterFixedUpCase One of A-Z.

Char_LetterFixedUpCase One of A-Z.

Char_LetterFixedDownCase One of a-z.

Char_AlphaNum One of A-Z, a-z, 0-9 or space.

Char_AlphaNumFixed One of A-Z, a-z, 0-9.

Char_AlphaNumUpCase One of A-Z, 0-9 or space.

Char_AlphaNumDownCase One of a-z, 0-9 or space.

Char_AlphaNumFixedUpCase One of A-Z, 0-9.

Char_AlphaNumFixedDownCase One of a-z, 0-9.

Char_All Any ASCII or space.

Char_AllFixed Any ASCII character.

Char_AllUpCase Any uppercase character.

Char_AllDownCase Any lowercase character.

Char_AllFixedUpCase Any uppercase character, no space.

Char_AllFixedDownCase Any lowercase character, no space.

Char_HourSeparator The system locale hour separator.

Char_DateSeparator The system locale date separator.

29.4 Procedures and functions

29.4.1 FormatMaskInput

Synopsis: Return an input mask text based on the edit mask.

Declaration: `function FormatMaskInput(const EditMask: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatMaskInput` returns a text which corresponds to an empty value for `EditMask`. This can e.g. be displayed in an edit box, when the user has not yet typed anything.

See also: `FormatMaskText` (761), `MaskDoFormatText` (761), `TMaskUtils` (761), `TMaskUtils.InputMask` (763)

29.4.2 FormatMaskText

Synopsis: Format a text according to a given mask.

Declaration: `function FormatMaskText(const EditMask: string; const AValue: string)
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatMaskText` formats `aValue` according to the mask placeholders found in `EditMask` and returns the resulting string. It replaces space characters in the format mask with the actual space character. This function uses an `TMaskUtils` (761) instance to do the actual work.

Errors: None.

See also: `FormatMaskInput` (760), `MaskDoFormatText` (761), `TMaskUtils` (761), `TMaskUtils.ApplyMaskToText` (761), `TMaskUtils.GetTextWithoutSpaceChar` (761)

29.4.3 MaskDoFormatText

Synopsis: Return an input mask text without literals or space char.

Declaration: `function MaskDoFormatText(const EditMask: string; const AValue: string;
ASpaceChar: char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `MaskDoFormatText` formats the `aValue` string using `EditMask`, but enforces the 2d (space char is `aSpaceChar`) and 3d (force use of literals) fields of `EditMask`.

See also: `FormatMaskInput` (760), `FormatMaskText` (761), `TMaskUtils` (761), `TMaskUtils.InputMask` (763)

29.5 TMaskUtils

29.5.1 Description

`TEditMask` can be used to work with edit masks. It is used in the `FormatMaskInput` (760), `FormatMaskText` (761) and `MaskDoFormatText` (761) calls to do the actual work.

In general, the work is done by setting the `Mask` (762) and `Values` (762) properties, and reading the `InputMask` (762) property or calling one of `ValidateInput` (762) or `TryValidateInput` (762).

See also: `Mask` (762), `Values` (762), `InputMask` (762), `ValidateInput` (762), `TryValidateInput` (762)

29.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
762	<code>TryValidateInput</code>	
762	<code>ValidateInput</code>	Check that the <code>Value</code> text is valid for the given mask.

29.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
763	<code>InputMask</code>	r	Text to be used as input mask.
762	<code>Mask</code>	rw	The edit mask to use.
762	<code>Value</code>	rw	(input) String value to validate.

29.5.4 TMaskUtils.ValidateInput

Synopsis: Check that the `Value` text is valid for the given mask.

Declaration: `function ValidateInput : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ValidateInput` checks that the text in `Value` (762) satisfies the given mask in `Mask` (762) and returns the value with the mask applied to it. If `Value` does not satisfy the mask, an exception is raised. If you don't want an exception, use `TryValidateInput` (762) instead.

Errors: If `Value` does not satisfy the mask, an `Exception` (758) is raised.

See also: `TryValidateInput` (762), `Value` (762), `Mask` (762), `Exception` (758)

29.5.5 TMaskUtils.TryValidateInput

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function TryValidateInput(out ValidatedString: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TryValidateInput` checks that the text in `Value` (762) satisfies the given mask in `Mask` (762) and returns `True` if it does, `False` otherwise. It returns `Value` with the mask applied to it in `ValidatedString`.

See also: `ValidateInput` (762), `Value` (762), `Mask` (762)

29.5.6 TMaskUtils.Mask

Synopsis: The edit mask to use.

Declaration: `Property Mask : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Mask` is the edit mask which must be used when validating `Value` (762).

See also: `Value` (762), `InputMask` (763)

29.5.7 TMaskUtils.Value

Synopsis: (input) String value to validate.

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is the string value which is being validated with `Mask` (762).

See also: `Mask` (762), `InputMask` (763)

29.5.8 TMaskUtils.InputMask

Synopsis: Text to be used as input mask.

Declaration: `Property InputMask : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `InputMask` is a text that can be used as text in an edit value when there is no input: this is the input mask.

See also: [Mask \(762\)](#), [Value \(762\)](#)

Chapter 30

Reference for unit 'memds'

30.1 Used units

Table 30.1: Used units by unit 'memds'

Name	Page
Classes	??
DB	361
System	??
sysutils	??
Types	??

30.2 Overview

memds.pp contains classes, types, and routines needed to implement TMemDataset, an in-memory dataset. Ideas implemented in TMemDataset were taken from the THKMemTab component by Harri Kasulke. (Hamburg/Germany)

30.3 Constants, types and variables

30.3.1 Constants

```
MarkerSize = SizeOf(Integer)
```

MarkerSize is a constant that indicates the size for markers used in TMemDataset. Markers are read from and written to the internal TMemoryStream for the in-memory dataset, and separates field definitions from the record data in the stream. A marker is also used to indicate the end of the stream.

MarkerSize is defined as the size for the Integer data type.

```
smData = 2
```

smData is an Integer constant that contains the marker used to signify the start of record data for an in-memory dataset. smData is used in TMemDataset methods which read or write record values using the stream for the in-memory dataset. The value for smData is 2.

```
smEOF = 0
```

smEOF is an Integer constant that contains the marker used as the End-of-File marker for an in-memory dataset. smEOF is used in TMemDataset methods which read or write data using a file or a stream. The value for smEOF is 0 (zero).

```
smFieldDefs = 1
```

smFieldDefs is an Integer constant that contains the marker used to signify the start of field definitions for an in-memory dataset. smFieldDefs is used in TMemDataset methods which read or write field definitions for the in-memory dataset. The value for smFieldDefs is 1.

30.4 MDSError

30.4.1 Description

MDSError is an Exception type raised when an error occurs while reading or writing values for an in-memory dataset. MDSError is raised in the TMemDataset.RaiseError method and uses messages defined in resource strings in the implementation for the unit, including:

- Fieldtype of Field "%s" not supported
- Bookmark %d not found
- Error in data stream at position %d
- Wrong data stream marker at position %d. Got %d, expected %d'
- Filename must not be empty

An MDSError exception will be raised when a field definition uses a data type not supported in TMemDataset. The exception will be raised for the following field types:

- ftADT
- ftCursor
- ftDataSet
- ftDBaseOle
- ftFmtMemo
- ftGraphic
- ftIDispatch
- ftInterface
- ftOraBlob
- ftOraClob
- ftParadoxOle
- ftReference
- ftTimeStamp

- ftTypedBinary
- ftVariant
- ftUnknown

See also: TMemDataset.FieldDefs ([775](#)), TField.DataType ([490](#))

30.5 TMemDataset

30.5.1 Description

TMemDataset is a TDataset descendant which implements an in-memory dataset. TMemDataset is a performant, single user dataset for non-mission critical use cases that do not require transactions. All record and field processing is done in memory; no data is read from or written to disk unless explicitly requested.

TMemDataset implements common facilities defined in the TDataset ancestor class. This includes using the FieldDefs property to define the structure for the dataset. Most (but not all) field types are supported in TMemDataset, including:

- ftString
- ftGuid
- ftFixedChar
- ftBoolean
- ftCurrency
- ftFloat
- ftBCD
- ftLargeInt
- ftSmallInt
- ftWord
- ftInteger
- ftAutoInc (behave like ftInteger i.e. no auto-increment functionality)
- ftDateTime
- ftDate
- ftTime
- ftFmtBCD
- ftWideString
- ftFixedWideChar
- ftBytes
- ftVarBytes

- `ftBlob`
- `ftMemo`
- `ftWideMemo`

`TMemDataset` implements common data manipulation methods such as: `Append`, `AppendRecord`, `Insert`, `InsertRecord`, `Delete`, `Clear`, and `Refresh`. `TMemDataset` implements Bookmarks and common navigation methods like: `First`, `Next`, `Prior`, `Last`, `Locate`, `BOF`, and `EOF`. Methods are provided that allow loading and saving both structure and data from a file, a stream, or another `TDataset` descendent.

`TMemDataset` provides methods to filter records, but they are implemented in a different manner than in `TDataset`. The `Filter` property is ignored; use the `OnFilterRecord` method and the `Filtered` property for this functionality.

One notable missing feature is Indexes. Index definitions are not implemented in `TMemDataset`.

`TMemDataset` uses ideas taken from the `THKMemTab` component by Harri Kasulke. (Hamburg/Germany)

See also: `TDataset` ([425](#))

30.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
769	<code>BookmarkValid</code>	Determines if the specified Bookmark is valid.
771	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the content in the in-memory dataset.
769	<code>CompareBookmarks</code>	Gets the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.
773	<code>CopyFromDataset</code>	Loads field definitions and optional data from the specified <code>TDataset</code> .
768	<code>Create</code>	Constructor for the class instance.
769	<code>CreateBlobStream</code>	Creates a stream used to read or write Blob field data in the in-memory dataset.
770	<code>CreateTable</code>	Creates the internal storage for records in the in-memory dataset.
771	<code>DataSize</code>	Size of the internal <code>TMemoryStream</code> used in the in-memory dataset.
768	<code>Destroy</code>	Destructor for the class instance.
772	<code>LoadFromFile</code>	Loads the content for the dataset from the specified file name.
772	<code>LoadFromStream</code>	Loads the content for the dataset from the specified stream.
770	<code>Locate</code>	Locates a record with the specified values in the in-memory dataset.
770	<code>Lookup</code>	Searches for a record with the specified values, and returns a list of values.
771	<code>SaveToFile</code>	Saves field definitions and optional record data to the specified file name.
772	<code>SaveToStream</code>	Saves field definitions and optional record data to the specified stream.

30.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
775	Active		Indicates if the in-memory dataset is Active.
777	AfterCancel		
776	AfterClose		
777	AfterDelete		
776	AfterEdit		
776	AfterInsert		
775	AfterOpen		
777	AfterPost		
778	AfterScroll		
777	BeforeCancel		
776	BeforeClose		
777	BeforeDelete		
776	BeforeEdit		
776	BeforeInsert		
775	BeforeOpen		
777	BeforePost		
778	BeforeScroll		
775	FieldDefs		Field definitions for the in-memory dataset.
774	FileModified	r	Indicates if the in-memory dataset has been modified.
774	FileName	rw	File name used to read or write field definitions and optional data.
774	Filter		Filter for the dataset.
775	Filtered		Indicates if records in the dataset are filtered using OnFilter-Record.
778	OnDeleteError		
778	OnEditError		
779	OnFilterRecord		Event handler signalled to include or exclude records in the in-memory dataset.
778	OnNewRecord		
779	OnPostError		

30.5.4 TMemDataset.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create is the overridden constructor for the class instance. Create calls the inherited constructor.

Create allocates resources required for internal member variables in the class, such as the TMemoryStream that contains the field definitions and record data and the list used to store Blob data. Other internal member variables are set to their default values. Creates sets the default values for the following published properties:

BookmarkSize `SizeOf(LongInt)`

30.5.5 TMemDataset.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy is the overridden destructor for the class instance. Destroy frees resources allocated to internal member variables in the class. The list used for Blob data is cleared and freed. Destroy calls the inherited destructor, and frees the internal memory stream for the class.

30.5.6 TMemDataset.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Determines if the specified Bookmark is valid.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(ABookmark: TBookMark) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: BookmarkValid is an overridden Boolean function used to determine if the specified Bookmark is valid. BookmarkValid implements the virtual method defined in the ancestor class.

In TMemDataset, a Bookmark is considered to be valid when it contains an Integer value that represents a record in the in-memory dataset. Bookmarks are zero-based and must be less than the record count for dataset.

The return value is False when ABookmark is unassigned (contains Nil), or True when the preceding conditions are satisfied.

30.5.7 TMemDataset.CompareBookmarks

Synopsis: Gets the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(Bookmark1: TBookMark; Bookmark2: TBookMark) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: CompareBookmarks is an overridden LongInt function which determines the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.

30.5.8 TMemDataset.CreateBlobStream

Synopsis: Creates a stream used to read or write Blob field data in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `function CreateBlobStream(Field: TField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode) : TStream; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: CreateBlobStream is an overridden TStream function which creates a TMDSBlobStream for the specified field with the read/write permissions in Mode. CreateBlobStream is called when the specified Field needs to read or write its value (for TBlobField or descendent field types).

Mode indicates the permissions need for the blob stream. When Mode contains bmWrite, the value in the State property must indicate that the editing operation is enabled. An exception is raised using DatabaseErrorFmt if State contains a value other than: dsEdit, dsInsert, dsFilter, or dsCalcFields.

Similarly, the Field must allow editing when not in dsSetKey or dsFilter state. An exception is raised using DatabaseErrorFmt if Field has its ReadOnly property set.

The return value contains the TMDSBlobStream instance created using Field and Mode as arguments. Please note that the Blob stream is not saved as part of the data in the in-memory dataset; in its dynamically created and freed as needed.

See also: TFieldDef.DataType ([508](#)), TDataset.State ([452](#)), TField.ReadOnly ([501](#))

30.5.9 TMemDataset.Locate

Synopsis: Locates a record with the specified values in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `function Locate(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant;
Options: TLocateOptions) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Locate is an overridden Boolean function used to locate a record with the specified values in the specified fields. LocateOptions indicates if case-insensitivity or partial keys searches are used in the method. Locate calls the inherited method to ensure that the dataset is bi-directional. Locate calls CheckActive to ensure that the dataset has been opened prior to searching for values in record data. Locate calls MDSLlocateRecord to get the return value for the method. When the return value is True, the current record for the dataset is updated and Resync is called to update the active record buffer.

See also: TDataset.Locate ([441](#)), TLocateOption ([375](#)), TLocateOptions ([375](#)), TDataset.Resync ([444](#))

30.5.10 TMemDataset.Lookup

Synopsis: Searches for a record with the specified values, and returns a list of values.

Declaration: `function Lookup(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant;
const ResultFields: string) : Variant; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Lookup is an overridden Variant function used to search for the first record that matches the specified values. KeyFields is a comma-delimited list of field names to examine in the method. KeyValues is a variant array with values for the specified field names. ResultFields is a comma-delimited list of field names to include in the return values for the method.

Lookup calls MDSLlocateRecord to search for the specified values in the record data for the in-memory dataset. If a record is located that matches the search criteria, calculated or lookup fields in the dataset are recalculated. The return value is a variant array with values for the fields specified in ResultFields. The return value is set to Null if a record with the specified search values is not found.

Please note that Lookup does not change the active record in the dataset.

For example:

```
var AResultVals: Variant;  
    AResultVals := AMemDS.Lookup('lastname, firstname', VarArrayCreate('Franks', 'Pete'))
```

See also: TMemDataset.Locate ([770](#))

30.5.11 TMemDataset.CreateTable

Synopsis: Creates the internal storage for records in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CreateTable`

Visibility: public

Description: CreateTable is used to create the internal storage for records in the in-memory dataset. CreateTable calls CheckInactive to ensure that the dataset is not already opened or Active. CreateTable calls Clear to remove any existing record data in the in-memory dataset. Field definitions are retained. CreateTable calls CalcRecordLayout to determine the record size including Bookmark and BookmarkFlag values. Sets the internal TableIsCreated member to True.

See also: TDataset.Active ([454](#)), TMemDataset.Clear ([771](#)), TDataset.FieldDefs ([449](#)), CreateTable ([770](#))

30.5.12 TMemDataset.DataSize

Synopsis: Size of the internal TMemoryStream used in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `function DataSize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: DataSize is an Integer function used to get the size of the internal stream in the in-memory dataset.

30.5.13 TMemDataset.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the content in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Clear(ClearDefs: Boolean)
procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: Clear is an overloaded procedure used to clear record data, Blob streams, and optionally Field definitions in the in-memory dataset. Clear removes any Blob streams allocated for memo fields in the dataset. Clear removes any memory allocated to the internal TMemoryStream used for record data in the dataset. If the dataset is Active, the Resync method is called to refresh values in the active record buffer.

ClearDefs indicates if the FieldDefs for the dataset are also cleared. When ClearDefs is True, the Close method is called to deactivate the dataset. All field definitions in FieldDefs are removed. The internal member TableIsCreated is set to False.

See also: TDataset.Active ([454](#)), TDataset.Close ([433](#)), TDataset.FieldDefs ([449](#))

30.5.14 TMemDataset.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Saves field definitions and optional record data to the specified file name.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string)
procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string; SaveData: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: SaveToFile is an overloaded procedure used to store field definitions and optional record data in the dataset to the specified file name. AFileName is the file name on the local file system used to store values from the dataset. SaveData indicates if record data is included in the values stored to the file. When SaveData contains False, only the field definitions for the dataset are stored in the file.

AFileName must contain a file name for the local file system. SaveToFile calls RaiseError to raise an exception if the value in AFileName is an empty string (""). SaveToFile creates a TFileStream for the specified file name, and calls SaveToStream to store the content from the dataset.

SaveToFile reimplements the method defined in the ancestor class.

30.5.15 TMemDataset.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Saves field definitions and optional record data to the specified stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(F: TStream)`
`procedure SaveToStream(F: TStream; SaveData: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` is used to save field definitions and optional record data for the in-memory dataset to the specified stream. `SaveToStream` calls `SaveFieldDefsToStream` to save the field definitions in `FieldDefs` to the stream specified in `F`.

`SaveData` indicates if record data is included in the values written to the stream. When `SaveData` contains `True`, the `SaveDataToStream` method is called to save record data to the stream. No record data is written when `SaveData` is `False`. `SaveToStream` calls `WriteMarker` to write the `smEOF` marker value that signifies the end of record data in the stream.

Use `LoadFromStream` to load field definitions and record data for the in-memory dataset.

See also: `TMemDataset.LoadFromStream` ([772](#))

30.5.16 TMemDataset.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads the content for the dataset from the specified stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(F: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` is used to load the content for the dataset from the specified stream. `F` is a `TStream` descendent that is used to load the field definitions and record data for the in-memory dataset. `LoadFromStream` calls `Close` to ensure that the dataset saves its existing content (when `FileName` has been assigned) and clears any default `Fields` created when the dataset was opened.

`LoadFromStream` calls `ReadFieldDefsFromStream` to load field definitions from the stream in `F`. `CreateTable` is called to initialize storage for record data in the dataset. `LoadDataFromStream` is called to load any record data present in the stream. `CheckMarker` is called to ensure that the stream is positioned on the `smEOF` marker that signals the end of record data in the stream. An exception is raised if the stream was truncated or does not contain the value `smEOF` at the current position in the stream. `LoadFromStream` sets the value in the `FileModified` property to `False`.

Use `SaveToStream` to write the field definitions and record data in the dataset to a stream.

See also: `TMemDataset.SaveToStream` ([772](#))

30.5.17 TMemDataset.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Loads the content for the dataset from the specified file name.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` is used to load the content for the dataset from the specified file name. `LoadFromFile` creates a `TFileStream` for the file name specified in `AFileName`. The file stream is passed to `LoadFromStream` to load the contents of the file into the in-memory dataset. The file stream is freed prior to exiting from the method.

Use `SaveToFile` to save the contents of an in-memory dataset to a file on the local file system.

See also: `TMemDataset.LoadFromStream` ([772](#)), `TMemDataset.SaveToFile` ([771](#))

30.5.18 TMemDataset.CopyFromDataset

Synopsis: Loads field definitions and optional data from the specified TDataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyFromDataset (DataSet: TDataSet)`
`procedure CopyFromDataset (DataSet: TDataSet; CopyData: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: CopyFromDataset is used to load field definitions and optional record data from the specified TDataset descendent. Dataset contains the TDataset used as the source for the structure and optional record data loaded in the method. CopyData indicates if record data is loaded in the method. When CopyData contains False, only the structure from Dataset is loaded in method.

CopyFromDataset removes any existing field definitions in FieldDefs, and any record data stored in the in-memory dataset. CopyFromDataset uses the Fields in the DataSet argument to determine the new structure for the in-memory dataset. This is done because the visible Fields in the dataset may differ from the actual field definitions. CopyFromDataset creates and adds a TFieldDef instance to FieldsDefs for each of the Fields in DataSet.

CopyFromDataset calls CreateTable to allocated record storage for the new field definitions in FieldDefs.

When CopyData contains True, record data from the DataSet argument is added to the in-memory dataset. When CopyData contains False, record data in the DataSet argument is ignored.

The Open method is called to activate both datasets. DisableControls is called for both TDatasets to prevent updates during record navigation. All records in DataSet are loaded into the in-memory dataset by calling Append and setting the value for each of the field definitions in the target. Field definitions with the following data types are loaded using the native type for the field:

- ftFixedChar
- ftString
- ftBoolean
- ftFloat
- ftLargeInt
- ftSmallInt
- ftInteger
- ftDate
- ftTime
- ftDateTime

All other field values are loaded using their AsString representation.

CopyFromDataset calls Post after adding each record in the dataset. If an exception occurs, the Cancel method is called and the exception is re-raised.

CopyFromDataset calls the EnableControls method in both datasets when record data has been loaded in the method. Please note that the record position in the DataSet argument is restored after loading record data.

See also: TDataset.Fields ([452](#)), TDataset.FieldDefs ([449](#)), TMemDataset.CreateTable ([770](#)), TDataset.Append ([431](#)), TDataset.Post ([443](#))

30.5.19 TMemDataset.FileModified

Synopsis: Indicates if the in-memory dataset has been modified.

Declaration: `Property FileModified : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FileModified` is a read-only Boolean property which indicates if the in-memory dataset has been modified. The value in `FileModified` is updated in methods that write record buffers to the internal memory stream for the dataset, such as:

- `MDSWriteRecord`
- `MDSAppendRecord`
- `InternalDelete`

The value in `FileModified` is also updated in methods called when opening or closing the in-memory dataset, such as:

- `LoadFromStream`
- `SaveDataToStream`
- `InternalClose`

30.5.20 TMemDataset.Filter

Synopsis: Filter for the dataset.

Declaration: `Property Filter : ; unimplemented;`

Visibility: `public`

Access:

Description: `Filter` is not implemented in `TMemDataset`. Values assigned to the `Filter` property are silently discarded. Use `OnFilterRecord` and `Filtered` instead.

See also: `TMemDataset.Filtered` ([775](#)), `TMemDataset.OnFilterRecord` ([779](#))

30.5.21 TMemDataset.FileName

Synopsis: File name used to read or write field definitions and optional data.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FileName` is a String property that specifies the file used to load field definitions and optional data when the dataset is opened. When `FileName` is assigned, and the dataset has been modified, it indicates the file name used to store field definitions and data in the local file system.

30.5.22 TMemDataset.Filtered

Synopsis: Indicates if records in the dataset are filtered using OnFilterRecord.

Declaration: `Property Filtered :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Filtered is a published Boolean property that indicates if records in the dataset are filtered using the OnFilterRecord event handler. Filtered is used methods that retrieve record buffers or perform record searches, and determines if records are visible in the dataset.

When Filtered contains True, the MDSFilterRecord method is called to perform filtering for records in the dataset. Unlike the ancestor class, the Filter property is not used in TMemDataset. Values assigned to the Filter property are silently discarded. Use the OnFilterRecord event handler to implement comparisons need to determine record visibility.

See also: TMemDataset.OnFilterRecord ([779](#)), TDataset.Filter ([453](#))

30.5.23 TMemDataset.Active

Synopsis: Indicates if the in-memory dataset is Active.

Declaration: `Property Active :`

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.24 TMemDataset.FieldDefs

Synopsis: Field definitions for the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `Property FieldDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.25 TMemDataset.BeforeOpen

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.26 TMemDataset.AfterOpen

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.27 TMemDataset.BeforeClose

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeClose` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.28 TMemDataset.AfterClose

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterClose` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.29 TMemDataset.BeforeInsert

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeInsert` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.30 TMemDataset.AfterInsert

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterInsert` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.31 TMemDataset.BeforeEdit

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeEdit` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.32 TMemDataset.AfterEdit

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterEdit` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.33 TMemDataset.BeforePost

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforePost` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.34 TMemDataset.AfterPost

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterPost` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.35 TMemDataset.BeforeCancel

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeCancel` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.36 TMemDataset.AfterCancel

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterCancel` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.37 TMemDataset.BeforeDelete

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeDelete` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.38 TMemDataset.AfterDelete

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterDelete` :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.39 TMemDataset.BeforeScroll

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeScroll :`

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.40 TMemDataset.AfterScroll

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterScroll :`

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.41 TMemDataset.OnDeleteError

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property OnDeleteError :`

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.42 TMemDataset.OnEditError

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property OnEditError :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description:

See also: (??)

30.5.43 TMemDataset.OnNewRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property OnNewRecord :`

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.44 TMemDataset.OnPostError

Synopsis:

Declaration: Property OnPostError :

Visibility: published

Access:

30.5.45 TMemDataset.OnFilterRecord

Synopsis: Event handler signalled to include or exclude records in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: Property OnFilterRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: OnFilterRecord is a published TFilterRecordEvent property which provides the event handler signalled to include or exclude records in the in-memory dataset. OnFilterRecord provides a way for the application to decide whether a record is visible in the dataset on a record-by-record basis. Applications must assign a procedure to the event handler that performs any comparison needed to determine record visibility. The procedure must set the value in Accept to True to make the record visible in the in-memory dataset.

Set the Filtered property to True to enable the OnFilterRecord event handler during record navigation.

OnFilterRecord is used as an alternative filtering mechanism; TMemDataset does not implement the Filter property. Values assigned to the Filter property are silently discarded.

See also: TDataSet.OnFilterRecord ([462](#)), TFilterRecordEvent ([374](#)), TDataSet.Filtered ([453](#)), TDataSet.Resync ([444](#))

Chapter 31

Reference for unit 'MSSQLConn'

31.1 Used units

Table 31.1: Used units by unit 'MSSQLConn'

Name	Page
BufDataset	145
Classes	??
DB	361
dblib	??
SQLDB	882
System	??
sysutils	??

31.2 Overview

Connector to Microsoft SQL Server databases. Needs FreeTDS dblib library.

31.3 Constants, types and variables

31.3.1 Variables

`DBLibLibraryName : string = type string = DBLIBDLL`

`DBLibLibraryName` is the name of the library to load when dynamically loading support for MS SQL or Sybase. It must be set before the first connection is made.

31.4 EMSSQLDatabaseError

31.4.1 Description

Sybase/MS SQL Server specific error.

31.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
781	DBErrorCode	r	Sybase/MS SQL Server error code.

31.4.3 EMSSQLDatabaseError.DBErrorCode

Synopsis: Sybase/MS SQL Server error code.

Declaration: `Property DBErrorCode : Integer; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Error code as generated by the database server.

31.5 TMSSQLConnection

31.5.1 Description

Connector to Microsoft SQL Server databases.

Requirements:

MS SQL Server Client Library is required (ntwdblib.dll)

- or -

FreeTDS (dblib.dll)

Older FreeTDS libraries may require freetds.conf: (<http://www.freetds.org/userguide/freetdsconf.htm>)
[global]

tds version = 7.1

client charset = UTF-8

port = 1433 or instance = ... (optional)

dump file = freetds.log (optional)

text size = 2147483647 (optional)

Known problems:

- CHAR/VARCHAR data truncated to column length when encoding to UTF-8 (use NCHAR/NVARCHAR instead or CAST char/varchar to nchar/nvarchar)

- Multiple result sets (MARS) are not supported (for example when SP returns more than 1 result set only 1st is processed)

- DB-Library error 10038 "Results Pending": set `TSQLQuery.PacketRecords=-1` to fetch all pending rows

- BLOB data (IMAGE/TEXT columns) larger than 16MB are truncated to 16MB: (set `TMSSQL-Connection.Params: 'TEXTSIZE=2147483647'` or execute `'SET TEXTSIZE 2147483647'`)

31.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
782	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TMSSQLConnection</code> .
782	CreateDB	Create a new MS SQL database.
783	DropDB	Drop a MS SQL database.
782	GetConnectionInfo	Return some information about the connection.

31.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
784	CharSet		
784	Connected		Is the connection active.
785	DatabaseName		
784	HostName		Host and optionally port or instance.
785	KeepConnection		Keep connection alive.
785	LoginPrompt		Show login prompt.
786	OnLogin		Called when logging in.
785	Params		
783	Password		
784	Role		Role for user.
783	Transaction		Default transaction.
783	UserName		

31.5.4 `TMSSQLConnection.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TMSSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is the default constructor for the `TMSSQLConnection` class. It calls the inherited constructor and sets some defaults.

31.5.5 `TMSSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo`

Synopsis: Return some information about the connection.

Declaration: `function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetConnectionInfo` overrides `TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo` ([918](#)) to return the relevant information for the Interbase/Firebird connection.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo` ([918](#)), `TConnInfoType` ([892](#))

31.5.6 `TMSSQLConnection.CreateDB`

Synopsis: Create a new MS SQL database.

Declaration: `procedure CreateDB; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateDB` creates a database on the server with given `DatabaseName`.

See also: `TMSSQLConnection.DropDB` ([783](#))

31.5.7 TMSSQLConnection.DropDB

Synopsis: Drop a MS SQL database.

Declaration: `procedure DropDB; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DropDB` drops a database on the server with given `DatabaseName`

See also: `TMSSQLConnection.CreateDB` ([782](#))

31.5.8 TMSSQLConnection.Password

Declaration: `Property Password :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: if you don't enter a `UserName` and `Password`, the connector will try to use Trusted Authentication/SSPI (on Windows only).

31.5.9 TMSSQLConnection.Transaction

Synopsis: Default transaction.

Declaration: `Property Transaction :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Transaction` is redeclared from `TSQLConnection.Transaction` ([780](#))

See also: `TSQLConnection.Transaction` ([780](#))

31.5.10 TMSSQLConnection.UserName

Declaration: `Property UserName :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: if you don't enter a `UserName` and `Password`, the connector will try to use Trusted Authentication/SSPI (on Windows only).

31.5.11 TMSSQLConnection.CharSet

Declaration: `Property CharSet :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Character Set - if you use Microsoft DB-Lib and set to 'UTF-8' then char/varchar fields will be UTF8Encoded/Decoded.

If you use FreeTDS DB-Lib, then you must compile with iconv support (requires libiconv2.dll) or cast char/varchar to nchar/nvarchar in SELECTs.

31.5.12 TMSSQLConnection.HostName

Synopsis: Host and optionally port or instance.

Declaration: `Property HostName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: you can specify an instance or a port after the host name itself.

Instance should be specified with a backslash e.g.: 127.0.0.1\SQLEXPRESS. Port should be specified with a colon, e.g. BIGBADSERVER:1433

See <http://www.freetds.org/userguide/PortOverride.html>

31.5.13 TMSSQLConnection.Connected

Synopsis: Is the connection active.

Declaration: `Property Connected :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Connected` can be set to `True` to activate the connection, or to `False` to close the connection.

31.5.14 TMSSQLConnection.Role

Synopsis: Role for user.

Declaration: `Property Role :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Role` is redeclared from `TSQLConnection.Role` (780)

31.5.15 TMSSQLConnection.DatabaseName

Declaration: Property DatabaseName :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: TMSSQLConnection specific: the master database should always exist on a server.

31.5.16 TMSSQLConnection.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Keep connection alive.

Declaration: Property KeepConnection :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: KeepConnection is redeclared from TSQLConnection.KeepConnection ([780](#))

See also: TSQLConnection.KeepConnection ([780](#))

31.5.17 TMSSQLConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Show login prompt.

Declaration: Property LoginPrompt :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: LoginPrompt is redeclared from TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt ([780](#))

See also: TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt ([780](#))

31.5.18 TMSSQLConnection.Params

Declaration: Property Params :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: TMSSQLConnection specific:

set "AutoCommit=true" if you don't want to explicitly commit/rollback transactions

set "TextSize=16777216" - to set maximum size of blob/text/image data returned. Otherwise, these large fields may be cut off when retrieving/setting data.

31.5.19 TMSSQLConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Called when logging in.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `OnLogin` is redeclared from `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` (780)

See also: `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` (780)

31.6 TMSSQLConnectionDef

31.6.1 Description

Describes the MS SQL connection properties for `TSQLConnector` (780)

See also: `TMSSQLConnection` (781), `TSQLConnector` (780)

31.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
786	<code>ConnectionClass</code>	Connection class to use.
787	<code>DefaultLibraryName</code>	Default name of the MSSQL client library.
787	<code>Description</code>	Short description of connection.
787	<code>LoadedLibraryName</code>	Actually loaded library name.
787	<code>LoadFunction</code>	Return Function to call when loading MS-SQL support.
786	<code>TypeName</code>	Connection type name.
787	<code>UnLoadFunction</code>	Return Function to call when unloading MS-SQL support.

31.6.3 TMSSQLConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Connection type name.

Declaration: `class function TypeName : string; Override`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `TypeName` returns the unique name of the MS-SQL connection.

31.6.4 TMSSQLConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Connection class to use.

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass; Override`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ConnectionClass` returns `TMSSQLConnection` (781)

See also: `TMSSQLConnection` (781)

31.6.5 TMSSQLConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: Short description of connection.

Declaration: `class function Description : string; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `Description` describes the MS SQL connector type.

31.6.6 TMSSQLConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Synopsis: Default name of the MSSQL client library.

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName : string; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultLibraryName` returns the library name to use when loading the MSSQL client library.

31.6.7 TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Synopsis: Return Function to call when loading MS-SQL support.

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction : TLibraryLoadFunction; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadFunction` is used by the connector logic to get the function to dynamically load MS-SQL support.

31.6.8 TMSSQLConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Synopsis: Return Function to call when unloading MS-SQL support.

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction : TLibraryUnLoadFunction; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnLoadFunction` is used by the connector logic to get the function to unload MS-SQL support.

31.6.9 TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Synopsis: Actually loaded library name.

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName : string; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadedLibraryName` returns the actually loaded library name.

See also: `DefaultLibraryName` ([787](#))

31.7 TSybaseConnection

31.7.1 Description

Connector to Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise (ASE) database servers.

Requirements:

FreeTDS (dblib.dll)

Older FreeTDS libraries may require freetds.conf: (<http://www.freetds.org/userguide/freetdsconf.htm>)

[global]

tds version = 7.1

client charset = UTF-8

port = 5000 (optional)

dump file = freetds.log (optional)

text size = 2147483647 (optional)

31.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
788	Create	Create a Sybase database connection.

31.7.3 TSybaseConnection.Create

Synopsis: Create a Sybase database connection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the default constructor for the `TSybaseConnection` class. It calls the inherited constructor and sets some defaults.

31.8 TSybaseConnectionDef

31.8.1 Description

Describes the MS SQL connection properties for `TSQLConnector` ([780](#))

See also: `TSybaseConnection` ([788](#)), `TSQLConnector` ([780](#))

31.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
789	ConnectionClass	Connection class to use.
789	Description	Short description of connection.
788	TypeName	Connection type name.

31.8.3 TSybaseConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Connection type name.

Declaration: `class function TypeName : string; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeName` returns the unique name of the Sybase connection.

31.8.4 TSybaseConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Connection class to use.

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConnectionClass` returns `TSybaseConnection` ([788](#))

See also: `TSybaseConnection` ([788](#))

31.8.5 TSybaseConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: Short description of connection.

Declaration: `class function Description : string; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `Description` describes the Sybase connector type.

Chapter 32

Reference for unit 'nullstream'

32.1 Used units

Table 32.1: Used units by unit 'nullstream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

32.2 Overview

The `nullstream` unit implements `TNullStream` (790), a stream which acts more or less as the `/dev/null` device on unix: all read and write operations will succeed, but the data is discarded on write, or null bytes are read.

32.3 `ENullStreamError`

32.3.1 Description

`ENullStreamError` is the exception raised when `TNullStream.Seek` (791) results in an invalid position.

See also: `TNullStream.Seek` (791)

32.4 `TNullStream`

32.4.1 Description

`TNullStream` discards any data written to it (but keeps a virtual size) and returns 0 bytes when read from. It emulates a `#rtl.classes.TMemoryStream` (??): When writing to the stream, the size is increased as needed. When reading, the maximum number of returned bytes is limited to the size of the stream.

See also: `TNullStream.Read` (791), `TNullStream.Write` (791), `#rtl.classes.TStream.Size` (??)

32.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
792	Create	Create a new instance.
791	Read	Read null bytes from the stream.
791	Seek	Set current position in the stream.
791	Write	Write to stream.

32.4.3 TNullStream.Read

Synopsis: Read null bytes from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads `Count` null bytes from the stream. `Count` can be at most `Size`. The `Buffer` will be filled with null bytes, effectively zeroing out the memory. The size can be increased using `Write` or by explicitly setting `Size`.

See also: `TNullStream.Write` ([791](#)), `#rtl.classes.TStream.Size` (??)

32.4.4 TNullStream.Write

Synopsis: Write to stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` simulates a write operation: no data is actually written from `Buffer`, but the size of the stream is enlarged if the amount of bytes `Count` and current position in the stream make this necessary.

See also: `TNullStream.Read` ([791](#)), `#rtl.classes.TStream.Size` (??)

32.4.5 TNullStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set current position in the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the current position in the stream. It simulates this operation by keeping a "virtual" position. See `#rtl.classes.TStream.Seek` (??) for more info about the arguments.

Errors: If the requested operation would cause the position to fall outside of the allowed range (0 to `Size`) then a `ENullStreamError` ([790](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TNullStream.Read` ([791](#)), `TNullStream.Write` ([791](#)), `#rtl.classes.TStream.Seek` (??)

32.4.6 TNullStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes the size and position of the stream to zero.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TStream.Position (??)`, `#rtl.classes.TStream.Size (??)`

Chapter 33

Reference for unit 'Pipes'

33.1 Used units

Table 33.1: Used units by unit 'Pipes'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

33.2 Overview

The Pipes unit implements streams that are wrappers around the OS's pipe functionality. It creates a pair of streams, and what is written to one stream can be read from another.

33.3 Constants, types and variables

33.3.1 Constants

`ENoSeekMsg = 'Cannot seek on pipes'`

Constant used in `EPipeSeek` ([794](#)) exception.

`EPipeMsg = 'Failed to create pipe.'`

Constant used in `EPipeCreation` ([794](#)) exception.

33.4 Procedures and functions

33.4.1 CreatePipeHandles

Synopsis: Function to create a set of pipe handles.

Declaration: `function CreatePipeHandles (var InHandle: THandle;
var OutHandle: THandle;
APipeBufferSize: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreatePipeHandles` provides an OS-independent way to create a set of pipe filehandles. These handles are inheritable to child processes. The reading end of the pipe is returned in `InHandle`, the writing end in `OutHandle`.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `CreatePipeStreams` (794)

33.4.2 CreatePipeStreams

Synopsis: Create a pair of pipe stream.

Declaration: `procedure CreatePipeStreams (var InPipe: TInputPipeStream;
var OutPipe: TOutputPipeStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreatePipeStreams` creates a set of pipe file descriptors with `CreatePipeHandles` (793), and if that call is successful, a pair of streams is created: `InPipe` and `OutPipe`.

On some systems (notably: windows) the size of the buffer to be used for communication between 2 ends of the buffer can be specified in the `APipeBufferSize` (793) parameter. This parameter is ignored on systems that do not support setting the buffer size.

Errors: If no pipe handles could be created, an `EPipeCreation` (794) exception is raised.

See also: `CreatePipeHandles` (793), `TInputPipeStream` (795), `TOutputPipeStream` (797)

33.5 EPipeCreation

33.5.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurred during the creation of a pipe pair.

33.6 EPipeError

33.6.1 Description

Exception raised when an invalid operation is performed on a pipe stream.

33.7 EPipeSeek

33.7.1 Description

Exception raised when an invalid seek operation is attempted on a pipe.

33.8 TInputPipeStream

33.8.1 Description

`TInputPipeStream` is created by the `CreatePipeStreams` (794) call to represent the reading end of a pipe. It is a `TStream` (??) descendent which does not allow writing, and which mimics the seek operation.

See also: `TStream` (??), `CreatePipeStreams` (794), `TOutputPipeStream` (797)

33.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
795	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy this instance of the input pipe stream.
796	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream to a buffer.
796	<code>Seek</code>	Set the current position of the stream.
795	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the stream.

33.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
796	<code>NumBytesAvailable</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of bytes available for reading.

33.8.4 TInputPipeStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy this instance of the input pipe stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` overrides the destructor to close the pipe handle, prior to calling the inherited destructor.

See also: `TInputPipeStream.Create` (795)

33.8.5 TInputPipeStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` overrides the parent implementation of `Write`. On a `TInputPipeStream` will always raise an exception, as the pipe is read-only.

Errors: An `EStreamError` (??) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: `Read` (796), `Seek` (796)

33.8.6 TInputPipeStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the current position of the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. Normally, pipe streams `stderr` are not seekable. The `TInputPipeStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginningIf `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Origin=soFromCurrentIf `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

All other cases will result in a `EPipeSeek` exception.

Errors: An `EPipeSeek` (794) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `EPipeSeek` (794), `Seek` (??)

33.8.7 TInputPipeStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream to a buffer.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` calls the inherited read and adjusts the internal position pointer of the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `Write` (795), `Seek` (796)

33.8.8 TInputPipeStream.NumBytesAvailable

Synopsis: Number of bytes available for reading.

Declaration: `Property NumBytesAvailable : DWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `NumBytesAvailable` is the number of bytes available for reading. This is the number of bytes in the OS buffer for the pipe. It is not a number of bytes in an internal buffer.

If this number is nonzero, then reading `NumBytesAvailable` bytes from the stream will not block the process. Reading more than `NumBytesAvailable` bytes will block the process, while it waits for the requested number of bytes to become available.

See also: `TInputPipeStream.Read` (796)

33.9 TOutputPipeStream

33.9.1 Description

TOutputPipeStream is created by the CreatePipeStreams (794) call to represent the writing end of a pipe. It is a TStream (??) descendent which does not allow reading.

See also: TStream (??), CreatePipeStreams (794), TInputPipeStream (795)

33.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
797	Destroy	Destroy this instance of the output pipe stream.
797	Read	Read data from the stream.
797	Seek	Sets the position in the stream.

33.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
798	DontClose	rw	

33.9.4 TOutputPipeStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy this instance of the output pipe stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy overrides the destructor to close the pipe handle, prior to calling the inherited destructor.

See also: THandleStream.Create (??)

33.9.5 TOutputPipeStream.Seek

Synopsis: Sets the position in the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Seek is overridden in TOutputPipeStream. Calling this method will always raise an exception: an output pipe is not seekable.

Errors: An EPipeSeek (794) exception is raised if this method is called.

33.9.6 TOutputPipeStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read overrides the parent Read implementation. It always raises an exception, because a output pipe is write-only.

Errors: An EStreamError (??) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: Seek ([797](#))

33.9.7 TOutputPipeStream.DontClose

Declaration: Property DontClose : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Chapter 34

Reference for unit 'pooledmm'

34.1 Used units

Table 34.1: Used units by unit 'pooledmm'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

34.2 Overview

`pooledmm` is a memory manager class which uses pools of blocks. Since it is a higher-level implementation of a memory manager which works on top of the FPC memory manager, It also offers more debugging and analysis tools. It is used mainly in the LCL and Lazarus IDE.

34.3 Constants, types and variables

34.3.1 Types

`PPooledMemManagerItem` = `^TPooledMemManagerItem`

`PPooledMemManagerItem` is a pointer type, pointing to a `TPooledMemManagerItem` (800) item, used in a linked list.

`TEnumItemsMethod` = `procedure(Item: Pointer) of object`

`TEnumItemsMethod` is a prototype for the callback used in the `TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems` (801) call. The parameter `Item` will be set to each of the pointers in the item list of `TNonFreePooledMemManager` (800).

34.4 TPooledMemManagerItem

`TPooledMemManagerItem` = `record`


```

    Next : PPooledMemManagerItem;
end

```

`TPooledMemManagerItem` is used internally by the `TPooledMemManager` (802) class to maintain the free list block. It simply points to the next free block.

34.5 TNonFreePooledMemManager

34.5.1 Description

`TNonFreePooledMemManager` keeps a list of fixed-size memory blocks in memory. Each block has the same size, making it suitable for storing a lot of records of the same type. It does not free the items stored in it, except when the list is cleared as a whole.

It allocates memory for the blocks in an exponential way, i.e. each time a new block of memory must be allocated, its size is the double of the last block. The first block will contain 8 items.

34.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
800	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the memory.
800	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of <code>TNonFreePooledMemManager</code> .
801	<code>Destroy</code>	Removes the <code>TNonFreePooledMemManager</code> instance from memory.
801	<code>EnumerateItems</code>	Enumerate all items in the list.
801	<code>NewItem</code>	Return a pointer to a new memory block.

34.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
801	<code>ItemSize</code>	<code>r</code>	Size of an item in the list.

34.5.4 TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the memory.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears all blocks from memory, freeing the allocated memory blocks. None of the pointers returned by `NewItem` (801) is valid after a call to `Clear`

See also: `NewItem` (801)

34.5.5 TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of `TNonFreePooledMemManager`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(TheItemSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TNonFreePooledMemManager` and sets the item size to `TheItemSize`.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize` ([801](#))

34.5.6 `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Destroy`

Synopsis: Removes the `TNonFreePooledMemManager` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the list, clears the internal structures, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`. `Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create` ([800](#)), `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear` ([800](#))

34.5.7 `TNonFreePooledMemManager.NewItem`

Synopsis: Return a pointer to a new memory block.

Declaration: `function NewItem : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewItem` returns a pointer to an unused memory block of size `ItemSize` ([801](#)). It will allocate new memory on the heap if necessary.

Note that there is no way to mark the memory block as free, except by clearing the whole list.

Errors: If no more memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear` ([800](#))

34.5.8 `TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems`

Synopsis: Enumerate all items in the list.

Declaration: `procedure EnumerateItems(const Method: TEnumItemsMethod)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EnumerateItems` will enumerate over all items in the list, passing the items to `Method`. This can be used to execute certain operations on all items in the list. (for example, simply list them)

34.5.9 `TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize`

Synopsis: Size of an item in the list.

Declaration: `Property ItemSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ItemSize` is the size of a single block in the list. It's a fixed size determined when the list is created.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create` ([800](#))

34.6 TPooledMemManager

34.6.1 Description

`TPooledMemManager` is a class which maintains a linked list of blocks, represented by the `TPooledMemManagerItem` (800) record. It should not be used directly, but should be descended from and the descendent should implement the actual memory manager.

See also: `TPooledMemManagerItem` (800)

34.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
802	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the list.
802	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of the <code>TPooledMemManager</code> class.
803	<code>Destroy</code>	Removes an instance of <code>TPooledMemManager</code> class from memory.

34.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
804	<code>AllocatedCount</code>	r	Total number of allocated items in the list.
803	<code>Count</code>	r	Number of items in the list.
804	<code>FreeCount</code>	r	Number of free items in the list.
804	<code>FreedCount</code>	r	Total number of freed items in the list.
803	<code>MaximumFreeCountRatio</code>	rw	Maximum ratio of free items over total items.
803	<code>MinimumFreeCount</code>	rw	Minimum count of free items in the list.

34.6.4 TPooledMemManager.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the list, it disposes all items in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` (804)

34.6.5 TPooledMemManager.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TPooledMemManager` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes all necessary properties and then calls the inherited `create`.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Destroy` (803)

34.6.6 TPooledMemManager.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of `TPooledMemManager` class from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `Clear` (802) and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

`Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Create` (802)

34.6.7 TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount

Synopsis: Minimum count of free items in the list.

Declaration: `Property MinimumFreeCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `MinimumFreeCount` is the minimum number of free items in the linked list. When disposing an item in the list, the number of items is checked, and only if the required number of free items is present, the item is actually freed.

The default value is 100000

See also: `TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio` (803)

34.6.8 TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio

Synopsis: Maximum ratio of free items over total items.

Declaration: `Property MaximumFreeCountRatio : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `MaximumFreeCountRatio` is the maximum ratio (divided by 8) of free elements over the total amount of elements: When disposing an item in the list, if the number of free items is higher than this ratio, the item is freed.

The default value is 8.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount` (803)

34.6.9 TPooledMemManager.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the total number of items allocated from the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` (804), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` (804), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` (804)

34.6.10 TPooledMemManager.FreeCount

Synopsis: Number of free items in the list.

Declaration: `Property FreeCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FreeCount` is the current total number of free items in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` (803), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` (804), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` (804)

34.6.11 TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount

Synopsis: Total number of allocated items in the list.

Declaration: `Property AllocatedCount : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `AllocatedCount` is the total number of newly allocated items on the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` (803), `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` (804), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` (804)

34.6.12 TPooledMemManager.FreedCount

Synopsis: Total number of freed items in the list.

Declaration: `Property FreedCount : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FreedCount` is the total number of elements actually freed in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` (803), `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` (804), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` (804)

Chapter 35

Reference for unit 'process'

35.1 Used units

Table 35.1: Used units by unit 'process'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Math	??
Pipes	793
System	??
sysutils	??

35.2 Overview

The `Process` unit contains the code for the `TProcess` ([819](#)) component, a cross-platform component to start and control other programs, offering also access to standard input and output for these programs.

`TProcess` does not handle wildcard expansion, does not support complex pipelines as in Unix. If this behaviour is desired, the shell can be executed with the pipeline as the command it should execute.

35.3 Constants, types and variables

35.3.1 Types

```
TOnRunCommandEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Context: TObject;  
    Status: TRunCommandEventCode;  
    const Message: string) of object
```

`TOnRunCommandEvent` is the event handler prototype for the various events emitted by the `TProcess` ([819](#)) class during the `RunCommandLoop` ([824](#)) call.

```
TprocessChar = type char
```

TProcessChar is a single-byte character in the single-byte version of TProcess, but is a 2-byte character in the unicode version of TProcess.

```
TProcessClass = type class(TComponent)
private
  FOnRunCommandEvent
    : TOnRunCommandEvent;
  FProcessOptions : TProcessOptions;
  FRunCommandSleepTime
    : Integer;
  FStartupOptions : TStartupOptions;
  FFillAttribute
    : Cardinal;
  FApplicationName : TProcessString;
  FConsoleTitle
    : TProcessString;
  FCommandLine : TProcessString;
  FCurrentDirectory
    : TProcessString;
  FDesktop : string = type string;
  FEnvironment
    : TProcessStrings;
  FExecutable : TProcessString;
  FParameters
    : TProcessStrings;
  FShowWindow : TShowWindowOptions;
  FInheritHandles
    : Boolean;
  FForkEvent : TProcessForkEvent;
  FProcessPriority
    : TProcessPriority;
  dwXCountchars : Cardinal;
  dwXSize : Cardinal
  ;
  dwYsize : Cardinal;
  dwx : Cardinal;
  dwYcountChars : Cardinal
  ;
  dwy : Cardinal;
  FXTermProgram : string = type string;
  FPipeBufferSize
    : Cardinal;
  procedure FreeStreams;
  function GetExitStatus : Integer
  ;
  function GetExitCode : Integer;
  function GetRunning : Boolean
  ;
  function GetWindowRect : TRect;
  procedure SetCommandLine(const
    AValue: TProcessString);
  procedure SetParameters(const AValue:
    TProcessStrings);
  procedure SetWindowRect(Value: TRect);
```

```

procedure
  SetShowWindow(Value: TShowWindowOptions);
procedure SetWindowColumns
  (Value: Cardinal);
procedure SetWindowHeight(Value: Cardinal);
procedure SetWindowLeft(Value: Cardinal);
procedure SetWindowRows
  (Value: Cardinal);
procedure SetWindowTop(Value: Cardinal);
procedure
  SetWindowWidth(Value: Cardinal);
procedure SetApplicationName(const
  Value: TProcessString);
procedure SetProcessOptions(const Value
  : TProcessOptions);
procedure SetActive(const Value: Boolean);
procedure SetEnvironment(const Value: TProcessStrings);
procedure
  ConvertCommandLine;
function PeekExitStatus : Boolean;
procedure
  IntOnIdleSleep(Sender: TObject; Context: TObject;
  Status: TRunCommandEventCode;
  const Message: string);
protected
  FRunning : Boolean;
  FExitCode
    : Cardinal;
  FInputStream : TOutputPipeStream;
  FOutputStream
    : TInputPipeStream;
  FStderrStream : TInputPipeStream;
  FProcessID
    : Integer;
  FThreadID : Integer;
  FProcessHandle : THandle;
  FThreadHandle
    : THandle;
  procedure CloseProcessHandles; Virtual;
  procedure
    CreateStreams(InHandle: LongInt; OutHandle: LongInt;
    ErrHandle: LongInt); Virtual;
  procedure FreeStream
    (var AStream: THandleStream);
  procedure Loaded; Override;
public
  constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override;
  destructor
    Destroy; Override;
  procedure Execute; Virtual;
  procedure CloseInput
    ; Virtual;
  procedure CloseOutput; Virtual;
  procedure CloseStderr

```



```

; Virtual;
function Resume : Integer; Virtual;
function Suspend
: Integer; Virtual;
function Terminate(AExitCode: Integer) : Boolean
; Virtual;
WaitOnExit;
ReadInputStream;
function RunCommandLoop
(out outputstring: string;
                                out stderrstring
: string;
                                out anexitstatus: Integer) : Integer
; Virtual;
property WindowRect : Trect;
property Handle : THandle
;
property ProcessHandle : THandle;
property ThreadHandle : THandle
;
property ProcessID : Integer;
property ThreadID : Integer;
property Input : TOutputPipeStream;
property Output : TInputPipeStream
;
property Stderr : TInputPipeStream;
property ExitStatus : Integer
;
property ExitCode : Integer;
property InheritHandles : Boolean
;
property OnRunCommandEvent : TOnRunCommandEvent;
property RunCommandSleepTime
: Integer;
property OnForkEvent : TProcessForkEvent;
published
property PipeBufferSize : Cardinal;
property Active : Boolean
;
property ApplicationName : TProcessString; deprecated;;
property
CommandLine : TProcessString; deprecated;;
property Executable
: TProcessString;
property Parameters : TProcessStrings;
property
ConsoleTitle : TProcessString;
property CurrentDirectory : TProcessString
;
property Desktop : string;
property Environment : TProcessStrings
;
property Options : TProcessOptions;
property Priority : TProcessPriority

```

```

;
property StartupOptions : TStartupOptions;
property Running
: Boolean;
property ShowWindow : TShowWindowOptions;
property
WindowColumns : Cardinal;
property WindowHeight : Cardinal;
property
WindowLeft : Cardinal;
property WindowRows : Cardinal;
property
WindowTop : Cardinal;
property WindowWidth : Cardinal;
property
FillAttribute : Cardinal;
property XTermProgram : string;
end

```

Class of TProcess.

TProcessForkEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject) of object

TProcessForkEvent is the prototype for TProcess.OnForkEvent (829). It is a simple procedure, as the idea is that only process-global things should be performed in this event handler.

```

TProcessOption = (poRunSuspended, poWaitOnExit, poUsePipes,
poStderrToOutPut, poNoConsole, poNewConsole,
poDefaultErrorMode, poNewProcessGroup, poDebugProcess,
poDebugOnlyThisProcess, poDetached, poPassInput,
poRunIdle)

```

Table 35.2: Enumeration values for type TProcessOption

Value	Explanation
poDebugOnlyThisProcess	Do not follow processes started by this process (Win32 only).
poDebugProcess	Allow debugging of the process (Win32 only).
poDefaultErrorMode	Use default error handling.
poDetached	Runs a process using the DETACHED_PROCESS creation flag on Windows.
poNewConsole	Start a new console window for the process (Win32 only).
poNewProcessGroup	Start the process in a new process group (Win32 only).
poNoConsole	Do not allow access to the console window for the process (Win32 only).
poPassInput	Pass standard input handle on to new process.
poRunIdle	Signals an event handler to wait for output in the run loop for a process.
poRunSuspended	Start the process in suspended state.
poStderrToOutPut	Redirect standard error to the standard output stream.
poUsePipes	Use pipes to redirect standard input and output.
poWaitOnExit	Wait for the process to terminate before returning.

When a new process is started using TProcess.Execute (821), these options control the way the process is started. Note that not all options are supported on all platforms.

```

TProcessOptions = Set of TProcessOption = (poDebugOnlyThisProcess
, poDebugProcess,
, poDefaultErrorMode, poDetached, poNewConsole
, poNewProcessGroup, poNoConsole, poPassInput, poRunIdle
, poRunSuspended, poStderrToOutPut, poUsePipes,
poWaitOnExit)

```

Set of TProcessOption (809).

```

TProcessPriority = (ppHigh, ppIdle, ppNormal, ppRealTime, ppBelowNormal
, ppAboveNormal)

```

Table 35.3: Enumeration values for type TProcessPriority

Value	Explanation
ppAboveNormal	Above normal priority.
ppBelowNormal	Below normal priority.
ppHigh	The process runs at higher than normal priority.
ppIdle	The process only runs when the system is idle (i.e. has nothing else to do).
ppNormal	The process runs at normal priority.
ppRealTime	The process runs at real-time priority.

This enumerated type determines the priority of the newly started process. It translates to default platform specific constants. If finer control is needed, then platform-dependent mechanism need to be used to set the priority.

```
TProcessString = type String
```

TProcessString is a single-byte string in the single-byte version of TProcess, but is a 2-byte (unicode) string in the unicode version of TProcess.

```

TProcessStringList = type class(TStrings)
  FList = ;
  FCount = ;
  FCapacity = ;
  FOnChange = ;
  FOnChanging = ;
  FDuplicates = ;
  FCaseSensitive = ;
  FForceSort = ;
  FOwnsObjects = ;
  FSortStyle = ;
  procedure ExchangeItemsInt;
  procedure GetSorted;
  procedure

```

```

Grow;
procedure InternalClear;
procedure QuickSort;
procedure
SetSorted;
procedure SetCaseSensitive;
procedure SetSortStyle
;
procedure CheckIndex;
procedure ExchangeItems;
procedure Changed
;
procedure Changing;
procedure Get;
procedure GetCapacity;
procedure GetCount;
procedure GetObject;
procedure Put;
procedure
PutObject;
procedure SetCapacity;
procedure SetUpdateState;
procedure InsertItem;
procedure DoCompareText;
procedure Create
;
procedure Destroy;
procedure Add;
procedure Clear;
procedure
Delete;
procedure Exchange;
procedure Find;
procedure IndexOf
;
procedure Insert;
procedure Sort;
procedure CustomSort;
property Duplicates : ;
property Sorted : ;
property CaseSensitive
: ;
property OnChange : ;
property OnChanging : ;
property
OwnsObjects : ;
property SortStyle : ;
end

```

TProcessStringList is an alias for TProcessStrings (815) in unicode code, or an alias for the TStringList (??) class in single-byte string mode.

```

TProcessStrings = type class(TPersistent)
  FDefaultEncoding = ;

```

```

FEncoding = ;
FMissingNameValueSeparatorAction = ;
FSpecialCharsInited
= ;
FAlwaysQuote = ;
FQuoteChar = ;
FDelimiter = ;
FNameValueSeparator
= ;
FUpdateCount = ;
FAdapter = ;
FLBS = ;
FOptions = ;
FLineBreak = ;
procedure GetCommaText;
procedure GetLineBreakCharLBS
;
procedure GetMissingNameValueSeparatorAction;
procedure GetName
;
procedure GetStrictDelimiter;
procedure GetTrailingLineBreak
;
procedure GetUseLocale;
procedure GetValue;
procedure GetWriteBOM
;
procedure GetLBS;
procedure SetDefaultEncoding;
procedure
SetEncoding;
procedure SetLBS;
procedure ReadData;
procedure
SetCommaText;
procedure SetMissingNameValueSeparatorAction;
procedure
SetStringsAdapter;
procedure SetStrictDelimiter;
procedure SetTrailingLineBreak
;
procedure SetUseLocale;
procedure SetWriteBOM;
procedure SetValue
;
procedure SetDelimiter;
procedure SetQuoteChar;
procedure
SetNameValueSeparator;
procedure WriteData;
procedure DoSetTextStr
;
procedure GetDelimiter;
procedure GetNameValueSeparator;

```

```
procedure
  GetQuoteChar;
procedure GetLineBreak;
procedure SetLineBreak
;
procedure GetSkipLastLineBreak;
procedure SetSkipLastLineBreak
;
procedure DoSetDelimitedText;
procedure CompareStrings;
procedure
  DefineProperties;
procedure Error;
procedure Get;
procedure
  GetCapacity;
procedure GetCount;
procedure GetObject;
procedure
  GetTextStr;
procedure Put;
procedure PutObject;
procedure SetCapacity
;
procedure SetTextStr;
procedure SetUpdateState;
property UpdateCount
: ;
procedure DoCompareText;
procedure GetDelimitedText;
procedure
  SetDelimitedText;
procedure GetValueFromIndex;
procedure SetValueFromIndex
;
procedure CheckSpecialChars;
procedure GetNextLine;
procedure
  GetNextLinebreak;
procedure Create;
procedure Destroy;
procedure
  ToObjectArray;
procedure ToStringArray;
procedure Add;
procedure
  AddObject;
procedure AddPair;
procedure AddStrings;
procedure
  SetStrings;
procedure AddText;
procedure AddCommaText;
procedure
```

```
AddDelimitedtext;
procedure Append;
procedure Assign;
procedure
BeginUpdate;
procedure Clear;
procedure Delete;
procedure EndUpdate
;
procedure Equals;
procedure Exchange;
procedure ExtractName
;
procedure Filter;
procedure Fill;
procedure ForEach;
procedure
GetEnumerator;
procedure GetNameValue;
procedure GetText;
procedure
IndexOf;
procedure IndexOfName;
procedure IndexOfObject;
procedure
Insert;
procedure InsertObject;
procedure LastIndexOf;
procedure
LoadFromFile;
procedure LoadFromStream;
procedure Map;
procedure
Move;
procedure Pop;
procedure Reduce;
procedure Reverse;
procedure SaveToFile;
procedure SaveToStream;
procedure Shift
;
procedure Slice;
procedure SetText;
property AlwaysQuote
: ;
property Capacity : ;
property CommaText : ;
property Count
: ;
property DefaultEncoding : ;
property DelimitedText : ;
property Delimiter : ;
property Encoding : ;
property LineBreak
```

```

: ;
property MissingNameValueSeparatorAction : ;
property Names
: ;
property NameValueSeparator : ;
property Objects : ;
property
Options : ;
property QuoteChar : ;
property SkipLastLineBreak
: ;
property TrailingLineBreak : ;
property StrictDelimiter
: ;
property Strings : ;
property StringsAdapter : ;
property
Text : ;
property TextLineBreakStyle : ;
property UseLocale
: ;
property ValueFromIndex : ;
property Values : ;
property
WriteBOM : ;
end

```

TProcessStrings is a simple string list class which, depending on the version (unicode or not) contains unicode strings or single-byte strings: in the latter case it is an alias for the #rtl.classes.TStrings (??) class.

```

TRunCommandEventCode = (RunCommandIdle, RunCommandReadOutputString
,
RunCommandReadOutputStream, RunCommandFinished
,
RunCommandException)

```

Table 35.4: Enumeration values for type TRunCommandEventCode

Value	Explanation
RunCommandException	An error happened during reading of the command.
RunCommandFinished	The command finished.
RunCommandIdle	No data was available for reading.
RunCommandReadOutputStream	Output from the command was read.
RunCommandReadOutputString	Output from the command was read as a string.

TRunCommandEventCode is an enumerated type indicating the stage at which a process is during the RunCommandLoop (824) call, reported through the TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent (828) event handler.

```

TRunCommandEventCodeSet = Set of TRunCommandEventCode = (RunCommandException

```



```
, RunCommandFinished,
                                RunCommandIdle, RunCommandReadOutputStream
,
                                RunCommandReadOutputString)
```

TRunCommandEventCodeSet is a set of TRunCommandEventCode (815) values.

```
TShowWindowOptions = (swoNone, swoHIDE, swoMaximize, swoMinimize,
                        swoRestore, swoShow, swoShowDefault,
                        swoShowMaximized, swoShowMinimized,
                        swoshowMinNOActive, swoShowNA, swoShowNoActivate,
                        swoShowNormal)
```

Table 35.5: Enumeration values for type TShowWindowOptions

Value	Explanation
swoHIDE	The main window is hidden.
swoMaximize	The main window is maximized.
swoMinimize	The main window is minimized.
swoNone	Allow system to position the window.
swoRestore	Restore the previous position.
swoShow	Show the main window.
swoShowDefault	When showing Show the main window on.
swoShowMaximized	The main window is shown maximized.
swoShowMinimized	The main window is shown minimized.
swoshowMinNOActive	The main window is shown minimized but not activated.
swoShowNA	The main window is shown but not activated.
swoShowNoActivate	The main window is shown but not activated.
swoShowNormal	The main window is shown normally.

This type describes what the new process' main window should look like. Most of these have only effect on Windows. They are ignored on other systems.

```
TStartupOption = (suoUseShowWindow, suoUseSize, suoUsePosition,
                  suoUseCountChars, suoUseFillAttribute)
```

Table 35.6: Enumeration values for type TStartupOption

Value	Explanation
suoUseCountChars	Use the console character width as specified in TProcess (819).
suoUseFillAttribute	Use the console fill attribute as specified in TProcess (819).
suoUsePosition	Use the window sizes as specified in TProcess (819).
suoUseShowWindow	Use the Show Window options specified in TShowWindowOption (816).
suoUseSize	Use the window sizes as specified in TProcess (819).

These options are mainly for Win32, and determine what should be done with the application once it's started.

```
TStartupOptions = Set of TStartupOption = (suoUseCountChars,suoUseFillAttribute
    ,suoUsePosition,
        suoUseShowWindow,suoUseSize)
```

Set of TStartupOption (816).

35.3.2 Variables

```
DefaultTProcess : TProcessClass = TProcess
```

DefaultTProcess is the process class used by the RunCommand (818) and RunCommandInDir (818) calls. You can set it to customize the process class to use during these calls. By default the TProcess class is used.

```
TryTerminals : = Array of string
```

TryTerminals is used under UNIX to test for available terminal programs in the DetectXTerm (817) function. If XTermProgram (817) is empty, each item in this list will be searched in the path, and used as a terminal program if it was found.

```
XTermProgram : string = type string
```

XTermProgram is the terminal program that is used. If empty, it will be set the first time DetectXTerm (817) is called.

35.4 Procedures and functions

35.4.1 CommandToList

Synopsis: Convert a command-line to a list of command options.

Declaration: `procedure CommandToList(S: TProcessString; List: TProcessStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: CommandToList splits the string S in command-line arguments that are returned, one per item, in the List stringlist. Command-line arguments are separated by whitespace (space, tab, CR and LF characters). If an argument needs to contain a space character, it can be surrounded in quote characters (single or double quotes).

Errors: There is currently no way to specify a quote character inside a quoted argument.

See also: TProcess.CommandLine (830)

35.4.2 DetectXTerm

Synopsis: Detect the terminal program.

Declaration: `function DetectXTerm : string`

Visibility: default

Description: DetectXTerm checks if XTermProgram (817) is set. if so, it returns that. If XTermProgram is empty, the list specified in TryTerminals (817) is tested for existence. If none is found, then the DESKTOP_SESSION environment variable is examined:

kdekonsole is used if it is found.

gnome **gnome-terminal** is used if it is found

windowmaker **at** **term** or **xterm** are used if found.

If after all this, no terminal is found, then a list of default programs is tested: 'x-terminal-emulator', 'xterm', 'at', 'wterm', 'rxvt'

If a terminal program is found, then it is saved in `XTermProgram`, so the next call to `DetectXTerm` will re-use the value. If the search must be performed again, it is sufficient to set `XTermProgram` to the empty string.

See also: `XTermProgram` (817), `TryTerminals` (817), `TProcess.XTermProgram` (837)

35.4.3 RunCommand

Synopsis: Execute a command in the current working directory.

Declaration:

```
function RunCommand(const exename: TProcessString;
                    const commands: Array of String;
                    out outputstring: string; Options: TProcessOptions;
                    SWOptions: TShowWindowOptions) : Boolean
function RunCommand(const cmdline: TProcessString;
                    out outputstring: string) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RunCommand` runs `RunCommandInDir` (818) with an empty current working directory.

The version using `CmdLine` attempts to split the command line in a binary and separate command-line arguments. This version of the function is deprecated.

See also: `RunCommandInDir` (818)

35.4.4 RunCommandInDir

Synopsis: Run a command in a specific directory.

Declaration:

```
function RunCommandInDir(const curdir: TProcessString;
                        const exename: TProcessString;
                        const commands: Array of String;
                        out outputstring: string;
                        out exitstatus: Integer;
                        Options: TProcessOptions;
                        SWOptions: TShowWindowOptions) : Integer
function RunCommandInDir(const curdir: TProcessString;
                        const exename: TProcessString;
                        const commands: Array of String;
                        out outputstring: string;
                        Options: TProcessOptions;
                        SWOptions: TShowWindowOptions) : Boolean
function RunCommandInDir(const curdir: TProcessString;
                        const cmdline: TProcessString;
                        out outputstring: string) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RunCommandInDir` will execute binary `exename` with command-line options `commands`, setting `curdir` as the current working directory for the command. The Options (810) are taken into consideration (`poRunSuspended`, `poWaitOnExit` are removed from the set). The output of the command is captured, and returned in the string `OutputString`. The function waits for the command to finish, and returns `True` if the command was started successfully, `False` otherwise. In the case where the return value is an integer, it is zero for success, and -1 on error.

If a `ExitStatus` parameter is specified the exit status of the command is returned in this parameter.

The version using `cmdline` attempts to split the command line in a binary and separate command-line arguments. This version of the function is deprecated.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `TProcess` (819), `RunCommand` (818), `TProcessOptions` (810)

35.5 EProcess

35.5.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurs in a `TProcess` routine.

See also: `TProcess` (819)

35.6 TProcess

35.6.1 Description

`TProcess` is a component that can be used to start and control other processes (programs/binaries). It contains a lot of options that control how the process is started. Many of these are Win32 specific, and have no effect on other platforms, so they should be used with care.

The simplest way to use this component is to create an instance, set the `CommandLine` (830) property to the full pathname of the program that should be executed, and call `Execute` (821). To determine whether the process is still running (i.e. has not stopped executing), the `Running` (834) property can be checked.

More advanced techniques can be used with the Options (833) settings.

See also: `Create` (821), `Execute` (821), `Running` (834), `CommandLine` (830), Options (833)

35.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
822	<code>CloseInput</code>	Close the input stream of the process.
822	<code>CloseOutput</code>	Close the output stream of the process.
822	<code>CloseStderr</code>	Close the error stream of the process.
821	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TProcess</code> class.
821	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy this instance of <code>TProcess</code> .
821	<code>Execute</code>	Execute the program with the given options.
824	<code>ReadInputStream</code>	Read available data from input stream.
822	<code>Resume</code>	Resume execution of a suspended process.
824	<code>RunCommandLoop</code>	Execute command and collect output in strings.
823	<code>Suspend</code>	Suspend a running process.
823	<code>Terminate</code>	Terminate a running process.
823	<code>WaitOnExit</code>	Wait for the program to stop executing.

35.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
829	Active	rw	Start or stop the process.
829	ApplicationName	rw	Name of the application to start (deprecated).
830	CommandLine	rw	Command-line to execute (deprecated).
831	ConsoleTitle	rw	Title of the console window.
832	CurrentDirectory	rw	Working directory of the process.
832	Desktop	rw	Desktop on which to start the process.
832	Environment	rw	Environment variables for the new process.
830	Executable	rw	Executable name. Supersedes <code>CommandLine</code> and <code>ApplicationName</code> .
828	ExitCode	r	Exit code of the process.
827	ExitStatus	r	Exit status of the process.
837	FillAttribute	rw	Color attributes of the characters in the console window (Windows only).
825	Handle	r	Handle of the process.
828	InheritHandles	rw	Should the created process inherit the open handles of the current process.
826	Input	r	Stream connected to standard input of the process.
829	OnForkEvent	rw	Event triggered after fork occurred on Linux.
828	OnRunCommandEvent	rw	Event handler, called when <code>RunCommandLoop</code> is executing.
833	Options	rw	Options to be used when starting the process.
826	Output	r	Stream connected to standard output of the process.
831	Parameters	rw	Command-line arguments. Supersedes <code>CommandLine</code> .
829	PipeBufferSize	rw	Buffer size to be used when using pipes.
833	Priority	rw	Priority at which the process is running.
825	ProcessHandle	r	Alias for <code>Handle</code> (825).
825	ProcessID	r	ID of the process.
828	RunCommandSleepTime	rw	Sleep time between attempts to collect data.
834	Running	r	Determines whether the process is still running.
835	ShowWindow	rw	Determines how the process main window is shown (Windows only).
834	StartupOptions	rw	Additional (Windows) startup options.
827	Stderr	r	Stream connected to standard diagnostic output of the process.
825	ThreadHandle	r	Main process thread handle.
826	ThreadID	r	ID of the main process thread.
835	WindowColumns	rw	Number of columns in console window (windows only).
835	WindowHeight	rw	Height of the process main window.
836	WindowLeft	rw	X-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only).
824	WindowRect	rw	Positions for the main program window.
836	WindowRows	rw	Number of rows in console window (Windows only).
836	WindowTop	rw	Y-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only).
837	WindowWidth	rw	Height of the process main window (Windows only).
837	XTermProgram	rw	XTerm program to use (UNIX only).

35.6.4 TProcess.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TProcess` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TProcess` class. After calling the inherited constructor, it simply sets some default values.

35.6.5 TProcess.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy this instance of `TProcess`.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up this instance of `TProcess`. Prior to calling the inherited destructor, it cleans up any streams that may have been created. If a process was started and is still executed, it is *not* stopped, but the standard input/output/stderr streams are no longer available, because they have been destroyed.

Errors: None.

See also: `Create` ([821](#))

35.6.6 TProcess.Execute

Synopsis: Execute the program with the given options.

Declaration: `procedure Execute; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` actually executes the program as specified in `CommandLine` ([830](#)), applying as much as of the specified options as supported on the current platform.

If the `poWaitOnExit` option is specified in `Options` ([833](#)), then the call will only return when the program has finished executing (or if an error occurred). If this option is not given, the call returns immediately, but the `WaitOnExit` ([823](#)) call can be used to wait for it to close, or the `Running` ([834](#)) call can be used to check whether it is still running.

The `TProcess.Terminate` ([823](#)) call can be used to terminate the program if it is still running, or the `Suspend` ([823](#)) call can be used to temporarily stop the program's execution.

The `ExitStatus` ([827](#)) function can be used to check the program's exit status, after it has stopped executing.

Errors: On error a `EProcess` ([819](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TProcess.Running` ([834](#)), `TProcess.WaitOnExit` ([823](#)), `TProcess.Terminate` ([823](#)), `TProcess.Suspend` ([823](#)), `TProcess.Resume` ([822](#)), `TProcess.ExitStatus` ([827](#)), `TProcess.ExitCode` ([828](#))

35.6.7 TProcess.CloseInput

Synopsis: Close the input stream of the process.

Declaration: `procedure CloseInput; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseInput` closes the input file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard input of the process.

See also: [Input \(826\)](#), [StdErr \(827\)](#), [Output \(826\)](#), [CloseOutput \(822\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(822\)](#)

35.6.8 TProcess.CloseOutput

Synopsis: Close the output stream of the process.

Declaration: `procedure CloseOutput; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseOutput` closes the output file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard output of the process.

See also: [Output \(826\)](#), [Input \(826\)](#), [StdErr \(827\)](#), [CloseInput \(822\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(822\)](#)

35.6.9 TProcess.CloseStderr

Synopsis: Close the error stream of the process.

Declaration: `procedure CloseStderr; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseStdErr` closes the standard error file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard error output of the process.

See also: [Output \(826\)](#), [Input \(826\)](#), [StdErr \(827\)](#), [CloseInput \(822\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(822\)](#)

35.6.10 TProcess.Resume

Synopsis: Resume execution of a suspended process.

Declaration: `function Resume : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Resume` should be used to let a suspended process resume its execution. It should be called in particular when the `poRunSuspended` flag is set in [Options \(833\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [TProcess.Suspend \(823\)](#), [TProcess.Options \(833\)](#), [TProcess.Execute \(821\)](#), [TProcess.Terminate \(823\)](#)

35.6.11 TProcess.Suspend

Synopsis: Suspend a running process.

Declaration: `function Suspend : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Suspend` suspends a running process. If the call is successful, the process is suspended: it stops running, but can be made to execute again using the `Resume` (822) call.

`Suspend` is fundamentally different from `TProcess.Terminate` (823) which actually stops the process.

Errors: On error, a nonzero result is returned.

See also: `TProcess.Options` (833), `TProcess.Resume` (822), `TProcess.Terminate` (823), `TProcess.Execute` (821)

35.6.12 TProcess.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminate a running process.

Declaration: `function Terminate(AExitCode: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Terminate` stops the execution of the running program. It effectively stops the program.

On Windows, the program will report an exit code of `AExitCode`, on other systems, this value is ignored.

Errors: On error, a nonzero value is returned.

See also: `TProcess.ExitStatus` (827), `TProcess.Suspend` (823), `TProcess.Execute` (821), `TProcess.WaitOnExit` (823), `TProcess.ExitCode` (828)

35.6.13 TProcess.WaitOnExit

Synopsis: Wait for the program to stop executing.

Declaration: `function WaitOnExit : Boolean`
`function WaitOnExit(Timeout: DWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `WaitOnExit` waits for the running program to exit. It returns `True` if the wait was successful, or `False` if there was some error waiting for the program to exit.

Note that the return value of this function has changed. The old return value was a `DWord` with a platform dependent error code. To make things consistent and cross-platform, a boolean return type was used.

The `Timeout` argument can be used to specify a timeout in milliseconds. If omitted, the call will wait indefinitely.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned. No extended error information is available, as it is highly system dependent.

See also: `TProcess.ExitStatus` (827), `TProcess.Terminate` (823), `TProcess.Running` (834), `TProcess.ExitCode` (828)

35.6.14 TProcess.ReadInputStream

Synopsis: Read available data from input stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInputStream(p: TInputPipeStream; var BytesRead: Integer;
var DataLength: Integer; var Data: string;
MaxLoops: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`
`function ReadInputStream(p: TInputPipeStream; data: TStream;
MaxLoops: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInputStream` reads data from the given input pipe stream `p` after checking that data is available. It returns `True` if data was successfully read from the file handle. In the variant with a string `data`, the data is placed in the string `Data`, and `DataLength` is updated with the new length, `BytesRead` is updated with the amount of bytes read. `MaxLoop` determines how often an attempt at reading data is made.

In the variant with a stream, the available data is simply written to the stream.

Errors: None.

35.6.15 TProcess.RunCommandLoop

Synopsis: Execute command and collect output in strings.

Declaration: `function RunCommandLoop(out outputstring: string;
out stderrstring: string;
out anexitstatus: Integer) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `RunCommandLoop` executes the command, and runs a loop to read output of the command: the output of the command is returned in the `outputstring` parameter, and the error output is returned in the `stderrstring` string.

During collection of data or on error, the `TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent` (828) event handler is called during the various stages of the call. If it is not explicitly set, a sleep period specified by `TProcess.RunCommandSleepTime` (828) is interjected between the various read calls.

The return value of this call is 1 for error, zero for success.

See also: `TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent` (828), `TProcess.RunCommandSleepTime` (828)

35.6.16 TProcess.WindowRect

Synopsis: Positions for the main program window.

Declaration: `Property WindowRect : TRect`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowRect` can be used to specify the position of

35.6.17 TProcess.Handle

Synopsis: Handle of the process.

Declaration: `Property Handle : THandle`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Handle` identifies the process. In Unix systems, this is the process ID. On windows, this is the process handle. It can be used to signal the process.

The handle is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (821) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (825), `TProcess.ProcessID` (825), `TProcess.ThreadID` (826)

35.6.18 TProcess.ProcessHandle

Synopsis: Alias for `Handle` (825).

Declaration: `Property ProcessHandle : THandle`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ProcessHandle` equals `Handle` (825) and is provided for completeness only.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (825), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (825), `TProcess.ProcessID` (825), `TProcess.ThreadID` (826)

35.6.19 TProcess.ThreadHandle

Synopsis: Main process thread handle.

Declaration: `Property ThreadHandle : THandle`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ThreadHandle` is the main process thread handle. On Unix, this is the same as the process ID, on Windows, this may be a different handle than the process handle.

The handle is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (821) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (825), `TProcess.ProcessID` (825), `TProcess.ThreadID` (826)

35.6.20 TProcess.ProcessID

Synopsis: ID of the process.

Declaration: `Property ProcessID : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ProcessID` is the ID of the process. It is the same as the handle of the process on Unix systems, but on Windows it is different from the process Handle.

The ID is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (821) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (825), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (825), `TProcess.ThreadID` (826)

35.6.21 TProcess.ThreadID

Synopsis: ID of the main process thread.

Declaration: `Property ThreadID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ProcessID` is the ID of the main process thread. It is the same as the handle of the main process thread (or the process itself) on Unix systems, but on Windows it is different from the thread Handle.

The ID is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (821) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.ProcessID` (825), `TProcess.Handle` (825), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (825)

35.6.22 TProcess.Input

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard input of the process.

Declaration: `Property Input : TOutputPipeStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Input` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard input file handle. Anything written to this stream can be read by the process.

The `Input` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in `Options` (833).

Note that writing to the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not reading from it's input, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: `TProcess.OutPut` (826), `TProcess.StdErr` (827), `TProcess.Options` (833), `TProcessOption` (809)

35.6.23 TProcess.Output

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard output of the process.

Declaration: `Property Output : TInputPipeStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Output` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard output file handle. Anything written to standard output by the created process can be read from this stream.

The `Output` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in [Options \(833\)](#).

The `Output` stream also contains any data written to standard diagnostic output (`stderr`) when the `poStdErrToOutPut` flag is used in [Options \(833\)](#).

Note that reading from the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not writing anything to standard output, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: [TProcess.InPut \(826\)](#), [TProcess.StdErr \(827\)](#), [TProcess.Options \(833\)](#), [TProcessOption \(809\)](#)

35.6.24 TProcess.Stderr

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard diagnostic output of the process.

Declaration: `Property Stderr : TInputPipeStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `StdErr` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard diagnostic output file handle (`StdErr`). Anything written to standard diagnostic output by the created process can be read from this stream.

The `StdErr` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in [Options \(833\)](#).

The `Output` stream equals the `Output` ([826](#)) when the `poStdErrToOutPut` flag is used in [Options \(833\)](#).

Note that reading from the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not writing anything to standard output, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: [TProcess.InPut \(826\)](#), [TProcess.Output \(826\)](#), [TProcess.Options \(833\)](#), [TProcessOption \(809\)](#)

35.6.25 TProcess.ExitStatus

Synopsis: Exit status of the process.

Declaration: `Property ExitStatus : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ExitStatus` contains the exit status as reported by the OS for the process when it stopped executing: Normally, this is the exit code of the process.

The value of this property is only meaningful when the process has finished executing. If it is not yet running then the value is -1. (it was zero in earlier versions of FPC)

See also: [TProcess.Running \(834\)](#), [TProcess.Terminate \(823\)](#), [TProcess.ExitCode \(828\)](#)

35.6.26 TProcess.ExitCode

Synopsis: Exit code of the process.

Declaration: `Property ExitCode : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ExitCode` is the actual exit code of the process. On UNIX, this may differ from the `ExitStatus` (805) value if the process was terminated by a signal: in that case `ExitStatus` is the raw exit status as reported by one of the UNIX `Wait` command, and `ExitCode` is the exit code reported by the program.

See also: `TProcess.ExitStatus` (827), `TProcess.Running` (834), `TProcess.WaitOnExit` (823), `TProcess.Terminate` (823)

35.6.27 TProcess.InheritHandles

Synopsis: Should the created process inherit the open handles of the current process.

Declaration: `Property InheritHandles : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `InheritHandles` determines whether the created process inherits the open handles of the current process (value `True`) or not (`False`).

On Unix, setting this variable has no effect.

See also: `TProcess.InPut` (826), `TProcess.Output` (826), `TProcess.StdErr` (827)

35.6.28 TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent

Synopsis: Event handler, called when `RunCommandLoop` is executing.

Declaration: `Property OnRunCommandEvent : TOnRunCommandEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnRunCommandEvent` is a progress report callback, called at various stages of the `TProcess.RunCommandLoop` (824) call and when an exception occurs.

See also: `TProcess.RunCommandLoop` (824)

35.6.29 TProcess.RunCommandSleepTime

Synopsis: Sleep time between attempts to collect data.

Declaration: `Property RunCommandSleepTime : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Sleep time between attempts to collect data.

35.6.30 TProcess.OnForkEvent

Synopsis: Event triggered after fork occurred on Linux.

Declaration: `Property OnForkEvent : TProcessForkEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnForkEvent` is triggered after the `fpFork` (??) call in the child process. It can be used to e.g. close file descriptors and make changes to other resources before the `fpexecv` (??) call. This event is not used on windows.

See also: [Output \(826\)](#), [Input \(826\)](#), [StdErr \(827\)](#), [CloseInput \(822\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(822\)](#), [TProcessForkEvent \(809\)](#)

35.6.31 TProcess.PipeBufferSize

Synopsis: Buffer size to be used when using pipes.

Declaration: `Property PipeBufferSize : Cardinal`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `PipeBufferSize` indicates the buffer size used when creating pipes (when `soUsePipes` is specified in `Options`). This option is not respected on all platforms (currently only Windows uses this).

See also: [#fcl.pipes.CreatePipeHandles \(793\)](#)

35.6.32 TProcess.Active

Synopsis: Start or stop the process.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Active` starts the process if it is set to `True`, or terminates the process if set to `False`. It's mostly intended for use in an IDE.

See also: [TProcess.Execute \(821\)](#), [TProcess.Terminate \(823\)](#)

35.6.33 TProcess.ApplicationName

Synopsis: Name of the application to start (deprecated).

Declaration: `Property ApplicationName : TProcessString; deprecated;`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ApplicationName` is an alias for `TProcess.CommandLine` (830). It's mostly for use in the Windows `CreateProcess` call. If `CommandLine` is not set, then `ApplicationName` will be used instead.

`ApplicationName` is deprecated. New code should use `Executable` (830) instead, and leave `ApplicationName` empty.

See also: `TProcess.CommandLine` (830), `TProcess.Executable` (830), `TProcess.Parameters` (831)

35.6.34 TProcess.CommandLine

Synopsis: Command-line to execute (deprecated).

Declaration: `Property CommandLine : TProcessString; deprecated;`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CommandLine` is deprecated. To avoid problems with command-line options with spaces in them and the quoting problems that this entails, it has been superseded by the properties `TProcess.Executable` (830) and `TProcess.Parameters` (831), which should be used instead of `CommandLine`. New code should leave `CommandLine` empty.

`CommandLine` is the command-line to be executed: this is the name of the program to be executed, followed by any options it should be passed.

If the command to be executed or any of the arguments contains whitespace (space, tab character, linefeed character) it should be enclosed in single or double quotes.

If no absolute pathname is given for the command to be executed, it is searched for in the `PATH` environment variable. On Windows, the current directory always will be searched first. On other platforms, this is not so.

Note that either `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` must be set prior to calling `Execute`.

See also: `TProcess.ApplicationName` (829), `TProcess.Executable` (830), `TProcess.Parameters` (831)

35.6.35 TProcess.Executable

Synopsis: Executable name. Supersedes `CommandLine` and `ApplicationName`.

Declaration: `Property Executable : TProcessString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Executable` is the name of the executable to start. It should not contain any command-line arguments. If no path is given, it will be searched in the `PATH` environment variable.

The extension must be given, none will be added by the component itself. It may be that the OS adds the extension, but this behaviour is not guaranteed.

Arguments should be passed in `TProcess.Parameters` (831).

`Executable` supersedes the `TProcess.CommandLine` (830) and `TProcess.ApplicationName` (829) properties, which have been deprecated. However, if either of `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` is specified, they will be used instead of `Executable`.

See also: `CommandLine` (830), `ApplicationName` (829), `Parameters` (831)

35.6.36 TProcess.Parameters

Synopsis: Command-line arguments. Supersedes `CommandLine`.

Declaration: `Property Parameters : TProcessStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Parameters` contains the command-line arguments that should be passed to the program specified in `Executable` (830).

Commandline arguments should be specified one per item in `Parameters`: each item in `Parameters` will be passed as a separate command-line item. It is therefor not necessary to quote whitespace in the items. As a consequence, it is not allowed to specify multiple command-line parameters in 1 item in the stringlist. If a command needs 2 options `-t` and `-s`, the following is not correct:

```
With Parameters do
begin
  add('-t -s');
end;
```

Instead, the code should read:

```
With Parameters do
begin
  add('-t');
  Add('-s');
end;
```

Remark Note that `Parameters` is ignored if either of `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` is specified. It can only be used with `Executable`.

Remark The idea of using `Parameters` is that they are passed unmodified to the operating system. On Windows, a single command-line string must be constructed, and each parameter is surrounded by double quote characters if it contains a space. The programmer must not quote parameters with spaces.

See also: `Executable` (830), `CommandLine` (830), `ApplicationName` (829)

35.6.37 TProcess.ConsoleTitle

Synopsis: Title of the console window.

Declaration: `Property ConsoleTitle : TProcessString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `ConsoleTitle` is used on Windows when executing a console application: it specifies the title caption of the console window. On other platforms, this property is currently ignored.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect.

See also: `TProcess.WindowColumns` (835), `TProcess.WindowRows` (836)

35.6.38 TProcess.CurrentDirectory

Synopsis: Working directory of the process.

Declaration: `Property CurrentDirectory : TProcessString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CurrentDirectory` specifies the initial working directory of the newly started process.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect, and if the process or any of its children changes their working directory, it will not reflect this.

See also: `TProcess.Environment` ([832](#))

35.6.39 TProcess.Desktop

Synopsis: Desktop on which to start the process.

Declaration: `Property Desktop : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Desktop` is used on Windows to determine on which desktop the process' main window should be shown. Leaving this empty means the process is started on the same desktop as the currently running process.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect.

On UNIX, this parameter is ignored.

See also: `TProcess.Input` ([826](#)), `TProcess.Output` ([826](#)), `TProcess.Stderr` ([827](#))

35.6.40 TProcess.Environment

Synopsis: Environment variables for the new process.

Declaration: `Property Environment : TProcessStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Environment` contains the complete environment for the new process; it is a list of Name=Value pairs, one per line. You must specify all variables, i.e. the variables defined here are *not* added to the environment of the current process.

If it is empty, the environment of the current process is passed on to the new process.

See also: `TProcess.Options` ([833](#))

35.6.41 TProcess.Options

Synopsis: Options to be used when starting the process.

Declaration: `Property Options : TProcessOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` determine how the process is started. They should be set before the `Execute` (821) call is made.

Table 35.7:

Option	Meaning
<code>poRunSuspended</code>	Start the process in suspended state.
<code>poWaitOnExit</code>	Wait for the process to terminate before returning.
<code>poUsePipes</code>	Use pipes to redirect standard input and output.
<code>poStderrToOutPut</code>	Redirect standard error to the standard output stream.
<code>poNoConsole</code>	Do not allow access to the console window for the process (Win32 only)
<code>poNewConsole</code>	Start a new console window for the process (Win32 only)
<code>poDefaultErrorMode</code>	Use default error handling.
<code>poNewProcessGroup</code>	Start the process in a new process group (Win32 only)
<code>poDebugProcess</code>	Allow debugging of the process (Win32 only)
<code>poDebugOnlyThisProcess</code>	Do not follow processes started by this process (Win32 only)

See also: `TProcessOption` (809), `TProcessOptions` (810), `TProcess.Priority` (833), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (834)

35.6.42 TProcess.Priority

Synopsis: Priority at which the process is running.

Declaration: `Property Priority : TProcessPriority`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Priority` determines the priority at which the process is running.

Table 35.8:

Priority	Meaning
<code>ppHigh</code>	The process runs at higher than normal priority.
<code>ppIdle</code>	The process only runs when the system is idle (i.e. has nothing else to do)
<code>ppNormal</code>	The process runs at normal priority.
<code>ppRealTime</code>	The process runs at real-time priority.

Note that not all priorities can be set by any user. Usually, only users with administrative rights (the root user on Unix) can set a higher process priority.

On UNIX, the process priority is mapped on `Nice` values as follows:

Table 35.9:

Priority	Nice value
<code>ppHigh</code>	20
<code>ppIdle</code>	20
<code>ppNormal</code>	0
<code>ppRealTime</code>	-20

See also: `TProcessPriority` ([810](#))

35.6.43 TProcess.StartupOptions

Synopsis: Additional (Windows) startup options.

Declaration: `Property StartupOptions : TStartupOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StartupOptions` contains additional startup options, used mostly on Windows system. They determine which other window layout properties are taken into account when starting the new process.

Table 35.10:

Priority	Meaning
<code>suoUseShowWindow</code>	Use the Show Window options specified in <code>ShowWindow</code> (835)
<code>suoUseSize</code>	Use the specified window sizes
<code>suoUsePosition</code>	Use the specified window sizes.
<code>suoUseCountChars</code>	Use the specified console character width.
<code>suoUseFillAttribute</code>	Use the console fill attribute specified in <code>FillAttribute</code> (837).

See also: `TProcess.ShowWindow` ([835](#)), `TProcess.WindowHeight` ([835](#)), `TProcess.WindowWidth` ([837](#)), `TProcess.WindowLeft` ([836](#)), `TProcess.WindowTop` ([836](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([835](#)), `TProcess.WindowRows` ([836](#)), `TProcess.FillAttribute` ([837](#))

35.6.44 TProcess.Running

Synopsis: Determines whether the process is still running.

Declaration: `Property Running : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `Running` can be read to determine whether the process is still running.

See also: `TProcess.Terminate` ([823](#)), `TProcess.Active` ([829](#)), `TProcess.ExitStatus` ([827](#)), `TProcess.ExitCode` ([828](#))

35.6.45 TProcess.ShowWindow

Synopsis: Determines how the process main window is shown (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property ShowWindow : TShowWindowOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ShowWindow` determines how the process' main window is shown. It is useful only on Windows.

Table 35.11:

Option	Meaning
<code>swoNone</code>	Allow system to position the window.
<code>swoHIDE</code>	The main window is hidden.
<code>swoMaximize</code>	The main window is maximized.
<code>swoMinimize</code>	The main window is minimized.
<code>swoRestore</code>	Restore the previous position.
<code>swoShow</code>	Show the main window.
<code>swoShowDefault</code>	When showing Show the main window on a default position
<code>swoShowMaximized</code>	The main window is shown maximized
<code>swoShowMinimized</code>	The main window is shown minimized
<code>swoshowMinNOActive</code>	The main window is shown minimized but not activated
<code>swoShowNA</code>	The main window is shown but not activated
<code>swoShowNoActivate</code>	The main window is shown but not activated
<code>swoShowNormal</code>	The main window is shown normally

35.6.46 TProcess.WindowColumns

Synopsis: Number of columns in console window (windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowColumns : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowColumns` is the number of columns in the console window, used to run the command in. This property is only effective if `suoUseCountChars` is specified in `StartupOptions` (834)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (835), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (837), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (836), `TProcess.WindowTop` (836), `TProcess.WindowRows` (836), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (837), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (834)

35.6.47 TProcess.WindowHeight

Synopsis: Height of the process main window.

Declaration: `Property WindowHeight : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowHeight` is the initial height (in pixels) of the process' main window. This property is only effective if `suoUseSize` is specified in `StartupOptions` (834)

See also: `TProcess.WindowWidth` (837), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (836), `TProcess.WindowTop` (836), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (835), `TProcess.WindowRows` (836), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (837), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (834)

35.6.48 TProcess.WindowLeft

Synopsis: X-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowLeft : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowLeft` is the initial X coordinate (in pixels) of the process' main window, relative to the left border of the desktop. This property is only effective if `suoUsePosition` is specified in `StartupOptions` (834)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (835), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (837), `TProcess.WindowTop` (836), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (835), `TProcess.WindowRows` (836), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (837), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (834)

35.6.49 TProcess.WindowRows

Synopsis: Number of rows in console window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowRows : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowRows` is the number of rows in the console window, used to run the command in. This property is only effective if `suoUseCountChars` is specified in `StartupOptions` (834)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (835), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (837), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (836), `TProcess.WindowTop` (836), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (835), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (837), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (834)

35.6.50 TProcess.WindowTop

Synopsis: Y-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowTop : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowTop` is the initial Y coordinate (in pixels) of the process' main window, relative to the top border of the desktop. This property is only effective if `suoUsePosition` is specified in `StartupOptions` (834)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (835), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (837), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (836), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (835), `TProcess.WindowRows` (836), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (837), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (834)

35.6.51 TProcess.WindowWidth

Synopsis: Height of the process main window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowWidth : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowWidth` is the initial width (in pixels) of the process' main window. This property is only effective if `suoUseSize` is specified in `StartupOptions` (834)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (835), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (836), `TProcess.WindowTop` (836), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (835), `TProcess.WindowRows` (836), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (837), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (834)

35.6.52 TProcess.FillAttribute

Synopsis: Color attributes of the characters in the console window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property FillAttribute : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FillAttribute` is a WORD value which specifies the background and foreground colors of the console window.

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (835), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (837), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (836), `TProcess.WindowTop` (836), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (835), `TProcess.WindowRows` (836), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (834)

35.6.53 TProcess.XTermProgram

Synopsis: XTerm program to use (UNIX only).

Declaration: `Property XTermProgram : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `XTermProgram` can be used to specify the console program to use when `poConsole` is specified in `TProcess.Options` (833).

If none is specified, `DetectXTerm` (817) is used to detect the terminal program to use. the list specified in `TryTerminals` is tried. If none is found, then the `DESKTOP_SESSION` environment variable is examined:

kdekonsole is used if it is found.

gnomegnome-terminal is used if it is found

windowmakeraterm or xterm are used if found.

If after all this, no terminal is found, then a list of default programs is tested: 'x-terminal-emulator', 'xterm', 'aterm', 'wterm', 'rxvt'

See also: `TProcess.Options` (833), `DetectXTerm` (817)

Chapter 36

Reference for unit 'RttiUtils'

36.1 Used units

Table 36.1: Used units by unit 'RttiUtils'

Name	Page
Classes	??
StrUtils	??
System	??
sysutils	??
TypeInfo	??

36.2 Overview

The `rttiutils` unit is a unit providing simplified access to the RTTI information from published properties using the `TPropInfoList` (841) class. This access can be used when saving or restoring form properties at runtime, or for persisting other objects whose RTTI is available: the `TPropsStorage` (843) class can be used for this. The implementation is based on the `apputils` unit from `RXLib` by *AO ROSNO* and *Master-Bank*

36.3 Constants, types and variables

36.3.1 Constants

```
sPropNameDelimiter : string = type string = '_'
```

Separator used when constructing section/key names.

36.3.2 Types

```
TEraseSectEvent = procedure(const ASection: string) of object
```

TEraseSectEvent is used by TPropsStorage (843) to clear a storage section, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should remove all keys in the section ASection, and remove the section from storage.

```
TFindComponentEvent = function(const Name: string) : TComponent
```

TFindComponentEvent should return the component instance for the component with name path Name. The name path should be relative to the global list of loaded components.

```
TPropStorageOption = (psoAlwaysStoreStringsCount)
```

Table 36.2: Enumeration values for type TPropStorageOption

Value	Explanation
psoAlwaysStoreStringsCount	Always store the count of strings. Default is not to store the count.

TPropStorageOption is the enumeration type used in the TPropsStorage.Options (846) property of TPropsStorage (843)

```
TPropStorageOptions = Set of TPropStorageOption = (psoAlwaysStoreStringsCount
)
```

TPropStorageOptions is the set of TPropStorageOption used in TPropsStorage.Options (846).

```
TReadStrEvent = function(const ASection: string; const Item: string
;
                        const Default: string) : string of
object
```

TReadStrEvent is used by TPropsStorage (843) to read strings from a storage mechanism, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should read the string in ASection with key Item, and if it does not exist, Default should be returned.

```
TWriteStrEvent = procedure(const ASection: string; const Item: string
;
                        const Value: string) of object
```

TWriteStrEvent is used by TPropsStorage (843) to write strings to a storage mechanism, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should write the string Value in ASection with key Item. The section and key should be created if they didn't exist yet.

36.3.3 Variables

```
FindGlobalComponentCallBack : TFindComponentEvent
```

FindGlobalComponentCallBack is called by UpdateStoredList (840) whenever it needs to resolve component references. It should be set to a routine that locates a loaded component in the global list of loaded components.

36.4 Procedures and functions

36.4.1 CreateStoredItem

Synopsis: Concatenates component and property name.

Declaration: `function CreateStoredItem(const CompName: string;
const PropName: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateStoredItem` concatenates `CompName` and `PropName` if they are both empty. The names are separated by a dot (.) character. If either of the names is empty, an empty string is returned.

This function can be used to create items for the list of properties such as used in `UpdateStoredList` (840), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (845) or `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (845).

See also: `ParseStoredItem` (840), `UpdateStoredList` (840), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (845), `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (845)

36.4.2 ParseStoredItem

Synopsis: Split a property reference to component reference and property name.

Declaration: `function ParseStoredItem(const Item: string; var CompName: string;
var PropName: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ParseStoredItem` parses the property reference `Item` and splits it in a reference to a component (returned in `CompName`) and a name of a property (returned in `PropName`). This function basically does the opposite of `CreateStoredItem` (840). Note that both names should be non-empty, i.e., at least 1 dot character must appear in `Item`.

Errors: If an error occurred during parsing, `False` is returned.

See also: `CreateStoredItem` (840), `UpdateStoredList` (840), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (845), `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (845)

36.4.3 UpdateStoredList

Synopsis: Update a stringlist with object references.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateStoredList (AComponent: TComponent;
AStoredList: TStringList; FromForm: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UpdateStoredList` will parse the strings in `AStoredList` using `ParseStoredItem` (840) and will replace the `Objects` properties with the instance of the object whose name each property path in the list refers to. If `FromForm` is `True`, then all instances are searched relative to `AComponent`, i.e. they must be owned by `AComponent`. If `FromForm` is `False` the instances are searched in the global list of streamed components. (the `FindGlobalComponentCallBack` (839) callback must be set for the search to work correctly in this case)

If a component cannot be found, the reference string to the property is removed from the stringlist.

Errors: If `AComponent` is `Nil`, an exception may be raised.

See also: [ParseStoredItem \(840\)](#), [TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps \(845\)](#), [TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps \(845\)](#), [FindGlobalComponentCallBack \(839\)](#)

36.5 TPropInfoList

36.5.1 Description

`TPropInfoList` is a class which can be used to maintain a list with information about published properties of a class (or an instance). It is used internally by [TPropsStorage \(843\)](#)

See also: [TPropsStorage \(843\)](#)

36.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
842	Contains	Check whether a certain property is included.
841	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TPropInfoList</code> .
842	Delete	Delete property information from the list.
841	Destroy	Remove the <code>TPropInfoList</code> instance from memory.
842	Find	Retrieve property information based on name.
842	Intersect	Intersect 2 property lists.

36.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
843	Count	r	Number of items in the list.
843	Items	r	Indexed access to the property type pointers.

36.5.4 TPropInfoList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TPropInfoList`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AObject: TObject; Filter: TTypeKinds;
Sorted: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` allocates and initializes a new instance of `TPropInfoList` on the heap. It retrieves a list of published properties from `AObject`: if `Filter` is empty, then all properties are retrieved. If it is not empty, then only properties of the kind specified in the set are retrieved. Instance should not be `Nil`

See also: [Destroy \(841\)](#)

36.5.5 TPropInfoList.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TPropInfoList` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the internal structures maintained by `TPropInfoList` and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: [Create \(841\)](#)

36.5.6 TPropInfoList.Contains

Synopsis: Check whether a certain property is included.

Declaration: `function Contains(P: PPropInfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Contains` checks whether `P` is included in the list of properties, and returns `True` if it does. If `P` cannot be found, `False` is returned.

See also: [Find \(842\)](#), [Intersect \(842\)](#)

36.5.7 TPropInfoList.Find

Synopsis: Retrieve property information based on name.

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: string) : PPropInfo`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` returns a pointer to the type information of the property `AName`. If no such information is available, the function returns `Nil`. The search is performed case insensitive.

See also: [Intersect \(842\)](#), [Contains \(842\)](#)

36.5.8 TPropInfoList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete property information from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the property information at position `Index` from the list. It's mainly of use in the [Intersect \(842\)](#) call.

Errors: No checking on the validity of `Index` is performed.

See also: [Intersect \(842\)](#)

36.5.9 TPropInfoList.Intersect

Synopsis: Intersect 2 property lists.

Declaration: `procedure Intersect(List: TPropInfoList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Intersect` reduces the list of properties to the ones also contained in `List`, i.e. all properties which are not also present in `List` are removed.

See also: [Delete \(842\)](#), [Contains \(842\)](#)

36.5.10 TPropInfoList.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the number of property type pointers in the list.

See also: [Items \(843\)](#)

36.5.11 TPropInfoList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the property type pointers.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: PPropInfo; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Items` provides access to the property type pointers stored in the list. `Index` runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: [Count \(843\)](#)

36.6 TPropsStorage

36.6.1 Description

`TPropsStorage` provides a mechanism to store properties from any class which has published properties (usually a `TPersistent` descendent) in a storage mechanism.

`TPropsStorage` does not handle the storage by itself, instead, the storage is handled through a series of callbacks to read and/or write strings. Conversion of property types to string is handled by `TPropsStorage` itself: all that needs to be done is set the 3 handlers. The storage mechanism is assumed to have the structure of an .ini file : sections with key/value pairs. The three callbacks should take this into account, but they do not need to create an actual .ini file.

See also: [TPropInfoList \(841\)](#)

36.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
844	<code>LoadAnyProperty</code>	Load a property value.
845	<code>LoadObjectsProps</code>	Load a list of component properties.
845	<code>LoadProperties</code>	Load a list of properties.
844	<code>StoreAnyProperty</code>	Store a property value.
845	<code>StoreObjectsProps</code>	Store a list of component properties.
844	<code>StoreProperties</code>	Store a list of properties.

36.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
846	AObject	rw	Object to load or store properties from.
848	OnEraseSection	rw	Erase a section in storage.
847	OnReadString	rw	Read a string value from storage.
847	OnWriteString	rw	Write a string value to storage.
846	Options	rw	Options to take into account when saving or loading properties from the storage.
847	Prefix	rw	Prefix to use in storage.
847	Section	rw	Section name for storage.

36.6.4 TPropsStorage.StoreAnyProperty

Synopsis: Store a property value.

Declaration: `procedure StoreAnyProperty(PropInfo: PPropInfo)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreAnyProperty` stores the property with information specified in `PropInfo` in the storage mechanism. The property value is retrieved from the object instance specified in the AObject ([846](#)) property of `TPropsStorage`.

Errors: If the property pointer is invalid or AObject is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: AObject ([846](#)), LoadAnyProperty ([844](#)), LoadProperties ([845](#)), StoreProperties ([844](#))

36.6.5 TPropsStorage.LoadAnyProperty

Synopsis: Load a property value.

Declaration: `procedure LoadAnyProperty(PropInfo: PPropInfo)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadAnyProperty` loads the property with information specified in `PropInfo` from the storage mechanism. The value is then applied to the object instance specified in the AObject ([846](#)) property of `TPropsStorage`.

Errors: If the property pointer is invalid or AObject is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: AObject ([846](#)), StoreAnyProperty ([844](#)), LoadProperties ([845](#)), StoreProperties ([844](#))

36.6.6 TPropsStorage.StoreProperties

Synopsis: Store a list of properties.

Declaration: `procedure StoreProperties(PropList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreProperties` stores the values of all properties in `PropList` in the storage mechanism. The list should contain names of published properties of the AObject ([846](#)) object.

Errors: If an invalid property name is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: AObject ([846](#)), StoreAnyProperty ([844](#)), LoadProperties ([845](#)), LoadAnyProperty ([844](#))

36.6.7 TPropsStorage.LoadProperties

Synopsis: Load a list of properties.

Declaration: `procedure LoadProperties(PropList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadProperties` loads the values of all properties in `PropList` from the storage mechanism. The list should contain names of published properties of the `AObject` (846) object.

Errors: If an invalid property name is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: `AObject` (846), `StoreAnyProperty` (844), `StoreProperties` (844), `LoadAnyProperty` (844)

36.6.8 TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps

Synopsis: Load a list of component properties.

Declaration: `procedure LoadObjectsProps(AComponent: TComponent; StoredList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadObjectsProps` loads a list of component properties, relative to `AComponent`: the names of the component properties to load are specified as follows:

```
ComponentName1.PropertyName
ComponentName2.Subcomponent1.PropertyName
```

The component instances will be located relative to `AComponent`, and must therefore be names of components owned by `AComponent`, followed by a valid property of these components. If the componentname is missing, the property name will be assumed to be a property of `AComponent` itself.

The `Objects` property of the stringlist should be filled with the instances of the components the property references refer to: they can be filled with the `UpdateStoredList` (840) call.

For example, to load the checked state of a checkbox named 'CBCheckMe' and the caption of a button named 'BPressMe', both owned by a form, the following strings should be passed:

```
CBCheckMe.Checked
BPressMe.Caption
```

and the `AComponent` should be the form component that owns the button and checkbox.

Note that this call removes the value of the `AObject` (846) property.

Errors: If an invalid component is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: `UpdateStoredList` (840), `StoreObjectsProps` (845), `LoadProperties` (845), `LoadAnyProperty` (844)

36.6.9 TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps

Synopsis: Store a list of component properties.

Declaration: `procedure StoreObjectsProps(AComponent: TComponent;
StoredList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreObjectsProps` stores a list of component properties, relative to `AComponent`: the names of the component properties to store are specified as follows:

```
ComponentName1.PropertyName
ComponentName2.Subcomponent1.PropertyName
```

The component instances will be located relative to `AComponent`, and must therefore be names of components owned by `AComponent`, followed by a valid property of these components. If the componentname is missing, the property name will be assumed to be a property of `AComponent` itself.

The `Objects` property of the stringlist should be filled with the instances of the components the property references refer to: they can be filled with the `UpdateStoredList` (840) call.

For example, to store the checked state of a checkbox named 'CBCheckMe' and the caption of a button named 'BPressMe', both owned by a form, the following strings should be passed:

```
CBCheckMe.Checked
BPressMe.Caption
```

and the `AComponent` should be the form component that owns the button and checkbox.

Note that this call removes the value of the `AObject` (846) property.

See also: `UpdateStoredList` (840), `LoadObjectsProps` (845), `LoadProperties` (845), `LoadAnyProperty` (844)

36.6.10 TPropsStorage.Options

Synopsis: Options to take into account when saving or loading properties from the storage.

Declaration: `Property Options : TPropStorageOptions`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` can be used to tweak the behaviour of `TPropsStorage` when it loads or saves data to the storage. Currently the following options are available

psoAlwaysStoreStringsCount Always store the count of strings. Default is not to store the count.

See also: `TPropStorageOptions` (839), `TPropStorageOption` (839)

36.6.11 TPropsStorage.AObject

Synopsis: Object to load or store properties from.

Declaration: `Property AObject : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AObject` is the object instance whose properties will be loaded or stored with any of the methods in the `TPropsStorage` class. Note that a call to `StoreObjectProps` (845) or `LoadObjectProps` (845) will destroy any value that this property might have.

See also: `LoadProperties` (845), `LoadAnyProperty` (844), `StoreProperties` (844), `StoreAnyProperty` (844), `StoreObjectProps` (845), `LoadObjectProps` (845)

36.6.12 TPropsStorage.Prefix

Synopsis: Prefix to use in storage.

Declaration: `Property Prefix : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Prefix` is prepended to all property names to form the key name when writing a property to storage, or when reading a value from storage. This is useful when storing properties of multiple forms in a single section.

See also: `TPropsStorage.Section` ([847](#))

36.6.13 TPropsStorage.Section

Synopsis: Section name for storage.

Declaration: `Property Section : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Section` is used as the section name when writing values to storage. Note that when writing properties of subcomponents, their names will be appended to the value specified here.

See also: `TPropsStorage.Section` ([847](#))

36.6.14 TPropsStorage.OnReadString

Synopsis: Read a string value from storage.

Declaration: `Property OnReadString : TReadStrEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnReadString` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to read a string from storage. It should be set whenever properties need to be loaded, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnWriteString` ([847](#)), `OnEraseSection` ([848](#)), `TReadStrEvent` ([839](#))

36.6.15 TPropsStorage.OnWriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value to storage.

Declaration: `Property OnWriteString : TWriteStrEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnWriteString` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to write a string to storage. It should be set whenever properties need to be stored, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnReadString` ([847](#)), `OnEraseSection` ([848](#)), `TWriteStrEvent` ([839](#))

36.6.16 TPropsStorage.OnEraseSection

Synopsis: Erase a section in storage.

Declaration: `Property OnEraseSection : TErasedEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnEraseSection` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to clear a complete storage section. It should be set whenever stringlist properties need to be stored, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnReadString` ([847](#)), `OnWriteString` ([847](#)), `TErasedEvent` ([838](#))

Chapter 37

Reference for unit 'simpleipc'

37.1 Used units

Table 37.1: Used units by unit 'simpleipc'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contrns	218
syncobjs	1001
System	??
sysutils	??

37.2 Overview

The SimpleIPC unit provides classes to implement a simple, one-way IPC mechanism using string messages. It provides a TSimpleIPCServer ([866](#)) component for the server, and a TSimpleIPCClient ([863](#)) component for the client. The components are cross-platform, and should work both on Windows and UNIX-like systems.

The Unix implementation of the SimpleIPC unit uses file-based sockets. It will attempt to clean up any registered server socket files that were not removed cleanly.

It does this in the unit finalization code. It does not install a signal handler by itself, that is the task of the programmer. But program crashes (access violations and such) that are handled by the RTL will be handled gracefully.

This also means that if the process is killed with the KILL signal, it has no chance of removing the files (KILL signals cannot be caught), in which case socket files may remain in the file system. However, the client code attempts to cater for this and will remove the stale sockets if it detects them.

Under Windows, the communication is done through WM_COPYDATA messages. Starting from Windows Vista it is forbidden to send messages between service applications and desktop applications, so a SimpleIPC client in a desktop application cannot connect to a SimpleIPC server in a service application and vice versa.

37.3 Constants, types and variables

37.3.1 Resource strings

```
SErrActive =
    'This operation is illegal when the server is active.'
```

Error message if client/server is active.

```
SErrInactive =
    'This operation is illegal when the server is inactive.'
```

Error message if client/server is not active.

```
SErrMessageQueueOverflow = 'Message queue overflow (limit %s)'
```

Too many messages in the message queue.

```
SErrServerNotActive = 'Server with ID %s is not active.'
```

Error message if server is not active.

```
SErrThreadContext =
    'This operation is illegal outside of IPC thread context.'
```

Thread context error message.

```
SErrThreadFailure = 'IPC thread failure.'
```

Thread failure message.

37.3.2 Constants

```
MsgVersion = 1
```

Current version of the messaging protocol.

```
mtString = 1
```

String message type.

```
mtUnknown = 0
```

Unknown message type.

37.3.3 Types

```
TIPCCClientCommClass = type class(TObject)
private
    FOwner : TSimpleIPCCClient
;
protected
```

```

    procedure DoError(const Msg: string; const Args: Array
    of const);
public
    constructor Create(AOwner: TSimpleIPCClient)
    ; Virtual;
    property Owner : TSimpleIPCClient;
    procedure Connect
    ; Virtual; Abstract;
    procedure Disconnect; Virtual; Abstract
    ;
    function ServerRunning : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract;
    procedure
    SendMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; Stream: TStream); Virtual
    ; Abstract;
end

```

TIPCCClientCommClass is used by TSimpleIPCCClient (863) to decide which kind of communication channel to set up.

```

TIPCMessageOverflowAction = (ipcmoaNone, ipcmoaDiscardOld,
    ipcmoaDiscardNew, ipcmoaError)

```

Table 37.2: Enumeration values for type TIPCMessageOverflowAction

Value	Explanation
ipcmoaDiscardNew	Discard the new message.
ipcmoaDiscardOld	Discard the oldest message.
ipcmoaError	Raise an error.
ipcmoaNone	Do nothing, just add the message.

TIPCMessageOverflowAction describes what will happen if the message queue hits the size limit for the queue.

Do nothing, just add the message.

Discard the oldest message.

Discard the new message.

```

TIPCServerCommClass = type class(TObject)
private
    FOwner : TSimpleIPCServer
    ;
protected
    function GetInstanceID : string; Virtual; Abstract
    ;
    procedure DoError(const Msg: string; const Args: Array of const
    );
    PushMessage;
public
    constructor Create(AOwner: TSimpleIPCServer

```

```

); Virtual;
property Owner : TSimpleIPCServer;
procedure StartServer
; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure StopServer; Virtual; Abstract
;
function PeekMessage(Timeout: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract
;
procedure ReadMessage; Virtual; Abstract;
property InstanceID
: string;
end

```

TIPCServerCommClass is used by TSimpleIPCServer (866) to decide which kind of communication channel to set up.

```

TMessageQueueEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Msg: TIPCServerMsg
)
                        of object

```

TMessageQueueEvent is the signature of the event handler that is executed when a new message arrives on the server and the queue is full, and maxaction is ipcmoaError.

```

TMessageType = type LongInt

```

TMessageType is provided for backward compatibility with earlier versions of the simpleipc unit.

37.3.4 Variables

```

DefaultIPCClientClass : TIPCCClientCommClass = Nil

```

DefaultIPCClientClass is filled with a class pointer indicating which kind of communication protocol class should be instantiated by the TSimpleIPCCClient (863) class. It is set to a default value by the default implementation in the SimpleIPC unit, but can be set to another class if another method of transport is desired. (it should match the communication protocol used by the server, obviously).

```

DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction : TIPCMessageOverflowAction = TSimpleIPCServer
.DefaultMaxAction

```

DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction is the default for the message queue overflow action when a new queue is made.

```

DefaultIPCMessageQueueLimit : Integer = TSimpleIPCServer
.DefaultMaxQueue

```

DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction is the default for the maximum message queue size when a new queue is made. A zero size means no limit.

```

DefaultIPCServerClass : TIPCServerCommClass = Nil

```

DefaultIPCServerClass is filled with a class pointer indicating which kind of communication protocol class should be instantiated by the TSimpleIPCServer (866) class. It is set to a default value by the default implementation in the SimpleIPC unit, but can be set to another class if another method of transport is desired.

37.4 TMsgHeader

```
TMsgHeader = packed record
  Version : Byte;
  MsgType : TMessageType
  ;
  MsgLen : Integer;
end
```

TMsgHeader is used internally by the IPC client and server components to transmit data. The Version field denotes the protocol version. The MsgType field denotes the type of data (mtString for string messages), and MsgLen is the length of the message which will follow.

37.5 EIPCErrors

37.5.1 Description

EIPCErrors is the exception used by the various classes in the SimpleIPC unit to report errors.

37.6 TIPCCClientComm

37.6.1 Description

TIPCCClientComm is an abstract component which implements the client-side communication protocol. The behaviour expected of this class must be implemented in a platform-dependent descendent class.

The TSimpleIPCCClient (863) class does not implement the messaging protocol by itself. Instead, it creates an instance of a (platform dependent) descendent of TIPCCClientComm which handles the internals of the communication protocol.

The server side of the messaging protocol is handled by the TIPCCServerComm (855) component. The descendent components must always be implemented in pairs.

See also: TSimpleIPCCClient (863), TIPCCServerComm (855), TSimpleIPCServer (866)

37.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
854	Connect	Connect to the server.
854	Create	Create a new instance of the TIPCCClientComm.
854	Disconnect	Disconnect from the server.
855	SendMessage	Send a message.
855	ServerRunning	Check if the server is running.

37.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
855	Owner	r	TSimpleIPCCClient instance for which communication must be handled.

37.6.4 TIPCCliantComm.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TIPCCliantComm`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TSimpleIPCCliant); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TIPCCliantComm` class, and stores the `AOwner` reference to the `TSimpleIPCCliant` (863) instance for which it will handle communication. It can be retrieved later using the `Owner` (855) property.

See also: `Owner` (855), `TSimpleIPCCliant` (863)

37.6.5 TIPCCliantComm.Connect

Synopsis: Connect to the server.

Declaration: `procedure Connect; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Connect` must establish a communication channel with the server. The server endpoint must be constructed from the `ServerID` (863) and `ServerInstance` (866) properties of the owning `TSimpleIPCCliant` (863) instance.

`Connect` is called by the `TSimpleIPCCliant.Connect` (864) call or when the `Active` (863) property is set to `True`

Messages can be sent only after `Connect` was called successfully.

Errors: If the connection setup fails, or the connection was already set up, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCliant.Connect` (864), `Active` (863), `Disconnect` (854)

37.6.6 TIPCCliantComm.Disconnect

Synopsis: Disconnect from the server.

Declaration: `procedure Disconnect; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Disconnect` closes the communication channel with the server. Any calls to `SendMessage` are invalid after `Disconnect` was called.

`Disconnect` is called by the `TSimpleIPCCliant.Disconnect` (865) call or when the `Active` (863) property is set to `False`.

Messages can no longer be sent after `Disconnect` was called.

Errors: If the connection shutdown fails, or the connection was already shut down, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCliant.Disconnect` (865), `Active` (863), `Connect` (854)

37.6.7 TIPCCliantComm.ServerRunning

Synopsis: Check if the server is running.

Declaration: `function ServerRunning : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerRunning` returns `True` if the server endpoint for the communication channel can be found, or `False` if not. The server endpoint is obtained from the `ServerID` property in the owning `TSimpleIPCCliant` (863) component.

See also: `ServerID` (863), `InstanceID` (870)

37.6.8 TIPCCliantComm.SendMessage

Synopsis: Send a message.

Declaration: `procedure SendMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; Stream: TStream); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SendMessage` should deliver the message with type `MsgType` and data in `Stream` to the server. It should not return until the message was delivered.

Errors: If the delivery of the message fails, an exception will be raised.

37.6.9 TIPCCliantComm.Owner

Synopsis: `TSimpleIPCCliant` instance for which communication must be handled.

Declaration: `Property Owner : TSimpleIPCCliant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Owner` is the `TSimpleIPCCliant` (863) instance for which the communication must be handled. It cannot be changed, and must be specified when the `TIPCCliantComm` instance is created.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCliant` (863), `TIPCCliantComm.Create` (854)

37.7 TIPCTServerComm

37.7.1 Description

`TIPCTServerComm` is an abstract component which implements the server-side communication protocol. The behaviour expected of this class must be implemented in a platform-dependent descendent class.

The `TSimpleIPCTServer` (866) class does not implement the messaging protocol by itself. Instead, it creates an instance of a (platform dependent) descendent of `TIPCTServerComm` which handles the internals of the communication protocol.

The client side of the messaging protocol is handled by the `TIPCCliantComm` (853) component. The descendent components must always be implemented in pairs.

See also: `TSimpleIPCTServer` (866), `TIPCCliantComm` (853)

37.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
856	Create	Create a new instance of the communication handler.
857	PeekMessage	See if a message is available.
857	ReadMessage	Read message from the channel.
856	StartServer	Start the server-side of the communication channel.
856	StopServer	Stop the server side of the communication channel.

37.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
858	InstanceID	r	Unique identifier for the communication channel.
857	Owner	r	TSimpleIPCServer instance for which to handle transport.

37.7.4 TIPCServerComm.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the communication handler.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TSimpleIPCServer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the communication handler. It simply saves the `AOwner` parameter in the `Owner` ([857](#)) property.

See also: `Owner` ([857](#))

37.7.5 TIPCServerComm.StartServer

Synopsis: Start the server-side of the communication channel.

Declaration: `procedure StartServer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `StartServer` sets up the server-side of the communication channel. After `StartServer` was called, a client can connect to the communication channel, and send messages to the server.

It is called when the `TSimpleIPC.Active` ([863](#)) property of the `TSimpleIPCServer` ([866](#)) instance is set to `True`.

If `Threaded` is `True` then a background thread is started which will check for new messages periodically (see also `TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadTimeout` ([873](#))). The arrival of new messages can be acted upon with `TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageQueued` ([872](#)).

Errors: In case of an error, an `EIPCError` ([853](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` ([866](#)), `TSimpleIPC.Active` ([863](#)), `TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageQueued` ([872](#)), `TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadTimeout` ([873](#))

37.7.6 TIPCServerComm.StopServer

Synopsis: Stop the server side of the communication channel.

Declaration: `procedure StopServer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `StopServer` closes down the server-side of the communication channel. After `StartServer` was called, a client can no longer connect to the communication channel, or even send messages to the server if it was previously connected (i.e. it will be disconnected).

It is called when the `TSimpleIPC.Active` (863) property of the `TSimpleIPCServer` (866) instance is set to `False`.

Errors: In case of an error, an `EIPCError` (853) exception is raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (866), `TSimpleIPC.Active` (863)

37.7.7 TIPCServerComm.PeekMessage

Synopsis: See if a message is available.

Declaration: `function PeekMessage(Timeout: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PeekMessage` can be used to see if a message is available: it returns `True` if a message is available. It will wait maximum `TimeOut` milliseconds for a message to arrive. If no message was available after this time, it will return `False`.

If a message was available, it can be read with the `ReadMessage` (857) call.

See also: `ReadMessage` (857)

37.7.8 TIPCServerComm.ReadMessage

Synopsis: Read message from the channel.

Declaration: `procedure ReadMessage; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadMessage` reads the message for the channel, and stores the information in the data structures in the `Owner` class.

`ReadMessage` is a blocking call: if no message is available, the program will wait till a message arrives. Use `PeekMessage` (857) to see if a message is available.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (866)

37.7.9 TIPCServerComm.Owner

Synopsis: `TSimpleIPCServer` instance for which to handle transport.

Declaration: `Property Owner : TSimpleIPCServer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Owner` refers to the `TSimpleIPCServer` (866) instance for which this instance of `TSimpleIPCServer` handles the transport. It is specified when the `TIPCServerComm` is created.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (866)

37.7.10 TIPServerComm.InstanceID

Synopsis: Unique identifier for the communication channel.

Declaration: `Property InstanceID : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `InstanceID` returns a textual representation which uniquely identifies the communication channel on the server. The value is system dependent, and should be usable by the client-side to establish a communication channel with this instance.

37.8 TIPServerMsg

37.8.1 Description

`TIPServerMsg` is an auxiliary class used in the IPC server class `TSimpleIPCServer` (866). It keeps the data for 1 message. The set of messages is managed in `TIPServerMsgQueue` (860). There should normally be no need to use this class directly.

See also: `TIPServerMsgQueue` (860)

37.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
858	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a server message.
859	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy an instance of a server message.

37.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
859	<code>MsgType</code>	<code>rw</code>	Message type.
859	<code>OwnsStream</code>	<code>rw</code>	Does the message own the stream.
859	<code>Stream</code>	<code>r</code>	Stream to store message data.
860	<code>StringMessage</code>	<code>r</code>	String message sent by client.

37.8.4 TIPServerMsg.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a server message.

Declaration: `constructor Create`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream; AOwnsStream: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes the stream used to hold the message data.

See also: `TIPServerMsg.Destroy` (859)

37.8.5 TIPCTServerMsg.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy an instance of a server message.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the stream used to hold the message data.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsg.Create` ([858](#))

37.8.6 TIPCTServerMsg.Stream

Synopsis: Stream to store message data.

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Stream` contains the message data as binary data.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsg.MsgType` ([859](#))

37.8.7 TIPCTServerMsg.MsgType

Synopsis: Message type.

Declaration: `Property MsgType : TMessageType`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MsgType` simply contains the message type. The possible message types are application defined.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsg.Stream` ([859](#))

37.8.8 TIPCTServerMsg.OwnsStream

Synopsis: Does the message own the stream.

Declaration: `Property OwnsStream : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OwnsStream` can be set to `true` to signal that the message should release the stream when the message is destroyed. The initial value can be specified in the constructor.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsg.Create` ([858](#))

37.8.9 TIPCTServerMsg.StringMessage

Synopsis: String message sent by client.

Declaration: `Property StringMessage : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `StringMessage` is the message sent by the client as a string.

37.9 TIPCTServerMsgQueue

37.9.1 Description

`TIPCTServerMsgQueue` implements a message queue with FIFO characteristics. It has support for a maximum queue length (`TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` (862)) and various ways of dealing with overflowing queue (`TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (862))

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` (862), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (862)

37.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
861	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the message queue.
860	<code>Create</code>	Create a new message queue instance.
861	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy server message queue instance.
861	<code>Pop</code>	Remove the oldest message from the queue.
861	<code>Push</code>	Add a new message to the queue.

37.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
862	<code>Count</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of messages in the queue.
862	<code>MaxAction</code>	<code>rw</code>	Action to take when the number of messages will exceed <code>MaxCount</code> .
862	<code>MaxCount</code>	<code>rw</code>	Maximum number of messages in the queue, 0 for unlimited.

37.9.4 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Create

Synopsis: Create a new message queue instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a list to contain the messages, and initializes `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` (862) and `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (862) with their default values (`DefaultIPCMessageQueueLimit` (852) and `DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction` (852), respectively)

Note that the messages are owned by the queue till they are popped of the queue.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` (862), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (862), `DefaultIPCMessageQueueLimit` (852), `DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction` (852)

37.9.5 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy server message queue instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` discards the remaining messages in the list and removes the message queue from memory.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Create` (860), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Clear` (861)

37.9.6 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the message queue.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` discards the remaining messages in the list.

37.9.7 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Push

Synopsis: Add a new message to the queue.

Declaration: `procedure Push(AItem: TIPCTServerMsg)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Push` verifies if the message can be added to the queue (discarding old messages depending on the setting of `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (862)) and adds the message `AItem` to the queue.

The message `AItem` is owned by the queue until it is popped off the queue.

Errors: If the maximum queue length is reached, and the `MaxAction` (862) is set to `ipcmoaError`, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` (862), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (862), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Pop` (861)

37.9.8 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Pop

Synopsis: Remove the oldest message from the queue.

Declaration: `function Pop : TIPCTServerMsg`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pop` removes the oldest message from the queue if there is one, and returns it. If none exists, `Nil` is returned. The caller is responsible for freeing the message instance.

Errors: None.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Push` (861)

37.9.9 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Count

Synopsis: Number of messages in the queue.

Declaration: Property Count : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Count is the current number of messages in the queue.

See also: MaxCount ([862](#))

37.9.10 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount

Synopsis: Maximum number of messages in the queue, 0 for unlimited.

Declaration: Property MaxCount : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: MaxCount is the maximum number of messages in the queue. When this amount is zero, the amount of messages is unlimited.

When a new message is pushed, and the Count ([862](#)) is equal to MaxCount, the MaxAction ([862](#)) property is examined to know what to do.

See also: Count ([862](#)), MaxAction ([862](#))

37.9.11 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction

Synopsis: Action to take when the number of messages will exceed MaxCount.

Declaration: Property MaxAction : TIPCTMessageOverflowAction

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: MaxAction determines what will happen if the current Count ([862](#)) equals MaxCount ([862](#)) and a new message is put in the queue using Push ([861](#)):

Do nothing, just add the message.

Discard the oldest message.

Discard the new message.

See also: TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Count ([862](#)), TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount ([862](#)), TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Push ([861](#)), TIPCTMessageOverflowAction ([851](#))

37.10 TSimpleIPC

37.10.1 Description

TSimpleIPC is the common ancestor for the TSimpleIPCServer ([866](#)) and TSimpleIPCClient ([863](#)) classes. It implements some common properties between client and server.

See also: TSimpleIPCServer ([866](#)), TSimpleIPCClient ([863](#))

37.10.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
863	Active	rw	Communication channel active.
863	ServerID	rw	Unique server identification.

37.10.3 TSimpleIPC.Active

Synopsis: Communication channel active.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Active` can be set to `True` to set up the client or server end of the communication channel. For the server this means that the server end is set up, for the client it means that the client tries to connect to the server with `ServerID` ([863](#)) identification.

See also: `ServerID` ([863](#))

37.10.4 TSimpleIPC.ServerID

Synopsis: Unique server identification.

Declaration: `Property ServerID : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ServerID` is the unique server identification: on the server, it determines how the server channel is set up, on the client it determines the server with which to connect.

See also: `Active` ([863](#))

37.11 TSimpleIPCClient

37.11.1 Description

`TSimpleIPCClient` is the client side of the simple IPC communication protocol. The client program should create a `TSimpleIPCClient` instance, set its `ServerID` property to the unique name for the server it wants to send messages to, and then set the `Active` property to `True`.

After the connection with the server was established, messages can be sent to the server with the `SendMessage` ([865](#)) or `SendStringMessage` ([866](#)) calls.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` ([866](#)), `TSimpleIPC` ([862](#)), `TIPCClientComm` ([853](#))

37.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
864	Connect	Connect to the server.
864	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TSimpleIPCClient</code> .
864	Destroy	Remove the <code>TSimpleIPCClient</code> instance from memory.
865	Disconnect	Disconnect from the server.
865	SendMessage	Send a message to the server.
866	SendStringMessage	Send a string message to the server.
866	SendStringMessageFmt	Send a formatted string message.
865	ServerRunning	Check if the server is running.

37.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
866	ServerInstance	rw	Server instance identification.

37.11.4 TSimpleIPCClient.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TSimpleIPCClient`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TSimpleIPCClient` class. It initializes the data structures needed to handle the client side of the communication.

See also: `Destroy` ([864](#))

37.11.5 TSimpleIPCClient.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TSimpleIPCClient` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` disconnects the client from the server if need be, and cleans up the internal data structures maintained by `TSimpleIPCClient` and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, which will remove the instance from memory.

Never call `Destroy` directly, use the `Free` method instead or the `FreeAndNil` procedure in `SysUtils`.

See also: `Create` ([864](#))

37.11.6 TSimpleIPCClient.Connect

Synopsis: Connect to the server.

Declaration: `procedure Connect`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Connect` connects to the server indicated in the `ServerID` (863) and `InstanceID` (870) properties. `Connect` is called automatically if the `Active` (863) property is set to `True`.

After a successful call to `Connect`, messages can be sent to the server using `SendMessage` (865) or `SendStringMessage` (866).

Calling `Connect` if the connection is already open has no effect.

Errors: If creating the connection fails, an `EIPCErrors` (853) exception may be raised.

See also: `ServerID` (863), `InstanceID` (863), `Active` (863), `SendMessage` (865), `SendStringMessage` (866), `Disconnect` (865)

37.11.7 TSimpleIPCClient.Disconnect

Synopsis: Disconnect from the server.

Declaration: `procedure Disconnect`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Disconnect` shuts down the connection with the server as previously set up with `Connect` (864). `Disconnect` is called automatically if the `Active` (863) property is set to `False`.

After a successful call to `Disconnect`, messages can no longer be sent to the server. Attempting to do so will result in an exception.

Calling `Disconnect` if there is no connection has no effect.

Errors: If creating the connection fails, an `EIPCErrors` (853) exception may be raised.

See also: `Active` (863), `Connect` (864)

37.11.8 TSimpleIPCClient.ServerRunning

Synopsis: Check if the server is running.

Declaration: `function ServerRunning : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerRunning` verifies if the server indicated in the `ServerID` (863) and `InstanceID` (870) properties is running. It returns `True` if the server communication endpoint can be reached, `False` otherwise. This function can be called before a connection is made.

See also: `Connect` (864)

37.11.9 TSimpleIPCClient.SendMessage

Synopsis: Send a message to the server.

Declaration: `procedure SendMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SendMessage` sends a message of type `MsgType` and data from `stream` to the server. The client must be connected for this call to work.

Errors: In case an error occurs, or there is no connection to the server, an `EIPCErrors` (853) exception is raised.

See also: `Connect` (864), `SendStringMessage` (866)

37.11.10 TSimpleIPCClient.SendStringMessage

Synopsis: Send a string message to the server.

Declaration: `procedure SendStringMessage(const Msg: string)`
`procedure SendStringMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; const Msg: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendStringMessage` sends a string message with type `MsgType` and data `Msg` to the server.
This is a convenience function: a small wrapper around the `SendMessage` (865) method

Errors: Same as for `SendMessage`.

See also: `SendMessage` (865), `Connect` (864), `SendStringMessageFmt` (866)

37.11.11 TSimpleIPCClient.SendStringMessageFmt

Synopsis: Send a formatted string message.

Declaration: `procedure SendStringMessageFmt(const Msg: string; Args: Array of const)`
`procedure SendStringMessageFmt(MsgType: TMessageType;`
`const Msg: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendStringMessageFmt` sends a string message with type `MsgType` and message formatted from `Msg` and `Args` to the server. This is a convenience function: a small wrapper around the `SendStringMessage` (866) method

Errors: Same as for `SendMessage`.

See also: `SendMessage` (865), `Connect` (864), `SendStringMessage` (866)

37.11.12 TSimpleIPCClient.ServerInstance

Synopsis: Server instance identification.

Declaration: `Property ServerInstance : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ServerInstance` should be used in case a particular instance of the server identified with `ServerID` should be contacted. This must be used if the server has its `GLocal` (871) property set to `False`, and should match the server's `InstanceID` (870) property.

See also: `ServerID` (863), `GLocal` (871), `InstanceID` (870)

37.12 TSimpleIPCServer

37.12.1 Description

`TSimpleIPCServer` is the server side of the simple IPC communication protocol. The server program should create a `TSimpleIPCServer` instance, set its `ServerID` (863) property to a unique name for the system, and then set the `Active` (863) property to `True` (or call `StartServer` (868)).

After the server was started, it can check for availability of messages with the `PeekMessage` (868) call, and read the message with `ReadMessage` (869).

See also: [TSimpleIPCClient \(863\)](#), [TSimpleIPC \(862\)](#), [TIPCServerComm \(855\)](#)

37.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
867	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TSimpleIPCServer</code> .
867	Destroy	Remove the <code>TSimpleIPCServer</code> instance from memory.
869	GetMessageData	Read the data of the last message in a stream.
868	PeekMessage	Check if a client message is available.
869	ReadMessage	Read message from the queue.
868	StartServer	Start the server.
868	StopServer	Stop the server.

37.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
871	Global	rw	Is the server reachable to all users or not.
870	InstanceID	r	Instance ID.
873	MaxAction	rw	Action to take when the number of messages will exceed <code>MaxQueue</code> .
872	MaxQueue	rw	Maximum number of messages in the queue, 0 for unlimited.
870	Message	r	Last read message.
870	MsgData	r	Last message data.
870	MsgType	r	Last message type.
871	OnMessage	rw	Event triggered when a message arrives.
872	OnMessageError	rw	Event called when a new message has arrived, and the queue is full.
872	OnMessageQueued	rw	Event called when a new message has arrived.
872	OnThreadError	rw	Triggered when a thread reports an error.
869	StringMessage	r	Last message as a string.
874	SynchronizeEvents	rw	Should events be run in the main thread ?
873	Threaded	rw	Is the server running threaded or not ?
871	ThreadError	r	Last thread error.
871	ThreadExecuting	r	Is the message thread currently executing ?
873	ThreadTimeout	rw	Timeout waiting for message.

37.12.4 TSimpleIPCServer.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TSimpleIPCServer`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TSimpleIPCServer` class. It initializes the data structures needed to handle the server side of the communication.

See also: `Destroy` ([867](#))

37.12.5 TSimpleIPCServer.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TSimpleIPCServer` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` stops the server, cleans up the internal data structures maintained by `TSimpleIPCServer` and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, which will remove the instance from memory.

Never call `Destroy` directly, use the `Free` method instead or the `FreeAndNil` procedure in `SysUtils`.

See also: `Create` (867)

37.12.6 TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer

Synopsis: Start the server.

Declaration: `procedure StartServer`
`procedure StartServer(AThreaded: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartServer` starts the server side of the communication channel. It is called automatically when the `Active` property is set to `True`. It creates the internal communication object (a `TIPCServerComm` (855) descendent) and activates the communication channel.

The `aThreaded` property can be used to force or disable threaded mode: in threaded mode, a thread is started that automatically checks for new messages and puts them on a queue. If the argument is not specified, then the property `TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded` (873) is examined to know whether to start in threaded mode or not.

After this method was called, clients can connect and send messages.

Prior to calling this method, the `ServerID` (863) property must be set.

Errors: If an error occurs a `EIPCErr` (853) exception may be raised.

See also: `TIPCServerComm` (855), `Active` (863), `ServerID` (863), `StopServer` (868), `TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded` (873)

37.12.7 TSimpleIPCServer.StopServer

Synopsis: Stop the server.

Declaration: `procedure StopServer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopServer` stops the server side of the communication channel. It is called automatically when the `Active` property is set to `False`. It deactivates the communication channel and frees the internal communication object (a `TIPCServerComm` (855) descendent).

See also: `TIPCServerComm` (855), `Active` (863), `ServerID` (863), `StartServer` (868)

37.12.8 TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage

Synopsis: Check if a client message is available.

Declaration: `function PeekMessage(Timeout: Integer; DoReadMessage: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PeekMessage` checks if a message from a client is available. It will return `True` if a message is available. The call will wait for `Timeout` milliseconds for a message to arrive: if after `Timeout` milliseconds, no message is available, the function will return `False`.

If `DoReadMessage` is `True` then `PeekMessage` will read the message. If it is `False`, it does not read the message. The message should then be read manually with `ReadMessage` (869).

See also: `ReadMessage` (869)

37.12.9 TSimpleIPCServer.ReadMessage

Synopsis: Read message from the queue.

Declaration: `function ReadMessage : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadMessage` will read the oldest message from the queue, and make it available in `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType` (870) and `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData` (870)

It is safe to call this even if a watch thread is started.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType` (870), `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData` (870)

37.12.10 TSimpleIPCServer.GetMessageData

Synopsis: Read the data of the last message in a stream.

Declaration: `procedure GetMessageData(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetMessageData` reads the data of the last message from `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData` (870) and stores it in stream `Stream`. If no data was available, the stream will be cleared.

This function will return valid data only after a successful call to `ReadMessage` (869). It will also not clear the data buffer.

See also: `StringMessage` (869), `MsgData` (870), `MsgType` (870)

37.12.11 TSimpleIPCServer.StringMessage

Synopsis: Last message as a string.

Declaration: `Property StringMessage : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `StringMessage` is the content of the last message as a string.

This property will contain valid data only after a successful call to `ReadMessage` (869).

See also: `GetMessageData` (869)

37.12.12 TSimpleIPCServer.Message

Synopsis: Last read message.

Declaration: `Property Message : TIPCServerMsg`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Message` is the last read message (using `TSimpleIPCServer.ReadMessage` (869)) from the message queue.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.ReadMessage` (869)

37.12.13 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType

Synopsis: Last message type.

Declaration: `Property MsgType : TMessageType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `MsgType` contains the message type of the last message.

This property will contain valid data only after a successful call to `ReadMessage` (869).

See also: `ReadMessage` (869)

37.12.14 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData

Synopsis: Last message data.

Declaration: `Property MsgData : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `MsgData` contains the actual data from the last read message. If the data is a string, then `StringMessage` (869) is better suited to read the data.

This property will contain valid data only after a successful call to `ReadMessage` (869).

See also: `StringMessage` (869), `ReadMessage` (869)

37.12.15 TSimpleIPCServer.InstanceID

Synopsis: Instance ID.

Declaration: `Property InstanceID : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `InstanceID` is the unique identifier for this server communication channel endpoint, and will be appended to the `ServerID` (863) property to form the unique server endpoint which a client should use.

See also: `ServerID` (863), `Global` (871)

37.12.16 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadExecuting

Synopsis: Is the message thread currently executing ?

Declaration: `Property ThreadExecuting : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ThreadExecuting` is true if the server is currently running a message loop in a thread and the thread is in an executing state.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError` (871), `TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer` (868), `TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError` (872), `TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded` (873)

37.12.17 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError

Synopsis: Last thread error.

Declaration: `Property ThreadError : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ThreadError` is the last error reported by the thread (or none if no error was caught).

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadExecuting` (871), `TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer` (868), `TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError` (872), `TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded` (873)

37.12.18 TSimpleIPCServer.Global

Synopsis: Is the server reachable to all users or not.

Declaration: `Property Global : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Global` indicates whether the server is reachable to all users (`True`) or if it is private to the current process (`False`). In the latter case, the unique channel endpoint identification may change: a unique identification of the current process is appended to the `ServerID` name.

See also: `ServerID` (863), `InstanceID` (870)

37.12.19 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessage

Synopsis: Event triggered when a message arrives.

Declaration: `Property OnMessage : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnMessage` is called by `ReadMessage` (869) when a message has been read. The actual message data can be retrieved with one of the `StringMessage` (869), `MsgData` (870) or `MsgType` (870) properties.

See also: `StringMessage` (869), `MsgData` (870), `MsgType` (870)

37.12.20 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageQueued

Synopsis: Event called when a new message has arrived.

Declaration: Property OnMessageQueued : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnMessageQueued is an event handler that is called whenever a new message is pushed on the queue.

See also: TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage (868), TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageError (872)

37.12.21 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageError

Synopsis: Event called when a new message has arrived, and the queue is full.

Declaration: Property OnMessageError : TMessageQueueEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnMessageError is called whenever the message queue is full and a new message arrives on the server, and MaxAction (862) is ipcmoaError.

37.12.22 TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError

Synopsis: Triggered when a thread reports an error.

Declaration: Property OnThreadError : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnThreadError is triggered when the server thread reports an error. The actual error message can be examined in TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError (871)

See also: TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadExecuting (871), TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer (868), TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError (872), TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError (871), TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded (873)

37.12.23 TSimpleIPCServer.MaxQueue

Synopsis: Maximum number of messages in the queue, 0 for unlimited.

Declaration: Property MaxQueue : Integer

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: MaxQueue is the maximum number of messages in the queue. When this amount is zero, the amount of messages is unlimited.

When a new message is pushed, and the Count (862) is equal to MaxQueue, the MaxAction (873) property is examined to know what to do.

See also: MaxAction (873)

37.12.24 TSimpleIPCServer.MaxAction

Synopsis: Action to take when the number of messages will exceed MaxQueue.

Declaration: `Property MaxAction : TIPCMessagesOverflowAction`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxAction` determines what will happen if the number of messages on the queue equals `MaxQueue` (872) and a new message is put in the queue during `PeekMessage` (868):

Do nothing, just add the message.

Discard the oldest message.

Discard the new message.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.MaxQueue` (872), `TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage` (868), `TIPCMessagesOverflowAction` (851)

37.12.25 TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded

Synopsis: Is the server running threaded or not ?

Declaration: `Property Threaded : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Threaded` indicates whether the server was started in threaded mode or not. It can be set before calling `StartServer` (868). Trying to set it when the server is started will result in an error.

See also: `StartServer` (868)

37.12.26 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadTimeout

Synopsis: Timeout waiting for message.

Declaration: `Property ThreadTimeout : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ThreadTimeOut` is the time the thread will wait for messages between loop iterations, if the server is started with threading enabled.

When stopping the server, this is also the maximum time the server will be blocked when stopping, because it needs to wait for the thread to stop.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer` (868), `TSimpleIPCServer.StopServer` (868)

37.12.27 TSimpleIPCServer.SynchronizeEvents

Synopsis: Should events be run in the main thread ?

Declaration: Property SynchronizeEvents : Boolean

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: SynchronizeEvents can be set to True to force execution of events in the main thread, when the server is running in threaded mode. If set to False, the events will be triggered in the thread responsible for checking messages. It is ignored when the server is not running threaded. It cannot be set when the server is already started.

See also: TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded ([873](#)), StartServer ([868](#))

Chapter 38

Reference for unit 'singleinstance'

38.1 Used units

Table 38.1: Used units by unit 'singleinstance'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

38.2 Overview

`Singleinstance` contains the basic abstract definition of a class `TBaseSingleInstance` (877) that, when instantiated, will make sure only 1 instance of your application will be running. It is an abstract instance, you need to instantiate a descendent such as can be found in the `advancedsingleinstance` (875) unit.

In this document, the first started instance of an application is called the `Server`, any application started later is called a `Client` application.

The single instance functionality also provides a mechanism to communicate parameters from the client to the server. For example, an editor started a second time may wish to pass any filenames to be opened to the server instance.

38.3 Constants, types and variables

38.3.1 Types

```
TBaseSingleInstanceClass = type class(TComponent)
private
    FStartResult
    : TSingleInstanceStart;
    FTimeOutMessages : Integer;
    FTimeOutWaitForInstances
    : Integer;
```

```

    FOnServerReceivedParams : TSingleInstanceParamsEvent
;
protected
    function GetIsClient : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract
;
    function GetIsServer : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract;
    function
    GetStartResult : TSingleInstanceStart; Virtual;
    procedure DoServerReceivedParams
    (const aParamsDelimitedText: string);
    procedure SetStartResult (AValue
    : TSingleInstanceStart);
public
    constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent
    ); Override;
    destructor Destroy; Override;
    function Start :
    TSingleInstanceStart; Virtual; Abstract;
    procedure Stop; Virtual
    ; Abstract;
    procedure ServerCheckMessages; Virtual; Abstract
    ;
    procedure ClientPostParams; Virtual; Abstract;
    property TimeOutMessages
    : Integer;
    property TimeOutWaitForInstances : Integer;
    property
    OnServerReceivedParams : TSingleInstanceParamsEvent;
    property StartResult
    : TSingleInstanceStart;
    property IsServer : Boolean;
    property
    IsClient : Boolean;
end

```

TBaseSingleInstanceClass is the class of TBaseSingleInstance (877). It is also the type of the DefaultSingleInstanceClass (877) variable.

```

TSingleInstanceParamsEvent = procedure(Sender: TBaseSingleInstance
;
                                Params: TStringList) of
    object

```

This callback type is the signature of the TBaseSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedParams (880) event in case the server receives parameters from a newly started client.

Sender The TBaseSingleInstance which fired the event.

Params The client-provided parameters received by TBaseSingleInstance.

```

TSingleInstanceStart = (siServer, siClient, siNotResponding)

```

Table 38.2: Enumeration values for type `TSingleInstanceStart`

Value	Explanation
<code>siClient</code>	The current instance is the client (another instance was started earlier).
<code>siNotResponding</code>	The first instance is not responding.
<code>siServer</code>	The current instance is the server (first started).

`TSingleInstanceStart` is used to determine which kind of application the currently running application is.

siServer The current instance is the server (first started).

siClient The current instance is the client (another instance was started earlier).

siNotResponding The first instance is not responding.

38.3.2 Variables

```
DefaultSingleInstanceClass : TBaseSingleInstanceClass = Nil
```

`DefaultSingleInstanceClass` can be set to a class that implements the abstract methods of `TBaseSingleInstance` (877). It can be used by applications to instantiate a class without referring directly to that class.

38.4 ESingleInstance

38.4.1 Description

`ESingleInstance` is used to report errors in the single instance implementation(s).

38.5 TBaseSingleInstance

38.5.1 Description

`TBaseSingleInstance` is the abstract parent for classes that allow you to control the instances of your application. You must never instantiate `TBaseSingleInstance` directly, instead, use for example the `TAdvancedSingleInstance` (96) class.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance` (96), `advancedsingleinstance` (95)

38.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
879	<code>ClientPostParams</code>	Send parameters to the server.
878	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TBaseSingleInstance</code> class.
878	<code>Destroy</code>	Stop waiting and destroy the instance.
879	<code>ServerCheckMessages</code>	Check for messages from a client application.
878	<code>Start</code>	Check if another instance of the application is running.
879	<code>Stop</code>	Stop the current instance.

38.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
881	IsClient	r	Is this application the client instance ?
880	IsServer	r	Is this application the server instance ?
880	OnServerReceivedParams	rw	Event triggered during ServerCheckMessages.
880	StartResult	r	Contains the result of the last Start call.
879	TimeOutMessages	rw	Timeout when waiting for messages.
880	TimeOutWaitForInstances	rw	Timeout when trying to contact server instance.

38.5.4 TBaseSingleInstance.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TBaseSingleInstance class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes some properties `TimeOutMessages` ([879](#)) and `TimeOutWaitForInstances` ([880](#))

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.Destroy` ([878](#)), `TimeOutMessages` ([879](#)), `TimeOutWaitForInstances` ([880](#))

38.5.5 TBaseSingleInstance.Destroy

Synopsis: Stop waiting and destroy the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `Stop` ([879](#)) and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `Stop` ([879](#))

38.5.6 TBaseSingleInstance.Start

Synopsis: Check if another instance of the application is running.

Declaration: `function Start : TSingleInstanceStart; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Start` will check if another instance is running. It returns the result of the check, and the result is also stored in `StartResult` ([880](#))

siServerThe current instance is the server (first started).

siClientThe current instance is the client (another instance was started earlier).

siNotRespondingThe first instance is not responding.

See also: `StartResult` ([880](#)), `TSingleInstanceStart` ([876](#))

38.5.7 TBaseSingleInstance.Stop

Synopsis: Stop the current instance.

Declaration: `procedure Stop; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Stop` will disable the communication mechanism that ensures only a single instance is running. After it has been called in the server application, if another application calls `Start` (878), then it will become the server (i.e. the result is `siServer`). If it is called in a client application, there is no effect.

See also: `Start` (878)

38.5.8 TBaseSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages

Synopsis: Check for messages from a client application.

Declaration: `procedure ServerCheckMessages; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerCheckMessages` must be called at regular intervals by the server application to see if any client application sent messages (using `TBaseSingleInstance.ClientPostParams` (879)). This is part of the mechanism to communicate parameters from the client to the server. If there are any messages, then the `OnServerReceivedParams` (880) event will be triggered once for any client that sent parameters.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.ClientPostParams` (879)

38.5.9 TBaseSingleInstance.ClientPostParams

Synopsis: Send parameters to the server.

Declaration: `procedure ClientPostParams; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClientPostParams` must be called to send the client command-line parameters to the server application. The mechanism used to send these parameters depends on the used descendent of the `TBaseSingleInstance` (877) class.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages` (879)

38.5.10 TBaseSingleInstance.TimeOutMessages

Synopsis: Timeout when waiting for messages.

Declaration: `Property TimeOutMessages : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `TimeOutMessages` is the timeout (in milliseconds) used by `ServerCheckMessages` (879) when checking for messages sent by client applications.

See also: `ServerCheckMessages` (879), `TimeOutWaitForInstances` (880)

38.5.11 TBaseSingleInstance.TimeoutWaitForInstances

Synopsis: Timeout when trying to contact server instance.

Declaration: `Property TimeoutWaitForInstances : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `TimeoutMessages` is the timeout (in milliseconds) used by `Start` (878) call when checking for another instance of the application.

See also: `Start` (878), `TimeoutMessages` (879)

38.5.12 TBaseSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedParams

Synopsis: Event triggered during `ServerCheckMessages`.

Declaration: `Property OnServerReceivedParams : TSingleInstanceParamsEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnServerReceivedParams` is the event triggered when `ServerCheckMessages` (879) is called, and a client sent a message to the server. The `Params` parameter contains the commandline parameters that the client sent, one per string in the list.

38.5.13 TBaseSingleInstance.StartResult

Synopsis: Contains the result of the last `Start` call.

Declaration: `Property StartResult : TSingleInstanceStart`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `StartResult` contains the result of the last `Start` (878) call.

See also: `Start` (878)

38.5.14 TBaseSingleInstance.IsServer

Synopsis: Is this application the server instance ?

Declaration: `Property IsServer : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsServer` is a convenience property, it is `True` if `StartResult` (880) equals `siServer`.

See also: `IsClient` (881), `Start` (878), `StartResult` (880)

38.5.15 TBaseSingleInstance.IsClient

Synopsis: Is this application the client instance ?

Declaration: `Property IsClient : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsClient` is a convenience property, it is `True` if `StartResult` (880) equals `siClient`.

See also: `IsServer` (880), `Start` (878), `StartResult` (880)

Chapter 39

Reference for unit 'SQLDB'

39.1 Used units

Table 39.1: Used units by unit 'SQLDB'

Name	Page
BufDataset	145
Classes	??
DB	361
sqlscript	??
SQLTypes	963
System	??
sysutils	??

39.2 Overview

The SQLDB unit defines four main classes to handle data in SQL based databases.

1. TSQLConnection ([914](#)) represents the connection to the database. Here, properties pertaining to the connection (machine, database, user password) must be set. This is an abstract class, which should not be used directly. Per database type (mysql, firebird, postgres, oracle, sqlite) a descendent should be made and used.
2. TSQLQuery ([929](#)) is a `#fcl.db.TDataset` ([425](#)) descendent which can be used to view and manipulate the result of an SQL select query. It can also be used to execute all kinds of SQL statements.
3. TSQLTransaction ([958](#)) represents the transaction in which an SQL command is running. SQLDB supports multiple simultaneous transactions in a database connection. For databases that do not support this functionality natively, it is simulated by maintaining multiple connections to the database.
4. TSQLScript ([945](#)) can be used when many SQL commands must be executed on a database, for example when creating a database.

There is also a unified way to retrieve schema information, and a registration for connector types. More information on how to use these components can be found in UsingSQLDB ([883](#)).

39.3 Using SQLDB to access databases.

SQLDB can be used to connect to any SQL capable database. It allows to execute SQL statements on any supported database type in a uniform way, and allows to fetch and manipulate result sets (such as returned by a `SELECT` statement) using a standard `TDataset` (425) interface. SQLDB takes care that updates to the database are posted automatically to the database, in a cached manner.

When using SQLDB, 3 components are always needed:

1. A `TSQLConnection` (914) descendent. This represents the connection to the database: the location of the database, and the username and password to authenticate the connection must be specified here. For each supported database type (Firebird, PostgreSQL, MySQL) there is a separate connection component. They all descend from `TSQLConnection`.
2. A `TSQLTransaction` (958) component. SQLDB allows you to have multiple active but independent transactions in your application. (useful for instance in middle-tier applications). If the native database client library does not support this directly, it is emulated using multiple connections to the database.
3. A `TSQLQuery` (929) component. This encapsulates an SQL statement. Any kind of SQL statement can be executed. The `TSQLQuery` component is a `TDataset` descendent: If the statement returns a result set, then it can be manipulated using the usual `TDataset` mechanisms.

The 3 components must be linked together: the connection must point to a default transaction (it is used to execute certain queries for metadata), the transaction component must point to a connection component. The `TSQLQuery` component must point to both a transaction and a database.

So in order to view the contents of a table, typically the procedure goes like this:

```
{ $mode objfpc } { $h+ }
uses sqlldb, ibconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  // Create a connection.
  C:=TIBConnection.Create( Nil );
  try
    // Set credentials.
    C.UserName:='MyUSER';
    C.Password:='Secret';
    C.DatabaseName:='/home/firebird/events.fb';
    // Create a transaction.
    T:=TSQLTransaction.Create( C );
    // Point to the database instance
    T.Database:=C;
    // Now we can open the database.
    C.Connected:=True;
    // Create a query to return data
    Q:=TSQLQuery.Create( C );
    // Point to database and transaction.
```

```

Q.Database:=C;
Q.Transaction:=T;
// Set the SQL select statement
Q.SQL.Text:='SELECT * FROM USERS';
// And now use the standard TDataset methods.
Q.Open;
While not Q.EOF do
begin
  Writeln(Q.FieldName('U_NAME').AsString);
  Q.Next;
end;
Q.Close;
finally
  C.Free;
end;
end.

```

The above code is quite simple. The connection type is `TIBConnection`, which is used for Firebird/Interbase databases. To connect to another database (for instance PostgreSQL), the exact same code could be used, but instead of a `TIBConnection`, a `TPQConnection` component must be used:

```

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}
uses sqlldb, pqconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  // Create a connection.
  C:=TPQConnection.Create( Nil );

```

The rest of the code remains identical.

The above code used an SQL SELECT statement and the `Open` method to fetch data from the database. Almost the same method applies when trying to execute other kinds of queries, such as DDL queries:

```

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}
uses sqlldb, ibconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  C:=TIBConnection.Create( Nil );
  try
    C.UserName:='MyUSER';
    C.Password:='Secret';
    C.DatabaseName:='/home/firebird/events.fb';

```

```

T:=TSQLTransaction.Create(C);
T.Database:=C;
C.Connected:=True;
Q:=TSQLQuery.Create(C);
Q.Database:=C;
Q.Transaction:=T;
// Set the SQL statement. SQL is a tstrings instance.
With Q.SQL do
begin
Add('CREATE TABLE USERS ( ');
Add(' U_NAME VARCHAR(50), ');
Add(' U_PASSWORD VARCHAR(50) ');
Add(' ) ');
end;
// And now execute the query using ExecSQL
// There is no result, so Open cannot be used.
Q.ExecSQL;
// Commit the transaction.
T.Commit;
finally
C.Free;
end;
end.

```

As can be seen from the above example, the setup is the same as in the case of fetching data. Note that `TSQLQuery` (929) can only execute 1 SQL statement during `ExecSQL`. If many SQL statements must be executed, `TSQLScript` (945) must be used.

There is much more to `TSQLQuery` than explained here: it can use parameters (see `UsingParams` (887)) and it can automatically update the data that you edit in it (see `UpdateSQLs` (886)).

See also: `TSQLConnection` (914), `TSQLTransaction` (958), `TSQLQuery` (929), `TSQLConnector` (925), `TSQLScript` (945), `UsingParams` (887), `UpdateSQLs` (886)

39.4 Using the universal `TSQLConnector` type.

The normal procedure when using `SQLDB` is to use one of the `TSQLConnection` (914) descendent components. When the database backend changes, another descendent of `TSQLConnection` must be used. When using a lot of different connection types and components, this may be confusing and a lot of work.

There is a universal connector component `TSQLConnector` (925) which can connect to any database supported by `SQLDB`: it works as a proxy. Behind the scenes it uses a normal `TSQLConnection` descendent to do the real work. All this happens transparently to the user code, the universal connector acts and works like any normal connection component.

The type of database can be set in its `ConnectorType` (926) property. By setting the `ConnectorType` property, the connector knows which `TSQLConnection` descendent must be created.

Each `TSQLConnection` descendent registers itself with a unique name in the initialization section of the unit implementing it: this is the name that should be specified in the `ConnectorType` of the universal connection. The list of available connections can be retrieved with the `GetConnectionList` (901) call.

From this mechanism it follows that before a particular connection type can be used, its definition must be present in the list of connector types. This means that the unit of the connection type

(`ibconnection`, `pqconnection` etc.) must be included in the `uses` clause of the program file: if it is not included, the connection type will not be registered, and it will not be available for use in the universal connector.

The universal connector only exposes the properties common to all connection types (the ones in `TSQLConnection`). It does not expose properties for all the properties available in specific `TSQLConnection` descendents. This means that if connection-specific options must be used, they must be included in the `Params` (925) property of the universal connector in the form `Name=Value`. When the actual connection instance is created, the connection-specific properties will be set from the specified parameters.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (914), `TSQLConnector` (925)

39.5 Retrieving Schema Information.

Schema Information (lists of available database objects) can be retrieved using some specialized calls in `TSQLConnection` (914):

- `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (917) retrieves a list of available tables. The system tables can be requested.
- `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (917) retrieves a list of available stored procedures.
- `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (918) retrieves a list of fields for a given table.

These calls are pretty straightforward and need little explanation. A more versatile system is the schema info query: the `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (908) method can be used to create a result set (dataset) with schema information. The parameter `SchemaType` determines the resulting information when the dataset is opened. The following information can be requested:

stTables Retrieves the list of user Tables in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (917).

stSysTables Retrieves the list of system Tables in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (917) when the system tables are requested

stProcedures Retrieves a list of stored procedures in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (917).

stColumns Retrieves the list of columns (fields) in a table. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (918).

stProcedureParams This retrieves the parameters for a stored procedure.

stIndexes Retrieves the indexes for one or more tables. (currently not implemented)

stPackages Retrieves packages for databases that support them. (currently not implemented).

39.6 Automatic generation of update SQL statements.

SQLDB (more in particular, `TSQLQuery` (929)) can automatically generate update statements for the data it fetches. To this end, it will scan the SQL statement and determine the main table in the query: this is the first table encountered in the `FROM` part of the `SELECT` statement.

For INSERT and UPDATE operations, the SQL statement will update/insert all fields that have `pfInUpdate` in their `ProviderFlags` property. Read-only fields will not be added to the SQL statement. Fields that are NULL will not be added to an insert query, which means that the database server will insert whatever is in the `DEFAULT` clause of the corresponding field definition.

The WHERE clause for update and delete statements consists of all fields with `pfInKey` in their `ProviderFlags` property. Depending on the value of the `UpdateMode` (942) property, additional fields may be added to the WHERE clause:

upWhereKeyOnly No additional fields are added: only fields marked with `pfInKey` are used in the WHERE clause

upWhereChanged All fields whose value changed are added to the WHERE clause, using their old value.

upWhereAll All fields are added to the WHERE clause, using their old value.

In order to let SQLDB generate correct statements, it is important to set the `ProviderFlags` (501) properties correct for all fields.

In many cases, for example when only a single table is queried, and no AS field aliases are used, setting `TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (942) combined with `UpdateMode` equal to `upWhereKeyOnly` is sufficient.

If the automatically generated queries are not correct, it is possible to specify the SQL statements to be used in the `UpdateSQL` (938), `InsertSQL` (938) and `DeleteSQL` (939) properties. The new field values should be specified using params with the same name as the field. The old field values should be specified using the `OLD_` prefix to the field name. The following example demonstrates this:

```
INSERT INTO MYTABLE
  (MYFIELD,MYFIELD2)
VALUES
  (:MYFIELD, :MYFIELD2);

UPDATE MYTABLE SET
  MYFIELD=:MYFIELD
  MYFIELD2=:MYFIELD2
WHERE
  (MYFIELD=:OLD_MYFIELD);

DELETE FROM MYTABLE WHERE (MyField=:OLD_MYFIELD);
```

See also: `UsingParams` (887), `TSQLQuery` (929), `UpdateSQL` (938), `InsertSQL` (938), `DeleteSQL` (938)

39.7 Using parameters.

SQLDB implements parameterized queries, simulating them if the native SQL client does not support parameterized queries. A parameterized query means that the SQL statement contains placeholders for actual values. The following is a typical example:

```
SELECT * FROM MyTable WHERE (id=:id)
```

The `:id` is a parameter with the name `id`. It does not contain a value yet. The value of the parameter will be specified separately. In SQLDB this happens through the `TParams` collection, where each element of the collection is a named parameter, specified in the SQL statement. The value can be specified as follows:


```
Params.ParamByname('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

This will tell SQLDB that the parameter `id` is of type integer, and has value 123.

SQLDB uses parameters for 3 purposes:

1. When executing a query multiple times, simply with different values, this helps increase the speed if the server supports parameterized queries: the query must be prepared only once.
2. Master-Detail relationships between datasets can be established based on a parameterized detail query: the value of the parameters in the detail query is automatically obtained from fields with the same names in the master dataset. As the user scrolls through the master dataset, the detail dataset is refreshed with the new values of the params.
3. Updating of data in the database happens through parameterized update/delete/insert statements: the `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (938), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (939), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (938) properties of `TSQLQuery` (929) must contain parameterized queries.

An additional advantage of using parameters is that they help to avoid SQL injection: by specifying a parameter type and value, SQLDB will automatically check whether the value is of the correct type, and will apply proper quoting when the native engine does not support parameters directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Params` (940), `UpdateSQLs` (886)

39.8 Constants, types and variables

39.8.1 Constants

```
DefaultMacroChar = '%'
```

`DefaultMacroChar` is the default macro delimiter to use in `TSQLQuery` (929)

```
DefaultSQLFormatSettings : TFormatSettings = (CurrencyFormat: 1; NegCurrFormat
      : 5; ThousandSeparator: #0; DecimalSeparator: '.'; CurrencyDecimals
      : 2; DateSeparator: '-'; TimeSeparator: ':'; ListSeparator: ' '; CurrencyString
      : '$'; ShortDateFormat: 'yyyy-mm-dd'; LongDateFormat: ''; TimeAMString
      : ''; TimePMString: ''; ShortTimeFormat: 'hh:nn:ss'; LongTimeFormat
      : 'hh:nn:ss.zzz'; ShortMonthNames: ('', '', '', '', '', '', '',
      , '', '', '', ''); LongMonthNames: ('', '', '', '', '', '', '',
      , '', '', '', ''); ShortDayNames: ('', '', '', '', '', '',
      , ''); LongDayNames
      : ('', '', '', '', '', '',
      , ''); TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow: 50)
```

`DefaultSQLFormatSettings` contains the default settings used when formatting date/time and other special values in Update SQL statements generated by the various `TSQLConnection` (914) descendents.

```
detActualSQL = sqltypes.detActualSQL
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detActualSQL`.

```
detCommit = sqltypes.detCommit
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detCommit`.

```
detCustom = sqltypes.detCustom
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detCustom`.

```
detExecute = sqltypes.detExecute
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detExecute`.

```
detFetch = sqltypes.detFetch
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detFetch`.

```
detParamValue = sqltypes.detParamValue
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detParamValue`.

```
detPrepare = sqltypes.detPrepare
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detPrepare`.

```
detRollBack = sqltypes.detRollBack
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detRollBack`.

```
DoubleQuotes : TQuoteChars = ('"', '"')
```

`DoubleQuotes` is the set of delimiters used when using double quotes for string literals.

```
LogAllEvents = [detCustom, detPrepare, detExecute, detFetch, detCommit,
                , detRollBack]
```

`LogAllEvents` is a constant that contains the full set of available event types. It can be used to set `TSQLConnection.LogEvents` ([923](#)).

```
LogAllEventsExtra = [detCustom, detPrepare, detExecute, detFetch,
                    detCommit, detRollBack, detParamValue, detActualSQL]
```

`LogAllEventsExtra` lists all possible even types that can be reported using the connection logging mechanism.

```
SingleQuotes : TQuoteChars = (''', ''')
```

`SingleQuotes` is the set of delimiters used when using single quotes for string literals.

```
StatementTokens : = Array[TStatementType] of string = ('(unknown)',
                , 'select', 'insert', 'update', 'delete', 'create', 'get', 'put',
                'execute', 'start', 'commit', 'rollback', '?')
```

`StatementTokens` contains an array of string tokens that are used to detect the type of statement, usually the first SQL keyword of the token. The presence of this token in the SQL statement determines the kind of token.

`stColumns = sqltypes.stColumns`

Alias for `sqltypes.stColumns`.

`stCommit = sqltypes.stCommit`

Alias for `sqltypes.stCommit`.

`stDDL = sqltypes.stDDL`

Alias for `sqltypes.stDDL`.

`stDelete = sqltypes.stDelete`

Alias for `sqltypes.stDelete`.

`stExecProcedure = sqltypes.stExecProcedure`

Alias for `sqltypes.stExecProcedure`.

`stGetSegment = sqltypes.stGetSegment`

Alias for `sqltypes.stGetSegment`.

`stIndexes = sqltypes.stIndexes`

Alias for `sqltypes.stIndexes`.

`stInsert = sqltypes.stInsert`

Alias for `sqltypes.stInsert`.

`stNoSchema = sqltypes.stNoSchema`

Alias for `sqltypes.stUnknown`.

`stPackages = sqltypes.stPackages`

Alias for `sqltypes.stPackages`.

`stProcedureParams = sqltypes.stProcedureParams`

Alias for `sqltypes.stProcedureParams`.

`stProcedures = sqltypes.stProcedures`

Alias for `sqltypes.stProcedures`.

`stPutSegment = sqltypes.stPutSegment`

Alias for `sqltypes.stPutSegment`.

```
stRollback = sqltypes.stRollback
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stRollback`.

```
stSchemata = sqltypes.stSchemata
```

`stSchemata` is a convenience alias for `#fcl.sqlTypes.stSchemata` (963).

```
stSelect = sqltypes.stSelect
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stSelect`.

```
stSelectForUpd = sqltypes.stSelectForUpd
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stSelectForUpd`.

```
stSequences = sqltypes.stSequences
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stSequences`.

```
stStartTrans = sqltypes.stStartTrans
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stStartTrans`.

```
stSysTables = sqltypes.stSysTables
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stSysTables`.

```
stTables = sqltypes.stTables
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stTables`.

```
stUnknown = sqltypes.stUnknown
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stUnknown`.

```
stUpdate = sqltypes.stUpdate
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stUpdate`.

```
TSchemaObjectNames : = Array[TSchemaType] of string = ('???' , 'table_name'
  , '???' , 'procedure_name' , 'column_name' , 'param_name' , 'index_name'
  , 'package_name' , 'schema_name' , 'sequence')
```

Names of the various types of objects.

39.8.2 Types

```
TCommitRollbackAction = (caNone, caCommit, caCommitRetaining, caRollback
,
                        caRollbackRetaining)
```

Table 39.2: Enumeration values for type TCommitRollbackAction

Value	Explanation
caCommit	Commit transaction.
caCommitRetaining	Commit transaction, retaining transaction context.
caNone	Do nothing.
caRollback	Rollback transaction.
caRollbackRetaining	Rollback transaction, retaining transaction context.

TCommitRollbackAction is currently unused in SQLDB.

```
TConnectionDefClass = type class(TPersistent)
  class function TypeName
    : string; Virtual;
  class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass
    ; Virtual;
  class function Description : string; Virtual;
  class
    function DefaultLibraryName : string; Virtual;
  class function
    LoadFunction : TLibraryLoadFunction; Virtual;
  class function UnLoadFunction
    : TLibraryUnLoadFunction; Virtual;
  class function LoadedLibraryName
    : string; Virtual;
  procedure ApplyParams(Params: TStrings; AConnection
    : TSQLConnection)
    ; Virtual;
end
```

TConnectionDefClass is used in the RegisterConnection (901) call to register a new TConnectionDef (903) instance.

```
TConnInfoType = (citAll, citServerType, citServerVersion,
citServerVersionString, citClientName, citClientVersion)
```

Table 39.3: Enumeration values for type TConnInfoType

Value	Explanation
citAll	All connection information.
citClientName	Client library name.
citClientVersion	Client library version.
citServerType	Server type description.
citServerVersion	Server version as an integer number.
citServerVersionString	Server version as a string.

Connection information to be retrieved.

```
TConnOption = (sqSupportParams, sqSupportEmptyDatabaseName, sqEscapeSlash
,
    sqEscapeRepeat, sqImplicitTransaction, sqLastInsertID
,
    sqSupportReturning, sqSequences, sqCommitEndsPrepared
,
    sqRollbackEndsPrepared)
```

Table 39.4: Enumeration values for type TConnOption

Value	Explanation
sqCommitEndsPrepared	
sqEscapeRepeat	Escapes in string literals are done by repeating the character.
sqEscapeSlash	Escapes in string literals are done with backslash characters.
sqImplicitTransaction	Does the connection support implicit transaction management.
sqLastInsertID	Does the connection support getting the ID for the last insert operation.
sqRollbackEndsPrepared	
sqSequences	Are sequences supported.
sqSupportEmptyDatabaseName	Does the connection allow empty database names ?
sqSupportParams	The connection type has native support for parameters.
sqSupportReturning	The connection type supports INSERT/UPDATE with RETURNING clause.

This type describes some of the option that a particular connection type supports.

```
TConnOptions = Set of TConnOption = (sqCommitEndsPrepared, sqEscapeRepeat
, sqEscapeSlash,
    sqImplicitTransaction, sqLastInsertID
,
    sqRollbackEndsPrepared, sqSequences,
    sqSupportEmptyDatabaseName, sqSupportParams,
    sqSupportReturning
)
```

TConnOptions describes the full set of options defined by a database.

```
TDBEventType = type sqltypes.TDBEventType
```

TDBEventType describes the type of a database event message as generated by TSQLConnection (914) through the TSQLConnection.OnLog (922) event.

```
TDBEventTypes = type sqltypes.TDBEventTypes
```

TDBEventTypes is a set of TDBEventType (893) values, which is used to filter the set of event messages that should be sent. The TSQLConnection.LogEvents (923) property determines which events a particular connection will send.

```
TDBLogNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TSQLConnection;
    EventType: TDBEventType;
    const Msg: string) of object
```

TDBLogNotifyEvent is the prototype for the TSQLConnection.OnLog (922) event handler and for the global GlobalDBLogHook (901) event handling hook. Sender will contain the TSQLConnection (914) instance that caused the event, EventType will contain the event type, and Msg will contain the actual message: the content depends on the type of the message.

```
TLibraryLoadFunction = function(const S: AnsiString) : Integer
```

TLibraryLoadFunction is the function prototype for dynamically loading a library when the universal connection component is used. It receives the name of the library to load (S), and should return True if the library was successfully loaded. It is used in the connection definition.

```
TLibraryUnloadFunction = procedure
```

TLibraryUnloadFunction is the function prototype for dynamically unloading a library when the universal connection component is used. It has no parameters, and should simply unload the library loaded with TLibraryLoadFunction (894)

```
TQuoteChars = type sqltypes.TQuoteChars
```

TQuoteChars is an array of characters that describes the used delimiters for string values.

```
TRowCount = type Int64
```

A type to contain a result row count.

```
TSchemaType = type sqltypes.TSchemaType
```

TSchemaType describes which schema information to retrieve in the TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo (908) call. Depending on its value, the result set of the dataset will have different fields, describing the requested schema data. The result data will always have the same structure.

```
TSQLConnectionClass = type class(TDatabase)
private
```

```
  FFieldNameQuoteChars
  : TQuoteChars;
  FOptions : TSQLConnectionOptions;
  FPassword :
  string = type string;
  FTransaction : TSQLTransaction;
  FUserName
  : string = type string;
  FHostName : string = type string;
  FCharSet
  : string = type string;
  FCodePage : TSystemCodePage;
  FRole :
  string = type string;
  FStatements : TThreadList;
  FLogEvents
  : TDBEventTypes;
  FOnLog : TDBLogNotifyEvent;
  function GetPort
```

```

: Cardinal;
procedure SetOptions(AValue: TSQLConnectionOptions
);
procedure SetPort(const AValue: Cardinal);
function AttemptCommit
(trans: TSQLHandle) : Boolean;
function AttemptRollBack(trans: TSQLHandle
) : Boolean;
protected
FConnOptions : TConnOptions;
FSQLFormatSettings
: TFormatSettings;
procedure AddFieldToUpdateWherePart(var sql_where
: string;
UpdateMode: TUpdateMode
; F: TField)
; Virtual;
function
ConstructInsertSQL(Query: TCustomSQLQuery;
var ReturningClause: Boolean) : string
; Virtual;
function ConstructUpdateSQL(Query: TCustomSQLQuery
;
var ReturningClause: Boolean) : string
; Virtual;
function ConstructDeleteSQL
(Query: TCustomSQLQuery) : string; Virtual;
function ConstructRefreshSQL
(Query: TCustomSQLQuery;
UpdateKind
: TUpdateKind) : string; Virtual;
function CreateCustomQuery(aOwner
: TComponent) : TCustomSQLQuery
; Virtual
;
function InitialiseUpdateStatement(Query: TCustomSQLQuery;
var qry: TCustomSQLQuery)
: TCustomSQLQuery;
procedure ApplyFieldUpdate
(C: TSQLCursor; P: TSQLDBParam; F: TField;
UseOldValue: Boolean); Virtual;
procedure ApplyRecUpdate
(Query: TCustomSQLQuery;
UpdateKind: TUpdateKind
); Virtual;
function RefreshLastInsertID(Query: TCustomSQLQuery
; Field: TField)
: Boolean; Virtual
;
procedure GetDBInfo(const ASchemaType: TSchemaType;
const ASchemaObjectName: string;
const AReturnField: string; AList: TStrings);
function PortParamName
: string; Virtual;

```

```

function GetConnectionCharSet : string; Virtual
;
procedure SetTransaction(Value: TSQLTransaction); Virtual;
procedure DoConnect; Override;
procedure DoInternalConnect; Override
;
procedure DoInternalDisconnect; Override;
function GetAsString
  (Param: TParam) : RawByteString;
GetAsSQLText;
function GetHandle
: pointer; Virtual;
function LogEvent (EventType: TDBEventType
) : Boolean;
procedure LogParams(const AParams: TParams); Virtual
;
procedure Log(EventType: TDBEventType; const Msg: string); Virtual
;
procedure RegisterStatement(S: TCustomSQLStatement);
procedure
UnRegisterStatement(S: TCustomSQLStatement);
procedure UnPrepareStatements
(aTransaction: TSQLTransaction);
function AllocateCursorHandle
: TSQLCursor; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure DeAllocateCursorHandle
(var cursor: TSQLCursor); Virtual
; Abstract;
function StrToStatementType(s: string) : TStatementType
; Virtual;
procedure PrepareStatement(cursor: TSQLCursor;
ATransaction: TSQLTransaction; buf: string
;
                                AParams: TParams); Virtual; Abstract
;
procedure UnPrepareStatement(cursor: TSQLCursor); Virtual; Abstract
;
procedure Execute(cursor: TSQLCursor; atransaction: TSQLTransaction
;
                                AParams: TParams); Virtual; Abstract;
function
RowsAffected(cursor: TSQLCursor) : TRowsCount; Virtual;
function
Fetch(cursor: TSQLCursor) : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure
AddFieldDefs(cursor: TSQLCursor; FieldDefs: TFieldDefs)
; Virtual; Abstract;
function AddFieldDef(AFieldDefs
: TFieldDefs; AFieldNo: LongInt;
                                const AName
: string; ADataType: TFieldType;
                                ASize: Integer
; APrecision: Integer;
                                AByteSize: Boolean;

```

```

ARequired: Boolean;
      AReadOnly: Boolean) :
TFieldDef;
function LoadField(cursor: TSQLCursor; FieldDef: TFieldDef
;
      buffer: pointer; out CreateBlob: Boolean)
: Boolean
      ; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure LoadBlobIntoBuffer
(FieldDef: TFieldDef;
      ABlobBuf: PBufBlobField
;
      cursor: TSQLCursor;
ATransaction: TSQLTransaction); Virtual
; Abstract;
procedure FreeFldBuffers(cursor
: TSQLCursor); Virtual;
function AllocateTransactionHandle : TSQLHandle
; Virtual; Abstract;
function GetTransactionHandle(trans: TSQLHandle
) : pointer; Virtual
      ; Abstract;
function Commit(trans: TSQLHandle) : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract
;
function RollBack(trans: TSQLHandle) : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract
;
function StartImplicitTransaction(trans: TSQLHandle; aParams:
string)
      : Boolean; Virtual;
function StartDBTransaction(trans: TSQLHandle; aParams: string
)
      : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract;
procedure CommitRetaining(trans: TSQLHandle); Virtual; Abstract
;
procedure RollBackRetaining(trans: TSQLHandle); Virtual; Abstract
;
procedure UpdateIndexDefs(IndexDefs: TIndexDefs; TableName: string
)
      ; Virtual;
function GetSchemaInfoSQL
(SchemaType: TSchemaType;
      SchemaObjectName
: string;
      SchemaPattern: string) : string
; Virtual;
function GetNextValueSQL(const SequenceName: string
;
      IncrementBy: Integer) : string; Virtual
;
procedure MaybeConnect;
property Statements : TThreadList;
property Port : Cardinal;
property CodePage : TSystemCodePage
;

```

```

public
    constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override;
    destructor
    Destroy; Override;
    procedure StartTransaction; Override;
    procedure
    EndTransaction; Override;
    ExecuteDirect;
    function GetObjectNames
    (ASchemaType: TSchemaType;
        AList: TSqLObjectIdentifierList
    ) : Integer
        ; Virtual;
    function HasTable
    (const aTable: string; SearchSystemTables: Boolean)
    : Boolean;
    procedure GetTableNames(List: TStrings; SystemTables
    : Boolean); Virtual;
    procedure GetProcedureNames(List: TStrings
    ); Virtual;
    procedure GetFieldNames(const TableName: string; List
    : TStrings)
        ; Virtual;
    procedure GetSchemaNames
    (List: TStrings); Virtual;
    procedure GetSequenceNames(List: TStrings
    ); Virtual;
    function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType
    ) : string; Virtual;
    function GetStatementInfo(const ASQL: string
    ) : TSQLStatementInfo
        ; Virtual;
    procedure
    CreateDB; Virtual;
    procedure DropDB; Virtual;
    function GetNextValue
    (const SequenceName: string; IncrementBy: Integer)
    : Int64; Virtual;
    property ConnOptions : TConnOptions
    ;
    property Handle : Pointer;
    property FieldNameQuoteChars : TQuoteChars
    ;
published
    property Password : string;
    property Transaction
    : TSQLTransaction;
    property UserName : string;
    property CharSet
    : string;
    property HostName : string;
    property OnLog : TDBLogNotifyEvent
    ;
    property LogEvents : TDBEventTypes;

```

```

property Options : TSQLConnectionOptions
;
property Role : string;
property Connected : ;
property DatabaseName
: ;
property KeepConnection : ;
property LoginPrompt : ;
property
Params : ;
property OnLogin : ;
end

```

TSQLConnectionClass is used when registering a new connection type for use in the universal connector TSQLConnector.ConnectorType (926)

```

TSQLConnectionOption = (scoExplicitConnect,
    scoApplyUpdatesChecksRowsAffected)

```

Table 39.5: Enumeration values for type TSQLConnectionOption

Value	Explanation
scoApplyUpdatesChecksRowsAffected	ApplyUpdates will check that the RowsAffected is 1 after an update.
scoExplicitConnect	Require explicit connection to the database (default is implicit).

TSQLConnectionOption enumerates several options that can be set for TSQLConnection (914) instances using TSQLConnection.Options (923)

```

TSQLConnectionOptions = Set of TSQLConnectionOption = (scoApplyUpdatesChecksRowsAffe
,
    scoExplicitConnect)

```

Set of TSQLConnectionOption.

```

TSQLQueryOption = (sqoKeepOpenOnCommit, sqoAutoApplyUpdates,
    sqoAutoCommit, sqoCancelUpdatesOnRefresh,
    sqoRefreshUsingSelect, sqoNoCloseOnSQLChange)

```

Table 39.6: Enumeration values for type TSQLQueryOption

Value	Explanation
sqoAutoApplyUpdates	Call ApplyUpdates on Post or Delete.
sqoAutoCommit	Call commit after every ApplyUpdates or ExecSQL.
sqoCancelUpdatesOnRefresh	Cancel any pending updates when refresh is called.
sqoKeepOpenOnCommit	Keep the dataset open after the query was committed (will fetch all records).
sqoNoCloseOnSQLChange	
sqoRefreshUsingSelect	Force a refresh using the provided select instead of using RETURNING clause.

`TSQLQueryOption` enumerates several options available to control the behaviour of an `TSQLQuery` (929) instance.

```
TSQLQueryOptions = Set of TSQLQueryOption = (sqoAutoApplyUpdates, sqoAutoCommit
,
sqoCancelUpdatesOnRefresh, sqoKeepOpenOnCommit
,
sqoNoCloseOnSQLChange, sqoRefreshUsingSelect)
```

`TSQLQueryOptions` is the type of the `TSQLQuery.Options` (940) property.

```
TSQLSequenceApplyEvent = (saeOnNewRecord, saeOnPost)
```

Table 39.7: Enumeration values for type `TSQLSequenceApplyEvent`

Value	Explanation
<code>saeOnNewRecord</code>	Fetch an ID when a new record is appended to a dataset.
<code>saeOnPost</code>	Fetch an ID when a new record is posted in the dataset.

`TSQLSequenceApplyEvent` enumerates the moments when a new ID must be fetched for a sequence field.

```
TSQLTransactionOption = (stoUseImplicit, stoExplicitStart)
```

Table 39.8: Enumeration values for type `TSQLTransactionOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>stoExplicitStart</code>	Require explicit start of transactions by <code>TSQLQuery</code> .
<code>stoUseImplicit</code>	Use implicit transaction control if the engine allows it.

`TSQLTransactionOption` enumerates several options that can be used to control the transaction behaviour of `TSQLTransaction` (958).

```
TSQLTransactionOptions = Set of TSQLTransactionOption = (stoExplicitStart
, stoUseImplicit)
```

`TSQLTransactionOptions` is the property type of `TSQLTransaction.Options` (962).

```
TStatementType = type sqltypes.TStatementType
```

`TStatementType` describes the kind of SQL statement that was entered in the `SQL` property of a `TSQLQuery` (929) component.

39.8.3 Variables

```
GlobalDBLogHook : TDBLogNotifyEvent
```

`GlobalDBLogHook` can be set in addition to local `TSQLConnection.Onlog` (922) event handlers. All connections will report events through this global event handler in addition to their `OnLog` event handlers. The global log event handler can be set only once, so when setting the handler, it is important to set up chaining: saving the previous value, and calling the old handler (if it was set) in the new handler.

39.9 Procedures and functions

39.9.1 `GetConnectionDef`

Synopsis: Search for a connection definition by name.

Declaration: `function GetConnectionDef(const ConnectorName: string) : TConnectionDef`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetConnectionDef` will search in the list of connection type definitions, and will return the one definition with the name that matches `ConnectorName`. The search is case insensitive.

If no definition is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `RegisterConnection` (901), `TConnectionDef` (903), `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (903)

39.9.2 `GetConnectionList`

Synopsis: Return a list of connection definition names.

Declaration: `procedure GetConnectionList(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetConnectionList` clears `List` and fills it with the list of currently known connection type names, as registered with `RegisterConnection` (901). The names are the names as returned by `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (903)

See also: `RegisterConnection` (901), `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (903)

39.9.3 `RegisterConnection`

Synopsis: Register a new connection type for use in the universal connector.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterConnection(Def: TConnectionDefClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterConnection` must be called with a class pointer to a `TConnectionDef` (903) descendent to register the connection type described in the `TConnectionDef` (903) descendent. The connection type is registered with the name as returned by `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (903).

The various connection types distributed by Free Pascal automatically call `RegisterConnection` from the `initialization` section of their unit, so simply including the unit with a particular connection type is enough to register it.

Connection types registered with this call can be unregistered with `UnRegisterConnection` (902).

Errors: if `Def` is `Nil`, access violations will occur.

See also: `TConnectionDef` (903), `UnRegisterConnection` (902)

39.9.4 UnRegisterConnection

Synopsis: Unregister a registered connection type.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterConnection(Def: TConnectionDefClass)`
`procedure UnRegisterConnection(const ConnectionName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterConnection` will unregister the connection `Def`. If a connection with `ConnectionName` or with name as returned by the `TypeName` (903) method from `Def` was previously registered, it will be removed from the list of registered connection types.

Errors: if `Def` is `Nil`, access violations will occur.

See also: `TConnectionDef` (903), `RegisterConnection` (901)

39.10 TSQLStatementInfo

```
TSQLStatementInfo = record
  StatementType : TStatementType;
  TableName
  : string = type string;
  Updateable : Boolean;
  WhereStartPos
  : Integer;
  WhereStopPos : Integer;
end
```

`TSQLStatementInfo` is a record used to describe an SQL statement. It is used internally by the `TSQLStatement` (954) and `TSQLQuery` (929) objects to analyse SQL statements.

It is used to be able to modify the SQL statement (for additional filtering) or to determine the table to update when applying dataset updates to the database.

39.11 ESQLError

39.11.1 Description

`ESQLError` is raised by SQLDB routines if the underlying engine raises an error. The error code returned by the engine is contained in `ESQLError.ErrorCode` (??), and an Ansi SQL compliant SQL state can be passed in `ESQLError.SQLState` (??)

See also: `db.ESQLError` (882), `ESQLError.SQLState` (??), `ESQLError.ErrorCode` (??)

39.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
902	<code>CreateFmt</code>	Create a new instance of <code>ESQLError</code> .

39.11.3 ESQLError.CreateFmt

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `ESQLError`.

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmt(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const;
Comp: TComponent; AErrorCode: Integer;
const ASQLState: string); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateFmt` is overloaded in `ESQLDatabaseError` to be able to specify the `ErrorCode` (??) and `SQLState` (??).

See also: `ESQLDatabaseError.ErrorCode` (??), `ESQLDatabaseError.SQLState` (??)

39.12 TConnectionDef

39.12.1 Description

`TConnectionDef` is an abstract class. When registering a new connection type for use in the universal connector, a descendent of this class must be made and registered using `RegisterConnection` (901). A descendent class should override at least the `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (903) and `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` (904) methods to return the specific name and connection class to use.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (903), `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` (904), `RegisterConnection` (901)

39.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
905	<code>ApplyParams</code>	Apply parameters to an instance of <code>TSQLConnection</code> .
904	<code>ConnectionClass</code>	Class to instantiate when this connection is requested.
904	<code>DefaultLibraryName</code>	Default library name.
904	<code>Description</code>	A descriptive text for this connection type.
905	<code>LoadedLibraryName</code>	Currently loaded library.
904	<code>LoadFunction</code>	Return a function to call when the client library must be loaded.
903	<code>TypeName</code>	Name of the connection type.
905	<code>UnLoadFunction</code>	Return a function to call when the client library must be unloaded.

39.12.3 TConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Name of the connection type.

Declaration: `class function TypeName : string; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeName` is overridden by descendent classes to return the unique name for this connection type. It is what the `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` (926) property should be set to select this connection type for the universal connection, and is the name that the `GetConnectionDef` (901) call will use when looking for a connection type. It must be overridden by descendents of `TConnectionDef`.

This name is also returned in the list returned by `GetConnectionList` (901)

This name can be an arbitrary name, no restrictions on the allowed characters exist.

See also: `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` (926), `GetConnectionDef` (901), `GetConnectionList` (901), `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` (904)

39.12.4 TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Class to instantiate when this connection is requested.

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConnectionClass` should return the connection class to use when a connection of this type is requested. It must be overridden by descendents of `TConnectionDef`.

It may not be `Nil`.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` ([903](#))

39.12.5 TConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: A descriptive text for this connection type.

Declaration: `class function Description : string; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Description` should return a descriptive text for this connection type. It is used for display purposes only, so ideally it should be a one-liner. It can be used to provide more information about the particulars of the connection type.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` ([903](#))

39.12.6 TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Synopsis: Default library name.

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName : string; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultLibraryName` should be set to the default library name for the connection. This can be used to let `SQLDB` automatically load the library needed when a connection of this type is requested.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` ([894](#)), `TConnectionDef` ([903](#)), `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` ([894](#))

39.12.7 TConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Synopsis: Return a function to call when the client library must be loaded.

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction : TLibraryLoadFunction; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadFunction` must return the function that will be called when the client library for this connection type must be loaded. This method must be overridden by descendent classes to return a function that will correctly load the client library when a connection of this type is used.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` ([894](#)), `TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction` ([905](#)), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` ([904](#)), `TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName` ([905](#))

39.12.8 TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Synopsis: Return a function to call when the client library must be unloaded.

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction : TLibraryUnLoadFunction; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnLoadFunction` must return the function that will be called when the client library for this connection type must be unloaded. This method must be overridden by descendent classes to return a function that will correctly unload the client library when a connection of this type is no longer used.

See also: `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` (894), `TConnectionDef.LoadFunction` (904), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` (904), `TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName` (905)

39.12.9 TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Synopsis: Currently loaded library.

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName : string; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadedLibraryName` must be overridden by descendents to return the filename of the currently loaded client library for this connection type. If no library is loaded, an empty string must be returned.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` (894), `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` (894), `TConnectionDef.LoadFunction` (904), `TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction` (905), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` (904)

39.12.10 TConnectionDef.ApplyParams

Synopsis: Apply parameters to an instance of `TSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `procedure ApplyParams(Params: TStrings; AConnection: TSQLConnection); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `ApplyParams` must be overridden to apply any params specified in the `Params` argument to the `TSQLConnection` (914) descendent in `AConnection`. It can be used to convert `Name=Value` pairs to properties of the actual connection instance.

When called, `AConnection` is guaranteed to be of the same type as returned by `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` (904). `Params` contains the contents of the `TSQLConnection.Params` (925) property of the connector.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Params` (925)

39.13 TCustomSQLQuery

39.13.1 Description

`TCustomSQLQuery` encapsulates a SQL statement: it implements all the necessary `#fcl.db.TDataset` (425) functionality to be able to handle a result set. It can also be used to execute SQL statements that do not return data, using the `ExecSQL` (907) method.

Do not instantiate a `TCustomSQLQuery` class directly, instead use the `TSQLQuery` (929) descendent.

See also: [TSQLQuery \(929\)](#)

39.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
909	<code>ApplyUpdates</code>	Apply updates and check result.
906	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCustomSQLQuery</code> .
909	<code>Delete</code>	Delete and optionally apply updates.
906	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy instance of <code>TCustomSQLQuery</code> .
907	<code>ExecSQL</code>	Execute a SQL statement that does not return a result set.
909	<code>MacroByName</code>	Convenience for <code>Macros.ParamByName</code> .
908	<code>ParamByName</code>	Return parameter by name.
909	<code>Post</code>	Post pending changes and optionally apply updates.
907	<code>Prepare</code>	Prepare a query for execution.
908	<code>RowsAffected</code>	Return the number of rows (records) affected by the last DML/DDI statement.
908	<code>SetSchemaInfo</code>	<code>SetSchemaInfo</code> prepares the dataset to retrieve schema info.
907	<code>UnPrepare</code>	Unprepare a prepared query.

39.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
910	<code>Prepared</code>	r	Is the query prepared ?
910	<code>SQLConnection</code>	rw	Database as <code>TSQLConnection</code> .
910	<code>SQLTransaction</code>	rw	Transaction as <code>TSQLTransaction</code> .

39.13.4 TCustomSQLQuery.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCustomSQLQuery`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` allocates a new instance on the heap and will allocate all resources for the SQL statement. After this it calls the inherited constructor.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy` ([906](#))

39.13.5 TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy instance of `TCustomSQLQuery`.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the instance, closing the dataset and freeing all allocated resources.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.Create` ([906](#))

39.13.6 TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare

Synopsis: Prepare a query for execution.

Declaration: `procedure Prepare; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Prepare` will prepare the SQL for execution. It will open the database connection if it was not yet open, and will start a transaction if none was started yet. It will then determine the statement type. Finally, it will pass the statement on to the database engine if it supports preparing of queries.

Strictly speaking, it is not necessary to call `prepare`, the component will prepare the statement whenever it is necessary. If a query will be executed repeatedly, it is good practice to prepare it once before starting to execute it. This will speed up execution, since resources must be allocated only once.

Errors: If the SQL server cannot prepare the statement, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery.StatementType` (932), `TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare` (907), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (907)

39.13.7 TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare

Synopsis: Unprepare a prepared query.

Declaration: `procedure UnPrepare; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Unprepare` will unprepare a prepared query. This means that server resources for this statement are deallocated. After a query was unprepared, any `ExecSQL` or `Open` command will prepare the SQL statement again.

Several actions will unprepare the statement: Setting the `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937) property, setting the `Transaction` property or setting the `Database` property will automatically call `UnPrepare`. Closing the dataset will also unprepare the query.

Errors: If the SQL server cannot unprepare the statement, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery.StatementType` (932), `TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare` (907), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (907)

39.13.8 TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL

Synopsis: Execute a SQL statement that does not return a result set.

Declaration: `procedure ExecSQL; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecSQL` will execute the statement in `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937), preparing the statement if necessary. It cannot be used to get results from the database (such as returned by a `SELECT` statement): for this, the `Open` (443) method must be used.

The `SQL` property should be a single SQL command. To execute multiple SQL statements, use the `TSQLScript` (945) component instead.

If the statement is a DML statement, the number of deleted/updated/inserted rows can be determined using `TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected` (908).

The `Database` and `Transaction` properties must be assigned before calling `ExecSQL`. Executing an empty SQL statement is also an error.

Errors: If the server reports an error, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected` (908), `TDataset.Open` (443)

39.13.9 TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo

Synopsis: `SetSchemaInfo` prepares the dataset to retrieve schema info.

Declaration: `procedure SetSchemaInfo (ASchemaType: TSchemaType;
ASchemaObjectName: string;
ASchemaPattern: string); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetSchemaInfo` will prepare the dataset to retrieve schema information from the connection, and represents the schema info as a dataset.

`SetSchemaInfo` is used internally to prepare a query to retrieve schema information from a connection. It will store the 3 passed parameters, which are then used in the `ParseSQL` and `Prepare` stages to optimize the allocated resources. setting the schema type to anything other than `stNoSchema` will also set (or mimic) the SQL statement as soon as the query is prepared. For connection types that support this, the SQL statement is then set to whatever statement the database connection supports to retrieve schema information.

This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (917) and `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (917) to get the necessary schema information from the database.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (917), `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (917), `RetrievingSchemaInformation` (886)

39.13.10 TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected

Synopsis: Return the number of rows (records) affected by the last DML/DDI statement.

Declaration: `function RowsAffected : TRowsCount; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `RowsAffected` returns the number of rows affected by the last statement executed using `ExecSQL` (907).

Errors: If the connection or database type does not support returning this number, -1 is returned. If the query is not connected to a database, -1 is returned.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (907), `TSQLConnection` (914)

39.13.11 TCustomSQLQuery.ParamByName

Synopsis: Return parameter by name.

Declaration: `function ParamByName (const AParamName: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParamByName` is a shortcut for `Params.ParamByName` (562). The 2 following pieces of code are completely equivalent:

```
Qry.ParamByName('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

and

```
Qry.Params.ParamByName('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

See also: Params.ParamByName ([562](#)), TSQLQuery.Params ([940](#))

39.13.12 TCustomSQLQuery.MacroByName

Synopsis: Convenience for Macros.ParamByName.

Declaration: `function MacroByName(const AParamName: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: MacroByName checks Macros ([905](#)) for the macro named aParamName and returns the requested macro.

Errors: If no macro is found, an exception is raised.

See also: #fcl.db.TParams.ParamByName ([562](#))

39.13.13 TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates

Synopsis: Apply updates and check result.

Declaration: `procedure ApplyUpdates(MaxErrors: Integer); Override; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: ApplyUpdates is overridden in TCustomSQLQuery ([905](#)) to check the result of the update (using RowsAffected ([908](#))).

See also: TSQLQueryOptions ([900](#)), TSQLQuery.Options ([940](#))

39.13.14 TCustomSQLQuery.Post

Synopsis: Post pending changes and optionally apply updates.

Declaration: `procedure Post; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Post is overridden from DB.TDataset.Post ([882](#)) to implement the auto-applyupdates mechanism: if TSQLQuery.Options ([940](#)) contains sqoAutoApplyUpdates, then ApplyUpdates is called as the last step of the Post operation.

See also: TSQLQuery.Options ([940](#)), TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates ([909](#))

39.13.15 TCustomSQLQuery.Delete

Synopsis: Delete and optionally apply updates.

Declaration: `procedure Delete; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Delete is overridden from DB.TDataset.Delete ([882](#)) to implement the auto-applyupdates mechanism: if TSQLQuery.Options ([940](#)) contains sqoAutoApplyUpdates, then ApplyUpdates is called as the last step of the Post operation.

See also: TSQLQuery.Options ([940](#)), TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates ([909](#))

39.13.16 TCustomSQLQuery.Prepared

Synopsis: Is the query prepared ?

Declaration: `Property Prepared : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Prepared` is true if `Prepare` (907) was called for this query, and an `UnPrepare` (907) was not done after that (take care: several actions call `UnPrepare` implicitly). Initially, `Prepared` will be `False`. Calling `Prepare` if the query was already prepared has no effect.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare` (907), `TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare` (907)

39.13.17 TCustomSQLQuery.SQLConnection

Synopsis: Database as `TSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `Property SQLConnection : TSQLConnection`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SQLConnection` equals the `Database` property, but typecasted as a `TSQLConnection` (914) descendent.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (914), `TCustomSQLQuery.SQLTransaction` (910)

39.13.18 TCustomSQLQuery.SQLTransaction

Synopsis: Transaction as `TSQLTransaction`.

Declaration: `Property SQLTransaction : TSQLTransaction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SQLTransaction` equals the `Transaction` property, but typecasted as a `TSQLTransaction` (958) descendent.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (914), `TCustomSQLQuery.SQLConnection` (910)

39.14 TCustomSQLStatement**39.14.1 Description**

`TCustomSQLStatement` is a light-weight object that can be used to execute SQL statements on a database. It does not support result sets, and has none of the methods that a `TDataset` (882) component has. It can be used to execute SQL statements on a database that update data, execute stored procedures and DDL statements etc.

The `TCustomSQLStatement` is equivalent to `TSQLQuery` (929) in that it supports transactions (in the `Transaction` (921) property) and parameters (in the `Params` (925) property) and as such is a more versatile tool than executing queries using `TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect` (916).

To use a `TCustomSQLStatement` is simple and similar to the use of `TSQLQuery` (929): set the `Database` (955) property to an existing connection component, and set the `Transaction` (957) property. After setting the `SQL` (957) property and filling `Params` (956), the SQL statement can be executed with the `Execute` (912) method.

`TCustomSQLStatement` is a parent class. Many of the properties are only made public (or published) in the `TSQLStatement` (954) class, which should be instantiated instead of the `TCustomSQLStatement` class.

See also: `TSQLStatement` (954), `TDataset` (882), `TSQLQuery` (929), `TSQLStatement.Transaction` (957), `TSQLStatement.Params` (956), `TCustomSQLStatement.Execute` (912), `TSQLStatement.Database` (955), `TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect` (916)

39.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
911	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TCustomSQLStatement</code> .
911	Destroy	Destroy a <code>TCustomSQLStatement</code> instance.
912	Execute	Execute the SQL statement.
913	ParamByName	Find a parameter by name.
912	Prepare	Prepare the statement for execution.
913	RowsAffected	Number of rows affected by the SQL statement.
912	Unprepare	Unprepare a previously prepared statement.

39.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
913	Prepared	r	Is the statement prepared or not.

39.14.4 TCustomSQLStatement.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCustomSQLStatement`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TCustomSQLStatement` and sets the `SQL` (957)`Params` (956), `ParamCheck` (955) and `ParseSQL` (957) to their initial values.

See also: `TSQLStatement.SQL` (957), `TSQLStatement.Params` (956), `TSQLStatement.ParamCheck` (955), `TSQLStatement.ParseSQL` (957), `TSQLStatement.Destroy` (954)

39.14.5 TCustomSQLStatement.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy a `TCustomSQLStatement` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` disconnects the `TCustomSQLStatement` instance from the transaction and database, and then frees the memory taken by the instance and its properties.

See also: `TSQLStatement.Database` (955), `TSQLStatement.Transaction` (957)

39.14.6 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare

Synopsis: Prepare the statement for execution.

Declaration: `procedure Prepare`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Prepare` prepares the SQL statement for execution. It is called automatically if `Execute` (912) is called and the statement was not yet prepared. Depending on the database engine, it will also allocate the necessary resources on the database server.

Errors: An exception is raised if there is no SQL (957) statement set or the Database (955) or Transaction (957) properties are empty.

See also: `TSQLStatement.SQL` (957), `TSQLStatement.Database` (955), `TSQLStatement.Transaction` (957), `TCustomSQLStatement.Execute` (912)

39.14.7 TCustomSQLStatement.Execute

Synopsis: Execute the SQL statement.

Declaration: `procedure Execute`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` executes the SQL (957) statement on the database. If necessary, it will first open the connection and start a transaction, followed by a call to `Prepare`.

Errors: An exception is raised if there is no SQL (957) statement set or the Database (955) or Transaction (957) properties are empty.

If an error occurs at the database level (the SQL failed to execute properly) then an exception is raised as well.

See also: `TSQLStatement.SQL` (957), `TSQLStatement.Database` (955), `TSQLStatement.Transaction` (957)

39.14.8 TCustomSQLStatement.Unprepare

Synopsis: Unprepare a previously prepared statement.

Declaration: `procedure Unprepare`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Unprepare` unprepares a prepared SQL statement. It is called automatically when the SQL statement is changed. Depending on the database engine, it will also de-allocate any allocated resources on the database server. if the statement is not in a prepared state, nothing happens.

Errors: If an error occurs at the database level (the unprepare operation failed to execute properly) then an exception is raised.

See also: `TSQLStatement.SQL` (957), `TSQLStatement.Database` (955), `TSQLStatement.Transaction` (957), `TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare` (912)

39.14.9 TCustomSQLStatement.ParamByName

Synopsis: Find a parameter by name.

Declaration: `function ParamByName(const AParamName: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParamByName` finds the parameter `AParamName` in the `Params` (956) property.

Errors: If no parameter with the given name is found, an exception is raised.

See also: `TSQLStatement.Params` (956), `TParams.ParamByName` (882)

39.14.10 TCustomSQLStatement.RowsAffected

Synopsis: Number of rows affected by the SQL statement.

Declaration: `function RowsAffected : TRowCount; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `RowsAffected` is set to the number of affected rows after `Execute` (912) was called. Not all databases may support this.

See also: `TCustomSQLStatement.Execute` (912)

39.14.11 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepared

Synopsis: Is the statement prepared or not.

Declaration: `Property Prepared : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Prepared` equals `True` if `Prepare` (912) was called (implicitly or explicitly), it returns `False` if not. It can be set to `True` or `False` to call `Prepare` (912) or `UnPrepare` (912), respectively.

See also: `TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare` (912), `TCustomSQLStatement.UnPrepare` (912)

39.15 TServerIndexDefs

39.15.1 Description

`TServerIndexDefs` is a simple descendent of `TIndexDefs` (527) that implements the necessary methods to update the list of definitions using the `TSQLConnection` (914). It should not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (914)

39.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
914	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TServerIndexDefs</code> .
914	Update	Updates the list of indexes.

39.15.3 TServerIndexDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TServerIndexDefs.

Declaration: constructor Create (ADataset: TDataSet); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create will raise an exception if ADataset is not a TCustomSQLQuery (905) descendent.

Errors: An EDatabaseError exception will be raised if ADataset is not a TCustomSQLQuery (905) descendent.

39.15.4 TServerIndexDefs.Update

Synopsis: Updates the list of indexes.

Declaration: procedure Update; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Update updates the list of indexes, it uses the TSQLConnection (914) methods for this.

39.16 TSQLConnection

39.16.1 Description

TSQLConnection is an abstract class for making a connection to a SQL Database. This class will never be instantiated directly, for each database type a descendent class specific for this database type must be created.

Most of common properties to SQL databases are implemented in this class.

See also: TSQLQuery (929), TSQLTransaction (958)

39.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
915	Create	Create a new instance of TSQLConnection.
919	CreateDB	Create a new Database on the server.
915	Destroy	Destroys the instance of the connection.
919	DropDB	Procedure to drop or remove a Database.
916	EndTransaction	End the Transaction associated with this connection.
916	ExecuteDirect	Execute a piece of SQL code directly, using a Transaction if specified.
918	GetConnectionInfo	Return some information about the connection.
918	GetFieldNames	Gets a list of the field names in the specified table.
919	GetNextValue	Get next value for a sequence.
917	GetObjectNames	Return a collection of object names for a given type of object.
917	GetProcedureNames	Gets a list of Stored Procedures in the Database.
918	GetSchemaNames	Get database schema names.
918	GetSequenceNames	Return a list of sequence names.
919	GetStatementInfo	Get statement information.
917	GetTableNames	Get a list of the tables in the specified database.
917	HasTable	
916	StartTransaction	Start the Transaction associated with this Connection.

39.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
922	CharSet	rw	The character set to be used in this database.
924	Connected		Is a connection to the server active or not.
920	ConnOptions	r	The set of Connection options being used in the Connection.
924	DatabaseName		The name of the database to which connection is required.
920	FieldNameQuoteChars	rw	Characters used to quote field names.
920	Handle	r	Low level handle used by the connection.
922	HostName	rw	The name of the host computer where the database resides.
924	KeepConnection		Attempt to keep the connection open once it is established.
923	LogEvents	rw	Filter for events to log.
925	LoginPrompt		Should SQLDB prompt for user credentials when a connection is activated.
922	OnLog	rw	Event handler for logging events.
925	OnLogin		Event handler for login process.
923	Options	rw	Options to observe for this connection.
925	Params		Extra connection parameters.
921	Password	rw	Password used when authenticating on the database server.
923	Role	rw	Role in which the user is connecting to the database.
921	Transaction	rw	Default transaction to be used for this connection.
921	UserName	rw	The username for authentication on the database server.

39.16.4 TSQLConnection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initialized a new instance of `TSQLConnection` ([914](#)). After calling the inherited constructor, it will initialize the `FieldNameQuoteChars` ([920](#)) property and some other fields for internal use.

See also: `FieldNameQuoteChars` ([920](#))

39.16.5 TSQLConnection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the connection.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes the connection from memory. When a connection is removed, all datasets are closed, and all transactions too.

39.16.6 TSQLConnection.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start the Transaction associated with this Connection.

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` is a convenience method which starts the default transaction (`Transaction (921)`). It is equivalent to

```
Connection.Transaction.StartTransaction
```

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, an exception will be raised.

See also: `EndTransaction (916)`

39.16.7 TSQLConnection.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End the Transaction associated with this connection.

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` is a convenience method which ends the default transaction (`TSQLConnection.Transaction (921)`). It is equivalent to

```
Connection.Transaction.EndTransaction
```

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, an exception will be raised.

See also: `StartTransaction (916)`

39.16.8 TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect

Synopsis: Execute a piece of SQL code directly, using a Transaction if specified.

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteDirect(SQL: string); Virtual; Overload`
`procedure ExecuteDirect(SQL: string; ATransaction: TSQLTransaction)`
`; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteDirect` executes an SQL statement directly. If `ATransaction` is `Nil` then the default transaction is used, otherwise the specified transaction is used.

`ExecuteDirect` does not offer support for parameters, so only statements that do not need parsing and parameters substitution can be handled. If parameter substitution is required, use a `TSQLQuery (929)` component and its `ExecSQL (907)` method.

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, and no transaction is passed, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery (929)`, `ExecSQL (907)`

39.16.9 TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames

Synopsis: Return a collection of object names for a given type of object.

Declaration: `function GetObjectNames (ASchemaType: TSchemaType;
 AList: TSqlObjectIdentifierList) : Integer
 ; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetObjectNames` returns all the names of objects of a given type `ASchemaType` in the database, and returns the number of found objects as a result. The object names are placed in the collection `AList`.

The collection is not cleared.

See also: `#fcl.sqltypes.TSqlObjectIdentifierList` ([966](#))

39.16.10 TSQLConnection.HasTable

Declaration: `function HasTable (const aTable: string; SearchSystemTables: Boolean)
 : Boolean`

Visibility: public

39.16.11 TSQLConnection.GetTableNames

Synopsis: Get a list of the tables in the specified database.

Declaration: `procedure GetTableNames (List: TStrings; SystemTables: Boolean); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetTableNames` will return the names of the tables in the database in `List`. If `SystemTables` is `True` then only the names of system tables will be returned.

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

Remark Note that the list may depend on the access rights of the user.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` ([917](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` ([918](#))

39.16.12 TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames

Synopsis: Gets a list of Stored Procedures in the Database.

Declaration: `procedure GetProcedureNames (List: TStrings); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetProcedureNames` will return the names of the stored procedures in the database in `List`.

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` ([917](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` ([918](#))

39.16.13 TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Gets a list of the field names in the specified table.

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(const TableName: string; List: TStrings)
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFieldNames` will return the names of the fields in `TableName` in `list`

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

Errors: If a non-existing tablename is passed, no error will be raised.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (917), `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (917)

39.16.14 TSQLConnection.GetSchemaNames

Synopsis: Get database schema names.

Declaration: `procedure GetSchemaNames(List: TStrings); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetSchemaNames` returns a list of schemas defined in the database.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (917), `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (917), `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (918)

39.16.15 TSQLConnection.GetSequenceNames

Synopsis: Return a list of sequence names.

Declaration: `procedure GetSequenceNames(List: TStrings); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetSequenceNames` returns the names of all defined sequences (Generators in Firebird) in the databases in `List`, if the database engine supports them: Not all database types support sequences.

This call is a convenience call, a simple wrapper used to call the `GetDBInfo` method.

Errors: None.

39.16.16 TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo

Synopsis: Return some information about the connection.

Declaration: `function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetConnectionInfo` can be used to return some information about the connection. Which information is returned depends on the `InfoType` parameter. The information is returned as a string. If `citAll` is passed, then the result will be a comma-separated list of values, each of the values enclosed in double quotes.

See also: `TConnInfoType` (892)

39.16.17 TSQLConnection.GetStatementInfo

Synopsis: Get statement information.

Declaration: `function GetStatementInfo(const ASQL: string) : TSQLStatementInfo
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetStatementInfo` returns information about the ASQL SQL command. To this end, it will partially parse the statement.

See also: `TSQLStatementInfo` (902)

39.16.18 TSQLConnection.CreateDB

Synopsis: Create a new Database on the server.

Declaration: `procedure CreateDB; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateDB` will create a new database on the server. Whether or not this functionality is present depends on the type of the connection. The name for the new database is taken from the `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (924) property, the user credentials are taken from the `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921) and `TSQLConnection.Password` (921) properties.

Errors: If the connection type does not support creating a database, then an `EDatabaseError` exception is raised. Other exceptions may be raised if the operation fails, e.g. when the user does not have the necessary access rights.

See also: `TSQLConnection.DropDB` (919)

39.16.19 TSQLConnection.DropDB

Synopsis: Procedure to drop or remove a Database.

Declaration: `procedure DropDB; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DropDB` does the opposite of `CreateDB` (919). It removes the database from the server. The database must be connected before this command may be used. Whether or not this functionality is present depends on the type of the connection.

Errors: If the connection type does not support creating a database, then an `EDatabaseError` exception is raised. Other exceptions may be raised if the operation fails, e.g. when the user does not have the necessary access rights.

See also: `TSQLConnection.CreateDB` (919)

39.16.20 TSQLConnection.GetNextValue

Synopsis: Get next value for a sequence.

Declaration: `function GetNextValue(const SequenceName: string; IncrementBy: Integer)
: Int64; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNextValue` returns the next value for the sequence `SequenceName`, incrementing the current value with `IncrementBy` (default 1).

Errors: Not all databases support sequences, in that case an SQL error will be raised.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetSequenceNames` ([918](#))

39.16.21 TSQLConnection.ConnOptions

Synopsis: The set of Connection options being used in the Connection.

Declaration: `Property ConnOptions : TConnOptions`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ConnOptions` is the set of options used by this connection component. It is normally the same value for all connections of the same type

See also: `TConnOption` ([893](#))

39.16.22 TSQLConnection.Handle

Synopsis: Low level handle used by the connection.

Declaration: `Property Handle : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Handle` represents the low-level handle that the `TSQLConnection` component has received from the client library of the database. Under normal circumstances, this property must not be used.

39.16.23 TSQLConnection.FieldNameQuoteChars

Synopsis: Characters used to quote field names.

Declaration: `Property FieldNameQuoteChars : TQuoteChars`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `FieldNameQuoteChars` can be set to specify the characters that should be used to delimit field names in SQL statements generated by `SQLDB`. It is normally initialized correctly by the `TSQLConnection` ([914](#)) descendent to the default for that particular connection type.

See also: `TSQLConnection` ([914](#))

39.16.24 TSQLConnection.Password

Synopsis: Password used when authenticating on the database server.

Declaration: `Property Password : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Password` is used when authenticating the user specified in `UserName` (921) when connecting to the database server

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (922)

39.16.25 TSQLConnection.Transaction

Synopsis: Default transaction to be used for this connection.

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TSQLTransaction`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Transaction` should be set to a `TSQLTransaction` (958) instance. It is set as the default transaction when a query is connected to the database, and is used in several metadata operations such as `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (917)

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (958)

39.16.26 TSQLConnection.UserName

Synopsis: The username for authentication on the database server.

Declaration: `Property UserName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UserName` is used to authenticate on the database server when the connection to the database is established.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (921), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (922), `TSQLConnection.Role` (923), `TSQLConnection.Charset` (922)

39.16.27 TSQLConnection.CharSet

Synopsis: The character set to be used in this database.

Declaration: `Property CharSet : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Charset` can be used to tell the user in which character set the data will be sent to the server, and in which character set the results should be sent to the client. Some connection types will ignore this property, and the data will be sent to the client in the encoding used on the server.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

Remark SQLDB will not do anything with this setting except pass it on to the server if a specific connection type supports it. It does not perform any conversions by itself based on the value of this setting.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (921), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (922), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921), `TSQLConnection.Role` (923)

39.16.28 TSQLConnection.HostName

Synopsis: The name of the host computer where the database resides.

Declaration: `Property HostName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HostName` is the name of the host computer where the database server is listening for connection. An empty value means the local machine is used.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Role` (923), `TSQLConnection.Password` (921), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (924), `TSQLConnection.Charset` (922)

39.16.29 TSQLConnection.OnLog

Synopsis: Event handler for logging events.

Declaration: `Property OnLog : TDBLogNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TSQLConnection` can send events for all the actions that it performs: executing SQL statements, commit and rollback of transactions etc. This event handler must be set to react on these events: they can for example be written to a log file. Only events specified in the `LogEvents` (923) property will be logged.

The events received by this event handler are specific for this connection. To receive events from all active connections in the application, set the global `GlobalDBLogHook` (901) event handler.

See also: `GlobalDBLogHook` (901), `TSQLConnection.LogEvents` (923)

39.16.30 TSQLConnection.LogEvents

Synopsis: Filter for events to log.

Declaration: `Property LogEvents : TDBEventTypes`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogEvents` can be used to filter the events which should be sent to the `OnLog` (922) and `GlobalDBLogHook` (901) event handlers. Only event types that are listed in this property will be sent.

See also: `GlobalDBLogHook` (901), `TSQLConnection.OnLog` (922)

39.16.31 TSQLConnection.Options

Synopsis: Options to observe for this connection.

Declaration: `Property Options : TSQLConnectionOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` can be used to control the behaviour of SQLDB for this connection. The following options can be set:

scoExplicitConnect When set, the connection must be explicitly made. Default behaviour is for `TSQLQuery` to implicitly open the connection as needed.

scoApplyUpdatesChecksRowsAffected When set, whenever an update SQL Statement is executed during `ApplyOptions` of a dataset, the `RowsAffected` (913) is checked and must be equal to 1.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates` (909), `TCustomSQLStatement.RowsAffected` (913), `TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected` (908)

39.16.32 TSQLConnection.Role

Synopsis: Role in which the user is connecting to the database.

Declaration: `Property Role : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Role` is used to specify the user's role when connecting to the database user. Not all connection types support roles, for those that do not, this property is ignored.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (921), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (924), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (922)

39.16.33 TSQLConnection.Connected

Synopsis: Is a connection to the server active or not.

Declaration: `Property Connected :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Connected` indicates whether a connection to the server is active or not. No queries to this server can be activated as long as the value is `False`

Setting the property to `True` will attempt a connection to the database `DatabaseName` (924) on host `HostName` (922) using the credentials specified in `UserName` (921) and `Password` (921). If the connection or authentication fails, an exception is raised. This has the same effect as calling `Open` (412).

Setting the property to `False` will close the connection to the database. All datasets connected to the database will be closed, all transactions will be closed as well. This has the same effect as calling `Close` (882)

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (921), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (924), `TSQLConnection.Role` (923)

39.16.34 TSQLConnection.DatabaseName

Synopsis: The name of the database to which connection is required.

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DatabaseName` is the name of the database to which a connection must be made. Some servers need a complete path to a file, others need a symbolic name (an alias): the interpretation of this name depends on the connection type.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (921), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921), `TSQLConnection.Charset` (922), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (922)

39.16.35 TSQLConnection.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Attempt to keep the connection open once it is established.

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `KeepConnection` can be used to attempt to keep the connection open once it is established. This property is currently not implemented.

39.16.36 TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Should SQLDB prompt for user credentials when a connection is activated.

Declaration: `Property LoginPrompt :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `LoginPrompt` can be set to `True` to force the system to get a username/password pair from the user. How these data are fetched from the user depends on the `OnLogin` (925) event handler. The `UserName` (921) and `Password` (921) properties are ignored in this case.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (921), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921), `OnLogin` (925)

39.16.37 TSQLConnection.Params

Synopsis: Extra connection parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` can be used to specify extra parameters to use when establishing a connection to the database. Which parameters can be specified depends on the connection type.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (921), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (921), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (922), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (924)

39.16.38 TSQLConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event handler for login process.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `OnLogin` will be used when `loginPrompt` (925) is `True`. It will be called, and can be used to present a user with a dialog in which the username and password can be asked.

See also: `TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt` (925)

39.17 TSQLConnector

39.17.1 Description

`TSQLConnector` implements a general connection type. When switching database backends, the normal procedure is to replace one instance of `TSQLConnection` (914) with another, and connect all instances of `TSQLQuery` (929) and `TSQLTransaction` (958) to the new connection.

Using `TSQLConnector` avoids this: the type of connection can be set using the `ConnectorType` (926) property, which is a string property. The `TSQLConnector` class will (in the background) create the correct `TSQLConnection` (914) to handle all actual operations on the database.

In all other respects, `TSQLConnector` acts like a regular `TSQLConnection` instance. Since no access to the actually used `TSQLConnection` descendent is available, connection-specific calls are not available.

See also: `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` (926), `UniversalConnectors` (885)

39.17.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
926	<code>ConnectorType</code>	rw	Name of the connection type to use.
926	<code>Port</code>		

39.17.3 TSQLConnector.ConnectorType

Synopsis: Name of the connection type to use.

Declaration: `Property ConnectorType : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ConnectorType` should be set to one of the available connector types in the application. The list of possible connector types can be retrieved using `GetConnectionList` (901) call. The `ConnectorType` property can only be set when the connection is not active.

Errors: Attempting to change the `ConnectorType` property while the connection is active will result in an exception.

See also: `GetConnectionList` (901)

39.17.4 TSQLConnector.Port

Declaration: `Property Port :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.18 TSQLCursor

39.18.1 Description

`TSQLCursor` is an abstract internal object representing a result set returned by a single SQL select statement (`TSQLHandle` (928)). statement. It is used by the `TSQLQuery` (929) component to handle result sets returned by SQL statements.

This object must not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery` (929), `TSQLHandle` (928)

39.19 TSQLDBFieldDef

39.19.1 Description

TSQLDBFieldDef is a SQLDB specific db.TFieldDef (882) descendent which has room for storing engine-specific data for the result set fields.

See also: TSQLDBFieldDef.SQLDBData (927)

39.19.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
927	SQLDBData	rw	Pointer to store engine-specific data for the result field.

39.19.3 TSQLDBFieldDef.SQLDBData

Synopsis: Pointer to store engine-specific data for the result field.

Declaration: `Property SQLDBData : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: SQLDBData can be used by the TSQLConnection (914) descendents to store additional data about fields in a result set. It is not used by TSQLQuery itself.

See also: TSQLQuery (929)

39.20 TSQLDBFieldDefs

39.20.1 Description

TSQLDBFieldDefs is a TFieldDefs descendent which creates TSQLDBFieldDef (927) descendents when a new field is added to the field set, to provide storage for engine-specific field data.

See also: TSQLDBFieldDef (927)

39.21 TSQLDBParam

39.21.1 Description

TSQLDBParam is used to be able to create parameters which can store info about a field on which the parameter is based in the TSQLDBParam.FieldDef (928) field. This is useful when constructing update or insert queries. It can also store private data needed for the various TSQLConnection (914) descendents in the TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData (928) property.

See also: TSQLDBFieldDef (927), TSQLDBParam.FieldDef (928), TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData (928)

39.21.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
928	FieldDef	rw	Field definition for update SQL.
928	SQLDBData	rw	Private data for TSQLDB descendents.

39.21.3 TSQLDBParam.FieldDef

Synopsis: Field definition for update SQL.

Declaration: `Property FieldDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldDef` is used during generation of update SQL statements to store information about the field to be updated.

See also: `TSQLDBFieldDef` (927), `TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData` (928)

39.21.4 TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData

Synopsis: Private data for TSQLDB descendents.

Declaration: `Property SQLDBData : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SQLDBData` should not be used by the end-user, it is for internal use by the `TSQLConnection` (914) descendents.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (914), `TSQLDBParam.FieldDef` (928)

39.22 TSQLDBParams

39.22.1 Description

`TSQLDBParams` is a `TParams` descendent which creates `TSQLDBParams` (928) descendents when a new field is added to the field set, to provide storage for engine-specific field data.

See also: `TSQLDBParam` (927)

39.23 TSQLHandle

39.23.1 Description

`TSQLHandle` is an abstract internal object representing a database client handle. It is used by the various connections to implement the connection-specific functionality, and usually represents a low-level handle. It is used by the `TSQLQuery` (929) component to communicate with the `TSQLConnection` (914) descendent.

This object must not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery` (929), `TSQLCursor` (926)

39.24 TSQLQuery

39.24.1 Description

`TSQLQuery` exposes the properties and some methods introduced in `TCustomSQLQuery` (905). It encapsulates a single SQL statement: it implements all the necessary `#fcl.db.TDataset` (425) functionality to be able to handle a result set. It can also be used to execute a single SQL statement that does not return data, using the `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (907) method.

Typically, the `TSQLQuery.Database` (937) property must be set once, the `TSQLQuery.Transaction` (937) property as well. Then the `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937) property can be set. Depending on the kind of SQL statement, the `Open` (443) method can be used to retrieve data, or the `ExecSQL` method can be used to execute the SQL statement (this can be used for DDL statements, or update statements).

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (958), `TSQLConnection` (914), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (907), `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937)

39.24.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
933	Active		
933	AfterCancel		
933	AfterClose		
933	AfterDelete		
934	AfterEdit		
934	AfterInsert		
934	AfterOpen		
934	AfterPost		
934	AfterRefresh		Event triggered after refresh.
934	AfterScroll		
933	AutoCalcFields		
934	BeforeCancel		
935	BeforeClose		
935	BeforeDelete		
935	BeforeEdit		
935	BeforeInsert		
935	BeforeOpen		
935	BeforePost		
935	BeforeRefresh		Event triggered before refresh.
936	BeforeScroll		
937	Database		The <code>TSQLConnection</code> instance on which to execute SQL Statements.
943	DataSource		Source for parameter values for unbound parameters.
939	DeleteSQL		Statement to be used when deleting a new row in the database.
932	FieldDefs		List of field definitions.
933	Filter		
933	Filtered		
939	IndexDefs		List of local index Definitions.
938	InsertSQL		Statement to be used when inserting a new row in the database.
941	MacroChar		Macro delimiter character.
941	MacroCheck		Check for macros in the SQL statement.
941	Macros		Set of macros for this SQL statement.
932	MaxIndexesCount		Maximum allowed number of indexes.
936	OnCalcFields		
936	OnDeleteError		
936	OnEditError		
936	OnFilterRecord		
936	OnNewRecord		
936	OnPostError		
940	Options		Options controlling the behaviour of the dataset.
941	ParamCheck		Should the SQL statement be checked for parameters.
940	Params		Parameters detected in the SQL statement.
942	ParseSQL		Should the SQL statement be parsed or not.
937	ReadOnly		
939	RefreshSQL		Refresh query to re-fetch field values after a DB update.
932	SchemaType		Schema type.
943	Sequence		Sequence to use for auto-generating values using a sequence.
944	ServerFilter		Append server-side filter to SQL statement.
944	ServerFiltered		Should server-side filter be applied.
944	ServerIndexDefs		List of indexes on the primary table of the query.
937	SQL		The SQL statement to execute.
932	StatementType		SQL statement type.
937	Transaction		Transaction in which to execute SQL statements.
942	UpdateMode		How to create update SQL statements.
938	UpdateSQL		Statement to be used when updating an existing row

39.24.3 TSQLQuery.SchemaType

Synopsis: Schema type.

Declaration: `Property SchemaType :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `SchemaType` is the schema type set by `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (908). It determines what kind of schema information will be returned by the `TSQLQuery` instance.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (908), `RetrievingSchemaInformation` (886)

39.24.4 TSQLQuery.StatementType

Synopsis: SQL statement type.

Declaration: `Property StatementType :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `StatementType` is determined during the `Prepare` (907) call when `ParseSQL` (942) is set to `True`. It gives an indication of the type of SQL statement that is being executed.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937), `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` (942), `TSQLQuery.Params` (940)

39.24.5 TSQLQuery.MaxIndexesCount

Synopsis: Maximum allowed number of indexes.

Declaration: `Property MaxIndexesCount :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MaxIndexesCount` determines the number of index entries that the dataset will reserve for indexes. No more indexes than indicated here can be used. The property must be set before the dataset is opened. The minimum value for this property is 1. The default value is 2.

If an index is added and the current index count equals `MaxIndexesCount`, an exception will be raised.

Errors: Attempting to set this property while the dataset is active will raise an exception.

39.24.6 TSQLQuery.FieldDefs

Synopsis: List of field definitions.

Declaration: `Property FieldDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.7 TSQLQuery.Active

Declaration: Property Active :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.8 TSQLQuery.AutoCalcFields

Declaration: Property AutoCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.9 TSQLQuery.Filter

Declaration: Property Filter :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.10 TSQLQuery.Filtered

Declaration: Property Filtered :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.11 TSQLQuery.AfterCancel

Declaration: Property AfterCancel :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.12 TSQLQuery.AfterClose

Declaration: Property AfterClose :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.13 TSQLQuery.AfterDelete

Declaration: Property AfterDelete :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.14 TSQLQuery.AfterEdit

Declaration: `Property AfterEdit` :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.15 TSQLQuery.AfterInsert

Declaration: `Property AfterInsert` :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.16 TSQLQuery.AfterOpen

Declaration: `Property AfterOpen` :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.17 TSQLQuery.AfterPost

Declaration: `Property AfterPost` :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.18 TSQLQuery.AfterRefresh

Synopsis: Event triggered after refresh.

Declaration: `Property AfterRefresh` :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.19 TSQLQuery.AfterScroll

Declaration: `Property AfterScroll` :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.20 TSQLQuery.BeforeCancel

Declaration: `Property BeforeCancel` :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.21 TSQLQuery.BeforeClose

Declaration: `Property BeforeClose :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.22 TSQLQuery.BeforeDelete

Declaration: `Property BeforeDelete :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.23 TSQLQuery.BeforeEdit

Declaration: `Property BeforeEdit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.24 TSQLQuery.BeforeInsert

Declaration: `Property BeforeInsert :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.25 TSQLQuery.BeforeOpen

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.26 TSQLQuery.BeforePost

Declaration: `Property BeforePost :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.27 TSQLQuery.BeforeRefresh

Synopsis: Event triggered before refresh.

Declaration: `Property BeforeRefresh :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.28 TSQLQuery.BeforeScroll

Declaration: Property BeforeScroll :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.29 TSQLQuery.OnCalcFields

Declaration: Property OnCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.30 TSQLQuery.OnDeleteError

Declaration: Property OnDeleteError :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.31 TSQLQuery.OnEditError

Declaration: Property OnEditError :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.32 TSQLQuery.OnFilterRecord

Declaration: Property OnFilterRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.33 TSQLQuery.OnNewRecord

Declaration: Property OnNewRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.34 TSQLQuery.OnPostError

Declaration: Property OnPostError :

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.35 TSQLQuery.Database

Synopsis: The `TSQLConnection` instance on which to execute SQL Statements.

Declaration: `Property Database :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Database` is the SQL connection (of type `TSQLConnection` (914)) on which SQL statements will be executed, and from which result sets will be retrieved. This property must be set before any form of SQL command can be executed, just like the `Transaction` (937) property must be set.

Multiple `TSQLQuery` instances can be connected to a database at the same time.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Transaction` (937), `TSQLConnection` (914), `TSQLTransaction` (958)

39.24.36 TSQLQuery.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction in which to execute SQL statements.

Declaration: `Property Transaction :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Transaction` must be set to a SQL transaction (of type `TSQLTransaction` (958)) component. All SQL statements (`SQL / InsertSQL / updateSQL / DeleteSQL` etc.) will be executed in the context of this transaction.

The transaction must be connected to the same database instance as the query itself.

Multiple `TSQLQuery` instances can be connected to a transaction at the same time. If the transaction is rolled back, all changes done by all `TSQLQuery` instances will be rolled back.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Database` (937), `TSQLConnection` (914), `TSQLTransaction` (958)

39.24.37 TSQLQuery.ReadOnly

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly :`

Visibility: published

Access:

39.24.38 TSQLQuery.SQL

Synopsis: The SQL statement to execute.

Declaration: `Property SQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `SQL` is the SQL statement that will be executed when `ExecSQL` (907) is called, or `Open` (443) is called. It should contain a valid SQL statement for the connection to which the `TSQLQuery` (929) component is connected. `SQLDB` will not attempt to modify the SQL statement so it is accepted by the SQL engine.

Setting or modifying the SQL statement will call `UnPrepare` (907)

If `ParseSQL` (942) is `True`, the SQL statement will be parsed and the `Params` (940) property will be updated with the names of the parameters found in the SQL statement.

See also `Using parameters`.

See also: `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` (942), `TSQLQuery.Params` (940), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (907), `TDataset.Open` (443)

39.24.39 TSQLQuery.InsertSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when inserting a new row in the database.

Declaration: Property `InsertSQL` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `InsertSQL` can be used to specify an SQL `INSERT` statement, which is used when a new record was appended to the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate an insert statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the insert can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parameterized according to the conventions for specifying parameters.

Note that old field values can be specified as :`OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937), `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (938), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (939), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (942), `UsingParams` (887), `UpdateSQLS` (886)

39.24.40 TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when updating an existing row in the database.

Declaration: Property `UpdateSQL` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UpdateSQL` can be used to specify an SQL `UPDATE` statement, which is used when an existing record was modified in the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate an update statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the update can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parameterized according to the conventions for specifying parameters.

Note that old field values can be specified as :`OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (938), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (939), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (942), `UsingParams` (887), `UpdateSQLS` (886)

39.24.41 TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when deleting a new row in the database.

Declaration: `Property DeleteSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DeleteSQL` can be used to specify an SQL `DELETE` statement, which is used when an existing record was deleted from the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate a delete statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the delete operation can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parameterized according to the conventions for specifying parameters.

Note that old field values can be specified as `:OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937), `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (938), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (939), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (942), `UsingParams` (887), `UpdateSQLS` (886)

39.24.42 TSQLQuery.RefreshSQL

Synopsis: Refresh query to re-fetch field values after a DB update.

Declaration: `Property RefreshSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `RefreshSQL` can be used to specify a SQL statement that is executed after an `UPDATE` or `INSERT` operation. The query will be executed, and the values of all fields in the result set will be copied to the dataset. This SQL statement is only executed during the `ApplyUpdates` operation, not during the `Post` call itself.

A `RefreshSQL` can be constructed automatically by `SQLDB` by setting the `pfRefreshOnUpdate` or `pfRefreshOnInsert` flags in the `ProviderFlags` (882) of the fields in the dataset, depending on whether the operation was an update or insert.

For SQL engines that support `RETURNING` clauses, the `RETURNING` clause will be used to refresh field values, unless `sqrPreferRefresh` is specified in `TSQLQuery.Options` (940)

See also: `TField.ProviderFlags` (882), `TSQLQuery.Options` (940)

39.24.43 TSQLQuery.IndexDefs

Synopsis: List of local index Definitions.

Declaration: `Property IndexDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: List of local index Definitions.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.IndexDefs` (882)

39.24.44 TSQLQuery.Options

Synopsis: Options controlling the behaviour of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property Options :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Options` controls the behaviour of the dataset. The following options can be specified:

sqoKeepOpenOnCommit The default SQLDB behaviour is to close all datasets connected to a transaction when a transaction is committed or rolled back, which means that transactions must remain active as long as the dataset is open. This can create problems with locking of records etc. With this option set, the dataset will be kept open. Note that setting this option will cause SQLDB to fetch all records in the result set in memory.

sqoAutoApplyUpdates Setting this option will make `TSQLQuery` call `ApplyUpdates` after every `Post` or `Delete` operation.

sqoAutoCommit Setting this option will make `TSQLQuery` call `commit` after every `ApplyUpdates`

sqoCancelUpdatesOnRefresh Setting this option will cause `TSQLQuery` to abandon all pending changes when `Refresh` is called. The default behaviour is to raise an exception when `Refresh` is called and there are pending changes

sqoPreferRefresh If the database engine supports `RETURNING`, then the returning mechanism is used to fetch field values after an update of the database. Setting this option will disable the use of `RETURNING` and will fetch updated or new values instead with the `TSQLQuery.RefreshSQL` (939) property or a constructed refresh SQL statement.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates` (909), `TCustomSQLQuery.Post` (909), `TCustomSQLQuery.Delete` (909)

39.24.45 TSQLQuery.Params

Synopsis: Parameters detected in the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` contains the parameters used in the SQL statement. This collection is only updated when `ParseSQL` (942) is `True`. For each named parameter in the `SQL` (937) property, a named item will appear in the collection, and the collection will be used to retrieve values from.

When `Open` (443) or `ExecSQL` (907) is called, and the `Datasource` (943) property is not `Nil`, then for each parameter for which no value was explicitly set (its `Bound` (556) property is `False`), the value will be retrieved from the dataset connected to the datasource.

For each parameter, a field with the same name will be searched, and its value and type will be copied to the (unbound) parameter. The parameter remains unbound.

The Update, delete and insert SQL statements are not scanned for parameters.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937), `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` (942), `TParam.Bound` (556), `UsingParams` (887), `UpdateSQLS` (886)

39.24.46 TSQLQuery.ParamCheck

Synopsis: Should the SQL statement be checked for parameters.

Declaration: `Property ParamCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParamCheck` must be set to `False` to disable the parameter check. The default value `True` indicates that the SQL statement should be checked for parameter names (in the form `:ParamName`), and corresponding `TParam` (545) instances should be added to the `Params` (940) property.

When executing some DDL statements, e.g. a "create procedure" SQL statement can contain parameters. These parameters should not be converted to `TParam` instances.

See also: `TParam` (545), `Params` (940), `ParamCheck` (941)

39.24.47 TSQLQuery.Macros

Synopsis: Set of macros for this SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property Macros :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Macros` is a collection of named macro values. In difference with `Params` (940) the macro value is always replaced textually in the SQL statement before it is sent to the SQL engine. This allows you to parametrize parts of the SQL statement that the SQL engine will not let you parametrize: the table name, the order by clause or an IN clause in a SQL select statement. Macros are resolved before parameters are resolved.

See also: `Params` (940)

39.24.48 TSQLQuery.MacroCheck

Synopsis: Check for macros in the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property MacroCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MacroCheck` is the macro equivalent of `ParamCheck` (941): if set to `True`, it instructs the query component to check the SQL statement text for macros and add them to the `Macros` (941) collection.

See also: `ParamCheck` (941), `Macros` (941)

39.24.49 TSQLQuery.MacroChar

Synopsis: Macro delimiter character.

Declaration: `Property MacroChar :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MacroChar` is the macro delimiter character. A macro is delimited by this character on both sides: start and end. The default is the % (percent) sign.

39.24.50 TSQLQuery.ParseSQL

Synopsis: Should the SQL statement be parsed or not.

Declaration: `Property ParseSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParseSQL` can be set to `False` to prevent `TSQLQuery` from parsing the `SQL` (937) property and attempting to detect the statement type or updating the `Params` (940) or `StatementType` (932) properties.

This can be used when `SQLDB` has problems parsing the SQL statement, or when the SQL statement contains parameters that are part of a DDL statement such as a `CREATE PROCEDURE` statement to create a stored procedure.

Note that in this case the statement will be passed as-is to the SQL engine, no parameter values will be passed on.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937), `TSQLQuery.Params` (940)

39.24.51 TSQLQuery.UpdateMode

Synopsis: How to create update SQL statements.

Declaration: `Property UpdateMode :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UpdateMode` determines how the `WHERE` clause of the `UpdateSQL` (938) and `DeleteSQL` (939) statements are auto-generated.

upWhereAll Use all old field values.

upWhereChanged Use only old field values of modified fields.

upWhereKeyOnly Only use key fields in the where clause.

See also: `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (938), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (938)

39.24.52 TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey

Synopsis: Should primary key fields be marked `pfInKey`.

Declaration: `Property UsePrimaryKeyAsKey :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLQuery` fetch all server indexes and if there is a primary key, update the `ProviderFlags` (501) of the fields in the primary key with `pfInKey` (380).

The effect of this is that when `UpdateMode` (942) equals `upWhereKeyOnly`, then only the fields that are part of the primary key of the table will be used in the update statements. For more information, see `UpdateSQLs` (886).

Note that this property only takes effect if the fields are the default fields: if persistent fields were created, the providerflags of the fields are not updated.

See also: `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (942), `#fcl.bufdataset.TCustomBufDataset.Unidirectional` (188), `TField.ProviderFlags` (501), `pfInKey` (380), `UpdateSQLs` (886)

39.24.53 TSQLQuery.DataSource

Synopsis: Source for parameter values for unbound parameters.

Declaration: `Property DataSource :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Datasource` can be set to a dataset which will be used to retrieve values for the parameters if they were not explicitly specified.

When `Open` (443) or `ExecSQL` (907) is called, and the `Datasource` property is not `Nil` then for each parameter for which no value was explicitly set (its `Bound` (556) property is `False`), the value will be retrieved from the dataset connected to the `datasource`.

For each parameter, a field with the same name will be searched, and its value and type will be copied to the (unbound) parameter. The parameter remains unbound.

See also: `Params` (940), `ExecSQL` (907), `UsingParams` (887), `TParam.Bound` (556)

39.24.54 TSQLQuery.Sequence

Synopsis: Sequence to use for auto-generating values using a sequence.

Declaration: `Property Sequence :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Sequence` allows `TSQLQuery` to automate generation of a new value for a field using a sequence in the database.

To this end, the properties in `TSQLSequence` (952) must be set to appropriate values, and `TSQLQuery` will automatically generate a new value for the indicated field during insert or post (depending on the value of `TSQLSequence.ApplyEvent` (954)).

See also: `TSQLSequence` (952)

39.24.55 TSQLQuery.ServerFilter

Synopsis: Append server-side filter to SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property ServerFilter :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerFilter` can be set to a valid `WHERE` clause (without the `WHERE` keyword). It will be appended to the `select` statement in SQL (937), when `ServerFiltered` (944) is set to `True`. if `ServerFiltered` (944) is set to `False`, `ServerFilter` is ignored.

If the dataset is active and `ServerFiltered` (944) is set to `true`, then changing this property will re-fetch the data from the server.

This property cannot be used when `ParseSQL` (942) is `False`, because the statement must be parsed in order to know where the `WHERE` clause must be inserted: the `TSQLQuery` class will intelligently insert the clause in an SQL `select` statement.

Errors: Setting this property when `ParseSQL` (942) is `False` will result in an exception.

See also: `ServerFiltered` (944)

39.24.56 TSQLQuery.ServerFiltered

Synopsis: Should server-side filter be applied.

Declaration: `Property ServerFiltered :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerFiltered` can be set to `True` to apply `ServerFilter` (944). A change in the value for this property will re-fetch the query results if the dataset is active.

Errors: Setting this property to `True` when `ParseSQL` (942) is `False` will result in an exception.

See also: `ParseSQL` (942), `ServerFilter` (944)

39.24.57 TSQLQuery.ServerIndexDefs

Synopsis: List of indexes on the primary table of the query.

Declaration: `Property ServerIndexDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerIndexDefs` will be filled - during the `Prepare` call - with the list of indexes defined on the primary table in the query if `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (942) is `True`. If a primary key is found, then the fields in it will be marked

See also: `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (942), `Prepare` (907)

39.25 TSQLScript

39.25.1 Description

`TSQLScript` is a component that can be used to execute many SQL statements using a `TSQLQuery` (929) component. The SQL statements are specified in a script `TSQLScript.Script` (949) separated by a terminator character (typically a semicolon (;)).

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (958), `TSQLConnection` (914), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (907), `TSQLQuery.SQL` (937)

39.25.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
945	Create	Create a new <code>TSQLScript</code> instance.
946	Destroy	Remove the <code>TSQLScript</code> instance from memory.
946	Execute	Execute the script.
946	ExecuteScript	Convenience function, simply calls <code>Execute</code> .

39.25.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
946	Aborted		True when the script was aborted.
948	AutoCommit		Automatically commit every statement.
950	CommentsinSQL		Should comments be passed to the SQL engine ?
947	DataBase	rw	Database on which to execute the script.
949	Defines		Defined macros.
949	Directives		List of directives.
948	DollarStrings		List of alternate string delimiter token sequences.
947	Line		Current line of execution in the script.
947	OnDirective	rw	Event handler if a directive is encountered.
952	OnException		Exception handling event.
949	Script		The script to execute.
950	Terminator		Terminator character.
947	Transaction	rw	Transaction to use in the script.
951	UseCommit		Control automatic handling of the <code>COMMIT</code> command.
951	UseDefines		Automatically handle pre-processor defines.
948	UseDollarString		Enable support for dollarstrings.
950	UseSetTerm		Should the <code>SET TERM</code> directive be recognized.

39.25.4 TSQLScript.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TSQLScript` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a `TSQLQuery` (929) instance which will be used to execute the queries, and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TSQLScript.Destroy` (946)

39.25.5 TSQLScript.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TSQLScript instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` frees the TSQLQuery (929) instance that was created during the `Create` constructor from memory and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: TSQLScript.Create (945)

39.25.6 TSQLScript.Execute

Synopsis: Execute the script.

Declaration: `procedure Execute;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Execute` will execute the statements specified in `Script` (949) one by one, till the last statement is processed or an exception is raised.

If an error occurs during execution, normally an exception is raised. If the TSQLScript.OnException (952) event handler is set, it may stop the event handler.

Errors: Handle errors using TSQLScript.OnException (952).

See also: Script (949), TSQLScript.OnException (952)

39.25.7 TSQLScript.ExecuteScript

Synopsis: Convenience function, simply calls `Execute`.

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteScript`

Visibility: public

Description: `ExecuteScript` is a convenience function, it simply calls `Execute`. The statements in the script will be executed one by one.

39.25.8 TSQLScript.Aborted

Synopsis: True when the script was aborted.

Declaration: `Property Aborted :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `Aborted` is set to `True` if the SQL script execution is aborted by one of the directives in the script. It is read-only.

39.25.9 TSQLScript.Line

Synopsis: Current line of execution in the script.

Declaration: `Property Line :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `Line` is the line number (0 based) of the currently executed statement in the script. For multiline statements, the last line of the statement is counted as the current line.

39.25.10 TSQLScript.DataBase

Synopsis: Database on which to execute the script.

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDatabase`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Database` should be set to the `TSQLConnection` (914) descendent. All SQL statements in the `Script` (949) property will be executed on this database.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (914), `TSQLScript.Transaction` (947), `TSQLScript.Script` (949)

39.25.11 TSQLScript.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction to use in the script.

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TDBTransaction`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Transaction` is the transaction instance to use when executing statements. If the SQL script contains any COMMIT statements, they will be handled using the `TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining` (959) method.

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (958), `TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining` (959), `TSQLScript.Database` (947)

39.25.12 TSQLScript.OnDirective

Synopsis: Event handler if a directive is encountered.

Declaration: `Property OnDirective : TSQLScriptDirectiveEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnDirective` is called when a directive is encountered. When parsing the script, the script engine checks the first word of the statement. If it matches one of the words in `Directives` (949) property then the `OnDirective` event handler is called with the name of the directive and the rest of the statement as parameters. This can be used to handle all kind of pre-processing actions such as `Set term \;`

See also: `Directives` (949)

39.25.13 TSQLScript.AutoCommit

Synopsis: Automatically commit every statement.

Declaration: `Property AutoCommit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `AutoCommit` can be set to `True` to commit every executed statement in the script. By default, this is set to `false`.

See also: `TSQLScript.Transaction` ([947](#))

39.25.14 TSQLScript.UseDollarString

Synopsis: Enable support for dollarstrings.

Declaration: `Property UseDollarString :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UseDollarString` enables support for so-called "DollarString" delimiters for string literals. This means that the normal string literal delimiter (') is enhanced with any string appearing in the `DollarStrings` ([948](#)) property.

Setting `UseDollarString` to `true` incurs a speed penalty, so it is better not to enable it unless it is really necessary.

This is needed for instance for PostgreSQL, where stored procedure code blocks are enclosed in "\$\$" signs, and are treated as a string literal.

See also: `TSQLScript.DollarStrings` ([948](#))

39.25.15 TSQLScript.DollarStrings

Synopsis: List of alternate string delimiter token sequences.

Declaration: `Property DollarStrings :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DollarStrings` contains a list of additional string delimiter tokens. The value of this property is ignored unless `TSQLScript.UseDollarString` ([948](#)) is also set to `True`.

For PostgreSQL, this should be set to `$$`, as this is the most commonly used string delimiter for stored procedures.

See also: `TSQLScript.UseDollarString` ([948](#))

39.25.16 TSQLScript.Directives

Synopsis: List of directives.

Declaration: `Property Directives :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Directives` is a stringlist with words that should be recognized as directives. They will be handled using the `OnDirective` (947) event handler. The list should contain one word per line, no spaces allowed.

See also: `OnDirective` (947)

39.25.17 TSQLScript.Defines

Synopsis: Defined macros.

Declaration: `Property Defines :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Defines` contains the list of defined macros for use with the `TSQLScript.UseDefines` (951) property. Each line should contain a macro name. The names of the macros are case insensitive. The `#DEFINE` and `#UNDEFINE` directives will add or remove macro names from this list.

See also: `TSQLScript.UseDefines` (951)

39.25.18 TSQLScript.Script

Synopsis: The script to execute.

Declaration: `Property Script :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Script` contains the list of SQL statements to be executed. The statements should be separated by the character specified in the `Terminator` (950) property. Each of the statement will be executed on the database specified in `Database` (947). using the equivalent of the `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (907) statement. The statements should not return result sets, but other than that all kind of statements are allowed.

Comments will be conserved and passed on in the statements to be executed, depending on the value of the `TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL` (950) property. If that property is `False`, comments will be stripped prior to executing the SQL statements.

See also: `TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL` (950), `TSQLScript.Terminator` (950), `TSQLScript.Database` (947)

39.25.19 TSQLScript.Terminator

Synopsis: Terminator character.

Declaration: Property Terminator :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Terminator is the character used by TSQLScript to delimit SQL statements. By default it equals the semicolon (;), which is the customary SQL command terminating character. By itself TSQLScript does not recognize complex statements such as Create Procedure which can contain terminator characters such as ";". Instead, TSQLScript will scan the script for the Terminator character. Using directives such as SET TERM the terminator character may be changed in the script.

See also: OnDirective (947), Directives (949)

39.25.20 TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL

Synopsis: Should comments be passed to the SQL engine ?

Declaration: Property CommentsinSQL :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: CommentsInSQL can be set to True to let TSQLScript preserve any comments it finds in the script. The comments will be passed to the SQLConnection as part of the commands. If the property is set to False the comments are discarded.

By default, TSQLScript discards comments.

See also: TSQLScript.Script (949)

39.25.21 TSQLScript.UseSetTerm

Synopsis: Should the SET TERM directive be recognized.

Declaration: Property UseSetTerm :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: UseSetTerm can be set to True to let TSQLScript automatically handle the SET TERM directive and set the TSQLScript.Terminator (950) character based on the value specified in the SET TERM directive. This means that the following directive:

```
SET TERM ^ ;
```

will set the terminator to the caret character. Conversely, the

```
SET TERM ; ^
```

will then switch the terminator character back to the commonly used semicolon (;).

See also: TSQLScript.Terminator (950), TSQLScript.Script (949), TSQLScript.Directives (949)

39.25.22 TSQLScript.UseCommit

Synopsis: Control automatic handling of the COMMIT command.

Declaration: Property UseCommit :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: UseCommit can be set to True to let TSQLScript automatically handle the commit command as a directive. If it is set, the COMMIT command is registered as a directive, and the TSQLScript.Transaction (947) will be committed and restarted at once whenever the COMMIT directive appears in the script.

If this property is set to False then the commit command will be passed on to the SQL engine like any other SQL command in the script.

See also: TSQLScript.Transaction (947), TSQLScript.Directives (949)

39.25.23 TSQLScript.UseDefines

Synopsis: Automatically handle pre-processor defines.

Declaration: Property UseDefines :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: UseDefines will automatically register the following pre-processing directives:

```
#IFDEF
#IFNDEF
#ELSE
#ENDIF
#DEFINE
#UNDEF
#UNDEFINE
```

Additionally, these directives will be automatically handled by the TSQLScript component. This can be used to add conditional execution of the SQL script: they are treated as the conditional compilation statements found in the C macro preprocessor or the FPC conditional compilation features. The initial list of defined macros can be specified in the Defines (949) property, where one define per line can be specified.

In the following example, the correct statement to create a sequence is selected based on the presence of the macro FIREBIRD in the list of defines:

```
#IFDEF FIREBIRD
CREATE GENERATOR GEN_MYID;
#ELSE
CREATE SEQUENCE GEN_MYID;
#ENDIF
```

See also: TSQLScript.Script (949), TSQLScript.Defines (949)

39.25.24 TSQLScript.OnException

Synopsis: Exception handling event.

Declaration: `Property OnException :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `OnException` can be set to handle an exception during the execution of a statement or directive when the script is executed. The exception is passed to the handler in the `TheException` parameter. On return, the value of the `Continue` parameter is checked: if it is set to `True`, then the exception is ignored. If it is set to `False` (the default), then the exception is re-raised, and script execution will stop.

See also: `TSQLScript.Execute` ([946](#))

39.26 TSQLSequence

39.26.1 Description

`TSQLSequence` is an auxiliary class, used to auto-generate numerical values for fields in databases that support sequences; it is used as a property of `TSQLQuery` ([929](#)) and its properties determine which field must be auto-generated, and at what moment this value must be generated.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetSequenceNames` ([918](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetNextValue` ([919](#))

39.26.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
953	<code>Apply</code>	Apply a new value to a field.
953	<code>Assign</code>	Assign one <code>TSQLSequence</code> to another.
952	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance.
953	<code>GetNextValue</code>	Get a next value for the sequence.

39.26.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
954	<code>ApplyEvent</code>	<code>rw</code>	When to apply the new value.
953	<code>FieldName</code>	<code>rw</code>	Field to apply sequence to.
954	<code>IncrementBy</code>	<code>rw</code>	Value to increment sequence with.
954	<code>SequenceName</code>	<code>rw</code>	Sequence name to get values from.

39.26.4 TSQLSequence.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AQuery: TCustomSQLQuery)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new sequence. It requires a `TSQLQuery` ([929](#)) instance, which it needs to have access to a connection.

See also: `TSQLQuery` ([929](#))

39.26.5 TSQLSequence.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one TSQLSequence to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` is overridden by `TSQLSequence` to copy all properties from one instance to another.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSQLSequence.FieldName` (953), `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (954), `TSQLSequence.IncrementBy` (954)

39.26.6 TSQLSequence.Apply

Synopsis: Apply a new value to a field.

Declaration: `procedure Apply`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Apply` applies the new value it gets for `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (954) using `TSQLSequence.GetNextValue` (953) to the field `TSQLSequence.FieldName` (953) of the dataset it is attached to.

Errors: If the dataset is not attached to a connected database, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TSQLSequence.GetNextValue` (953), `TSQLSequence.FieldName` (953), `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (954), `TSQLSequence.IncrementBy` (954)

39.26.7 TSQLSequence.GetNextValue

Synopsis: Get a next value for the sequence.

Declaration: `function GetNextValue : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNextValue` gets a new value for generator `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (954) using `TSQLSequence.IncrementBy` (954)

Errors: If the dataset is not attached to a connected database, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TSQLSequence.FieldName` (953), `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (954), `TSQLSequence.IncrementBy` (954), `TSQLSequence.Apply` (953), `TSQLConnection.GetNextValue` (919)

39.26.8 TSQLSequence.FieldName

Synopsis: Field to apply sequence to.

Declaration: `Property FieldName : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldName` is the name of the field `TSQLSequence` will apply the new value to when `Apply` (953) is called. It must be a valid fieldname of the dataset that owns the `TSQLSequence` instance.

See also: `Apply` (953), `SequenceName` (954), `IncrementBy` (954)

39.26.9 TSQLSequence.SequenceName

Synopsis: Sequence name to get values from.

Declaration: `Property SequenceName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SequenceName` is the name of the sequence `TSQLSequence` will get a new value of when `GetNextValue` (953) is called.

See also: `TSQLSequence.Apply` (953), `TSQLSequence.GetNextValue` (953), `TSQLSequence.IncrementBy` (954)

39.26.10 TSQLSequence.IncrementBy

Synopsis: Value to increment sequence with.

Declaration: `Property IncrementBy : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IncrementBy` is the value that will be added to the current value of the sequence `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (954) when `TSQLSequence.GetNextValue` (953) is called.

See also: `TSQLSequence.Apply` (953), `TSQLSequence.GetNextValue` (953), `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (954)

39.26.11 TSQLSequence.ApplyEvent

Synopsis: When to apply the new value.

Declaration: `Property ApplyEvent : TSQLSequenceApplyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ApplyEvent` determines when the new value will be applied to a field: On new record (i.e. when `Insert` (440) or `Append` (431) is called) or when a newly inserted record is saved (when `Post` (443) is called).

See also: `TSQLSequenceApplyEvent` (900)

39.27 TSQLStatement

39.27.1 Description

`TSQLStatement` is a descendent of `TCustomSQLStatement` (910) which simply publishes the protected properties of that component.

See also: `TCustomSQLStatement` (910)

39.27.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
955	Database		Database instance to execute statement on.
955	DataSource		Datasource to copy parameter values from.
956	MacroCheck		Check for macros in the SQL statement.
956	Macros		Set of macros for this SQL statement.
955	ParamCheck		Should SQL be checked for parameters.
956	Params		List of parameters.
957	ParseSQL		Parse the SQL statement.
957	SQL		The SQL statement to execute.
957	Transaction		The transaction in which the SQL statement should be executed.

39.27.3 TSQLStatement.Database

Synopsis: Database instance to execute statement on.

Declaration: `Property Database :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Database` must be set to an instance of a `TSQLConnection` ([914](#)) descendent. It must be set, together with `Transaction` ([957](#)) in order to be able to call `Prepare` ([912](#)) or `Execute` ([912](#)).

See also: `Transaction` ([957](#)), `Prepare` ([912](#)), `Execute` ([912](#))

39.27.4 TSQLStatement.DataSource

Synopsis: Datasource to copy parameter values from.

Declaration: `Property DataSource :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Datasource` can be set to a `#fcl.db.TDatasource` ([464](#)) instance. When `Execute` ([912](#)) is called, any unbound parameters remain empty, but if `DataSource` is set, the value of these parameters will be searched in the fields of the associated dataset. If a field with a name equal to the parameter is found, the value of that field is copied to the parameter. No such field exists, an exception is raised.

See also: `#fcl.db.TDatasource` ([464](#)), `Execute` ([912](#)), `#fcl.db.TParam.Bound` ([556](#))

39.27.5 TSQLStatement.ParamCheck

Synopsis: Should SQL be checked for parameters.

Declaration: `Property ParamCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParamCheck` must be set to `False` to disable the parameter check. The default value `True` indicates that the SQL statement should be checked for parameter names (in the form `:ParamName`), and corresponding `TParam` (545) instances should be added to the `Params` (956) property.

When executing some DDL statements, e.g. a "create procedure" SQL statement can contain parameters. These parameters should not be converted to `TParam` instances.

See also: `TParam` (545), `TSQLStatement.Params` (956), `TSQLQuery.ParamCheck` (941)

39.27.6 TSQLStatement.Params

Synopsis: List of parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` contains an item for each of the parameters in the SQL (957) statement (in the form `:ParamName`). The collection is filled automatically if the `ParamCheck` (955) property is `True`.

See also: SQL (957), `ParamCheck` (955), `ParseSQL` (957)

39.27.7 TSQLStatement.MacroCheck

Synopsis: Check for macros in the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property MacroCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MacroCheck` is the macro equivalent of `ParamCheck` (955): if set to `True`, it instructs the query component to check the SQL statement text for macros and add them to the `Macros` (956) collection.

See also: `ParamCheck` (955), `Macros` (956)

39.27.8 TSQLStatement.Macros

Synopsis: Set of macros for this SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property Macros :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Macros` is a collection of named macro values. In difference with `Params` (956) the macro value is always replaced textually in the SQL statement before it is sent to the SQL engine. This allows you to parametrize parts of the SQL statement that the SQL engine will not let you parametrize: the table name, the order by clause or an IN clause in a SQL select statement. `Macros` are resolved before parameters are resolved.

See also: `Params` (956)

39.27.9 TSQLStatement.ParseSQL

Synopsis: Parse the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property ParseSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParseSQL` can be set to `False` to disable parsing of the SQL (957) property when it is set. The default behaviour (`ParseSQL=True`) is to parse the statement and detect what kind of SQL statement it is.

See also: SQL (957), `ParamCheck` (955)

39.27.10 TSQLStatement.SQL

Synopsis: The SQL statement to execute.

Declaration: `Property SQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `SQL` must be set to the SQL statement to execute. It must not be a statement that returns a result set. This is the statement that will be passed on to the database engine when `Prepare` (912) is called.

If `ParamCheck` (955) equals `True` (the default), the SQL statement can contain parameter names where literal values can occur, in the form `:ParamName`. Keywords or table names cannot be specified as parameters. If the underlying database engine supports it, the parameter support of the database will be used to transfer the values from the `Params` (956) collection. If not, it will be emulated. The `Params` collection is automatically populated when the SQL statement is set.

Some databases support executing multiple SQL statements in 1 call. Therefore, no attempt is done to ensure that `SQL` contains a single SQL statement. However, error reporting and the `RowsAffected` (913) function may be wrong in such a case.

See also: `ParseSQL` (957), `CheckParams` (954), `Params` (956), `Prepare` (912), `RowsAffected` (913)

39.27.11 TSQLStatement.Transaction

Synopsis: The transaction in which the SQL statement should be executed.

Declaration: `Property Transaction :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Transaction` should be set to a transaction connected to the instance of the database set in the `Database` (955) property. This must be set before `Prepare` (912) is called.

See also: `Database` (955), `Prepare` (912), `TSQLTransaction` (958)

39.28 TSQLTransaction

39.28.1 Description

`TSQLTransaction` represents the transaction in which one or more `TSQLQuery` (929) instances are doing their work. It contains the methods for committing or doing a rollback of the results of query. At least one `TSQLTransaction` must be used for each `TSQLConnection` (914) used in an application.

See also: `TSQLQuery` (929), `TSQLConnection` (914)

39.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
959	<code>Commit</code>	Commit the transaction, end transaction context.
959	<code>CommitRetaining</code>	Commit the transaction, retain transaction context.
958	<code>Create</code>	Create a new transaction.
958	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy transaction component.
960	<code>EndTransaction</code>	End the transaction.
959	<code>Rollback</code>	Roll back all changes made in the current transaction.
960	<code>RollbackRetaining</code>	Roll back changes made in the transaction, keep transaction context.
960	<code>StartTransaction</code>	Start a new transaction.

39.28.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
961	<code>Action</code>	rw	Currently unused in SQLDB.
961	<code>Database</code>		Database for which this component is handling connections.
961	<code>Handle</code>	r	Low-level transaction handle.
962	<code>Options</code>	rw	Transaction options.
962	<code>Params</code>	rw	Transaction parameters.
961	<code>TSQLConnection</code>	rw	Database as <code>TSQLConnection</code> .

39.28.4 TSQLTransaction.Create

Synopsis: Create a new transaction.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TSQLTransaction` instance, but does not yet start a transaction context.

39.28.5 TSQLTransaction.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy transaction component.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` will close all datasets connected to it, prior to removing the object from memory.

39.28.6 TSQLTransaction.Commit

Synopsis: Commit the transaction, end transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure Commit; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Commit` commits an active transaction. The changes will be irreversibly written to the database.

After this, the transaction is deactivated and must be reactivated with the `StartTransaction` (960) method. To commit data while retaining an active transaction, execute `CommitRetaining` (959) instead.

Errors: Executing `Commit` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (960). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (960), `CommitRetaining` (959), `Rollback` (959), `RollbackRetaining` (960)

39.28.7 TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining

Synopsis: Commit the transaction, retain transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure CommitRetaining; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `CommitRetaining` commits an active transaction. The changes will be irreversibly written to the database.

After this, the transaction is still active. To commit data and deactivate the transaction, execute `Commit` (959) instead.

Errors: Executing `CommitRetaining` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (960). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (960), `Retaining` (959), `Rollback` (959), `RollbackRetaining` (960)

39.28.8 TSQLTransaction.Rollback

Synopsis: Roll back all changes made in the current transaction.

Declaration: `procedure Rollback; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rollback` undoes all changes in the database since the start of the transaction. It can only be executed in an active transaction.

After this, the transaction is no longer active. To undo changes but keep an active transaction, execute `RollbackRetaining` (960) instead.

Remark Changes posted in datasets that are coupled to this transaction will not be undone in memory: these datasets must be reloaded from the database (using `Close` and `Open` to reload the data as it is in the database).

Errors: Executing `Rollback` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (960). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (960), `CommitRetaining` (959), `Commit` (959), `RollbackRetaining` (960)

39.28.9 TSQLTransaction.RollbackRetaining

Synopsis: Roll back changes made in the transaction, keep transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure RollbackRetaining; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RollbackRetaining` undoes all changes in the database since the start of the transaction. It can only be executed in an active transaction.

After this, the transaction is kept in an active state. To undo changes and close the transaction, execute `Rollback` (959) instead.

Remark Changes posted in datasets that are coupled to this transaction will not be undone in memory: these datasets must be reloaded from the database (using `Close` and `Open` to reload the data as it is in the database).

Errors: Executing `RollbackRetaining` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (960). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (960), `Commit` (959), `Rollback` (959), `CommitRetaining` (959)

39.28.10 TSQLTransaction.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start a new transaction.

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` starts a new transaction context. All changes written to the database must be confirmed with a `Commit` (959) or can be undone with a `Rollback` (959) call.

Calling `StartTransaction` is equivalent to setting `Active` to `True`.

Errors: If `StartTransaction` is called while the transaction is still active, an exception will be raised.

See also: `StartTransaction` (960), `Commit` (959), `Rollback` (959), `CommitRetaining` (959), `EndTransaction` (960)

39.28.11 TSQLTransaction.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End the transaction.

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndTransaction` is equivalent to `RollBack` (959).

See also: `RollBack` (959)

39.28.12 TSQLTransaction.Handle

Synopsis: Low-level transaction handle.

Declaration: `Property Handle : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Handle` is the low-level transaction handle object. It must not be used in application code. The actual type of this object depends on the type of `TSQLConnection` (914) descendent.

39.28.13 TSQLTransaction.SQLConnection

Synopsis: Database as `TSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `Property SQLConnection : TSQLConnection`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SQLConnection` returns or sets the `Database` property, typecasted to `TSQLConnection`.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (914)

39.28.14 TSQLTransaction.Action

Synopsis: Currently unused in SQLDB.

Declaration: `Property Action : TCommitRollbackAction`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Action` is currently unused in SQLDB.

39.28.15 TSQLTransaction.Database

Synopsis: Database for which this component is handling connections.

Declaration: `Property Database :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Database` should be set to the particular `TSQLConnection` (914) instance this transaction is handling transactions in. All datasets connected to this transaction component must have the same value for their `Database` (937) property.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Database` (937), `TSQLConnection` (914)

39.28.16 TSQLTransaction.Params

Synopsis: Transaction parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params : TStringList`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Params` can be used to set connection-specific parameters in the form of `Key=Value` pairs. The contents of this property therefor depends on the type of connection.

See also: `TSQLConnection` ([914](#))

39.28.17 TSQLTransaction.Options

Synopsis: Transaction options.

Declaration: `Property Options : TSQLTransactionOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` can be used to control the behaviour of SQLDB for this transaction.

stoUseImplicit Use the implicit transaction support of the DB engine. This means that no explicit transaction start and stop commands will be sent to the server when the `Commit` or `Rollback` methods are called (effectively making them a no-op at the DB level).

stoExplicitStart When set, whenever an SQL statement is executed, the transaction must have been started explicitly. Default behaviour is that the `TSQLStatement` ([954](#)) or `TSQLQuery` ([929](#)) start the transaction as needed.

See also: `TSQLStatement` ([954](#)), `TSQLQuery` ([929](#))

Chapter 40

Reference for unit 'SQLTypes'

40.1 Used units

Table 40.1: Used units by unit 'SQLTypes'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

40.2 Constants, types and variables

40.2.1 Types

```
TDBEventType = (detCustom, detPrepare, detExecute, detFetch, detCommit
,
detRollBack, detParamValue, detActualSQL)
```

Table 40.2: Enumeration values for type TDBEventType

Value	Explanation
detActualSQL	Actual SQL as sent to engine message.
detCommit	Transaction Commit message.
detCustom	Custom event message.
detExecute	SQLExecute message.
detFetch	Fetch data message.
detParamValue	Parameter name and value message.
detPrepare	SQL prepare message.
detRollBack	Transaction rollback message.

TDBEventType describes the type of a database event message as generated by TSQLConnection (914) through the OnLog (922) event. event.

```
TDBEventTypes = Set of TDBEventType = (detActualSQL, detCommit, detCustom
, detExecute, detFetch,
detParamValue, detPrepare, detRollBack
)
```

TDBEventTypes is a set of TDBEventType (963) values, which is used to filter the set of event messages that should be sent. The TSQLConnection.LogEvents (923) property determines which events a particular connection will send.

```
TQuoteChars = Array[0..1] of char
```

TQuoteChars is an array of characters that describes the used delimiters for string values.

```
TSchemaType = (stNoSchema, stTables, stSysTables, stProcedures, stColumns
,
stProcedureParams, stIndexes, stPackages, stSchemata
,
stSequences)
```

Table 40.3: Enumeration values for type TSchemaType

Value	Explanation
stColumns	Columns in a table.
stIndexes	Indexes for a table.
stNoSchema	No schema.
stPackages	Packages (for databases that support them).
stProcedureParams	Parameters for a stored procedure.
stProcedures	Stored procedures in database.
stSchemata	List of schemas in database(s) (for databases that support them).
stSequences	Sequences (for databases that support them).
stSysTables	System tables in database.
stTables	User Tables in database.

TSchemaType describes which schema information to retrieve in the TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo (908) call. Depending on its value, the result set of the dataset will have different fields, describing the requested schema data. The result data will always have the same structure.

```
TStatementType = (stUnknown, stSelect, stInsert, stUpdate, stDelete, stDDL
,
stGetSegment, stPutSegment, stExecProcedure,
stStartTrans, stCommit, stRollback, stSelectForUpd)
```

Table 40.4: Enumeration values for type `TStatementType`

Value	Explanation
<code>stCommit</code>	The statement commits a transaction.
<code>stDDL</code>	The statement is a SQL DDL (Data Definition Language) statement.
<code>stDelete</code>	The statement is a SQL DELETE statement.
<code>stExecProcedure</code>	The statement executes a stored procedure.
<code>stGetSegment</code>	The statement is a SQL get segment statement.
<code>stInsert</code>	The statement is a SQL INSERT statement.
<code>stPutSegment</code>	The statement is a SQL put segment statement.
<code>stRollback</code>	The statement rolls back a transaction.
<code>stSelect</code>	The statement is a SQL SELECT statement.
<code>stSelectForUpd</code>	The statement selects data for update.
<code>stStartTrans</code>	The statement starts a transaction.
<code>stUnknown</code>	The statement type could not be detected.
<code>stUpdate</code>	The statement is a SQL UPDATE statement.

`TStatementType` describes the kind of SQL statement that was entered in the `SQL` property of a `TSQLQuery` (929) component.

40.3 TSqlObjectIdentifier

40.3.1 Description

`TSqlObjectIdentifier` is a class that represents an SQL identifier in a database. It has 2 parts: the schema name and the object name.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifierList` (963), `#fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames` (917)

40.3.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
965	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a <code>TSqlObjectIdentifier</code> class.
966	<code>FullName</code>	Return the full name of the object.

40.3.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
966	<code>ObjectName</code>	rw	Name of the object in the database.
966	<code>SchemaName</code>	rw	Schema name.

40.3.4 TSqlObjectIdentifier.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TSqlObjectIdentifier` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TSqlObjectIdentifierList;
const AObjectName: string; const ASchemaName: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` can be used to create a new `TSqlObjectIdentifier` instance and immediately set the values for the `TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName` (966) and `TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName` (966) properties.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName` (966), `TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName` (966)

40.3.5 TSqlObjectIdentifier.FullName

Synopsis: Return the full name of the object.

Declaration: `function FullName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FullName` returns the name of the object, prepended with the schema name if there is one. Both parts are separated by a dot (.) character.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName` (966), `TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName` (966)

40.3.6 TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName

Synopsis: Schema name.

Declaration: `Property SchemaName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SchemaName` is the name of the schema in which the object is defined. This is only set if the database actually supports schemas, for other databases, it is empty.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifierList` (963), `#fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames` (917), `TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName` (966)

40.3.7 TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName

Synopsis: Name of the object in the database.

Declaration: `Property ObjectName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ObjectName` is the name of the object in the database. If the database supports schemas, then it must be combined with the `SchemaName` (966) property in order to create a unique name for the object.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifierList` (963), `#fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames` (917), `TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName` (966)

40.4 TSqlObjectIdentifierList

40.4.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
967	<code>AddIdentifier</code>	

40.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
967	Identifiers	rw	

40.4.3 TSqLObjectIdentifierList.AddIdentifier

Declaration: `function AddIdentifier : TSqLObjectIdentifier; Overload`
`function AddIdentifier(const AObjectName: string;`
`const ASchemaName: string) : TSqLObjectIdentifier`
`; Overload`

Visibility: public

40.4.4 TSqLObjectIdentifierList.Identifiers

Declaration: `Property Identifiers[Index: Integer]: TSqLObjectIdentifier; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Chapter 41

Reference for unit 'streamcoll'

41.1 Used units

Table 41.1: Used units by unit 'streamcoll'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

41.2 Overview

The `streamcoll` unit contains the implementation of a collection (and corresponding collection item) which implements routines for saving or loading the collection to/from a stream. The collection item should implement 2 routines to implement the streaming; the streaming itself is not performed by the `TStreamCollection` (971) collection item.

The streaming performed here is not compatible with the streaming implemented in the `Classes` unit for components. It is independent of the latter and can be used without a component to hold the collection.

The collection item introduces mostly protected methods, and the unit contains a lot of auxiliary routines which aid in streaming.

41.3 Procedures and functions

41.3.1 ColReadBoolean

Synopsis: Read a boolean value from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadBoolean(S: TStream) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadBoolean` reads a boolean from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteBoolean` (970) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(969\)](#), [ColWriteBoolean \(970\)](#), [ColReadString \(970\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(969\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(969\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(969\)](#)

41.3.2 ColReadCurrency

Synopsis: Read a currency value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadCurrency(S: TStream) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadCurrency` reads a currency value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteCurrency (970)` and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(969\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(968\)](#), [ColReadString \(970\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(969\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(969\)](#), [ColWriteCurrency \(970\)](#)

41.3.3 ColReadDateTime

Synopsis: Read a `TDateTime` value from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadDateTime(S: TStream) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadDateTime` reads a currency value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteDateTime (970)` and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColWriteDateTime \(970\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(968\)](#), [ColReadString \(970\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(969\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(969\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(969\)](#)

41.3.4 ColReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a floating point value from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadFloat(S: TStream) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadFloat` reads a double value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteFloat (971)` and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(969\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(968\)](#), [ColReadString \(970\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(969\)](#), [ColWriteFloat \(971\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(969\)](#)

41.3.5 ColReadInteger

Synopsis: Read a 32-bit integer from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadInteger(S: TStream) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadInteger` reads a 32-bit integer from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteInteger` (971) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (969), `ColReadBoolean` (968), `ColReadString` (970), `ColWriteInteger` (971), `ColReadFloat` (969), `ColReadCurrency` (969)

41.3.6 ColReadString

Synopsis: Read a string from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadString(S: TStream) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadStream` reads a string value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteString` (971) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (969), `ColReadBoolean` (968), `ColWriteString` (971), `ColReadInteger` (969), `ColReadFloat` (969), `ColReadCurrency` (969)

41.3.7 ColWriteBoolean

Synopsis: Write a boolean to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteBoolean(S: TStream; AValue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteBoolean` writes the boolean `AValue` to the stream. `S`.

See also: `ColReadBoolean` (968), `ColWriteString` (971), `ColWriteInteger` (971), `ColWriteCurrency` (970), `ColWriteDateTime` (970), `ColWriteFloat` (971)

41.3.8 ColWriteCurrency

Synopsis: Write a currency value to stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteCurrency(S: TStream; AValue: Currency)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteCurrency` writes the currency `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (970), `ColWriteString` (971), `ColWriteInteger` (971), `ColWriteDateTime` (970), `ColWriteFloat` (971), `ColReadCurrency` (969)

41.3.9 ColWriteDateTime

Synopsis: Write a `TDateTime` value to stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteDateTime(S: TStream; AValue: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteDateTime` writes the `TDateTime` `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (969), `ColWriteBoolean` (970), `ColWriteString` (971), `ColWriteInteger` (971), `ColWriteFloat` (971), `ColWriteCurrency` (970)

41.3.10 ColWriteFloat

Synopsis: Write floating point value to stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteFloat(S: TStream; AValue: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteFloat` writes the double `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteDateTime` (970), `ColWriteBoolean` (970), `ColWriteString` (971), `ColWriteInteger` (971), `ColReadFloat` (969), `ColWriteCurrency` (970)

41.3.11 ColWriteInteger

Synopsis: Write a 32-bit integer to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteInteger(S: TStream; AValue: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteInteger` writes the 32-bit integer `AValue` to the stream `S`. No endianness is observed.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (970), `ColWriteString` (971), `ColReadInteger` (969), `ColWriteCurrency` (970), `ColWriteDateTime` (970)

41.3.12 ColWriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteString(S: TStream; AValue: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteString` writes the string value `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (970), `ColReadString` (970), `ColWriteInteger` (971), `ColWriteCurrency` (970), `ColWriteDateTime` (970), `ColWriteFloat` (971)

41.4 EStreamColl

41.4.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurs when streaming the collection.

41.5 TStreamCollection

41.5.1 Description

`TStreamCollection` is a `TCollection` (??) descendent which implements 2 calls `LoadFromStream` (972) and `SaveToStream` (972) which load and save the contents of the collection to a stream.

The collection items must be descendents of the `TStreamCollectionItem` (973) class for the streaming to work correctly.

Note that the stream must be used to load collections of the same type.

See also: `TStreamCollectionItem` (973)

41.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
972	LoadFromStream	Load the collection from a stream.
972	SaveToStream	Load the collection from the stream.

41.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
972	Streaming	r	Indicates whether the collection is currently being written to stream.

41.5.4 TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load the collection from a stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(S: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the collection from the stream `S`, if the collection was saved using `SaveToStream` ([972](#)). It reads the number of items in the collection, and then creates and loads the items one by one from the stream.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the stream contains invalid data.

See also: `TStreamCollection.SaveToStream` ([972](#))

41.5.5 TStreamCollection.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Load the collection from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(S: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToStream` saves the collection to the stream `S` so it can be read from the stream with `LoadFromStream` ([972](#)). It does this by writing the number of collection items to the stream, and then streaming all items in the collection by calling their `SaveToStream` method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream` ([972](#))

41.5.6 TStreamCollection.Streaming

Synopsis: Indicates whether the collection is currently being written to stream.

Declaration: `Property Streaming : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Streaming` is set to `True` if the collection is written to or loaded from stream, and is set again to `False` if the streaming process is finished.

See also: `TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream` ([972](#)), `TStreamCollection.SaveToStream` ([972](#))

41.6 TStreamCollectionItem

41.6.1 Description

TStreamCollectionItem is a TCollectionItem (??) descendent which implements 2 abstract routines: LoadFromStream and SaveToStream which must be overridden in a descendent class.

These 2 routines will be called by the TStreamCollection ([971](#)) to save or load the item from the stream.

See also: TStreamCollection ([971](#))

Chapter 42

Reference for unit 'streamex'

42.1 Used units

Table 42.1: Used units by unit 'streamex'

Name	Page
Classes	??
RtlConsts	??
System	??
sysutils	??

42.2 Overview

`streamex` implements some extensions to be used together with streams from the `classes` unit.

42.3 Constants, types and variables

42.3.1 Constants

`BUFFER_SIZE = 4096`

Default buffer size for `TStreamReader`.

`FILE_RIGHTS = 438`

Default file rights for `TStreamReader`.

`MIN_BUFFER_SIZE = 128`

Minimum buffer size for `TStreamReader`.

42.4 TBidirBinaryObjectReader

42.4.1 Description

`TBidirBinaryObjectReader` is a class descendent from `TBinaryObjectReader` (??), which implements the necessary support for BiDi data: the position in the stream (not available in the standard streaming) is emulated.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975), `TDelphiReader` (976)

42.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
975	Position	rw	Position in the stream.

42.4.3 TBidirBinaryObjectReader.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Position` exposes the position of the stream in the reader for use in the `TDelphiReader` (976) class.

See also: `TDelphiReader` (976)

42.5 TBidirBinaryObjectWriter

42.5.1 Description

`TBidirBinaryObjectReader` is a class descendent from `TBinaryObjectWriter` (??), which implements the necessary support for BiDi data.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975), `TDelphiWriter` (977)

42.5.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
975	Position	rw	Position in the stream.

42.5.3 TBidirBinaryObjectWriter.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Position` exposes the position of the stream in the writer for use in the `TDelphiWriter` (977) class.

See also: `TDelphiWriter` (977)

42.6 TDelphiReader

42.6.1 Description

`TDelphiReader` is a descendent of `TReader` which has support for BiDi Streaming. It overrides the stream reading methods for strings, and makes sure the stream can be positioned in the case of strings. For this purpose, it makes use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975) driver class.

See also: `TDelphiWriter` (977), `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975)

42.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
976	<code>GetDriver</code>	Return the driver class as a <code>TBidirBinaryObjectReader</code> (975) class.
976	<code>Read</code>	Read data from stream.
976	<code>ReadStr</code>	Overrides the standard <code>ReadStr</code> method.

42.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
977	<code>Position</code>	rw	Position in the stream.

42.6.4 TDelphiReader.GetDriver

Synopsis: Return the driver class as a `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975) class.

Declaration: `function GetDriver : TBidirBinaryObjectReader`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetDriver` simply returns the used driver and typecasts it as `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975) class.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975)

42.6.5 TDelphiReader.ReadStr

Synopsis: Overrides the standard `ReadStr` method.

Declaration: `function ReadStr : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` makes sure the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975) methods are used, to store additional information about the stream position when reading the strings.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975)

42.6.6 TDelphiReader.Read

Synopsis: Read data from stream.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads raw data from the stream. It reads `Count` bytes from the stream and places them in `Buf`. It forces the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975) class when reading.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (975), `TDelphiReader.Position` (977)

42.6.7 TDelphiReader.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Position in the stream.

See also: `TDelphiReader.Read` (976)

42.7 TDelphiWriter

42.7.1 Description

`TDelphiWriter` is a descendent of `TWriter` which has support for BiDi Streaming. It overrides the stream writing methods for strings, and makes sure the stream can be positioned in the case of strings. For this purpose, it makes use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975) driver class.

See also: `TDelphiReader` (976), `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975)

42.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
978	<code>FlushBuffer</code>	Flushes the stream buffer.
977	<code>GetDriver</code>	Return the driver class as a <code>TBidirBinaryObjectWriter</code> (975) class.
978	<code>Write</code>	Write raw data to the stream.
978	<code>WriteStr</code>	Write a string to the stream.
978	<code>WriteValue</code>	Write value type.

42.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
978	<code>Position</code>	<code>rw</code>	Position in the stream.

42.7.4 TDelphiWriter.GetDriver

Synopsis: Return the driver class as a `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975) class.

Declaration: `function GetDriver : TBidirBinaryObjectWriter`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetDriver` simply returns the used driver and typecasts it as `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975) class.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975)

42.7.5 TDelphiWriter.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flushes the stream buffer.

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the internal buffer of the writer. It simply calls the `FlushBuffer` method of the driver class.

42.7.6 TDelphiWriter.Write

Synopsis: Write raw data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buf; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to the buffer, updating the position as needed.

42.7.7 TDelphiWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(const Value: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteStr` writes a string to the stream, forcing the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975) class methods, which update the position of the stream.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975)

42.7.8 TDelphiWriter.WriteValue

Synopsis: Write value type.

Declaration: `procedure WriteValue(Value: TValueType)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteValue` overrides the same method in `TWriter` to force the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975) methods, which update the position of the stream.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975)

42.7.9 TDelphiWriter.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Position` exposes the position in the stream as exposed by the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975) instance used when streaming.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (975)

42.8 TFileReader

42.8.1 Description

TFileReader is a TTextReader descendent that takes a file on disk as the source of text data.

See also: TStreamReader (985), TTextReader (993)

42.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
980	Close	Close the file.
979	Create	Create a new instance of TFileReader for a disk file.
979	Destroy	Remove the TFileReader instance from memory.
980	ReadLine	Read a line of text.
980	Reset	Reset the stream to its original position.

42.8.3 TFileReader.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TFileReader for a disk file.

Declaration: constructor Create(const AFileName: TFileName; AMode: Word;
 ARights: Cardinal; ABufferSize: Integer); Virtual
 constructor Create(const AFileName: TFileName; AMode: Word;
 ABufferSize: Integer); Virtual
 constructor Create(const AFileName: TFileName; ABufferSize: Integer)
 ; Virtual
 constructor Create(const AFileName: TFileName); Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a TFileReader using the provided AFileName. It will allocate a buffer of ABufferSize bytes for faster reading of data. If no buffer size is specified, BUFFER_SIZE (974) will be used. If the ABufferSize argument is less than MIN_BUFFER_SIZE (974), then MIN_BUFFER_SIZE bytes will be used.

The AMode can be used to specify the mode in which to open the file. This is one of the fmOpenRead and fmShare* constants which can be used in a TFileStream constructor. The file must be opened for reading.

Errors: If AStream is Nil, an #rtl.sysutils.EArgumentException (??) exception will be raised.

See also: TStreamReader.Destroy (986), TFileStream (??), TFileStream.Create (??)

42.8.4 TFileReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TFileReader instance from memory.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy closes the file and releases the buffer used to read data.

See also: TFileReader.Create (979)

42.8.5 TFileReader.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream to its original position.

Declaration: `procedure Reset; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Reset` sets the stream to its original position. This is the stream-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Reset` (994) method.

See also: `TTextReader.Reset` (994)

42.8.6 TFileReader.Close

Synopsis: Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the text file. Any read operations after `Close` is called will fail. This is the stream-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Close` (994)

See also: `TTextReader.Close` (994)

42.8.7 TFileReader.ReadLine

Synopsis: Read a line of text.

Declaration: `procedure ReadLine(out AString: string); Override; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadLine` will read a line of text from the text data source. A line of text is delimited by a CRLF character pair, a LF character or a CR character. The line ending characters are not included in the string.

The method exists in 2 versions: one function where the line of text is returned as the function result, one procedure where the line of text is returned in the `AString` parameter.

This is the `TFileReader` specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.ReadLine` (994) method.

See also: `Eof` (995), `TTextReader.ReadLine` (994)

42.9 TStreamHelper

42.9.1 Description

`TStreamHelper` is a `TStream` (??) helper class which introduces some helper routines to read/write multi-byte integer values in a way that is endianness-safe.

See also: `TStream` (??)

42.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
984	<code>ReadDouble</code>	Read a double-precision floating point value from the stream.
983	<code>ReadDWordBE</code>	Read a DWord from the stream, big endian.
981	<code>ReadDWordLE</code>	Read a DWord from the stream, little endian.
983	<code>ReadQWordBE</code>	Read a QWord from the stream, big endian.
981	<code>ReadQWordLE</code>	Read a QWord from the stream, little endian.
984	<code>ReadSingle</code>	Read a single-precision floating point value from the stream.
983	<code>ReadWordBE</code>	Read a Word from the stream, big endian.
981	<code>ReadWordLE</code>	Read a Word from the stream, little endian.
985	<code>WriteDouble</code>	Write a double-precision floating point value to the stream.
984	<code>WriteDWordBE</code>	Write a DWord value, big endian.
982	<code>WriteDWordLE</code>	Write a DWord value, little endian.
984	<code>WriteQWordBE</code>	Write a QWord value, big endian.
982	<code>WriteQWordLE</code>	Write a QWord value, little endian.
985	<code>WriteSingle</code>	Write a single-precision floating point value to the stream.
983	<code>WriteWordBE</code>	Write a word value, big endian.
982	<code>WriteWordLE</code>	Write a word value, little endian.

42.9.3 TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE

Synopsis: Read a Word from the stream, little endian.

Declaration: `function ReadWordLE : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordLE` reads a word from the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE` ([982](#))

42.9.4 TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE

Synopsis: Read a DWord from the stream, little endian.

Declaration: `function ReadDWordLE : dword`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDWordLE` reads a DWord from the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE` ([982](#))

42.9.5 TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE

Synopsis: Read a QWord from the stream, little endian.

Declaration: `function ReadQWordLE : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordLE` reads a `QWord` from the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE` ([982](#))

42.9.6 TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE

Synopsis: Write a word value, little endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteWordLE(w: Word)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `WriteWordLE` writes a `Word`-sized value to the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not all data (2 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE` ([982](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE` ([982](#))

42.9.7 TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE

Synopsis: Write a `DWord` value, little endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWordLE(dw: dword)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `WriteDWordLE` writes a `DWord`-sized value to the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not all data (4 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE` ([982](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE` ([982](#))

42.9.8 TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE

Synopsis: Write a `QWord` value, little endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteQWordLE(dq: QWord)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `WriteQWordLE` writes a `QWord`-sized value to the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not all data (8 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE` ([981](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE` ([982](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE` ([982](#))

42.9.9 TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE

Synopsis: Read a Word from the stream, big endian.

Declaration: `function ReadWordBE : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordBE` reads a word from the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE` (983)

42.9.10 TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE

Synopsis: Read a DWord from the stream, big endian.

Declaration: `function ReadDWordBE : dword`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordBE` reads a DWord from the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE` (984)

42.9.11 TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE

Synopsis: Read a QWord from the stream, big endian.

Declaration: `function ReadQWordBE : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordBE` reads a QWord from the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE` (984)

42.9.12 TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE

Synopsis: Write a word value, big endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteWordBE(w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteWordBE` writes a Word-sized value to the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not all data (2 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE` (984), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE` (984)

42.9.13 TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE

Synopsis: Write a DWord value, big endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWordBE(dw: dword)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteDWordBE` writes a DWord-sized value to the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not all data (4 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE` (984)

42.9.14 TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE

Synopsis: Write a QWord value, big endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteQWordBE(dq: QWord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteQWordBE` writes a QWord-sized value to the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not all data (8 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE` (983), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE` (984), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE` (983)

42.9.15 TStreamHelper.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Read a single-precision floating point value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadSingle` reads a single-precision floating point value from the stream and returns the value.
No endianness corrections are performed.

Errors: If the end of stream is reached before all necessary bytes can be read, an `EReadError` (??) exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDouble` (984), `TStreamHelper.WriteSingle` (985)

42.9.16 TStreamHelper.ReadDouble

Synopsis: Read a double-precision floating point value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadDouble : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDouble` reads a double-precision floating point value from the stream and returns the value.
No endianness corrections are performed.

Errors: If the end of stream is reached before all necessary bytes can be read, an `EReadError` (??) exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadSingle` (984), `TStreamHelper.WriteDouble` (985)

42.9.17 TStreamHelper.WriteSingle

Synopsis: Write a single-precision floating point value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(s: Single)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteSingle` writes the single-precision floating point value *S* to the stream. No endianness corrections are performed.

Errors: If not all bytes can be written, an `EWriteError` (??) exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadSingle` (984), `TStreamHelper.WriteDouble` (985)

42.9.18 TStreamHelper.WriteDouble

Synopsis: Write a double-precision floating point value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDouble(d: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteDouble` writes the double-precision floating point value *D* to the stream. No endianness corrections are performed.

Errors: If not all bytes can be written, an `EWriteError` (??) exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDouble` (984), `TStreamHelper.WriteSingle` (985)

42.10 TStreamReader

42.10.1 Description

`TStreamReader` is a `TTextReader` descendent that takes a stream as the source of text data. It can free the stream and the buffer size to use for reading data can be set.

See also: `TTextReader` (993)

42.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
986	<code>Close</code>	Close and possibly free the stream.
986	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TStreamReader</code> from a stream.
986	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy the <code>TStreamReader</code> instance.
987	<code>ReadLine</code>	Read a line of text.
986	<code>Reset</code>	Reset the stream to its original position.

42.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
987	<code>BaseStream</code>	<code>r</code>	The stream with the text data.
987	<code>OwnsStream</code>	<code>rw</code>	Should the stream be freed on close.

42.10.4 TStreamReader.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TStreamReader from a stream.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AStream: TStream; ABufferSize: Integer;
 AOwnsStream: Boolean); Virtual
constructor Create(AStream: TStream); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a TStreamReader using the provided AStream. It will allocate a buffer of ABufferSize bytes for faster reading of data. If no buffer size is specified, BUFFER_SIZE (974) will be used. If the ABufferSize argument is less than MIN_BUFFER_SIZE (974), then MIN_BUFFER_SIZE bytes will be used.

If AOwnsStream is true, the stream will be freed when the TStreamReader instance is freed. If omitted, its value is assumed to be False.

Errors: If AStream is Nil, an #rtl.sysutils.EArgumentException (??) exception will be raised.

See also: TStreamReader.Destroy (986), TStream (??)

42.10.5 TStreamReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TStreamReader instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy frees the resources taken by the buffer, and frees the source stream (BaseStream (987)) if OwnsStream is True.

See also: TStreamReader.OwnsStream (987), TStreamReader.Create (986), TStreamReader.BaseStream (987)

42.10.6 TStreamReader.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream to its original position.

Declaration: `procedure Reset; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Reset sets the stream to its original position. This is the stream-specific implementation of the abstract TTextReader.Reset (994) method.

Errors: If the source stream (TStreamReader.BaseStream (987)) is not seekable, then this method may raise an exception.

See also: TStreamReader.BaseStream (987)

42.10.7 TStreamReader.Close

Synopsis: Close and possibly free the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Close closed the text data stream. It will free the source stream if OwnsStream is True

See also: TStreamReader.BaseStream (987), TStreamReader.OwnsStream (987)

42.10.8 TStreamReader.ReadLine

Synopsis: Read a line of text.

Declaration: `procedure ReadLine(out AString: string); Override; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadLine` will read a line of text from the text data source. A line of text is delimited by a CRLF character pair, a LF character or a CR character. The line ending characters are not included in the string.

The method exists in 2 versions: one function where the line of text is returned as the function result, one procedure where the line of text is returned in the `AString` parameter.

This is the `TStreamReader` specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.ReadLine` (994) method.

See also: `Eof` (995), `TTextReader.ReadLine` (994)

42.10.9 TStreamReader.BaseStream

Synopsis: The stream with the text data.

Declaration: `Property BaseStream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BaseStream` is the stream that was passed to the `TStreamReader` instance in the `TStreamReader.Create` (986) call.

Manipulating the stream between calls to `TStreamReader.ReadLine` (987) is not allowed, it will lead to wrong data being read from the stream.

See also: `TStreamReader.Create` (986), `TStreamReader.OwnsStream` (987)

42.10.10 TStreamReader.OwnsStream

Synopsis: Should the stream be freed on close.

Declaration: `Property OwnsStream : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OwnsStream` determines whether the stream `TStreamReader.BaseStream` (987) must be freed when `TStreamReader.Close` (986) is called or when the `TStreamReader` instance is destroyed.

See also: `TStreamReader.BaseStream` (987), `TStreamReader.Close` (986)

42.11 TStreamWriter

42.11.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
988	Close	
988	Create	
988	Destroy	
988	Flush	
989	OwnStream	
989	Write	
989	WriteLine	

42.11.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
989	AutoFlush	rw	
990	BaseStream	r	
990	Encoding	r	
990	NewLine	rw	

42.11.3 TStreamWriter.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(aStream: TStream); Overload
 constructor Create(aStream: TStream; aEncoding: TEncoding;
 aBufferSize: Integer); Overload
 constructor Create(const aFilename: string; aAppend: Boolean); Overload
 constructor Create(const aFilename: string; aAppend: Boolean;
 aEncoding: TEncoding; aBufferSize: Integer); Overload

Visibility: public

42.11.4 TStreamWriter.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

42.11.5 TStreamWriter.Close

Declaration: procedure Close; Override

Visibility: public

42.11.6 TStreamWriter.Flush

Declaration: procedure Flush; Override

Visibility: public

42.11.7 TStreamWriter.OwnStream

Declaration: procedure OwnStream

Visibility: public

42.11.8 TStreamWriter.Write

Declaration: procedure Write(aValue: Boolean); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: char); Override
 procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Double); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Integer); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Int64); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: TObject); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Single); Override
 procedure Write(const aValue: string); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Cardinal); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: UInt64); Override
 procedure Write(const Fmt: string; aArgs: Array of const); Override
 procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
 aCount: Integer); Override

Visibility: public

42.11.9 TStreamWriter.WriteLine

Declaration: procedure WriteLine; Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Boolean); Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: char); Override
 procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray); Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Double); Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Integer); Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Int64); Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: TObject); Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Single); Override
 procedure WriteLine(const aValue: string); Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Cardinal); Override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: UInt64); Override
 procedure WriteLine(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const); Override
 procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
 aCount: Integer); Override

Visibility: public

42.11.10 TStreamWriter.AutoFlush

Declaration: Property AutoFlush : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

42.11.11 TStreamWriter.NewLine

```
Declaration: Property NewLine : string
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

42.11.12 TStreamWriter.Encoding

```
Declaration: Property Encoding : TEncoding
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read

42.11.13 TStreamWriter.BaseStream

Declaration: `Property BaseStream : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

42.12 TStringReader

42.12.1 Description

`TStreamReader` is a `TTextReader` descendent that takes a single string as the source of text data.

See also: [TStreamReader \(993\)](#)

42.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
991	Close	Close and possibly free the stream.
990	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TStreamReader</code> from a string.
991	Destroy	Free the <code>TStringReader</code> instance.
991	ReadLine	Read a line of text.
991	Reset	Reset the stream to its original position.

42.12.3 TStringReader.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TStreamReader` from a string.

```
Declaration: constructor Create(const AString: string; ABufferSize: Integer)
              ; Virtual
              constructor Create(const AString: string); Virtual
```

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a TStringReader instance using the provided AString. It will allocate a buffer of ABufferSize bytes for faster reading of data. If no buffer size is specified, BUFFER_SIZE (974) will be used. If the ABufferSize argument is less than MIN_BUFFER_SIZE (974), then MIN_BUFFER_SIZE bytes will be used.

Errors: If `AStream` is `Nil`, an `#rtl.sysutils.EArgumentException` (??) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStreamReader.Destroy` (986), `TStream` (??)

42.12.4 TStreamReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the `TStreamReader` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` deallocates all resources for the `TStreamReader` instance.

See also: `TStreamReader.Create` (990)

42.12.5 TStreamReader.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream to its original position.

Declaration: `procedure Reset; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Reset` sets the stream to its original position. This is the string-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Reset` (994) method.

See also: `TStreamReader.BaseStream` (987)

42.12.6 TStreamReader.Close

Synopsis: Close and possibly free the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the text reader. This is the string-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Close` (994) method.

See also: `TTextReader.Close` (994)

42.12.7 TStreamReader.ReadLine

Synopsis: Read a line of text.

Declaration: `procedure ReadLine(out AString: string); Override; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadLine` will read a line of text from the text data source. A line of text is delimited by a CRLF character pair, a LF character or a CR character. The line ending characters are not included in the string.

The method exists in 2 versions: one function where the line of text is returned as the function result, one procedure where the line of text is returned in the `AString` parameter.

This is the `TStreamReader` specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.ReadLine` (994) method.

See also: `Eof` (995), `TTextReader.ReadLine` (994)

42.13 TStringWriter

42.13.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
992	Close	
992	Create	
992	Destroy	
992	Flush	
993	ToString	
992	Write	
993	WriteLine	

42.13.2 TStringWriter.Create

Declaration: constructor Create; Overload
 constructor Create(aBuilder: TStringBuilder); Overload

Visibility: public

42.13.3 TStringWriter.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

42.13.4 TStringWriter.Close

Declaration: procedure Close; Override

Visibility: public

42.13.5 TStringWriter.Flush

Declaration: procedure Flush; Override

Visibility: public

42.13.6 TStringWriter.Write

Declaration: procedure Write(aValue: Boolean); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: char); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: char; aCount: Integer); Override
 procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Double); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Integer); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Int64); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: TObject); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Single); Override
 procedure Write(const aValue: string); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: Cardinal); Override
 procedure Write(aValue: QWord); Override
 procedure Write(const aFmt: string; aArgs: Array of const); Override

```
procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
               aCount: Integer); Override
```

Visibility: public

42.13.7 TStringWriter.WriteLine

Declaration: `procedure WriteLine; Override`

```
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Boolean); Override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: char); Override
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray); Override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Double); Override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Integer); Override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Int64); Override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: TObject); Override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Single); Override
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: string); Override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Cardinal); Override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: UInt64); Override
procedure WriteLine(const aFmt: string; aArgs: Array of const)
               ; Override
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
               aCount: Integer); Override
```

Visibility: public

42.13.8 TStringWriter.ToString

Declaration: `function ToString : string; Override`

Visibility: public

42.14 TTextReader

42.14.1 Description

`TTextReader` is an abstract class that provides a line-oriented reading API. It allows to read data from streams or memory blocks as if one was using regular pascal `Read` or `ReadLn` operations: the `ReadLine` (994) procedure. Several descendents of this class exist which implement the reader interface for several sources of text data: `TStreamReader` (985), `TFileReader` (979), `TStringReader` (990).

See also: `TStreamReader` (985), `TFileReader` (979), `TStringReader` (990), `ReadLine` (994)

42.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
994	<code>Close</code>	Close the text data stream.
994	<code>Create</code>	Instantiate a new instance.
994	<code>ReadLine</code>	Read a line of text.
994	<code>Reset</code>	Reset the reader to the start position.

42.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
995	Eof	r	Check whether the end of the text data is returned.

42.14.4 TTextReader.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` does nothing in `TTextReader`.

See also: `ReadLine` ([994](#))

42.14.5 TTextReader.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the reader to the start position.

Declaration: `procedure Reset; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Reset` resets the position to the start of the text data.

This is an abstract call which must be implemented by descendents.

See also: `TTextReader.Close` ([994](#)), `TTextReader.ReadLine` ([994](#))

42.14.6 TTextReader.Close

Synopsis: Close the text data stream.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the data stream. No `ReadLine` ([994](#)) call can be performed after a call to `Close`.

See also: `TTextReader.Reset` ([994](#)), `TTextReader.ReadLine` ([994](#))

42.14.7 TTextReader.ReadLine

Synopsis: Read a line of text.

Declaration: `procedure ReadLine(out AString: string); Virtual; Abstract; Overload`
`function ReadLine : string; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadLine` will read a line of text from the text data source. A line of text is delimited by a CRLF character pair, a LF character or a CR character. The line ending characters are not included in the string.

The method exists in 2 versions: one function where the line of text is returned as the function result, one procedure where the line of text is returned in the `AString` parameter.

See also: `Eof` ([995](#))

42.14.8 TTextReader.Eof

Synopsis: Check whether the end of the text data is returned.

```
Declaration: Property Eof : Boolean
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Eof` is `True` if no more data is available for reading. If there is still data, then it is `False`.

See also: [TStreamReader.ReadLine \(994\)](#)

42.15 TTextWriter

42.15.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
995	Close	
995	Flush	
995	Write	
996	WriteLine	

42.15.2 TTextWriter.Close

```
Declaration: procedure Close; Virtual; Abstract
```

Visibility: public

42.15.3 TTextWriter.Flush

```
Declaration: procedure Flush; Virtual; Abstract
```

Visibility: public

42.15.4 TTextWriter.Write

```

Declaration: procedure Write(aValue: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: char); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: char; aCount: Integer); Virtual; Overload
              procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray); Virtual; Abstract
                    ; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: Double); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: Integer); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: Int64); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: TObject); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: Single); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(const aValue: string); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: Cardinal); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(aValue: UInt64); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(const Fmt: string; aArgs: Array of const); Virtual
                    ; Abstract; Overload
              procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
                    aCount: Integer); Virtual; Abstract; Overload

```

Visibility: public

42.15.5 TTextWriter.WriteLine

Declaration:

```

procedure WriteLine; Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: char); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray); Virtual; Abstract
    ; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Double); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Integer); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Int64); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: TObject); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Single); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: string); Virtual; Abstract
    ; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Cardinal); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: UInt64); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(const Format: string; Args: Array of const)
    ; Virtual; Abstract; Overload
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray; Index: Integer;
    Count: Integer); Virtual; Abstract; Overload
  
```

Visibility: public

42.16 TWindowedStream

42.16.1 Description

TWindowedStream is a TStream (974) descendent that can be used to provide a window on the data of another stream. The position and size of the window can be determined in the constructor, and the stream will behave as a normal stream. The actual reading (or writing) will happen on the source stream.

If the source stream has some limitations (e.g. no Seek (??)) then the TWindowedStream will inherit these limitations.

The TWindowedStream will keep track of the last position it used, and will attempt to restore it if it was modified between calls to Read and Write.

See also: TStream (974), TWindowedStream.Create (997)

42.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
997	Create	Initialize a new instance of TWindowedStream.
997	Destroy	Destroy the TWindowedStream instance.
997	Read	Read data from the stream.
998	Seek	Reposition the stream.
997	Write	Read data to the stream.

42.16.3 TWindowedStream.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of TWindowedStream.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aStream: TStream; const aSize: Int64;
const aPositionHere: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` will create a new instance of TWindowedStream. The source stream `aStream` must be specified, as well as the start `aPositionHere` position of the window in the source stream and the size of the window `aSize`.

No checks on the validity of `aPositionHere` and `aSize` are done.

42.16.4 TWindowedStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TWindowedStream instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` simply calls the inherited destroy, it removes the TWindowedStream instance from memory. The source stream is not freed.

See also: TWindowedStream.Create ([997](#))

42.16.5 TWindowedStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` attempts to read data from the stream. It will attempt to restore the source stream position if it was changed since the last read, write or seek operation. It then attempts to read `ACount` bytes from the source stream into `ABuffer` and returns the number of actually read bytes. TWindowedStream.Read will only read as much data as the window allows, even if the source stream has more data available.

See also: TWindowedStream.Write ([997](#)), TWindowedStream.Seek ([998](#))

42.16.6 TWindowedStream.Write

Synopsis: Read data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` attempts to write data to the stream. It will attempt to restore the source stream position if it was changed since the last read, write or seek operation. It then attempts to write `ACount` bytes from `ABuffer` to the source stream and returns the number of actually written bytes.

Errors: TWindowedStream.Write will raise an EWriteError exception if an attempt is made to write more bytes than will fit in the window, even if the source stream has more room available.

See also: TWindowedStream.Read ([997](#)), TWindowedStream.Seek ([998](#))

42.16.7 TWindowedStream.Seek

Synopsis: Reposition the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const aOffset: Int64; aOrigin: TSeekorigin) : Int64
; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` will reposition the windowed stream based on `aOffset` and `aOrigin`. It will interpret `AOrigin` and `aOffset` relative to the position and size of the window, and will then call `Seek` on the source stream. It will return the new position in the windowed stream.

Errors: If the source stream does not support seek operations, an exception may be raised. If the combination of `AOrigin` and `aOffset` falls outside the valid window of the stream, an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TWindowedStream.Read` ([997](#)), `TWindowedStream.Write` ([997](#))

Chapter 43

Reference for unit 'StreamIO'

43.1 Used units

Table 43.1: Used units by unit 'StreamIO'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

43.2 Overview

The `StreamIO` unit implements a call to reroute the input or output of a text file to a descendent of `TStream` (??).

This allows to use the standard pascal `Read` (??) and `Write` (??) functions (with all their possibilities), on streams.

43.3 Procedures and functions

43.3.1 AssignStream

Synopsis: Assign a text file to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure AssignStream(var F: Textfile; Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignStream` assigns the stream `Stream` to file `F`. The file can subsequently be used to write to the stream, using the standard `Write` (??) calls.

Before writing, call `Rewrite` (??) on the stream. Before reading, call `Reset` (??).

Errors: if `Stream` is `Nil`, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream` (??), `GetStream` ([1000](#))

43.3.2 GetStream

Synopsis: Return the stream, associated with a file.

Declaration: `function GetStream(var F: TTextRec) : TStream`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetStream` returns the instance of the stream that was associated with the file `F` using `AssignStream` (999).

Errors: An invalid class reference will be returned if the file was not associated with a stream.

See also: `AssignStream` (999), `TStream` (??)

Chapter 44

Reference for unit 'syncobjs'

44.1 Used units

Table 44.1: Used units by unit 'syncobjs'

Name	Page
System	??
sysutils	??

44.2 Overview

The `syncobjs` unit implements some classes which can be used when synchronizing threads in routines or classes that are used in multiple threads at once. The `TCriticalSection` ([1003](#)) class is a wrapper around low-level critical section routines (semaphores or mutexes). The `TEventObject` ([1005](#)) class can be used to send messages between threads (also known as conditional variables in POSIX threads).

44.3 Constants, types and variables

44.3.1 Constants

```
INFINITE = Cardinal(- 1)
```

Constant denoting an infinite timeout.

44.3.2 Types

```
PSecurityAttributes = type Pointer
```

`PSecurityAttributes` is a dummy type used in non-windows implementations, so the calls remain Delphi compatible.

```
TEvent = type class(THandleObject)
```

```

private
    FManualReset : Boolean
;
public
    Create;
    destructor destroy; Override;
    procedure ResetEvent
;
    procedure SetEvent;
    function WaitFor(Timeout: Cardinal) : TWaitResult
;
    property ManualReset : Boolean;
end

```

TEvent is a simple alias for the TEventObject (1005) class.

TEventHandle = type Pointer

TEventHandle is an opaque type and should not be used in user code.

TWaitResult = (wrSignaled, wrTimeout, wrAbandoned, wrError)

Table 44.2: Enumeration values for type TWaitResult

Value	Explanation
wrAbandoned	Wait operation was abandoned.
wrError	An error occurred during the wait operation.
wrSignaled	Event was signaled (triggered).
wrTimeout	Time-out period expired.

TWaitResult is used to report the result of a wait operation.

44.4 ELockException

44.4.1 Description

ELockException is provided for Delphi compatibility. It is not used in FPC.

See also: ESyncObjectException (1003), ELockRecursionException (1002)

44.5 ELockRecursionException

44.5.1 Description

ELockRecursionException is provided for Delphi compatibility. It is not used in FPC.

See also: ESyncObjectException (1003), ELockException (1002)

44.6 ESyncObjectException

44.6.1 Description

`ESyncObjectException` is used in the constructor of `TEventObject` ([1005](#)) to indicate failure to create a basic event.

See also: `TEventObject` ([1005](#)), `ELockRecursionException` ([1002](#)), `ELockException` ([1002](#))

44.7 TCriticalSection

44.7.1 Description

`TCriticalSection` is a class wrapper around the low-level `TRTLCriticalSection` routines. It simply calls the RTL routines in the system unit for critical section support.

A critical section is a resource which can be owned by only 1 caller: it can be used to make sure that in a multithreaded application only 1 thread enters pieces of code protected by the critical section.

Typical usage is to protect a piece of code with the following code (`MySection` is a `TCriticalSection` instance):

```
// Previous code
MySection.Acquire;
Try
  // Protected code
Finally
  MySection.Release;
end;
// Other code.
```

The protected code can be executed by only 1 thread at a time. This is useful for instance for list operations in multithreaded environments.

See also: `Acquire` ([1003](#)), `Release` ([1004](#))

44.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1003	<code>Acquire</code>	Enter the critical section.
1005	<code>Create</code>	Create a new critical section.
1005	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy the criticalsection instance.
1004	<code>Enter</code>	Alias for <code>Acquire</code> .
1004	<code>Leave</code>	Alias for <code>Release</code> .
1004	<code>Release</code>	Leave the critical section.
1004	<code>TryEnter</code>	Try and obtain the critical section.

44.7.3 TCriticalSection.Acquire

Synopsis: Enter the critical section.

Declaration: `procedure Acquire;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Acquire` attempts to enter the critical section. It will suspend the calling thread if the critical section is in use by another thread, and will resume as soon as the other thread has released the critical section.

See also: `Release` ([1004](#))

44.7.4 `TCriticalSection.Release`

Synopsis: Leave the critical section.

Declaration: `procedure Release; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Release` leaves the critical section. It will free the critical section so another thread waiting to enter the critical section will be awakened, and will enter the critical section. This call always returns immediately.

See also: `Acquire` ([1003](#))

44.7.5 `TCriticalSection.Enter`

Synopsis: Alias for `Acquire`.

Declaration: `procedure Enter`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Enter` just calls `Acquire` ([1003](#)).

See also: `Leave` ([1004](#)), `Acquire` ([1003](#))

44.7.6 `TCriticalSection.TryEnter`

Synopsis: Try and obtain the critical section.

Declaration: `function TryEnter : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TryEnter` tries to enter the critical section: it returns at once and does not wait if the critical section is owned by another thread; if the current thread owns the critical section or the critical section was obtained successfully, `true` is returned. If the critical section is currently owned by another thread, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCriticalSection.Enter` ([1004](#))

44.7.7 `TCriticalSection.Leave`

Synopsis: Alias for `Release`.

Declaration: `procedure Leave`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Leave` just calls `Release` ([1004](#))

See also: `Release` ([1004](#)), `Enter` ([1004](#))

44.7.8 TCriticalSection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new critical section.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new critical section, and initializes the system objects for the critical section. It should be created only once for all threads, all threads should use the same critical section instance.

See also: `Destroy` ([1005](#))

44.7.9 TCriticalSection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the criticalsection instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` releases the system critical section resources, and removes the `TCriticalSection` instance from memory.

Errors: Any threads trying to enter the critical section when it is destroyed, will start running with an error (an exception should be raised).

See also: `Create` ([1005](#)), `Acquire` ([1003](#))

44.8 TEventObject

44.8.1 Description

`TEventObject` encapsulates the `BasicEvent` implementation of the system unit in a class. The event can be used to notify other threads of a change in conditions. (in POSIX terms, this is a conditional variable). A thread that wishes to notify other threads creates an instance of `TEventObject` with a certain name, and posts events to it. Other threads that wish to be notified of these events should create their own instances of `TEventObject` with the same name, and wait for events to arrive.

See also: `TCriticalSection` ([1003](#))

44.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1006	<code>Create</code>	Create a new event object.
1006	<code>destroy</code>	Clean up the event and release from memory.
1006	<code>ResetEvent</code>	Reset the event.
1006	<code>SetEvent</code>	Set the event.
1007	<code>WaitFor</code>	Wait for the event to be set.

44.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1007	<code>ManualReset</code>	<code>r</code>	Should the event be reset manually.

44.8.4 TEventObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a new event object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(EventAttributes: PSecurityAttributes;
 AManualReset: Boolean; InitialState: Boolean;
 const Name: string; UseComWait: Boolean)
constructor Create(UseComWait: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new event object with unique name `Name` (ignored on non-windows platforms). The object will be created with security attributes `EventAttributes` (this parameters is used on Windows only).

The `AManualReset` indicates whether the event must be reset manually (if it is `False`, the event is reset immediately after the first thread waiting for it is notified). `InitialState` determines whether the event is initially set or not.

See also: `ManualReset` ([1007](#)), `ResetEvent` ([1006](#))

44.8.5 TEventObject.destroy

Synopsis: Clean up the event and release from memory.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the low-level resources allocated for this event and releases the event instance from memory.

See also: `Create` ([1006](#))

44.8.6 TEventObject.ResetEvent

Synopsis: Reset the event.

Declaration: `procedure ResetEvent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ResetEvent` turns off the event. Any `WaitFor` ([1007](#)) operation will suspend the calling thread.

See also: `SetEvent` ([1006](#)), `WaitFor` ([1007](#))

44.8.7 TEventObject.SetEvent

Synopsis: Set the event.

Declaration: `procedure SetEvent`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetEvent` sets the event. If the `ManualReset` ([1007](#)) is `True` any thread that was waiting for the event to be set (using `WaitFor` ([1007](#))) will resume it's operation. After the event was set, any thread that executes `WaitFor` will return at once. If `ManualReset` is `False`, only one thread will be notified that the event was set, and the event will be immediately reset after that.

See also: `WaitFor` ([1007](#)), `ManualReset` ([1007](#))

44.8.8 TEventObject.WaitFor

Synopsis: Wait for the event to be set.

Declaration: `function WaitFor(Timeout: Cardinal) : TWaitResult`

Visibility: public

Description: `WaitFor` should be used in threads that should be notified when the event is set. When `WaitFor` is called, and the event is not set, the thread will be suspended. As soon as the event is set by some other thread (using `SetEvent` (1006)) or the timeout period (`TimeOut`) has expired, the `WaitFor` function returns. The return value depends on the condition that caused the `WaitFor` function to return.

The calling thread will wait indefinitely when the constant `INFINITE` is specified for the `TimeOut` parameter.

See also: `TEventObject.SetEvent` (1006)

44.8.9 TEventObject.ManualReset

Synopsis: Should the event be reset manually.

Declaration: `Property ManualReset : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ManualReset` indicates whether the event must be reset manually: if it is `False`, the event is reset immediately after the first thread waiting for it is notified. if it is `True`, then the event is never reset automatically, and `ResetEvent` (1006) must be called manually after a thread was notified.

See also: `ResetEvent` (1006)

44.9 THandleObject

44.9.1 Description

`THandleObject` is an abstract parent class for synchronization classes that need to store an operating system handle. It introduces a property `Handle` (1008) which can be used to store the operating system handle. The handle is in no way manipulated by `THandleObject`, only storage is provided.

Do not create an instance of `THandleObject`. It is an abstract class. Recent versions of FPC actually declare the class as abstract.

See also: `Handle` (1008)

44.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1008	<code>destroy</code>	Free the instance.

44.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1008	<code>Handle</code>	r	Handle for this object.
1008	<code>LastError</code>	r	Last operating system error.

44.9.4 THandleObject.destroy

Synopsis: Free the instance.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` does nothing in the Free Pascal implementation of `THandleObject`.

44.9.5 THandleObject.Handle

Synopsis: Handle for this object.

Declaration: `Property Handle : TEventHandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Handle` provides read-only access to the operating system handle of this instance. The public access is read-only, descendent classes should set the handle by accessing it's protected field `FHandle` directly.

44.9.6 THandleObject.LastError

Synopsis: Last operating system error.

Declaration: `Property LastError : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `LastError` provides read-only access to the last operating system error code for operations on `Handle` (1008).

See also: `Handle` (1008)

44.10 TSimpleEvent

44.10.1 Description

`TSimpleEvent` is a simple descendent of the `TEventObject` (1005) class. It creates an event with no name, which must be reset manually, and which is initially not set.

See also: `TEventObject` (1005), `TSimpleEvent.Create` (1009)

44.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1009	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new <code>TSimpleEvent</code> instance.

44.10.3 TSimpleEvent.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new `TSimpleEvent` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TSimpleEvent` instance. It simply calls the inherited `Create` (1006) with `Nil` for the security attributes, an empty name, `AManualReset` set to `True`, and `InitialState` to `False`.

See also: `TEventObject.Create` (1006)

44.11 TSynchroObject

44.11.1 Description

`TSynchroObject` is an abstract synchronization resource object. It implements 2 virtual methods `Acquire` (1009) which can be used to acquire the resource, and `Release` (1009) to release the resource.

See also: `Acquire` (1009), `Release` (1009)

44.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1009	<code>Acquire</code>	Acquire synchronization resource.
1009	<code>Release</code>	Release previously acquired synchronization resource.

44.11.3 TSynchroObject.Acquire

Synopsis: Acquire synchronization resource.

Declaration: `procedure Acquire; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Acquire` does nothing in `TSynchroObject`. Descendent classes must override this method to acquire the resource they manage.

See also: `Release` (1009)

44.11.4 TSynchroObject.Release

Synopsis: Release previously acquired synchronization resource.

Declaration: `procedure Release; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Release` does nothing in `TSynchroObject`. Descendent classes must override this method to release the resource they acquired through the `Acquire` (1009) call.

See also: `Acquire` (1009)

Chapter 45

Reference for unit 'URIParser'

45.1 Used units

Table 45.1: Used units by unit 'URIParser'

Name	Page
System	??

45.2 Overview

The `URIParser` unit contains a basic type (`TURI` ([1012](#))) and some routines for the parsing (`ParseURI` ([1011](#))) and construction (`EncodeURI` ([1010](#))) of Uniform Resource Indicators, commonly referred to as URL: Uniform Resource Location. It is used in various other units, and in itself contains no classes. It supports all protocols, username/password/port specification, query parameters and book-marks etc..

45.3 Constants, types and variables

45.3.1 Types

45.4 Procedures and functions

45.4.1 EncodeURI

Synopsis: Form a string representation of the URI.

Declaration: `function EncodeURI(const URI: TURI) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeURI` will return a valid text representation of the URI in the `URI` record.

See also: `ParseURI` ([1011](#))

45.4.2 FilenameToURI

Synopsis: Construct a URI from a filename.

Declaration: `function FilenameToURI(const Filename: string; Encode: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FilenameToURI` takes `Filename` and constructs a `file: protocol` URI from it.

Errors: None.

See also: `URIToFilename` ([1012](#))

45.4.3 IsAbsoluteURI

Synopsis: Check whether a URI is absolute.

Declaration: `function IsAbsoluteURI(const UriReference: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsAbsoluteURI` returns `True` if the URI in `UriReference` is absolute, i.e. contains a protocol part.

Errors: None.

See also: `FilenameToURI` ([1011](#)), `URIToFileName` ([1012](#))

45.4.4 ParseURI

Synopsis: Parse a URI and split it into its constituent parts.

Declaration: `function ParseURI(const URI: string; Decode: Boolean) : TURI; Overload`
`function ParseURI(const URI: string; const DefaultProtocol: string;`
`DefaultPort: Word; Decode: Boolean) : TURI; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `ParseURI` decodes URI and returns the various parts of the URI in the result record.

The function accepts the most general URI scheme:

```
proto://user:pwd@host:port/path/document?params#bookmark
```

Missing (optional) parts in the URI will be left blank in the result record. If a default protocol and port are specified, they will be used in the record if the corresponding part is not present in the URI.

See also: `EncodeURI` ([1010](#))

45.4.5 ResolveRelativeURI

Synopsis: Return a relative link.

Declaration:

```
function ResolveRelativeURI(const BaseUri: UnicodeString;
                           const RelUri: UnicodeString;
                           out ResultUri: UnicodeString) : Boolean
; Overload
function ResolveRelativeURI(const BaseUri: AnsiString;
                           const RelUri: AnsiString;
                           out ResultUri: AnsiString) : Boolean
; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ResolveRelativeURI` returns in `ResultUri` an absolute link constructed from a base URI `BaseUri` and a relative link `RelUri`. One of the two URI names must have a protocol specified. If the `RelUri` argument contains a protocol, it is considered a complete (absolute) URI and is returned as the result.

The function returns `True` if a link was successfully returned.

Errors: If no protocols are specified, the function returns `False`

45.4.6 URIToFilename

Synopsis: Convert a URI to a filename.

Declaration:

```
function URIToFilename(const URI: string; out Filename: string)
: Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `URIToFilename` returns a filename (using the correct Path Delimiter character) from URI. The URI must be of protocol `File` or have no protocol.

Errors: If the URI contains an unsupported protocol, `False` is returned.

See also: `ResolveRelativeURI` ([1011](#)), `FilenameToURI` ([1011](#))

45.5 TURI

```
TURI = record
  Protocol : string = type string;
  Username : string
= type string;
  Password : string = type string;
  Host : string
= type string;
  Port : Word;
  Path : string = type string;
  Document
: string = type string;
  Params : string = type string;
  Bookmark
: string = type string;
  HasAuthority : Boolean;
end
```

`TURI` is the basic record that can be filled by the `ParseURI` ([1011](#)) call. It contains the contents of a URI, parsed out in it's various pieces.

Chapter 46

Reference for unit 'Zipper'

46.1 Used units

Table 46.1: Used units by unit 'Zipper'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	??
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??
ZStream	1052

46.2 Overview

zipper implements zip compression/decompression compatible with the popular .ZIP format. The zip file format is documented at:

<http://www.pkware.com/documents/casestudies/APPNOTE.TXT>.

The Pascal conversion of the standard zlib library was implemented by Jacques Nomssi Nzali. It is used in the FCL to implement the TCompressionStream class.

46.3 Constants, types and variables

46.3.1 Constants

CENTRAL_FILE_HEADER_SIGNATURE = \$02014B50

Denotes beginning of a file entry inside the zip directory. A file header follows this marker.

```
Crc_32_Tab : = Array[0..255] of LongWord = ($00000000, $77073096
, $ee0e612c, $990951ba, $076dc419, $706af48f, $e963a535, $9e6495a3
, $0edb8832, $79dcb8a4, $e0d5e91e, $97d2d988, $09b64c2b, $7eb17cbd
, $e7b82d07, $90bf1d91, $1db71064, $6ab020f2, $f3b97148, $84be41de
, $1adad47d, $6ddde4eb, $f4d4b551, $83d385c7, $136c9856, $646ba8c0
```

```

, $fd62f97a, $8a65c9ec, $14015c4f, $63066cd9, $fa0f3d63, $8d080df5
, $3b6e20c8, $4c69105e, $d56041e4, $a2677172, $3c03e4d1, $4b04d447
, $d20d85fd, $a50ab56b, $35b5a8fa, $42b2986c, $dbbbc9d6, $acbcf940
, $32d86ce3, $45df5c75, $dcd60dcf, $abd13d59, $26d930ac, $51de003a
, $c8d75180, $bfd06116, $21b4f4b5, $56b3c423, $cfba9599, $b8bda50f
, $2802b89e, $5f058808, $c60cd9b2, $b10be924, $2f6f7c87, $58684c11
, $c1611dab, $b6662d3d, $76dc4190, $01db7106, $98d220bc, $efd5102a
, $71b18589, $06b6b51f, $9fbfe4a5, $e8b8d433, $7807c9a2, $0f00f934
, $9609a88e, $e10e9818, $7f6a0dbb, $086d3d2d, $91646c97, $e6635c01
, $6b6b51f4, $1c6c6162, $856530d8, $f262004e, $6c0695ed, $1b01a57b
, $8208f4c1, $f50fc457, $65b0d9c6, $12b7e950, $8bbeb8ea, $fcb9887c
, $62dd1ddf, $15da2d49, $8cd37cf3, $fbd44c65, $4db26158, $3ab551ce
, $a3bc0074, $d4bb30e2, $4adfa541, $3dd895d7, $a4dlc46d, $d3d6f4fb
, $4369e96a, $346ed9fc, $ad678846, $da60b8d0, $44042d73, $33031de5
, $aa0a4c5f, $dd0d7cc9, $5005713c, $270241aa, $be0b1010, $c90c2086
, $5768b525, $206f85b3, $b966d409, $ce61e49f, $5edef90e, $29d9c998
, $b0d09822, $c7d7a8b4, $59b33d17, $2eb40d81, $b7bd5c3b, $c0ba6cad
, $edb88320, $9abfb3b6, $03b6e20c, $74b1d29a, $ead54739, $9dd277af
, $04db2615, $73dc1683, $e3630b12, $94643b84, $0d6d6a3e, $7a6a5aa8
, $e40ecf0b, $9309ff9d, $0a00ae27, $7d079eb1, $f00f9344, $8708a3d2
, $1e01f268, $6906c2fe, $f762575d, $806567cb, $196c3671, $6e6b06e7
, $fed41b76, $89d32be0, $10da7a5a, $67dd4acc, $f9b9df6f, $8ebeeff9
, $17b7be43, $60b08ed5, $d6d6a3e8, $ald1937e, $38d8c2c4, $4fdff252
, $d1bb67f1, $a6bc5767, $3fb506dd, $48b2364b, $d80d2bda, $af0a1b4c
, $36034af6, $41047a60, $df60efc3, $a867df55, $316e8eef, $4669be79
, $cb61b38c, $bc66831a, $256fd2a0, $5268e236, $cc0c7795, $bb0b4703
, $220216b9, $5505262f, $c5ba3bbe, $b2bd0b28, $2bb45a92, $5cb36a04
, $c2d7ffa7, $b5d0cf31, $2cd99e8b, $5bdeae1d, $9b64c2b0, $ec63f226
, $756aa39c, $026d930a, $9c0906a9, $eb0e363f, $72076785, $05005713
, $95bf4a82, $e2b87a14, $7bb12bae, $0cb61b38, $92d28e9b, $e5d5be0d
, $7cdcefb7, $0bdbdf21, $86d3d2d4, $f1d4e242, $68ddb3f8, $1fda836e
, $81be16cd, $f6b9265b, $6fb077e1, $18b74777, $88085ae6, $ff0f6a70
, $66063bca, $11010b5c, $8f659eff, $f862ae69, $616bffd3, $166ccf45
, $a00ae278, $d70dd2ee, $4e048354, $3903b3c2, $a7672661, $d06016f7
, $4969474d, $3e6e77db, $aed16a4a, $d9d65adc, $40df0b66, $37d83bf0
, $a9bcae53, $debb9ec5, $47b2cf7f, $30b5ffe9, $bdbdf21c, $cabac28a
, $53b39330, $24b4a3a6, $bad03605, $cdd70693, $54de5729, $23d967bf
, $b3667a2e, $c4614ab8, $5d681b02, $2a6f2b94, $b40bbe37, $c30c8ea1
, $5a05df1b, $2d02ef8d)

```

Table used in determining CRC-32 values. There are various CRC-32 algorithms in use; please refer to the ZIP file format specifications for details.

EFS_LANGUAGE_ENCODING_FLAG = \$800

Language encoding flag (EFS). When set the file name and comment fields must use UTF-8 encoding.

END_OF_CENTRAL_DIR_SIGNATURE = \$06054B50

Marker specifying end of directory within zip file.

FIRSTENTRY = 257

Offset of First entry in table.

INFOZIP_UNICODE_PATH_ID = \$7075

LOCAL_FILE_HEADER_SIGNATURE = \$04034B50

Denotes beginning of a file header within the zip file. A file header follows this marker, followed by the file data proper.

OS_FAT = 0

MS-DOS and OS/2 (FAT/VFAT/FAT32).

OS_NTFS = 10

NTFS.

OS_OS2 = 6

OS/2 HPFS.

OS_OSX = 19

Mac OSX.

OS_UNIX = 3

UNIX-like platforms.

OS_VFAT = 14

VFAT.

TABLESIZE = 8191

Size for the code table used in LZW compression.

UNIX_BLK = \$6000

Unix block device.

UNIX_CHAR = \$2000

Unix character device.

UNIX_DEFAULT = UNIX_RUSR or UNIX_WUSR or UNIX_XUSR or UNIX_RGRP or
UNIX_ROTH

Unix default attributes.

UNIX_DIR = \$4000

Unix directory.

UNIX_FIFO = \$1000

Unix FIFO file type.

UNIX_FILE = \$8000

Unix regular file.

UNIX_LINK = \$A000

Unix symbolic link.

UNIX_MASK = \$F000

Unix permission mask.

UNIX_RGRP = \$0020

Unix group read permission.

UNIX_ROTH = \$0004

Unix other users read permission.

UNIX_RUSR = \$0100

Unix user read permission.

UNIX SOCK = \$C000

Unix sockets.

UNIX_WGRP = \$0010

Unix group write permission.

UNIX_WOTH = \$0002

Unix other users write permission.

UNIX_WUSR = \$0080

Unix user write permission.

UNIX_XGRP = \$0008

Unix group execute permission.

UNIX_XOTH = \$0001

Unix other users execute permission.

```
UNIX_XUSR = $0040
```

Unix user execute permission.

```
ZIP64_END_OF_CENTRAL_DIR_LOCATOR_SIGNATURE = $07064B50
```

```
ZIP64_END_OF_CENTRAL_DIR_SIGNATURE = $06064B50
```

Marker specifying end of the directory within a 64-bit zip file.

```
ZIP64_HEADER_ID = $0001
```

46.3.2 Types

```
BufPtr = type PByte
```

Alias for the PByte type. Used to implement the output buffer in TShrinker.

```
CodeArray = Array[0..TABLESIZE] of packed record
  Child : SmallInt
  ;
  Sibling : SmallInt;
  Suffix : Byte;
end
```

Array definition for CodeRec ([1019](#))

```
FreeListArray = Array[FIRSTENTRY..TABLESIZE] of Word
```

Helper type in decoding the zip file.

```
FreeListPtr = ^FreeListArray
```

Pointer to FreeListArray ([1017](#))

```
TablePtr = ^CodeArray
```

Pointer to CodeArray ([1017](#))

```
TCustomInputStreamEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
  var AStream: TStream) of object
```

Specifies an event handler signalled for actions to an input stream.

```
TOnCustomStreamEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var AStream: TStream
  ;
  AItem: TFullZipFileEntry) of
  object
```

Specifies an event handler signalled for stream actions in TUnZipper.

```
TOnEndOfFileEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const Ratio: Double
)
                    of object
```

Event procedure for an end of file (de)compression event.

```
TOnStartFileEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const AFileName: string
)
                    of object
```

Event procedure for a start of file (de)compression event.

```
TProgressEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const Pct: Double) of
object
```

Event procedure for capturing compression/decompression progress.

```
TProgressEventEx = procedure(Sender: TObject; const ATotPos: Int64
;
                    const ATotSize: Int64) of object
```

TProgressEventEx is an object procedure which implements an event handler signalled to indicate compression/decompression progress. It is very similar to TProgressEvent, but provides separate values for the cumulative number of bytes handled and the total number of bytes to be processed.

TProgressEventEx is the type used to implement the OnProgressEx property in TDeCompressor and TUnZipper.

46.4 Central_File_Header_Type

```
Central_File_Header_Type = packed record
  Signature : LongInt;
  MadeBy_Version : Word;
  Extract_Version_Reqd : Word;
  Bit_Flag
  : Word;
  Compress_Method : Word;
  Last_Mod_Time : Word;
  Last_Mod_Date
  : Word;
  Crc32 : LongWord;
  Compressed_Size : LongWord;
  Uncompressed_Size
  : LongWord;
  Filename_Length : Word;
  Extra_Field_Length : Word
;
  File_Comment_Length : Word;
  Starting_Disk_Num : Word;
```

```

    Internal_Attributes
    : Word;
    External_Attributes : LongWord;
    Local_Header_Offset
    : LongWord;
end

```

This record contains the structure for a file header within the central directory.

46.5 CodeRec

```

CodeRec = packed record
    Child : SmallInt;
    Sibling : SmallInt;
    Suffix : Byte;
end

```

Small LZW compression helper type.

46.6 End_of_Central_Dir_Type

```

End_of_Central_Dir_Type = packed record
    Signature : LongInt;
    Disk_Number
    : Word;
    Central_Dir_Start_Disk : Word;
    Entries_This_Disk : Word
    ;
    Total_Entries : Word;
    Central_Dir_Size : LongWord;
    Start_Disk_Offset
    : LongWord;
    ZipFile_Comment_Length : Word;
end

```

The end of central directory is placed at the end of the zip file. Note that the end of central directory record is distinct from the Zip64 end of central directory record and zip64 end of central directory locator, which precede the end of central directory, if implemented.

46.7 Extensible_Data_Field_Header_Type

```

Extensible_Data_Field_Header_Type = packed record
    Header_ID : Word
    ;
    Data_Size : Word;
end

```

Beginning of extra field. Occurs after the local file header and after the central directory header.

46.8 Local_File_Header_Type

```

Local_File_Header_Type = packed record
  Signature : LongInt;
  Extract_Version_Reqd
    : Word;
  Bit_Flag : Word;
  Compress_Method : Word;
  Last_Mod_Time
    : Word;
  Last_Mod_Date : Word;
  Crc32 : LongWord;
  Compressed_Size
    : LongWord;
  Uncompressed_Size : LongWord;
  Filename_Length : Word
;
  Extra_Field_Length : Word;
end

```

Record structure containing local file header.

46.9 Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_Locator_type

```

Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_Locator_type = packed record
  Signature
    : LongInt;
  Zip64_EOCD_Start_Disk : LongWord;
  Central_Dir_Zip64_EOCD_Offset
    : QWord;
  Total_Disks : LongWord;
end

```

Comes after the Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_type.

46.10 Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_type

```

Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_type = packed record
  Signature : LongInt
;
  Record_Size : QWord;
  Version_Made_By : Word;
  Extract_Version_Reqd
    : Word;
  Disk_Number : LongWord;
  Central_Dir_Start_Disk : LongWord
;
  Entries_This_Disk : QWord;
  Total_Entries : QWord;
  Central_Dir_Size
    : QWord;

```

```

    Start_Disk_Offset : QWord;
end

```

This record appears at the end of the central directory

46.11 Zip64_Extended_Info_Field_Type

```

Zip64_Extended_Info_Field_Type = packed record
    Original_Size : QWord
    ;
    Compressed_Size : QWord;
    Relative_Hdr_Offset : QWord;
    Disk_Start_Number
    : LongWord;
end

```

46.12 EZipError

46.12.1 Description

Exception raised for errors in TZipper and TUnZipper.

46.13 TCompressor

46.13.1 Description

This object compresses a stream into a compressed zip stream.

46.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1022	Compress	Compresses input stream to output stream.
1022	Create	Creates a TCompressor (1021) object.
1022	Terminate	Halts the compressor by setting the Terminated property to True.
1022	ZipBitFlag	Current bit.
1022	ZipID	Identifier for type of compression.
1022	ZipVersionReqd	ZIP version required in the method.

46.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1023	BufferSize	r	Size of the buffer used for compression.
1023	Crc32Val	rw	Running CRC32 value.
1023	OnPercent	rw	Threshold percentage which triggers an OnProgress update.
1023	OnProgress	rw	Event handler signalled to indicate the completion percentage for the compressor.
1023	Terminated	r	Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

46.13.4 TCompressor.Create

Synopsis: Creates a TCompressor ([1021](#)) object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Virtual`

Visibility: public

46.13.5 TCompressor.Compress

Synopsis: Compresses input stream to output stream.

Declaration: `procedure Compress; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

46.13.6 TCompressor.ZipID

Synopsis: Identifier for type of compression.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

46.13.7 TCompressor.ZipVersionReqd

Synopsis: ZIP version required in the method.

Declaration: `class function ZipVersionReqd : Word; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Abstract virtual class function. Must be implemented in a descendent class.

46.13.8 TCompressor.ZipBitFlag

Synopsis: Current bit.

Declaration: `function ZipBitFlag : Word; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Abstract virtual function. Must be implemented in a descendent class.

46.13.9 TCompressor.Terminate

Synopsis: Halts the compressor by setting the Terminated property to True.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: public

Description: Halts the compressor by setting the Terminated property to True.

46.13.10 TCompressor.BufferSize

Synopsis: Size of the buffer used for compression.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BufferSize` is a read-only `LongWord` property with the size of the buffer used for compression. The property is set to the value passed as an argument to the `Create` constructor.

`BufferSize` is used in the `Compress` method (in descendent classes) to allocate a pointer to a memory block with the required size. It also determines the read size used when processing an input file or stream.

See also: `TCompressor.Create` ([1022](#)), `TShrinker.Compress` ([1031](#)), `TDeflater.Compress` ([1026](#))

46.13.11 TCompressor.OnPercent

Synopsis: Threshold percentage which triggers an `OnProgress` update.

Declaration: `Property OnPercent : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

46.13.12 TCompressor.OnProgress

Synopsis: Event handler signalled to indicate the completion percentage for the compressor.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

46.13.13 TCompressor.Crc32Val

Synopsis: Running CRC32 value.

Declaration: `Property Crc32Val : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Running CRC32 value used when writing zip header.

46.13.14 TCompressor.Terminated

Synopsis: Set to `True` when the `Terminate` method is called.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Set to `True` when the `Terminate` method is called.

46.14 TDeCompressor

46.14.1 Description

This object decompresses a compressed zip stream.

46.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1024	Create	Creates decompressor object.
1024	Decompress	Decompress zip stream.
1024	Terminate	Halts decompression and sets Terminated to True.
1025	ZipID	Identifier for type of compression.

46.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1025	BufferSize	r	Size of buffer used in decompression.
1025	Crc32Val	rw	Running CRC32 value used for verifying zip file integrity.
1025	OnPercent	rw	Percentage of decompression completion.
1025	OnProgress	rw	Event handler for OnProgress procedure.
1025	OnProgressEx	rw	Event handler signalled to indicate progress using processed and total byte counts.
1026	Terminated	r	Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

46.14.4 TDeCompressor.Create

Synopsis: Creates decompressor object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Virtual`

Visibility: public

46.14.5 TDeCompressor.Decompress

Synopsis: Decompress zip stream.

Declaration: `procedure Decompress; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

46.14.6 TDeCompressor.Terminate

Synopsis: Halts decompression and sets Terminated to True.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: public

Description: Halts decompression and sets Terminated to True.

46.14.7 TDeCompressor.ZipID

Synopsis: Identifier for type of compression.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

46.14.8 TDeCompressor.BufferSize

Synopsis: Size of buffer used in decompression.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

46.14.9 TDeCompressor.OnPercent

Synopsis: Percentage of decompression completion.

Declaration: `Property OnPercent : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

46.14.10 TDeCompressor.OnProgress

Synopsis: Event handler for OnProgress procedure.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

46.14.11 TDeCompressor.OnProgressEx

Synopsis: Event handler signalled to indicate progress using processed and total byte counts.

Declaration: `Property OnProgressEx : TProgressEventEx`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled to indicate progress using processed and total byte counts.

46.14.12 TDeCompressor.Crc32Val

Synopsis: Running CRC32 value used for verifying zip file integrity.

Declaration: `Property Crc32Val : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

46.14.13 TDeCompressor.Terminated

Synopsis: Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

46.15 TDeflater

46.15.1 Description

Child of TCompressor ([1021](#)) that implements the Deflate compression method.

46.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1026	Compress	Performs compression using the Deflate algorithm.
1026	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1027	ZipBitFlag	Bitness flag.
1027	ZipID	Zip algorithm ID.
1027	ZipVersionReqd	Required version.

46.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1027	CompressionLevel	<code>rw</code>	Indicates the compression level applied in the Compress method.

46.15.4 TDeflater.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is the overridden constructor for the class instance, and calls the inherited method on entry. `Create` sets the default value for the `CompressionLevel` property to `clNone`.

See also: `TDeflater.CompressionLevel` ([1027](#)), `TCompressor.Create` ([1022](#))

46.15.5 TDeflater.Compress

Synopsis: Performs compression using the Deflate algorithm.

Declaration: `procedure Compress; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a temporary TCompressionStream instance using the compression level specified in the CompressLevel property. Compress signals the OnProgress event handler (when assigned) when the number of bytes representing the OnPercent threshold are processed in the method.

46.15.6 TDeflater.ZipID

Synopsis: Zip algorithm ID.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Zip algorithm ID.

46.15.7 TDeflater.ZipVersionReqd

Synopsis: Required version.

Declaration: `class function ZipVersionReqd : Word; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Required version.

46.15.8 TDeflater.ZipBitFlag

Synopsis: Bitness flag.

Declaration: `function ZipBitFlag : Word; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Bitness flag.

46.15.9 TDeflater.CompressionLevel

Synopsis: Indicates the compression level applied in the Compress method.

Declaration: `Property CompressionLevel : Tcompressionlevel`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: CompressionLevel is a TCompressionLevel property which Indicates the compression level applied in the Compress method. Values include:

clNoneDo not use compression, just copy data.

clFastestUse the fast (but less) compression.

clDefaultUse the default compression. dd

clMaxUse the maximum compression.

See also: TDeflater.Compress ([1026](#)), TCompressionLevel ([1052](#))

46.16 TFullZipFileEntries

46.16.1 Description

Collection of TFullZipFileEntry items.

See also: TFullZipFileEntry ([1028](#))

46.16.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1028	FullEntries	rw	Array access to all entries.

46.16.3 TFullZipFileEntries.FullEntries

Synopsis: Array access to all entries.

Declaration: `Property FullEntries[AIndex: Integer]: TFullZipFileEntry; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Array access to all entries.

See also: TFullZipFileEntry ([1028](#))

46.17 TFullZipFileEntry

46.17.1 Description

TFullZipFileEntry is a TZipFileEntry descendant which provides additional information about files in a .ZIP archive. TFullZipFileEntry extends the ancestor class to include properties like:

BitFlags General purpose bit flag from the Local Header in the .ZIP archive file.

CompressMethod Compression method for the file.

CompressedSize Size after applying the compression method and level.

CRC32 32-bit CRC value for the file.

46.17.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1029	BitFlags	r	General purpose bit flag from the Local Header in the .ZIP archive file.
1029	CompressedSize	r	Size after applying the compression method and level.
1029	CompressMethod	r	Compression method for the file.
1029	CRC32	rw	32-bit CRC value for the file.

46.17.3 TFullZipFileEntry.BitFlags

Synopsis: General purpose bit flag from the Local Header in the .ZIP archive file.

Declaration: `Property BitFlags : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: General purpose bit flag from the Local Header in the .ZIP archive file.

46.17.4 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressMethod

Synopsis: Compression method for the file.

Declaration: `Property CompressMethod : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Compression method for the file.

46.17.5 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressedSize

Synopsis: Size after applying the compression method and level.

Declaration: `Property CompressedSize : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Size after applying the compression method and level.

46.17.6 TFullZipFileEntry.CRC32

Synopsis: 32-bit CRC value for the file.

Declaration: `Property CRC32 : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: 32-bit CRC value for the file.

46.18 TInflater

46.18.1 Description

Child of TDeCompressor ([1024](#)) that implements the Inflate decompression method.

46.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1030	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1030	DeCompress	Removes compression applied using the deflate algorithm.
1030	ZipID	Zip algorithm ID.

46.18.3 TInflater.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

46.18.4 TInflater.DeCompress

Synopsis: Removes compression applied using the deflate algorithm.

Declaration: `procedure DeCompress; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Removes compression applied using the deflate algorithm.

46.18.5 TInflater.ZipID

Synopsis: Zip algorithm ID.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Zip algorithm ID.

46.19 TShrinker**46.19.1 Description**

TShrinker implements the LZW lossless data compression algorithm created by Abraham Lempel, Jacob Ziv, and Terry Welch also known as "shrink" compression.

46.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1031	Compress	Compresses input values using LZW (shrink) compression.
1031	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1031	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
1031	ZipBitFlag	Zip bitness flag.
1031	ZipID	Return Zip algorithm ID.
1031	ZipVersionReqd	Minimum zip algorithm required.

46.19.3 TShrinker.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

46.19.4 TShrinker.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destructor for the class instance.

46.19.5 TShrinker.Compress

Synopsis: Compresses input values using LZW (shrink) compression.

Declaration: `procedure Compress; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Initializes the code table used for LZW compression. Processes buffer-size chunks from the input stream and calls the private Shrink method to generate values written to the output stream.

46.19.6 TShrinker.ZipID

Synopsis: Return Zip algorithm ID.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Return Zip algorithm ID.

46.19.7 TShrinker.ZipVersionReqd

Synopsis: Minimum zip algorithm required.

Declaration: `class function ZipVersionReqd : Word; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Minimum zip algorithm required.

46.19.8 TShrinker.ZipBitFlag

Synopsis: Zip bitness flag.

Declaration: `function ZipBitFlag : Word; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Zip bitness flag.

46.20 TUnZipper

46.20.1 Description

Extracts and decompresses files and directories in a .ZIP archive file.

46.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1034	Clear	Removes all entries and files from object.
1033	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1033	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
1035	Examine	Opens zip file and reads the directory entries (list of zipped files).
1035	Terminate	Sets the value in Terminated to True.
1034	Unzip	Unzips the specified .ZIP archive file.
1033	UnZipAllFiles	Unzips all files in a zip file, writing them to disk.
1033	UnZipFile	Unzips a single file found in the specified .ZIP archive.
1034	UnZipFiles	Unzips the specified files in a .ZIP archive file.

46.20.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1035	BufferSize	rw	Size of the buffer used to read and decompress entries in the .ZIP file.
1038	Entries	r	Collection with TFullZipFileEntry instances for files and directories stored in the .ZIP archive.
1037	FileComment	r	Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.
1037	FileName	rw	Path and file name for the .zip file to be unzipped / processed.
1038	Files	r	Files in the zip file (deprecated).
1039	Flat	rw	Extracts files to a single directory.
1035	OnCloseInputStream	rw	Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is closed.
1036	OnCreateStream	rw	Event handler signalled when an output stream is created.
1036	OnDoneStream	rw	Event handler signalled when an output stream is closed.
1037	OnEndFile	rw	Callback procedure that will be called after unzipping a file.
1035	OnOpenInputStream	rw	Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is opened.
1036	OnPercent	rw	Threshold percentage which triggers a progress notification.
1036	OnProgress	rw	Progress event handler used when decompressing files.
1036	OnProgressEx	rw	Extended progress event handler used when decompressing files.
1037	OnStartFile	rw	Callback procedure that will be called before unzipping a file.
1037	OutputPath	rw	Path where archive files will be unzipped.
1039	Terminated	r	True if the Terminate method has been called.
1038	UseUTF8	rw	Indicates that the UTF-8-encoded names are used when locating and unzipping entries in the archive.

46.20.4 TUnZipper.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

46.20.5 TUnZipper.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destructor for the class instance.

46.20.6 TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles

Synopsis: Unzips all files in a zip file, writing them to disk.

Declaration: `procedure UnZipAllFiles; Virtual`
`procedure UnZipAllFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This procedure unzips all files in a TZipper ([1044](#)) object and writes the unzipped files to disk.

The example below unzips the files into "C:\windows\temp":

```

uses
  Zipper;
var
  UnZipper: TUnZipper;
begin
  UnZipper := TUnZipper.Create;
  try
    UnZipper.FileName := ZipFilePath;
    UnZipper.OutputPath := 'C:\Windows\Temp';
    UnZipper.UnZipAllFiles;
  finally
    UnZipper.Free;
  end;
end.
```

46.20.7 TUnZipper.UnZipFile

Synopsis: Unzips a single file found in the specified .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `procedure UnZipFile(const aExtractFileName: RawByteString)`
`procedure UnZipFile(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const aExtractFileName: RawByteString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Unzips a single file found in the specified .ZIP archive.

46.20.8 TUnZipper.UnZipFiles

Synopsis: Unzips the specified files in a .ZIP archive file.

Declaration:

```

procedure UnZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;
                    FileList: TStrings)
procedure UnZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;
                    aFileList: Array of RawBytestring)
procedure UnZipFiles(aFileList: TStrings)

```

Visibility: public

Description: Unzips the specified files in a .ZIP archive file.

46.20.9 TUnZipper.Unzip

Synopsis: Unzips the specified .ZIP archive file.

Declaration:

```

class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString)
class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;
                    aExtractFileName: RawByteString)
class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;
                    const aExtractFileName: RawByteString;
                    aOutputFileName: string)
class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;
                    aFileList: Array of RawByteString)
class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;
                    aFileList: TStrings)
class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;
                    aFileList: Array of RawByteString;
                    aOutputDir: RawByteString; aFlat: Boolean)
class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;
                    aFileList: TStrings; aOutputDir: RawByteString;
                    aFlat: Boolean)

```

Visibility: public

Description: UnZip is an overloaded class method used to unzip one or more files in the specified .ZIP archive file. Overloaded variants are provided which allow the file or files to be specified using RawByteString, Array, or TStrings data types.

UnZip is a convenience method, and does not require an instance of the class. It uses the default options to perform the unzip operation.

46.20.10 TUnZipper.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all entries and files from object.

Declaration:

```

procedure Clear

```

Visibility: public

Description: Removes all entries and files from object.

46.20.11 TUnZipper.Examine

Synopsis: Opens zip file and reads the directory entries (list of zipped files).

Declaration: `procedure Examine`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Opens zip file and reads the directory entries (list of zipped files).

46.20.12 TUnZipper.Terminate

Synopsis: Sets the value in Terminated to True.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Sets the value in Terminated to True.

46.20.13 TUnZipper.BufferSize

Synopsis: Size of the buffer used to read and decompress entries in the .ZIP file.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Size of the buffer used to read and decompress entries in the .ZIP file.

46.20.14 TUnZipper.OnOpenInputStream

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is opened.

Declaration: `Property OnOpenInputStream : TCustomInputStreamEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is opened.

46.20.15 TUnZipper.OnCloseInputStream

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is closed.

Declaration: `Property OnCloseInputStream : TCustomInputStreamEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is closed.

46.20.16 TUnZipper.OnCreateStream

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when an output stream is created.

Declaration: `Property OnCreateStream : TOnCustomStreamEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled when an output stream is created.

46.20.17 TUnZipper.OnDoneStream

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when an output stream is closed.

Declaration: `Property OnDoneStream : TOnCustomStreamEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled when an output stream is closed.

46.20.18 TUnZipper.OnPercent

Synopsis: Threshold percentage which triggers a progress notification.

Declaration: `Property OnPercent : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Threshold percentage which triggers a progress notification.

46.20.19 TUnZipper.OnProgress

Synopsis: Progress event handler used when decompressing files.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Progress event handler used when decompressing files.

46.20.20 TUnZipper.OnProgressEx

Synopsis: Extended progress event handler used when decompressing files.

Declaration: `Property OnProgressEx : TProgressEventEx`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Extended progress event handler used when decompressing files.

46.20.21 TUnZipper.OnStartFile

Synopsis: Callback procedure that will be called before unzipping a file.

Declaration: `Property OnStartFile : TOnStartFileEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Callback procedure that will be called before unzipping a file.

46.20.22 TUnZipper.OnEndFile

Synopsis: Callback procedure that will be called after unzipping a file.

Declaration: `Property OnEndFile : TOnEndOfFileEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Callback procedure that will be called after unzipping a file.

46.20.23 TUnZipper.FileName

Synopsis: Path and file name for the .zip file to be unzipped / processed.

Declaration: `Property FileName : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Path and file name for the .zip file to be unzipped / processed.

46.20.24 TUnZipper.OutputPath

Synopsis: Path where archive files will be unzipped.

Declaration: `Property OutputPath : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Path where archive files will be unzipped.

46.20.25 TUnZipper.FileComment

Synopsis: Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.

Declaration: `Property FileComment : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.

46.20.26 TUnZipper.Files

Synopsis: Files in the zip file (deprecated).

Declaration: `Property Files : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: List of files that should be compressed in the zip file. Deprecated. Use `Entries.AddFileEntry(FileName)` or `Entries.AddFileEntries(List)` instead.

46.20.27 TUnZipper.Entries

Synopsis: Collection with `TFullZipFileEntry` instances for files and directories stored in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property Entries : TFullZipFileEntries`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Entries` is a read-only `TFullZipFileEntries` property, and the collection representing the items stored in the .ZIP archive file. `Entries` contains `TFullZipFileEntry` instances which represent the files or directories present in the .ZIP file.

Values in the `Entries` collection are created and stored when file directory in the .ZIP file is read. This can occur when the `Examine` method is called, or when extracting one or more files using the `UnZipAllFiles` / `UnZipFiles` / `UnZipFile` methods.

The items in the `Entries` collection are removed when the `Clear` method is called.

See also: `TUnZipper.Examine` (1035), `TUnZipper.Clear` (1034), `TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles` (1033), `TUnZipper.UnZipFiles` (1034), `TUnZipper.UnZipFile` (1033), `TUnZipper.UnZip` (1034), `TFullZipFileEntries` (1028), `TFullZipFileEntry` (1028)

46.20.28 TUnZipper.UseUTF8

Synopsis: Indicates that the UTF-8-encoded names are used when locating and unzipping entries in the archive.

Declaration: `Property UseUTF8 : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UseUTF8` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if UTF-8-encoded names are used when locating and unzipping items stored in the .ZIP archive.

Each `TZipFileEntry` instance stored in the `Entries` collection has both UTF-8-encoded and `RawByteString` (same as `AnsiString` with no code page) variants of file or directory names. Set `UseUTF8` to **True** to use the UTF-8-encoded version. The default value is **False**, and causes the `RawByteString` version to be used.

`UseUTF8` is used when methods like `UnZipAllFiles`, `UnZipFiles`, and `UnZipFile` are called.

See also: `TUnZipper.Entries` (1038), `TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles` (1033), `TUnZipper.UnZipFiles` (1034), `TUnZipper.UnZipFile` (1033), `TZipFileEntries` (1039), `TZipFileEntry` (1040)

46.20.29 TUnZipper.Flat

Synopsis: Extracts files to a single directory.

Declaration: `Property Flat : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Enables flat extraction; like `-j` (also called junk paths) when using the `unzip` command-line utility. Directory structure(s) in the `.zip` file are not recreated, and files are extracted to the same directory.

46.20.30 TUnZipper.Terminated

Synopsis: True if the `Terminate` method has been called.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: True if the `Terminate` method has been called.

46.21 TZipFileEntries

46.21.1 Description

`TZipFileEntries` is a `TCollection` descendant which provides support for using `TZipFileEntry` instances as the `Items` in the collection. It provides an indexed `Entries` property used to access the `TZipFileEntry` instances in the collection, and serves as the default property for enumerator access.

`TZipFileEntries` is the type used to implement the `Entries` property in `TZipper`.

See also: `TZipFileEntries.Entries` ([1040](#)), `TZipFileEntry` ([1040](#)), `TZipper.Entries` ([1050](#)), `TUnZipper.Entries` ([1038](#)), `TFullZipFileEntries` ([1028](#))

46.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1040	<code>AddFileEntries</code>	Adds <code>TZipFileEntry</code> instances in the collection for the file names in <code>List</code> .
1039	<code>AddFileEntry</code>	Adds file to zip directory.

46.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1040	<code>Entries</code>	<code>rw</code>	<code>Entries</code> (files) in the zip archive.

46.21.4 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntry

Synopsis: Adds file to zip directory.

Declaration: `function AddFileEntry(const ADiskFileName: string) : TZipFileEntry`
`function AddFileEntry(const ADiskFileName: string;`
`const AArchiveFileName: string) : TZipFileEntry`
`function AddFileEntry(const AStream: TStream;`
`const AArchiveFileName: string) : TZipFileEntry`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddFileEntry` adds a file or directory to the list of entries that will be written out in the .zip file. `AddFileEntry` calls the `Add` method to create the new collection item, and casts it the `TZipFileEntry` type used in `TZipFileEntries`.

Values passed as arguments to the overloaded variants are stored in the corresponding properties in the `TZipFileEntry` instance.

The return value is the `TZipFileEntry` instance added to the collection.

46.21.5 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntries

Synopsis: Adds `TZipFileEntry` instances in the collection for the file names in `List`.

Declaration: `procedure AddFileEntries(const List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddFileEntries` is a method used to add a list of files names to the collection. `List` contains the file names added in the method. `AddFileEntries` iterates over the string values in `List`, and calls the `AddFileEntry` method to create new items in the collection.

See also: `TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntry` ([1039](#))

46.21.6 TZipFileEntries.Entries

Synopsis: Entries (files) in the zip archive.

Declaration: `Property Entries[AIndex: Integer]: TZipFileEntry; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Entries` is an indexed `TZipFileEntry` property which provides indexed access to the `Items` in the collection by their ordinal position. The item values are cast to the `TZipFileEntry` type used in `TZipFileEntries`.

`Entries` is the default property in `TZipFileEntries`, and allows an enumerator to be used to access the `TZipFileEntry` values in the collection.

See also: `TZipFileEntry` ([1040](#)), `TCollection.Items` (??)

46.22 TZipFileEntry

46.22.1 Description

`TZipFileEntry` is a `TCollectionItem` descendant which represents a file or directory added to a .ZIP file archive. `TZipFileEntry` is the type used for items in the `Entries` property in the `TZipFileEntries` collection.

`TZipFileEntry` provides properties with metadata for the file or directory, including:

ArchiveFileName Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

UTF8ArchiveFileName Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive using UTF-8 encoding.

DiskFileName Name of the file or directory on the local file system.

UTF8DiskFileName Name of the file or directory using UTF-8 encoding.

Size Size of the compressed file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

DateTime The timestamp for file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

OS Indicates the operating system device type / file system where the file or directory originated.

Attributes File attributes for the entry.

CompressionLevel Compression level applied to the content in the .ZIP archive.

Stream TStream instance with the content for the entry.

Use `IsDirectory` to determine if the entry represents a directory.

Use `IsLink` to determine if the entry is a symbolic link on the local file system.

46.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1042	Assign	Copies property values from the specified persistent object.
1041	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1042	IsDirectory	True if the entry is a directory on the local file system.
1042	IsLink	True if the directory is a symbolic link on the local file system.

46.22.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1043	ArchiveFileName	rw	Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.
1044	Attributes	rw	File attributes for the file or directory.
1044	CompressionLevel	rw	Compression level applied to the content stored in the .ZIP archive.
1044	DateTime	rw	Timestamp for the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.
1043	DiskFileName	rw	Name of the file or directory on the local file system.
1044	OS	rw	Indication of operating system/file system.
1043	Size	rw	Size of the compressed content for the file or directory.
1042	Stream	rw	Stream with the content for the entry.
1043	UTF8ArchiveFileName	rw	Archive filename as UTF8 string.
1043	UTF8DiskFileName	rw	Name of the file or directory on the local file system using UTF-8 encoding.

46.22.4 TZipFileEntry.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection);` Override

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is the overridden constructor for the class instance. `Create` sets the default values for properties, including:

`DateTime`Set to the current date and time for the local computer.

`OS`Set to `OS_UNIX` for UNIX-like environments, or `OS_VFAT` for all others.

`Attributes`Set to 0 (no attributes).

`CompressionLevel`Set to `clDefault`.

`Create` calls the inherited constructor prior to exiting from the method.

46.22.5 `TZipFileEntry.IsDirectory`

Synopsis: True if the entry is a directory on the local file system.

Declaration: `function IsDirectory : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: True if the entry is a directory on the local file system.

46.22.6 `TZipFileEntry.IsLink`

Synopsis: True if the directory is a symbolic link on the local file system.

Declaration: `function IsLink : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: True if the directory is a symbolic link on the local file system.

46.22.7 `TZipFileEntry.Assign`

Synopsis: Copies property values from the specified persistent object.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Copies property values from the specified persistent object.

46.22.8 `TZipFileEntry.Stream`

Synopsis: Stream with the content for the entry.

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Stream with the content for the entry.

46.22.9 TZipFileEntry.ArchiveFileName

Synopsis: Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property ArchiveFileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

46.22.10 TZipFileEntry.UTF8ArchiveFileName

Synopsis: Archive filename as UTF8 string.

Declaration: `Property UTF8ArchiveFileName : UTF8String`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UTF8ArchiveFileName` is the filename in UTF8-format. Use this if you need to have filenames with characters not in ASCII range.

46.22.11 TZipFileEntry.DiskFileName

Synopsis: Name of the file or directory on the local file system.

Declaration: `Property DiskFileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name of the file or directory on the local file system.

46.22.12 TZipFileEntry.UTF8DiskFileName

Synopsis: Name of the file or directory on the local file system using UTF-8 encoding.

Declaration: `Property UTF8DiskFileName : UTF8String`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name of the file or directory on the local file system using UTF-8 encoding.

46.22.13 TZipFileEntry.Size

Synopsis: Size of the compressed content for the file or directory.

Declaration: `Property Size : Int64`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Size of the compressed content for the file or directory.

46.22.14 TZipFileEntry.DateTime

Synopsis: Timestamp for the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property DateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Timestamp for the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

46.22.15 TZipFileEntry.OS

Synopsis: Indication of operating system/file system.

Declaration: `Property OS : Byte`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Currently either OS_UNIX (if UNIX is defined) or OS_FAT.

46.22.16 TZipFileEntry.Attributes

Synopsis: File attributes for the file or directory.

Declaration: `Property Attributes : LongWord`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: File attributes for the file or directory.

46.22.17 TZipFileEntry.CompressionLevel

Synopsis: Compression level applied to the content stored in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property CompressionLevel : Tcompressionlevel`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Compression level applied to the content stored in the .ZIP archive.

46.23 TZipper

46.23.1 Description

Creates a .ZIP archive file.

46.23.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1048	Clear	Removes all values in the Entries and Files properties.
1045	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1045	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
1046	SaveToFile	Saves the archive to a file with a new name.
1046	SaveToStream	Save the archive to a stream.
1048	Terminate	Halts an assigned compressor in the class instance, and sets Terminated to True.
1047	Zip	Convenience method used to create a .zip file with the given name containing the specified file(s).
1046	ZipAllFiles	Zips all files in object and writes zip to disk.
1047	ZipFile	Zip one file to a zip file.
1047	ZipFiles	Zip multiple files into an archive.

46.23.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1048	BufferSize	rw	Buffer size used when reading and processing files.
1050	Entries	rw	Collection with the TZipFileEntry instances in the .ZIP archive.
1049	FileComment	rw	Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.
1049	FileName	rw	Name of the .ZIP archive file where the compressed files and directories are stored.
1050	Files	r	Provides access to the list of files and directories in the archive.
1050	InMemSize	rw	Total memory used for the compressed content in the .ZIP file.
1049	OnEndFile	rw	Event handler signalled when compression for a file has been completed.
1048	OnPercent	rw	Threshold percentage which triggers progress notifications when processing files.
1049	OnProgress	rw	Event handler signalled to show a percent complete progress notifications.
1049	OnStartFile	rw	Event handler signalled when compression for a file is started.
1050	Terminated	r	True if the Terminate method has been called.
1051	UseLanguageEncoding	rw	Use language encoding.

46.23.4 TZipper.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

46.23.5 TZipper.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destructor for the class instance.

46.23.6 TZipper.ZipAllFiles

Synopsis: Zips all files in object and writes zip to disk.

Declaration: `procedure ZipAllFiles; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This procedure zips up all files in the TZipper (1044) object and writes the resulting zip file to disk.

An example of using this procedure:

```
uses
    Zipper;
var
    Zipper: TZipper;
begin
    try
        Zipper := TZipper.Create;
        Zipper.FileName := ParamStr(1); //Use the first parameter on the command line as
        for I := 2 to ParamCount do //Use the other arguments on the command line as fil
            Zipper.Entries.AddFileEntry(ParamStr(I), ParamStr(I));
        Zipper.ZipAllFiles;
    finally
        Zipper.Free;
    end;
end.
```

46.23.7 TZipper.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Saves the archive to a file with a new name.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: RawByteString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Saves a .ZIP file with a new name.

46.23.8 TZipper.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save the archive to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Save the archive to a stream.

46.23.9 TZipper.ZipFile

Synopsis: Zip one file to a zip file.

Declaration: `procedure ZipFile(const aFileToBeZipped: RawByteString)`
`procedure ZipFile(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const aFileToBeZipped: RawByteString)`

Visibility: public

Description: Zips the specified files into a zip with the name in AFileName.

See also: ZipFiles ([1047](#))

46.23.10 TZipper.ZipFiles

Synopsis: Zip multiple files into an archive.

Declaration: `procedure ZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`FileList: TStrings)`
`procedure ZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const FileList: Array of RawByteString)`
`procedure ZipFiles(const aFileList: Array of RawByteString)`
`procedure ZipFiles(FileList: TStrings)`
`procedure ZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`Entries: TZipFileEntries)`
`procedure ZipFiles(Entries: TZipFileEntries)`

Visibility: public

Description: Zip multiple files into an archive.

See also: ZipFile ([1047](#))

46.23.11 TZipper.Zip

Synopsis: Convenience method used to create a .zip file with the given name containing the specified file(s).

Declaration: `class procedure Zip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const aFileToBeZipped: RawByteString)`
`class procedure Zip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: Array of RawByteString)`
`class procedure Zip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Zip is a class procedure used to create a .zip file with the name specified in AZipFileName. Overloaded variants are provided that allow one or more file names to be specified using the AFileToBeZipped or AFileList arguments.

For example:

```
var
  SZip, SFile: RawByteString;

  SZip := '/usr/tmp/docbook5-catalog.zip';
  SFile := '/usr/share/xml/docbook/schema/sch/5.0/catalog.xml'
```



```
TZipper.Zip(SZip, SFile);
```

See also: TUnzipper.Unzip ([1034](#))

46.23.12 TZipper.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all values in the Entries and Files properties.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Removes all values in the Entries and Files properties.

46.23.13 TZipper.Terminate

Synopsis: Halts an assigned compressor in the class instance, and sets Terminated to True.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Halts an assigned compressor in the class instance, and sets Terminated to True.

46.23.14 TZipper.BufferSize

Synopsis: Buffer size used when reading and processing files.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Buffer size used when reading and processing files.

46.23.15 TZipper.OnPercent

Synopsis: Threshold percentage which triggers progress notifications when processing files.

Declaration: `Property OnPercent : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Threshold percentage which triggers progress notifications when processing files.

46.23.16 TZipper.OnProgress

Synopsis: Event handler signalled to show a percent complete progress notifications.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled to show a percent complete progress notifications.

46.23.17 TZipper.OnStartFile

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when compression for a file is started.

Declaration: `Property OnStartFile : TOnStartFileEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled when compression for a file is started.

46.23.18 TZipper.OnEndFile

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when compression for a file has been completed.

Declaration: `Property OnEndFile : TOnEndOfFileEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled when compression for a file has been completed.

46.23.19 TZipper.FileName

Synopsis: Name of the .ZIP archive file where the compressed files and directories are stored.

Declaration: `Property FileName : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Name of the .ZIP archive file where the compressed files and directories are stored.

46.23.20 TZipper.FileComment

Synopsis: Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.

Declaration: `Property FileComment : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.

46.23.21 TZipper.Files

Synopsis: Provides access to the list of files and directories in the archive.

Declaration: `Property Files : TStrings; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Deprecated. Use the `Entries` property to call its `AddFileEntry` or `AddFileEntries` methods instead.

See also: `TZipper.Entries` ([1050](#)), `TZipperFileEntries.AddFileEntry` ([1013](#)), `TZipperFileEntries.AddFileEntries` ([1013](#))

46.23.22 TZipper.InMemSize

Synopsis: Total memory used for the compressed content in the .ZIP file.

Declaration: `Property InMemSize : Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Total memory used for the compressed content in the .ZIP file.

46.23.23 TZipper.Entries

Synopsis: Collection with the `TZipFileEntry` instances in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property Entries : TZipFileEntries`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Collection with the `TZipFileEntry` instances in the .ZIP archive.

46.23.24 TZipper.Terminated

Synopsis: True if the `Terminate` method has been called.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: True if the `Terminate` method has been called.

46.23.25 TZipper.UseLanguageEncoding

Synopsis: Use language encoding.

Declaration: `Property UseLanguageEncoding : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: EFS/language encoding using UTF-8.

Chapter 47

Reference for unit 'ZStream'

47.1 Used units

Table 47.1: Used units by unit 'ZStream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
gzio	??
System	??
zbase	??

47.2 Overview

The `ZStream` unit implements a `TStream` (??) descendent (`TCompressionStream` (1053)) which uses the deflate algorithm to compress everything that is written to it. The compressed data is written to the output stream, which is specified when the compressor class is created.

Likewise, a `TStream` descendent is implemented which reads data from an input stream (`TDecompressionStream` (1056)) and decompresses it with the inflate algorithm.

47.3 Constants, types and variables

47.3.1 Types

```
Tcompressionlevel = (clnone, clfastest, cldefault, clmax)
```

Table 47.2: Enumeration values for type `Tcompressionlevel`

Value	Explanation
<code>cldefault</code>	Use default compression.
<code>clfastest</code>	Use fast (but less) compression.
<code>clmax</code>	Use maximum compression.
<code>clnone</code>	Do not use compression, just copy data.

Compression level for the deflate algorithm.

`Tgzopenmode = (gzopenread, gzopenwrite)`

Table 47.3: Enumeration values for type `Tgzopenmode`

Value	Explanation
<code>gzopenread</code>	Open file for reading.
<code>gzopenwrite</code>	Open file for writing.

Open mode for gzip file.

47.4 Ecompressionerror

47.4.1 Description

`ECompressionError` is the exception class used by the `TCompressionStream` ([1053](#)) class.

47.5 Edecompressionerror

47.5.1 Description

`EDecompressionError` is the exception class used by the `TDeCompressionStream` ([1056](#)) class.

47.6 Egzfileerror

47.6.1 Description

`Egzfileerror` is the exception class used to report errors by the `Tgzfilestream` ([1059](#)) class.

See also: `Tgzfilestream` ([1059](#))

47.7 Ezliberror

47.7.1 Description

Errors which occur in the `zstream` unit are signaled by raising an `EZLibError` exception descendant.

47.8 Tcompressionstream

47.8.1 Description

`TCompressionStream`

47.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1054	<code>create</code>	Create a new instance of the compression stream.
1054	<code>destroy</code>	Flushes data to the output stream and destroys the compression stream.
1055	<code>flush</code>	Flush remaining data to the target stream.
1055	<code>get_compressionrate</code>	Get the current compression rate.
1054	<code>write</code>	Write data to the stream.

47.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1055	<code>OnProgress</code>		Progress handler.

47.8.4 Tcompressionstream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the compression stream.

Declaration: `constructor create(level: Tcompressionlevel; dest: TStream; Askipheader: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the compression stream. It merely calls the inherited constructor with the destination stream `Dest` and stores the compression level.

If `ASkipHeader` is set to `True`, the method will not write the block header to the stream. This is required for deflated data in a zip file.

Note that the compressed data is only completely written after the compression stream is destroyed.

See also: `Destroy` ([1054](#))

47.8.5 Tcompressionstream.destroy

Synopsis: Flushes data to the output stream and destroys the compression stream.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes the output stream: any compressed data not yet written to the output stream are written, and the deflate structures are cleaned up.

Errors: None.

See also: `Create` ([1054](#))

47.8.6 Tcompressionstream.write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function write(const buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` takes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` and compresses (deflates) them. The compressed result is written to the output stream.

Errors: If an error occurs, an `ECompressionError` (1053) exception is raised.

See also: `Write` (1054), `ECompressionError` (1053)

47.8.7 `Tcompressionstream.flush`

Synopsis: Flush remaining data to the target stream.

Declaration: `procedure flush`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `flush` writes any remaining data in the memory buffers to the target stream, and clears the memory buffer.

47.8.8 `Tcompressionstream.get_compressionrate`

Synopsis: Get the current compression rate.

Declaration: `function get_compressionrate : single`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `get_compressionrate` returns the percentage of the number of written compressed bytes relative to the number of written bytes.

Errors: If no bytes were written, an exception is raised.

47.8.9 `Tcompressionstream.OnProgress`

Synopsis: Progress handler.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress :`

Visibility: `public`

Access:

Description: `OnProgress` is called whenever output data is written to the output stream. It can be used to update a progress bar or so. The `Sender` argument to the progress handler is the compression stream instance.

47.9 `Tcustomzlibstream`

47.9.1 `Description`

`TCustomZlibStream` serves as the ancestor class for the `TCompressionStream` (1053) and `TDecompressionStream` (1056) classes.

It introduces support for a progress handler, and stores the input or output stream.

47.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1056	create	Create a new instance of TCustomZlibStream.
1056	destroy	Clear up instance.

47.9.3 Tcustomzlibstream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TCustomZlibStream.

Declaration: `constructor create(stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TCustomZlibStream. It stores a reference to the input/output stream, and initializes the deflate compression mechanism so they can be used by the descendents.

See also: TCompressionStream ([1053](#)), TDecompressionStream ([1056](#))

47.9.4 Tcustomzlibstream.destroy

Synopsis: Clear up instance.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up the internal memory buffer and calls the inherited destroy.

See also: Tcustomzlibstream.create ([1056](#))

47.10 Tdecompressionstream

47.10.1 Description

TDecompressionStream performs the inverse operation of TCompressionStream ([1053](#)). A read operation reads data from an input stream and decompresses (inflates) the data as it goes along.

The decompression stream reads its compressed data from a stream with deflated data. This data can be created e.g. with a TCompressionStream ([1053](#)) compression stream.

See also: TCompressionStream ([1053](#))

47.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1057	create	Creates a new instance of the TDecompressionStream stream.
1057	destroy	Destroys the TDecompressionStream instance.
1058	get_compressionrate	Get the current compression rate.
1057	read	Read data from the compressed stream.
1058	Seek	Move stream position to a certain location in the stream.

47.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1058	OnProgress		Progress handler.

47.10.4 TDecompressionStream.create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TDecompressionStream` stream.

Declaration: `constructor create(Asource: TStream; Askipheader: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates and initializes a new instance of the `TDecompressionStream` class. It calls the inherited `Create` and passes it the `Source` stream. The source stream is the stream from which the compressed (deflated) data is read.

If `ASkipHeader` is true, then the gzip data header is skipped, allowing `TDecompressionStream` to read deflated data in a .zip file. (this data does not have the gzip header record prepended to it).

Note that the source stream is by default not owned by the decompression stream, and is not freed when the decompression stream is destroyed.

See also: `Destroy` ([1057](#))

47.10.5 TDecompressionStream.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TDecompressionStream` instance.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the inflate structure, and then simply calls the inherited `destroy`.

By default the source stream is not freed when calling `Destroy`.

See also: `Create` ([1057](#))

47.10.6 TDecompressionStream.read

Synopsis: Read data from the compressed stream.

Declaration: `function read(var buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` will read data from the compressed stream until the decompressed data size is `Count` or there is no more compressed data available. The decompressed data is written in `Buffer`. The function returns the number of bytes written in the buffer.

Errors: If an error occurs, an `EDeCompressionError` ([1053](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Write` ([1054](#))

47.10.7 Tdecompressionstream.Seek

Synopsis: Move stream position to a certain location in the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. There are a few differences between the implementation of `Seek` in Free Pascal compared to Delphi:

- In Free Pascal, you can perform any seek. In case of a forward seek, the Free Pascal implementation will read some bytes until the desired position is reached, in case of a backward seek it will seek the source stream backwards to the position it had at the creation time of the `TDecompressionStream` and then again read some bytes until the desired position has been reached.
- In Free Pascal, a seek with `soFromBeginning` will reset the source stream to the position it had when the `TDecompressionStream` was created. In Delphi, the source stream is reset to position 0. This means that at creation time the source stream must always be at the start of the zstream, you cannot use `TDecompressionStream.Seek` to reset the source stream to the begin of the file.

Errors: An `EDecompressionError` ([1053](#)) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `Read` ([1057](#))

47.10.8 Tdecompressionstream.get_compressionrate

Synopsis: Get the current compression rate.

Declaration: `function get_compressionrate : single`

Visibility: public

Description: `get_compressionrate` returns the percentage of the number of read compressed bytes relative to the total number of read bytes.

Errors: If no bytes were written, an exception is raised.

47.10.9 Tdecompressionstream.OnProgress

Synopsis: Progress handler.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `OnProgress` is called whenever input data is read from the source stream. It can be used to update a progress bar or so. The `Sender` argument to the progress handler is the decompression stream instance.

47.11 TGZFileStream

47.11.1 Description

`TGZFileStream` can be used to read data from a gzip file, or to write data to a gzip file.

See also: `TCompressionStream` (1053), `TDeCompressionStream` (1056)

47.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1059	<code>create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TGZFileStream</code> .
1060	<code>destroy</code>	Removes <code>TGZFileStream</code> instance.
1059	<code>read</code>	Read data from the compressed file.
1060	<code>seek</code>	Set the position in the compressed stream.
1060	<code>write</code>	Write data to be compressed.

47.11.3 TGZFileStream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TGZFileStream`.

Declaration: `constructor create(filename: ansistring; filemode: Tgzopenmode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TGZFileStream` class. It opens `FileName` for reading or writing, depending on the `FileMode` parameter. It is not possible to open the file read-write. If the file is opened for reading, it must exist.

If the file is opened for reading, the `TGZFileStream.Read` (1059) method can be used for reading the data in uncompressed form.

If the file is opened for writing, any data written using the `TGZFileStream.Write` (1060) method will be stored in the file in compressed (deflated) form.

Errors: If the file is not found, an `EZlibError` (1053) exception is raised.

See also: `Destroy` (1060), `TGZOpenMode` (1053)

47.11.4 TGZFileStream.read

Synopsis: Read data from the compressed file.

Declaration: `function read(var buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` overrides the `Read` method of `TStream` to read the data from the compressed file. The `Buffer` parameter indicates where the read data should be stored. The `Count` parameter specifies the number of bytes (*uncompressed*) that should be read from the compressed file. Note that it is not possible to read from the stream if it was opened in write mode.

The function returns the number of uncompressed bytes actually read.

Errors: If `Buffer` points to an invalid location, or does not have enough room for `Count` bytes, an exception will be raised.

See also: `Create` (1059), `Write` (1060), `Seek` (1060)

47.11.5 TGZFileStream.write

Synopsis: Write data to be compressed.

Declaration: `function write(const buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the compressed file. The data is compressed as it is written, so ideally, less than `Count` bytes end up in the compressed file. Note that it is not possible to write to the stream if it was opened in read mode.

The function returns the number of (uncompressed) bytes that were actually written.

Errors: In case of an error, an `EZlibError` (1053) exception is raised.

See also: `Create` (1059), `Read` (1059), `Seek` (1060)

47.11.6 TGZFileStream.seek

Synopsis: Set the position in the compressed stream.

Declaration: `function seek(offset: LongInt; origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the position to `Offset` bytes, starting from `Origin`. Not all combinations are possible, see `TDecompressionStream.Seek` (1058) for a list of possibilities.

Errors: In case an impossible combination is asked, an `EZlibError` (1053) exception is raised.

See also: `TDecompressionStream.Seek` (1058)

47.11.7 TGZFileStream.destroy

Synopsis: Removes `TGZFileStream` instance.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the file and releases the `TGZFileStream` instance from memory.

See also: `Create` (1059)

47.12 TGZipCompressionStream

47.12.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1060	<code>Create</code>	
1061	<code>Destroy</code>	
1061	<code>Write</code>	

47.12.2 TGZipCompressionStream.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADest: TStream); Overload`

`constructor Create(ALevel: Tcompressionlevel; ADest: TStream); Overload`

Visibility: public

47.12.3 TGZipCompressionStream.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

47.12.4 TGZipCompressionStream.Write

Declaration: function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override

Visibility: public

47.13 TGZipDecompressionStream

47.13.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1061	Create	
1061	Destroy	
1061	Read	
1061	Seek	

47.13.2 TGZipDecompressionStream.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(ASource: TStream)

Visibility: public

47.13.3 TGZipDecompressionStream.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

47.13.4 TGZipDecompressionStream.Read

Declaration: function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override

Visibility: public

47.13.5 TGZipDecompressionStream.Seek

Declaration: function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64
; Override

Visibility: public